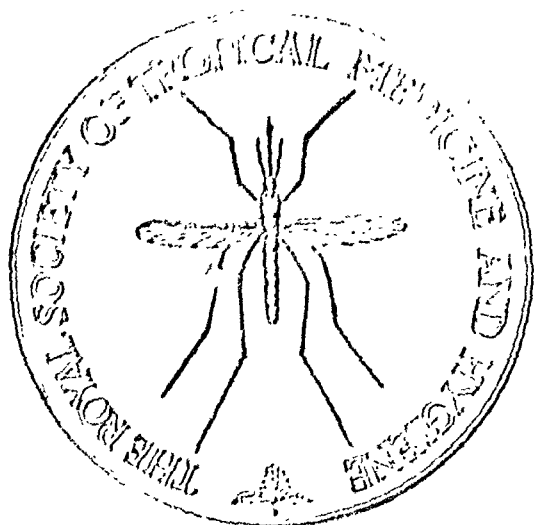


TRANSACTIONS

OF THE

ROYAL SOCIETY OF TROPICAL MEDICINE AND HYGIENE.

PATRON — HIS MAJESTY THE KING.



NONNE TORREDAE TUTAMEN

VOL. XXXII. 1938-1939.

LONDON :

ROYAL SOCIETY OF TROPICAL MEDICINE AND HYGIENE,
MAISON HOUSE, 26, PORTLAND PLACE, LONDON, W.1.

Telephone : LANCUM 2127.

Telegrams : ANTHOPEL, LONDON

CONTENTS.

Vol. XXXII. 1938-39.

No. 1. Issued 25th June, 1938.

LABORATORY MEETING, 17th March, 1938.

PAGE

DEMONSTRATIONS: Royal Army Medical College, Hygiene Department; Royal Army Medical College, Department of Pathology (J. S. K. Boyd); A. R. D. Adams; S. Adler; S. Adler and Rivkah Ashbel; C. C. Chesterman; J. T. Duncan and F. Murgatroyd; A. Felix; G. M. Findlay, R. D. Mackenzie and F. O. MacCallum; C. A. Hoare; Clayton Lane; A. R. Paterson; J. A. Sinton 1

ORDINARY MEETING, 19th May, 1938.

PAPER: The placenta in malaria with special reference to reticulo-endothelial immunity. P. C. C. Garnham 13

DISCUSSION: H. W. Mulligan; V. B. Green-Armytage; J. A. Sinton; E. M. Lourie; G. M. Findlay; C. M. Wenyon; P. Manson-Bahr; R. M. Gordon; F. Murgatroyd; C. M. Wenyon; J. S. K. Boyd; P. C. C. Garnham (in reply) ... 35

COMMUNICATIONS:

Foy, Henry and Kondl, Athena. Spectrographic analysis of pigments in serum and urine of blackwater fever 49

Hoare, Cecil A. Early discoveries regarding the parasite of oriental sore. (With an English translation of the memoir by P. F. BOROVSKY: "On Sart sore." 1898.) 67

Kligler, I. J., and Levine, Sonia. Immunization of monkeys and humans with formalized tissue cultures of typhus rickettsia ... 93

Uttley, K. H. The epidemiology of enteric fever in Hongkong ... 99

Watson, G. I. Quarantine and the Mecca pilgrimage—the growth of an idea 107

Brett, G. A. On the relative attractiveness to *Aedes aegypti* of certain coloured cloths 113

O'Connor, F. W., and Knott, James. Chylous filarial lymphatic varix. (A clinical pathological report) 125

No. 2. Issued 25th August, 1938.

	PAGE
ANNUAL GENERAL MEETING and ORDINARY MEETING, 30th June, 1938	
BUSINESS	129
PAPER: Nutritional macrocytic anaemia in Macedonia. A preliminary report. N. Hamilton Fairley, R. J. Bromfield, Henry Foy and Athena Kondi	132
DISCUSSION: Lucy Wills; Janet Vaughan; L. E. Napier; G. R. McRobert; G. Fraser; Lucy Wills; Hamilton Fairley (in reply)	173
COMMUNICATIONS:	
Findlay, G. M., Mackenzie, R. D., and MacCallum, F. O. A morphological study on the virus of lymphogranuloma inguinale (climatic bubo)	183
Yenikomshian, H. A., and Dennis, E. W. An outbreak of epidemic jaundice at Hamet, Lebanese Republic	189
van Hoof, L., Henrard, C., and Peel, E. The stability of Bayer 205 resistance in <i>Trypanosoma gambiense</i>	197
Brown, H. C., and Broom, J. C. Studies in trypanosomiasis. II.—Observations on the red cell adhesion test	209
Manson-Bahr, Philip. Amoebic invasion of the skin and subcutaneous tissues... ..	223
Blair, D. M. Infection with <i>Plasmodium ovale</i> Stephens in Southern Rhodesia	229
Russell, Beatrice A. S. Incidence of malaria among African children	237
Knott, James. The treatment of filarial elephantiasis of the leg by bandaging	243
Mainzer, Fritz. Bilharzial asthma, bronchial asthma in <i>Schistosoma</i> infection	253
Kirk, R., and Drew, C. B. Preliminary notes on dermal leishmaniasis in the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan	265
Kirk, R. Primary cutaneous sore in a case of kala-azar	271
MacHattie, C. Notes on two cases of naturally occurring toxoplasmosis of dogs in Baghdad	273
Strickland, C. Holland and Bengal. Reclamation and malaria in the two countries	277
Uttley, K. H. Mortality from cerebrospinal fever in Hongkong	287
Holland, E. A. Suicide by ingestion of derris root sp. in New Ireland	293
Holland, E. A. Some vegetable poisons of New Guinea	295
CORRIGENDUM: Early discoveries regarding the parasite of oriental sore. C. A. Hoare	296
ANNOUNCEMENTS:	
Third International Congress of Tropical Medicine and Malaria	296
Third International Congress for Microbiology	296

No. 3. Issued 24th November, 1958.

	PAGE
ORDINARY MEETING, 13th October, 1958.	
PAPER: Yellow fever: the present situation (October, 1958) with special reference to South America. Fred L. Soper	297
DISCUSSION: H.E. Brazilian Ambassador, R. Regis de Oliveira ; G. M. Findlay ; M. T. Morgan ; John Megaw ; F. P. Mackle ; Malcolm Watson ; H. E. Shortt ; F. L. Soper (in reply)...	323
COMMUNICATIONS :	
Hoare, Cecil A. Morphological and taxonomic studies on mammalian trypanosomes. V.—The diagnostic value of the kinetoplast ...	333
Corson, J. F. Observations on the pathogenicity for white rats of a strain of <i>Trypanosoma rhodesiense</i>	343
Foy, Henry, and Kondi, Athena. Spleen puncture findings in blackwater fever	347
Evans, K. Leigh, and Arnold, L. E. Experimental studies of poisoning with ackee (<i>Blighia sapida</i>)	355
Earle, K. Vigors. Toxic effects of <i>Hippomane mancinella</i>	363
Marsh, Frank. Experiments in heatstroke in Iran	371
Manson-Bahr, Phillip, and Ransford, O. N. Some pigmentations of the skin occurring in patients from the tropics: carotinaemia, haemochromatosis and alkaptonuria	395
Uttley, K. H. Diphtheria in Hongkong	405
Niven, J. C. Sulphanilamide in the treatment of malaria	413
Sinton, J. A., Hutton, E. L., and Shute, P. G. Unsuccessful attempts at causal prophylaxis with certuna in malignant tertian malaria ...	419
Measham, J. E. A case of congenital malaria	423
CORRESPONDENCE: Phagaedenic ulcers. Clifford S. James	426
CORRIGENDUM " " " "	426

No. 2. Issued 25th August, 1938.

	PAGE
ANNUAL GENERAL MEETING and ORDINARY MEETING, 30th June, 1938	
BUSINESS	129
PAPER: Nutritional macrocytic anaemia in Macedonia. A preliminary report. N. Hamilton Fairley, R. J. Bromfield, Henry Foy and Athena Kondi	132
DISCUSSION: Lucy Wills; Janet Vaughan; L. E. Napier; G. R. McRobert; G. Fraser; Lucy Wills; Hamilton Fairley (in reply)	173
COMMUNICATIONS:	
Findlay, G. M., Mackenzie, R. D., and MacCallum, F. O. A morphological study on the virus of lymphogranuloma inguinale (climatic bubo)	183
Yenikomshian, H. A., and Dennis, E. W. An outbreak of epidemic jaundice at Hamet, Lebanese Republic	189
van Hoof, L., Hennard, C., and Peel, E. The stability of Bayer 205 resistance in <i>Trypanosoma gambiense</i>	197
Brown, H. C., and Broom, J. C. Studies in trypanosomiasis. II.—Observations on the red cell adhesion test	209
Manson-Bahr, Philip. Amoebic invasion of the skin and subcutaneous tissues... ..	223
Blair, D. M. Infection with <i>Plasmodium ovale</i> Stephens in Southern Rhodesia	229
Russell, Beatrice A. S. Incidence of malaria among African children	237
Knott, James. The treatment of filarial elephantiasis of the leg by bandaging	243
Mainzer, Fritz. Bilharzial asthma, bronchial asthma in <i>Schistosoma</i> infection	253
Kirk, R., and Drew, C. B. Preliminary notes on dermal leishmaniasis in the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan	265
Kirk, R. Primary cutaneous sore in a case of kala-azar	271
MacHattie, C. Notes on two cases of naturally occurring toxoplasmosis of dogs in Baghdad	273
Strickland, C. Holland and Bengal. Reclamation and malaria in the two countries	277
Uttley, K. H. Mortality from cerebrospinal fever in Hongkong	287
Holland, E. A. Suicide by ingestion of derris root sp. in New Ireland	293
Holland, E. A. Some vegetable poisons of New Guinea	295
CORRIGENDUM: Early discoveries regarding the parasite of oriental sore. C. A. Hoare	296
ANNOUNCEMENTS:	
Third International Congress of Tropical Medicine and Malaria	296
Third International Congress for Microbiology	296

No. 2. Issued 24th November, 1938.

PAGE

ORDINARY MEETING, 13th October, 1938.

PAPER: Yellow fever: the present situation (October, 1938) with special reference to South America. Fred L. Soper	297
DISCUSSION: H. E. Brazilian Ambassador, R. Regis de Oliveira; G. M. Findlay; M. T. Morgan; John Megaw; F. P. Mackie; Malcolm Watson; H. E. Shortt; F. L. Soper (in reply)...	323

COMMUNICATIONS:

Hoare, Cecil A. Morphological and taxonomic studies on mammalian trypanosomes. V.—The diagnostic value of the kinetoplast	333
Corson, J. F. Observations on the pathogenicity for white rats of a strain of <i>Trypanosoma rhodesiense</i>	343
Foy, Henry, and Kondi, Athena. Spleen puncture findings in blackwater fever	347
Evans, K. Leigh, and Arnold, L. E. Experimental studies of poisoning with ekeke (<i>Blighia sapida</i>)	355
Earle, K. Vigers. Toxic effects of <i>Hippomane mancinella</i>	363
Marsh, Frank. Experiments in heatstroke in Iran	371
Manson-Bahr, Philip, and Ransford, O. N. Some pigmentations of the skin occurring in patients from the tropics: carotinaemia, haemochromatosis and alkaptonuria	395
Utley, K. H. Diphtheria in Hongkong	405
Niven, J. C. Sulphanilamide in the treatment of malaria	413
Sinton, J. A., Hutton, E. L., and Shute, P. G. Unsuccessful attempts at causal prophylaxis with certona in malignant tertian malaria	419
Measham, J. E. A case of congenital malaria	423

CORRESPONDENCE: Phagaedenic ulcers. Clifford S. James	426
--	-----

CORRIGENDUM " " " "	426
---------------------	-----

No. 4. Issued 28th January, 1939.

	PAGE
CLINICAL AND LABORATORY MEETING, 17th November, 1938.	
DEMONSTRATIONS: W. E. Cooke; J. T. Duncan, P. H. Martin and F. Murgatroyd; S. P. James; Cecil J. Hackett; P. Manson-Bahr; N. Hamilton Fairley; N. Hamilton Fairley and R. J. Bromfield; N. Hamilton Fairley and A. H. McIndoe; N. Hamilton Fairley and F. Murgatroyd	427
ORDINARY MEETING, 8th December, 1938.	
PAPER: Implications of malarial endemicity in East Africa. D. Bagster Wilson	435
DISCUSSION: The President (S. P. James); R. M. Gordon; J. A. Sinton; C. A. Gill; E. M. Lourie; Malcolm Watson; Vincent Hodson; D. Bagster Wilson (in reply)	447
COMMUNICATIONS:	
Field, J. W. and Le Fleming, H. The morphology of malarial parasites in thick blood films. I.—The thick-film morphology of <i>Plasmodium vivax</i>	467
Menon, T. Bhaskara. The visceral lesions in simian malaria with special reference to the splenic reaction	481
Row, R. Some experimental observations on human and rat leprosy and their significance in the pathogenesis and treatment of the disease	497
Speight, A. Erythrocyte sedimentation test and prognosis in leprosy... ..	505
Kennedy, Walter P. Haemoglobin and erythrocyte standards in Iraq	511
Corkill, N. L. Tropical ulcer: observations on its treatment and cause	519
Kirk, R. Studies in leishmaniasis in the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan. I.—Epidemiology and general considerations	533
Broom, J. C. and Brown, H. C. Studies in trypanosomiasis. III.—The electric charge of trypanosomes in the salivary glands of tsetse flies	545
Evans, R. R. Cysticercosis in an athlete	549
Gopsill, W. L. Onchocerciasis in Nyasaland	551
Cawston, F. Gordon. Variation in the shape of schistosome ova	553
Poynton, J. Orde and Hodgkin, E. I. ... microfilariæ of the Kra monkey (<i>Macaca irus</i>)	555

No. 5. Issued 28th February, 1939.

	PAGE
ORDINARY MEETING, 19th January, 1939.	
PAPER: The study of plant viruses with special reference to their insect-relationships and some comparisons with the animal viruses. Kenneth M. Smlth	557
DISCUSSION: S. P. Bedson; G. M. Findlay; C. H. Andrewes; K. B. Williamson; H. E. Shortt; Kenneth Smlth (in reply) ...	566
COMMUNICATIONS:	
Findlay, G. M., MacCallum, F. O., and Murgatroyd, F. Observations bearing on the aetiology of infective hepatitis (so-called epidemic catarrhal jaundice)	575
Schüffner, W. Yellow fever—some remarks on Dr. Soper's paper ...	587
Schüffner, W., Snijders, E. P., and Walch-Sorgdrager, B. The effect of continued subinoculation of yellow fever virus and its longevity in a preserved state	595
Höring, F. O. The action of urea on yellow fever virus	597
Lawkowitz, W. Researches on <i>Bartonella muris</i> and its cultivation <i>in vitro</i>	601
Anigstein, Ludwik, and Lawkowitz, W. Researches on strains of <i>Rickettsia</i> and <i>Proteus</i> cultivated from experimental typhus of the murine type	605
Lester, H. M. O. The results of sleeping sickness work in Northern Nigeria	615
Hoare, C. A., and Broom, J. C. Morphological and taxonomic studies on mammalian trypanosomes.	
VII. Differentiation of <i>Trypanosoma uniforme</i> and <i>T. vi ax</i> in mixed infections	629
Broom, J. C. The maintenance of <i>Glossina morsitans</i> in England for experimental work	633
Foster, A. O., and Johnson, C. M. An explanation for the occurrence of <i>Capillaria hepatica</i> ova in human faeces suggested by the finding of three new hosts used as food	639
Fisk, Guy H. Helminthiasis in Lagos, Nigeria	645
Yokogawa, Sadamu. Studies on the mode of transmission of <i>Wuchereria bancrofti</i>	653

No. 4. Issued 28th January, 1939.

	PAGE
CLINICAL AND LABORATORY MEETING, 17th November, 1938.	
DEMONSTRATIONS: W. E. Cooke; J. T. Duncan, P. H. Martin and F. Murgatroyd; S. P. James; Cecil J. Hackett; P. Manson- Bahr; N. Hamilton Fairley; N. Hamilton Fairley and R. J. Bromfield; N. Hamilton Fairley and A. H. McIndoe; N. Hamilton Fairley and F. Murgatroyd	427
ORDINARY MEETING, 8th December, 1938.	
PAPER: Implications of malarial endemicity in East Africa. D. Bagster Wilson	435
DISCUSSION: The President (S. P. James); R. M. Gordon; J. A. Sinton; C. A. Gill; E. M. Lourie; Malcolm Watson; Vincent Hodson; D. Bagster Wilson (in reply)	447
COMMUNICATIONS:	
Field, J. W. and Le Fleming, H. The morphology of malarial parasites in thick blood films.	
I.—The thick-film morphology of <i>Plasmodium vivax</i>	467
Menon, T. Bhaskara. The visceral lesions in simian malaria with special reference to the splenic reaction	481
Row, R. Some experimental observations on human and rat leprosy and their significance in the pathogenesis and treatment of the disease	497
Speight, A. Erythrocyte sedimentation test and prognosis in leprosy...	505
Kennedy, Walter P. Haemoglobin and erythrocyte standards in Iraq	511
Corkill, N. L. Tropical ulcer: observations on its treatment and cause	519
Kirk, R. Studies in leishmaniasis in the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan.	
I.—Epidemiology and general considerations	533
Broom, J. C. and Brown, H. C. Studies in trypanosomiasis.	
III.—The electric charge of trypanosomes in the salivary glands of tsetse flies	545
Evans, R. R. Cysticercosis in an athlete	549
Gopsill, W. L. Onchocerciasis in Nyasaland	551
Cawston, F. Gordon. Variation in the shape of schistosome ova ...	553
Poynton, J. Orde and Hodgkin, E. P. Two microfilariae of the Kra monkey (<i>Macaca irus</i>)	555

No. 5. Issued 28th February, 1939.

	PAGE
ORDINARY MEETING, 19th January, 1939.	
PAPER: The study of plant viruses with special reference to their insect-relationships and some comparisons with the animal viruses. Kenneth M. Smith	557
DISCUSSION: S. P. Bedson; G. M. Findlay; C. H. Andrewes; K. B. Williamson; H. E. Shortt; Kenneth Smith (in reply) ...	566
COMMUNICATIONS:	
Findlay, G. M., MacCallum, F. O., and Murgatroyd, F. Observations bearing on the aetiology of infective hepatitis (so-called epidemic catarrhal jaundice)	575
Schüffner, W. Yellow fever—some remarks on Dr. Soper's paper ...	587
Schüffner, W., Snijders, E. P., and Walch-Sorgdrager, B. The effect of continued subinoculation of yellow fever virus and its longevity in a preserved state	595
Höring, F. O. The action of urea on yellow fever virus	597
Lawkowiez, W. Researches on <i>Bartonella muris</i> and its cultivation <i>in vitro</i>	601
Anigstein, Ludwik, and Lawkowiez, W. Researches on strains of <i>Rickettsia</i> and <i>Proteus</i> cultivated from experimental typhus of the murine type	605
Lester, H. M. O. The results of sleeping sickness work in Northern Nigeria	615
Hoare, C. A., and Broom, J. C. Morphological and taxonomic studies on mammalian trypanosomes.	
VII. Differentiation of <i>Trypanosoma uniforme</i> and <i>T. vit ax</i> in mixed infections	629
Broom, J. C. The maintenance of <i>Glossina morsitans</i> in England for experimental work	633
Foster, A. O., and Johnson, C. M. An explanation for the occurrence of <i>Capillaria hepatica</i> ova in human faeces suggested by the finding of three new hosts used as food	639
Fisk, Guy H. Helminthiasis in Lagos, Nigeria	645
Yokogawa, Sadamu. Studies on the mode of transmission of <i>Wuchereria bancrofti</i>	653

No. 4. Issued 28th January, 1939.

	PAGE
CLINICAL AND LABORATORY MEETING, 17th November, 1938.	
DEMONSTRATIONS: W. E. Cooke; J. T. Duncan, P. H. Martin and F. Murgatroyd; S. P. James; Cecil J. Hackett; P. Manson- Bahr; N. Hamilton Fairley; N. Hamilton Fairley and R. J. Bromfield; N. Hamilton Fairley and A. H. McIndoe; N. Hamilton Fairley and F. Murgatroyd	427
ORDINARY MEETING, 8th December, 1938.	
PAPER: Implications of malarial endemicity in East Africa. D. Bagster Wilson	435
DISCUSSION: The President (S. P. James); R. M. Gordon; J. A. Sinton; C. A. Gill; E. M. Lourie; Malcolm Watson; Vincent Hodson; D. Bagster Wilson (in reply)	447
COMMUNICATIONS:	
Field, J. W. and Le Fleming, H. The morphology of malarial parasites in thick blood films. I.—The thick-film morphology of <i>Plasmodium vivax</i>	467
Menon, T. Bhaskara. The visceral lesions in simian malaria with special reference to the splenic reaction	481
Row, R. Some experimental observations on human and rat leprosy and their significance in the pathogenesis and treatment of the disease	497
Speight, A. Erythrocyte sedimentation test and prognosis in leprosy... ..	505
Kennedy, Walter P. Haemoglobin and erythrocyte standards in Iraq	511
Corkill, N. L. Tropical ulcer: observations on its treatment and cause	519
Kirk, R. Studies in leishmaniasis in the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan. I.—Epidemiology and general considerations	533
Broom, J. C. and Brown, H. C. Studies in trypanosomiasis. III.—The electric charge of trypanosomes in the salivary glands of tsetse flies	545
Evans, R. R. Cysticercosis in an athlete	549
Gopsill, W. L. Onchocerciasis in Nyasaland	551
Cawston, F. Gordon. Variation in the shape of schistosome ova	553
Poynton, J. Orde and Hodgkin, E. P. Two microfilariae of the Kra monkey (<i>Macaca irus</i>)	555

No. 5. Issued 28th February, 1939.

	PAGE
ORDINARY MEETING, 19th January, 1939.	
PAPER: The study of plant viruses with special reference to their insect-relationships and some comparisons with the animal viruses. Kenneth M. Smith	557
DISCUSSION: S. P. Bedson; G. M. Findlay; C. H. Andrewes; K. B. Williamson; H. E. Shortt; Kenneth Smith (in reply) ...	566
COMMUNICATIONS:	
Findlay, G. M., MacCallum, F. O., and Murgatroyd, F. Observations bearing on the aetiology of infective hepatitis (so-called epidemic catarrhal jaundice)	575
Schüffner, W. Yellow fever—some remarks on Dr. Soper's paper ...	587
Schüffner, W., Snijders, E. P., and Walch-Sorgdrager, B. The effect of continued subinoculation of yellow fever virus and its longevity in a preserved state	595
Höring, F. O. The action of urea on yellow fever virus	597
Lawkowlcz, W. Researches on <i>Bartonella muris</i> and its cultivation <i>in vitro</i>	601
Anigstein, Ludwik, and Lawkowlcz, W. Researches on strains of <i>Rickettsia</i> and <i>Proteus</i> cultivated from experimental typhus of the murine type	605
Lester, H. M. O. The results of sleeping sickness work in Northern Nigeria	615
Hoare, C. A., and Broom, J. C. Morphological and taxonomic studies on mammalian trypanosomes.	
VII. Differentiation of <i>Trypanosoma uniforme</i> and <i>T. vitax</i> in mixed infections	629
Broom, J. C. The maintenance of <i>Glossina morsitans</i> in England for experimental work	633
Foster, A. O., and Johnson, C. M. An explanation for the occurrence of <i>Capillaria hepatica</i> ova in human faeces suggested by the finding of three new hosts used as food	639
Fisk, Guy H. Helminthiasis in Lagos, Nigeria	645
Yokogawa, Sadamu. Studies on the mode of transmission of <i>Wuchereria bancrofti</i>	653

No. 6. Issued 6th April, 1939.

PAGE

ORDINARY MEETING, 16th February, 1939.

PAPER: Tuberculosis in the natives of tropical and sub-tropical regions. Charles Wilcocks 669

DISCUSSION: H. Harold Scott; Vincent S. Hodson; J. W. Lindsay;
C. C. B. Gilmour; J. E. H. Roberts; C. E. Bevan; P. Manson-
Bahr; C. Wilcocks (in reply) 684

COMMUNICATIONS:

Chung, Huei-Lan, and T'ung, Tsun. The non-specificity of the so-called specific biological tests for hydatid disease 697

Wolff, E. K. Buffer precipitation test (B.P.T.) for malaria 707

McKenzie, Alan. An examination of vitamin A deficiency among African natives by the visual dysadaptation test 717

Blair, D. M. Human trypanosomiasis in Southern Rhodesia, 1911-1938 729

Thomas, Rufus C., and Millen, Robinson M. A case of pregnancy complicated by blackwater fever and *Bacillus coli* pyelitis... .. 743

Sinton, J. A., Hutton, E. L., and Shute, P. G. Studies of infections with *Plasmodium ovale*. I. Natural resistance to *ovale* infections 751

James, S. P. The incidence of exo-erythrocytic schizogony in *Plasmodium gallinaceum* in relation to the mode of infection ... 763

ANNOUNCEMENTS:

Chalmers Medal 770

Corrigenda 770

INDEX TO AUTHORS

- Adams, A. R. D., 3.
 Adler, Saul, 4.
 ——— and Rivkah Ashbel, 4.
 Andrewes, C. H., 570.
 Anigstein, Ludwig and W. Lawkowiec,
 605, 770.
 Arnold, L. E. with K. Leigh Evans, 355.
 Ashbel, Rivkah with S. Adler, 4.
 Bedson, S. P., 566.
 Bevan, C. E., 693.
 Blair, D. M., 229, 729.
 Borovsky, P. F., 78.
 Boyd, J. S. K., 3, 47.
 Brett, G. A., 113.
 Bromfield, R. J. with N. Hamilton Fairley,
 431.
 ——— Henry Foy and Athena
 Kondi, 132.
 Broom, J. C., 633.
 ——— and H. C. Brown, 545.
 ——— with H. C. Brown, 209.
 ——— with C. A. Hoare, 629.
 Brown, H. C. and J. C. Broom, 209.
 ——— with J. C. Broom, 545.
 Cawston, F. Gordon, 553, Index p. vii.
 Chesterman, C. C., 6.
 Chung, Huei-Lan and Tsun T'ung, 697.
 Cooke, W. E., 427.
 Corkill, N. L., 519.
 Corson, J. F., 343.
 Dennis, E. W. with H. A. Yenikomshian,
 189.
 Drew, C. B. with R. Kirk, 265.
 Duncan, J. T., P. H. Martin and F.
 Murgatroyd, 427.
 ——— and F. Murgatroyd, 6.
 Earle, K. Vigors, 363.
 Evans, K. Leigh and L. E. Arnold, 355.
 Evans, R. R., 549.
 Fairley, N. Hamilton, 180, 430.
 ——— and R. J. Bromfield, 431.
 ——— R. J. Bromfield, Henry Foy and
 Athena Kondi, 132.
 ——— and A. H. McIndoe, 434.
 ——— and F. Murgatroyd, 434.
 Felix, A., 7.
 Field, J. W. and H. Le Fleming, 467.
 Findlay, G. W. M., 41, 323, 568.
 ——— F. O. MacCallum and F. Murga-
 troyd, 575.
 ——— R. D. Mackenzie and F. O.
 MacCallum, 7, 183.
 Fisk, Guy H., 645.
 Foster, A. O. and C. M. Johnson, 639.
 Foy, Henry with N. Hamilton Fairley,
 R. J. Bromfield and Athena Kondi,
 132.
 ——— and Athena Kondi, 49, 347.
 Fraser, G., 178.
 Garnham, P. C. C., 13, 47.
 Gill, C. A., 456.
 Gilmour, C. C. B., 692.
 Gopsill, W. L., 551.
 Gordon, R. M., 44, 448.
 Green-Armytage, V. B., 38.
 Hackett, Cecil J., 429.
 Henrard, C. with L. Van Hoof and E. Peel,
 197.
 Hoare, C. A., 8, 67, 296, 333.
 ——— and J. C. Broom, 629.
 Hodson, Vincent, 462, 687.
 Holland, E. A., 293, 295.
 Hüring, F. O., 597.
 Hutton, E. L. with J. A. Sinton and P. G.
 Shute, 419, 751.
 Hygiene Department, R.A.M. College, 1.
 James, Clifford S., 426.
 James, S. P., 130, 429, 447, 763.
 Johnson, C. M. with A. O. Foster, 639.
 Kennedy, Walter P., 511.
 Kirk, R., 271, 533.
 ——— and C. B. Drew, 265.
 Kligler, I. J. and Sonia Levine, 93.
 Knott, James, 243.
 ——— with F. W. O'Connor, 125.
 Kondi, Athena with N. Hamilton Fairley,
 R. J. Bromfield and Henry Foy, 132.
 ——— with Henry Foy, 49, 347.

- Lane, Clayton, 10.
 Lawkowicz, W., 601.
 ——— with Ludwig Anigstein, 605, 770.
 Le Fleming, H. with J. W. Field, 467.
 Lester, H. M. O., 615.
 Levine, Sonia with I. J. Kligler, 93.
 Lindsay, J. W., 689.
 Lourie, E. M., 41, 458.

 MacCallum, F. O. with G. W. M. Findlay and R. D. Mackenzie, 7, 183.
 ——— and F. Murgatroyd, 575.
 MacHattie, C., 273.
 McIndoe, A. H. with N. Hamilton Fairley, 434.
 McKenzie, Alan, 717.
 Mackenzie, R. D. with G. W. M. Findlay and F. O. MacCallum, 7, 183.
 Mackie, F. P., 326.
 McRobert, G. R., 177.
 Mainzer, Fritz, 253.
 Manson-Bahr, P., 44, 223, 429, 695.
 ——— and O. N. Ransford, 395.
 Marsh, Frank, 371.
 Martin, P. H. with J. T. Duncan and F. Murgatroyd, 427.
 Measham, J. E., 423.
 Megaw, John, 325.
 Menon, T. Bhaskara, 481.
 Millen, Robinson M., with Rufus C. Thomas, 743.
 Morgan, M. T., 325.
 Mulligan, H. W., 35.
 Murgatroyd, F., 45.
 ——— with J. T. Duncan, 6.
 ——— and P. H. Martin, 427.
 ——— with N. Hamilton Fairley, 434.
 ——— with G. W. M. Findlay, and F. O. MacCallum, 575.

 Napier, L. E., 176.
 Niven, J. C., 413.

 O'Connor, F. W. and James Knott, 125.

 Paterson, A. R., 11.
 Peel, E. with L. van Hoof and C. Henrard, 197.
 Poynton, J. Orde, 555.

 R.A.M. College, Hygiene Department, Ransford, O. N. with P. Manson-Bahr, 395.
 Regis de Oliveira, R. (Brazilian Ambassador), 323.
 Roberts, J. E. H., 693.
 Rogers, Leonard, 130.
 Row, R., 497.
 Russell, Beatrice, A. S., 237.

 Schüffner, W., 587.
 ——— E. P. Snijders and B. Walch-Sorgdrager, 595.
 Scott, H. Harold, 684.
 Shortt, H. E., 326, 571.
 Shute, P. G. with J. A. Sinton and E. Hutton, 419, 751.
 Sinton, J. A., 11, 39, 453.
 ——— E. L. Hutton and P. G. Shute, 419, 751.
 Smith, Kenneth M., 557, 572.
 Snijders, E. P., with W. Schüffner and B. Walch-Sorgdrager, 595.
 Soper, Fred L., 297, 327, 770.
 Speight, A., 505.
 Strickland, C., 277.

 Thomas, Rufus C. and Robinson M. Millen, 743.
 T'ung, Tsun with Huei-Lan Chung, 69.

 Uttley, K. H., 99, 287, 405.

 Van Hoof, L., C. Henrard and E. Peel, 197.
 Vaughan, Janet, 176.

 Walch-Sorgdrager, B. with W. Schüffner and E. P. Snijders, 595.
 Watson, G. I., 107.
 Watson, Malcolm, 326, 460.
 Wenyon, C. M., 43, 46.
 Wilcocks, Charles, 669, 695.
 Williamson, K. B., 571.
 Wills, Lucy, 173, 180.
 Wilson, D. Bagster, 435, 463.
 Wolff, E. K., 707.

 Yenikomshian, H. A. and E. W. Dennison, 189.
 Yokogawa, Sadamu, 653.

INDEX TO SUBJECTS

- ee poisoning, 355.
inomyces maduræ in tissues of foot, 427.
es aegypti and yellow fever, 297.
 attracted by certain colours, 113.
 and *Anopheles*, artefacts from stomachs of, 429.
 travel and yellow fever, 310, 332.
 chol in experimental heatstroke, 386.
 aptonuria and alkaptonuric spine, 401.
 oebiasis complicating case of degeneration of cord, 430.
 oebic dysentery—sigmoidoscopy in, 430.
 invasion of skin, 223.
 emia and infectious jaundice in Lebanon, 189.
 hypochromic haemolytic, in chronic malaria, 430.
 nutritional macrocytic, 132.
 nouncements, 296, 770.
 nual General Meeting, 129.
 ophelism in immune areas, 436, 451.
 ny—clarification of water in the field, 2.
 new uniform and equipment, 1.
 propaganda—malaria prevention, 3.
 artefacts from stomachs of *Aedes* and *Anopheles*, 429.
 thma, bilharzial, 253.
 ebrin and blackwater fever, 353.
 gametocytes of *P. falciparum*, 11.
 hlete, cysticercosis in an, 549.
 edit Committee, 129.
ecillus coli pyelitis and blackwater fever complicating pregnancy, 743.
urtonella muris, researches on, 601.
 yer 205 resistance in *T. gambiense*, 197.
 ngal and Holland, reclamation and malaria in, 277.
 lharzial asthma, 253.
 rthrate and malaria, 463.
 ackwater fever during pregnancy, 743.
 in Macedonia, 132.
 pigments in serum and urine in, 49.
 P. ovale in case of [title only], 431.
 Price Jones curves in, 145.
 Pseudo-methaemoglobin [methaemalbumin] in, 431.
 relation of quinine, atabrin and plasmoquine to, 347.
 spleen puncture findings in, 347.
ighia sapida (ackee) poisoning, 355.
 Borovsky, Peter, (1863-1932) memoir and work on oriental sore, 67.
 Buffer Precipitation test (B.P.T.) for malaria, 707.
 Burlap bandage treatment of elephantiasis, 246.
 Calabar swellings, eosinophilia in case of, 3.
Capillaria hepatica ova in human faeces, 639.
 Carcinoma of colon primarily diagnosed as Sonne dysentery, 430.
 Carotinaemia, 396.
 Catarrhal jaundice, 189.
 Caterpillar of *Galleria mellonella* experimentally infected with trypanosomes, 8.
 Cerebrospinal fever in Hongkong, 287.
 Certuna, experiments in malaria prophylaxis, 419.
 Chalmers Medal 1939 Award, 770.
 Chaulmoogra—resistance of leprosy bacilli to, 4.
 Children, malaria in, 237, 437.
 Cholera and Mecca pilgrimages, 107.
 Chylous filarial lymphatic varix, 125.
 Climatic bubo see lymphogranuloma inguinale.
 Clinical and Laboratory Meeting, 427.
 Cod liver oil dressings for tropical ulcer, 519.
 Colours attractive to *Aedes aegypti*, 113.
 Congenital malaria, 32, 38, 44, 423, 448.
 Correspondence—Phagaedenic ulcers, 426.
 Corrigenda, 296, 426, 770. Index, p. vii.
 Cysticercosis, biological tests in, 699.
 in an athlete, 549.
 Dermal leishmaniasis in the Sudan, 265.
 Derris root poisoning, 293.
 Diphtheria in Hongkong, 405.
 Dog in Baghdad, toxoplasmosis of, 273.
 Dysentery, case of carcinoma primarily diagnosed as, 430.
 Echinococcosis—biological tests in, 698.
 Electric charge of trypanosomes in rats, 547.
 tsetse flies, 545.
 Elephantiasis treated by bandaging, 243.
Entamoeba from goat, 8.
 histolytica in skin, 223.
 Eosinophilia in case of Calabar swelling, 3.

- Enteric fever in Hongkong, 99.
Epileptiform attacks and onchocerciasis, 552.
 in case of cysticercosis, 549.
Erythrocyte sedimentation test in leprosy, 505.
Filaria bancrofti see *Wuchereria bancrofti*.
 two cases, 430.
Filarial elephantiasis treated by bandaging, 243.
 periodicity, F. W. O'Connor's salient achievement in the cause of, 10.
Filariasis, in Formosa, 653.
Fungal cast (*Fusarium* sp.) of the stomach—vomited, 6.
Gall stones, pigment complicating malaria, 430.
Gerbils—a new *Grahamia* (= *Grahamella*) from, 9.
Glossina morsitans, electric charge of trypanosomes in, 545.
 maintenance in England, 633.
Goat, *Entamoeba* from, 8.
Grahamia bennetti sp.n., 9.
 (= *Grahamella*) from gerbils, 9.
Haematemeses—successful ligation of coronary veins of stomach for [title only], 434.
Haemochromatosis, 400.
Haemolytic macrocytic anaemia, 154.
Hamster, infections with kala-azar, 4.
 leprosy, 4.
Health progress in Kenya, 11.
Heatstroke, experiments in Iran, 371.
Helminths, intestinal, in Lagos, 645.
Hepatitis following yellow fever immunization, 580.
 infective, 575.
Hippomane mancinella poisoning, 363.
Holland and Bengal, reclamation and malaria in, 277.
Hydatid disease, biological tests for, 697.
 of liver, 430.
Hyperendemic malaria, 435, 456.
Immunity in malaria, 13, 35, 435, 453, 458.
 sleeping sickness, 740.
Immunization against tetanus, 3.
 with formalized tissue cultures of typhus rickettsia, 93.
Infants and malaria, 237, 437, 449, 455.
Infective hepatitis, aetiology of, 575.
Insects and plant viruses, 560.
Jaundice, epidemic catarrhal, 575.
 epidemic in Lebanon, 189.
Jungle yellow fever, 301.
Kala-azar, experimental infections of hamster with, 4.
 followed by dermal leishmaniasis, 265.
 in Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, 533.
 primary cutaneous sore in, 271.
Kenya, health progress in, 11.
Kinetoplast as aid to diagnosis of pathogenic trypanosomes, 10.
 in mammalian trypanosomes, 333.
Laboratory Meeting, 1.
 Clinical and, 427.
Leishmaniasis, Borovsky's work on "Sart sore" (1894-98), 67.
 dermal in Sudan, 265.
 infection of hamster with *L. chagasi*, 4.
 in the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, 533.
 L. tropica and *L. donovani*, nomenclature of, 75.
 primary cutaneous sore in kala-azar, 271.
 transmission of oriental sore, Shulgin's work in 1902, 90.
Leprosy and tuberculosis, 689.
 case of nodular, 4.
 erythrocyte sedimentation test and prognosis in, 505.
 experimental infection of hamster, 4.
 experiments in rats, 497.
Liver abscess secondarily infected with *B. enteritidis* [title only], 429.
Lymphogranuloma inguinale, cultures of, 7.
 virus of, 183.
" Lymphoid macrophage system," 38.
Macedonia, malaria and blackwater fever in, 135.
Malaria, action of atebirin on *P. falciparum* gametocytes, 11.
 and blackwater fever, 347.
 tropical ulcer, 526.
 buffer precipitation test for, 707.
 complications, 430.
 congenital, 32, 38, 44, 423, 448.
 control by flushing, 461.
 endemicity in East Africa, 435, 463.
 in African children, 237.
 Holland and Bengal, 277.
 parasite counting, 447.
 parasites, development of, 39, 43, 45, 48.

Malaria—continued.

Parasites, morphology in thick blood films, 467.
species in East Africa, 444, 452.

Placenta in, 13.

Plasmodium ovale infections, 229.
resistance to, 751.

prevention, propaganda, 3.

prophylaxis, experiments with certuna, 419.

relapses following splenectomy, 37.

reticulo-endothelial immunity in, 13.

simian, visceral lesions in, 481.

staining thick films, 477.

therapy in case of meningo-vascular lues, 430.

treated by sulphanilamide, 413.

Manchineel poisoning, 363.

Manson Medal—presentation to Sir Leonard Rogers, 130.

Marmite in treatment of anaemia, 177.

Mecca pilgrimages—quarantine problems in, 107.

Meetings of the Society—

1938—

March 17th, Laboratory Meeting, 1.

May 19th, Ordinary Meeting, 13.

June 30th, Annual General Meeting and Ordinary Meeting, 129.

October 20th, Opening Meeting of Session, 297.

November 17th, Clinical and Laboratory Meeting, 427.

December 8th, Ordinary Meeting, 435.

1939—

January 19th, Ordinary Meeting, 557.

February 16th, Ordinary Meeting, 669.

Methaemalbumin, 432.

Microfilaria malayi and the Kra monkey (*Macaca irus*), 555.

Monkey and yellow fever, 324.

infected with *Capillaria hepatica*, 639.
malaria, visceral lesions in, 481.

two microfilariae in, 555.

Mosquito, *A. aegypti* and yellow fever, 297.

anophelines of Bengal, 285.

artefacts from stomachs of *Aedes* and *Anopheles*, 429.

attractiveness of certain colours to *A. aegypti*, 113.

control, 308, 326, 436.

W. bancrofti infection rate in, 662.

Mouse protection test, in yellow fever, 301, 329.

Murine bartonellosis, 601.

typhus, 605.

Mycetoma pedis, 427.

Neutral red and trypan blue, experiments in R.E. system, 28.

Nicotinic acid treatment in pellagra, 430.

Nutritional macrocytic anaemia, 132, 177, 181.

O'Connor, F. W.—his work on filarial periodicity, 10.

Onchocerciasis in Nyasaland, 551.

Oriental sore, dermal leishmaniasis in Sudan resembling, 265, 269.

K. Shulgin's work on, 90.

Osteitis deformans alkaptonurica, 402.

of tibia in case of typhoid, 434.

Pecceary infected with *Capillaria hepatica* 639.

Pellagra supervening in case of sprue, 430.

Phagaedenic ulcers (correspondence), 426.

Pigments in serum and urine in blackwater fever, 49.

Placenta in malaria, 13, 41, 43.

Plant, poisoning—

ackee, 355.

derris root, 293.

manchineel, 363.

some vegetables of New Guinea, 295.

viruses, 577.

Plasmodium falciparum gametocytes, action of atebirin on, 11.

varying morphology in immune and non-immune, 444.

gallinaceum, exo-erythrocytic schizogony in, 763.

knowlesi infections, visceral lesions in, 481.

ovale, geographical distribution, 760.

in fatal case of blackwater [title only], 431.

infections, 229.

resistance to, 751.

Plasmodium species—in East Africa, 444.

vivax, morphology in thick blood films, 467.

Plasmoquine and blackwater fever, 347.

Poisonous plants, ackee, 355.

derris root, 293.

manchineel, 363.

some vegetables of New Guinea, 295.

Pregnancy complicated by blackwater fever and *B. coli* pyelitis, 743.

nutritional macrocytic anaemia in, 139, 176.

- Price Jones curves in malaria, blackwater fever, etc., 145.
- Protistologica, miscellanea, 8.
- Pseudo-methaemoglobin, [methaemalbumin], 431.
in blackwater fever, 49.
- "Puzzling pyrexias" [title only], 430.
- Quarantine and the Mecca pilgrimage, 107.
- Quinine and blackwater fever, 347.
in routine treatment of children, 240.
- Rat leprosy, 497.
- Rats, electric charge of trypanosomes in, 547.
- Red cell adhesion test in trypanosomiasis, 209.
- Reticulo-endothelial system—experiments with trypan blue and neutral red, etc., 17, 28, 41.
reaction in malarial placentas, 13.
- Rhinoceros, *Triplumaria hamertoni* in, 9.
- Rickettsia* and *Proteus* cultivated from experimental murine typhus, 605.
sulphanilamide and, 567.
relationship to *Bartonella*, 603.
vaccination experiments, 93, 611.
- Rockefeller Foundation and yellow fever, 298, 326.
- Royal Army Medical College, Hygiene Department, Demonstration, 1.
- Rural yellow fever, 300.
- Sandflies and leishmaniasis in the Sudan, 541.
- "Sart Sore" (oriental sore), Borovsky's work (1894-98) on, 67.
- Schistosoma* infection, bronchial asthma, in, 253.
intercalatum, 6.
ova, variation in shape of, 553.
- Shulgin (1902): on oriental sore, 90.
- Sigmoidoscopy in amoebic dysentery, etc., 430.
- Skin invasion by *E. histolytica*, 223.
pigmentations, carotinaemia, etc., 395.
- Sleeping sickness, carrier cases, 735.
in Northern Nigeria, 615.
Southern Rhodesia, 729.
- Spectrograms of pigments in blackwater fever, 49.
- Spleen puncture findings in blackwater fever, 347.
- Splenectomy, malaria relapses following, 37.
- Splenic reaction in monkey malaria, 481.
- Splenomegaly following chronic malaria, 430.
in nutritional macrocytic anaemia, 152.
- Sprue, pellagra supervening in case of, 430.
sternal marrow smears in tropical, 430.
- Staining thick blood films, 477.
- Sullage water, clarification, 2.
- Sulphanilamide and rickettsia, 567.
in treatment of malaria, 413.
- Taeniasis, biological tests in intestinal, 702.
- Tests—
Buffer precipitation test, 707.
Cellular reaction test, 18.
Congo red test, 18.
Erythrocyte sedimentation test, 505.
Mouse protection test, 301, 329.
Red cell adhesion test, 209.
Tuberculin test, 676.
Van den Bergh test, 18.
Visual dysadaptation test, 717.
- Tetanus, immunization against, 3.
- Tobacco viruses, 558.
- Toxoplasmosis of the dog in Baghdad, 273.
- Trichostrongylus colubriformis* ova, 427.
- Triplumaria hamertoni* in rhinoceros, 9.
- Tropical macrocytic anaemia, nomenclature, 138, 177, 181.
ulcer, 519.
- Trypan blue and neutral red, experiments in R.E. system, 17, 28, 41.
- Trypanosoma evansi*, strains of, 10.
gambiense, resistance to Bayer 205, 197.
rhodesiense pathogenic for white rats, 343.
uniforme and *T. vivax* in mixed infections, 629.
- Trypanosomes, caterpillar infected with mammalian, 8.
in tsetse flies, electric charge of, 545.
kinetoplast as aid to diagnosis of pathogenic, 10.
morphological and taxonomic studies on mammalian, 333.
- Trypanosomiasis, see also sleeping sickness.
red cell adhesion test in, 209.
- Tsetse fly see also *Glossina*.
distribution in Southern Rhodesia, 729.
electric charge of trypanosomes in, 545.
maintenance of *G. morsitans* in England, 633.
- Tuberculin test, 676, 685.
- Tuberculosis and leprosy, 689.
bovine, 679, 692.
in tropical and sub-tropical regions, 669, 684.
- Typhoid carriers, serum diagnosis of, 7.
fever in Hongkong, 99.
osteitis of tibia in, 434.

- Typhus—
 murine, 605.
 sulphanilamide and rickettsia, 567.
 vaccination experiments, 93, 611.
- Ulcer, tropical, 519.
- Ulceration of skin, amoebic, 223.
- Uniform and equipment, new (R.A.M. College demonstration), 1.
- Urea—its action on yellow fever virus, 597.
- Vaccination against typhus, 93, 611.
 yellow fever, 308, 324.
- Vi-agglutination for spotting typhoid carriers, 7.
- Viruses, plant and animal compared, 557.
- Viscerotomy and yellow fever control, 300, 307, 327.
- Visual dysadaptation test for Vitamin A deficiency, 717.
- Vitamin deficiency and tropical ulcer, 519.
- Water and enteric in Hongkong, 99.
 clarification in the field, 2.
 relation of planctons to *W. bancrofti*, 662.
- Wuchereria bancrofti* in cases of chylous lymphatic varix, 127.
 mode of transmission, 653.
 periodicity, 10.
- X-ray apparatus for field use in tuberculosis work, 672.
- Yaws, lesions in mouth, 429.
- Yellow fever immunization followed by hepatitis, 580.
 present situation (October, 1938), special reference to South America, 297.
 remarks on Dr. Soper's paper, 587.
 Rockefeller Foundation and, 298, 326.
 urban, rural and jungle, 297.
 vaccination, 308, 324.
 virus, action of urea on, 597.
 effect of continued subinoculation, 595.

CORRIGENDA.

- Vol. 32, No. 4, Jan., 1939, p. 553.
 F. G. CAWSTON. Shape of schistosome ova.
 Line 9, for "40 to 95 mm." read "0.04 to 0.095 mm."
 Lines 14 and 15, for "0.46 to 0.50 mm." read "0.046 to 0.05 mm."
 Line 24, for " μ " read "mm."

TRANSACTIONS
OF THE
ROYAL SOCIETY OF TROPICAL MEDICINE
AND HYGIENE.

VOL. XXXII. No. 1. JUNE, 1938.

LABORATORY MEETING

of the Society held at

The Royal Army Medical College, Millbank, London
on

Thursday, 17th March, 1938, at 8.15 p.m.

THE PRESIDENT

Lt.-Col. S. P. JAMES, M.D., F.R.S., I.M.S. (retd.)
in the Chair.

DEMONSTRATIONS.

The Royal Army Medical College, Hygiene Department.

I. New uniform and equipment.

A demonstration of important points in regard to the clothing and equipment of the soldier was given and a model illustrating the proposed new uniform and equipment for the fighting soldier was shown.

It was stressed by means of diagrams, charts, etc., that the soldier's uniform and equipment must fulfil a number of essential conditions if maximum efficiency is to be obtained, and the importance of reduction of its weight to some 45 to 50 lb. for the average soldier was particularly emphasized.

A historical diagram indicating the weight carried through the ages by the soldier, and its tendency during the Great War to soar to inordinate heights, added point to the argument.

The proposed new uniform and equipment for the fighting soldier was shown to be of a "ski-ing kit" type with a loose upper blouse fastened into the waist over the upper part of the trousers which are wide and roomy above but taper towards the ankles. Both blouse and trousers are of the same

material—a coarse cotton product approximating to thin canvas and known as “Denim.”

Canvas gaiters are worn over the lower part of the leg and overlap the boots.

The blouse is loose enough to allow of the wearing underneath it of a cardigan or sweater in addition to the shirt and vest. For head protection the existing pattern of steel helmet is worn.

As regards equipment, apart from rifle and bayonet this is simple in nature and of webbing and allows of the carriage of a haversack on the back and receptacles for ammunition.

The haversack contains all immediate essentials including the water bottle, waterproof cape, emergency ration and other necessities.

The respirator is worn in addition to the above.

II. The clarification of sullage and ablution water.

A working model was demonstrated showing a method of application of precipitation—by ferrous sulphate and lime—to the clarification of sullage water in the field, prior to its disposal into soak pits, stream, or by other methods.

This method is extremely simple in application and involves merely the addition of ferrous sulphate in an amount ascertained in the first instance by trial but which remains practically constant for any given sullage water, and then the gradual addition and stirring in of milk of lime until a profuse greenish floc is seen to form. If after this the sullage is allowed to stand for 4 hours, suspended impurities sink to the bottom into a thin compact layer, and a practically clear supernatant liquid is left above, which may be syphoned off and easily dealt with by soakage or other means.

This effluent has a biological oxygen demand of some three to eight parts per 100,000 which by cascading can be materially and quickly reduced if necessary. The suspended solids are less than one part per 100,000.

The provision of duplicate tanks, one filling and the other full and sedimenting and *vice versa*, is necessary.

Disposal of the sludge presents but little difficulty as it loses bulk quickly, is quite inoffensive and ultimately dries to a yellowish powder.

A model illustrating a continuous flow modification of the method was also shown with an automatic tipper in which the weight of the sullage water flowing into a receiving pan over a tank depressed the pan at intervals, with resultant emptying of the contents into the tank and at the same time the ejection of ferrous sulphate and lime solutions from two small receptacles also into the tank.

By this means automatic mixing of the chemicals and the sullage water was ensured.

With the model first referred to, this mixing required to be carried out by hand.

III. Propaganda.

Propaganda in regard to hygiene, tropical or otherwise, is of great importance to the Army and a demonstration was given of lantern slides on Malaria and its Prevention which illustrated the essential features in an instructive and amusing way and in such a manner as to impress these points on the men as adequately as possible.

IV. Military Hygiene Museum.

The Military Hygiene Museum with its various sections was open to visitors throughout the evening.

Royal Army Medical College, Department of Pathology.

Major J. S. K. Boyd.

Some preliminary experiments in the active immunization of man against tetanus.

Tables were exhibited which showed that (1) the response to inoculation with tetanus toxoid-antitoxin floccules was unsatisfactory, yet subjects treated in this way reacted very well to a single dose of tetanus toxoid given 9 months later; (2) subjects inoculated with two doses of tetanus toxoid, given with a long interval between (6 to 7 weeks) developed an antitoxin titre comparable to that given by the three-dose system in vogue in France and elsewhere.

Dr. A. R. D. Adams.

I. Remarkable degree of eosinophilia from a case of Calabar swelling.

The films were from an apparently healthy male European of 40 years of age, who had been in West Africa for 10 years. During the last 5 years he had had Calabar swellings. The last swelling was some 3 weeks before the slides were made.

At this time the blood picture was as follows:—

Red cells : 5,140,000 per c.mm.

Haemoglobin : 83 per cent.

Colour index : 0.81 per cent.

Size (halometer) : 7.17 microns.

Reticulocytes : 0.3 per cent.

White cells : 105,000—Polymorphs, 8.6 per cent. (9,030).

Lymphocytes, 5.6 per cent. (5,880).

Monocytes, 1.0 per cent. (1,050).

Eosinophils, 84.0 per cent. (88,200).

Basophils, 0.6 per cent. (630).

Platelets : 381,000 per c.mm.

The eosinophils appeared all to be of mature or segmented type; no other primitive forms of white cells were to be seen. The red cells were normal, and there were no primitive forms. The thrombocyte count was slightly above the average.

One month later a further count was done; during the interim period the patient had had two Calabar swellings. The second count yielded the

following figures for the white cells, and the other cells were not significantly altered in number :—

White cells : 15,900—Polymorphs, 24·6 per cent.
 Lymphocytes, 24·0 per cent.
 Monocytes, 0·6 per cent.
 Basophils, 0·3 per cent.
 Eosinophils, 50·3 per cent.

II. Skin smears from a case of nodular leprosy.

The patient, a Greek seaman, aged 35, landed in this country with a 12 months' history of " skin trouble." He had an early leonine type of countenance, some cutaneous nodules on the forehead and one ear, and numerous nodules on the extensor aspects of the forearms and hands. In addition there was alteration in sensation over the affected areas, and some thickening of the ulnar nerves.

Shavings were made from certain of the nodules, and the skin so obtained was rubbed on slides and stained for acid-fast organisms—of which enormous numbers could be seen.

Professor S. Adler.

Smear of spleen of Syrian hamster showing the parasite (the so-called *Leishmania chagasi*) of South American kala-azar.

This parasite has been said to differ from *L. donovani* in certain serological reactions and in its failure to infect animals. With the technique available at present, little reliance can be placed on serological reactions as a means of distinguishing species of leishmania, while the smear shown indicates that the Syrian hamster, at least, is susceptible to infection which in this case was produced by injection of cultures received from South America.

Parasites were found in the spleen and liver 11 days after inoculation of a rich culture.

Professor S. Adler and Rivkah Ashbel.

Experimental human leprosy in the hamster. Resistance of leprosy bacilli to drying and to chaulmoogra.

This demonstration dealt with the successful inoculation of human leprosy into the Syrian hamster as a result of experiments suggested by Sir PATRICK LAIDLAW, who had been impressed with BALFOUR-JONES' success in infecting this animal with rat leprosy.

1. Section of a fragment of a leprous mass, infiltrated with lepra bacilli, which was present in the left groin of a hamster about 6 weeks after it had been inoculated on 23.7.37 by the implantation into the muscles of the thigh of a piece of human leprotic nodule.

2. Smear of the same mass showing numerous lepra bacilli.

3. Smear of material removed from the tunica of the same animal on 4.10.37, showing mast cells and various types of leucocytes, some of the latter

containing a few lepra bacilli. On 14.11.37, the left testicle was removed but no lepra bacilli were found in it.

4. Smears from the gums of a hamster showing a few acid-fast bacilli. This animal had a small wound on the lower lip which resulted in the development of lepra bacilli in the wounded mucosa. After inoculation the lepra bacilli are not detected in the skin or mucosa in the absence of trauma.

5. Smear showing lepra bacilli in skin of an operation wound about 1 inch from site of inoculation 6 weeks previously into abdominal wall of a piece of human leprotic nodule. At the time of the operation, a week before the positive smear was made, no lepra bacilli were found in the skin of the wound. The trauma of the operation led to development of bacilli in the skin.

6. Smear showing lepra bacilli in abdominal wall at site of wound about a month after the animal had been inoculated intraperitoneally with emulsion of liver of another hamster which had been infected directly from man. Here again the influence of trauma as in 4 and 5 are seen.

7. Section of nodule showing many lepra bacilli: the nodule had developed in the abdominal wall in the track of the inoculation performed 6 weeks before. The majority of the bacilli are intracellular; globi were present.

8. Smear from the same site as the nodule in 7 made 96 days later showing lepra bacilli.

9. Smear showing lepra bacilli in a nodule in abdominal wall of a hamster inoculated with human material 51 days before. The human nodule had been injected by Dr. T. CANAAN with purified esters of hydnocarpus on three occasions at intervals of a week, the last occasion being 15 minutes before the nodule was excised. About 3 hours after excision, a fragment of the nodule was embedded in the abdominal wall of a hamster which subsequently developed the nodule referred to above.

10. Smear from the excised human nodule mentioned in 9. The bacilli are much less numerous than in the hamster nodule which followed inoculation of the human material.

11. Section of nodule showing lepra bacilli to illustrate resistance of bacilli to desiccation. The core of a nodule from a human case of leprosy was pounded in a mortar, and a strip as thin as paper was removed and placed in a desiccator over sulphuric acid. Eleven days later a small piece of this desiccated material was implanted into the abdominal wall of a hamster. About 2 months later two small white nodules were found almost in juxtaposition with the implanted dry material. One of these was removed, and on sectioning was found to contain numerous lepra bacilli as shown in the section.

Another fragment embedded in another hamster after 7 days' desiccation gave the following result: a white nodule had developed after 15 days. It was punctured and yielded mast cells and leucocytes but no lepra bacilli. Five days later a further puncture yielded cells as before and a very few lepra bacilli. A fortnight later a third puncture yielded numerous lepra bacilli.

A similar result was obtained with material which had been subjected to 30 days' desiccation.

Dr. C. C. Chesterman.

Schistosoma intercalatum.

Specimens of adult male and female worms from experimentally infected mice.

This human schistosome described by FISHER* is commonly found in natives of the Belgian Congo (Stanleyville region). Infection is intestinal, and never vesical. The ova are intermediate in size and shape between those of *S. haematobium* and *S. bovis*.

Dr. J. T. Duncan and Dr. F. Murgatroyd.

A fungal cast of the stomach—vomited.

A cast of the gastric mucosa, composed of a fungus of the genus *fusarium* in almost pure culture, was vomited by a patient a few days after admission to the Hospital for Tropical Diseases, London. Some weeks previously, while sailing on the East Coast of Africa, he had had an attack of vomiting and epigastric pain and a diagnosis had been made of peptic ulcer "due to filaria in the gastric wall."

The cast was about $\frac{1}{4}$ inch thick, 7 inches long and $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches wide. It was composed almost entirely of the mycelium of a species of *fusarium*, the characteristic falcate, pluriseptate macroconidia of which were present, attached to the sides of hyphae or detached. In the more superficial parts were small colonies of *Oidium lactis* and a species of *cryptococcus*.

An interesting characteristic of this species of *fusarium* was its inability to vegetate freely at 37° C. as a saprophyte on culture media: a very feeble growth of short duration was obtained on two media at a reaction of pH 5.6, but not on other, less acid, media. At 35° C. growth was greatly retarded, and at the end of 7 days was restricted to small, white, velvety, not effused, discrete, not pigmented colonies, a few millimeters in diameter. At 30° C. to 32° C. growth was luxuriant, but not much effused, and the mycelium showed the greatest amount of blue-violet to reddish-violet pigmentation. The optimum temperature for mycelial growth was 22° C. to 24° C. Inability to vegetate freely as a saprophyte at 37° C. does not exclude the probability of adaptation to parasitic life at 37° C. The determination of the *fusarium* species has not yet been settled, but the examination up to the present time has shown this strain to agree in all essential characteristics with a *fusarium* cultivated from human sputum in Uganda by Dr. CARMICHAEL and sent to one of us (J.T.D.) 5 years ago. It is intended to publish fuller details at a later date.

*FISHER, A. C. (1934). *Trans. Roy. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 28 (3) 277-306.

Fusaria have frequently been described in parasitic or saprophytic association with vegetable material and have been found in skin lesions of animals and man in addition to the specimen just mentioned recovered from the sputum. It has not been shown, however, that these fungi play a definitely pathogenic role in man. For example in the case now recorded the fungus was closely applied to the stomach wall, as shown by the perfect reproduction of the gastric mucosal rugae, but there was apparently no actual invasion. The absence of blood on the under-surface of the cast, the absence of blood in the gastric juice or of any occult blood in the faeces, and the absence of any gross disturbance of gastric function as revealed by fractional test meal and X-ray examination, all make this conclusion inevitable. It is, therefore, surprising that the membrane did not become dislodged until it reached a considerable size. The diagnosis of "filaria in the gastric wall" was not without interest. Were mycelial threads in the vomit thought to be some form of nematode?

Dr. A. Felix.

Serum diagnosis of typhoid carriers.

Dr. Felix showed a number of tables illustrating the various types of agglutinins occurring in the serum from chronic typhoid carriers. The H and O agglutinins are of little if any use in the detection of chronic carriers, whereas the so-called Vi agglutination has been found to be of definite value in spotting the true suspects.

Dr. G. W. M. Findlay, Dr. R. D. Mackenzie and Dr. F. O. MacCallum.

1. The cultivation of the virus of lymphogranuloma inguinale in the chorio-allantoic membrane of the developing chick embryo.

Sections were shown to illustrate the appearance of the virus lesions. The lesions first appear immediately below the ectodermal layer and eventually occupy the greater part of the mesoderm. The cells comprising the lesions are large mononuclear cells, lymphocytes, plasmacytoid cells and a few polymorphonuclear leucocytes and giant cells. The structure of the fully developed lesions closely resembles that of other tissue reactions to the virus of lymphogranuloma inguinale seen in man and experimental animals.

Virus granules in small numbers are found in smears from the infected membrane and are infective for mice when inoculated intracerebrally. The infection has been transferred for a limited number of passages serially in eggs, thus confirming the results of Japanese workers.

2. Developmental forms of the virus of lymphogranuloma inguinale.

In addition to the small elementary bodies found in smears from the brains of infected mice and occurring either diffusely or in large colony-like masses, large forms of the virus are now described three to four times the size of the small elementary bodies. These large forms are seen in lesions during the first 48 hours after inoculation and in their tinctorial properties and irregularity of

shape resemble very closely the large forms of the psittacosis virus. Occasionally small clumps of the large forms are found alone; at other times the large forms occur mixed with the small forms either in chains or in small masses. Stained preparations and photomicrographs were shown to illustrate these different forms of the virus.

Dr. C. A. Hoare.

Miscellanea Protistologica.

I. An *Entamoeba* from the goat.

Up to the present only the following four cases of infection with *Entamoeba* have been recorded from the goat: (1) *E. caprae* Fantham, 1923 (a large form— $34 \times 25\mu$; cysts unknown); (2) *E. deblicieki* Nieschulz, 1923, Holland (small form, $\pm 6\mu$, with uninucleate cysts), and (3, 4) a *coli*-like form producing 8-nucleate cysts (6 to 9μ) first reported by WENYON (1926) and recently found in Switzerland by GALLI-VALERIO (1935) who named it *E. wenyoni*.*

Amoebae have not hitherto been reported from goats in this country. The present case was discovered at a farm in Hampshire. The material, consisting of the faeces of a goat, was received for diagnosis from Mr. G. N. GOULD, JR., M.R.C.V.S., and in it numerous uninucleate cysts of a small amoeba were found. These measure from 4.75μ to 13.30μ in diameter and are similar in almost every respect to the cysts of *E. deblicieki* which has been recorded from a goat in Holland on one occasion (NIESCHULZ, 1923), but which is more commonly encountered in the pig.

It is proposed to publish elsewhere a detailed illustrated description of this amoeba.

REFERENCES.

- FANTHAM, H. B. (1923). *South Afric. J. Sci.*, **6**, 493.
 GALLI-VALERIO, B. (1935). *Schweiz. Arch. Tierheilk.*, **77**, 643.
 NIESCHULZ, O. (1923). *Tijdschr. Diergeneesk.*, **50**, 780.
 WENYON, C. M. (1926). *Protozoology*, **1** (London).

II. Development of mammalian trypanosomes in the body-cavity of caterpillars.

The caterpillar of the bee-moth, *Galleria mellonella* (Lepidoptera Pyralidae) has been utilized for many years by METALNIKOV (1927) for the study of various immunological reactions which follow the injection into the body-cavity of different bacteria.

IVANOFF (1925) found that trypanosomes when inoculated into these caterpillars survived for several days and retained their infectivity for laboratory animals. Infected caterpillars have been used by him and by others as a convenient means for sending trypanosome strains to laboratories in different countries by railway and by air.

IVANOFF's experiments have been repeated by me with *Trypanosoma brucei*, *T. rhodesiense*, *T. evansi*, *T. congolense* and *T. cruzi*, but it was found that in only

*It was actually named *E. wenyoni*, but this is an obvious *lapsus calami*.

a small proportion of the caterpillars inoculated with *T. brucei* and *T. congolense* did the trypanosomes survive, while no survival occurred with *T. rhodesiense* and *T. evansi*. However, *T. cruzi* gave positive results in up to 100 per cent. of cases.

Though the experiments which I have carried out so far are not sufficiently numerous to warrant any conclusions as to the practical application of this method of preservation of trypanosome strains, they have served to throw light on the changes undergone by these parasites in the body-cavity of the caterpillar, regarding which no mention was made by IVANOFF, whose papers convey the impression that the blood forms of the trypanosomes remain unchanged.

In the present experiments it was observed that in the majority of cases the trypanosomes introduced into the caterpillar with the blood disappear in one or two days, being probably subjected to phagocytosis and lysis, as recorded in the experiments on certain bacteria by METALNIKOV. However, when the trypanosomes survive they multiply intensely and assume forms corresponding to the stages of development in their respective intermediate hosts and in artificial cultures. Thus, *T. brucei* and *T. congolense* are represented by forms indistinguishable from those found in the mid-gut of the tsetse-fly, while *T. cruzi* goes through the same life cycle as it does in bugs, with the production of metacyclic trypanosomes. Since the same type of development takes place in cultures of these trypanosomes, the caterpillar can be likened to a living test-tube, its body-fluid providing the culture medium. The temperature at which the caterpillars were kept (25° C.) is likewise similar to that at which the trypanosomes develop in their natural vectors and in cultures.

REFERENCES.

- IVANOFF, E. (1925). *C. R. Soc. biol.*, **92**, 345.
 ———. (1925). *Ibid.*, **93**, 571.
 ———. (1925). *C. R. Acad. Sci.*, **181**, 230.
 METALNIKOV, S. (1927). *L'infection microbienne et l'immunité chez la mite des abeilles, Galleria mellonella. Monograph. Inst. Pasteur* (Paris).

III. A new *Grahamia* (= *Grahamella*) from gerbils.

This "organism" has been found in the blood of a number of gerbils (*Gerbillus pygargus*) received from the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, and has not hitherto been reported from this host.

Though the exact nature of these red-cell inclusions, or protists, is still unknown and no criteria have been established for their differentiation, I propose—for the sake of registration—to name this new form *Grahamia** *bennetti* sp. n., in honour of Dr. S. C. J. BENNETT, of Khartoum, who supplied the material.

IV. An oligotrichous ciliate from the intestine of the Indian rhinoceros.

This parasite was found in the faeces of an Indian rhinoceros (*Rhinoceros unicornis*) in the Zoological Gardens, London.

**Grahamia* Tartakowsky, 1910, has priority over the name *Grahamella* Brumpt, 1911.

The ciliate, for which a new genus and species (*Triplumaria hamertoni* Hoare, 1937) were created, belongs to the Oligotrichous family Cycloposthiidae which is related to the Ophryoscolecidae commonly found in ruminants.

REFERENCE.

HOARE, C. A. (1937). *Parasitology*, 29, 559.

V. Strains of *Trypanosoma evansi* differing in the percentage of "akinetoplastic" forms.

VI. Size of kinetoplast as a diagnostic feature in the "pathogenic" trypanosomes.

Preparations were shown of three strains of *T. evansi* from Sudanese camels: (1) in which the kinetoplast is absent in practically 100 per cent. individuals, (2) in which it is absent in 50 per cent., and (3) a normal strain.

A demonstration was also given of blood-films of various mammalian trypanosomes to illustrate the difference in the dimensions of the kinetoplast and its value as an aid to the diagnosis of these parasites.

The subject of the last two demonstrations will be dealt with in detail in separate publications appearing in the next issue of the *TRANSACTIONS*.

Lieut.-Colonel Clayton Lane.

Professor F. W. O'Connor's salient achievement in the cause of filarial periodicity, and some factors which helped and hampered him.

There were shown microscope slides made by O'CONNOR illustrating some of those different stages of the filling and emptying of the thick-walled uteri of *Wuchereria bancrofti* which go with the belief that the rise of the microfilarial blood tide, when this infection shows periodicity, is caused by a filling up of these uteri through a simultaneously timed intrauterine development of the young worms and by their simultaneous expulsion into the lymph stream. As explaining the fall of the microfilarial blood tide, O'CONNOR's sections showed microfilariae disintegrating in liver or spleen or both in three of four cases he sectioned. This and other of his material will be described, and its implications emphasized, in a paper now in preparation.

To illustrate matters which helped and hampered him, there were shown photographs of his secluded farm, the building dating from early settlers' days, to whose peace he retired from New York when he could, and of the laboratory adjoining it built for him by a friend who owed much to O'CONNOR as an inspiring family physician. Round the walls of the laboratory were, it was seen, photographs of friends whose work had contributed to advance in tropical medicine, with a painted portrait of Sir PATRICK MANSON in the central place. Another illustration of things helpful was a photograph of himself taken in 1935 when he had the happiness and encouragement of being selected as President of the Tropical Medicine Section of the Pan-American Association's meeting in Rio in that year.

Things which hampered him were shown in photographs of his viscera presented by Professor WILLIAM C. VON GLAHN, M.D. In the liver were seen

of quiescent abscess cavities dating from the time when he got amoebic dysentery during his investigation of the epidemic of that infection in Chicago in 1933; he had then used himself as a too-valuable experimental animal, qualifying words with which the anti-vivisection enthusiasts will emphatically disagree. The heart was stenosed mitral and aortic orifices, the result of largely quiescent rheumatic endocarditis. Such were some of the handicaps under which his courageous spirit worked enthusiastically till within a few days of his death.

Dr. A. R. Paterson.

Photographs illustrating general public health progress in Kenya during the past 10 years.

Dr. Paterson showed an album of photographs illustrating the progress which had taken place in African life in Kenya in recent years. The photographs dealt with such matters as the evolution of methods of transport from the human beast of burden to the motor bus; the replacement of grass huts by well built brick and stone houses, the improvement of grain stores and water supplies, and the development of the school from a place concerned only with the teaching of the three Rs to an institution concerned at every point with fitting its pupils to take a more effective part in village life. Pictures were also shown which indicated the importance of better agriculture and animal husbandry in relation to nutrition and the outstanding importance of the proper conservancy of refuse in relation to both agriculture and health.

A number of coloured photographs of new medical institutions were also shown.

Lieut.-Colonel J. A. Sinton.

Action of atabrin upon the gametocytes (crescents) of *Plasmodium falciparum*.

Atabrin is known to produce morphological changes in both the sexual and the asexual forms of *P. vivax* and *P. malariae*, and also in the asexual forms of *P. falciparum*. On the other hand, it is reported by many workers to have no action upon the gametocytes of the last parasite. When the drug is given to a patient showing mature crescents in the peripheral blood, these forms are apparently unchanged and are still capable of causing transmissible infection in mosquitoes.

Some observations made at Horton during the past year, have shown that atabrin is not without effect upon the crescents of the Roumanian strain of *P. falciparum* used there for malaria therapy. If the drug be administered before these forms are detected in the peripheral blood, it appears to cause morphological changes in the immature stages of the sexual forms. When the crescents appeared the following changes were noted:—

(a) The majority of the gametocytes first seen showed the pigment aggregated into a single, solid mass. Very many appeared to be immature.

Some forms apparently normal also occurred, but others showed signs of commencing clumping of the pigment.

(b) Within the next day or so the forms with large pigment blocks become relatively scanty, their place being taken by crescents showing either (i) very scanty pigment grouped as a few jet-black blocks or granules; or (ii) a complete absence of pigment.

These forms resemble haemogregarines very closely. In many of them the chromatin appears to be normal, while in a few it looks atypical, suggesting serious damage by the drug.

(c) During the following days the number of pigmentless crescents tends to diminish, while those with scanty pigment increase in relative frequency.

(d) In smears from the spleen of a patient who died of pneumonia 2 days after completing a full course of atabrin treatment, a very large number of apparently mature gametocytes were found. A few appeared to be quite normal, some had the pigment clumped into a large mass, and many showed scanty pigment or were pigmentless. Some of the pigment-free forms had a large block of extracellular pigment attached to one pole. This looked as if it had just been extruded from the crescent.

These findings are evidence that atabrin causes clumping of the pigment in immature gametocytes, and that the absence of pigment in some forms is probably due to the extrusion of this substance rather than to any failure of the parasite to produce it. One would expect that parasites from which the pigment had been extruded, might be seriously damaged, yet mosquitoes fed on patients showing very large numbers of atabrin-affected forms developed heavy infections. As it was possible that the mosquito infection was derived from some apparently normal gametocytes still present, further investigations were carried out which showed :—

(e) *Formation of Gametes*.—(i) Female gametocytes round up prior to fertilization, although devoid of pigment, and (ii) male gametocytes without pigment or with only a few grains, seem to exflagellate normally.

(f) *Fertilization*.—Female gametes with large blocks of pigment seem to attract microgametes in the same manner as do normal macrogametes.

(g) *Oökinetes*.—Vermicules with little or no pigment could be found in smears of the gut contents of mosquitoes fed 25 hours previously on a suitable patient.

(h) *Oöcysts*.—The number of oöcysts which developed appeared to be out of proportion to the number of normal gametocytes. Most forms observed on the 6th day showed scanty pigment collected into small blocks, an appearance very different from the abundant, more discrete, scattered pigment granules seen in normal oöcysts at this stage. In normal oöcysts about 9 days old, it is difficult to find forms without detectable pigment, while pigment was very rarely found in atabrin cases.

These findings appear to show that many gametocytes with little or no pigment are still capable of undergoing their development in the insect host.

ORDINARY MEETING

of the Society held at

Manson House, 26, Portland Place, London

on

Thursday, 19th May, 1938, at 8.15 p.m.

THE PRESIDENT

Lt.-Col. S. P. JAMES, M.D., F.R.S., I.M.S. (retd.)
in the Chair.

PAPER.

THE PLACENTA IN MALARIA WITH SPECIAL REFERENCE TO RETICULO-ENDOTHELIAL IMMUNITY.

BY

P. C. C. GARNHAM, M.D. (LOND.), D.P.H.,
Colonial Medical Service, Kenya.

INDEX.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	13
GENERAL CHARACTERS OF THE RETICULO-ENDOTHELIUM	15
METHODS	18
THE RETICULO-ENDOTHELIAL REACTION IN THE PLACENTA IN DIFFERENT FORMS OF MALARIA	19
THE ORIGIN AND MORPHOLOGY OF THE PLACENTAL RETICULO- ENDOTHELIAL CELLS	24
EXPERIMENTS WITH TRYPAN BLUE AND NEUTRAL RED	28
CONGENITAL MALARIA	32
SUMMARY	33
REFERENCES	34

INTRODUCTION.

The studies described in this paper were made with the following objects in view :—

1. To observe the reaction of the R.E. system in malarial placentas.
2. To observe the nature of the immunity conferred by this system.
3. To determine the origin of the placental R.E. cells. Are they a primary

constituent of the organ as are similar cells in the spleen and liver, or are they merely immigrants brought thither to exercise a specific function?

As the work provided such accessible material for investigating the question of congenital malaria, it was enlarged to include this and the results are summarized at the end of the paper.

The work was begun in 1932 and was carried out in various parts of Kenya Colony. Most of the experimental studies were done in the last two years at Kisumu. My thanks are due to Dr. F. W. VINT, of the Medical Research Laboratory, Nairobi, for making blocks of tissues and cutting sections and to the late Prof. J. GORDON THOMSON for advice and help generally.

It is becoming increasingly obvious that one, if not the most, important point in the future study of malaria is the determination of the process whereby the indigenous inhabitant of a malarious country tackles and overcomes his infection. The process is often so nearly perfect that it is not unreasonable to suppose that in hastening and consolidating the mechanism lies the future solution of hyperendemic malaria control in rural areas. I am only referring of course to the malaria of tropical regions where sporozoites are being inoculated into the inhabitants many times each night throughout the year, where, at the age of 6 months, all the children show parasites in the blood, where the parasite rate has sunk to 25 per cent. in the adults and yet where on an average a person does not have more than one attack of mild fever in the course of the year and where even the infantile mortality rate from malaria is possibly very much less than is commonly supposed.

Now it is fairly certain that the root of the immunological phenomenon lies in the reticulo-endothelial system and hitherto the great difficulty in observing the system at work has been that only postmortem material and, therefore, only abnormal forms of the disease have been available. In other words the study has been very largely confined to the splenic macrophages and the Kupffer cells of the liver in fatal cases. Lately, however, TALIAFERRO and CANNON (1936) and TALIAFERRO and MULLIGAN (1937) have worked on the cellular reactions in monkey malaria and by examining the spleen at different stages of the infection have done much to elucidate the process in animals. I shall refer more fully to this later.

Malarial placentas appeared to provide a much better source of study in man and it was for this reason that the present work was undertaken. The placenta frequently contains a high concentration of parasites, together with a phagocytic system which is unique in that, unlike the system in the spleen, bone-marrow and liver, it is confined in the placenta to one part of the organ (the intervillous spaces) and there is no confusion or contamination with other complex structures. The interaction of the two—parasites and R.E.—can therefore be easily observed and, by waiting for suitable cases, in all phases of the disease.

GENERAL CHARACTERS OF THE RETICULO-ENDOTHELIUM.

Although there is still much mystery about this system, an extraordinary amount of work has been done in recent years in regard to its normal functions and its reaction to disease. I propose to give a short description of some of the more salient features, especially those that have a bearing on malarial immunity.

Classification.

Classification of the different types of cells contained in the system presents the difficulty that neither their morphology, derivation nor function is sufficiently clear-cut and established to provide a satisfactory basis. The arrangement in common use is that of ASCHOFF, which is based on staining reactions; and as these are prone to remarkable alterations in such varying conditions as degree of activation, disease, immunity, age, site, species of animals, the classification based upon them has at best only a general and rather theoretical use.

ASCHOFF divided the cells into two main groups; the first contains cells which take vital dyes comparatively slowly and in fine granules, and the second comprises cells which show much more marked activity. The first group contains the endothelial cells lining the blood vessels and lymphatics, fixed connective tissue cells and the reticular cells of the spleen and other special organs. The second group contains cells, some of which are probably derived from the foregoing, of the following types:—

1. Endothelial cells lining the sinusoids of the spleen, and lymph glands, liver, etc., *e.g.*, Kupffer cells.
2. Wandering connective tissue cells.
3. Cells of the splenic pulp.
4. Blood histiocytes (of several origins).

A further sub-division of the last group—blood histiocytes—has been attempted according to the characters of the vitally stained granules, and two types—monocytes and clasmatocytes—are stated to be distinguishable. Further, the former are said to be derived from reticular, and the latter from endothelial, elements. This separation has some practical value in that MULLIGAN (1929) has proved that the two types show a different response in malaria; but it must be realised that no strict differentiation is possible, both monocytes and clasmatocytes in their late phases are indistinguishable and the question of their origin is still a matter of doubt.

There are certain aspects of the R.E. system, however, which are well-recognized and accepted and I would mention particularly its mesodermal origin, its ubiquity in the body, its reaction to vital dyes and its potentiality of activation (and change). It is this last character which makes the study of the system so difficult. For example, one of the "ancestors" of these cells is the fibroblast of connective tissue, and yet reticulo-endothelial cells frequently end their existence by transformation into similar cells (as in cirrhosis of the liver where the Kupffer cells turn into fibroblasts, or in local inflammatory processes

when the R.E. cells end as fibrous tissue). This capacity for change particularly affects the experimental study of the system and is probably responsible for the paradoxical nature of the results of splenectomy and of blockade experiments.

Functions.

The functions of the R.E. are diverse. The connective tissue can now no longer be regarded as merely a supporting structure but it is seen to contain an active mechanism for defence. Phagocytosis of foreign particles is obviously one of its cardinal functions. Then it is probably closely concerned in actual antibody production. For instance, if animals are splenectomized and "blocked" with colloidal iron oxide, they are unable to produce antibodies. The action of such drugs as novarsenobillon seems to be intimately associated with the R.E. system. An important function is the destruction of the red blood corpuscles and bile-pigment formation. This occurs both normally (to a heightened degree in the foetus) and in disease. For instance, in chronic familial jaundice, there is overaction of the R.E. And the anaemia resulting from poisoning by certain radio-active substances is partly caused by the stimulatory effect of the injected poison on R.E. cells and the consequent increased destruction of erythrocytes. The rare splenomegalies of Gaucher's and Niemann's diseases are the result of the hypertrophy of the R.E. system in the spleen brought about as the result of ingesting the special lipoids.

Certain R.E. cells provide the specific nursery for a number of parasites and organisms, *e.g.*, in histoplasmosis and leishmaniasis; the *Rickettsia* of dog typhus is harboured by the blood histiocytes; and the recent important discoveries of JAMES (1937) have demonstrated the development of non-pigmented parasites in the R.E. cells of the brain capillaries etc., in the course of *Plasmodium gallinaceum* infections.

Specific neoplasms arise in the R.E. system—endotheliomata in relation to fixed cells and monocytic leukaemias in relation to the wandering cells. I should draw attention also to the part played by R.E. cells in the local lesions of tuberculosis, leprosy, actinomycosis, Hodgkin's disease, etc., etc.

In malaria the system is concerned primarily in the first two functions mentioned above, *viz.*, phagocytosis and immunity. About the first, we have much direct evidence; the evidence regarding production of immunological bodies (*e.g.*, opsonins) is however much vaguer, though the work of TALIAFERRO (1932) in relation to opsonins and that of SINTON (1935) on specific immunity has done much to clarify the position. I might mention also the probable existence of an anti-crescent substance which I described some years ago (GARNHAM, 1931). Its presence was assumed in order to account for the following phenomenon. Certain strains of *P. falciparum* were proved to be good gametocyte producers in the original attack, yet the parasites of the recrudescence failed to give rise to gametocytes. The crescents of the first attack apparently acted as an antigen and gave rise to special antibodies which rendered the

recrudescence sterile. The inoculation of serum obtained from patients showing large numbers of crescents prevented the development of gametocytes in other subtertian cases.

Briefly, in malaria the process is that at a certain stage in the disease R.E. cells in the spleen and other organs start phagocytosing parasites, pigment and damaged red blood corpuscles. A tremendous hypertrophy of the system occurs to cope with the infection together with the production of specific opsonins to enable the cells to engulf the parasites more readily. The hypertrophy and sensitization remain extant for some time after the infection has been conquered and enable the host to deal with infections of a like nature, though not with those of another, even of another sub-species of the parasite. This process is accompanied by an escape of histiocytes with or without ingested bodies into the blood-stream, where the picture is merely a mild reflection of the real mechanism occurring in the internal organs.

Vital Staining.

It is necessary to refer briefly to the question of vital staining. This is, of course, the most characteristic feature of R.E. cells, but many of the findings are not easy to interpret. I propose only to refer to the class of stains which were utilized in the present investigation, *viz.*, the soluble, rapid, *intravital* stains and omit the extremely useful but dangerous suspensoid preparations, such as India ink and saccharated oxide of iron. The dye I used was trypan blue and according to CAPPELL (1929) this dye has a specialized distribution in the body of animals on the lines noted above in ASCHOFF's classification. It brings into prominence certain intracellular granules which are likewise demonstrated by supravital staining with neutral red. The blue coloration of tissues is due to two factors, differential staining of epidermis, etc., and specialized accumulation of the dye in certain cells. The latter absorption is entirely dependent upon the vitality of the cells and cannot be reproduced after death. The dye is deposited within vacuoles in the cytoplasm (segregation-apparatus) and the nucleus and inter-vacuolar cytoplasm are uncoloured. By repeated dosage, a degree of intensification of staining can be reached which is impossible of attainment by increasing a single dose. Apart from the histiocytes scattered in connective tissue throughout the body, CAPPELL draws special attention to the differentiation of cells of the vascular endothelium. In ordinary vessels the endothelial cells fail to stain, but immediately the afferent or efferent vessels open into sinusoids, the lining cells stain readily. In the placenta the afferent and efferent vessels open not into sinusoids but into intervillous spaces unlined by endothelium.

Both CAPPELL (*ibid*) and DU BOIS (1934) refer to the negative reaction of blood histiocytes to soluble vital dyes, though the latter mentions that with excessive dosage a few may take up granules. And yet *all* such cells become loaded with the granules of suspensoid preparations like India ink, and they

also give a constant supravital reaction with neutral red. I shall refer to this anomaly later when describing the staining of the histiocytes of the placenta. Even in the spleen, the storage of trypan blue, by the mononuclear cells is surprisingly slight (although the cells are known malarial phagocytes); most of the stain is found in the reticular elements, yet even in these the storage varies in different animals, *e.g.*, in rabbits it is scanty in the extreme.

Functional Tests.

I must mention here the existence of a few tests for determining the functional activity of the R.E. system. They are of three types:—

1. The Congo red test of ADLER and REIMANN which measures the rapidity and extent of removal of the dye from the plasma after intravenous injection. If the R.E. is blocked or out of action, the dye is removed slowly and the index is high. With the assistance of Dr. HARVEY, Biochemist, Medical Research Laboratory, Nairobi, I carried out a series of these tests in malaria in an attempt to correlate the findings which I am describing later. The work is in an incomplete state and the findings so far are very contradictory.

2. The van Den Bergh test provides an index of R.E. activity, as urobilin is normally absorbed by this system.

3. The cellular reaction test of Kaufmann provides for the enumeration and classification of cells found in a blister after the application of cantharides. I have used this test on a few occasions, but it seems to demonstrate merely a localized and peripheral reaction which can have little relationship with the R.E. response in the deep organs. Incidentally, no cells corresponding to the placental phagocytes were seen in the blister fluids.

METHODS.

The methods used in the investigation were as follows:—

- A. Giemsa-stained thick drops of placental blood.
- B. Leishman-stained films of placental blood.
- C. Goodpasture-stained films of placental blood.
- D. Wet fixed (either Bouin or Schaudinn) films of placental blood, stained with Heidenhain's haematoxylin.

E. Films of placental blood, supravitaly stained with neutral red and Janus green.

F. *Intravital* staining during pregnancy with (i) trypan blue or (ii) neutral red and examination of placenta (and blood leucocytes, spleen puncture fluid, etc.) by one or more of the following procedures:—

(a) Wet films.

(b) Supravital staining with neutral red.

(c) Fixation of piece of tissue in Bethe's fluid, dehydration, etc., at 0° C., embedding and sections made. The method is supposed to preserve trypan blue in tissues but it actually gave little better results than ordinary methods.

(d) Fixation of tissue by usual methods.

G. *Intravital* staining through the umbilical vessels of the expelled placenta with trypan blue (2 per cent. in normal saline) and examination of wet and supravitaly stained (with neutral red) films of placental blood.

H. Preparation and examination of sections of normal and malarial placentas.

(Note.—Supravital staining = fresh smear on coverslip superimposed on prepared slide. *Intravital* staining = intravenous injection of dye.)

The work will now be discussed under two headings: (1) The picture in the placenta in different forms of the disease. (2) The origin of the R.E. cells found in this organ.

THE RETICULO-ENDOTHELIAL REACTION IN THE PLACENTA IN DIFFERENT FORMS OF MALARIA.

I must refer briefly here to the structure of the normal placenta. The function of the organ is to provide the foetus, *via* the blood stream, with food and oxygen and to remove the metabolic by-products. The placental substance is composed chiefly of a mass of chorionic villi. In the mesodermal core of each villus are the blood-vessels which take the blood to and from the foetus. The villi have an ectodermal lining, consisting of two layers—the superficial being syncytial and the inner cellular (cells of Langhans)—the plasmoditrophoblast and the cytotrophoblast respectively. Nourishment from the mother passes through this lining to the internal chorionic vessels. Each villus is bathed in the maternal blood of the intervillous spaces; the blood enters the space from maternal arteries. The vessels pass through the muscular wall of the uterus to its hypertrophied mucous membrane infiltrated with trophoblast (the decidua basalis), then penetrate a sheet of trophoblast and discharge into the intervillous spaces. This transitional portion of the placenta forms a minute proportion of the whole and is visible only as a thin grey layer on the maternal surface of the organ proper. On the foetal side the villi are attached to the amniotic and chorionic lining and their blood vessels pass along the latter to the umbilical cord.

The only part of the placenta with which we are primarily concerned is the intervillous space, where the R.E. response in malaria occurs. The space is lined entirely by trophoblast, except where degenerative changes (occurring after the seventh month of pregnancy) have resulted in fibrous patches and adhesions (Fig. 3). Curious proliferating buds of trophoblast are found late in pregnancy, projecting into the intervillous spaces and similar tissue is found also if the section is taken through the decidual layer. These might be mistaken for R.E. formations, but the nuclei are of quite a different type. At the end of pregnancy much of the external layer (*i.e.*, plasmoditrophoblast) has disappeared, the cytotrophoblast has become syncytial in character and some of this even degenerates and leaves exposed mesoderm.

The intervillous spaces in normal placentas contain nothing but blood. In certain phases of malaria, however, the contents of the space are an almost solid mass of R.E. cells and it is difficult to understand how the foetus is nourished. In fact, many of the abortions in malaria would appear to be due to death of the foetus through a physical interference with the circulation of the blood in the placenta, rather than to the direct effects of malarial toxins.

also give a constant supravital reaction with neutral red. I shall refer to this anomaly later when describing the staining of the histiocytes of the placenta. Even in the spleen, the storage of trypan blue, by the mononuclear cells is surprisingly slight (although the cells are known malarial phagocytes); most of the stain is found in the reticular elements, yet even in these the storage varies in different animals, *e.g.*, in rabbits it is scanty in the extreme.

Functional Tests.

I must mention here the existence of a few tests for determining the functional activity of the R.E. system. They are of three types:—

1. The Congo red test of ADLER and REIMANN which measures the rapidity and extent of removal of the dye from the plasma after intravenous injection. If the R.E. is blocked or out of action, the dye is removed slowly and the index is high. With the assistance of Dr. HARVEY, Biochemist, Medical Research Laboratory, Nairobi, I carried out a series of these tests in malaria in an attempt to correlate the findings which I am describing later. The work is in an incomplete state and the findings so far are very contradictory.

2. The van Den Bergh test provides an index of R.E. activity, as urobilin is normally absorbed by this system.

3. The cellular reaction test of Kaufmann provides for the enumeration and classification of cells found in a blister after the application of cantharides. I have used this test on a few occasions, but it seems to demonstrate merely a localized and peripheral reaction which can have little relationship with the R.E. response in the deep organs. Incidentally, no cells corresponding to the placental phagocytes were seen in the blister fluids.

METHODS.

The methods used in the investigation were as follows:—

- A. Giemsa-stained thick drops of placental blood.
- B. Leishman-stained films of placental blood.
- C. Goodpasture-stained films of placental blood.
- D. Wet fixed (either Bouin or Schaudinn) films of placental blood, stained with Heidenhain's haematoxylin.

E. Films of placental blood, supravitaly stained with neutral red and Janus green.

F. *Intravital* staining during pregnancy with (i) trypan blue or (ii) neutral red and examination of placenta (and blood leucocytes, spleen puncture fluid, etc.) by one or more of the following procedures:—

(a) Wet films.

(b) Supravital staining with neutral red.

(c) Fixation of piece of tissue in Bethe's fluid, dehydration, etc., at 0° C., embedding and sections made. The method is supposed to preserve trypan blue in tissues but it actually gave little better results than ordinary methods.

(d) Fixation of tissue by usual methods.

G. *Intravital* staining through the umbilical vessels of the expelled placenta with trypan blue (2 per cent. in normal saline) and examination of wet and supravitaly stained (with neutral red) films of placental blood.

H. Preparation and examination of sections of normal and malarial placentas.

(Note.—Supravital staining = fresh smear on coverslip superimposed on prepared slide. *Intravital* staining = intravenous injection of dye.)

The work will now be discussed under two headings: (1) The picture in the placenta in different forms of the disease. (2) The origin of the R.E. cells found in this organ.

THE RETICULO-ENDOTHELIAL REACTION IN THE PLACENTA IN DIFFERENT FORMS OF MALARIA.

I must refer briefly here to the structure of the normal placenta. The function of the organ is to provide the foetus, *via* the blood stream, with food and oxygen and to remove the metabolic by-products. The placental substance is composed chiefly of a mass of chorionic villi. In the mesodermal core of each villus are the blood-vessels which take the blood to and from the foetus. The villi have an ectodermal lining, consisting of two layers—the superficial being syncytial and the inner cellular (cells of Langhans)—the plasmoditrophoblast and the cytotrophoblast respectively. Nourishment from the mother passes through this lining to the internal chorionic vessels. Each villus is bathed in the maternal blood of the intervillous spaces; the blood enters the space from maternal arteries. The vessels pass through the muscular wall of the uterus to its hypertrophied mucous membrane infiltrated with trophoblast (the decidua basalis), then penetrate a sheet of trophoblast and discharge into the intervillous spaces. This transitional portion of the placenta forms a minute proportion of the whole and is visible only as a thin grey layer on the maternal surface of the organ proper. On the foetal side the villi are attached to the amniotic and chorionic lining and their blood vessels pass along the latter to the umbilical cord.

The only part of the placenta with which we are primarily concerned is the intervillous space, where the R.E. response in malaria occurs. The space is lined entirely by trophoblast, except where degenerative changes (occurring after the seventh month of pregnancy) have resulted in fibrous patches and adhesions (Fig. 3). Curious proliferating buds of trophoblast are found late in pregnancy, projecting into the intervillous spaces and similar tissue is found also if the section is taken through the decidual layer. These might be mistaken for R.E. formations, but the nuclei are of quite a different type. At the end of pregnancy much of the external layer (*i.e.*, plasmoditrophoblast) has disappeared, the cytotrophoblast has become syncytial in character and some of this even degenerates and leaves exposed mesoderm.

The intervillous spaces in normal placentas contain nothing but blood. In certain phases of malaria, however, the contents of the space are an almost solid mass of R.E. cells and it is difficult to understand how the foetus is nourished. In fact, many of the abortions in malaria would appear to be due to death of the foetus through a physical interference with the circulation of the blood in the placenta, rather than to the direct effects of malarial toxins.

THE PICTURE AT DIFFERENT AGES OF THE PLACENTA.

Although the great majority of the placentas examined were full-time ones, specimens of all ages have been examined from the 11th week onwards. The placenta is only just formed at that date but it can be identified by the place of insertion of the umbilical cord. Now the interesting point is that these early placentas appear to provide no facilities for the post-ring development of *P. falciparum*, e.g., in cases where the peripheral blood shows a heavy infection of malaria there is no schizont formation, no pigment and no reticulo-endothelial response. A possible explanation is that there is not a sufficiently sluggish circulation of blood in the early intervillous spaces to permit the development of the parasite. By the 4th month, however, the picture has entirely changed and closely resembles that at full term, with the well-known features of schizonts, phagocytes etc., described by BLACKLOCK and GORDON (1925) and others.

In some of the early abortions, many reticulo-endothelial cells were seen, but they contained no pigment or parasites. At least one of these cases was syphilitic and though no spirochaetes were actually demonstrated in placental smears by Giemsa and Fontana methods, it is probable that the reticulo-endothelial formation was due to syphilis rather than to malaria. The cells themselves showed morphological features not usually present in malarial infections, *viz.*, double nuclei, mitotic figures and numerous nucleoli.

PLACENTAL INFECTIONS WITH DIFFERENT SPECIES OF MALARIA.

The characteristic placental reactions are associated only with *P. falciparum*. A few quartan infections were examined and in these, there was no concentration of parasites. Scanty reticulo-endothelial response and rare pigment alone were seen. As THOMSON (1934) and others have pointed out, immunity to quartan malaria develops early, and rapidly becomes well-nigh perfect. In the district around Kisumu, children by the age of 12 months show a 75 per cent. quartan rate on a single examination of their blood, and this rate diminishes rapidly so that only 15 per cent. are infected in the 4 to 9 years age group and 7 per cent. in adult life. The basis for the immunity may lie in the presence of a small number of sensitized cells, and the observation of placentas in quartan cases tends to support this explanation.

The morphological features of the subtertian parasites as seen in placental films are interesting in that they resemble most closely the features characteristic of a malignant infection or of a culture. Rings typically are uncommon and are replaced by small solid bodies growing into schizonts, the staining of Maurer's dots is difficult to bring out, "clumping" occurs, young trophozoites showing "ectoplasmic" differentiation are sometimes very numerous and what is perhaps most interesting is the complete absence of the developing gametocytes even in cases where crescents were common in the peripheral blood. However, it must be remembered that developing crescents are found even in the spleen only

during the strictly limited gametocyte phase, and unfortunately no placentas were obtained at such a time. Mature crescents were much fewer in number in placental blood as compared with peripheral in the same case. Multiple infections of the red blood corpuscles are common and sometimes the second or third parasite remains as a young trophozoite whilst development of the first has proceeded to the segmenting stage. The number of merozoites varied in different cases. As a rule there was an average of six per schizont, but up to thirty have been seen in single parasites.

Developmental forms of *P. falciparum* are found only in the intervillous spaces and never in the maternal vessels traversing the decidua basalis, nor, of course, in the blood vessels in the interior of the villi.

In a few cases, parasites appeared to be much more numerous in the placental tissue near the maternal surface than in smears made from near the amnion, but this is not a constant feature.

THE PLACENTAL REACTION IN DIFFERENT MALARIA PHASES.

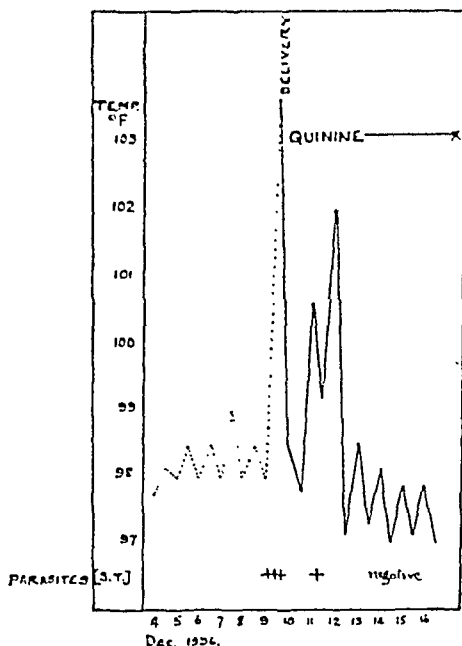
It is by examining placentas obtained in the different stages of malaria that the changing immunity processes can be worked out, and slightly over 500 placentas have been studied for this purpose: approximately a quarter contained

CHART I.

Ondiek.

Case of fresh infection of
subtertian malaria and
parturition.

(Last attack of malaria two
years previously.)



malarial parasites or pigment. The following represent the results in the different degrees of immunity from least to greatest in the simple (*i.e.*, excluding fulminating) forms of the disease:—

(a) Beginning of a fresh infection in a susceptible subject (Chart 1): terrific schizont production, but little R.E. response (Plate, Figs. 1 and 2).

(b) After a week of a similar infection : similar schizont production, but now a marked R.E. response. The R.E. cells show no degenerative changes, though the occasional phagocytosing polymorphonuclear leucocytes on the other hand are often fragmented. Pigment in the R.E. cells is in fine granules or small pieces (Figs. 3 and 4).

(c) Chronic malaria with fairly heavy infestation of subtertian parasites in the blood throughout pregnancy (Chart II) ; slight to moderate schizont production, but terrific R.E. response (the placenta in these cases on section exudes a greyish-red, purulent looking fluid). "Pre-R.E." cells (see p. 26) are very common. Pigment in this and the next group is often in large masses (Figs. 6 and 7).

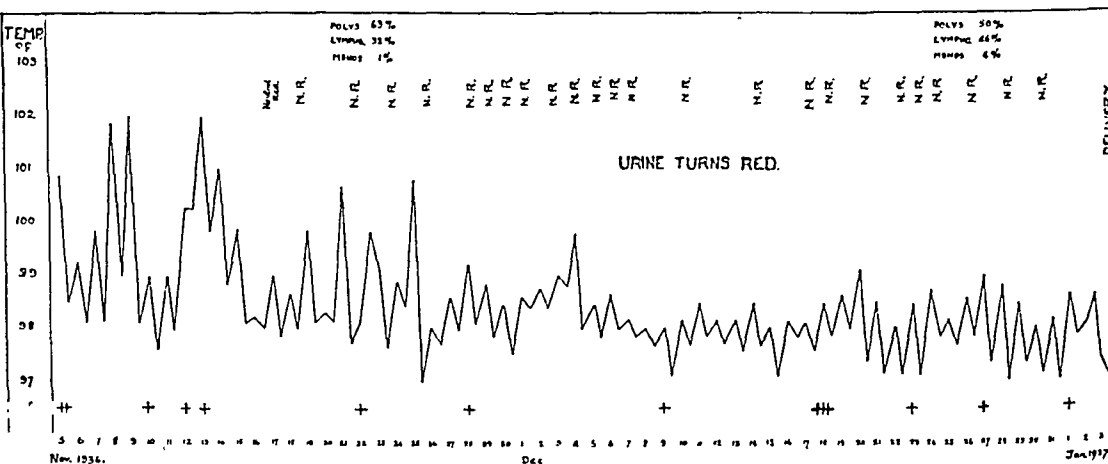


CHART II.

Rosa. Case of chronic subtertian malaria in pregnancy undergoing neutral red injections.

(d) Chronic malaria with parasites numerous early in pregnancy but diminishing later as a result of trypan blue treatment (see page 31) or other forms of treatment : moderate schizont production and moderate R.E. response, with late forms of the latter cells. In these infections, it is not uncommon to find the pigmented R.E. cells embedded in fibrous or hyaline deposits which have developed in the late stages of pregnancy. The cells were originally free in the intervillous spaces but later became surrounded by the fibrous tissue. They might be mistaken for phagocytosing fixed histiocytes. Sometimes pigment alone is all that remains (Fig. 5).

(e) The next group of cases comprises relapses (at beginning of relapse), recrudescences and provoked attacks : moderate to extensive schizont production with marked R.E. response—contrast with (a). Pigment here is similar to

FIG. 1.

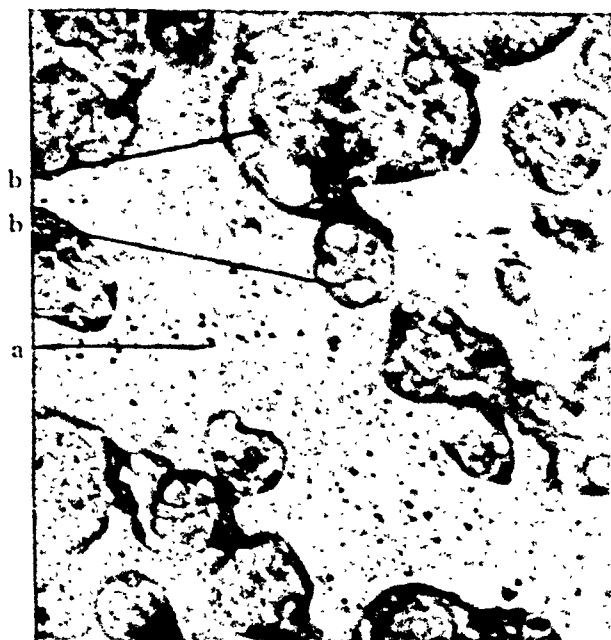


FIG. 2.

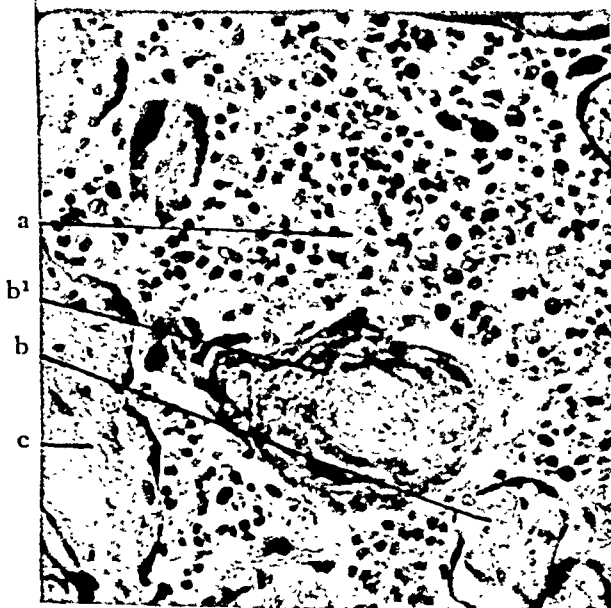
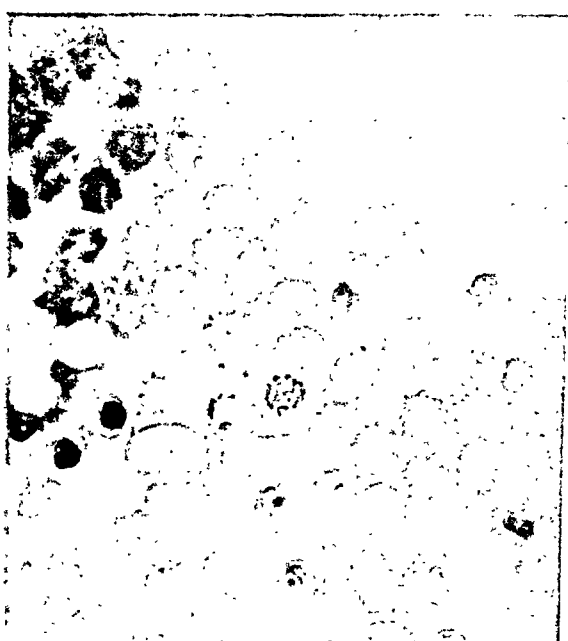


FIG. 3.

FIG. 4.

FIG. 1.—Section (stained with Giemsa) of placenta obtained on second day of a new attack of S.T. malaria. $\times 260$. Intervillous spaces show numerous trophozoites of *P. falciparum*, but complete absence of R.E. cells. a = intervillous space, b = chorionic villus.

FIG. 2.—Placental film of same case (stained with Leishman). $\times 750$. Trophozoites and schizont of *P. falciparum*. No R.E. cells are present.

FIG. 3.—Section (stained with Giemsa) of placenta obtained after a week of a new infection of S.T. malaria. $\times 260$. Intervillous spaces are now packed with R.E. cells and parasitized erythrocytes. a = intervillous space, b = chorionic villus, b¹ = villus undergoing fibrous change. c = placental septum.

FIG. 4.—Placental film of same case (stained with Leishman). $\times 750$. Blood now suggests a leukaemic condition so numerous are lymphocytes (a and b), R.E. cells (d) and intermediate forms or polyblasts (e). c = schizont. Note small granules of pigment in the R.E. cells.

FIG. 5.

FIG. 6.

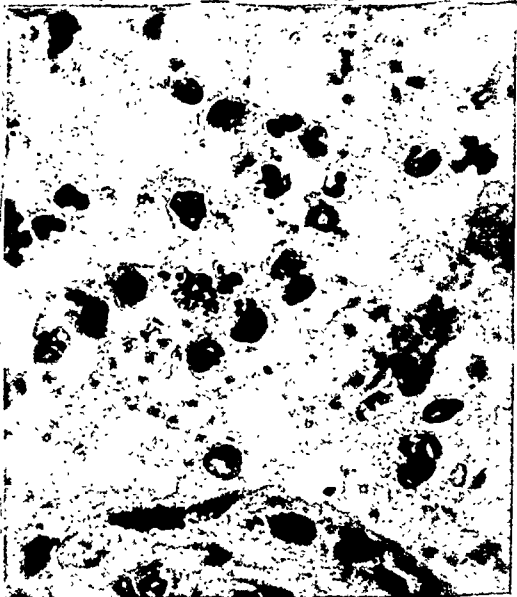
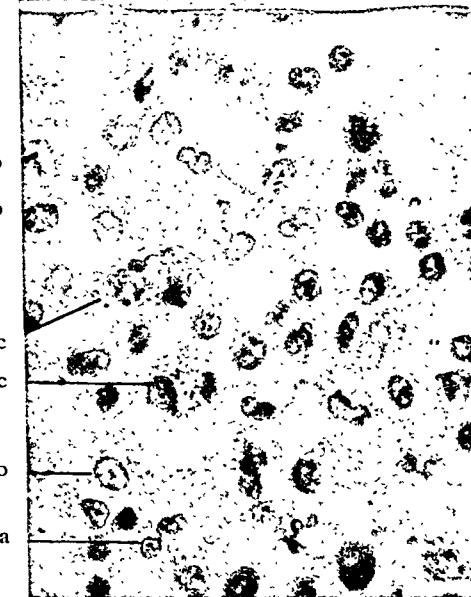
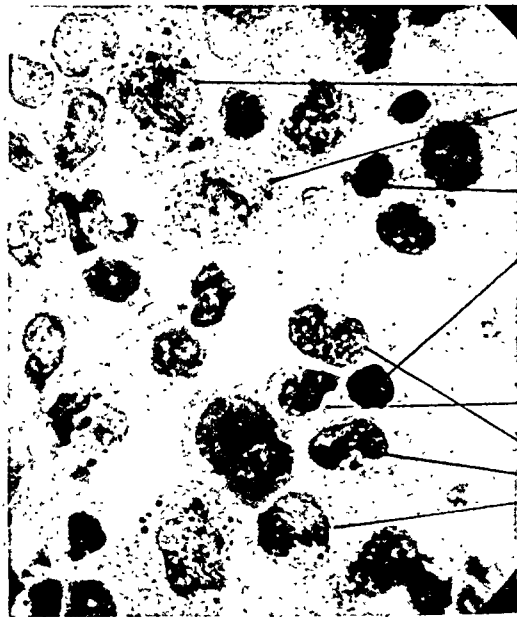


FIG. 7.

FIG. 8.

FIG. 5.—Section (stained with Giemsa) of placenta in chronic malaria. $\times 750$.

Some of the pigmented R.E. cells (a), originally free in intervillous space, have become surrounded by fibrous tissue and in this situation might be mistaken for phagocytosing "fixed" histiocytes.

Note large granules of pigment in a R.E. cell (d) still free in the space. b = proliferating trophoblast, c = parasite in R.B.C.

FIG. 6.—Placental film (stained with Leishman) from case of chronic malaria, showing stages in transformation of lymphocytes to R.E. cells. $\times 750$. a = R.E. cell; b = lymphocyte (small); c = lymphocyte (large); d = polyblast.

FIG. 7.—Placental film (fixed in Schaudinn and stained with Heidenhain's haematoxylin and Biebrich's scarlet) from case of chronic malaria showing changes in nuclear structure in development of the R.E. cell. $\times 750$.

a = lymphocyte, b = polyblast, c = R.E. cell.

FIG. 8.—Section (stained with haematoxylin and eosin) of placenta from fatal case of cerebral malaria. $\times 750$. R.E. response is well-marked.

that of (b) above, *i.e.*, large conglomerations do not occur. In provoked attacks, the sensitized R.E. usually clears the blood stream of parasites within 48 hours.

(f) Cases of perfect premunition (*i.e.*, with very occasional positive bloods in the course of pregnancy): no schizonts but occasional pigmented R.E. cells.

(g) Perfect immunity (*i.e.*, no parasites and no pyrexia and unsusceptible to artificial inoculation with sporozoites): no schizonts and no R.E. cells.

Table I summarizes the process.

TABLE I.
THE PLACENTAL REACTION IN DIFFERENT PHASES OF MALARIAL IMMUNITY.

Type of Disease.	Stage of Infection.	Parasites in Placenta.	R.E. Cells.	Pigment.	Degree of Immunity.
(a) New infection in susceptible case	Beginning	Schizonts + + +	Rare	Nil	Slight or none
(b) New infection in susceptible case	After a week	..	Numerous	Small pieces	High.
(c) Chronic, with persistent parasites in blood	—	Moderate number	Excessive number	Large agglomerations	Very high.
(d) Chronic, with parasites disappearing	—	.. ..	Moderate number	Very large masses	..
(e) Relapses, etc.	Beginning	Schizonts + + +	Numerous	Small pieces	High.
(f) Fleeting appearance of parasites in course of pregnancy	—	None	Rare	Usually large masses	Perfect premunition.
(g) Unsusceptible to malaria	—	None	None	None	Perfect immunity.

Placentas of women who have died from cerebral malaria do not exhibit any striking differences from those with similarly heavy infestation but with marked immunity (Fig. 8). The reticulo-endothelial response has been just as marked in the two types, thus demonstrating that death has not occurred as a result of any intrinsic failure of the cellular mechanism. In fact, I have always been impressed by the gallant effort of the R.E. in face of most virulent infections. A minor point of difference is the greater frequency of extra-cellular parasitized red blood corpuscles in the fatal cases.

The process of immunity illustrated above demonstrates apart from the general features, the necessity for sensitized R.E. cells. In (a) there has been no recent malaria and it takes a week at least for the cellular reaction to become established—as in (b). On the other hand, a recent attack of malaria leaves a nidus of established cells together with an apparatus for the immediate production of phagocytes, and on the occurrence of a relapse, etc.—as in (c) and (e)—

of this infection, there is no lag and R.E. activity is full from practically the start.

Very rarely the placental reaction is not as described above and the reticulo-endothelial response appears to take place, instead, in the spleen. For instance, a woman from a mountainous region of Kenya showed the following phenomenon :—

Two attacks of malaria in the 5th and 8th months of pregnancy, untreated with quinine.

Blood slides in the last fortnight of pregnancy showed fairly numerous *P. falciparum* rings. (No quinine given). No pyrexia however during this period, but on the first day of puerperium an attack occurred which was terminated with quinine.

The placental smear showed rare small solid parasites, but no pigmented R.E. cells. This is in marked contrast to the usual findings—see (c) above—and the anomaly is possibly explained by the presence of a very large spleen in which organ the malarial processes took place.

No traces of the hypothetical tissue cell cycle of the malarial parasite were observed though a careful search was made (a) in new infections and (b) in cases which had received sporozoite inoculations. The recent epoch-making discoveries of JAMES (1937) have shown, however, that this cycle (in bird malaria) is confined to fixed R.E. cells (vascular) which are only scantily represented in the placenta.

THE ORIGIN AND MORPHOLOGY OF THE PLACENTAL RETICULO-ENDOTHELIAL CELLS.

The importance of these cells in overcoming malarial infections warrants a close study of their origin and characters. Although a fair amount is known in regard to the latter, we are still largely ignorant of their exact origin, with the exception of the Kupffer cells of the liver and, through the recent researches of TALIAFERRO (1936), of the phagocytes of the spleen. As far as I am aware, no work has been done on the derivation of the R.E. cells of the placenta.

ORIGIN.

The theoretical possibilities in regard to the origin of the placental phagocytes include the following :—

I.—Local Origin (Fixed Cells).

1. (As in liver and spleen). From vascular endothelium lining blood sinuses. *None is present* except where maternal vessels enter the decidual layer of the placenta—much the greater part of the placenta is composed of chorionic villi, lined solely by ectoderm. No proliferating endothelium is ever seen in sections; the only proliferating cells being isolated islands of trophoblast (ectodermal). The maternal vessels are large arteries and veins, moreover, with ordinary undifferentiated endothelium which is usually thought not to be concerned in R.E. production.

2. Macrophages may arise from another type of fixed cell which is common enough in the placenta—*viz.*, the fibrocyte. As JORDAN (1934) points out, after the 7th month of pregnancy, a fibrinous degeneration occurs of part of the syncytium with the appearance of numerous fibrocytes. Also the mesodermal core of the villi contains connective tissue of a delicate embryonic type. These young fibrocytes are seen to be the commonest cells in the placenta to take up trypan blue, which presumably would still be present when and if they attained an active phagocytic stage. But trypan blue is strikingly absent in the placental macrophages. Such an origin is unlikely also for the reason that no proliferation of fibrocytes is seen, nor any intermediate stages between them and R.E. cells. For similar reasons, an origin from the endothelium of the primitive vessels in the interior of a villus is improbable. Incidentally fibrous changes do not occur to any extent until the 7th month and yet malarial phagocytes are found to be just as numerous in placentas of an earlier age (after the 4th month).

I might mention here that Japanese observers—KATSUYA (1932) and others—report that they have been able to show up the placenta by X-rays after intravenous injections of thorium dioxide sol which they claim is taken up by R.E. cells in the placental substance. Apparently their work has no histological confirmation and it is unknown where storage is actually effected.

II.—Remote Origin (*Wandering Cells*).

1. Blood histiocytes (R.E. cells conveyed to the placenta by the blood from spleen, etc.); includes "large mononuclears."

2. Blood "non-histiocytes" (lymphocytes and "polymorphs") with a local transformation into R.E. cells.

MORPHOLOGY.

Phagocytosis in the placenta is largely confined to a type of cell which does not conform to the appearance of any normal blood cell. This is not absolutely the case however for occasional polymorphonuclear and large mononuclear leucocytes are found with pigment or parasites, but there is no doubt that these cells play a minor part in the process and no further reference will be made to them, beyond noting that phagocytosing "polymorphs" are always in a very degenerate condition, in marked contrast to the healthy state of R.E. cells containing malarial fragments.

The appearance of the special R.E. cells differs apparently according to their age. In size they vary from about that of a large lymphocyte to a cell six or more times this size.

Their general characters are as follows:—

1. They are amoeboid with a movement rather similar to that of *Entamoeba histolytica* and quite unlike that of a polymorphonuclear leucocyte. They are

still motile when they contain a small amount of phagocytosed material, but the very large cells with large conglomerations are immobile.

2. Unstained and alive, they exhibit tiny granules which, however, do not show up with Romanowsky or Goodpasture stain.

3. They stain very readily, in supravital preparations with neutral red—or rather inclusions of this dye are found in the protoplasm. *They do not take up the stain by the intravital method.* The inclusions of the dye are usually round or oval and fairly large, but are rarely in the rosetted form characteristic of monocytes.

4. No such inclusions are found with supravital or *intravital* trypan blue.

5. The protoplasm varies in density from, in young forms, a dense ground-glass appearance to a lighter vacuolated texture in the large degenerate forms. What appear to be syncytial forms are occasionally seen. The protoplasm is sometimes foamy.

6. The nucleus (Fig. 7) is usually oval, but may be irregular in outline or folded upon itself. It is specially characterized by the presence of one, or more rarely, two or more nucleoli. No other cells in the placenta show this type of nucleus with the exception of the cells of Langhans, but in these the chromatin is shown by iron haematoxylin to be contained practically only in the nucleolus. In the R.E. cells the chromatin has a much more extensive distribution. Even when syncytial, the R.E. cells are thus easily differentiated from the chorionic syncytium. The nuclei are usually single but two may be present. The extreme rarity of mitosis should be particularly noted.

The placental R.E. cells are usually easily distinguishable from the large mononuclears of the blood stream by the following features:—

- (i) The R.E. cells attain a very much larger size.
- (ii) The nucleus is usually oval or round.
- (iii) The protoplasm is denser and larger in extent and has an ill-defined edge.
- (iv) They take up neutral red in supravital spreads much more readily.

The R.E. cell is confined to the intervillous spaces. The only other cells present in large quantities in this region are lymphocytes, and what is of the greatest interest is the presence of forms of all stages between the typical large lymphocyte and the R.E. cell itself. It is not unreasonable to suppose therefore that the former cells are the origin of the macrophages (Figs. 4 and 6).

The essential differentiating feature between the lymphocyte and the R.E. cell is, of course, the behaviour to supravital stains. The transformation appears to be (a) an increase in amount of protoplasm, which becomes also more amoeboid; (b) an increase in size of the nucleus; and (c) a decrease in the density of the latter. The large lymphocytes were shown not to belong to the myeloblastic series by their failure to give the peroxidase reaction.

The transformation of lymphocytes into cells of the R.E. series is a well-known phenomenon. It is seen in normal connective tissue and in the peritoneum (the intermediate cells being called polyblasts by MAXIMOW) and

according to Sachs (1923) a similar metamorphosis occurs in tissue culture in the presence of the tubercle bacillus. HADFIELD and GARROD (1934) state that macrophages may be formed even from the mature lymphocytes of the blood stream.

TALIAFERRO and CANNON (1936), working on malaria in monkeys, have recently established a similar origin for the macrophages of the spleen. The process there appears to be primarily a lymphoid hyperplasia in the follicles, followed by a migration of the small lymphocytes from the follicles to the pulp where an accumulation of plasma cells and lymphocytes occur. The latter increase by mitosis and are gradually transformed into macrophages. In the placenta, of course, there is no local lymphoid source and it is to be assumed that these cells are brought there by the blood stream. The absence or extreme scarcity of small lymphocytes and the absence of mitosis suggest also that the primary lymphoid hyperplasia is occurring elsewhere. It is probable that this source is the spleen which, in active human malaria as in monkey malaria, shows an increase in the lymphocytic elements. I have frequently found many mitotic figures in the wandering cells of the spleen. In other words, this organ not only supplies the nursery for its own macrophages but also for the tremendous number required in the placenta, though probably the spleen is not the sole source of the latter.

Some indirect proof of the foregoing theory exists in the character of the blood picture. It is obvious that if lymphocytes are passing in large numbers from the spleen to the placenta that the white blood count should show a deviation from the normal. Now, the characteristic difference between European and tropical blood counts is the raised lymphocyte percentage, and this may well be the result of the increased demand upon the R.E. system by agents such as malaria.

A differential white blood count was done on 200 consecutive maternity cases in 1937. All were natives from hyperendemic malarial localities. The results showed an average polymorphonuclear count of 62 per cent. and an average lymphocyte count of 30 per cent. made up as follows:—

TABLE II.

Polymorphonuclear leucocytes.		Lymphocytes.	
Percentage.	Number of Cases.	Percentage.	Number of Cases.
70	27	50	1
65	101	45	7
60	43	40	7
55	18	35	40
50	9	30	83
45	2	25	62
Total	200	Total	200

These counts reveal a deviation from the normal, which is much slighter than in the usual tropical counts. The latter frequently show averages of 55 per cent. lymphocytes. The relatively slight lymphocytosis is probably due to the fact that the blood was taken in the last stages of pregnancy or even in the feverish hour of parturition at which time there is usually a polymorphonuclear leucocytosis.

Relapses of Malaria following Parturition.—The danger of relapses of malaria after childbirth is too well-known to need further description. GREEN-ARMYTAGE (1936) points out that patients who have been even under rigid treatment and supervision may develop acute malaria in the puerperium. The relapse is commonly supposed to be the result of the physical strain of parturition and a lowered immunity. An alternative explanation strongly suggested itself when it was seen what a tremendously efficient R.E. organization was expelled with the placenta at the time of birth. Surely the loss of such a mechanism of defence must result in an increased susceptibility to the disease, just as splenectomy in immune monkeys allows a relapse of *P. knowlesi* malaria (*vide* KRISHNAN, SMITH and LAL CHIRANJI, 1937).

EXPERIMENTS WITH TRYPAN BLUE AND NEUTRAL RED.

TRYPAN BLUE.

This dye has a well-known specificity with regard to the R.E. system, so an attempt was made by *intravital* staining to pick out the system as it occurs in the placenta. It was some time before the dosage and method of administration of the dye were so assessed as to ensure saturation of the organ. The total amount given never exceeded 1 gramme per 100 kg. body weight (this is about a fifth to a tenth of the dosage used in animal experiments). A generalized coloration of the subject was obtained after the administration of rather less than a quarter of this dose. The dye was given intravenously, beginning with 5 c.c. of a 1 per cent. solution in sterile water increasing to 20 c.c. of a 2 per cent. solution, at 3 to 4 day intervals.

It was demonstrated clearly by (a) *intravital* staining, (b) supravital staining and (c) transfusion through the umbilical vein that this dye is neither a specific for the wandering histiocyte (*i.e.*, R.E. cells in intervillous spaces) nor for its progenitor, as no blue is ever found in any of these cells. On the other hand it is readily taken up by the fibrocyte (No. 2 of ASCHOFF) of the decidua and of fibrous strands in the placental substance and by the young fibrocytes in the interior of the chorionic villi. Yet the macrophages of the intervillous spaces show a marked affinity for neutral red. It might be thought that trypan blue never reaches the spaces and therefore does not come into contact with the R.E. cells therein, but this explanation is obviously wrong, as the dye penetrates the trophoblastic lining of the villi, stains the fibrocytes in the latter and then reaches the foetus which is always stained blue.

We see therefore that these vital stains are definitely selective in action even within the R.E. system. This negative reaction of the most highly activated

group of cells in the R.E. system is similar to the absence of staining of blood histiocytes and is capable of two explanations. Firstly, are the cells so full of pigment, toxins etc., that there is no room for the dye? This seems unlikely to be the case as the same cells stain very readily in supravital spreads with neutral red. SMITH (1930) has similarly shown that cells which have reached saturation point with one dye (comparable to the pigment in the cases under reference) can phagocytose with ease another dye, thus proving the absence of total blockade. The second explanation is that according to TILGHMAN and LEE (1931) it is an acidophile constituent of the cytoplasm which plays the determining part in whether or not a cell will become stained with trypan blue. Now if placental R.E. cells are treated with litmus solution, a number of them will be found to contain blue vacuoles or have a generalized blue colour of the cytoplasm and this state of alkalinity is possibly the reason why the cells fail to take up trypan blue.

The cells that are most concerned with malarial phagocytosis fail to absorb trypan blue and it is because of this that the interpretation of blockade experiments in malaria must be regarded with doubt, based as they are upon the incorrect assumption that the blocking agent is taken up by the specific cells. For instance, FINDLAY (1933) states that if immune birds had their R.E. blocked with trypan blue or India ink, an injection of the parasites allowed persistence of their parasites for 4 to 5 days instead of 48 hours in non-blocked birds. Part of the R.E. may be blocked by means of trypan blue but this part as I have just shown is not concerned with malarial phagocytosis. Blockade with India ink of malarial phagocytes is certainly possible, but in so far as trypan blue is concerned, if the avian system behaves as does the human, the interpretation of the experiment on the basis of blockade is apparently incorrect. It must be remembered, however, that certain fixed histiocytes such as Kupffer cells are able both to absorb trypan blue and to phagocytose malarial pigment, but it is probable that such cells are more concerned with the removal of waste products *e.g.*, pigment, than with the eradication of active dangerous infections, which appears to be more the function of the wandering cells of the spleen or, in the case of pregnant women, of the placenta; and these cells cannot be blocked by trypan blue.

In the liver both processes appear to go on however—phagocytosis of pigment by the Kupffer cells and of parasites by smaller R.E. cells lying free in the portal vein branches and elsewhere. The latter vessels often contain large numbers of lymphocytes which presumably are there for the same reason as are those found in malarial placentas. TALIAFERRO and MULLIGAN (1937) have noticed a similar portal infiltration of lymphoid cells in acute malaria in monkeys.

VINT (1937), as the result of 1,000 postmortem examinations (including 33 cases of malaria) of Kenya natives, came to the conclusion that the R.E. system often was so blocked that it was unable to deal with a fresh malarial infection. This conclusion is not borne out by the appearance of placental macrophages

in fatal malarial cases. Only a proportion of these cells contain pigment and the remainder appear to be functionally active (Fig. 8). Even the pigmented ones are still able to phagocytose neutral red. In other words there can be at most only a partial blockade.

Certain peculiarities in the behaviour of trypan blue in the body were observed :—

(i) Its selective staining of certain parts of mother and child. Skin, gums, conjunctivae, nails, tongue, etc., all stain readily. The bright blue babies are most striking in appearance. This constant staining of the foetus is in direct opposition to the findings of numerous authors quoted by CAPPELL (1929) who assert that staining of the foetus does *not* occur. Incidentally, all these authors were working on the lower animals. All the secretions are stained, the colour in the milk clearing up most rapidly. The leucocytes of the blood-stream are unstained, in spite of the persistence of the blue in the plasma for months. If the blood of a case which has received large amounts of dye and whose serum is a bright blue colour is oxalated and centrifugalized, the leucocyte layer can be pipetted off and readily examined under a cover-slip. Trypan blue is then very rarely found in vacuoles in the monocytes, and occasional unorganized lumps may be found free in the fluid.

The observation that blue remains in the blood plasma for lengthy periods after the last injection is directly contrary to earlier findings with similar dyes (*e.g.*, Isamine blue), though CAPPELL also remarks on its persistence.

(ii) Its behaviour in the plasma. A balance between absorption (by R.E. system) and retention in the plasma is reached early.

(iii) Its periodical excretion in the urine, and curious colour changes in the urine. This periodicity is remarkable and showed the same features over a large series of cases, both male and female. The blue floods in about 5 a.m., is intense for several hours and disappears about midday. The periodicity is unaffected by :—

(a) Posture. It is unaltered by strict rest in bed. Also the blue flood is not due to the long rest in the night and accumulation of dye, because in some cases, the blue is not present when the patient gets up at 6 a.m. and only appears two hours later. (b) Sleeping in the day-time and up all night. (c) Fasting. (d) Dilution of urine by excessive intake of fluids. (e) Reaction of urine.

It may be noted that there is no periodicity of blue in the blood plasma though different cases exhibit different degrees of concentration and retention. The absence of blue at other times of the day in the urine is only relative, as traces at any time can be demonstrated by filtration. The periodicity persists for several weeks after the last injection.

The curious colour changes have reference to recent injections of trypan blue. Twenty minutes after injection, the urine becomes mauve coloured, and after 2 hours a maximum coloration of deep violet is obtained. The colour then slowly fades through smoky tints and disappears entirely after 12 hours.

The colour was shown to be due to a mixture of unchanged trypan blue plus an unknown deep straw-coloured pigment.

No explanation has yet been found either for the periodicity or for the colour changes.

Therapeutic Value.—It was originally thought that trypan blue had a specific stimulatory effect on the R.E. system (*vide* use in leprosy) and that it would be therefore of value in the treatment of chronic relapsing malaria. Actually, as has been shown above, its selective absorption is only by the R.E. cells not concerned in malarial phagocytosis. And yet, surprisingly enough, the administration of the dye seems to have a definitely beneficial effect on chronic cases. Until a much larger series has been obtained, I would refrain from drawing any definite conclusions as to the value of trypan blue, but quite a number of cases like the following have already been obtained :—

Case : Lumbwa, male adult.

24.9.35.	New attack of subtertian malaria.
20.10.35.	Recrudescence of this attack.
7.5.36.	Another new attack of subtertian malaria.
1.6.36.	} Relapses and recrudescences of second attack.
27.6.36.	
10.7.36.	
12.8.36.	
8.9.36.	

On 11.9.36, a trypan blue course was started and no further attacks of malaria have occurred, though parasites have occasionally been found in the blood.

Pregnant cases showed even better results in that the blood became completely free of parasites.

The therapeutic effect may possibly be produced by "protein shock," but not all cases showed febrile reactions. Apart from occasional temperatures up to 102° F., no toxic effects were observed.

NEUTRAL RED.

In supravital spreads, the R.E. cells readily take up neutral red. It appeared likely, therefore, that the search for the origin of these cells would be carried a step further by the *intravital* use of this dye. Unfortunately it soon became obvious that excretion was too rapid for absorption to take place and nothing became stained, in mother, child or placenta (villi and wandering cells). The result was the same even with massive doses of the dye.

It is interesting to note that with supravital staining, the malarial parasites remain unstained whilst they are alive, but as they die they gradually take up the pink stain and the merozoites of the schizonts stand out prominently. This forms a useful test and might be used in conjunction with *in vitro* experiments on the direct action of drugs. Staining or its absence, provides also a criterion of the vitality of parasites ingested by R.E. cells. Most of such parasites are seen to be dead.

in fatal malarial cases. Only a proportion of these cells contain pigment and the remainder appear to be functionally active (Fig. 8). Even the pigmented ones are still able to phagocytose neutral red. In other words there can be at most only a partial blockade.

Certain peculiarities in the behaviour of trypan blue in the body were observed :—

(i) Its selective staining of certain parts of mother and child. Skin, gums, conjunctivae, nails, tongue, etc., all stain readily. The bright blue babies are most striking in appearance. This constant staining of the foetus is in direct opposition to the findings of numerous authors quoted by CAPPELL (1929) who assert that staining of the foetus does *not* occur. Incidentally, all these authors were working on the lower animals. All the secretions are stained, the colour in the milk clearing up most rapidly. The leucocytes of the blood-stream are unstained, in spite of the persistence of the blue in the plasma for months. If the blood of a case which has received large amounts of dye and whose serum is a bright blue colour is oxalated and centrifugalized, the leucocyte layer can be pipetted off and readily examined under a cover-slip. Trypan blue is then very rarely found in vacuoles in the monocytes, and occasional unorganized lumps may be found free in the fluid.

The observation that blue remains in the blood plasma for lengthy periods after the last injection is directly contrary to earlier findings with similar dyes (e.g., Isamine blue), though CAPPELL also remarks on its persistence.

(ii) Its behaviour in the plasma. A balance between absorption (by R.E. system) and retention in the plasma is reached early.

(iii) Its periodical excretion in the urine, and curious colour changes in the urine. This periodicity is remarkable and showed the same features over a large series of cases, both male and female. The blue floods in about 5 a.m., is intense for several hours and disappears about midday. The periodicity is unaffected by :—

(a) Posture. It is unaltered by strict rest in bed. Also the blue flood is not due to the long rest in the night and accumulation of dye, because in some cases, the blue is not present when the patient gets up at 6 a.m. and only appears two hours later. (b) Sleeping in the day-time and up all night. (c) Fasting. (d) Dilution of urine by excessive intake of fluids. (e) Reaction of urine.

It may be noted that there is no periodicity of blue in the blood plasma though different cases exhibit different degrees of concentration and retention. The absence of blue at other times of the day in the urine is only relative, as traces at any time can be demonstrated by filtration. The periodicity persists for several weeks after the last injection.

The curious colour changes have reference to recent injections of trypan blue. Twenty minutes after injection, the urine becomes mauve coloured, and after 2 hours a maximum coloration of deep violet is obtained. The colour then slowly fades through smoky tints and disappears entirely after 12 hours.

The colour was shown to be due to a mixture of unchanged trypan blue plus an unknown deep straw-coloured pigment.

No explanation has yet been found either for the periodicity or for the colour changes.

Therapeutic Value.—It was originally thought that trypan blue had a specific stimulatory effect on the R.E. system (*vide* use in leprosy) and that it would be therefore of value in the treatment of chronic relapsing malaria. Actually, as has been shown above, its selective absorption is only by the R.E. cells not concerned in malarial phagocytosis. And yet, surprisingly enough, the administration of the dye seems to have a definitely beneficial effect on chronic cases. Until a much larger series has been obtained, I would refrain from drawing any definite conclusions as to the value of trypan blue, but quite a number of cases like the following have already been obtained:—

Case: Lumbwa, male adult.

24.9.35. New attack of subtertian malaria.

20.10.35. Recrudescence of this attack.

7.5.36. Another new attack of subtertian malaria.

1.6.36.	} Relapses and recrudescences of second attack.
27.6.36.	
10.7.36.	
12.8.36.	
8.9.36.	

On 11.9.36, a trypan blue course was started and no further attacks of malaria have occurred, though parasites have occasionally been found in the blood.

Pregnant cases showed even better results in that the blood became completely free of parasites.

The therapeutic effect may possibly be produced by "protein shock," but not all cases showed febrile reactions. Apart from occasional temperatures up to 102° F., no toxic effects were observed.

NEUTRAL RED.

In supravital spreads, the R.E. cells readily take up neutral red. It appeared likely, therefore, that the search for the origin of these cells would be carried a step further by the *intravital* use of this dye. Unfortunately it soon became obvious that excretion was too rapid for absorption to take place and nothing became stained, in mother, child or placenta (villi and wandering cells). The result was the same even with massive doses of the dye.

It is interesting to note that with supravital staining, the malarial parasites remain unstained whilst they are alive, but as they die they gradually take up the pink stain and the merozoites of the schizonts stand out prominently. This forms a useful test and might be used in conjunction with *in vitro* experiments on the direct action of drugs. Staining or its absence, provides also a criterion of the vitality of parasites ingested by R.E. cells. Most of such parasites are seen to be dead.

Most of the neutral red appeared to be excreted in the urine. The dye appears almost immediately after intravenous injection, a maximum intensity is reached after an hour, the colour remains for nearly 12 hours and passes off entirely in 24.

Leucocytes obtained by centrifugalizing oxalated blood shortly after an injection were never found to contain the stain.

Neutral red was in sharp contrast to trypan blue in regard to its therapeutic effect, which was negligible, if not adverse. Febrile reactions were common and yet this form of shock did not affect the course of the disease (Cp. trypan blue therapy).

CONGENITAL MALARIA.

There has been much conflict of opinion on the question whether or not malaria can be transmitted to the foetus *via* the placenta. Practically all the careful and extensive work done in different parts of the world gave a negative answer and it was only the occasional case reported of congenital malaria that kept the matter still open. However, in the Ceylon epidemic a small series of definite cases was described by WICKRAMASURIYA (1935) but it is important to realize that these all occurred in grave malignant forms of the disease.

The following is a series of cases from inhabitants of the hyperendemic areas around Kisumu, that is to say people in whom the occurrence of malarial malignancy is an event of the greatest rarity.

TABLE III.

Number of Cases.	
Mother's blood positive ; Placenta positive	86
" " negative ; " "	24
" " positive ; " negative	36
" " negative ; " "	258
Total :—	404

Blood slides from the infant were taken immediately after birth and again, if the placental blood was positive, after 7 days, in order to see if any infection had taken place during parturition.

It is extraordinarily easy for contamination of the infant's blood-slide to occur from a highly infected mother's blood and this fallacy should be excluded in every investigation.

No positives in the infants were obtained either at birth or 7 days after ; and I think it can be taken that, in hyperendemic areas, hereditary transmission of malaria is negligible as a factor in the spread of the disease.

The above series included seventeen abortions in which the spleen and the brain were likewise negative.

A few cases of relapsing fever infections were encountered in the series and in one of them the disease was transmitted to the offspring. I was able to show that infection in this case probably occurred during the process of suckling and not trans-placentally (GARNHAM, 1936). The placenta itself showed no organisms. In two cases, the mothers' blood was positive, but neither the placenta nor the infants' bloods every day for a fortnight after birth showed any "spirochaetes."

Sheathed and unsheathed microfilariae were occasionally seen in both the peripheral and placental blood of the mother but transmission to the infant never resulted.

SUMMARY.

1. Over 500 cases of pregnancy occurring in native women of hyper-endemic malaria areas of Kenya Colony were studied and the placentas examined in order (a) to observe the reaction of the R.E. system, (b) to observe the nature of the immunity and (c) to determine the origin of the placental R.E. cells.

2. The ease with which the immunity of different malaria phases can be studied by this method is explained.

3. The well-known picture of schizonts and R.E. phagocytosis is not seen until the 4th month of pregnancy.

4. The characteristic reaction is associated only with *P. falciparum* infections, which closely resemble those occurring in culture or in malignant forms of the disease. The presence of "ectoplasmic" forms and the absence of crescents are particularly to be noted.

5. The process of immunity is traced from inception to establishment, and it is seen *inter alia* that there is no R.E. response at the beginning of a new attack (in spite of the presence of numerous schizonts) but that a response occurs immediately at the beginning of a relapse.

6. The largest number of R.E. cells is found in chronic malaria, when there has been a fairly heavy infection in the blood throughout pregnancy.

7. The theoretical possibilities in regard to the origin of the placental phagocytes is considered and an origin from lymphocytes conveyed to the placenta by the blood stream is established.

8. The transformation occurs *in situ*; and all stages between the large lymphocytes and the mature R.E. cells are seen in the intervillous spaces.

9. The morphology and vital staining reactions of the placental elements are described.

10. The significance of the high lymphocyte counts in tropical bloods is pointed out.

11. Relapses of malaria following parturition are probably due to the expulsion with the placenta of a highly active R.E. system of defence.

12. Experiments with trypan blue demonstrated the lack of affinity of this dye for the placental phagocytes and the consequent invalidity of certain blockade experiments.

13. The R.E. cells stain readily with neutral red, however, even in severe forms of the disease and complete blockage with malarial fragments is never seen. The theory that death in such cases is due to a blocked R.E. is therefore probably incorrect. Hyperplasia is very evident in fatal cases and there seems to be no intrinsic failure in the R.E. mechanism.

14. Certain peculiarities in the effect of trypan blue are described, including the constant staining of the foetus, the remarkable periodicity of excretion of the dye in the urine and its therapeutic action in chronic malaria.

15. Over 400 cases were investigated to see if congenital malaria occurred. No placental transmission of the malarial parasite, *Spirochaeta duttoni* or microfilaria could be found. In 17 abortions, the spleens and brains of the infants were likewise negative.

REFERENCES.

- BLACKLOCK, B. & GORDON, R. M. (1925). Malaria parasites in the placental blood. *Ann. trop. Med. & Parasitol.* 19, 37.
- CAPPELL, D. F. (1929). Intravital and supravital staining. *J. Path. Bact.*, 32, 595, 629, 675.
- DU BOIS, A. H. (1934). *Physiologie et Physiopathologie du Système Reticulo-Endothelial*. Paris : Masson & Cie.
- FINDLAY, G. M. (1933). In discussion. THOMSON, J. G. Immunity in malaria. *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 26, 504.
- GARNHAM, P. C. C. (1931). Observations on *Plasmodium falciparum* with special reference to the production of crescents : Kenya *E. Afr. med. J.*, 8, 2.
- (1936). A case of "congenital" relapsing fever. *E. Afr. med. J.*, 13, 50.
- GREEN-ARMYTAGE, V. B. & DUTTA, P. C. (1936). *A Textbook of Midwifery in the Tropics*. 2nd Ed. London : Butterworth & Co. (India) Ltd.
- HADFIELD, G. & GARROD, L. P. (1934). *Recent Advances in Pathology*. 2nd Ed. London : J. & A. Churchill, Ltd.
- JAMES, S. P. & TATE, P. (1937). New knowledge of the life cycle of malaria parasites. *Nature*, 139, 545.
- JORDAN, H. E. (1934). *Textbook of Histology*. London : D. Appleton Century Co.
- KATSUYA, SH. (1932). *Jap. J. Obstet. Gynec.*, 15, 77.
- KRISHNAN, K. V., SMITH, R. O. A. & LAL, C. (1933). *Indian J. med. Res.*, 69, 541.
- MULLIGAN, H. W. (1929). *Ibid.*, 16, 1099, 1107.
- SACHS, B. (1926). The reticulo-endothelial system. *Physiol. Rev.*, 6, 504.
- SINTON, J. A. (1935). Studies in immunity in malaria. *Rec. Malaria Surv. India.*, 5, 501.
- SMITH, H. P. (1930). *J. experim. Med.*, 51, 395.
- TALIAFERRO, W. H. (1932). Experimental studies on the malaria of monkeys. *Amer. J. Hyg.*, 16, 429.
- TALIAFERRO, W. H. & CANNON, P. R. (1936). The cellular reactions during primary infections and superinfections of *Plasmodium brasilianum* in Panamanian monkeys. *J. infect. Dis.*, 59, 72.
- TALIAFERRO, W. H. & MULLIGAN, H. W. (1937). *Indian med. Res. Mem.*, No. 29.
- THOMSON, J. G. (1934). Malaria in Nyasaland. *Proc. R. Soc. Med.*, 28, 391.
- TILGHMAN, R. C. & LEE, F. C. (1931). *Bull. Johns Hopk. Univ.*, 49, 360.
- VINT, F. W. (1937). Post-mortem findings in the natives of Kenya. *E. Afr. med. J.*, 13, 332.
- WICKRAMASURIYA, G. A. W. (1935). *J. Obstet. Gynec.*, 42, 816.

DISCUSSION.

Major H. W. Mulligan : Every addition to our knowledge of the mechanism of immunity in malaria is important because the proper understanding of this subject may prove of great value, not only in devising measures to combat malaria in severely infected localities, but also in seeking advancement in the rational treatment of the disease.

Considerable advances in our knowledge of the immunology of malaria have been made in recent years. The study of malaria in cases of general paralysis of the insane in this and other countries has done much to advance our knowledge of this subject in human malaria. The recent researches on avian and simian malaria, particularly by Dr. TALIAFERRO and his co-workers in America and by Colonel SINTON and his colleagues in India—with both of whom I have had the good fortune to work in collaboration—have brought to light certain cellular and other responses to malarial infections which, in many instances, could not have been demonstrated by the study of malaria in man. Incidentally, these investigations have again illustrated the remarkably close resemblance which exists between human, bird and monkey malaria.

In opening this discussion I feel that it may perhaps be advantageous to outline briefly what I believe to be the present position regarding the aspects of malarial immunity with which we are chiefly concerned this evening. We shall then be in a better position to see how the findings which Dr. GARNHAM has just presented fit into the picture.

Detailed studies of the organs and tissues at all stages of different malarial infections in birds and monkeys have revealed a very striking correlation between the acquisition of immunity in malaria and the cellular changes which occur in certain organs. There is no time to-night to do more than refer very briefly to these changes. The disappearance of parasites at all stages of a malarial infection can be directly correlated with the activity of the differentiated macrophages of the spleen and liver and, to a less extent, of the bone marrow. During the acute rise of the initial attack there is a greater or lesser degree of destruction of the parasites (natural immunity) depending on the virulence of the parasite. This is associated with a comparatively sluggish activity of the macrophages of these organs. In virulent infections such as *P. falciparum* in man or *P. knowlesi* in *rhesus* monkeys there is a progressive lymphoid hyperplasia, but this is offset by the tremendous destruction of lymphocytes and other tissue elements in the terminal phases of the disease. In acute fatal cases no immunity is acquired. In less severe infections such as *P. vivax* in man or *P. cynomolgi* in *rhesus* monkeys the termination of the initial attack ("crisis") the subsequent low grade ("developed") infection and immunity to homologous superinfection are associated with an *acquired* immunity which involves a greatly enhanced activity of the macrophages with a consequent greater destruction of the parasites. In acquired immunity the macrophages are not only greatly increased in numbers but individual macrophages are very much more active.

Although both natural and acquired immunity involve the macrophages, the former is non-specific and relatively ineffective whereas the latter is highly specific and very effective. These cellular changes occur in certain strategically placed organs—the spleen, the liver and the bone marrow. In an infection such as malaria these organs present unique situations for the removal of haematogenous material because they contain large numbers of macrophages in areas where the blood circulates comparatively slowly. In other organs in which the macrophage content is high these cells may not be so situated as to facilitate the removal of material from the blood stream but may be advantageously placed for the removal of material of different origin. The macrophages of the medullary portion of the lymph nodes, for example, are so situated that they can remove material from the lymph stream but not from the blood. Similarly, the macrophages of the lung (dust cells or septal cells) are conveniently placed for the removal of particulate matter entering through the air channels but have no opportunity for removing material from the rapidly circulating blood of the alveolar capillaries. At certain stages of some malarial infections the enormous increase in the number of macrophages and the astounding phagocytic activity of individual macrophages has to be seen to be believed. I am one of those who believe that many of these macrophages arise from lymphocytes. This belief is not, of course, general.

This remarkable cellular reactivity is not, however, the whole story of malarial immunity for we know that even in the presence of a highly stimulated macrophage system heterologous superinfection (species and even strains) may be followed by an unmodified infection which may prove fatal. The highly specific nature of acquired immunity points to the interaction of specific antibodies in the defence reaction and these are probably of the nature of opsonins. The defence mechanism against malaria may be likened to a military force in which the cellular hyperplasia represents the personnel and the hypothetical antibodies represent the ammunition. In the early stages of the war the personnel is mobilized but in the absence of an adequate supply of ammunition their activities are limited since they can engage only in hand-to-hand fighting (sluggish phagocytosis of natural immunity). Like Dr. GARNHAM, I too have been impressed by the gallant efforts of this handicapped army in the presence of a virulent invader—it may resist almost to the last man. If the army can hold out until adequate supplies of ammunition become available it can then wage active warfare against the invader and few of the enemy can survive for long. For many years it has been debated whether the macrophages in malaria are aggressive or whether they are merely scavengers ingesting dead and effete parasites, debris, etc. In my opinion, they are more than scavengers, and if we follow up the military simile we must admit that personnel alone is of greater utility than ammunition alone.

Although there are various *a priori* reasons for assuming the presence of some antibody in malarial immunity, attempts to demonstrate such antibodies

have been attended with erratic, inconclusive and even contradictory results. The simplest explanation for this failure is that put forward by Dr. TALIAFERRO and his colleagues who believe that antibodies are produced locally in sufficient quantities to be operative in certain specific organs *in situ* (for example, the spleen) but not in sufficient amounts to be easily or regularly demonstrable in the peripheral blood where their presence has usually been sought.

This evening Dr. GARNHAM has presented us with a new problem. The maternal sinuses of the placenta in common with those of the spleen, liver and bone marrow would appear to offer a unique situation for intimate contact between blood elements and macrophage cells. There is one striking difference however, namely that according to Dr. GARNHAM, the placenta is devoid of macrophages or their potential progenitors under normal conditions. If this be so we are driven to the conclusion that the accumulation of cells of the lymphocyte-macrophage series ("polyblasts") in malarial placentas is brought in from outside. This might be accounted for in one of two ways—firstly, by a deposition of the lymphocytes and monocytes of the blood which develop locally into macrophages as may occur in local inflammatory reactions. Against such a hypothesis is the extreme scarcity of cells in mitosis which has been stressed by Dr. GARNHAM. I am inclined to favour the probability of the alternative explanation, viz.: that there is a direct "wash in" of cells at all stages of development between lymphocyte and macrophage. In our work on monkeys it was the rule to find a large number of unusual cells in the blood vessels of various organs including cells similar to those which have been described in the placenta by Dr. GARNHAM, plus, in some cases, cells of the erythropoietic series. Some of these were observed in ordinary veins and arteries while others appeared to be concentrated in the blood sinuses of various organs such as, for example, the adrenal gland. In some cases the blood vessels of almost every organ contained polyblasts many of which were filled with pigment. The presence in the peripheral blood of cells of the types mentioned gives only a rough and inadequate indication of the immeasurably greater extent of phagocytosis taking place in such organs as the spleen and liver in malaria. This seems to be true also of the polyblasts in the placental sinuses where the amount of phagocytosis, though considerable, is apparently very much less than one would expect to find, for example, in the red pulp of the spleen.

We know from our own experimental studies that immunity in malaria may be upset by such procedures as splenectomy or so-called "blockade" of the macrophage system. Dr. GARNHAM has raised the interesting question as to whether expulsion of the placenta removes from the body an appreciable proportion of its cellular defence mechanism with the resultant occurrence of parasitaemia and fever which are so common after child-birth in malarious mothers. May it not be that the sharp attack of malaria which is so frequently seen after parturition may be more akin to the occurrence of similar acute attacks which, as we know, are frequently associated with excessive fatigue and exposure.

Although both natural and acquired immunity involve the macrophages, the former is non-specific and relatively ineffective whereas the latter is highly specific and very effective. These cellular changes occur in certain strategically placed organs—the spleen, the liver and the bone marrow. In an infection such as malaria these organs present unique situations for the removal of haematogenous material because they contain large numbers of macrophages in areas where the blood circulates comparatively slowly. In other organs in which the macrophage content is high these cells may not be so situated as to facilitate the removal of material from the blood stream but may be advantageously placed for the removal of material of different origin. The macrophages of the medullary portion of the lymph nodes, for example, are so situated that they can remove material from the lymph stream but not from the blood. Similarly, the macrophages of the lung (dust cells or septal cells) are conveniently placed for the removal of particulate matter entering through the air channels but have no opportunity for removing material from the rapidly circulating blood of the alveolar capillaries. At certain stages of some malarial infections the enormous increase in the number of macrophages and the astounding phagocytic activity of individual macrophages has to be seen to be believed. I am one of those who believe that many of these macrophages arise from lymphocytes. This belief is not, of course, general.

This remarkable cellular reactivity is not, however, the whole story of malarial immunity for we know that even in the presence of a highly stimulated macrophage system heterologous superinfection (species and even strains) may be followed by an unmodified infection which may prove fatal. The highly specific nature of acquired immunity points to the interaction of specific antibodies in the defence reaction and these are probably of the nature of opsonins. The defence mechanism against malaria may be likened to a military force in which the cellular hyperplasia represents the personnel and the hypothetical antibodies represent the ammunition. In the early stages of the war the personnel is mobilized but in the absence of an adequate supply of ammunition their activities are limited since they can engage only in hand-to-hand fighting (sluggish phagocytosis of natural immunity). Like Dr. GARNHAM, I too have been impressed by the gallant efforts of this handicapped army in the presence of a virulent invader—it may resist almost to the last man. If the army can hold out until adequate supplies of ammunition become available it can then wage active warfare against the invader and few of the enemy can survive for long. For many years it has been debated whether the macrophages in malaria are aggressive or whether they are merely scavengers ingesting dead and effete parasites, debris, etc. In my opinion, they are more than scavengers, and if we follow up the military simile we must admit that personnel alone is of greater utility than ammunition alone.

Although there are various *a priori* reasons for assuming the presence of some antibody in malarial immunity, attempts to demonstrate such antibodies

have been attended with erratic, inconclusive and even contradictory results. The simplest explanation for this failure is that put forward by Dr. TALIAFERRO and his colleagues who believe that antibodies are produced locally in sufficient quantities to be operative in certain specific organs *in situ* (for example, the spleen) but not in sufficient amounts to be easily or regularly demonstrable in the peripheral blood where their presence has usually been sought.

This evening Dr. GARNHAM has presented us with a new problem. The maternal sinuses of the placenta in common with those of the spleen, liver and bone marrow would appear to offer a unique situation for intimate contact between blood elements and macrophage cells. There is one striking difference however, namely that according to Dr. GARNHAM, the placenta is devoid of macrophages or their potential progenitors under normal conditions. If this be so we are driven to the conclusion that the accumulation of cells of the lymphocyte-macrophage series ("polyblasts") in malarial placentas is brought in from outside. This might be accounted for in one of two ways—firstly, by a deposition of the lymphocytes and monocytes of the blood which develop locally into macrophages as may occur in local inflammatory reactions. Against such a hypothesis is the extreme scarcity of cells in mitosis which has been stressed by Dr. GARNHAM. I am inclined to favour the probability of the alternative explanation, viz.: that there is a direct "wash in" of cells at all stages of development between lymphocyte and macrophage. In our work on monkeys it was the rule to find a large number of unusual cells in the blood vessels of various organs including cells similar to those which have been described in the placenta by Dr. GARNHAM, plus, in some cases, cells of the erythropoietic series. Some of these were observed in ordinary veins and arteries while others appeared to be concentrated in the blood sinuses of various organs such as, for example, the adrenal gland. In some cases the blood vessels of almost every organ contained polyblasts many of which were filled with pigment. The presence in the peripheral blood of cells of the types mentioned gives only a rough and inadequate indication of the immeasurably greater extent of phagocytosis taking place in such organs as the spleen and liver in malaria. This seems to be true also of the polyblasts in the placental sinuses where the amount of phagocytosis, though considerable, is apparently very much less than one would expect to find, for example, in the red pulp of the spleen.

We know from our own experimental studies that immunity in malaria may be upset by such procedures as splenectomy or so-called "blockade" of the macrophage system. Dr. GARNHAM has raised the interesting question as to whether expulsion of the placenta removes from the body an appreciable proportion of its cellular defence mechanism with the resultant occurrence of parasitaemia and fever which are so common after child-birth in malarious mothers. May it not be that the sharp attack of malaria which is so frequently seen after parturition may be more akin to the occurrence of similar acute attacks which, as we know, are frequently associated with excessive fatigue and exposure.

traumatism, haemorrhages and the like ? This may be seen even in the non-gravid male ! The case of splenectomy may be different since it results in the removal of a vast quantity of stimulated macrophages and presumably also of antibodies which, as I have indicated above, are probably at highest concentration in the spleen, and may even be derived from the splenic macrophages. Furthermore, malarial attacks following splenectomy may be more severe than in a previously uninfected but intact host. Dr. GARNHAM has not adduced any evidence that the cells of the macrophage type in the placenta are specifically altered, that there are local antibodies, or that the cells present differ materially either in nature or number from the similar series of cells so commonly seen in the blood vessels of almost any other organ.

In concluding I should like to mention that the term "reticulo-endothelium" has little to commend it. The chief source of supply of active macrophages is probably not reticular tissue, and ordinary endothelial cells are not usually phagocytic. I prefer the term "macrophage system" which, at least, has some functional significance. It would be better still to adopt a more comprehensive name such as "*lymphoid-macrophage system*" in order to include both the macrophages and their precursors, all of which are involved in malarial and other defence reactions.

Dr. V. B. Green-Armytage : During the 23 years I spent in Calcutta I have many times seen the place where Sir RONALD ROSS worked ; and I expect I am one of the very few who have seen Dr. GARNHAM at work, and also seen those remarkable blue babies of his.

Coming to that part of his paper which interested me particularly I admit, of course, that the foetus must, and occasionally does, die either from anoxaemia, malarial toxins, or more particularly hyperpyrexia ; and although Dr. GARNHAM has told us he has never seen a case of congenital malaria, I think we must be guarded in accepting that statement as a general rule ; for if you look at the anatomy of the placenta there seems to be no real anatomical reason why congenital malaria should not be extremely common. Apart from the delicacy of the degenerating syncytial membrane, as the pregnancy goes up to full time you must allow that trauma—whether incidental or resulting from toxæmia and accidental haemorrhage accompanying that condition—must later break up continuity in the ectoderm of this covering, and thus congenital malaria must occur more often than we have been asked to consider. Personally, I have only seen one case of congenital malaria in a European, and in that case the parasites were found by Sir LEONARD ROGERS. In this connection it will not be without interest to refer to a case reported by Dr. PARKES-WEBER at the Royal Society of Medicine in 1936. This particular patient was a case of very advanced melanotic sarcoma : she was allowed to reach full term, when Caesarean section was done. The placenta was found grossly invaded by melanomata. The baby was perfectly well but 10 months later Dr. PARKES-WEBER had the misfortune to show us the liver of that baby densely infiltrated with melanomata. These melanin cell bodies must have passed direct from the maternal circulation via

the intervillar spaces, through the ectodermal areas and thence through the blood stream of the baby and given rise to the liver condition seen 10 months later.

I should like to agree with Dr. GARNHAM that this macrophage system is responsible, or rather, the cutting off of the macrophage system is responsible, for those attacks of malaria which occur in women, particularly after parturition, when they have hitherto been treated for malarial symptoms. Dr. GARNHAM's explanation satisfies me so far as I have read it in his paper, which should be of great interest to obstetricians in the East.

Lt.-Col. J. A. Sinton : Dr. GARNHAM has tackled the question of malarial immunity mainly from the cellular aspect, but, as pointed out by Major MULLIGAN, there is another important side to this problem, that is the humoral one. In this connection the former worker records that the cellular responses of the reticulo-endothelial system were just as marked in the placentas of patients, who died of cerebral malaria, as in those cases with similarly high infestations but with marked immunity. He considers that "this demonstrates that death has not occurred as a result of any intrinsic failure of the cellular mechanism." He also notes, however, that in such fatal cases there was a great abundance of parasitised red blood cells which were not phagocytosed, and that only a proportion of the reticulo-endothelial cells contained pigment. This appears to me to be further evidence to show that even a highly hypertrophied reticulo-endothelial system is relatively ineffective in the absence of some *specific* "antibody" or *specific* sensitization of the macrophages. To use the simile employed by Major MULLIGAN, we have a large army collected together, but it is relatively ineffective because of an insufficiency of serviceable weapons. One wonders whether Dr. GARNHAM in his splenic punctures found any evidence that this diminution in phagocytic activity was as marked in the spleen as in the placenta of fatal cases. If not, it would suggest that there was in the former organ a greater concentration of the factor or factors responsible for the stimulation of active specific phagocytosis, and possibly that such substances (antibodies) are produced in greater quantities by the more fixed reticulo-endothelial cells than by the wandering blood histiocytes which Dr. GARNHAM tells us form the bulk of such macrophages in the placenta.

Dr. GARNHAM mentions that he has been unable to find in the human placenta any trace of the non-pigmented development of the malarial parasites in endothelial cells, such as has been recorded in the cycle of several species of avian plasmodia. Recently it has occurred to me that it is possible that such endothelial forms in the bird may be more closely associated with the gametocytogony than with the schizogony of avian parasites. In *Halteridium* infections one sees a somewhat similar non-pigmented development in the vascular endothelium of certain organs, from which a very large number of the resultant forms become gametocytes. It is interesting to note, therefore, that in the placenta where endothelial cells are few or absent, Dr. GARNHAM remarks especially upon the absence of developing gametocytes. CLARK (1915)* from

*CLARK, H. C. (1915). *Jl. exper. Med.*, 22, 427-444.

traumatism, haemorrhages and the like? This may be seen even in the non-gravid male! The case of splenectomy may be different since it results in the removal of a vast quantity of stimulated macrophages and presumably also of antibodies which, as I have indicated above, are probably at highest concentration in the spleen, and may even be derived from the splenic macrophages. Furthermore, malarial attacks following splenectomy may be more severe than in a previously uninfected but intact host. Dr. GARNHAM has not adduced any evidence that the cells of the macrophage type in the placenta are specifically altered, that there are local antibodies, or that the cells present differ materially either in nature or number from the similar series of cells so commonly seen in the blood vessels of almost any other organ.

In concluding I should like to mention that the term "reticulo-endothelium" has little to commend it. The chief source of supply of active macrophages is probably not reticular tissue, and ordinary endothelial cells are not usually phagocytic. I prefer the term "macrophage system" which, at least, has some functional significance. It would be better still to adopt a more comprehensive name such as "*lymphoid-macrophage system*" in order to include both the macrophages and their precursors, all of which are involved in malarial and other defence reactions.

Dr. V. B. Green-Armytage: During the 23 years I spent in Calcutta I have many times seen the place where Sir RONALD ROSS worked; and I expect I am one of the very few who have seen Dr. GARNHAM at work, and also seen those remarkable blue babies of his.

Coming to that part of his paper which interested me particularly I admit, of course, that the foetus must, and occasionally does, die either from anoxaemia, malarial toxins, or more particularly hyperpyrexia; and although Dr. GARNHAM has told us he has never seen a case of congenital malaria, I think we must be guarded in accepting that statement as a general rule; for if you look at the anatomy of the placenta there seems to be no real anatomical reason why congenital malaria should not be extremely common. Apart from the delicacy of the degenerating syncytial membrane, as the pregnancy goes up to full time you must allow that trauma—whether incidental or resulting from toxæmia and accidental haemorrhage accompanying that condition—must later break up continuity in the ectoderm of this covering, and thus congenital malaria must occur more often than we have been asked to consider. Personally, I have only seen one case of congenital malaria in a European, and in that case the parasites were found by Sir LEONARD ROGERS. In this connection it will not be without interest to refer to a case reported by Dr. PARKES-WEBER at the Royal Society of Medicine in 1936. This particular patient was a case of very advanced melanotic sarcoma: she was allowed to reach full term, when Caesarean section was done. The placenta was found grossly invaded by melanomata. The baby was perfectly well but 10 months later Dr. PARKES-WEBER had the misfortune to show us the liver of that baby densely infiltrated with melanomata. These melanin cell bodies must have passed direct from the maternal circulation via

the intervillar spaces, through the ectodermal areas and thence through the blood stream of the baby and given rise to the liver condition seen 10 months later.

I should like to agree with Dr. GARNHAM that this macrophage system is responsible, or rather, the cutting off of the macrophage system is responsible, for those attacks of malaria which occur in women, particularly after parturition, when they have hitherto been treated for malarial symptoms. Dr. GARNHAM's explanation satisfies me so far as I have read it in his paper, which should be of great interest to obstetricians in the East.

Lt.-Col. J. A. Sinton : Dr. GARNHAM has tackled the question of malarial immunity mainly from the cellular aspect, but, as pointed out by Major MULLIGAN, there is another important side to this problem, that is the humoral one. In this connection the former worker records that the cellular responses of the reticulo-endothelial system were just as marked in the placentas of patients, who died of cerebral malaria, as in those cases with similarly high infestations but with marked immunity. He considers that "this demonstrates that death has not occurred as a result of any intrinsic failure of the cellular mechanism." He also notes, however, that in such fatal cases there was a great abundance of parasitised red blood cells which were not phagocytosed, and that only a proportion of the reticulo-endothelial cells contained pigment. This appears to me to be further evidence to show that even a highly hypertrophied reticulo-endothelial system is relatively ineffective in the absence of some *specific* "antibody" or *specific* sensitization of the macrophages. To use the simile employed by Major MULLIGAN, we have a large army collected together, but it is relatively ineffective because of an insufficiency of serviceable weapons. One wonders whether Dr. GARNHAM in his splenic punctures found any evidence that this diminution in phagocytic activity was as marked in the spleen as in the placenta of fatal cases. If not, it would suggest that there was in the former organ a greater concentration of the factor or factors responsible for the stimulation of active specific phagocytosis, and possibly that such substances (antibodies) are produced in greater quantities by the more fixed reticulo-endothelial cells than by the wandering blood histiocytes which Dr. GARNHAM tells us form the bulk of such macrophages in the placenta.

Dr. GARNHAM mentions that he has been unable to find in the human placenta any trace of the non-pigmented development of the malarial parasites in endothelial cells, such as has been recorded in the cycle of several species of avian plasmodia. Recently it has occurred to me that it is possible that such endothelial forms in the bird may be more closely associated with the gametocytogony than with the schizogony of avian parasites. In *Halteridium* infections one sees a somewhat similar non-pigmented development in the vascular endothelium of certain organs, from which a very large number of the resultant forms become gametocytes. It is interesting to note, therefore, that in the placenta where endothelial cells are few or absent, Dr. GARNHAM remarks especially upon the absence of developing gametocytes. CLARK (1915)* from

*CLARK, H. C. (1915). *Jl. exper. Med.*, 22, 427-444.

an examination of 400 placentas in Panama, also noted the scarcity of gametocytes in the blood of this organ. In contrast with this is the enormous number of gametocytes, mature and immature, shown in the splenic smear which I demonstrated at the last laboratory meeting of this Society in connection with the effect of atabrin on crescents. [See p. 11].

Major MULLIGAN has pointed out that, apart from any loss of reticulo-endothelial tissue, relapses of an apparently similar nature to those occurring in the puerperium may develop in other conditions which involve a great loss of blood and damage to tissues, comparable in extent to that seen in childbirth. It seems to me that, if it were not for the effects of these injuries, the expulsion of the placenta might be regarded as a beneficial event as was suggested by CLARK (1915). Dr. GARNHAM reports that, in the early stages of placental development, this organ affords no special facilities for the completion of the schizogonic cycle of the malarial parasite, but that later it becomes almost ideal for this purpose. With the expulsion of the placenta, the patient would appear to be getting rid, not only of an enormous number of parasites, but also of an organ which is a danger because of its special suitability for the survival and multiplication of the plasmodia. In addition, its removal must relieve the spleen of the task of supplying large numbers of phagocytic cells to the placenta, if Dr. GARNHAM's interpretation of their origin be correct. I do not consider that the loss of the placenta can justifiably be compared with the effects of splenectomy, in which one removes not only what is probably the source of the major portion of the protective macrophages in the body, but what is possibly also the chief source of the specific "antibodies."

I would be glad to learn from Dr. GARNHAM whether he has noted any difference between the times when parasites are first detected in the blood of the children (*a*) of mothers with heavily infested placentas, and (*b*) of mothers in whom this condition was not present. Recently BARBER *et al.* (1936)* and CLARK (1937)† report that in some areas of hyperendemic malaria in Greek Macedonia and in Panama, the parasite rate in children up to 2 months old is comparatively low. They suggest that this may possibly be due either to the passage through the placental barrier of some inhibitory substance from the mother to the child, or to something of an immunising nature acquired during lactation. In this connection, another possibility to be considered is whether the passage of the hypothetical malaria "toxin" through the placenta may have resulted in the stimulation of an output of specific "antibodies" from the reticulo-endothelial cells of the foetus, or in a desensitization of these cells to the action of the specific "toxins" of the strain of malarial parasite responsible for the infection, *i.e.*, an indirect active immunization rather than a mere passive one.

*BARBER, M. A. *et al.* (1936). *Amer. J. Hyg.*, 24, 258.

†CLARK, H. C. (1937). *Southern med. J.*, 30, 848.

Dr. E. M. Lourie : It is by now a clearly established fact that the reticulo-endothelial system (if Major MULLIGAN will still allow it to be so termed) is vital in the machinery of immunity in malaria, and one of the most important ideas put before us by Dr. GARNHAM to-night is that the R.E. cells of the placenta may play a leading rôle in the matter—so much so that one is almost bound to feel rather sorry for those unfortunate individuals who have to wrestle with their malaria without having a placenta to help them along. As he said, his idea might serve to explain those relapses of malaria which occur after the expulsion of the placenta ; but one must not forget the point touched on by Major MULLIGAN, that parturition is very much a traumatic business, and that trauma alone is quite sufficient to precipitate relapses of malaria. The case quoted by Dr. GARNHAM on page 24 is interesting. Here a chronic case of malaria was accompanied by very little activity of the reticulo-endothelial cells of the placenta, contrary to the usual findings. Since a very large spleen was found, Dr. GARNHAM's interpretation is that, in this exceptional case, the spleen had not shirked its responsibilities, as it ordinarily does when a placenta is there to impose upon. One feels that the spleen must be only too glad to seize upon every possible opportunity of handing over a part of its onerous duties to the placenta, which, according to Dr. GARNHAM, would appear to be so very willing to oblige in the matter, and I would like to ask whether Dr. GARNHAM is able to support his thesis by telling us that big spleens in malaria are less common among pregnant women than among non-pregnant women and among men.

Perhaps the technical difficulty of comparing the size of the spleen in pregnant and in non-pregnant subjects would make it very difficult to determine this point.

Dr. G. M. Findlay : Dr. GARNHAM has found that though the young fibrocytes of the placenta take up trypan blue this dye is strikingly absent from the placental macrophages. This failure of the macrophages to take up trypan blue is, he suggests, due to the alkaline reaction of the cytoplasm of these cells, since when treated with litmus he found that their cytoplasm stained blue.

Although the placental macrophages failed to stain with trypan blue they readily took up India ink. From his failure to induce the placental macrophages to take up trypan blue Dr. GARNHAM deduces that this stain is not taken up by the macrophages of the body, the somatic macrophages, and that any efforts to blockade these cells with trypan blue must necessarily be unsuccessful.

Dr. GARNHAM's results on vital staining are at variance with those of a number of other investigators.

It is now generally agreed that suspensoid colloids such as India ink are taken up in the same way and by the same cells as acid dyes such as trypan blue. The subject is fully discussed by SCHULEMANN (1917).

The evidence that the somatic macrophages take up trypan blue to a greater extent than other cells is extensive. To deal only with more recent observations, EVANS and SCOTT (1921) found a marked difference between the staining of

an examination of 400 placentas in Panama, also noted the scarcity of gametocytes in the blood of this organ. In contrast with this is the enormous number of gametocytes, mature and immature, shown in the splenic smear which I demonstrated at the last laboratory meeting of this Society in connection with the effect of atebirin on crescents. [See p. 11].

Major MULLIGAN has pointed out that, apart from any loss of reticulo-endothelial tissue, relapses of an apparently similar nature to those occurring in the puerperium may develop in other conditions which involve a great loss of blood and damage to tissues, comparable in extent to that seen in childbirth. It seems to me that, if it were not for the effects of these injuries, the expulsion of the placenta might be regarded as a beneficial event as was suggested by CLARK (1915). Dr. GARNHAM reports that, in the early stages of placental development, this organ affords no special facilities for the completion of the schizogonic cycle of the malarial parasite, but that later it becomes almost ideal for this purpose. With the expulsion of the placenta, the patient would appear to be getting rid, not only of an enormous number of parasites, but also of an organ which is a danger because of its special suitability for the survival and multiplication of the plasmodia. In addition, its removal must relieve the spleen of the task of supplying large numbers of phagocytic cells to the placenta, if Dr. GARNHAM's interpretation of their origin be correct. I do not consider that the loss of the placenta can justifiably be compared with the effects of splenectomy, in which one removes not only what is probably the source of the major portion of the protective macrophages in the body, but what is possibly also the chief source of the specific "antibodies."

I would be glad to learn from Dr. GARNHAM whether he has noted any difference between the times when parasites are first detected in the blood of the children (a) of mothers with heavily infested placentas, and (b) of mothers in whom this condition was not present. Recently BARBER *et al.* (1936)* and CLARK (1937)† report that in some areas of hyperendemic malaria in Greek Macedonia and in Panama, the parasite rate in children up to 2 months old is comparatively low. They suggest that this may possibly be due either to the passage through the placental barrier of some inhibitory substance from the mother to the child, or to something of an immunising nature acquired during lactation. In this connection, another possibility to be considered is whether the passage of the hypothetical malaria "toxin" through the placenta may have resulted in the stimulation of an output of specific "antibodies" from the reticulo-endothelial cells of the foetus, or in a desensitization of these cells to the action of the specific "toxins" of the strain of malarial parasite responsible for the infection, *i.e.*, an indirect active immunization rather than a mere passive one.

*BARBER, M. A. *et al.* (1936). *Amer. J. Hyg.*, 24, 258.

†CLARK, H. C. (1937). *Southern med. J.*, 30, 848.

Dr. E. M. Lourie : It is by now a clearly established fact that the reticulo-endothelial system (if Major MULLIGAN will still allow it to be so termed) is vital in the machinery of immunity in malaria, and one of the most important ideas put before us by Dr. GARNHAM to-night is that the R.E. cells of the placenta may play a leading rôle in the matter—so much so that one is almost bound to feel rather sorry for those unfortunate individuals who have to wrestle with their malaria without having a placenta to help them along. As he said, his idea might serve to explain those relapses of malaria which occur after the expulsion of the placenta; but one must not forget the point touched on by Major MULLIGAN, that parturition is very much a traumatic business, and that trauma alone is quite sufficient to precipitate relapses of malaria. The case quoted by Dr. GARNHAM on page 24 is interesting. Here a chronic case of malaria was accompanied by very little activity of the reticulo-endothelial cells of the placenta, contrary to the usual findings. Since a very large spleen was found, Dr. GARNHAM's interpretation is that, in this exceptional case, the spleen had not shirked its responsibilities, as it ordinarily does when a placenta is there to impose upon. One feels that the spleen must be only too glad to seize upon every possible opportunity of handing over a part of its onerous duties to the placenta, which, according to Dr. GARNHAM, would appear to be so very willing to oblige in the matter, and I would like to ask whether Dr. GARNHAM is able to support his thesis by telling us that big spleens in malaria are less common among pregnant women than among non-pregnant women and among men.

Perhaps the technical difficulty of comparing the size of the spleen in pregnant and in non-pregnant subjects would make it very difficult to determine this point.

Dr. G. M. Findlay : Dr. GARNHAM has found that though the young fibrocytes of the placenta take up trypan blue this dye is strikingly absent from the placental macrophages. This failure of the macrophages to take up trypan blue is, he suggests, due to the alkaline reaction of the cytoplasm of these cells, since when treated with litmus he found that their cytoplasm stained blue.

Although the placental macrophages failed to stain with trypan blue they readily took up India ink. From his failure to induce the placental macrophages to take up trypan blue Dr. GARNHAM deduces that this stain is not taken up by the macrophages of the body, the somatic macrophages, and that any efforts to blockade these cells with trypan blue must necessarily be unsuccessful.

Dr. GARNHAM's results on vital staining are at variance with those of a number of other investigators.

It is now generally agreed that suspensoid colloids such as India ink are taken up in the same way and by the same cells as acid dyes such as trypan blue. The subject is fully discussed by SCHULEMANN (1917).

The evidence that the somatic macrophages take up trypan blue to a greater extent than other cells is extensive. To deal only with more recent observations, EVANS and SCOTT (1921) found a marked difference between the staining of

an examination of 400 placentas in Panama, also noted the scarcity of gametocytes in the blood of this organ. In contrast with this is the enormous number of gametocytes, mature and immature, shown in the splenic smear which I demonstrated at the last laboratory meeting of this Society in connection with the effect of atebirin on crescents. [See p. 11].

Major MULLIGAN has pointed out that, apart from any loss of reticulo-endothelial tissue, relapses of an apparently similar nature to those occurring in the puerperium may develop in other conditions which involve a great loss of blood and damage to tissues, comparable in extent to that seen in childbirth. It seems to me that, if it were not for the effects of these injuries, the expulsion of the placenta might be regarded as a beneficial event as was suggested by CLARK (1915). Dr. GARNHAM reports that, in the early stages of placental development, this organ affords no special facilities for the completion of the schizogonic cycle of the malarial parasite, but that later it becomes almost ideal for this purpose. With the expulsion of the placenta, the patient would appear to be getting rid, not only of an enormous number of parasites, but also of an organ which is a danger because of its special suitability for the survival and multiplication of the plasmodia. In addition, its removal must relieve the spleen of the task of supplying large numbers of phagocytic cells to the placenta, if Dr. GARNHAM's interpretation of their origin be correct. I do not consider that the loss of the placenta can justifiably be compared with the effects of splenectomy, in which one removes not only what is probably the source of the major portion of the protective macrophages in the body, but what is possibly also the chief source of the specific "antibodies."

I would be glad to learn from Dr. GARNHAM whether he has noted any difference between the times when parasites are first detected in the blood of the children (*a*) of mothers with heavily infested placentas, and (*b*) of mothers in whom this condition was not present. Recently BARBER *et al.* (1936)* and CLARK (1937)† report that in some areas of hyperendemic malaria in Greek Macedonia and in Panama, the parasite rate in children up to 2 months old is comparatively low. They suggest that this may possibly be due either to the passage through the placental barrier of some inhibitory substance from the mother to the child, or to something of an immunising nature acquired during lactation. In this connection, another possibility to be considered is whether the passage of the hypothetical malaria "toxin" through the placenta may have resulted in the stimulation of an output of specific "antibodies" from the reticulo-endothelial cells of the foetus, or in a desensitization of these cells to the action of the specific "toxins" of the strain of malarial parasite responsible for the infection, *i.e.*, an indirect active immunization rather than a mere passive one.

*BARBER, M. A. *et al.* (1936). *Amer. J. Hyg.*, 24, 258.

†CLARK, H. C. (1937). *Southern med. J.*, 30, 848.

Dr. E. M. Lourie : It is by now a clearly established fact that the reticulo-endothelial system (if Major MULLIGAN will still allow it to be so termed) is vital in the machinery of immunity in malaria, and one of the most important ideas put before us by Dr. GARNHAM to-night is that the R.E. cells of the placenta may play a leading rôle in the matter—so much so that one is almost bound to feel rather sorry for those unfortunate individuals who have to wrestle with their malaria without having a placenta to help them along. As he said, his idea might serve to explain those relapses of malaria which occur after the expulsion of the placenta; but one must not forget the point touched on by Major MULLIGAN, that parturition is very much a traumatic business, and that trauma alone is quite sufficient to precipitate relapses of malaria. The case quoted by Dr. GARNHAM on page 24 is interesting. Here a chronic case of malaria was accompanied by very little activity of the reticulo-endothelial cells of the placenta, contrary to the usual findings. Since a very large spleen was found, Dr. GARNHAM's interpretation is that, in this exceptional case, the spleen had not shirked its responsibilities, as it ordinarily does when a placenta is there to impose upon. One feels that the spleen must be only too glad to seize upon every possible opportunity of handing over a part of its onerous duties to the placenta, which, according to Dr. GARNHAM, would appear to be so very willing to oblige in the matter, and I would like to ask whether Dr. GARNHAM is able to support his thesis by telling us that big spleens in malaria are less common among pregnant women than among non-pregnant women and among men.

Perhaps the technical difficulty of comparing the size of the spleen in pregnant and in non-pregnant subjects would make it very difficult to determine this point.

Dr. G. M. Findlay : Dr. GARNHAM has found that though the young fibrocytes of the placenta take up trypan blue this dye is strikingly absent from the placental macrophages. This failure of the macrophages to take up trypan blue is, he suggests, due to the alkaline reaction of the cytoplasm of these cells, since when treated with litmus he found that their cytoplasm stained blue.

Although the placental macrophages failed to stain with trypan blue they readily took up India ink. From his failure to induce the placental macrophages to take up trypan blue Dr. GARNHAM deduces that this stain is not taken up by the macrophages of the body, the somatic macrophages, and that any efforts to blockade these cells with trypan blue must necessarily be unsuccessful.

Dr. GARNHAM's results on vital staining are at variance with those of a number of other investigators.

It is now generally agreed that suspensoid colloids such as India ink are taken up in the same way and by the same cells as acid dyes such as trypan blue. The subject is fully discussed by SCHULEMANN (1917).

The evidence that the somatic macrophages take up trypan blue to a greater extent than other cells is extensive. To deal only with more recent observations, EVANS and SCOTT (1921) found a marked difference between the staining of

fibroblasts and macrophages. They state "the power to store vital dyestuffs is, on the part of the macrophage, greatly in excess of a similar capacity shown by the fibroblast cell."

MAXIMOW (1928) in describing the transformation of lymphocytes and monocytes into polyblasts (macrophages) in the course of inflammatory processes states that ultimately the hypertrophy of the haematogenous cells reaches such a degree that they can no longer be separated from the mobilized local histiocytes: simultaneously they show a rapidly increasing accumulation of the vital dye. LUDFORD (1929) found that a similar process occurred in the tissues surrounding tumours where the macrophages showed a much greater accumulation of trypan blue than the fibroblasts. The first formed dye droplets in the macrophages appear in the neighbourhood of the Golgi apparatus where the diffuse dye is segregated. Macrophages in addition to segregating the dyestuff into droplets were found, however, to be capable of phagocytosing relatively large particles. These observations were confirmed by TILGHMAN and LEE (1931) who found that in rabbits the injection of carmine following an injection of trypan blue showed that those macrophages which had become loaded with trypan blue were no longer capable of taking up the red dye. This is an example of a true blockade of certain reticulo-endothelial cells contravening the assertion that such cells cannot be blocked.

Both LUDFORD (1929) and TILGHMAN and LEE (1931) found that tumour cells were either unstained or stained only to a very slight extent with trypan blue. This fact which may be correlated with the observation of LEWIS (1927) that the pH of tumour cells is on the acid side and is 6.8, is in accordance with the known laws of colloidal chemistry, for since the micellae of trypan blue, a semi-colloidal acid dyestuff, bear a negative charge this will only be neutralized on being brought into contact with positively charged particles. That is to say trypan blue will be flocculated or precipitated in the presence of a more alkaline medium. It is, therefore, hard to understand why trypan blue is not flocculated by the placental macrophages if Dr. GARNHAM's statement is correct that the cytoplasm of these cells stains blue with litmus and is, therefore, alkaline. If the reaction of the cytoplasm of the macrophages had, on the other hand, been acid a logical explanation would have been forthcoming for the non-appearance of the dye in their cytoplasm. However, Dr. GARNHAM's finding that the cytoplasm of the placental macrophages stains blue with litmus is also in opposition to that of other investigations on the somatic macrophages, all of which show that while the granules of the macrophages stain pink the cytoplasm is either quite colourless or of only the faintest pink tint.

ROUS (1925) nevertheless found that in peritoneal exudates from rats, 24 hours after inoculation with litmus, 1 or 2 per cent. of the macrophages do stain blue in the manner described for the placental macrophages by Dr. GARNHAM. Convincing evidence is brought forward by Rous to show that in the rat peritoneal exudate only those cells that are dead or dying show blue staining with litmus.

It is obvious that the reaction of the somatic macrophages to trypan blue and litmus is very different from that of the placental macrophages as described by Dr. GARNHAM. If we accept Dr. GARNHAM's observations as correct, it is logically impossible to deduce from the behaviour of the placental macrophages anything in connection with the behaviour of the somatic macrophages towards trypan blue or to assert that blockade of the somatic macrophages by this dye is impossible.

REFERENCES.

- EVANS, H. M. & SCOTT, K. J. (1921). *Contr. Embryol. Carneg. Instn.*, 10, 1.
 LEWIS, W. C. M. (1927). *J. Cancer Res.*, 11, 16.
 LUDFORD, R. J. (1929). *Proc. R. Soc., B.*, 104, 493.
 MAXIMOW, A. (1928). The lymphocytes and plasma cells. *Special Cytology* (edited by E. V. COWDRY). New York: P. B. Hoeber.
 SCHULEMANN, W. (1917). *Biochem. Z.*, 80, 1.
 TILGHMAN, R. C. & LEE, F. C. (1931). *Bull. Johns Hopk. Hosp.*, 49, 360.

Dr. C. M. Wenyon: There is one question I should like to ask—it has to do with something which Dr. LOURIE hinted at in his remarks—how do people combat their malaria during the first 14, 15 or 16 years of life in the absence of a placenta. Dr. GARNHAM has told us that all these people with whom he worked had contracted malaria in the early days of their infancy, that they carried the infection for the rest of their lives, and that, whether they were males or females, presumably the whole of the macrophage immunity process was going on in their spleens and to a less extent in liver, bone-marrow and other organs. Presumably this would apply to those women who begin to develop a placenta. It is rather difficult for me to imagine that with the development of a placenta the immunity, which has been going on in the body generally, is taken over by the placenta, to be resumed when the placenta has been got rid of after 9 months of pregnancy. That being so, it seems to me that we ought to look upon the placenta as something outside the subject altogether. We should regard the placenta as an extraneous tumour which has started growing. It is a sort of angioma with maternal blood sinuses through which blood moves very slowly. Malarial parasites circulating in small numbers come into the sinuses and stagnate there and start to develop as they might do in a culture tube. They reproduce by schizogony and we may get a very large number of parasites in the sinuses as Dr. GARNHAM has shown us.

Certain cells of the lymphocyte-macrophage system come into the sinuses and find there an abnormal development of malarial parasites. This starts a veritable reticulo-endothelial response such as occurs under other circumstances in the spleen, liver and bone-marrow. Possibly on this account the parasites never have a chance of getting back into the maternal blood stream. I have spoken to Dr. GARNHAM about this very interesting process, and I think I am right in saying that he has found that even in those women who had a very large number of parasites in the placenta, there was no corresponding number of parasites in the peripheral blood; a very great multiplication of parasites in the placenta had not led to a great increase of parasites in the peripheral

fibroblasts and macrophages. They state "the power to store vital dyestuffs is, on the part of the macrophage, greatly in excess of a similar capacity shown by the fibroblast cell."

MAXIMOW (1928) in describing the transformation of lymphocytes and monocytes into polyblasts (macrophages) in the course of inflammatory processes states that ultimately the hypertrophy of the haematogenous cells reaches such a degree that they can no longer be separated from the mobilized local histiocytes: simultaneously they show a rapidly increasing accumulation of the vital dye. LUDFORD (1929) found that a similar process occurred in the tissues surrounding tumours where the macrophages showed a much greater accumulation of trypan blue than the fibroblasts. The first formed dye droplets in the macrophages appear in the neighbourhood of the Golgi apparatus where the diffuse dye is segregated. Macrophages in addition to segregating the dyestuff into droplets were found, however, to be capable of phagocytosing relatively large particles. These observations were confirmed by TILGHMAN and LEE (1931) who found that in rabbits the injection of carmine following an injection of trypan blue showed that those macrophages which had become loaded with trypan blue were no longer capable of taking up the red dye. This is an example of a true blockade of certain reticulo-endothelial cells contravening the assertion that such cells cannot be blocked.

Both LUDFORD (1929) and TILGHMAN and LEE (1931) found that tumour cells were either unstained or stained only to a very slight extent with trypan blue. This fact which may be correlated with the observation of LEWIS (1927) that the pH of tumour cells is on the acid side and is 6.8, is in accordance with the known laws of colloidal chemistry, for since the micellae of trypan blue, a semi-colloidal acid dyestuff, bear a negative charge this will only be neutralized on being brought into contact with positively charged particles. That is to say trypan blue will be flocculated or precipitated in the presence of a more alkaline medium. It is, therefore, hard to understand why trypan blue is not flocculated by the placental macrophages if Dr. GARNHAM's statement is correct that the cytoplasm of these cells stains blue with litmus and is, therefore, alkaline. If the reaction of the cytoplasm of the macrophages had, on the other hand, been acid a logical explanation would have been forthcoming for the non-appearance of the dye in their cytoplasm. However, Dr. GARNHAM's finding that the cytoplasm of the placental macrophages stains blue with litmus is also in opposition to that of other investigations on the somatic macrophages, all of which show that while the granules of the macrophages stain pink the cytoplasm is either quite colourless or of only the faintest pink tint.

ROUS (1925) nevertheless found that in peritoneal exudates from rats, 24 hours after inoculation with litmus, 1 or 2 per cent. of the macrophages do stain blue in the manner described for the placental macrophages by Dr. GARNHAM. Convincing evidence is brought forward by Rous to show that in the rat peritoneal exudate only those cells that are dead or dying show blue staining with litmus.

It is obvious that the reaction of the somatic macrophages to trypan blue and litmus is very different from that of the placental macrophages as described by Dr. GARNHAM. If we accept Dr. GARNHAM's observations as correct, it is logically impossible to deduce from the behaviour of the placental macrophages anything in connection with the behaviour of the somatic macrophages towards trypan blue or to assert that blockade of the somatic macrophages by this dye is impossible.

REFERENCES.

- EVANS, H. M. & SCOTT, K. J. (1921). *Contr. Embryol. Carneg. Instn.*, 10, 1.
 LEWIS, W. C. M. (1927). *J. Cancer Res.*, 11, 16.
 LUDFORD, R. J. (1929). *Proc. R. Soc., B.*, 104, 493.
 MAXIMOW, A. (1928). The lymphocytes and plasma cells. *Special Cytology* (edited by E. V. COWDRY). New York: P. B. Hoeber.
 SCHULEMANN, W. (1917). *Biochem. Z.*, 80, 1.
 TILGHMAN, R. C. & LEE, F. C. (1931). *Bull. Johns Hopk. Hosp.*, 49, 360.

Dr. C. M. Wenyon: There is one question I should like to ask—it has to do with something which Dr. LOURIE hinted at in his remarks—how do people combat their malaria during the first 14, 15 or 16 years of life in the absence of a placenta. Dr. GARNHAM has told us that all these people with whom he worked had contracted malaria in the early days of their infancy, that they carried the infection for the rest of their lives, and that, whether they were males or females, presumably the whole of the macrophage immunity process was going on in their spleens and to a less extent in liver, bone-marrow and other organs. Presumably this would apply to those women who begin to develop a placenta. It is rather difficult for me to imagine that with the development of a placenta the immunity, which has been going on in the body generally, is taken over by the placenta, to be resumed when the placenta has been got rid of after 9 months of pregnancy. That being so, it seems to me that we ought to look upon the placenta as something outside the subject altogether. We should regard the placenta as an extraneous tumour which has started growing. It is a sort of angioma with maternal blood sinuses through which blood moves very slowly. Malarial parasites circulating in small numbers come into the sinuses and stagnate there and start to develop as they might do in a culture tube. They reproduce by schizogony and we may get a very large number of parasites in the sinuses as Dr. GARNHAM has shown us.

Certain cells of the lymphocyte-macrophage system come into the sinuses and find there an abnormal development of malarial parasites. This starts a veritable reticulo-endothelial response such as occurs under other circumstances in the spleen, liver and bone-marrow. Possibly on this account the parasites never have a chance of getting back into the maternal blood stream. I have spoken to Dr. GARNHAM about this very interesting process, and I think I am right in saying that he has found that even in those women who had a very large number of parasites in the placenta, there was no corresponding number of parasites in the peripheral blood; a very great multiplication of parasites in the placenta had not led to a great increase of parasites in the peripheral

circulation. The appearance of one of these placenta smears, with numerous schizonts in various stages of growth, reminds one very much of the kind of smear one gets in cerebral malaria. The spleen of the man, his brain and other organs have very much the same appearance as these placentas, but in these cases of fulminating malignant tertian malaria, this great development in the brain, spleen and other parts of the body is correlated with an enormous number of parasites in all stages of development in the peripheral blood. The great development of parasites in the placenta, however, is not associated with that sort of condition in the blood, and this leads me to wonder whether the process that goes on in the placenta is not shut off from the rest of the body. In this case the parasite development and the consequent development of macrophages and indeed the whole of the immunity response which Dr. GARNHAM has told us goes on in the placenta would be a merely local phenomenon which has little or nothing to do with the immunity process still going on in the rest of the body. According to this view the relapses which so often occur after the removal of the placenta would not be due to the removal of something which is immunizing the rest of the body but would be the result of trauma, shock or other circumstance which is known to cause malarial relapses in the ordinary course of events when no placenta is present.

Dr. P. Manson-Bahr: The learned paper to which we have just listened appears to show that placental transmission of malaria does not commonly take place. Dr. GARNHAM has examined no less than four hundred placentas in Kenya and no evidence of placental transmission was found. This is not quite in accord with the definite authentic clinical evidence of cases reported in the literature relating to babies in this country developing malaria 2 or 3 months after birth. The last case was that of Drs. TANNER and HEWLETT* in 1935 in St. Pancras. It was a case of twins, one resembling the father was dark, and the other resembling the mother being rather fair, and they were of opposite sex. The fair baby developed fever 53 days after birth, had rigors and a large spleen. Blood-films were sent to me and they contained benign tertian malaria parasites. This was an undoubted case of trans-placental transmission. Dr. HEWLETT was present at the birth of the children. I do not think there was anything abnormal about it, and no mention was made of placental tears or haemorrhages or anything of the sort at the time. Of course, there could have been no other possible source of infection than that of the mother who was suffering from an attack of benign tertian fever during parturition.

Prof. R. M. Gordon: My experience of placental malaria is more or less confined to observations made by Professor BLACKLOCK and myself in West Africa some 12 years ago.

I agree with what Dr. WENYON has said regarding the similarity between the appearance presented by the parasites in the placenta and those seen in a culture, *in vitro*; the smears and sections shown to us this evening illustrate

*TANNER, N. C. & HEWLETT, R. F. L. (1935). *Lancet*, 2, 369-370.

this point. After all this is not unnatural, since conditions in the placenta in some ways resemble those in a culture; that is to say, there is stagnation, limitation of oxygen and, a point not referred to by Dr. GARNHAM, increase of glucose. As regards this last point I have recently seen work, as yet unpublished, which supports this view.

The point not yet touched upon by any speaker this evening is the part played by the malaria-infected placenta in determining the fate of the child. In our series of West African cases a very high proportion of children born of mothers with placentas showing malaria parasites were either born dead, or died within 7 days of birth. I should like to hear Dr. GARNHAM's experience in Kenya regarding this point.

Dr. MANSON-BAHR when referring to the question of congenital malaria, mentioned a case occurring in England, in which malaria showed itself in the child 21 days after birth. Of course, there is a considerable difference between the conditions under which a child is born in this country and in the tropics, but it is obviously essential to rule out the chance of infection of the child through abrasions of the skin. I do not think that an incubation period of 21 days, or even 14 days, can be accepted as proof of congenital malaria.

Dr. F. Murgatroyd: I have little to say bearing directly on the subject so admirably presented to-night, but Dr. WENYON's remarks remind me of a related matter.

Some years ago in a paper before the Society, with Professor YORKE and Dr. OWEN, I was party to a speculation concerning the development of the malignant tertian parasite. At that time during an investigation into black-water fever we had been making contemporaneous observations on peripheral blood and on material obtained by splenic puncture. Nine punctures in malignant tertian infections showed the same parasite picture as the blood. In most instances both the spleen and the blood contained only rings, schizonts being seen both in spleen and blood on only one occasion and in the spleen only once when they were absent from the blood. In two examinations of benign tertian malaria the presence of rings, trophozoites and schizonts in the spleen corresponded with their presence in the peripheral blood.

About the same time, SORGE* was doing a similar thing namely comparing peripheral blood with bone marrow material. He found in five cases of malignant tertian infection—proved by subsequent relapse—that when the peripheral blood was negative the bone-marrow was likewise free from parasites. In four other cases where the blood was positive, he failed to find parasites twice in the marrow, and in the remaining two cases found but scanty infections.

These observations suggest that the peripheral blood picture is comparable to that of the internal organs, although one might have expected that in malignant tertian malaria a preponderance of schizonts would have been found in the

*SORGE, G. (1929). Ricerche parassitologiche comparative fra sangue periferico e midollo osseo in malarici. *Rif. med.*, 45, 872.

internal organs since *P. falciparum* is believed to develop by schizogony and schizonts are rare in the peripheral blood. This orthodox view of the development of *P. falciparum* rests largely upon the examination of the blood in severe or fatal cases, the examination of the organs after death, observations of cultures, and examination of infected placentas. Dr. GARNHAM's observations confirm the fact that the morphology of *P. falciparum* in placental films resembles that seen in films prepared from cultures. It is also interesting that early placentas appeared to provide no facilities for post-ring development, schizonts being absent in cases where the peripheral blood showed a heavy infection, and that even in the later placentas developmental forms of the parasites were only found in the intervillous spaces and never in the maternal vessels of the decidua basalis. Now, as Dr. WENYON has suggested, the placenta may be a peculiar place, and conditions in the sinuses may differ from those of the normally circulating blood—as they do in the organs after death, in the culture tube, or in the blood of the moribund patient. Although in such conditions schizogony is unrestrained, this process may not be the parasite's sole method of asexual reproduction; and we suggested, not without considerable diffidence, that the normal ring infection of the blood might be maintained, at least in part, by binary fission. The reasons for this suggestion were: the common failure to find schizonts in the peripheral blood, the relatively large proportion of rings having two chromatin particles, the appearances suggesting simple division of certain of these binucleate parasites, and the frequency with which two or more rings are found in the same red cell.

These findings, so common in malignant tertian infections, could obviously be explained by binary fission. There are, of course, other possibilities, but whatever is the true explanation it has not yet been satisfactorily demonstrated.

Dr. C. M. Wenyon: As regards this theory of binary fission of rings in malignant tertian parasite as put forward by Dr. MURGATROYD—I should like to ask if anyone here has any evidence, in the case of the spleen and internal organs, of the presence of a large number of schizonts as determined by puncture at the times of febrile attacks when the blood is becoming flooded with rings. I have recently been told that puncture of the spleen and bone-marrow has revealed schizonts. I think it is true that if one follows the development of malignant tertian parasites by repeated examination of peripheral blood one finds that the very young rings get a little larger, and at a certain stage of development the parasites begin to disappear from the blood. They must go somewhere, and is it not possible that they do not necessarily concentrate in the spleen or bone-marrow or in any particular organ, but that they remain in the capillaries uniformly distributed all through the body? I have spoken to Dr. GARNHAM and he tells me that he has made one or two observations which seems to suggest something of the kind taking place; if that is so I shall be very much relieved, because I am most reluctant to believe that a parasite which reproduces so beautifully by schizogony (as indeed do all known malarial parasites) does not

in this case do so normally—that the whole process of schizogony in this one malarial parasite is an abnormal development which has nothing to do with the true development of the parasite, but that it only occurs in cultures, in stagnating conditions of the blood such as may occur in the sinuses of the placenta, or in the capillaries of the internal organs when a patient is at the point of death.

Major J. S. K. Boyd: In Salonika, in the heavy epidemics of malaria we had during the war, I not infrequently found schizonts of *P. falciparum* in the peripheral circulation of patients who were not very seriously ill and did not die.

Dr. P. C. C. Garnham (in reply): Major MULLIGAN suggested that my alternative theory of the origin of the placental macrophages is the more probable, viz.: that already matured R.E. cells are conveyed to the placenta. If this were the case, one would expect to find them in numbers in the blood-stream; but on the contrary what one finds is their progenitor, the lymphocyte alone, or at the most a few small “polyblasts.”

I cannot understand his remarks about the nature and number of cells seen in the placenta and their resemblance to those seen in almost any other organ. The placental “sinuses” are frequently packed with cells of the “lymphoid-macrophage system” in a manner and degree only approached in the spleen and certainly in no other organ.

Dr. GREEN-ARMYTAGE and Dr. MANSON-BAHR are of course right in emphasizing that congenital malaria does occur; the work of WICKRAMASURIYA has proved it by the demonstration of the parasites in sections of brains of infants born dead. All I assert is that in hyperendemic areas it must occur rarely, as no cases were found in over 400 births.

Colonel SINTON asked if the films made from spleen punctures in pregnant women resembled the corresponding placental films. I am afraid I did not perform enough punctures to come to a definite conclusion, but there was no outstanding difference in the R.E. response in the two organs. Of course, in the placenta schizonts of *P. falciparum* were much more numerous than in the spleen film of the same case. With regard to his suggestion that infants “inherited” an immunity from their mothers and were remarkably free from malaria in the first few months of life, I have found no evidence of this. I have obtained recently parasite rates of 12 per cent. in infants one month old, of 13 per cent. in infants two months old and of 13 per cent. in infants three months old. At six months, it is 75 per cent.

Dr. LOURIE asked if large spleens are less common in pregnant than in non-pregnant women. I cannot say that I have noticed any difference, but would point out the comparative rarity of large spleens in Kenya. The East African form of the subtertian parasite causes as a rule very little appreciable enlargement of this organ and when marked enlargement is present a quartan or benign tertian infection is usually found to be responsible for it.

Dr. FINDLAY emphasizes that the absorption of trypan blue by the R.E. is a thoroughly established fact. I entirely agree, and that is why I used this dye

for the experiments. But what I found, and what makes me doubt the validity of blockade experiments, is the selectivity of this absorption whereby it is only the fixed tissue cells such as fibrocytes and reticular elements that take up the stain whilst the wandering histiocyte—the cell that both in the placenta and in the spleen is the chief agent in malarial phagocytosis—is absolutely unstained—in spite of the vivid blue colour of the organs.

As I pointed out, it is true that the dye is absorbed by certain macrophages e.g., the Kupffer cells of the liver—but these are fixed cells and are probably more concerned with the phagocytosis of pigment, dead cells, etc., than of the parasites themselves.

Other workers (CAPPELL, etc., *ibid.*) also have been surprised by the lack of affinity for trypan blue of the “ mononuclears ” of the spleen and in certain animals (e.g., rabbits) even of the “ reticular ” cells.

In the light of Dr. FINDLAY'S remarks, the results of my experiments with litmus certainly appear contradictory and it is possible that the blue or alkaline cells were dead or dying ones. Nevertheless no red granules were seen even in the living cells.

Dr. WENYON and Professor GORDON regard the placenta in malaria as an appendage hardly connected with the body. There is much to be said for this view, but it should not be forgotten that the interplacental circulation in mild cases of malaria must be substantially free to enable the foetus to survive. Even in these cases, parasites in the placenta are numerous, though they are scanty in the peripheral blood. I was surprised to find little evidence of an increased post-natal mortality of infants born of mothers with malaria-infected placentas—particularly in view of Professor GORDON'S work. There was certainly no increased mortality in the first 7 days of life ; and so far, in about one hundred cases which I have been able to follow up, the few deaths that occurred were the result of bronchopneumonia, measles, whooping-cough, etc., rather than of malaria.

I am unable to agree with Dr. MURGATROYD'S statement that schizonts of *P. falciparum* are absent in spleen smears. I did forty-eight spleen punctures on subtertian malaria cases a number of years ago and in nearly every one I found schizonts though I admit they were scanty except in the heavy generalized infections. Like him, however, I have frequently seen in stained films, parasites which appear to be undergoing fission, but I prefer to accept at present Dr. WENYON'S explanation that schizogony occurs in small amounts in different parts of the body.

I was sorry that my theory of the causation of malarial relapses after parturition met with so little approval, but I would point out that the chief criticism, viz. : that the relapse is just as likely to be due to shock, etc., applies equally to the accepted interpretation of the splenectomy experiments in monkey malaria. There is a similar or even greater degree of shock in the latter instance.

COMMUNICATIONS.

SPECTROGRAPHIC ANALYSIS OF PIGMENTS IN SERUM AND URINE OF BLACKWATER FEVER.

BY

HENRY FOY, M.A.

AND

ATHENA KONDI, M.D.

*Malaria Research Laboratory, Refugee Hospital, Thessaloniki.**

Since the publication of the findings of FAIRLEY and BROMFIELD (1934 to 1937) of a new pigment (pseudo-methaemoglobin) in the plasma and serum of blackwater fever, we have undertaken a spectrographic analysis of all cases of blackwater fever entering the Refugee Hospital during 1936 and 1937. We have also re-examined spectrograms taken in 1934 and 1935, and are able to confirm the existence of a pigment having its absorption maximum in the red at 622 to 624 $m\mu$.

The present paper is concerned entirely with the qualitative aspect of the work in the visible region of the spectrum. At the moment the extinction coefficient of pseudo-methaemoglobin is not available (since no known concen-

* Health Section, League of Nations, Dorothea Simmons Research Funds.

tration has yet been made), consequently no accurate quantitative work is possible. However, some idea of the relative concentration of the pigment in different bloods is obtainable by spectroscopic dilution, and in the present paper this method has been used. We are at the moment working on a series of quantitative spectrograms of pseudo-methaemoglobin, using the extinction coefficient of methaemoglobin as found by HEILMEYER (1933).

The accompanying spectrograms were all taken on a Zeiss 9×12 cm. rotating sector spectrograph, without the interposition of the Huefner prism, since we were here not concerned with quantitative estimations. The accuracy of the wave-length scale was checked against the mercurio-helium tube of Giessler, and it will be seen that the orange line exactly corresponds to 58.8 of the wave-length scale, and the yellow lines to 57.9 and 57.7.

In Fig. 1 a spectrogram of blackwater fever plasma is illustrated taken 48 hours after the first passage of black urine. The absorption bands of pseudo-methaemoglobin, oxyhaemoglobin, and bilirubin are all clearly shown, from which it will be seen that the absorption maximum of the bands in the red is $622 m\mu$. In Fig. 2 is shown a spectrogram of methaemoglobin taken on the same plate with pseudo-methaemoglobin from which the shift of the centre of the pseudo-methaemoglobin band towards the violet can be seen. In Fig. 3 is shown pseudo-methaemoglobin taken against sulphaemoglobin, the pseudo-methaemoglobin is shifted towards the ultra-red when compared with sulphaemoglobin. In Fig. 2 the absorption maximum of methaemoglobin is clearly shown to be $630 m\mu$, and that of sulphaemoglobin to be $618 m\mu$, agreeing with the usually accepted position of these bands (Fig. 3).

From a large number of spectrograms taken we are of the opinion that the centre of this band of pseudo-methaemoglobin is subject to a certain amount of variation, and seems to range within $622 m\mu$ and $624 m\mu$. This instability is perhaps due to variation in pH, as has been found to occur with methaemoglobin (HEILMEYER). The centre of the absorption band in the red, however, is always very clearly distinguished from that of methaemoglobin, but often very closely approximated to the band of sulphaemoglobin at $618 m\mu$.

We had considerable difficulty in obtaining panchromatic plates that gave a clear absorption band in the red of pseudo-methaemoglobin; most of our work has been carried out on special plates prepared for us by "Agfa," of Berlin (Total hard spectral). On most panchromatic plates we have had no difficulty in obtaining clear demarcation of the absorption band, of either methaemoglobin, and sulphaemoglobin, but even in high concentration, or great stratum thickness the band of pseudo-methaemoglobin is never very clearly demarcated. Even greater difficulty was experienced in getting a clear band of pseudo-methaemoglobin when the pigment was produced *in vitro* (by incubating weak solution of Hb at 40°C.) in the presence of plasma.

For routine identification of pseudo-methaemoglobin and its differentiation from methaemoglobin and sulphaemoglobin we have used the Hartridge reversion

spectroscope, in which the shift in the pseudo-methaemoglobin band can be readily detected if the instrument is set for either methaemoglobin or sulphaemoglobin; but with this instrument it is difficult or impossible to estimate the centre of the absorption band.

In addition to the characteristic absorption band, pseudo-methaemoglobin differs also in its chemical properties from methaemoglobin as has been pointed out by FAIRLEY and BROMFIELD (1934 to 1937), in that the absorption band in the red of methaemoglobin is discharged by 10 per cent. ammonium sulphide, whilst that of pseudo-methaemoglobin is not; is not reduced by Stokes' reagent but easily reduced with sodium hydrosulphite ($\text{Na}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_4$).

In none of the cases of blackwater fever so far investigated in Greece have we ever found methaemoglobin in the blood, and we feel that it is questionable whether this pigment is ever formed in the disease unless as a direct result of the administration of plasmoquine.

In blackwater fever there appear to be three pigments invariably present in the serum, namely pseudo-methaemoglobin, oxyhaemoglobin, and bilirubin. In the accompanying spectrograms all these pigments are depicted. Fig. 1 shows pseudo-methaemoglobin, oxyhaemoglobin and bilirubin. Figs. 4, the increase in pseudo-methaemoglobin and decrease in oxyhaemoglobin; Fig. 5 shows a blood in which are only pseudo-methaemoglobin and bilirubin. In the later stages of the disease the pseudo-methaemoglobin also disappears, thus leaving bilirubin as the only representative of the previous haemolysis.

In Fig. 6 a spectrogram of urine taken from a case of blackwater fever shows clearly that the pigments present are oxyhaemoglobin, and true methaemoglobin with its absorption maximum at $630\text{ m}\mu$.

Pseudo-methaemoglobin is a pigment found not only in blackwater fever, but one which has been described by FAIRLEY and BROMFIELD as occurring in incompatible transfusion. More recently (1938) these observers have found the pigment in pancreatic cyst fluid. They suggest that it probably occurs in all cases of intravascular haemolysis, or when blood escapes into a cavity, haemolyses, and subsequently mixes with plasma or serous transudate.

The factors at work in the conversion of the free blood pigment into pseudo-methaemoglobin are at present not fully understood. FAIRLEY and BROMFIELD (1937) have suggested that the free haemoglobin is split into haematin, and that a combination of this with some nitrogenous constituent of the plasma may finally produce pseudo-methaemoglobin.

In cases where the initial haemolysis had been large and sudden (as indicated by blood counts and bilirubin estimations) the amount of pseudo-methaemoglobin present in the plasma might be expected to be greater than in cases where the blood destruction has been light or has taken place in a series of small waves. That the relation is not as direct as this is shown by the figures in Tables I and II (pages 52-54).

TABLE I.
BLOOD PIGMENTS AND RED BLOOD CORPUSCLE COUNTS IN BLACKWATER FEVER.

Case.	Haemoglobin mg. per cent.	Pseudo-Methaemoglobin Dilution Factor (1 cm. stratum).	Bilirubin mg. per cent.	R.B.C. Counts (\pm 3 per cent.).
1	201.6	1 in 1.0	12.0	1,923,000
	40.3	1 in 3.0	6.0	1,777,000
	10.1	1 in 1.0	4.0	1,320,000
	15.2	Nil	1.5	—
2	60.8	Faint trace	6.0	2,034,000
	21.0	Nil	2.2	—
	70.7	Nil	1.2	1,363,000
3	151.0	1 in 0.5	2.0	—
	75.6	1 in 0.5	4.4	1,170,000
	21.0	Nil	1.4	900,000
	55.4	Nil	1.2	977,000
4	90.7	1 in 1.0	1.6	—
	45.4	Nil	1.5	1,302,000
	30.1	Nil	1.2	1,594,000
5	121.0	1 in 2.0	10.0	2,170,000
	25.2	1 in 3.0	14.0	—
	16.0	1 in 1.5	9.0	1,713,000
6	30.2	Faint trace	2.2	2,360,000
7	151.0	1 in 1.0	7.5	1,390,000
8	60.0	1 in 3.0	4.0	2,070,000
9	60.5	1 in 3.0	2.3	3,051,000
10	151.2	Nil	3.8	3,300,000
	352.8	1 in 1.0	5.0	1,266,000
	255.0	1 in 2.0	2.4	1,400,000
11	201.6	1 in 3.0	1.2	2,152,000
	277.2	1 in 3.5	50.0	1,686,000
	201.6	1 in 4.0	32.0	1,320,000
	Nil	1 in 3.0	56.0	910,000
	Nil	1 in 2.0	30.0	—
	Nil	Nil	—	Died
12	40.3	1 in 2.0	7.0	1,333,000
	Trace	Traces	2.2	1,273,000
	Nil	Nil	2.5	1,410,000

TABLE I—(Continued).

Case.	Haemoglobin mg. per cent.	Pseudo-Methaemoglobin Dilution Factor (1 cm. stratum).	Bilirubin mg. per cent.	R.B.C. Counts (± 3 per cent.)
13 {	50.4	1 in 0.5	4.5	2,943,000
	10.1	Faint trace	4.3	2,528,000
	Nil	Nil	1.7	2,056,000
14 {	30.2	Faint trace	14.0	3,693,000
	20.2	"	5.5	3,920,000
15 {	120.9	1 in 2.5	7.8	2,706,000
	50.4	1 in 1.0	9.0	1,283,000
	Nil	Nil	2.3	1,200,000
	Nil	Nil	1.5	946,000
16 {	40.3	1 in 2.5	3.9	2,286,000
	Traces	1 in 2.0	4.1	1,733,000
	Nil	1 in 1.0	3.1	1,663,000
17 {	45.4	1 in 2	6.0	1,054,000
	Traces	1 in 1	4.7	902,800
	Nil	1 in 0.5	3.1	964,000
18 {	80.6	1 in 1.5	4.5	3,100,000
	15.2	1 in 0.5	1.9	2,783,000
	15.2	Nil	1.0	2,106,000
	Traces	Nil	1.9	2,300,000

Table I shows the amount of haemoglobin present in mg. per cent., and the pseudo-methaemoglobin dilution factor (in a 1 c.mm. cell) on successive days of the illness, together with blood counts and bilirubin estimations.*

In Table II a comparative index has been constructed to bring out any quantitative relationship that may exist between the two pigments over the whole period that they were present in the plasma of the patient. We avoided taking the averages of the figures given on Table I for the reason that the absence of the absorption band of these pigments is not an absolute test of their absence in the fluid under examination, consequently no quantitative mathematical analysis of the relation between the pigments is possible. Another

* All blood counts were done in standardized pipette and counted in a standardized chamber (N.P.L.). In every case 1,000 cells were counted thus making the error approximately ± 3 per cent. (PONDER, 1934).

The bilirubin was estimated spectro-photometrically on a Pulfrich, against a concentration curve made up from a known solution of bilirubin in alcohol (HUNTER, 1930; WHITE, 1932) prepared from the pure substance supplied to us by MERCK.

TABLE II.

COMPARISON OF HAEMOGLOBIN AND PSEUDO-METHAEMOGLOBIN IN BLACKWATER FEVER.
(CALCULATED INDEX.)

Case.	Haemoglobin Index.	Pseudo-Methaemoglobin Index.	Bilirubin Index.	Minimum Blood Count.
1	53(4)	5.0(3)	24.5(4)	1,320,000
2	60(4)	1.0(2)	9.0(4)	900,000
3	33(3)	1.0(2)	4.3(3)	1,302,000
4	29(2)	5.0(2)	24.0(2)	1,713,000
5	30(1)	1.0(1)	7.5(1)	1,390,000
6	12(1)	3.0(1)	4.0(1)	2,070,000
7	12(1)	3.0(1)	2.3(1)	3,051,000
8	150(3)	3.0(2)	11.2(3)	1,266,000
9	135(3)	15.5(5)	180.0(5)	910,000
10	8(1)	2.0(1)	11.7(3)	1,273,000
11	12(2)	0.5(1)	10.7(3)	2,056,000
12	34(2)	3.5(2)	20.6(4)	946,000
13	8(1)	5.5(3)	11.1(3)	1,663,000
14	9(1)	3.5(3)	13.8(3)	902,000
15	22(2)	2.0(2)	7.4(3)	2,106,000

factor complicating any quantitative analysis of this relationship is that, as already mentioned, pseudo-methaemoglobin appears in the blood after oxyhaemoglobin and frequently continues to be present for some time after oxhaemoglobin has disappeared. It follows therefore that the concentration of pseudo-methaemoglobin at any given moment is not dependent upon the quantity of oxyhaemoglobin present at the same moment, but rather upon previous haemoglobin concentration, as well as upon the rate at which haemoglobin is being disposed of by other means (bilirubin, renal excretion) which may vary from case to case. It would seem therefore that in the present state of our knowledge any precise quantitative correlation between haemoglobin and pseudo-methaemoglobin is not possible. Although there is likely to be a relationship between the

presence of haemoglobin and pseudo-methaemoglobin in the plasma, it is quantitatively not a linear one.

It may be noted that since time is an important factor in the appearance of pseudo-methaemoglobin, we endeavoured as far as possible always to take the same "cross section in time" of the disease, that is, we omitted from our analysis cases in which there was uncertainty as to the time of passing the first specimen of black urine. In general we have included in our analysis only those cases from which we were able to take blood 12 to 24 hours after the first passage of black urine and to continue our examination up to that time when no haemoglobin or pseudo-methaemoglobin was present.

In an example taken from Table II (Case 8) it will be seen that when the haemoglobin index was $150^{(3)}$, the pseudo-methaemoglobin index was $3^{(2)}$, whilst in Case 9 a haemoglobin index of $135^{(3)}$ was associated with one of $15.5^{(5)}$ for pseudo-methaemoglobin. It may be noted further that in Case 8 the minimum blood count was 1,266,000 with a bilirubin index of $11.2^{(3)}$; whilst in Case 9 the figures are 910,000 and $180^{(5)}$.

The concentration of haemoglobin was estimated either spectrographically on a rotating sector spectrograph or spectro-photometrically (Pulfrich) using the extinction coefficient of a known solution of haemoglobin based on a normal standard value of 15.4 grammes for 100 c.c. This figure is somewhat higher than that used by FAIRLEY and BROMFIELD (1933) who took 13.8 grammes as a normal standard. In order therefore to make a comparison between their figures and ours, their spectroscopic dilution factor must be multiplied by 0.036 for haemoglobin in blood, and 0.742 for methaemoglobin in blood. The factors for urine must be similarly multiplied by 0.042 and 0.733 for haemoglobin and methaemoglobin respectively.

It does appear, as FAIRLEY and BROMFIELD (1937) have stated, that the mechanism responsible for the production of pseudo-methaemoglobin gets to work rather slowly, and may continue to produce the pigment for some days during which no further haemolysis takes place and even when haemoglobin is no longer present in the plasma or urine.

This fact is well illustrated in Case 11 in which pseudo-methaemoglobin continued to be present for 2 days after oxyhaemoglobin had disappeared from the blood.

Another factor of interest is the relation between the presence and concentration of pseudo-methaemoglobin in the blood, and the presence and concentration of methaemoglobin in the urine. There can be no question that a pigment having its absorption maximum at $630\text{ m}\mu$ and therefore presumably methaemoglobin, occurs (see Fig. 6) in the urine of blackwater fever (YORKE, ROSS, FAIRLEY and BROMFIELD), and that its presence is not always dependent upon the pH of the urine. The difficulty of taking the pH of blackwater fever urine on account of its colour makes methods other than the rather crude litmus paper and the complicated electro-potential unsatisfactory.

The method of diluting the urine with ten or twenty times its volume of 6·8 pH distilled water until its colour is such that it can be matched in a comparator, is not really satisfactory since the pH may easily be out ± 1 . We have accordingly used the potentiometric method, using a Beckman electrode with undiluted urine.

Using this method we have found that methaemoglobin is likely to be present over a very wide pH range, in one case the pigment was present in a urine that had a pH of 8·2. It is probable, as Ross (1932) has pointed out, that time is the important factor in the conversion of oxyhaemoglobin into methaemoglobin, and that the pH is of secondary importance. The change is likely to take place much more rapidly, and perhaps completely, in acid urines; but it also takes place, but much more slowly, in alkaline ones. It does not follow that because a urine has a certain acidity, any haemoglobin it contains will be necessarily changed into methaemoglobin; in fact urines with a pH of 6·8 and over contain methaemoglobin, and many with a pH of 6·0 and under contain only oxyhaemoglobin* (BARRATT and YORKE, 1909 and 1914).

In our experience a urine that does not contain methaemoglobin on being passed rarely develops it on standing in the laboratory, and it is our opinion that a urine which is found to contain methaemoglobin has developed the pigment *in vivo* from oxyhaemoglobin during passage down the tubules. The reaction of the glomerular filtrate is approximately the same as that of blood, a change in the pH taking place as the fluid passes down the tubules, and it is not improbable that the formation of methaemoglobin takes place here.

Catheterization of patients every 4 hours reveals methaemoglobin present, indicating that the formation of this pigment takes place higher up in the renal system than the urinary bladder. We realize, of course, that the urine present in the bladder represents the sum of a continuous process of secretion, and that therefore the methaemoglobin found may have been formed in the earlier secreted portions, especially as time is an important factor in its formation.

The bulk of the urines that we have encountered have contained both oxyhaemoglobin and methaemoglobin, only a very few contain oxyhaemoglobin alone. We have never seen a urine that contains only methaemoglobin no matter what the pH. Sometimes the amount of acid haematin formed is very small, and in such cases we have used ether extraction to bring out the absorption band at 645 $m\mu$. All our examinations were done on either a Zeiss comparison spectroscope, or a Hartridge reversion.

Another point of interest is that all urines which contain methaemoglobin will, when ammonium sulphide is added to them, disperse the band of methaemoglobin at 630 $m\mu$, and re-form one at 618 $m\mu$, presumably sulphaemoglobin.

* In the qualitative examination of urine for methaemoglobin it is not desirable to limit the stratum thickness of the cell but to continue increasing the stratum until absorption is complete, only then can it be stated that no methaemoglobin is present: in our spectrographic work we have always taken the maximum stratum thickness consistent with photography.

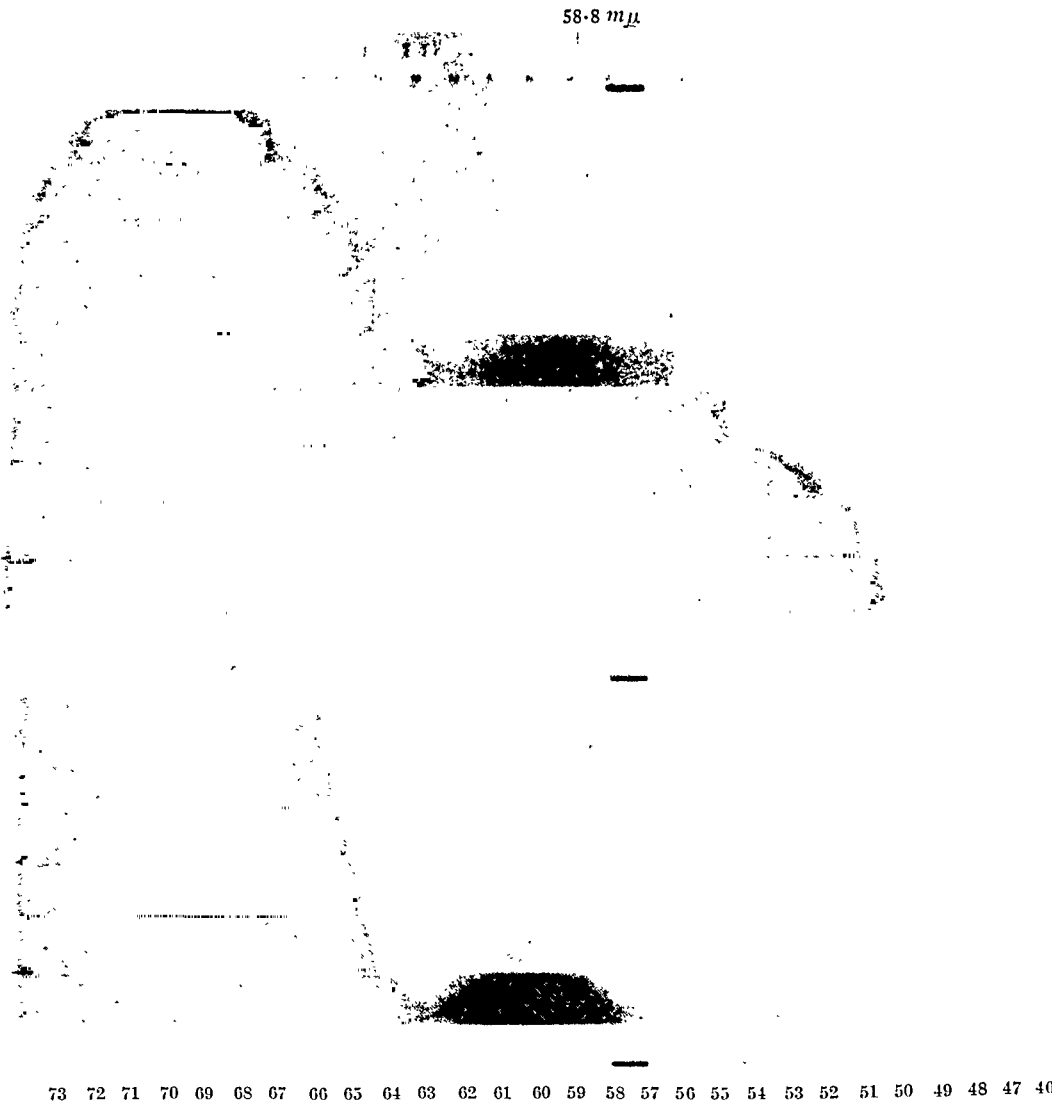
SPECTROGRAMS SHOWING ABSORPTION BANDS OF BLOOD
PIGMENTS IN BLACKWATER FEVER.

FIG. 1.—Pseudo-methaemoglobin, oxyhaemoglobin, and bilirubin in plasma of blackwater fever 48 hours after onset.

58.8 mμ

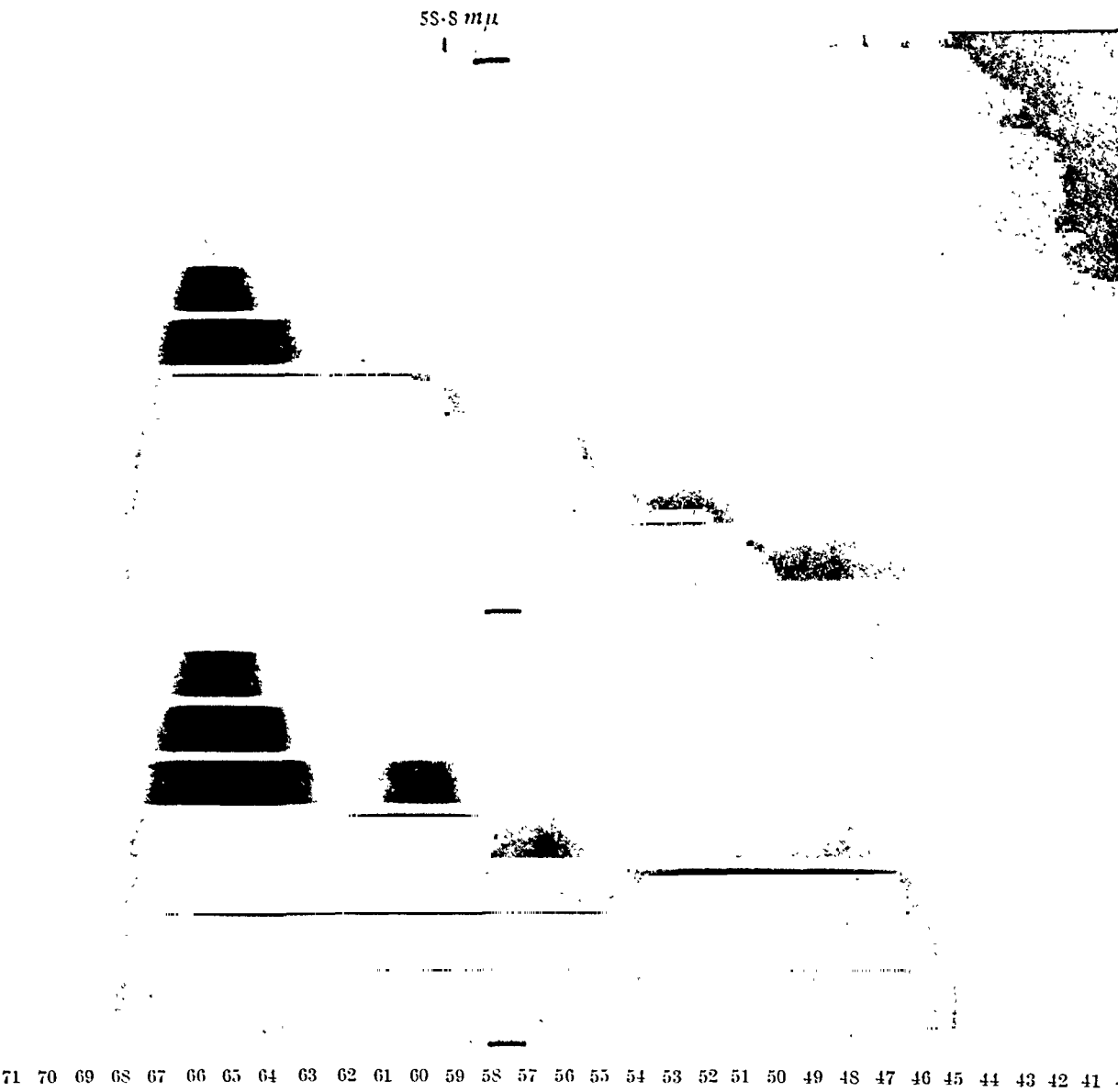
73 72 71 70 69 68 67 66 65 64 63 62 61 60 59 58 57 56 55 54 53 52 51 50 49 48

FIG. 2.—Top.—(a) Pseudo-methaemoglobin in plasma of blackwater fever 5 days after onset.



Bottom.—(b) Artificial methaemoglobin,

FIG. 3.—Top.—(a) Pseudo-methaemoglobin in plasma of blackwater fever 4 days after onset.



Bottom.—(b) Artificial sulphaemoglobin.

FIG. 4.—Pseudo-methaemoglobin, oxyhaemoglobin, and bilirubin in case of blackwater fever 4 days after onset

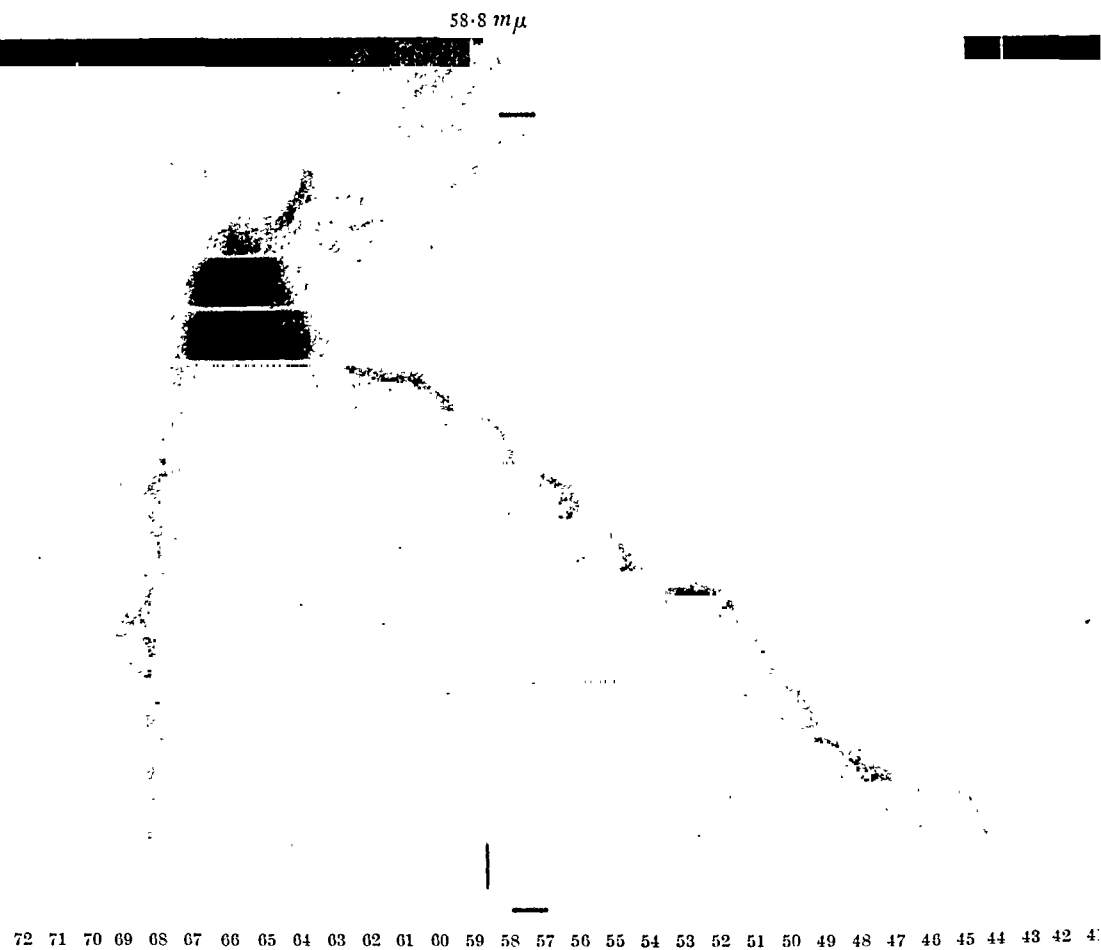


FIG. 5.—Pseudo-methaemoglobin and bilirubin in plasma of blackwater fever 5 days after onset.

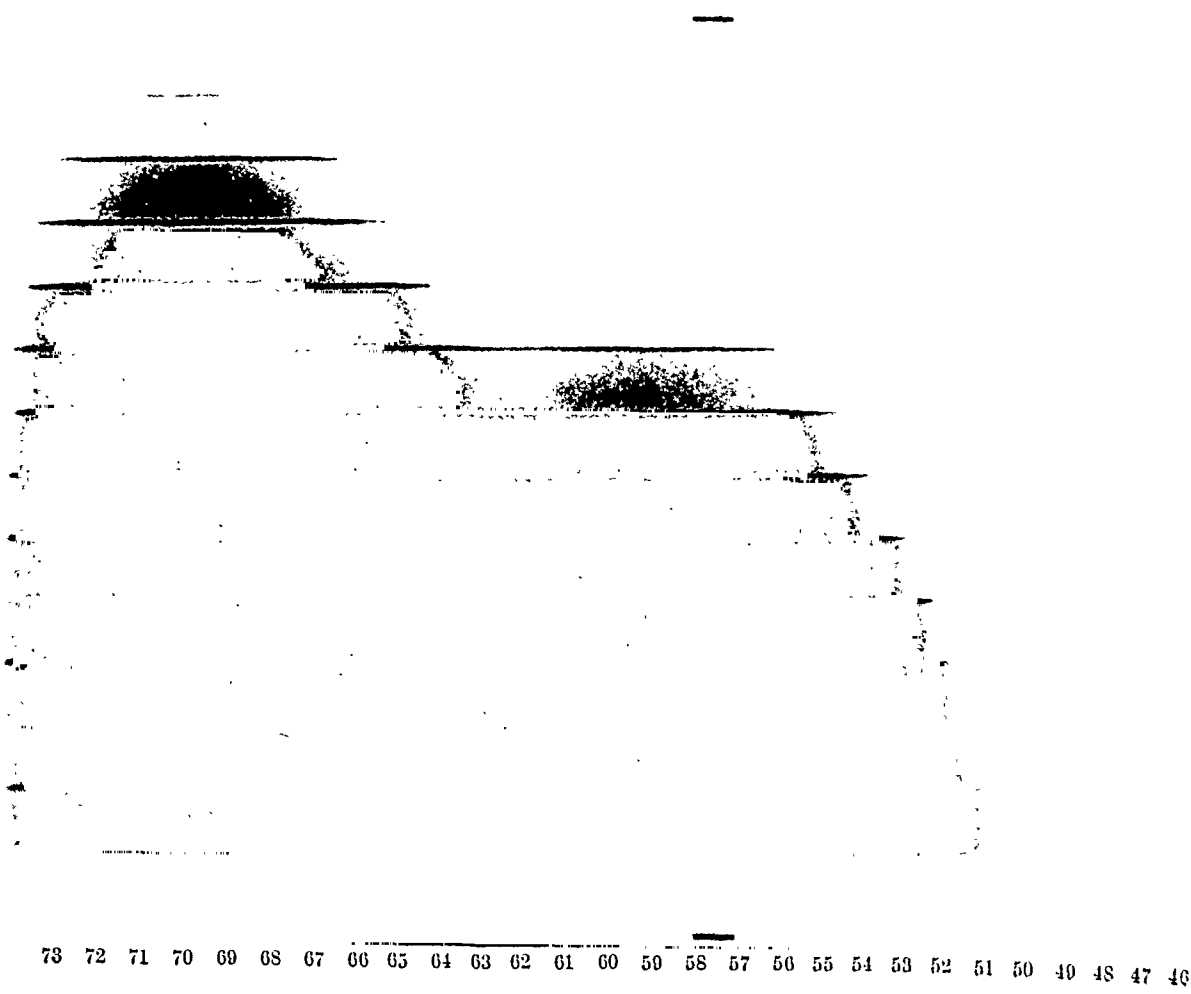
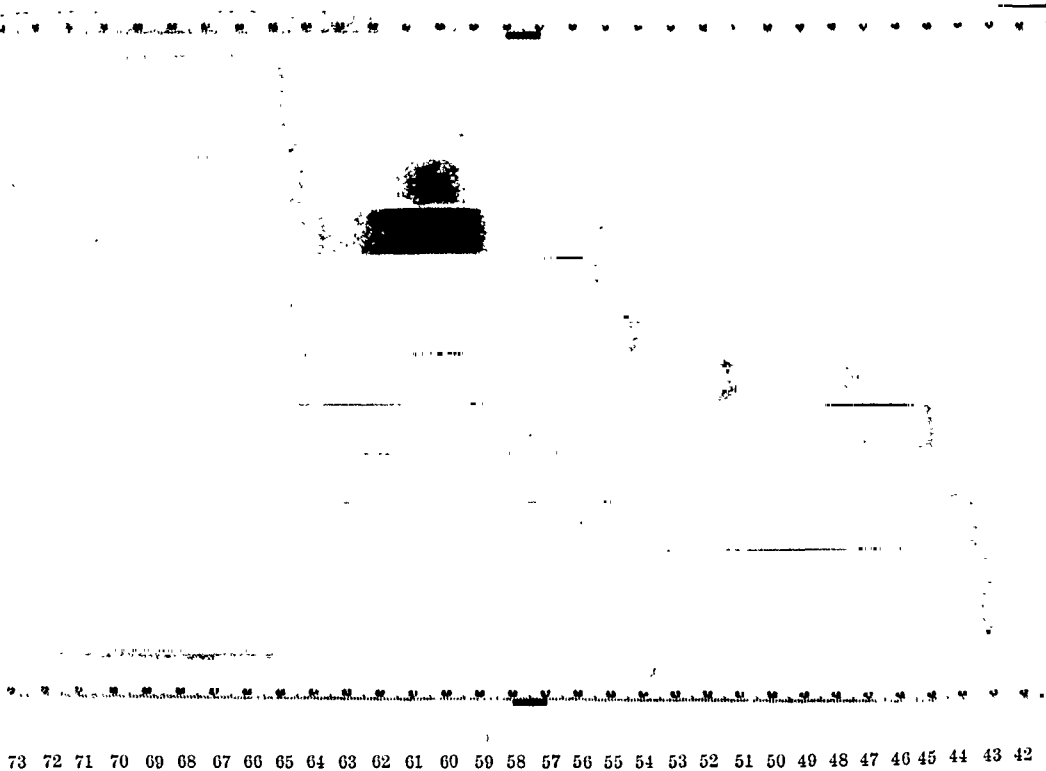


FIG. 6.—Methaemoglobin, oxyhaemoglobin and bile pigments in urine from case of blackwater fever.



73 72 71 70 69 68 67 66 65 64 63 62 61 60 59 58 57 56 55 54 53 52 51 50 49 48 47 46 45 44 43 42

This happens with all urines that contain methaemoglobin, but the absorption band at $618\text{ m}\mu$ is rarely formed in urines that contain only oxyhaemoglobin.* The formation of sulphaemoglobin in urines that contain methaemoglobin is, according to SNAPPER (quoted by FAIRLEY, 1937), not uncommon; but we have found it to happen in all cases without exception in blackwater fever.

A point requiring further investigation is the frequent lack of correlation between the degree of anuria, the pH of the urine, and the magnitude and suddenness of the haemolytic crisis.

On the assumption that haemoglobin is more likely to be precipitated in the renal tubules if the reaction of the urine is acid (YORKE and NAUSE, 1911; BAKER and DODDS, 1925), one would expect to find a greater degree of anuria in patients whose haemolysis had been catastrophic, and whose urines were acid, than in patients whose haemolysis was either insignificant, or had taken place in a series of small waves, and whose urines were alkaline. But this does not always seem to be the case. It is clearly impossible to judge precisely the extent of the haemolysis unless the blood count previous to the onset of the blackwater was known, and therefore no definite statement can be made except in cases which were under observation at the time of the onset of the blackwater. It is however very common to see patients with a blood count of between 2 and 4 millions, and passing alkaline urine, develop an anuria which may lead to a fatal end, without any definite evidence of chronic nephritis. In other cases with blood counts between $\frac{1}{2}$ and $1\frac{1}{2}$ million, and the urine acid, the secretion of urine has been maintained, and if the patient has been able to survive the profound anaemia, recovery has occurred without the onset of anuria.

It would seem to us that mere mechanical blockage and subsequent degeneration is not the only factor operative in the genesis of the anuria of blackwater fever.

Upsets in the osmotic equilibrium incident upon profound colligative changes resulting from the liberation of large amounts of haemoglobin may play an important role in the onset of this most dreaded symptom. We have observations on the depression of the freezing point (Δ) of serum taken from anuric cases of blackwater fever which might tend to support the view that colligative changes may be a factor in the anuria. In one case Δ of serum was found to be equal to -0.67°C . which would be equivalent to 6590 mm. Hg† (8.67 Atmo.) compared with the normal pressure of 5034 mm. Hg (about 7 Atmo.). In this case we checked our results for Δ by estimating the vapour pressure by BARGER'S

* Yellow ammonium sulphide added to solutions of oxyhaemoglobin will slowly cause the appearance of sulphaemoglobin; the fact that all urines which contain oxyhaemoglobin do not form sulphaemoglobin on the addition of ammonium sulphide is probably related to the reaction of the urine.

† Δ in man has been found to vary between -0.482 and -0.605°C ., being lowest in the morning after a night's fast, and highest after a meal (MATHEWS, 1930).

method (BARGER, 1904) and obtained agreement within the limits of experimental error. Since it has been shown that Δ is likely to vary with the secretion of gastric juice, our estimations were all made at the same time (11 to 12 a.m.). Whether the change in Δ was brought about by the large quantity of haemoglobin present in the serum is difficult to say. Normally, while haemoglobin is present in the red blood corpuscles, it exerts no osmotic pressure.

At its iso-elective point (6.74 pH) haemoglobin would not undergo dissociation (or its dissociation would be at a minimum). In blackwater fever the haemoglobin does pass into the urine. Whether the glomerular filtrate contains haemoglobin is not known, it is not impossible that haemoglobin may be secreted by the cells lining the renal tubule; but on physical grounds there is no reason why haemoglobin should not pass the glomerular filter in spite of its large molecular weight ($17,000 \times 4$) since the ability of semi-permeable membranes to allow the passage of larger molecules than normal, is well understood (BAYLIS, 1924, and BURNS, 1929), especially if the hypothesis of differential solubilities is acknowledged as a factor in controlling permeability. We have no information as to Δ in the glomerular filtrate, but on the assumption that haemoglobin is passing freely, we may imagine that the osmotic pressure is similar to that of blood, less the 30 to 40 mm. Hg due to the blood colloids, which is overcome by blood pressure. The Δ of blackwater fever urine is generally raised, and ranges between 8.0°C. and 1.0°C. (cf. ACHARD and SAINT GIRONS, 1912).

If the osmotic pressure of the blood in blackwater fever is not the same as that of the glomerular filtrate, then failure to secrete urine would be a necessary result.

If the blood contained its haemoglobin in solution, the amount normally present in man in the red blood corpuscles would raise the osmotic pressure of blood by some 100 mm. Hg, and BARCROFT (1928) has suggested that the haemoglobin is confined within the corpuscles in order not to upset the osmotic pressure of the blood. The fact that haemoglobin appears in the urine in blackwater fever would tend to show that the osmotic filtration process was operating normally, or at least that equilibrium had been set between the blood and glomerular filtrate. This is an important consideration because it tends to weaken the hypothesis that haemoglobin is secreted by the cells lining the lumen of the renal tubules. If the haemoglobin did not pass through the glomerular filter it would so increase the osmotic pressure of the blood that secretion of urine would be impossible. It seems then that unless haemoglobin did pass the glomerular filter, secretion of urine would stop.

The increase in osmotic pressure as indicated by Δ and vapour pressure measurements is much greater than can be accounted for even if all the red cells were lysed. To discover whether upsets in the plasma proteins might be an additional factor at work in causing variations in Δ we carried out a series of estimations on plasma albumin, globulin and fibrin, using the method of WU and LING (1922 to 1927) as modified by GREENBERG (1929).* The results

* Estimated spectro-photometrically.

TABLE III.
PLASMA PROTEINS IN BLACKWATER FEVER.

Case.	R.B.C. Count (± 3 per cent.)	Bilirubin mg. per cent.	Total proteins grammes per cent.	Albumin grammes per cent.	Globulin grammes per cent.	Ratio A G	Fibrin (-ogen) grammes per cent. (By difference)
1 {	3,796,000	4.5	7.7	3.2	2.8	1.14	1.7
	2,775,000	4.0	8.3	3.7	3.4	1.08	1.2
	2,247,000	1.4	7.7	3.9	3.2	1.21	0.6
2	3,040,000	1.0	6.2	3.2	2.3	1.39	0.7
3	2,550,000	2.7	5.4	2.7	2.3	1.17	0.4
4	3,900,000	1.5	5.9	2.5	2.8	0.89	0.6
5 {	1,923,000	12.0	6.8	3.4	2.8	1.2	0.6
	1,777,000	6.0	6.8	3.7	2.7	1.4	0.4
	1,320,000	4.0	6.4	3.2	3.1	1.08	0.1
	1,508,000	1.5	6.4	3.2	2.3	1.4	0.7
6 {	2,034,000	6.0	6.6	3.1	3.4	0.9	0.1
	1,363,000	2.2	6.4	3.2	2.3	1.4	0.9
7	3,090,000	3.2	6.6	3.4	2.8	1.2	0.6
8 {	1,170,000	4.4	6.6	3.2	2.8	1.14	0.6
	900,000	1.4	6.4	3.0	2.8	1.07	0.6
9 {	—	1.6	6.4	3.4	2.7	1.3	0.3
	1,302,000	1.5	6.4	3.2	2.5	1.3	0.7
10	2,000,000	9.0	6.6	3.2	2.2	1.5	1.2
Averages			6.4	3.2	2.7	1.18	0.67
Normal Averages			7.0	4.0	2.0	2.1	0.2 to 0.4

obtained are given in Table III and show that the individual values fall within the normal range, but their averages differ slightly from normal averages. Thus the total protein and albumin averages are somewhat lower than normal, whilst the globulin and fibrin* were somewhat raised. The albumin-globulin ratio ($\frac{A}{G}$) in a few cases was decidedly below normal.

* The method we used for the plasma proteins estimates the fibrin by difference, consequently the figures for fibrin cannot be regarded as very accurate.

The kidney is a mechanism *par excellence* for maintaining the osmotic equilibrium of blood, and it may be argued that the colligative disturbances that occur in blackwater fever are due rather to the inability of the kidney to carry out its normal equilibrating function owing to blockage in the tubules, so that any change in Δ is a result rather than a cause of anuria. We think this view neglects to take into account the throwing into the blood stream of large quantities of haemoglobin. We shall however take up this question of colligative changes in the blood of blackwater fever cases and its relation to anuria in a later paper, when dealing with alterations in the permeability of the red cell envelope as shown by upset in the sodium-potassium ratio in serum and cells, and the bearing of this on osmotic and oncotic pressures in relation to albumin-globulin ratios.

We should add that anuria was not judged by the amount of urine passed by the patient, since it was frequently found that a patient with a full, or partially full, bladder was unable to urinate, probably on account of suppression of the reflexes; palpation followed by catheterization was always the method used in deciding anuria.

There seems to be little or no relation between the presence of pseudo-methaemoglobin in the serum, and methaemoglobin in the urine, as will be seen from Table IV. In estimating the correlation we took the sum of all the specimens of urine passed during the 24 hours after the taking of the blood specimen. We realize that this can only be a crude indication of the relationship-in-time between blood and urinary pigments, but short of glomerular puncture, we had no other alternative as a means of assessing any relationship. However, the continued presence of pseudo-methaemoglobin in the blood long after the urine has cleared of all pigments (as in Cases 3, 8, 13 and 18) is ample proof that pseudo-methaemoglobin is not excreted by the kidneys and has no relationship to the methaemoglobin present in the urine.

The absence of pseudo-methaemoglobin in the urine raises an interesting point. Is it a threshold body passing through the glomerulus and re-absorbed in the tubules (CUSHY'S hypothesis) or does it never pass through the glomerulus? By analogy with haemoglobin one would suppose that it did actually pass through the glomerulus into the tubules. On the other hand the position of the absorption band of pseudo-methaemoglobin would indicate that the size of its disperse phase particles when in the colloidal state would be larger than those of haemoglobin, but smaller than methaemoglobin. It is not impossible that it passes the glomerulus and during its passage down the tubule is either re-absorbed, as stated above, or converted into some other substance.

Whether it actually does pass through the glomerulus and is re-absorbed in the tubules with the other threshold bodies could only be ascertained either by glomerular puncture or by the sodium ferricyanide test or blocking the tubules with aniline blue.

TABLE IV.
RELATION BETWEEN BLOOD AND URINARY PIGMENTS IN BLACKWATER FEVER.

BLOOD.				URINE. 24-hour Specimen.		
Case.	Haemoglobin mg. per cent.	Pseudo- Methaemo- globin Dilution Factor in 1 cm. Cell.	Bilirubin mg. per cent.	Haemoglobin mg. per cent.	Methaemo- globin mg. per cent.	pH.
1 {	80.64	1 in 1.5	4.5	360.22	252.00	6.2
	15.20	1 in 0.5	1.9	34.86	201.96	6.3
	15.20	Nil	1.0	Nil	Nil	6.5
Total	111.04	1 in 2.0		395.08	453.96	
2 {	45.36	1 in 2.0	6.0	127.82	504.80	6.4
	Traces	1 in 1.0	4.7	Nil	Nil	6.6
	Nil	1 in 0.5	3.1	Nil	Nil	—
Total	45.36	1 in 3.5		127.82	504.80	
3 {	40.32	1 in 2.5	3.9	708.82	1716.66	6.6
	Traces	1 in 2.0	4.1	Nil	Nil	6.4
	Nil	1 in 1.0	3.1	Nil	Nil	6.6
Total	40.32	1 in 5.5		708.82	1716.66	
4 {	120.94	1 in 2.5	7.8	139.44	1817.64	6.3
	50.40	1 in 1.0	9.0	69.72	605.76	6.2
	Nil	Nil	2.3	Nil	Nil	6.6
Total	171.34	1 in 3.5		209.16	2423.40	
5 {	30.24	1 in 0.5	14.0	1092.28	Nil	6.3
	20.16	Traces	5.0	Nil	Nil	6.6
	Nil	Nil		Nil	Nil	—
Total	50.40	1 in 0.5		1092.28	Nil	
6 {	50.4	1 in 0.5	4.5	1272.39	100.96	7.2
	10.08	Traces	4.3	117.43	Nil	7.0
	Nil	Nil	1.0	Nil	Nil	6.6
Total	60.48	1 in 0.5		1289.82	100.96	

TABLE IV—(Continued).

RELATION BETWEEN BLOOD AND URINARY PIGMENTS IN BLACKWATER FEVER.

BLOOD.				URINE. 24-hour Specimen.		
Case.	Haemoglobin mg. per cent.	Pseudo- Methaemo- globin Dilution Factor in 1 cm. Cell.	Bilirubin mg. per cent.	Haemoglobin mg. per cent.	Methaemo- globin mg. per cent.	pH.
7 {	40.32	1 in 2.0	7.0	87.15	Nil	7.4
	Trace	Trace	2.2	Nil	Nil	6.4
Total	40.32	1 in 2.0		87.15	Nil	
8 {	201.6	1 in 3.0	12.0	610.05	403.84	6.8
	277.2	1 in 3.5	55.0	604.24	1312.74	6.8
	201.0	1 in 4.0	32.0	121.01	706.86	6.5
	Nil	1 in 3.0	56.0	Nil	Nil	6.3
	Nil	1 in 2.0	30.0	Nil	Nil	6.6
	Died	Died	Died	Died	Died	
Total	679.8	1 in 15.5		1335.30	2423.44	
9 {	151.2	Nil	3.8	1185.24	403.84	7.0
	352.8	1 in 1	5.0	1440.88	100.96	7.2
	252.0	1 in 2	2.4	Anuria	Anuria	Anuria
	Died	Died	Died	"	"	
Total	756.0	1 in 3		2626.12	504.80	
10	60.48	1 in 3	2.3	185.92	Nil	7.4
11 {	151.2	1 in 1	7.5	17.43	1514.70	6.6
	Died	Died	Died	Died	Died	
12	30.2	Traces	2.2	Nil	Nil	6.9
13 {	120.94	1 in 2	10.0	348.60	302.88	5.8
	25.20	1 in 3	14.0	Nil	Nil	6.0
	20.16	1 in 1.5	9.0	Nil	Nil	6.2
Total	166.30	1 in 6.5		348.60	302.88	

TABLE IV—(Continued).

RELATION BETWEEN BLOOD AND URINARY PIGMENTS IN BLACKWATER FEVER.

BLOOD.				URINE. 24-hour Specimen.		
Case.	Haemoglobin mg. per cent.	Pseudo- Methaemo- globin Dilution Factor in 1 cm. Cell.	Bilirubin mg. per cent.	Haemoglobin mg. per cent.	Methaemo- globin mg. per cent.	pH.
14 {	90.72	1 in 1	1.6	Nil	Nil	6.8
	45.36	Nil	1.5	Nil	Nil	6.4
	30.24	Nil	1.2	Nil	Nil	6.8
Total	166.32	1 in 1		Nil	Nil	
15 {	151.2	Nil	2.0	Nil	Nil	—
	71.6	1 in 0.5	4.4	Nil	Nil	7.0
	20.2	Neg.	1.4	Nil	Nil	6.8
Total	243.0	1 in 0.5		Nil	Nil	
16 {	20.16	Traces	3.2	174.30	403.84	6.8
	20.16	Neg.	1.4	Nil	Nil	
Total	40.32	Traces		174.30	403.84	
17 {	60.48	Traces	6.0	116.20	Traces	6.5
	20.20	Nil	2.2	Nil	Nil	6.8
Total	80.68	Traces		116.20	Traces	
18 {	201.60	1 in 1	12.0	75.53	Nil	7.2
	40.32	1 in 3	6.0	Nil	Nil	7.0
	10.08	1 in 1	4.0	Nil	Nil	7.0
	15.20	Nil	1.5	Nil	Nil	6.8
	Died	Died		Died	Died	
Total	267.20	1 in 5		75.53	Nil	

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS.

1. Pseudo-methaemoglobin has been confirmed as a new pigment present in the vast majority of cases of blackwater fever in Greece.

2. This pigment has its absorption maximum of the band in the red at a point that varies between 622 and 624 $m\mu$, thus occupying a position intermediate between sulphaemoglobin (618 $m\mu$) and methaemoglobin (630 $m\mu$).

3. To represent the series of changes that are taking place in cases of blackwater fever, spectrograms are given showing the absorption band of blood containing (a) pseudo-methaemoglobin, oxyhaemoglobin and bilirubin; (b) pseudo-methaemoglobin and bilirubin.

4. To show the shift in the band of the three pigments, spectrograms are given comparing the absorption maximum of the band in the red of pseudo-methaemoglobin, methaemoglobin and sulphaemoglobin.

5. A spectrogram of urine in a case of blackwater fever containing methaemoglobin is given to emphasize that methaemoglobin with its absorption band at 630 $m\mu$ is the pigment present in urine.

6. The presence of methaemoglobin in urine is not directly related to the presence of pseudo-methaemoglobin in blood.

7. Methaemoglobin in the urine is present in the bladder, as shown by catheterization, carried out four hourly, thus indicating that the formation of methaemoglobin in urine takes place higher up in the renal system than the urinary bladder. Methaemoglobin when present in the urine is converted into sulphaemoglobin on the addition of 10 per cent. yellow ammonium sulphide.

8. Methaemoglobin has been found to occur in urine when pH varies between 5 and 9 as taken potentiometrically.

9. Urines which contain no methaemoglobin when passed do not develop it on standing at laboratory temperatures for long periods (up to 2 weeks).

10. Considerable difficulty was found in correlating the degree of anuria with the amount of blood destruction and the pH of the urine, and it is suggested that colligative changes in the blood, incident upon the liberation of large amounts of haemoglobin, may not be an unimportant factor in the genesis of anuria, in addition to the blockage of the renal tubules with haemoglobin. Estimations of the depression in the freezing point of serum (Δ) from anuric cases of blackwater fever would tend to support this view.

11. Estimation of plasma albumin, globulin and fibrin in blackwater fever indicate that these fall within normal range; although the averages differ from normal averages, being somewhat lower in the case of total proteins and albumin, and raised in the globulin and fibrin. The $\frac{A}{G}$ ratio was sometimes markedly below normal.

12. Methaemoglobin has never been found in blackwater serum in Greece.

13. The magnitude and suddenness of the haemolysis is not the only factor determining the concentration of pseudo-methaemoglobin in blood, as shown by cases where great haemolysis has taken place; yet the concentration of pseudo-methaemoglobin is often less than in cases when the haemolysis has been considerably lighter.

REFERENCES.

- ACHARD, CH. & SAINT GIRONS, F. (1912). *Bull. Soc. med. Hôp. Paris*, 33, 749.
- BAKERS, S. & DODDS, E. C. (1925). *Brit. J. exp. Path.*, 6, 247.
- BARCROFT, J. (1928). *The Respiratory Function of the Blood*, Part II. Cambridge University Press.
- BARGER. (1904). *J. chem. Soc.*, 85, 286.
- BARRATT, J. O. W. & YORKE, W. (1909). *Ann. trop. Med. Parasit.*, 3, 1.
- & ———. (1914). *Ibid.*, 8, 509.
- BAYLISS, W. M. (1924). *Principles of General Physiology*. London: Longmans Green.
- BURNS, D. (1929). *Biophysics*. London: J. & A. Churchill.
- CUSHNY, A. R. (1901). Diuresis and permeability of renal cells. *J. Physiol.*, 27, 429.
- . (1917). *The Secretion of Urine*. London: Longmans Green.
- . (1920). Colloidal free filtrate of serum. *J. Physiol.*, 53, 391.
- FAIRLEY, N. H. (1937). *Nature*, 139, 588.
- FAIRLEY, N. H. & BROMFIELD, R. J. (1933). *Trans. R. Soc. trop. med. Hyg.*, 27, 289.
- & ———. (1934). *Ibid.*, 28, 141.
- & ———. (1937). *Ibid.*, 31, 123.
- GREENBERGE, D. M. (1929). *J. biol. Chem.*, 82, 545.
- HEILMEYER. (1933). *Medizinische Spektrophotometric*. Jena: Fischer.
- HUNTER. (1930). *Brit. J. exp. Path.*, 11, 6.
- MATHEWS, A. P. (1930). *Physiological Chemistry*. London: Baillière, Tindall & Cox.
- PONDER, E. (1934). *The Mammalian Red Cell and the Properties of Hemolytic Systems*. Berlin: Gebruder Bornstraeger.
- ROSS, R. J. (1932). Researches on blackwater fever in Southern Rhodesia. *Res. Mem. Lond. Sch. trop. Med.*, 6.
- WHITE, F. D. (1932). *Brit. J. exp. Path.*, 13, 1.
- WU, H. (1922). *J. biol. Chem.*, 51, 33.
- WU, H. & LING, S. M. (1927). *Chin. J. Physiol.*, 1, 161.
- YORKE, W. & NAUSS, R. W. (1911). *Ann. trop. Med. Parasit.*, 5, 289.
- YORKE, W., MURGATROYD, F. & OWEN, D. U. (1930). *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 23, 335.



PETER BOROVSKY (1863-1932).
From a photograph taken in 1895.

EARLY DISCOVERIES REGARDING THE PARASITE OF ORIENTAL SORE.

(WITH AN ENGLISH TRANSLATION OF THE MEMOIR BY P. F. BOROVSKY :
"ON SART SORE." 1898.)

BY

CECIL A. HOARE, D.Sc.,

Wellcome Bureau of Scientific Research, London

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	67
BOROVSKY'S PREDECESSORS	69
BOROVSKY'S OBSERVATIONS	70
BOROVSKY'S SUCCESSORS	71
NOMENCLATURE OF <i>Leishmania</i>	75
REFERENCES	75
APPENDIX I. P. F. BOROVSKY : A BIOGRAPHICAL NOTE	77
APPENDIX II. P. F. BOROVSKY (1898) : "ON SART SORE"	78
APPENDIX III. K. SHULGIN (1902) : ON THE TRANSMISSION OF ORIENTAL SORE	90

INTRODUCTION.

The history of the discovery of the parasites causing oriental sore and kala-azar has already been discussed in a number of text-books of medical protozoology (e.g., LAVERAN'S *Leishmanioses*, 1917; and WENYON'S *Protozoology*, 1926) and in some of the special papers dealing with the leishmaniasis. The narrative given in different publications varies as regards both completeness and degree of accuracy, the latter depending upon the sources of information used by the writers and upon the interpretation of the available data.

In the case of oriental sore the first observer who actually saw the parasite, now known as *Leishmania tropica*, was CUNNINGHAM (1885); WRIGHT (December, 1903), however, is credited with the first correct description of this organism. Since the parasite of kala-azar, now known as *L. donovani*, was also discovered in the same year by LEISHMAN (May, 1903), the elucidation of both cutaneous and visceral leishmaniasis is generally associated with the year 1903. In LAVERAN'S important monograph on the leishmaniasis this is emphasized in the opening sentence as follows: "La découverte des Protozoaires connus sous le nom de *Leishmania* ne date que de 1903" (LAVERAN, 1917: p. 1).

A few years ago PAWLOWSKY (1927, 1931) drew attention to the fact that the parasite of oriental sore was first correctly described and identified as a

protozoon in 1898, by a Russian military surgeon, P. F. BOROVSKY, whose observations were described in a memoir "On Sart Sore"* published in *Voenno-Medicinskij Žurnal*† [= Military-Medical Journal] (St. Petersburg), Part CLXXXV, Book 11, November, 1898. This paper, being written in Russian, in a journal with a limited circulation, remained unknown outside Russia,‡ and even in the country of its origin BOROVSKY's discovery was not properly appreciated until quite recently (YAKIMOFF, 1915; PAWLOWSKY, 1927) though references to it and quotations from the paper appeared in some earlier publications (MARZINOWSKY and BOGROW, 1904; MARZINOWSKY, 1909, 1912; PETERSEN, 1912).||

At present BOROVSKY's paper is available to readers not conversant with the Russian language only in the form of a short extract translated into German by PAWLOWSKY (1931). In Russia itself the journal in which the memoir appeared is now a bibliographical rarity, but part of the paper has been made accessible to a wider circle of Russian readers by the publication of extracts from it in commemoration of the 40th year of BOROVSKY's scientific career (ORLOV, 1927).

One of the objects of the present paper is to give an account of BOROVSKY's observations and to assign his discovery to its proper place in the history of tropical medicine and parasitology. Since the perusal of the original literature on the aetiology of the leishmaniasis has revealed a number of new facts of historical interest, it is proposed at the same time to give a brief account of the work that preceded and followed BOROVSKY's discovery (with the exception of those investigations in which these diseases were attributed to bacteria).

The other object of this paper is to provide an unabridged English translation of BOROVSKY's memoir, thereby placing it in its entirety at the disposal of the English-reading public for the first time. In view of the inaccessibility of the original both because of its being out of print and because of language difficulties, it is hoped that future historians of medical zoology will be able to make use of this translation as an equivalent of the original text. To this end particular care has been taken to make the translation as literal as is consistent with correct English.

*"Sart sore" and "Pendeh sore" are two local names under which oriental sore is known in Turkestan. They are derived from the *Sarts*, a native tribe in the former Syr-Daria and Ferghana territories, and from *Pendeh*, a town in the former Transcaspian province, respectively.

†The transliteration is that adopted by the Russian Academy of Sciences. It has been used by me for names which have hitherto appeared in Russian only. For names of Russian authors who have employed other methods of transcription I have adhered to their own spelling.

‡Only brief and inadequate mention of BOROVSKY's discovery was made by PETERSEN (1912a) and by YAKIMOFF (1915a), the latter stating that "il a le mérite d'avoir reconnu, le premier, dans ces parasites des protozoaires." (*Loc. cit.*, p. 500.)

||I have to acknowledge my indebtedness to Prof. W. L. YAKIMOFF, of Leningrad, for the loan of a number of reprints of Russian papers referred to above, which are unobtainable in this country.

I was unable to find the required issue of the "*Voenno-Medicinskij Žurnal*" in any of the scientific libraries of this country, but was fortunate enough to receive a copy of this rare publication from Prof. F. WALCKER, M.D., Director of the Library of the Military Medical Academy, Leningrad, to whom I wish to express my deepest gratitude for this service.

In addition to a review of the history of the discovery of the parasite causing oriental sore, I have appended a note dealing with the views of K. SHULGIN (1902) on the transmission of this disease. Although SHULGIN was the first to incriminate blood-sucking insects as vectors, his observations have passed almost unnoticed and remain practically unknown.

BOROVSKY'S PREDECESSORS.

The discovery of the causative agent of oriental sore is generally attributed to CUNNINGHAM (1885), who was certainly the first to devote his attention to other elements than the bacteria associated with the lesion, some of which were at that time believed to play a part in the production of the disease. In sections of a sore ("Delhi boil") fixed in alcohol and stained with gentian violet CUNNINGHAM found numerous cells measuring on an average 12.6 by 8.8 μ and varying in form. These cells contained rounded elements, referred to as "nucleoid bodies," which stained uniformly violet or blue, and varied in number and size. In some of the cells only "a single nucleoid mass" was present, in others "a few of very various sizes," while in others again "a large number of minute and fairly equal sized ones were thickly scattered throughout the entire cell."

CUNNINGHAM regarded these cells as "parasitic bodies" responsible for the disease, and referred them to the Mycetozoa or "slime-fungi." The cells themselves were believed to be the "parent plasmodia or amoebae" [= plasmodia of a "Monadinic organism," while the "nucleoid bodies" within them were supposed to represent "sporoid bodies," or stages of development of "zoocysts or sporocysts" [= spores]. It is evident from the text that CUNNINGHAM had in mind a parasitic mycetozoon of the type of *Plasmodiophora*, to the plasmodial stage of which his figures bear some resemblance.

Amongst the elements described and depicted by CUNNINGHAM some, like the small "nucleoid bodies" of equal size, undoubtedly represented Leishman-Donovan bodies, while others—large single "nucleoid bodies" and cell-inclusions of unequal size—were either artifacts or products of degeneration.

It would thus appear that CUNNINGHAM was actually the first to have *seen* the parasites of oriental sore enclosed in the tissue-cells of the host, but he entirely misunderstood and misinterpreted their nature, for he regarded the host-cell (macrophage) as the parasite, while the leishmanias within it—which revealed no structure owing to the crude technique employed—were interpreted as spores developing in the parent plasmodium.

These findings were later confirmed by FIRTH (1891), who added nothing new to CUNNINGHAM'S description of the "parasitic bodies," but stated that

protozoon in 1898, by a Russian military surgeon, P. F. BOROVSKY, whose observations were described in a memoir "On Sart Sore"* published in *Voenno-Medicinskij Žurnal*† [= Military-Medical Journal] (St. Petersburg), Part CLXXXV, Book 11, November, 1898. This paper, being written in Russian, in a journal with a limited circulation, remained unknown outside Russia,‡ and even in the country of its origin BOROVSKY's discovery was not properly appreciated until quite recently (YAKIMOFF, 1915; PAWLOWSKY, 1927) though references to it and quotations from the paper appeared in some earlier publications (MARZINOWSKY and BOGROW, 1904; MARZINOWSKY, 1909, 1912; PETERSEN, 1912).||

At present BOROVSKY's paper is available to readers not conversant with the Russian language only in the form of a short extract translated into German by PAWLOWSKY (1931). In Russia itself the journal in which the memoir appeared is now a bibliographical rarity, but part of the paper has been made accessible to a wider circle of Russian readers by the publication of extracts from it in commemoration of the 40th year of BOROVSKY's scientific career (ORLOV, 1927).

One of the objects of the present paper is to give an account of BOROVSKY's observations and to assign his discovery to its proper place in the history of tropical medicine and parasitology. Since the perusal of the original literature on the aetiology of the leishmaniases has revealed a number of new facts of historical interest, it is proposed at the same time to give a brief account of the work that preceded and followed BOROVSKY's discovery (with the exception of those investigations in which these diseases were attributed to bacteria).

The other object of this paper is to provide an unabridged English translation of BOROVSKY's memoir, thereby placing it in its entirety at the disposal of the English-reading public for the first time. In view of the inaccessibility of the original both because of its being out of print and because of language difficulties, it is hoped that future historians of medical zoology will be able to make use of this translation as an equivalent of the original text. To this end particular care has been taken to make the translation as literal as is consistent with correct English.

*"Sart sore" and "Pendeh sore" are two local names under which oriental sore is known in Turkestan. They are derived from the *Sarts*, a native tribe in the former Syr-Daria and Ferghana territories, and from *Pendeh*, a town in the former Transcaspian province, respectively.

†The transliteration is that adopted by the Russian Academy of Sciences. It has been used by me for names which have hitherto appeared in Russian only. For names of Russian authors who have employed other methods of transcription I have adhered to their own spelling.

‡Only brief and inadequate mention of BOROVSKY's discovery was made by PETERSEN (1912a) and by YAKIMOFF (1915a), the latter stating that "il a le mérite d'avoir reconnu, le premier, dans ces parasites des protozoaires." (*Loc. cit.*, p. 500.)

||I have to acknowledge my indebtedness to Prof. W. L. YAKIMOFF, of Leningrad, for the loan of a number of reprints of Russian papers referred to above, which are unobtainable in this country.

detected a "process" running from the nucleus to the periphery of the body. In smears the parasites—for BOROVSKY immediately recognized the "corpuscles" as such—were either free or packed into "spheres," but in sections the majority were enclosed within the lymphoid or epithelioid cells of the host-tissues. Multiplication of the parasites was said to take place by simple fission, by a form of multiple division, and by budding. Attempts were made to cultivate the organisms, but these were unsuccessful.

BOROVSKY recognized the parasites as "unicellular organisms," which he referred to the "class of protozoa," and concluded that "Sart sore is not caused by any kind of bacteria, but by organisms of a higher order, *viz.* protozoa."

If BOROVSKY's data are examined from the point of view of our present knowledge, it will be seen that he not only gave an accurate description of the parasite of oriental sore,* but also established its true relation to the elements of the host's tissues. There can be little doubt that the "process" seen near the nucleus of the parasite represents the rod-shaped kinetoplast (=kinetonucleus),† while the "lymphoid" cells harbouring the parasites are evidently the macrophages.

To BOROVSKY thus belongs the credit of being the first to give a recognizable description of *Leishmania tropica*—and indeed of leishmanias in general—and of assigning it to the Protozoa.

It is inevitable that some minor errors of interpretation should have occurred in BOROVSKY's account, but if it is taken into consideration that his investigations were carried out independently, in a field in which he had no previous experience, it is surprising that these errors are so few and insignificant.

The foregoing is only a brief statement of BOROVSKY's findings. For full particulars of his investigations and for their interpretation the reader is referred to the translation of the paper "*On Sart Sore*" appearing in Appendix II, accompanied by the translator's comments. In addition to the observations leading to the elucidation of the aetiology of oriental sore, BOROVSKY has given a very accurate account of the clinical course and histopathology of this disease.

BOROVSKY'S SUCCESSORS.

BOROVSKY's investigations were closely followed by K. SHULGIN, his colleague at the Tashkent Military Hospital, who (SHULGIN, 1902) was soon able to confirm all BOROVSKY's results in the case of "Pendeh sore," which was prevalent in south-eastern Turkestan.

Though the history of the subsequent investigations on the aetiology of oriental sore is fairly well known, I have found—in the course of a careful study

*In this connexion it is interesting to note that YAKIMOFF (1915) had seen typical leishmania in one of BOROVSKY's original preparations of oriental sore, made in the 'nineties and presented to YAKIMOFF in 1913.

†In BOROVSKY's Fig. 1 (see plate facing p. 84), depicting the parasites, this structure cannot be detected.

he "always regarded them as sporozoa and in 1887 went so far as to suggest . . . the name *sporozoa furunculosa* to indicate their peculiar pathological influence." In the legend to his Fig. 5 FIRTH refers to the elements evidently depicting the macrophages with enclosed leishmanias as "multinuclear bodies" which, he says, are "the spore-like bodies alluded to in the text." Since these bodies are also called "sporozoa" in the text, and "sporozooid bodies" in the title of the paper, it is clear that all these designations were regarded by him as equivalent.

I have dwelt on FIRTH's nomenclature at some length because certain authors have accepted "*sporozoa furunculosa*" as a binominal Linnaean name.* However, it is clear from the context and from the examples quoted above that FIRTH himself employed the name "*sporozoa furunculosa*" merely as a descriptive Latin medical term, the English equivalent of which would be *furunculous* (or *furuncular*) *sporozoa*, or—in the author's own words—"spore-like bodies" associated with boils. However, if formal arguments against the validity of FIRTH's nomenclature are required, it may be pointed out that the name *Sporozoa*, having been given to a class by LEUCKART in 1879, is not available for a genus; furthermore, in the original text the name "*sporozoa*," though written in italics, begins with a small initial letter and appears in the plural form, with which "*furunculosa*" is in agreement. The last two items constitute an infringement of Art. 8 of the International Rules of Zoological Nomenclature, according to which "A generic name must consist of a single word . . . written with a capital initial letter, and employed as a substantive in the nominative singular."

BOROVSKY'S OBSERVATIONS.

BOROVSKY commenced his researches on the aetiology of oriental sore ("Sart sore") in 1894 and published the results in 1898. He was fully conversant with the works in which the causative agent was sought amongst the bacteria, but evidently knew nothing about the publications of CUNNINGHAM and FIRTH. Though he also cultivated bacteria from the sore, he at once realized that they were of no aetiological significance and turned to the investigation of young, non-ulcerating sores.

He examined the "juice" from the sore in hanging drop preparations, made smears of the scrapings—fixed with absolute alcohol and ether and stained by Loeffler's method—and also cut and stained sections of excised sores after fixation in Zenker's fluid. In all these preparations he found numerous small spherical, oval or fusiform corpuscles, measuring about 1.5 to 2.0 μ in diameter. In each of these bodies BOROVSKY distinguished a nucleus,† while in many he

*As far as I was able to ascertain, BLANCHARD (1904) was the first to insist on its validity.

†Curiously enough, MARZINOWSKY and BOGROW (1904a) and later MARZINOWSKY (1912), in their comments on BOROVSKY's work, erroneously imply that he failed to detect the presence of the nucleus.

(December, 1903) had already been seen by him in November, 1903, in preparations of an oriental sore received from MARZINOWSKY, a fact which is also recorded by the Russian observers (MARZINOWSKY and BOGROW, 1904a). From the work of these authors it is also obvious that, like WRIGHT, they had no knowledge of the preceding investigations on the aetiology of kala-azar. They were, however, familiar with BOROVSKY's memoir, but their paper shows a certain tendency to belittle his achievements, while some of his observations are even misrepresented (cf. footnote on p. 70). This attitude is also maintained by one of these authors in a subsequent paper (MARZINOWSKY, 1912).

The remaining publications on the parasite of oriental sore to be considered are those which led to the final elucidation of its morphology and to the determination of its systematic position as established at present. Attention has already been drawn to the fact that the investigations reviewed above were conducted independently and in ignorance of similar work carried out on kala-azar. However, the close resemblance between the causative organisms of this disease and of oriental sore was soon recognized, and thereafter the study of the two parasites began to be correlated. In order to understand the vicissitudes through which the classification of the parasite of oriental sore has passed, it is, therefore, necessary to make a digression and consider briefly the earlier work on the identity of the parasite of kala-azar.

When first discovered by LEISHMAN (1903) the parasite responsible for kala-azar* was referred to the trypanosomes and correctly described as possessing a macro- and a micro-nucleus [= kinetonucleus or kinetoplast]. LAVERAN (1903), however, concluded that this parasite represented a piroplasm and—with MESNIL—named it *Piroplasma donovani*. ROSS (1903) took the same view—though independently—as CUNNINGHAM did with regard to the parasite of oriental sore, and considered the entire host-cell ("matrix") with the enclosed organisms, which he interpreted as "spores," to be the parasite, and referred it to the Sporozoa, emending LAVERAN and MESNIL's name to *Leishmania donovani*, under which it has been known ever since.

MESNIL (1904), who has made many valuable contributions to our knowledge of pathogenic protozoa in his critical reviews of the current literature, was the first to note the striking resemblance between *Helcosoma tropicum* and *Piroplasma donovani*, and suggested that the former should be placed "tout près des *Piroplasma*." The morphological similarity between the two parasites was confirmed by LEISHMAN (1904) and CHRISTOPHERS (1904), the former maintaining his belief in the flagellate nature of the parasite of kala-azar and the latter regarding it as a microsporidium. The position was then examined by BLANCHARD (1904), who pointed out that there was not a single character distinguishing the

*Though the Leishman-Donovan bodies were actually first seen by MARCHAND (1903), he did not consider them to be parasites, but regarded them as the product of degenerated cell nuclei. However, later MARCHAND and LEDINGHAM (1904) recognized that the structures previously observed by the first-named author were really the parasites described by LEISHMAN and others in 1903.

of the literature on this subject undertaken in connexion with the present inquiry—that a number of important data have been omitted or misinterpreted. In order to render this historical review as complete as possible, therefore, I propose to give a brief survey of the work leading to the establishment of *Leishmania tropica* in the position it now occupies.

While BOROVSKY was undoubtedly the first to give a recognizable account of this parasite, the details of its structure as it is known at present were first revealed by WRIGHT (1903). However, the actual description of the morphology of the parasite adds nothing new to BOROVSKY's account, for WRIGHT refers to the nucleus and kinetoplast merely as "a larger and a smaller lilac-coloured mass" respectively, and only *assumes* that these structures "are of the nature of nuclei," whereas BOROVSKY definitely described the nucleus as such, and only failed to interpret the nature of the kinetoplast (his "process"). On the other hand, WRIGHT's photomicrographs provide the first accurate illustration of the cytological details of the parasites in question. These were identified by him as Protozoa and tentatively referred to the Microsporidia, under the name *Helcosoma tropicum*. WRIGHT evidently knew nothing about BOROVSKY's paper and (since he does not refer to them) it may be inferred that he was either unaware of the works on the parasite of kala-azar published in the course of the same year (1903) or did not appreciate their bearing upon his own investigation.

In 1904 there appeared two versions (Russian and German) of a paper by MARZINOWSKY and BOGROW (1904, 1904a) in which these observers give a correct description of the parasite of oriental sore, illustrated by photomicrographs. They refer to the nucleus and kinetoplast as macro- and micro-nucleus respectively, their interpretation thus coinciding with the conception of those authors who regarded the Trypanosomidae as binucleate organisms. They furthermore expressed their firm conviction that the parasite was a protozoon very closely related to *Trypanosoma*, though differing from it in certain characters. It is thus seen that MARZINOWSKY and BOGROW recognized the true affinities of the parasite of oriental sore, for which they proposed the name *Ovoplasma orientale*. Though the Russian authors arrived at this conclusion quite independently, BLANCHARD, whose paper appeared in May, 1904, was actually the first to draw attention to the close relationship of this parasite to the trypanosomes, but his opinion was based on the knowledge of LEISHMAN's work on the parasite of kala-azar, as will be shown below.

It is not generally known that although MARZINOWSKY and BOGROW's papers were published nearly a year later than WRIGHT's, the investigations of the Russian authors and their conclusions were entirely independent of those of WRIGHT. This is clear not only from the dates appearing in the corresponding writings,* but also from the testimony of MESNIL (1904), who, in his review of WRIGHT's paper, states that parasites identical with those described by WRIGHT

*The case described by WRIGHT first came under his observation on July 28th, 1903, while that which provided the material for MARZINOWSKY and BOGROW was examined by them between the end of May and the end of June, 1903.

The flagellate nature of *L. tropica* was demonstrated in cultures for the first time by NICOLLE (1908), thus finally establishing its morphological, if not specific, identity with *L. donovani*.

NOMENCLATURE OF LEISHMANIA.

As far as I am aware, the complete synonymy of *L. tropica* and *L. donovani* has never been published. The following revised lists, which contain all the names I have been able to trace under which these parasites have been described, can serve as a brief summary of the foregoing historical review.

(1) *Leishmania tropica* (Wright, 1903) Lühe, 1906 (*nec* Woodcock, 1909).

Synonyms :—

“ Mycetozoa ” Cunningham, 1885.

“ *sporozoa furunculosa* ” Firth, 1891.

“ Protozoa ” Borovsky, 1898.

Helcosoma tropicum Wright, 1903.

Leishmania furunculosa (Firth, 1891)

Blanchard, 1904.

Ovoplasma orientale Marzinowsky & Bogrow, 1904.

Leishmania wrighti Nicolle, 1908.

Crithidium cunninghami Carter, 1909.

Leishmania cunninghami Carter, 1909.

Herpetomonas tropica (Wright, 1903)

Patton, 1909.

Herpetomonas farunculosa (Firth, 1891)

Patton, 1922.

(2) *Leishmania donovani* (Laveran & Mesnil, 1903) Ross, 1903.

Synonyms :—

Piropasma donovani Laveran & Mesnil, 1903.

“ *Hepatomonas* of Kala Azar ” Rogers, 1906.

Herpetomonas donovani (Laveran & Mesnil, 1903)

Mesnil, 1906 (*nec* Patton, 1908).

Leptomonas donovani (Laveran & Mesnil, 1903)

Mesnil, 1909.

REFERENCES.

- BLANCHARD, R. (1904). Note critique sur les corpuscules de Leishman. *Rev. Méd. Hyg. trop.*, 1, 37.
- BOROVSKY, P. F. (1898). [On Sore.] *Voenno-Medicinskij Žurnal* [= Military-Medical Journal]. Pt. cxcv, No. 11 (76th year). 925. [In Russian.]
- CARTER, R. M. (1909). Oriental sore of Northern India a protozoal infection. *Brit. med. J.*, 2, 647.
- CHRISTOPHERS, S. R. (1904). On a parasite found in persons suffering from enlargement of the spleen in India. Second report. *Sci. Mem. Offic. med. sanit. Dep. India.* (N.S.) 11.

parasite of oriental sore from that of kala-azar and, accordingly, referred the former to the same genus under the name *Leishmania furunculosa* (Firth, 1891), in the belief that FIRTH'S name "*sporozoa furunculosa*" was a valid binominal designation.* BLANCHARD followed LEISHMAN in admitting the possibility of *Leishmania* representing some stage of a trypanosome.

Shortly afterwards ROGERS (1904, 1904a) succeeded in cultivating *L. donovani* and demonstrating its flagellate stage. This observation led him to amplify LEISHMAN'S view and to regard the Leishman-Donovan bodies as a definite stage in the life-history of a trypanosome. MESNIL (1904a) attempted to reconcile his own views with those of ROGERS, on the basis of SCHAUDINN'S theory, by accepting two stages of development in the leishmanial parasite, one being an endoglobular piroplasm and the other a trypanosome. In a "Discussion on the Leishman-Donovan Body" at the 72nd Meeting of the British Medical Association, LEISHMAN (1904a) compared these bodies to the "resting forms" of *Herpetomonas muscae-domesticae*. A further step towards the recognition of the affinities of *L. donovani* with the insect-flagellates was made by MESNIL (1904b), who, in reviewing ROGERS'S paper on the cultural forms, stated that these were more like *Crithidia* or *Herpetomonas* than *Trypanosoma*. ROGERS (1906) arrived at the same conclusion and proposed to rename the parasite "*Hepatomonas* [obvious *lapsus calami* for *Herpetomonas*] of Kala Azar," a suggestion formally endorsed by MESNIL (1906) in emending the name to *Herpetomonas donovani* (L. & M.), the same amendment having been made later, but apparently independently, by PATTON (1908). The name of this parasite was again changed, to *Leptomonas donovani* (L. & M.), by MESNIL (1909).

In spite of all this evidence in support of the flagellate nature of the leishmanias, LÜHE (1906) in his systematic survey of the blood-inhabiting protozoa attached these parasites to the piroplasms. As far as I have been able to ascertain, this author was the first to adopt the name *Leishmania tropica* (Wright, 1903)† for the parasite of oriental sore, rejecting FIRTH'S name "*sporozoa furunculosa*‡ as invalid on account of its plural form (cf. p. 70). In conformity with *Herpetomonas donovani*, PATTON (1909) transferred the parasite of oriental sore to the same genus, under the name *Herpetomonas tropica*, but later he (PATTON, 1922) revived FIRTH'S designation and suggested the name *Herpetomonas farunculosa*.|| Amongst the names given to this parasite the following should also be mentioned: *Leishmania wrighti* proposed by NICOLLE (1908a) and *Crithidium* [sic] *cunninghami* and *Leishmania cunninghami* by CARTER (1909). The last three names were introduced with an utter disregard of prior claims.

*The case against the validity of this name has been dealt with above (p. 70).

†This name was later suggested by WOODCOCK (1909), evidently in ignorance of LÜHE'S earlier amendment.

‡LÜHE erroneously attributed this name to CUNNINGHAM.

||This spelling is an obvious *lapsus calami*.

- ROGERS, L. (1904). Preliminary note on the development of *Trypanosoma* in cultures of the Cunningham-Leishman-Donovan bodies of cachexial fever and kala-azar. *Lancet*, 2, 215.
- (1904a). On the development of flagellated organisms (trypanosomes) from the spleen protozoic parasites of cachexial fevers and kala-azar. *Quart. J. micr. Sci.*, 48, (N.S.), 367.
- (1906). Further work on the development of the *Hepatomonas* [sic] of kala-azar and cachexial fever from Leishman-Donovan bodies. *Proc. roy. Soc. (B)*, 77, 284.
- ROSS, R. (1903). Further notes on Leishman's bodies. *Brit. med. J.*, 2, 1401.
- SHULGIN, K. (1902). [The question of the aetiology of Pendehe sore.] *Russkij Vrač* [= Russian Physician]. 32, 1150; 33, 1180. [In Russian.]
- WENYON, C. M. (1926). *Protozoology*, 1, London: Baillière, Tindall & Cox.
- WOODCOCK, H. M. (1909). The haemoflagellates and allied forms. In LANKESTER'S *Treatise on Zoology*. Pt. 1, Fasc. 1, 193 (London).
- WRIGHT, J. H. (1903). Protozoa in a case of tropical ulcer ("Delhi sore"). *J. med. Res.*, 10 (N.S. 5), 472.
- YAKIMOFF, W. L. (1915). *Leishmanioses*. In *Rapp. sur les Trav. de la Mission Scient. pour les Recherches de Malad. Tropic. hum. et anim. du Turkestan en 1913*. Pt. 1 (Pétrograde). [In Russian.]
- (1915a). Contribution à l'étude des leishmanioses de l'homme et du chien dans le Turkestan Russe. *Bull. Soc. Path. exot.*, 8, 774.

APPENDIX I.

P. F. BOROVSKY (1863-1932): A BIOGRAPHICAL NOTE.

PETER FOKITCH BOROVSKY was born in 1863 at Pogar, in the Government of Chernigov, Russia. He studied medicine at the University of Kiev and at the Military Medical Academy in St. Petersburg, whence he graduated as an army doctor in 1887. Having specialized in surgery BOROVSKY obtained the degree of Doctor of Medicine in 1891 for a thesis entitled: *Contributions to the Study of Tuberculosis of the Bones and Joints* (St. Petersburg). In 1892 he was appointed to Turkestan, in charge of the Surgical Department and Bacteriological Laboratory of the Tashkent Military Hospital.

BOROVSKY's early researches in Turkestan were devoted to the elucidation of the aetiology of "Sart sore," which is one of the local names for oriental sore. His work was conducted in a small laboratory with poor equipment, the most valuable of which, a Zeiss microscope with an oil-immersion lens, was BOROVSKY's private property brought by him from St. Petersburg.

The results of these investigations were published by BOROVSKY in 1898, in a paper "On Sart sore," in *Voenno-Medicinskij Žurnal* [= Military-Medical Journal], in which he established the protozoal nature of the causative agent of oriental sore. Unfortunately, this work was destined to be BOROVSKY's only incursion into the realms of protozoology, for at that period the demand for surgeons in Turkestan was so urgent that he was compelled to devote himself entirely to surgery. In the course of his subsequent career BOROVSKY, as Professor of Clinical Surgery in the State University of Middle Asia, was engaged in teaching, as well as in clinical and research work. He died in Tashkent,

- CUNNINGHAM, D. D. (1885). On the presence of peculiar parasitic organisms in the tissue of a specimen of Delhi boil. *Sci. Mem. med. Offrs. Army India*, 1, 21.
- FIRTH, R. H. (1891). Notes on the appearance of certain sporozoid bodies in the protoplasm of an "Oriental Sore." *Brit. med. J.*, 1, 60.
- LAVERAN, A. (1903). [Note on Leishman-Donovan bodies.] *Bull. Acad. Méd. Paris*. (3me. sér.) 1, 238.
- (1917). *Leishmanioses*. Paris: Masson et Cie.
- LEISHMAN, W. B. (1903). On the possibility of the occurrence of trypanosomiasis in India. *Brit. med. J.*, 1, 1252.
- (1904). Note on the nature of the parasitic bodies found in tropical splenomegaly. *Ibid.*, 1, 303.
- (1904a). [Discussion on the Leishman-Donovan body: 72nd Ann. Meet. B.M.A.] *Ibid.*, 2, 642.
- LÜHE, M. (1906). Die im Blute schmarotzenden Protozoen und ihre nächsten Verwandten. In *Mense's Handb. Tropenkrankh.*, 3, 69. Leipzig: Johann Ambrosius Barth.
- MARCHAND, F. (1903). Zur Kenntnis der sogenannten Bantischen Krankheit und der Anaemia splenica. *Münch. med. Wschr.*, 50, 463.
- & LEDINGHAM, J. C. G. (1904). On the question of trypanosome infection in man. *Lancet*, 1, 149.
- MARZINOWSKY, E. J. (1909). [The aetiology of Oriental Sore (bouton d'Orient).] (Thesis: Moscow.) [In Russian.]
- (1912). [Oriental sore (bouton d'Orient) and its treatment.] *Medicinskoje Obozrenije* [= Medical Review.] No. 19, 732. [In Russian.]
- & BOGROW, S. L. (1904). [The aetiology of oriental sore.] *Medicinskoje Obozrenije* [= Medical Review]. 61, 207. [In Russian.]
- & ——— (1904a). Zur Aetiologie der Orientbeule (bouton d'Orient). *Virchows Arch.*, 178, (Folge xvii), 112.
- MESNIL, F. (1904). [Review of: WRIGHT, J. H. (1903)—(q.v.).] *Bull. Inst. Pasteur*, 2, 114.
- (1904a). [Review of: ROGERS, L. (1904)—(q.v.).] *Ibid.*, 2, 725.
- (1904b). [Review of: ROGERS, L. (1904a)—(q.v.).] *Ibid.*, 2, 957.
- (1906). [Review of: ROGERS, L. (1906)—(q.v.).] *Ibid.*, 4, 349.
- (1909). [Review of: PATTON, W. S. (1908)—(q.v.).] *Ibid.*, 7, 107.
- NICOLLE, C. (1908). Culture du parasite du bouton d'Orient. *C. R. Acad. Sci. Paris*, 146, 842.
- (1908a). Sur trois cas d'infection splénique infantile à corps de Leishman observés en Tunisie. *Arch. Inst. Pasteur Tunis. Fasc.* 1, 3.
- ORLOV, I. I. (1927). [The fortieth anniversary of Prof. P. F. Borovsky.] *Pensée Méd. Uzbéquistane* (Tashkent), 2, 5. [In Russian.]
- PATTON, W. S. (1908). *Herpetomonas lygaei*. *Arch. Protistenk*, 30, 1.
- (1909). The parasite of kala-azar and allied organisms. *Lancet*, 1, 306; *Trans. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 2, 113.
- (1922). Some reflections on the kala-azar and oriental sore problems. *Ind. J. med. Res.*, 9, 496.
- PAWLOWSKY, E. [= Pavlovskij.] (1927). [On the history of the discovery of the parasites of Pendehe sore.] *Pensée Méd. Uzbéquistane* (Tashkent), 2, 16. [In Russian.]
- (1931). Zur Entdeckungsgeschichte der Leishmaniaparasiten. *Zbl. Bakt.* (I. Abt. Orig.), 123, 14.
- PETERSEN, O. (1912). [On the treatment of oriental sore (leishmaniasis) with salvarsan.] *Russkij Vrač* [= Russian Physician]. No. 43 [sep. pag.] [In Russian.]
- (1912a). Die Salvarsanbehandlung der Orientbeule (Leishmaniose). *Münch. med. Wschr.*, 59, 2491.

HEIDENREICH³ says: "if the end of a platinum wire is introduced into the fluid issuing from a scab subjected to pressure, and if a stab is made with this infected wire into sterile [*nutrient gelatin*]⁴ in a sterile test-tube it is sometimes possible, after several days, to obtain a culture of a special micrococcus." In view of this statement one can understand the scepticism regarding the "micrococcus Biskra, DUCLAUX et HEIDENREICH," especially since RAPTSCHESKY has obtained different results in his investigation. On account of the controversy regarding the aetiology of "oriental sore," and with the object of ascertaining whether Sart sore is identical with Pendeh sore, we undertook at the end of 1894 a bacteriological and anatomico-pathological investigation. The material for the investigation was provided partly by hospital patients and partly by out-patients. Most of the cases selected were in the early period, *i.e.* in the non-ulcerating stage, the importance of which was rightly pointed out by RAPTSCHESKY.

The investigation was carried out with long intervals owing to lack of suitable material. Frequently several months would elapse before a single suitable case was encountered, and this was due not so much to the rareness of the disease as to the fact that patients in the first period of the disease pay little attention to it, since at the beginning it causes no discomfort, and therefore in most cases they apply for assistance only during the period of ulceration.

THE CLINICAL COURSE OF SART SORE.

In the initial phase of its development Sart sore appears in the form of a nodule elevated above the surface of the skin and perceptible both to the eye and to the touch. The nodule, which is of a dark red hue, passes imperceptibly into the healthy tissue of the skin. Palpation is not painful; the patient feels no discomfort, except a slight itching, and even this is not always experienced. After 10 to 20 days (we have not seen any earlier cases) there appears in the centre of the nodule a slight depression covered by a grayish, firmly adherent crust. On removal of this a small opening is revealed discharging a slightly turbid serous fluid. It is usually at this period that the nodules begin to ulcerate, starting from the centre, while an infiltration spreads into the surrounding healthy tissues.

When kept clean and in the absence of external irritation the nodule does not ulcerate, but begins to increase more or less regularly, sometimes assuming the appearance of a plaque about 4 to 5 cm. in diameter, while the skin takes on a bluish tint and its surface becomes considerably desquamated. Sometimes in the infiltrated area of the skin the papillae begin to proliferate and the surface becomes covered with numerous minute papillae. The papillae are more defined in the centre, diminishing towards the periphery, while at the edge the

³L. L. HEIDENREICH: Pendeh Sore (Tropical Sore). Attacks, cause, identification, etc. Publ. by Chief Milit. Med. Dept. [*St. Petersburg*, 1888. (*Review in: Ann. Inst. Pasteur*, 3, 1889, 445.)]

⁴[In the original only the initials, indicating "meat-gelatin," are given.—C.A.H.]

where he had spent 40 years of his working life, on December 16th, 1932, at the age of 69.

The accompanying portrait (Frontispiece), taken in 1895, represents BOROVSKY—wearing the uniform of a medical officer in the Imperial Russian Army—at the age of 32, at the period when his researches on oriental sore were being conducted. The original portrait was given to the late Prof. G. H. F. NUTTALL, F.R.S., by Prof. E. N. PAWLOWSKY, of the Military Medical Academy, Leningrad, for inclusion in the "Portrait Gallery" of parasitologists at the Molteno Institute, Cambridge, and has been kindly placed at my disposal by Prof. D. KEILIN, F.R.S. The biographical data for this note were compiled from articles by I. I. ORLOV (*Pensée Méd. Uzbéquistane*, 2, 1927, p. 5), E. N. PAWLOWSKY (*Ibid.*, p. 16), L. ISSAEV (*Med. Parasitol. & Parasit. Dis.*, Moscow, 1, 1933, p. 277) and from two anonymous obituary notices (*Ibid.*, p. 287, and *Münch. med. Wschr.* 80, 1933, p. 518).

APPENDIX II.

ON SART SORE.¹

BY

P. F. BOROVSKY,

Junior House Surgeon, Bacteriological Department of the Tashkent Military Hospital.

p. 925 Sart sore is not widely distributed in Tashkent; it occurs only sporadically and new arrivals in the country do not invariably contract the disease as in the case of Pendeh sore, Aleppo boil, etc. The sores very rarely appear in the form of a multiple eruption; in most cases two or three sores occur, while solitary sores are not uncommon. Sart sore is thus more restricted in its distribution than Pendeh sore and its incidence amongst the troops is not of an epidemic character. Nevertheless, judging from the clinical and the anatomico-pathological pictures described by HEIDENREICH² and by RAPTSCHESKY, Sart sore is probably identical with Pendeh sore. It may therefore be assumed that the cause must be the same, though the conditions for the manifestation and spread of the infection are different. Moreover, in the Murgab valley itself the disease is not uniformly distributed, according to the investigations of RAPTSCHESKY (*Voenno-Medicinskij Žurnal*, 1889, Book VIII). HEIDENREICH and RAPTSCHESKY differ in their conclusions both as regards the cause of Pendeh sore and the method of its dissemination.

p. 926 On perusing both investigations one is forced to conclude that HEIDENREICH has investigated unsuitable old cases which had already become ulcerated, and that consequently the results obtained were doubtful. Thus,

¹[Published in: *Voenno-Medicinskij Žurnal* (= *Military Medical Journal*), St. Petersburg, November, 1898, Part clxxxv, Book 11 (76th year) pp. 925-941, 2 text-figs. (In Russian.)

Translated from the Russian text by C. A. HOARE.

The pagination of the original text is indicated in the margins; the annotations in italics between square brackets—both in the text and in the footnotes—are interpolated by the translator: those not distinguished in this way are found in the original.]

²[In some publications this name is spelt "Heydenreich."—C.A.H.]

infiltration—its doughy consistence, indolence, the bluish-red hue of the skin above the infiltration—its identification presents no difficulties. It is sufficient to see the sore once or twice to be able to diagnose it without error.

As regards the lesion on the nose this may at first lead to confusion with lupus, but the doughy consistence and the more diffuse character of the infiltration in the case of Sart sore, the absence of minute nodules separated from the main focus by healthy patches of skin, are sufficient for the differentiation of these disorders, apart from the difference in the rate of spreading. As stated above, Sart sore spreads rapidly over the whole nose, whereas in lupus the process is much slower. In the later stage of development it is impossible to confuse the two diseases since lupus destroys the cartilage and bone, whereas Sart sore never penetrates beyond the skin.

PATHOLOGICAL ANATOMY.

The earliest period at which we had occasion to examine a sore was after 2 weeks. The following are the changes observed : There are no special changes in the epidermal layer ; the Malpighian epithelial layer is already slightly altered—in the centre of the papule the interpapillary projections of the Malpighian layer are shorter than at the periphery and in places the granulation tissue penetrates through them in the form of rounded rods. The chief changes, however, occur in the dermis. The dermal papillae are permeated with the granulation elements, mostly in the form of epithelioid cells ; the proliferation of the granulation tissue proceeds mainly along the vessels. The accumulation of cells is greatest in the centre of the papule, resulting in the formation of an area of dense infiltration, while towards the periphery the islets of granulation tissue are separated from each other by areas of more or less modified connective tissue. In the deeper parts of the corium, where it passes into the subcutaneous connective tissue, are scattered accumulations of granulation elements in the form of isolated foci, which are also situated around the vessels. These deep accumulations of cells are separated from the more superficial ones by a thick layer of unaltered or slightly altered connective tissue. The blood-vessels are altered even at this early stage of development of the sore : the endothelium is swollen, inside the vessels there are accumulations of white corpuscles ; the minute arteries and veins are not infrequently narrowed to the point of disappearance of the lumen, partly owing to the accumulation of lymphoid elements around them, and partly to changes in their walls.

In the papular stage the cellular infiltration is more marked in the reticular layer of the dermis than in the papillary layer. In the course of its further proliferation the granulation tissue approaches the surface, progressively disrupts and destroys the Malpighian epithelial layer, raises the epidermal layer and, having destroyed the latter at some point, spreads over the surface. For this reason it is not uncommon to encounter an entire strand of epidermis as well as of the Malpighian layer in the midst of the granulation tissue, whereas

skin is smooth. The margins of the area of infiltration are slightly raised above the middle: between the papillae there is an accumulation of desquamating epithelium, and in some places there are small fissures discharging a slightly turbid fluid.

In Sart sore the infiltration is continuous and individual nodules are not palpable.

Large papules are, however, comparatively rare; in most cases after 2 to 3 weeks a superficial ulcer is produced with a slightly eroded edge; the discharge from the ulcer is not copious and a crust is, therefore, easily formed; around the ulcer the infiltration area assumes a bluish-red hue and has a doughy consistence on palpation. We have never had the opportunity of seeing the lymph nodes in the course of Sart sore; in general this symptom⁵ (which is, according to RAPTSCHESKY, a complication of the sore) does not occur in the Sart sore of Tashkent.

The rate at which Sart sore spreads varies in different parts of the body. If the disease appears on the nose, the eye-lids, or the face in general, the infiltration increases far more rapidly.

p. 928 We have not observed natural healing and therefore possess no data for judging how long the sore can last; we have, however, observed several sores of more than a year's duration which had to be treated before they healed.

As regards the situations in which the sores appear, our observations confirm those of previous observers, *viz.* that the sore mainly attacks the exposed parts. But whereas in our cases the sores occurred most frequently on the face, according to RAPTSCHESKY, HEIDENREICH and others, the shin and forearm were the parts most frequently affected, and the face only to a lesser degree.

As to the time of year when the incidence of the disease is highest, in Tashkent the greatest number of cases appear in January, February, March and April, and then in November and December, while there are considerably fewer cases during the summer months.

The incidence of the disease is higher among the lower classes of the population, though cases also occur among the well-to-do.

Sart sore heals with the formation of a superficial, slightly depressed, flat cicatrix; this is at first of a darker colour, but as time passes it becomes paler and remains whiter than the surrounding parts.

As regards the diagnosis, it is difficult to confuse the sore with anything else if its development is taken into consideration.

We realize that ordinary ulcers of the shin and those which frequently affect the nose might give rise to doubts. However, in the first case cleanliness and rest rapidly produce an amelioration leading to cicatrization of common ulcers, whereas Sart sore remains for weeks in the same state under similar conditions; moreover, if attention is given to the appearance of the area of

⁵[*Viz.*, enlargement of lymph nodes due to lymphangitis: cf. HEIDENREICH, 1888 (abstract in *Ann. Inst. Pasteur*, 3, 1889, p. 445).—C.A.H.]

infiltration—its doughy consistence, indolence, the bluish-red hue of the skin above the infiltration—its identification presents no difficulties. It is sufficient to see the sore once or twice to be able to diagnose it without error.

As regards the lesion on the nose this may at first lead to confusion with lupus, but the doughy consistence and the more diffuse character of the infiltration in the case of Sarsore, the absence of minute nodules separated from the main focus by healthy patches of skin, are sufficient for the differentiation of these disorders, apart from the difference in the rate of spreading. As stated above, Sarsore spreads rapidly over the whole nose, whereas in lupus the process is much slower. In the later stage of development it is impossible to confuse the two diseases since lupus destroys the cartilage and bone, whereas Sarsore never penetrates beyond the skin.

PATHOLOGICAL ANATOMY.

The earliest period at which we had occasion to examine a sore was after 2 weeks. The following are the changes observed : There are no special changes in the epidermal layer ; the Malpighian epithelial layer is already slightly altered—in the centre of the papule the interpapillary projections of the Malpighian layer are shorter than at the periphery and in places the granulation tissue penetrates through them in the form of rounded rods. The chief changes, however, occur in the dermis. The dermal papillae are permeated with the granulation elements, mostly in the form of epithelioid cells ; the proliferation of the granulation tissue proceeds mainly along the vessels. The accumulation of cells is greatest in the centre of the papule, resulting in the formation of an area of dense infiltration, while towards the periphery the islets of granulation tissue are separated from each other by areas of more or less modified connective tissue. In the deeper parts of the corium, where it passes into the subcutaneous connective tissue, are scattered accumulations of granulation elements in the form of isolated foci, which are also situated around the vessels. These deep accumulations of cells are separated from the more superficial ones by a thick layer of unaltered or slightly altered connective tissue. The blood-vessels are altered even at this early stage of development of the sore : the endothelium is swollen, inside the vessels there are accumulations of white corpuscles ; the minute arteries and veins are not infrequently narrowed to the point of disappearance of the lumen, partly owing to the accumulation of lymphoid elements around them, and partly to changes in their walls.

In the papular stage the cellular infiltration is more marked in the reticular layer of the dermis than in the papillary layer. In the course of its further proliferation the granulation tissue approaches the surface, progressively disrupts and destroys the Malpighian epithelial layer, raises the epidermal layer and, having destroyed the latter at some point, spreads over the surface. For this reason it is not uncommon to encounter an entire strand of epidermis as well as of the Malpighian layer in the midst of the granulation tissue, whereas

skin is smooth. The margins of the area of infiltration are slightly raised above the middle: between the papillae there is an accumulation of desquamating epithelium, and in some places there are small fissures discharging a slightly turbid fluid.

In Sart sore the infiltration is continuous and individual nodules are not palpable.

Large papules are, however, comparatively rare; in most cases after 2 to 3 weeks a superficial ulcer is produced with a slightly eroded edge; the discharge from the ulcer is not copious and a crust is, therefore, easily formed; around the ulcer the infiltration area assumes a bluish-red hue and has a doughy consistence on palpation. We have never had the opportunity of seeing the lymph nodes in the course of Sart sore; in general this symptom⁵ (which is, according to RAPTSCHESKY, a complication of the sore) does not occur in the Sart sore of Tashkent.

The rate at which Sart sore spreads varies in different parts of the body. If the disease appears on the nose, the eye-lids, or the face in general, the infiltration increases far more rapidly.

. 928 We have not observed natural healing and therefore possess no data for judging how long the sore can last; we have, however, observed several sores of more than a year's duration which had to be treated before they healed.

As regards the situations in which the sores appear, our observations confirm those of previous observers, *viz.* that the sore mainly attacks the exposed parts. But whereas in our cases the sores occurred most frequently on the face, according to RAPTSCHESKY, HEIDENREICH and others, the shin and forearm were the parts most frequently affected, and the face only to a lesser degree.

As to the time of year when the incidence of the disease is highest, in Tashkent the greatest number of cases appear in January, February, March and April, and then in November and December, while there are considerably fewer cases during the summer months.

The incidence of the disease is higher among the lower classes of the population, though cases also occur among the well-to-do.

Sart sore heals with the formation of a superficial, slightly depressed, flat cicatrix; this is at first of a darker colour, but as time passes it becomes paler and remains whiter than the surrounding parts.

As regards the diagnosis, it is difficult to confuse the sore with anything else if its development is taken into consideration.

We realize that ordinary ulcers of the shin and those which frequently affect the nose might give rise to doubts. However, in the first case cleanliness and rest rapidly produce an amelioration leading to cicatrization of common ulcers, whereas Sart sore remains for weeks in the same state under similar conditions; moreover, if attention is given to the appearance of the area of

⁵[*Viz.*, enlargement of lymph nodes due to lymphangitis: cf. HEIDENREICH, 1888 (abstract in *Ann. Inst. Pasteur*, 3, 1889, p. 445).—C.A.H.]

colour of the skin remains unchanged ; by the 3rd to the 5th month the papule becomes covered with a crust under which there is an ulcerated bleeding surface ; the pathological process extends further, there is an exudation of a sero-purulent fluid, and 3 to 4 months later cicatrization begins. According to NICOLLE and NOURY-BEY, the entire period of development of Aleppo boil is 11 to 12 months.

However, the species of streptococci isolated by RAPTSCHESKY and by NICOLLE and NOURY-BEY are different. RAPTSCHESKY's streptococcus is distinguished by slow growth : the colonies cultivated on agar-agar at the optimum temperature (30 to 36°) become visible to the naked eye only on the 3rd or 4th day in the form of small whitish discs. On gelatin their growth is still slower ; the streptococcus does not liquefy gelatin ; in stab cultures growth takes place only along the course of the stab, without any signs of growth over the surface. When grown in fluid nutritive media the streptococcus forms a fine white precipitate. The streptococcus isolated by NICOLLE and NOURY-BEY is characterized by rapid growth in all kinds of media : the development of the colony can be noticed even after 24 hours ; when growing in broth the streptococcus produces a golden-yellow colour.

From the foregoing it is obvious that there is a complete difference of opinion regarding the aetiology of "oriental sore." Before turning to the results of our own research, we shall give an account of the method of investigation.

If the patient was in hospital, the sore was dressed for several days with warm boric acid compresses ; then the papule was washed with alcohol and ether, after which it was excised and removed with instruments boiled in a solution of soda. A scraping was then immediately taken from its deep bleeding surface with a sterilized knife. By means of a platinum loop passed through a flame this scraping was transferred to gelatin or agar-agar which was poured out into Petri dishes ; or the superficial layers of the sore were removed with a sharp spoon, while with a second spoon scrapings were made from the deeper parts and were used for making smears on slides and for inoculation. The excised portions of the papules, and sometimes of the ulcers, intended for an anatomico-pathological investigation were first hardened in 95 per cent. alcohol and then embedded in celloidin for the preparation of sections. The very first cases studied by us produced unexpected results : streptococci were not obtained in cultures but in their stead there developed a small number of yellow and white staphylococcus colonies and sarcinae, the number of bacteria being so insignificant that in the second and third cultures only a few isolated colonies developed, in view of which we made only one culture in subsequent cases. Moreover, in smears from the juice of the papules microorganisms were either absent or only solitary cocci were encountered.

From the end of 1895 we began to examine the juice of papules and sores in which no inflammatory phenomena were manifested, in hanging drops, and were astonished by the presence of numerous motile corpuscles, some round,

at the periphery, where there is less infiltration of the cellular elements, there can be observed a considerable thickening of the epithelial layer, the inter-papillary projections of the epithelium not infrequently branching and the boundary between the epithelium and the surrounding tissue not being sharply defined. This phenomenon has, however, long been noted in all kinds of chronic ulcerative processes of the skin. During the period of ulceration the changes in the vessels are more marked: the walls of the minute arteries and veins are infiltrated, the vessels in some parts being occluded. In the midst of the granulation tissue there occur free accumulations of red blood corpuscles, either still retaining their appearance or already having broken up and formed rounded or irregular yellow accumulations; such accumulations are scattered in different parts of the ulcer and also occur in the epithelial layer.

During the period of ulceration the granulation tissue undergoes further development in some parts and is transformed into connective tissue with a small number of spindle-shaped cells, this transition taking place in the more superficial layers, whereas from the deeper parts there develops a thick layer of granulation tissue.

AETIOLOGY.

The cause of Sart sore and of other similar (if not identical) "oriental sores," such as Pendeh sore, Aleppo boil, [*bouton de*] Biskra, the Elisabethpol "godovik"⁶ etc., has not been firmly established up to the present.

DUCLAUX, HEIDENREICH and CHANTEMESSE investigated the "*bouton de Biskra*" in 1884 and isolated in culture a micrococcus similar to (if not identical with) the golden staphylococcus [= *Staphylococcus aureus*].

HEIDENREICH, who studied Pendeh sore in 1886, confirmed DUCLAUX's investigation, viz. he attributed the origin of the sore to the penetration into the skin of "micrococcus Biskra," which is apparently identical with the golden staphylococcus.

Dr. RAPTSCHESKY, who investigated Pendeh sore after HEIDENREICH, obtained different results: on examining the juice of the papules he isolated a streptococcus which differs from that of erysipelas and which he regards as the causative agent.

NICOLLE and NOURY-BEY have carried out a bacteriological investigation of Aleppo boil (*Annales de l'Institut Pasteur*, 1897, No. 9) and have also isolated a streptococcus which they regard as the causative agent. These authors studied nine cases: in three they obtained a pure culture of streptococcus, in five cases staphylococci developed together with the streptococci, and in one case bacilli were also present. Clinically Aleppo boil runs the same course as Sart sore and Pendeh sore: at the beginning there appears a papule of the size of an acne [*pustule*] which gradually increases in size; the papule is indolent and the

⁶[*godovik* = (lit.) annual: name for the Transcaucasian form of oriental sore, which usually persists for 1 year.—C.A.H.]

2 or 3 days, whereas in the case of contamination with bacteria the latter, which were chiefly cocci, developed.

On examining sections of preparations fixed with 95 per cent. alcohol and stained, according to RAPTSCHESKY's directions, with Loeffler's solution we never found any streptococci, but there were masses of what at first appeared to be cocci, some round, but most of them oval, arranged in clumps which were frequently spherical.¹⁴ These cocci were in most cases packed in the protoplasm of the lymphoid and epithelioid cells.¹⁵ In some cases after inoculation from excised papules the plates remained sterile, although an examination of the sections revealed a large accumulation of the cocci in question, while in the hanging drop the above-mentioned corpuscles were always observed in large numbers.

At the end of 1897 we began to employ for fixation Zenker's fluid, the composition of which is as follows:—Aq. destillatae 100·0, corrosive sublimate 5·0, potassium bichromate 2·5, sodium sulphate 1·0, acetic acid 5·0.

A freshly excised piece was dropped into this fluid and left there for 12 to 24 hours, after which it was washed for 24 hours in water and then transferred to 60 to 70 per cent. alcohol, absolute alcohol, absolute alcohol + ether, and embedded in celloidin.

After fixation with this fluid we succeeded in discovering in sections masses of corpuscles of the same size and shape as we had observed in the hanging drop.

The younger the papule of Sart sore the greater the number of these corpuscles; the older the papule, or if in the period of ulceration, the fewer these corpuscles; and finally, in old papules with extensive ulceration or in those treated by cauterization, we found them with difficulty and even then in an altered state.

The fresh papule presents the following picture: these corpuscles are absent in the epidermoid and epithelial layers, and are rare in the papillae; the parasites, in most cases enclosed within cells, only make their appearance where the infiltration rises from the deeper layers of the skin to the papillae; the parasites are most numerous in the deeper parts where the accumulation of granulation cells is the greatest. The cells are literally packed with them to such an extent that the limits of the individual parasites cannot be seen, and they appear as one continuous mass in which only their nuclei, stained deeply with Loeffler's solution, are distinctly visible. This is the reason why the earlier preparations produced the impression that these accumulations consisted of cocci. However, deeper down, towards the subcutaneous connective tissue, the accumulations of parasites become less abundant and it is here that they can be observed individually. They proved to be mostly round corpuscles (though some are

¹⁴[When the nuclei only of the parasites are visible, an appearance of masses of cocci is produced. However, as will be seen below, the author was fully aware of the true nature of these "cocci."—C.A.H.]

¹⁵[This is the first correct interpretation of the nature of the parasitized host-cells.—C.A.H.]

some irregular, while some of them possessed pseudopodia.⁷ Since that time and up to the present we have found the same structures every time we have examined the juice and scrapings from the sores.

p. 933 The younger the papule the greater was the number of these corpuscles, whereas only a few of them were present in scrapings from the depth of the older sores. At the beginning, when we dried and fixed the smear directly over the flame, according to the method usually adopted, the examination of the smears gave negative results. Recently, however, when we proceeded to fix the smears with a mixture of absolute alcohol and ether, staining with Loeffler's solution revealed the same corpuscles which had been observed in the hanging drop. The size of these structures varies from $\frac{1}{2}\mu$ to 2μ , occasionally reaching 3μ , but in most cases their dimensions are from $1\frac{1}{2}\mu$ to 2μ . These corpuscles frequently have a fine process as long as, or sometimes longer than the diameter of the corpuscle; at the end of the process there is not infrequently a small globular thickening;⁸ sometimes several—two and three—of these processes are observed. The corpuscles described are colourless: they are sometimes homogeneous, or they appear to have a nucleus in the centre or at the periphery, while in some of them vacuoles can be seen.⁹ Moreover, in the hanging drop are observed minute dark structures of a round shape with one or several fine processes; the latter structures are very motile.¹⁰

The shape of the corpuscles is sometimes spherical and sometimes fusiform. Occasionally a change in their shape could be observed—an oval would change into a sphere, then into an irregularly-shaped body and afterwards again become oval.¹¹ In two cases spheres were observed measuring 4 to 5μ , having a double-contoured membrane and densely packed with round corpuscles. One such sphere was seen to be half empty, while in the other half the round corpuscles were also disposed outside the membrane.¹²

If a hanging drop preparation was left in a thermostat it showed considerable changes after 24 hours: the larger round bodies disappeared and broke up, while the number of the above-mentioned minute structures with fine processes increased.¹³ If the preparation was pure, all the structures disappeared after

⁷[It is possible that some of these "corpuscles" may have been blood platelets and that the motility refers to Brownian movement.—C.A.H.]

⁸[The appearance of the "corpuscles" described here would suggest that in some of the parasites only the nucleus and rod-shaped kinetoplast were visible, a not infrequent occurrence in poorly fixed tissues.—C.A.H.]

⁹[These cases probably refer to the whole parasite.—C.A.H.]

¹⁰[V. *supra*: footnote 7.]

¹¹[The apparent change of shape can be accounted for by the different views of the parasite, obtained in the course of its slow revolution.—C.A.H.]

¹²[These "spheres" represent detached fragments of the cytoplasm of the host-cells. They have been described by other authors, some of whom have regarded them as representing the parasite itself, while the true parasites were mistaken for its "spores" (CUNNINGHAM, 1885; FIRTH, 1891; and ROSS, 1903: the last in the case of kala-azar).—C.A.H.]

¹³[V. *supra*: footnote 7.]

2 or 3 days, whereas in the case of contamination with bacteria the latter, which were chiefly cocci, developed.

On examining sections of preparations fixed with 95 per cent. alcohol and stained, according to RAPTSCHESKY's directions, with Loeffler's solution we never found any streptococci, but there were masses of what at first appeared to be cocci, some round, but most of them oval, arranged in clumps which were frequently spherical.¹⁴ These cocci were in most cases packed in the protoplasm of the lymphoid and epithelioid cells.¹⁵ In some cases after inoculation from excised papules the plates remained sterile, although an examination of the sections revealed a large accumulation of the cocci in question, while in the hanging drop the above-mentioned corpuscles were always observed in large numbers.

At the end of 1897 we began to employ for fixation Zenker's fluid, the composition of which is as follows:—Aq. destillatae 100·0, corrosive sublimate 5·0, potassium bichromate 2·5, sodium sulphate 1·0, acetic acid 5·0.

A freshly excised piece was dropped into this fluid and left there for 12 to 24 hours, after which it was washed for 24 hours in water and then transferred to 60 to 70 per cent. alcohol, absolute alcohol, absolute alcohol + ether, and embedded in celloidin.

After fixation with this fluid we succeeded in discovering in sections masses of corpuscles of the same size and shape as we had observed in the hanging drop.

The younger the papule of Sart sore the greater the number of these corpuscles; the older the papule, or if in the period of ulceration, the fewer these corpuscles; and finally, in old papules with extensive ulceration or in those treated by cauterization, we found them with difficulty and even then in an altered state.

The fresh papule presents the following picture: these corpuscles are absent in the epidermoid and epithelial layers, and are rare in the papillae; the parasites, in most cases enclosed within cells, only make their appearance where the infiltration rises from the deeper layers of the skin to the papillae; the parasites are most numerous in the deeper parts where the accumulation of granulation cells is the greatest. The cells are literally packed with them to such an extent that the limits of the individual parasites cannot be seen, and they appear as one continuous mass in which only their nuclei, stained deeply with Loeffler's solution, are distinctly visible. This is the reason why the earlier preparations produced the impression that these accumulations consisted of cocci. However, deeper down, towards the subcutaneous connective tissue, the accumulations of parasites become less abundant and it is here that they can be observed individually. They proved to be mostly round corpuscles (though some are

¹⁴[When the nuclei only of the parasites are visible, an appearance of masses of cocci is produced. However, as will be seen below, the author was fully aware of the true nature of these "cocci."—C.A.H.]

¹⁵[This is the first correct interpretation of the nature of the parasitized host-cells.—C.A.H.]

oval and spindle shaped) with a very faintly stained protoplasm and a sharply stained nucleus situated at the periphery. This nucleus is either round or elongated in shape, while sickle-shaped nuclei are also not uncommon.

As mentioned, these parasites are in most cases situated within cells, the nucleus [of which] is shifted to the periphery, stains badly and is shrivelled, or sometimes destroyed, a cluster of parasites being seen in place of the cell. Accumulations of parasites also occur outside the cells. In such cases there are encountered spheres filled with round corpuscles with a feebly stained protoplasm and a nucleus at the periphery.

Still deeper, where there is no infiltration with the lymphoid elements, in the fissures between bundles of connective tissue and in the perivascular spaces, there can be seen rows and small clumps of the same parasitic cellular structures.

The size of the parasites is in most cases about 1μ , sometimes larger, but rarely smaller. Their nuclei vary in dimensions; sometimes they occupy a considerable part of the whole body, and not infrequently there can be seen a fine process running from the nucleus to the opposite side of the body, the process bearing a small globular thickening.¹⁶

On examining a papule, in which a small ulceration covered with a crust has already been formed, it is seen that the cellular infiltration, having reached the surface of the epithelial layer, has destroyed it and spread over the surface. The infiltration penetrates into the depth and spreads widely, while the parasites together with the granulation elements break their way outwards, though they are considerably less numerous on the surface than in the deeper parts.

On the other hand, the accumulations of lymphoid elements scattered in the subcutaneous connective tissue also contain smaller numbers of the parasites.

Amongst the accumulations of blood found at the bottom of the ulcer are seen considerable numbers of parasites which are occasionally situated within the red blood corpuscles.¹⁷

937 Several times, on examining the juice of the papules in a hanging drop, we have observed the parasites inside the red blood corpuscles, the parasite changing its position and shape. In sections the greatest accumulation of parasites occurs around the vessels where, as already stated, the infiltration is also greatest.

The oldest papule examined by us was about 1 year old. This case had been treated by repeated applications of tincture of iodine. In this instance most of the granulation tissue had passed into the connective tissue and only small accumulations of lymphoid elements were encountered in different parts of the section. The parasites could be detected with difficulty and had undergone alterations: they stained uniformly and most of them had bud-like outgrowths.

¹⁶[This description evidently refers to the whole parasite in which the nucleus and elongated kinetoplast ("process") were seen.—C.A.H.]

¹⁷[Misinterpretation of superimposed position of the parasites. The same error was committed by a number of authors in the case of *Leishmania donovani* (LAVERAN, 1903; LAVERAN & MESNIL, 1903; LEISHMAN, 1903).—C.A.H.]



Рис. 1. Разрѣзъ изъ 2-хъ недѣльной папулы при увелич. 37; более темныя мѣста указываютъ мѣста скопленія грануляціонныхъ элементовъ.

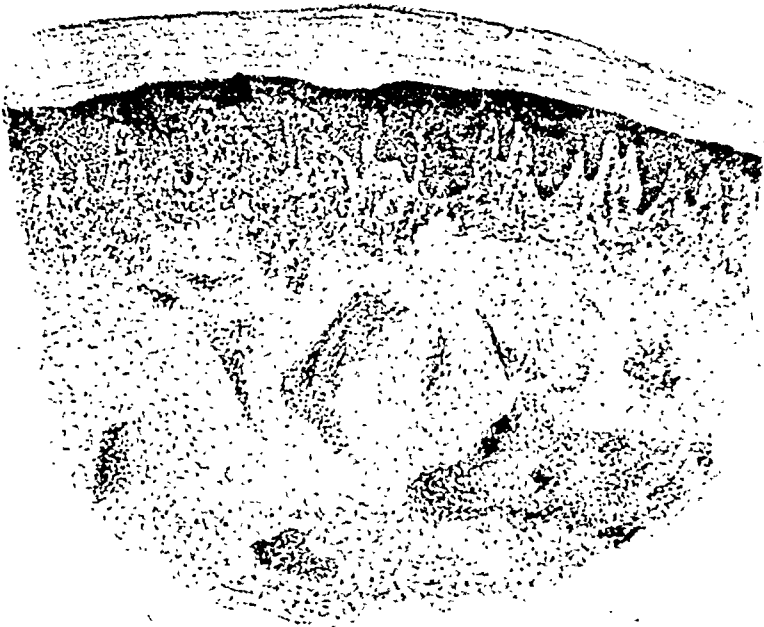


Рис. 2. Тотъ же препаратъ, при увеличеніи 1500 (Масл. сист.); въ центрѣ разрѣзъ кисты, наполненной чужеродными.

FACSIMILE OF PAGE 935 IN BOROVSKY'S MEMOIR.

Legend to Figures.

(Translated from the Russian.)

FIG. 1.—Section from papule 2 weeks old, at a magnification $\times 37$: the darker places indicate the areas of accumulation of granulation elements.

FIG. 2.—The same preparation at a magnification $\times 1,500$ (oil immersion): in the centre is a section of a cyst filled with parasites.

[As in the original article, the arrangement of the description is reversed, Fig. 1 (top) bearing the legend of Fig. 2 (bottom), and vice-versa.—C.A.H.]

Что касается нашего изслѣдованія, то данныя, полученныя нами, слѣдующія:

1) Въ сокѣ папуль и не воспаленныхъ, еще не старыхъ язвахъ всегда находятся одноклѣточные организмы, которые, повидимому, должны быть отнесены къ классу «protozoa».

2) При поѣвахъ сока язвъ вырастаютъ различнаго вида бактеріи и то въ небольшомъ количествѣ, а иногда поѣвы остаются безплодными.

3) Присутствіе въ мазкахъ и срѣзахъ изъ папуль множества тѣхъ же организмовъ, какіе наблюдаются и въ висячей каплѣ.

4) Обнаруживается масса «protozoa» въ раннемъ періодѣ развитія язвы и уменьшеніе и даже полное исчезновеніе въ очень старыхъ язвахъ; отсутствіе въ то же время какихъ либо дробянокъ въ ранней степени развитія язвы и увеличеніе ихъ количества въ старыхъ язвахъ, изъязвленныхъ, которыя, какъ это отмѣчено всѣми наблюдателями, приближаются къ простымъ язвамъ.

На основаніи всѣхъ этихъ данныхъ мы приходимъ къ заключенію, что сартовская язва вызывается не видомъ какихъ-либо дробянокъ, а организмами болѣе высшаго порядка, — protozoa.

FACSIMILE OF PART OF PAGE 939 IN BOROVSKY'S MEMOIR.

General conclusions, corresponding to pp. 88-89 of the Translation.

To the above it may be added that no schizomycetes could be detected in the non-ulcerating papules by staining.

The parasites described by us stain with Loeffler's solution, the sections being kept in the stain from 2 to 24 hours. Good staining can also be obtained with a saturated aqueous solution of safranin, but the parasites do not stain by Gram's method. We also tried to stain sections by Romanowsky's method (a mixture of eosin and methylene blue) and by the method of Sanfelice, as recommended by the latter for blastomycetes, but though they stained the staining was not sharp. The best method, therefore, is to stain with Loeffler's methylene blue solution followed by rinsing in water and decolorizing in alcohol, but the differentiation should not be carried too far: the same refers to the staining with saturated aqueous solution of safranin.

We failed to obtain cultures of the structures described: inoculations were made into the fluid obtained by puncture of a hydrocele, on agar-agar mixed with ascitic fluid, and in sterile grape juice.

Owing to the peripheral position of the nucleus and to the presence of processes like flagella,¹⁸ we are inclined to refer the parasites described by us to the class of protozoa. Their multiplication apparently takes place both by means of direct division and by budding. We have observed corpuscles in which a short round outgrowth or bud is formed on the periphery, therefore multiplication by budding takes place,¹⁹ though round corpuscles in which a fine process with a thickening at the end is given off from the nucleus occurred more frequently.²⁰ There also occurred corpuscles with two nuclei situated at opposite ends of the body. As the result of slow multiplication there may thus be produced several separate corpuscles enclosed in a common membrane, as was observed by us²¹; whereas in the course of rapid multiplication the division of the nucleus

¹⁸[*Vide infra*: footnote 20.]

¹⁹[It is not improbable that the budding forms represent some yeast-like organism which may be present in ulcerating sores and bear some resemblance to Leishman-Donovan bodies when stained (cf. WENYON, 1926, p. 428). The latter interpretation receives support from the fact that a yeast was actually cultivated by the author from sores (cf. p. 88).—C.A.H.]

²⁰[The presence of a "process" in the parasite is mentioned four times in the text (cf. footnotes: 8, p. 84; 16, p. 86; 18, *supra*). According to BOROVSKY, it arises from the nucleus, runs to the opposite side of the body and is provided with a "globular thickening" at the end (there is no indication as to whether it is at the proximal or distal end of the "process"). It is obvious that BOROVSKY must have seen the kinetoplast, either alone or together with the rhizoplast. In the former case the whole "process" would be equivalent to the kinetoplast, in the latter case the "globular thickening" alone would represent this structure, the "process" itself being the rhizoplast. BOROVSKY himself likened the "process" to a "flagellum," but the indications in the text suggesting that in some cases he must have seen only the nucleus of the parasite with the attached "process," coupled with the fact that the kinetoplast always stains deeply and is, therefore, more commonly seen in preparations of the Leishman-Donovan bodies than the rhizoplast, are strong arguments in favour of regarding BOROVSKY's "process" as the kinetoplast. This is the view held by PAWLOWSKY (1927, 1931); and Dr. C. M. WENYON, whom I have consulted on this matter, is of the same opinion.—C.A.H.]

²¹[A condition interpreted by some authors as multiple division.—C.A.H.]

is followed by fission of the protoplasm and separate individuals are produced. It is difficult, of course, to form an exact idea of the method of multiplication from a dead preparation, and not from a pure culture, therefore the account given above represents a personal impression.

In old Sart sores the parasites described are very scanty and they are, moreover, modified—thus there occur round corpuscles similar to those described above in size, but either uniformly stained or in the form of a transparent vesicle only the outline of which is visible. Even when those with nuclei are encountered, the nucleus is considerably smaller than usual and not so deeply stained as in the case of preparations from young papules.

In addition to what has been said above, it must be stated that, up to the present, inoculations from the Sart sores examined were made in Petri dishes and colonies were obtained of staphylococci (most frequently) and sarcinae; moreover, in three cases there developed very minute oval cocci which did not liquefy gelatin and, when examined in the living condition, were mostly arranged in pairs, in the form of diplococci; in one case there appeared in a Petri dish with agar-agar five colonies of microc.[occus] tetragenus; and in another case there developed amongst other colonies pink yeasts, while in two cases the plates remained sterile. The total number of cases examined by us exceeded twenty, nine of which were still in the form of papules.

Of course, we cannot yet extend the results obtained from the investigation of Sart sore to other similar diseases of the skin, such as Pendeh sore, Aleppo boil, [*bouton de*] Biskra, Elisabethpol "godovik"²², etc., but would suggest the desirability of verifying their nature from the point of view put forward by us. The desirability of this verification is based on the following facts. In his study of Pendeh sore, RAPTSCHESKY makes the following statement: "in spite of repeated investigations, the result of bacterioscopic examinations of the 'lymphangitic' nodules²³ in cases of Pendeh sore remained negative. It was impossible to detect any microorganisms in the juice mixed with blood obtained from incised nodules, either microscopically or by means of cultures."

However, in another place RAPTSCHESKY mentions that under the influence of irritation such a "lymphangitic" nodule may suppurate, open and then heal, like an ordinary abscess; and, further, that these complications in the form of lymphangitis occur in the case of sores which are contaminated or irritated, and in which there is a retention of pus under the crust. If that is the case, why are there no microbes in the "lymphangitic" nodules? However that may be, it is impossible to decide anything *a priori*.

As regards our own investigation, the data obtained by us are as follows:—

(1) In the juice of papules and in sores which are not yet old and have not ulcerated, there are always present unicellular organisms which should apparently be referred to the class "protozoa."

²²[Cf. Footnote 6, on p. 82.]

²³[These are evidently the lymph nodes affected by lymphangitis.—C.A.H.]

(2) In cultures of the juice from sores there grow various kinds of bacteria, though in small numbers, but sometimes the cultures remain sterile.

(3) In smears and sections of papules there are present large numbers of the same organisms which are observed in the hanging drop.

(4) Masses of "protozoa" are encountered in the early period of development of the sore, diminishing and even disappearing completely in very old sores. At the same time bacteria of any kind are absent in the early stages of development of the sore, but they occur in increasing numbers in old ulcerating sores, which, as has been noted by most observers, approximate to ordinary ulcers.

From all these data we arrive at the conclusion that Sart sore is not caused by any kind of bacteria, but by organisms of a higher order, *viz.* protozoa.

As regards the method of infection, we are inclined to think that the infection does not penetrate into the skin directly, but is conveyed either from the intestinal tract or from the respiratory apparatus through the blood.

The fact that exposed parts of the body are affected by preference can be explained by the greater susceptibility of these parts to traumata and to the appearance of minute capillary haemorrhages in which the accidentally transferred parasites find a suitable material [= *medium*] for development. Owing to the low toxicity of the products of metabolism of these parasites the phagocytes overcome them with comparative ease, and although many of the phagocytes perish, they appear in ever increasing numbers and finally destroy the parasites. That protozoa can find their way into the respiratory tracts has been proved experimentally. Thus, GRASSI and FELETTI demonstrated the presence of an extremely minute amoeba in the nasal cavities of pigeons which remained for two nights in a marshy locality at an altitude of 2 metres above the level of the ground, while 9 days later the same amoebae were found in the blood of the pigeons (LAVERAN et BLANCHARD, *Hématozoaires du Paludisme*). Infection with marsh fevers also takes place through the respiratory tract. Infection through the intestinal tract is possible through water and, it may be, through contaminated food.

As regards water used for washing and bathing, the transmission of infection through this medium is very doubtful, since, in spite of the fact that during the summer heat the entire Russian population of Tashkent bathes in "aryk" water²⁴, cases of this disease are very rare in summer. According to our observations, cases occur more frequently during the winter and spring months of the year. The last circumstance also shows that the rôle of dust in the spread of the disease is insignificant (if indeed it serves as a vector of the infection at all), for during the said time of the year the rainfall in this locality is very heavy.

TREATMENT.

In Tashkent the most commonly used remedy for the treatment of Sart sore is pure lactic acid, which is employed either in an ointment or in a layer of

²⁴"Aryki" [*pl.*] are shallow canals by which water is conveyed for the irrigation of gardens, kitchen-gardens and fields [*in Turkestan*].

cotton wool impregnated with it and applied to the sore, where it is left for 24 hours. The latter method is more reliable ; when it is used the healthy skin around the sore is covered with collodion or an adhesive plaster. After 24 hours the dressing is removed and in place of the previous infiltration a scab is formed under which is a clean ulcerated surface, which is usually treated as an ordinary ulcer.

When the ulcer is cauterized successfully in this manner it heals in the course of 2 to 4 weeks. We have also applied the sublimate ointment recommended by Dr. TEKUTIEV with satisfactory results.

However, in some cases the infiltration re-appeared after cauterization and subsequent cicatrization ; in these cases we scraped it thoroughly with a sharp spoon. Scraping was also practised in cases where the eyelids were affected and cauterization could not be employed. A thorough scraping was always followed by healing.

When the papules were excised right down to the subcutaneous connective tissue, we inserted a suture which in most cases resulted in complete healing *per primam intentionem*, though sometimes under the cicatrices a fresh lesion would occur, necessitating either cauterization or scraping.

APPENDIX III.

K. SHULGIN (1902): ON THE TRANSMISSION OF ORIENTAL SORE.

It has already been mentioned (p. 71) that K. SHULGIN, who was BOROVSKY's contemporary at the Tashkent Military Hospital, fully confirmed his colleague's observations on the aetiology of oriental sore. However, SHULGIN's real claim for a place in the history of tropical medicine rests on the views he expressed regarding the transmission of this disease, for he was actually the first to suggest, in 1902, that the vector was a blood-sucking insect. The part played by SHULGIN in enunciating this hypothesis is practically unknown to anyone, either in his own country or outside it. One of the reasons for this is probably the fact that the journal in which SHULGIN's paper was published is just as inaccessible as the one in which BOROVSKY's memoir appeared.

The only reference to SHULGIN's observations which I have been able to discover is a statement occurring in LAVERAN's monograph that " Shulgin croyait que les moustiques étaient les agents de transmission du bouton d'Orient " (LAVERAN, 1917, p. 437*).

It is not indicated, however, that this was actually the first suggestion of the rôle of blood-sucking insects in the transmission of this disease. On the contrary, the preceding paragraph—according to which " dès 1875, SÉRIZIAT déclarait avoir vu des boutons de Biskra ayant incontestablement pour origine des piqûres de moustiques " (*loc. cit.*, p. 437)—might be construed as establishing the priority of SÉRIZIAT, but from an extract of this author's writings appearing

*LAVERAN, A. (1917). *Leishmanioses*. (Paris : Masson et Cie.)

elsewhere in the monograph (*loc. cit.*, pp. 429-430) it is obvious that SÉRIZIAT merely asserted that the slightest lesion in the skin may serve as the starting point of oriental sore, and that he himself had seen sores originating at the site of a mosquito-bite. He did not, therefore, imply that the disease was disseminated by the mosquito, but that this insect was one of the agents, including mechanical ones, capable of impairing the intactness of the skin and thereby exposing it to infection.

SHULGIN's paper—"The question of the aetiology of Pendeh sore"—was written in Russian and published in the journal *Russkij Vrač* [= The Russian Physician], 1902, Nos. 32 and 33, pp. 1150 and 1180. These issues are unobtainable in this country, and I am indebted to the late Prof. G. W. EPSTEIN, of Moscow, for a typewritten *verbatim* copy of SHULGIN's article, from which I have translated the most interesting passages relating to the transmission of oriental sore.

After discussing the views of other Russian observers, who believed that the causative organism was found in water, or in the soil, and was disseminated by dust through the air, SHULGIN proceeds as follows:—

"However, I am inclined to consider that the mode of penetration of the infective agent into the body is the same as that recognized at present for marsh fever, *i.e.*, that it has an intermediate host—a mosquito or some other nocturnal biting insect."

The author then goes on to substantiate his contention:—

"In eight cases I succeeded in observing the very earliest phase of the disease, the primary papule, [at a period] when it was even impossible to identify it with certainty, but from which a typical Pendeh sore developed later. It then appeared in the form of a reddish, raised, compact spot, as large as a lentil. In the middle there was always a darker point, similar to that in the centre of a mosquito or flea bite. Intelligent persons in whom I observed such primary papules testified that they had actually been bitten in these places by something on a previous evening. . . . Moreover, on the assumption that the infection is spread by insects, it is easy to explain why the sore appears only during a certain period of the year. In all the localities where the disease is endemic cases are observed at the end of summer and at the beginning of autumn exclusively. . . . This can be fully accounted for on the basis of the mosquito theory, for mosquitos appear in large numbers in July. The time between their appearance and the occurrence of the first cases of the disease is taken up by the infection [of the insects], the development of the microorganism in them, its inoculation [to man], and the incubation period. In October the mosquitos disappear and no fresh cases occur while the old sores sometimes persist for 2 years. . . ."

SHULGIN also quotes the following observation in support of his views: In a certain locality of Turkestan the officers and men of the garrison shared the same barracks, but cases of oriental sore occurred among the privates exclusively. According to the author, this was due to the fact that only the officers slept under mosquito-nets and were, therefore, protected from the bites of the insects.

Lastly, SHULGIN notes that the sores appear most frequently on those parts of the body which are covered in the daytime, but may be exposed in the night (arms, legs).

In conclusion, the author makes the following statement : " As I said at the beginning, the insect transmitting the infection must be nocturnal, and now I more definitely attribute it to the mosquitos."

In the foregoing passages the case is presented in such a lucid manner and the arguments brought forward are so convincing that no special comments are required. It will be noted how near SHULGIN was to the correct solution of the nature of the vector of oriental sore, for all the observations and arguments adduced by him in support of his hypothesis regarding the transmission of the infection by mosquitos are equally applicable to the sandflies, which, in Turkestan, usually make their appearance in the middle of June and disappear towards the beginning of October, while the similarity of the feeding habits of both these groups of insects is well known.

IMMUNIZATION OF MONKEYS AND HUMANS WITH FORMOLIZED TISSUE CULTURES OF TYPHUS RICKETTSIA.

BY

I. J. KLIGLER, M.A., B.S., PH.D.,

AND

SONIA LEVINE.

From the Department of Hygiene and Bacteriology, Hebrew University, Jerusalem.

Previously reported experiments (KLIGLER and ASCHNER, 1934; KLIGLER, ASCHNER and LEVINE, 1936) have demonstrated that it is possible to immunize guineapigs and rabbits with formolized tissue cultures of typhus rickettsia. These findings have been confirmed by ZINNSER and MACCHIAVELLO (1936) and recently BENGSTON (1937) has applied this method to Rocky Mountain spotted fever.

In the present paper we report experiments indicating that this vaccine can also be used in immunizing monkeys and man.

The method of preparation of vaccine varied only slightly from that previously described (KLIGLER and ASCHNER, 1934). As a rule, 2 week old cultures were used; and, in order to eliminate as far as possible foreign serum from the vaccine, the sedimented and triturated tissue was resuspended in saline instead of in the original culture fluid.

IMMUNIZATION OF MONKEYS.

The immunizing effect of the vaccine on monkeys was tested by injection of active virus as well as by the usual Weil-Felix reaction. Three experiments were carried out with a total of eighteen monkeys. In the first and second experiments three injections of 0.5 c.c. each of the vaccine were given at intervals of 3 days; 2 weeks after the last injection the monkeys received 1.0 c.c. of a 10 per cent. tunica emulsion from an infected guineapig. Guineapig controls were run simultaneously with the monkeys. In the third experiment two sets of monkeys were used. Each monkey received three injections of vaccine at intervals of 3 days but one group was given 1.0, 1.0 and 2.0 c.c. and the other 0.5, 0.5 and 1.0 c.c. All injections were subcutaneous.

Both before and after the immunizing injections, blood was taken for Weil-Felix tests. As a rule these tests were carried out—before the injections, 10 days after the last injection of vaccine, and 3 weeks after the injection of live virus. During the period following the injection the temperature was taken and blood counts, total and differential, were carried out daily. In addition the monkeys were observed for physical signs of infection—such as malaise, loss of appetite, rash, etc.

The temperature data on the last set of immunized and control monkeys are shown in the graph on p. 95; and the agglutination results on all monkeys in Table I. The blood counts did not show any characteristic change and consequently the results are not included in the tables.

The results in the first two series, each consisting of two immunized monkeys and an untreated control, were not entirely satisfactory. In the first group one of the vaccinated monkeys remained immune while the other had an irregular temperature throughout the entire period. The control developed a typical infection. In the second series, one of the two treated monkeys remained immune while the second and the control developed typical temperatures.

The results of the larger experiment, including ten vaccinated monkeys and two controls, were quite satisfactory. In this experiment, larger doses of vaccine were given. Of the treated animals only one developed a mild temperature lasting 2 days, whereas both controls developed typical temperatures.

The Weil-Felix reactions are of interest. Before the vaccination only three of the monkeys gave a positive reaction, the maximum titre being 1:20. After the vaccination, the titre as a rule rose to 1:40 or 1:80. After the injection the vaccinated monkeys showed either no rise at all or only a slight increase in the titre, whereas in the control monkeys the titre rose to 1:160 or over, and in one monkey it reached 1:640. In view of the results reported by BREINL (1924) and by ourselves (KLIGLER and ASCHNER, 1934) showing that in immune rabbits there is no rise in the agglutination titre after an infection, the Weil-Felix reactions in the monkeys support the temperature data in indicating that the vaccinated monkeys had been protected against infection though injected with a relatively large dose of virus.

VACCINATION OF HUMAN BEINGS.

Following our observations on monkeys we tested the effect of the vaccine on human beings. Our purpose was to ascertain, in the first place, whether the vaccine itself produces a local or general reaction and, in the second place, the nature of the agglutinin response of man to the vaccine.

Six of the laboratory workers were used as volunteers. Before the vaccination two of these gave a negative Weil-Felix, two of the sera agglutinated in the dilution of 1:40, and the two remaining sera were positive in a dilution of 1:160 and 1:320 respectively. It is of interest to note that the last two had been

GRAPH.
TEMPERATURE CHARTS OF TWELVE IMMUNIZED
AND CONTROL MONKEYS INFECTED WITH
TYPHUS RICKETTSIA.

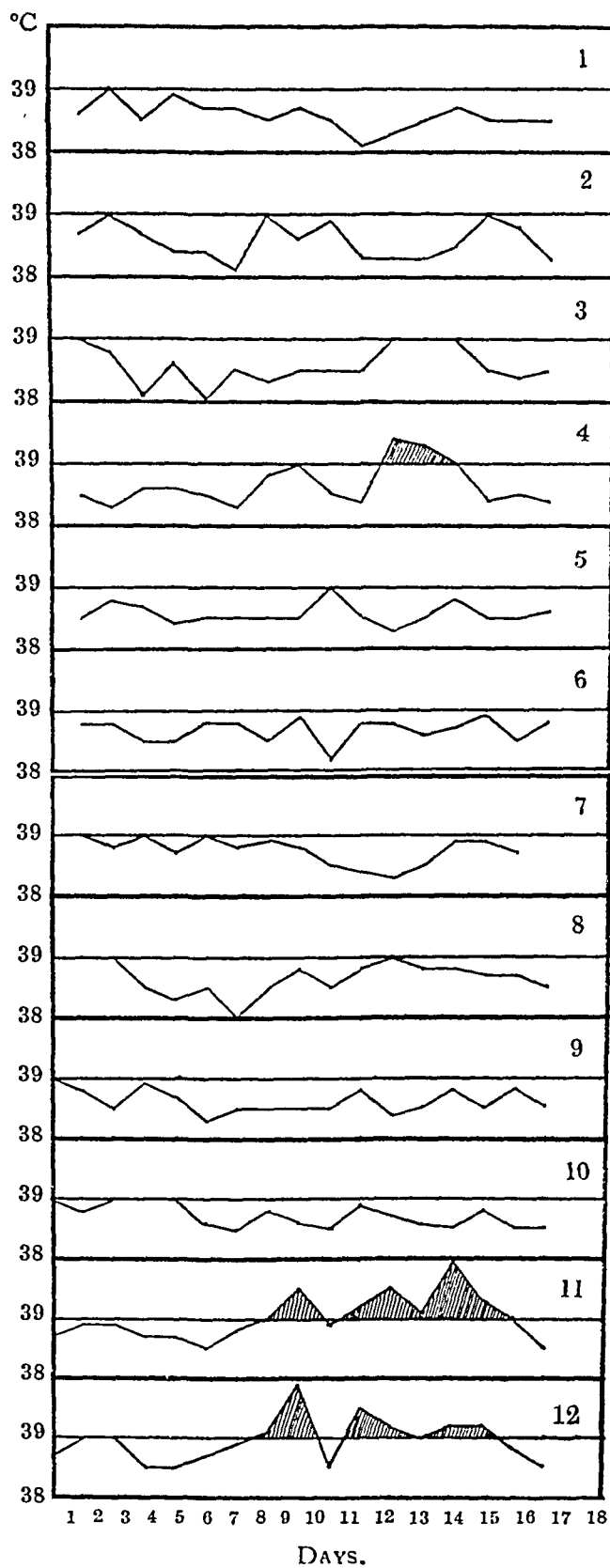


TABLE I.

WEIL-FELIX REACTION IN MONKEYS IMMUNIZED WITH RICKETTSIA VACCINE—TITRE OF SERUM AFTER THREE DOSES AT INTERVALS OF THREE DAYS.

Number of Monkey.	Before Immunization.										10 to 15 Days after Last Dose of Vaccine.					15 Days after Injection.				
	10	20	40	80	160	320	10	20	40	80	160	320	10	20	40	80	160	320		
A.																				
1	+	+	+	—	—	—	+	+	+	+	+	—	+	+	+	+	—	—		
2	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	+	+	+	+	—	+	+	+	+	—	—		
3 (control)	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	+	+	+	+	—	+	+	+	+	—	—		
4	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	+	+	+	+	—	+	+	+	+	—	—		
5*	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	+	+	+	+	—	+	+	+	+	—	—		
6 (control)	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	+	+	+	+	—	+	+	+	+	—	—		
B.																				
7	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	+	+	+	+	—	+	+	+	+	—	—		
8	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	+	+	+	+	—	+	+	+	+	—	—		
9	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	+	+	+	+	—	+	+	+	+	—	—		
10*	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	+	+	+	+	—	+	+	+	+	—	—		
11	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	+	+	+	+	—	+	+	+	+	—	—		
12 (control)	+	+	+	—	—	—	+	+	+	+	+	—	+	+	+	+	—	—		
C.																				
13	—	+	—	—	—	—	+	+	+	+	+	—	+	+	+	+	—	—		
14	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	+	+	+	+	—	+	+	+	+	—	—		
15	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	+	+	+	+	—	+	+	+	+	—	—		
16	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	+	+	+	+	—	+	+	+	+	—	—		
17 (control)	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	+	+	+	+	—	+	+	+	+	—	—		
Not tested. Died of Dysentery.																				

*Mild infection.

A.—Three doses of 0.5 c.c. each—total 1.5 c.c.

B.—Three doses : 1.0, 1.0 and 2.0 c.c.—total 4.0 c.c.

C.—Three doses : 0.5, 0.5 and 1.0 c.c.—total 2.0 c.c.

working with typhus rickettsia for several years but had at no time experienced any signs or symptoms of infection.

The vaccine was injected subcutaneously into the arm. Aside from a mild local induration and reddening, no discomfort was experienced and there was no rise in temperature.

With the exception of the two workers who showed a high titre to begin with, the vaccination was followed by a definite rise in the agglutination titre. The data are summarized in Table II.

TABLE II.

WEIL-FELIX REACTION IN HUMAN SUBJECTS IMMUNIZED WITH FORMOLIZED RICKETTSIA VACCINE—
TITRE OF SERUM AFTER THREE DOSES OF 0.5 C.C. AT INTERVALS OF THREE DAYS.

Subject.	Before Vaccination.						After Vaccination.					
	10	20	40	80	160	320	10	20	40	80	160	320
K.	—	+++	+++	+++	++	±	+++	++++	++++	+++	+++	++
L.	—	++	++	++	±	—	+++	+++	+++	+++	+	—
S.	+++	++	+	—	—	—	+++	+++	++	+	±	—
Sh.	—	—	—	—	—	—	+++	+++	+	—	—	—
G.	+++	++	+	—	—	—	++++	+++	++	±	—	—
M.	—	—	—	—	—	—	+++	++	+	±	—	—

Note.—+, ++, +, etc. = degree of agglutination.

DISCUSSION OF THE RESULTS.

The problem of control of typhus fever presented serious difficulties. The extreme parasitism of the causative organism, characterized by their intracellular development, rendered *in vitro* cultivation difficult. At the same time all efforts at immunization with killed infected tissue resulted in failure (KLIGLER and OLITZKI, 1932). The only available measure for the control of epidemic or louse-borne typhus was disinfestation which, at best, is an extremely difficult and costly procedure.

With the development of the technique of tissue culture *in vitro* a new avenue of approach was opened. The rickettsia can now be cultured without difficulty and the organism can be carried in the laboratory in much the same manner as other viruses. The important point of difference is that guineapig or rat tunica or peritoneal membrane constitutes the tissue of choice.

With cultures thus available, experiments were carried out, first with guinea-pigs and rabbits, and subsequently with monkeys and man, to ascertain whether such cultures can serve as an efficient vaccine. It appears to us that the data obtained by us on lower animals, subsequently confirmed by ZINSSER, supplemented by the results presented in this paper, demonstrate that formolized

cultures of rickettsia constitute an effective immunizing vaccine. Both the vaccinated monkeys and the human volunteers developed moderately high agglutinin titres, and the immunized monkeys were protected against infection, though injected with a relatively large dose of virus.

It is of interest to note in passing that in the course of these studies it was discovered that the only three members of the laboratory staff whose serum had a high agglutinating titre were those actively engaged in the study of the virus. Of these one had actually developed an infection, while the other two had at no time shown any apparent symptoms of infection.

SUMMARY.

Experiments are reported showing that monkeys and human beings treated with formolized tissue cultures of typhus rickettsia develop a positive Weil-Felix reaction. Monkeys given 2 c.c. of the vaccine in three injections of 0·5, 0·5 and 1 c.c. at intervals of 3 days were also immune to a large infective dose of virus given 2 weeks after the last dose of vaccine.

The duration of the immunity has not yet been determined.

REFERENCES.

- BENGSTON, IDA A. (1937). *Publ. Hlth. Rep. Wash.*, 52, 1696.
BREINL, F. (1924). *Z. ImmunForsch.*, 41, 486.
KLIGLER, I. J. & ASCHNER, M. (1934). *Brit. J. exp. Path.*, 15, 337.
——— & LEVINE, S. (1936). *Ibid.* 17, 53.
——— & OLITZKI, L. (1932). *Z. ImmunForsch.*, 76, 355.
ZINSSER, H. & MACCHIAVELLO, A. (1936). *J. exp. Med.*, 64, 673.

THE EPIDEMIOLOGY OF ENTERIC FEVER IN HONGKONG.

BY

K. H. UTTLEY, M.A., M.D. (CAMB.), D.T.M. & H.

Medical Officer, Hongkong.

INTRODUCTION.

There has recently been a revival of the discussion concerning the age and sex incidence of water-borne and milk-borne typhoid fever. The present paper may be of interest in this connection, in that it discusses the age and sex incidence of all the deaths recorded as having occurred from enteric fever whether endemic or epidemic, during the period of 17 years from 1920 to 1936 in the large resident urban Chinese population of the Colony of Hongkong, a community of people who do not drink milk.

By enteric fever I mean typhoid fever, and the paratyphoids. The latter are not rare conditions in Hongkong, as is evidenced by the fact that of the 1737 positive Widal tests carried out from 1930-1936 at the Bacteriological Institute (where most of the bacteriological work of the Colony is undertaken); 90, or 5.18 per cent. were due to one or other paratyphoid fever.

As in the case of deaths from any one cause, probably a moderate number of those who die in the Colony from enteric fever are certified as having died from some other disease, but I consider that death registrations during the period under review represent a good "random sample" of all Chinese dying in Hongkong from enteric fever, and that the age and sex distribution, and the seasonal incidence of deaths shown by these figures represent substantially what is happening. Local statistics do not permit of accurate conclusions being drawn from notified cases of enteric, but this is not a serious matter,

because the death rate is the best basis for comparison of the incidence of the disease. (*Monthly Epidemiological Report*, 1928.)

The urban areas of Hongkong embrace a population of about two-thirds of a million Chinese, living in very overcrowded conditions on both sides of a harbour $\frac{3}{4}$ of a mile across at its narrowest point. Nearly all the Chinese are ultimately dependent for their living on the existence of the city as a port for the trans-shipment of goods to and from South China and the rest of the world. For details of the age distribution and the numbers of this population, and a discussion of their living conditions, together with information about the geography and climate of the Colony, reference may be made to two previous papers of mine (UTTLEY, 1938a and 1938b).

THE SANITARY CONDITIONS OF THE URBAN CHINESE IN HONGKONG.

The urban water supply is from catchment areas which are free from ordinary risks of pollution. After a longer or shorter period in the impounding reservoirs, it is filtered, chlorinated and delivered in pipes to the city areas. Samples are examined at stated intervals by the Government Analyst and by the Government Bacteriologist and their results show that, as supplied to the consumer, the water is of high quality. (WELLINGTON, 1934.)

Almost all the nightsoil from the Chinese areas is collected by the bucket system, under arrangements with a contractor. Every night coolies convey the excreta from the latrines to a special fleet of junks, which take the material up the Pearl River to supply the mulberry trees on which the silkworms feed.

The measures taken in Hongkong "to preserve the wholesomeness of foods for sale and under preparation for sale are far from satisfactory." (WELLINGTON, 1933, p. 46.) The Chinese are extremely fond of buying food at small fruit stalls, large numbers of the coolie population obtain their chief meals in this way. Quantities of cooked food, sweetmeats, raw fish and pastries are sold at such stalls. There is no attempt to protect food from flies, and though the city is fairly free from these pests, they tend to collect around any exposed food, especially if moist and sweet. Most, if not all, of the vegetables consumed by Chinese are cooked, but quantities of raw fruit and raw fish are eaten. It is a common sight to see stallholders peeling fruit, and then sprinkling them with water as a preliminary to exposing them for sale. It is fortunate that tea is the national beverage, unboiled water is very rarely drunk, and the Chinese have not formed the habit of drinking milk. Ice creams are eaten only by the rich, and even so only in the last few years.

On the outskirts of the city there may be seen large numbers of small vegetable gardens, given up to the growing of all manner of Chinese vegetables, cultivated in the traditional manner, which is to manure them freely with human faeces and urine. These are first stored in cesspits and urns for a time until they have fermented, when they are mixed with water if necessary, and watered freely on to the crops.

AGE AND SEX DISTRIBUTION OF ENTERIC FEVER DEATHS IN HONGKONG.

Table I shows the percentage of all deaths from enteric fever occurring at different age groups, with similar figures for England and Wales for comparison.

TABLE I.

ENTERIC FEVER, HONGKONG. DEATHS AT AGES, AS PERCENTAGES OF TOTALS, 1920-1936.

Age Group.	Deaths.			England and Wales, 1931.
	Male.	Female.	Both Sexes.	
0-	2.49	2.88	2.63	
1-	1.12	3.10	1.84	
2-	2.12	2.44	2.23	
3-	2.37	6.65	3.91	
4-	1.87	3.33	2.39	
0-4	9.97	18.40	13.01	1.6
5-	1.75	2.44	2.00	
6-	0.75	3.77	1.84	
7-	1.12	1.33	1.20	
8-	1.37	2.00	1.60	
9-	1.00	2.22	1.44	
5-9	5.99	11.75	8.06	3.6
10-	7.48	9.31	8.14	5.6
15-	14.59	12.30	14.84	12.4
20-	19.70	13.30	17.40	9.6
25-	23.32	20.62	22.35	18.3
35-	11.35	6.21	9.50	13.5
45-	5.86	3.33	4.95	15.1
55-	1.62	1.33	1.52	13.1
65-	0.12	0.44	0.24	6.0
75-	—	—	—	1.2
Total number of deaths	802	451	1,253	251

It will be seen that enteric fever in Hongkong kills a very much larger proportion of infants and children than it does in England and Wales, whereas at ages above 35 years, the reverse is the case. As shown in my papers already referred to, there is approximately the same proportion of children in the population of the urban Chinese in Hongkong as in Britain, but there is a much

higher percentage of adults under 44 years of age in Hongkong than in England and Wales, while at older ages the Hongkong percentage falls far short of that prevailing in England. One would therefore expect that a larger proportion of young adults would die of enteric fever in Hongkong than in England, and that the reverse would be true at older ages, but it is not possible to explain in the same way the high mortality below 10 years of age in Hongkong. The explanation is to be found in the conditions under which the Chinese live. These have already been enumerated by me (*op. cit.*). The much higher percentage of girls than boys under 10 years of age shown in the Table as dying from enteric

TABLE II.
AVERAGE MONTHLY MORTALITY FROM ENTERIC FEVER AS PERCENTAGE OF ALL
ENTERIC FEVER DEATHS, HONGKONG, 1920-1936.

Month.			Month.		
January	...	5.35	April	...	7.26
February	...	6.30	May	...	9.90
March	...	6.70	June	...	10.29
First quarter			Second quarter		
...			...		
July	...	7.02	October	...	8.46
August	...	10.61	November	...	8.87
September	...	11.01	December	...	8.22
Third quarter			Fourth quarter		
...			...		
Total number of deaths from enteric fever					1,253

fever is of interest, but the actual numbers of the two sexes dying at these ages are about equal, and in addition to this, the sexes at these ages are equal in numbers in the general population (UTTLEY, 1938b).

In the adult age groups, males outnumber females in the community by about two to one, but as no accurate information is known about their relative proportions except at census years, it is unwise to draw any definite conclusions concerning deaths over 15 years of age from the data in the table. In Britain at adult ages, the standardized death rate in males is about twice that of females. Table I suggests that it is not likely the Hongkong death rate will show a similar sex preponderance of males over females at these ages.

The decrease in the death rate from typhoid fever in western Europe during the last 50 years has been largely due to a fall in the infantile and childhood rate.

There is room for considerable improvement in the rate at these ages in Hongkong, and it is indeed quite possible that this decline has not yet started in the Colony.

SEASONAL INCIDENCE OF DEATHS.

Table II shows the seasonal incidence of deaths from this disease for the past 17 years. The general opinion in the Far East, which is not based on any statistical evidence as far as I know, is that it is essentially a summer and autumn

TABLE III.

ANNUAL DEATH RATES FROM ENTERIC FEVER, HONGKONG, 1920-1936.

Year.	Number of Enteric Fever Deaths.	Crude Death Rate per Million.	Standardized Death Rate per Million.			Population in Census Years (Mid-year Estimations).	
			Persons.	Males.	Females.	Males.	Females.
1920	28	67	101	106	97	272,153	162,571
1921	47	108					
1922	64	142					
1923	119	253					
1924	94	193					
1925	74	146					
1926	98	186					
1927	132	240					
1928	68	119	80	102	60	371,906	268,850
1929	44	74					
1930	71	115					
1931	61	95					
1932	72	108					
1933	45	66					
1934	53	76					
1935	79	110					
1936	104	141					

complaint. The table suggests that this is not by any means true where the urban Chinese of Hongkong are concerned. It is prevalent all the year round, but there is a lower percentage of deaths in winter than at other times.

Table III shows the annual number dying from enteric fever in each year from 1920 to 1936, with the crude death rates. Standardized death rates have been calculated for the two census years, 1921 and 1931, and population figures are given for the same two years. Standardization is against the 1901 population of England and Wales.

TABLE IV.
METEOROLOGICAL DATA CONCERNING AVERAGE MONTHLY ENTERIC FEVER MORTALITY,
HONGKONG 1920-1936.

Month.	Percentage of Enteric Fever Deaths.	Rainfall in Inches.	Mean Maximum Tempera- ture.	Mean Tempera- ture.	Mean Minimum Tempera- ture.	Relative Humidity.	Barometric Pressure in Inches.
Jan.	5.4	1.27	64.4	59.8	56.1	74.6	30.052
Feb.	6.3	1.75	63.1	58.9	55.4	78.6	30.013
Mar.	6.7	2.93	67.4	63.1	59.8	82.9	29.945
April	7.3	5.44	74.8	70.3	67.0	84.9	29.843
May	9.9	11.50	81.6	77.1	73.8	84.1	29.743
June	10.3	15.52	85.3	81.0	77.7	83.1	29.646
July	7.0	15.01	86.8	82.0	78.4	82.8	29.613
August	10.6	14.22	86.7	81.7	78.0	83.4	29.616
Sept.	11.0	10.11	85.4	80.6	76.9	78.5	29.721
Oct.	8.5	4.55	80.7	76.2	72.6	72.2	29.879
Nov.	8.9	1.70	74.3	69.4	65.3	68.2	29.988
Dec.	8.2	1.15	67.8	62.9	58.8	69.5	30.047

TABLE V.
COEFFICIENTS OF CORRELATION BETWEEN CERTAIN CLIMATIC FACTORS AND ENTERIC FEVER.
HONGKONG, 1920-1936.

Monthly Climatic Factor.	Lag ₀	Lag ₁	Lag ₂	Lag ₃
Relative humidity	0.1334	0.2955	0.2350	
Mean minimum tem- perature	0.2212	0.2256	0.1522	
Mean temperature	0.2256	0.2130	0.1351	
Mean maximum tem- perature	0.2050	0.1897	0.1245	
Average rainfall	0.2100	0.2436	0.1998	0.0418
Average barometric pressure	0.1149	0.1330	0.1719	0.0316

(By "Lag₀" is understood that the monthly enteric fever deaths are correlated with the monthly climatic values for the same month, month by month. By "Lag₁" is meant that the monthly enteric fever deaths are correlated month by month with the climatic values for the previous month, and by "Lag₂" that the enteric fever values are correlated in the same way with the climatic values for 2 months previously. Similarly, in the case of "Lag₃" they are correlated with the climatic values for 3 months previously. The standard error in all cases is 0.0702 (n 204). All values in the table are positive.

CLIMATIC CONDITIONS AND ENTERIC FEVER.

Table IV shows the data concerning the monthly enteric fever mortality, with the monthly mean values for atmospheric pressure, rainfall, monthly maximum temperature, monthly temperature, monthly minimum temperature and relative humidity. In Table V these factors are correlated with the enteric fever deaths. These coefficients of correlation are calculated from the climatic data for each month from January, 1920, to December, 1936, inclusive, with the number of enteric fever deaths for each corresponding month for the same period. It will be seen that all values are positive, in other words, that a rise or a fall in the figures for any one of these climatic factors is normally associated with a corresponding rise or fall in the number of deaths from enteric fever.

Relative Humidity.—The Lag_1 value in Table V shows the highest figure, indicating that there is a greater degree of association between enteric fever mortality and the humidity of the previous month than with that for other months.

Temperature.—Of the three sets of temperature coefficients, that for the mean minimum monthly temperature shows on the whole the greatest degree of association, although there is no significant difference between the figures in the different sets. All three values for mean maximum temperature are lower than the corresponding values for the other two sets of temperature correlations.

Rainfall.—The value for Lag_1 is the highest, followed by that for Lag_0 , showing that enteric fever deaths are more closely associated with the rainfall of the previous month than with that for other months.

Pressure.—There is no statistically significant correlation between pressure values and those for enteric fever deaths, except in the case of Lag_2 .

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS.

An investigation has been made into the epidemiology of enteric fever occurring in the urban Chinese population of Hongkong.

In this community, which does not drink milk, and has a very good water supply, the disease is met with sporadically throughout the year, its mortality being much more evenly spread over the year than is commonly assumed (without sufficient evidence) to be the case in the Far East.

The mortality among male children is about the same as that among female children. There is not enough evidence available to state definitely what are the relative mortalities among adults, but it is unlikely that there is a great difference in their sex rates.

Of all enteric fever deaths, a much higher percentage occurs at ages of 0 to 9 years in Hongkong than in England and Wales.

The coefficients of correlation between the monthly enteric fever deaths and various climatic factors have been worked out, both for corresponding months, and also for weather conditions for each of the two months preceding enteric fever deaths.

REFERENCES.

- Mon. epidem. Rep. Hlth. Sect. L.o.N.* (1928). 7, 145.
UTTLEY, K. H. (1938a). Studies in tuberculosis in Hongkong. *J. Hyg., Cambs.*, 38, 150.
——— (1938b). The Chinese urban death rate in Hongkong. *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 31, 457.
WELLINGTON, A. R. (1934). *Hongkong. Annual Report of the Director of Medical and Sanitary Services for the year 1933.* p. 46.

QUARANTINE AND THE MECCA PILGRIMAGE— THE GROWTH OF AN IDEA.

BY

G. I. WATSON, M.A., M.B., B.CHIR. (CANTAB.), D.T.M. & H. (LOND.)

Introduction.

On a recent voyage I had the good fortune to meet Dr. ZIESEL who has been for 12 years the Dutch representative at Kamaran Quarantine Station. He was on his way out to take part once more in the hygiene control of the Mecca pilgrimage.

I took the opportunity of this meeting to learn much about his work and I feel that some notes on that subject may be of interest to others. Dr. ZIESEL knows of no one, in contact with the pilgrimage control, who has written an account of it in English.

Sources of the Pilgrim Traffic.

Pilgrims reaching Mecca arrive by land or sea from one of two directions. By far the larger part come by sea, fewer come by land. Recently a small number do, in fact, travel part of the way by air, and these then join the land pilgrimage. They come either from the North, through Egypt or Palestine, or through Iraq, or else they come from the South, having started away in Malaya, India or the Dutch Islands. It is with these last, coming almost entirely by sea that Dr. ZIESEL is concerned, and the great disease he must control is cholera.

Sources of Pilgrims' Diseases.

Of old, more than cholera was feared. Pilgrims died of smallpox, of plague, of typhus, of dysentery, as well as of the ever-present malaria. Typhoid, dysentery and cholera all went hand in hand, and the greatest killer of these was cholera. The southern pilgrims brought many of these diseases and after the pilgrimage they returned to their disease-infested homes. The northern pilgrims were mainly responsible for bringing typhus but suffered severely from the other diseases when they reached Arabia.

After the pilgrimage the travellers returned home, and soon after this Egypt, Russia and Europe might expect to suffer from epidemics of what we now call tropical diseases.

The heat of the tropical sun and the scantily clad bodies limited the spread of typhus to the South. The sandy pools of the Arabian desert were dried out and the subsoil water was freed of cholera germs before the next pilgrimage began. But northward by sea the great epidemics reached to East and West far beyond the limits of the tropics.

A study of the preventive measures in succeeding Conventions which attempt to control the pilgrim diseases furnishes an interesting example of the growth of an idea. Early Conventions had as their aim the protection of Europe against epidemics; what the southern pilgrims took home did not seem to matter. Even though the pilgrims were sick, that sickness must not spread to Europe. Now we try to do the same thing by preventing the pilgrims from being sick.

The Southern Pilgrimage, by Sea.

At Kamaran, all ships laden with pilgrims for Jeddah were stopped. There were always, away back in the middle of the 19th century, sick on board. So the ship was put in quarantine, the proper measures then known were taken to cleanse the people and ship; and when they finally arrived at Jeddah there was certainly less cholera than before.

Plague was soon stamped out when they learned about fumigation and the part played by rats in spreading the disease. Smallpox was controlled at Kamaran by vaccination, if the Faithful could be persuaded—and they usually were. What sickness did develop in Kamaran itself could not spread from there, for it was a God-forsaken spot and miles away from anywhere. Quarantine stations were always built far from anywhere, even though great expense was necessary to maintain for a few weeks or months a medical and nursing staff and supplies, about 200 miles from a base. Cholera remained a persistent killer in spite of Conventions and practices that were the best known in their time.

The Dutch in 1912 made a contribution to the control which has been far reaching in its effect. Some years before, a vaccine of cholera vibrio had been prepared. It was proposed by the Dutch to inoculate all pilgrims embarking in Dutch East Indian ports with cholera vaccine and with smallpox vaccine.

During the few remaining years before the war little could be concluded about the values of these inoculations. The war put an end to the sea transport of pilgrims, but a few of the Faithful reached Mecca in spite of everything. By 1921, conditions were "normal," but the Hedjaz under Hussein was not a savoury land. The long line of caravans had, in Turkish days, been "guarded" by Turkish soldiers. Camels and porters were provided by the local Bedouin. A man might hope to get to Mecca, he might even hope to get home, but the most sanguine hope could not banish the fear of robbery, of murder, of extortion and bribery, of disease and death in many shapes. No news was heard any more of the rich man of Java except a telegram requesting the other half of his fortune to be sent to Mecca. His friends never really knew if he got it before his death. In 1925 during the war for succession things got worse. Ibn Saud had to fight his way to the throne and that year the number of visiting Faithful was very small, but better things were looked for.

1926 CONVENTION.

In 1926 a new Convention was signed and it contained the fruits of the Dutch idea of control. It was laid down that if all the pilgrims on a ship had

already been protected by inoculation against cholera then the ship might proceed to Jeddah without the delay in quarantine which other ships, "healthy" or "infected," would undergo.

So the Dutch have been justified and they were the first to take advantage of the new exemption. By 1926 they were already a step or two ahead even of the latest Convention. Dutch East Indian pilgrims are now protected against plague by fumigation of the ships, and against cholera, and also against typhoid and dysentery. In 1929, Singapore followed by making cholera and smallpox vaccination compulsory either at the port of embarkation or at Singapore. In 1931, British India followed suit. And at last, in 1935, when Aden and the Protectorate followed, the whole of the southern pilgrimage was protected at embarkation or at certain other distant ports against cholera and smallpox.

It was a big achievement and the control station at Kamaran was in the best position to judge of the change effected. When Dr. ZIESEL began work there in 1926 he might have any number of ships in quarantine; he would have hundreds of pilgrims for vaccination off the ships. He was busy, in fact, with one or two others, doing at the last possible moment what now is done by many doctors and at an earlier stage in the pilgrimage. Control has moved away from Mecca, and quarantine at Kamaran has given way gradually to protection at Aden, Singapore or Batavia.

A point of Law.—The fact of inoculation is inscribed in the pilgrim's special passport, but the signature of a private doctor is not taken as sufficient evidence. The doctor must hold Government office. Now a curious and important piece of political sideplay comes up for review.

The pilgrimage is Mohammedan. The law of compulsory vaccination is a Christian one. The port of arrival, Jeddah, is in Mohammedan territory. A pilgrim might have asked, "What right has any Christian to dictate what shall be done to a Mohammedan bound for a Mohammedan country?" India has handled the question in the classical style of good government. The *Hadj Enquiry Committee* was founded and its opinion was asked on the question whether the pilgrims should be vaccinated at the port of embarkation. All members of the committee are Mohammedans and it was only on their unanimous advice to do so that the British Government passed legislation, requiring pilgrims travelling by any ship leaving any port in India, bound for Jeddah, to be vaccinated against cholera and smallpox.

Pilgrimages from the North.

By Sea.

Coming by sea from the North, arrangements are similar, details are different. Alexandria and Suez combine to do the final supervision which, in the South, Kamaran does alone; and Suez receiving the northern pilgrims, has to be particularly strict about typhus. Suez is also the key-stone in the land defence of Egypt.

By Land.

The story of the land pilgrimage is strange. In 1908 the Hedjaz railway was opened to carry pilgrims from Damascus and beyond. It was in the days of Turkish rule and the railway tempted more of the Faithful to travel through Damascus and Turkey rather than through the lands of other nations. But the scare of cholera coming quickly back along the railway to Damascus led to the building of quarantine stations at Ma'an and Tebuk, so "delay" again took precedence over any other measures of control. "Wait and see" was again the rule.

The activities of the railway were short-lived and after the war have not been resurrected. Camels still provide the main mode of transport from North, East or West. The journey takes months to accomplish, even from the north-eastern border, but history has never yet found an example of cholera being carried back along the caravan route beyond Jebel Shammar.

Pilgrimage by Motor Car.

Ibn Saud was the first to allow the Faithful to travel to Mecca by car. The results have been manifold and some quite amusing. Obviously the Bedouin stood to lose. He would no longer hire his camels. But such was the high standard of law and enforcement of punishment which the King had brought to his kingdom, that he was able to decree also that, though the pilgrims themselves may travel by car, yet their baggage must still be transported by the Bedouin. And baggage does arrive safely. A heavy fine is the first-offender's punishment for theft. Should he be so unwise as to repeat his offence, he will lose first a hand and then a foot for each time he is caught.

Control of the Land Pilgrimage.

The Convention makes no provision for a compulsory control of the health of the land pilgrimage, but each country is encouraged to do, by enactment of laws, what it can for its own protection. Perhaps it is fortunate that three out of the four countries affected are in close association with Britain, Egypt, Palestine and Iraq. The other country is Syria.

Egypt has sad memories of Arabian cholera. The land pilgrims, forbidden to cross the frontier without supervision, have sometimes taken a vessel across the Red Sea and landed cholera in Egypt in that way. At Suez most careful watch is taken of all entering the Hedjaz from the West. Passports must show that the pilgrims are protected by inoculation against cholera, smallpox and plague. Even those of the Faithful who maintain that they are not going to Mecca must submit if they journey across the Hedjaz. Iraq has a double control of pilgrims from the North. At the frontier on arrival they are inoculated against cholera and smallpox and care is taken to see that they do not bring typhus with them. Then at the Iraq-Hedjaz border, a check is made to see that all control is in order. Again, therefore, the necessary quarantine has been

spent in travelling. The same sort of measures are undertaken both in Palestine and Syria.

So we have all the land pilgrims also, in fact the whole pilgrimage, arriving as free from the chance of dying of cholera, smallpox, plague or typhus, as is at present humanly possible.

The Merchants and the Convention.

It would, however, be inconceivable that absolutely everyone in Mecca had been inoculated and in fact one great class of people remain unprotected, thus. For although many regulations control the pilgrims, yet the merchant who preys upon the Faithful and minister to their wants may come and go across all borders as they will, providing only that they have a normal passport. It seems almost that man is mad to go to such lengths to protect the one, while the other class is allowed to bring in any disease he may have. Folly indeed it is, but not on the part of the control. It is the merchant who dies of his own cholera; the pilgrims are all protected, except those few who may have procured a false certificate. They have also acquired thereby the right to die of the merchant's cholera.

THE RETURN JOURNEY.

By sea the southern pilgrims may take home any disease they wish. By land it has been noted that cholera has never spread by caravan beyond Jeddah or Shammar. For the native pools are clean where they exist; the subsoil is free from cholera germs. The sick died and were left, the healthy journeyed on leaving the poison behind, reaching cleaner water than they were leaving. As long as the journey was slow the Arabian desert did what quarantine stations tried to do; it filtered out the sick from the well.

El Tor.

In fact the last outbreak of cholera in the Hedjaz was in 1914. The disease is now none for the pilgrims to take home. Yet one feature of the control remains to be described.

At El Tor in Sinai every pilgrim returning north by sea, or by land through Egypt, must stay for 3 days. That is quarantine of the old type. The only south-bound ships that El Tor handles are those in which disease breaks out after leaving Suez for Jeddah, and these are few. It is with the returning pilgrims that El Tor is busy. It is probably the most efficient quarantine station in the world, made famous by Dr. RUFFNER about 1902 or before. Medical staff and supplies come down from Suez for 6 weeks in the year to permanent buildings, maintained there in the desert. And at what cost?

The Next Convention.

Cholera in 1902 reached Egypt from the Hedjaz through this finest quarantine station in the world. Now there is no cholera in the Hedjaz and yet El Tor remains. The question for the next Convention is whether El Tor is to

the same change of function as did Kamaran and whether either or both of these new functions could not be better carried out nearer civilization. If quarantine begins early enough, a man can travel while he is in quarantine. That lesson we are learning. The quarantine of the Dutch East Indian pilgrims was moved in 1912 from Kamaran away back to Batavia, at least in fact, though until 1926 theory required the pilgrims to spend 2 more days in Kamaran.

Jeddah would seem the proper place for Kamaran, so to speak. And Jeddah will take over the work, no doubt, as soon as it is assured that Ibn Saud's great progress in sanitation will be maintained by his successor. Education goes on apace in the Hedjaz, though it has not yet passed the point when it is easier for the people to behave healthily than to do the other thing. But Jeddah seems clearly destined some day to become the point of final check on the adequate protection of the southern pilgrims just in the same way as other Hedjaz frontiers check the pilgrimage on land.

El Tor in Future.—El Tor's function is a little different. Egypt will always fear epidemics from the Hedjaz. She is, so to speak, the Belgium in the story. She gets hit first. But it would seem possible that El Tor's duties could be divided into two. The ships coming from Jeddah and elsewhere might be under quarantine during their voyage. If some of the medical staff of El Tor were available, they could be used. Where pilgrims are travelling simply as far as Egypt the remaining quarantine might be completed at Suez. For surely enough has been learnt of how cholera, smallpox and plague are spread to know that 150 miles distance is excessive for isolation of contacts.

Pilgrims bound for further north could be obliged to remain on board while the ship was in Suez, Port Said or Alexandria. The principle of travelling quarantine could be applied here on the return as well.

Pilgrims travelling from Mecca through Egypt overland, and by air might be subjected to quarantine if needs must be, but surely not at El Tor, so far away and so costly to maintain! For one thing is certain that the more delay is enforced at El Tor, the greater the temptation is to avoid the official frontiers and to take boat across the Red Sea.

The New Quarantine.

Quarantine by active delay of a body of men who are known to be moving will give place entirely to remoter forms of control. "Quarantine must be a filter and not a dam." It must be no hindrance to trade. Quarantine by delay ("wait and see" methods) will always have first place when a man arrives under unknown conditions of travel; but in the pilgrimage, as control over the shipping and embarkation grows more complete, so will quarantine fade and give way to remote control by inoculation. Supervision will replace delay.

The problem of El Tor remains to be solved only as we learn to know what we can do without. The first stage was finding out what was needed. The second has been getting something that was not expected. The third is the hardest, learning what to discard.

TRANSACTIONS OF THE ROYAL SOCIETY OF
TROPICAL MEDICINE AND HYGIENE.
Vol. XXXII. No. 1. June, 1938.

ON THE RELATIVE ATTRACTIVENESS TO *AÈDES AEGYPTI* OF CERTAIN COLOURED CLOTHS.

BY

G. A. BRETT,*

Wellcome Entomological Field Laboratories, Wellcome Bureau of Scientific Research, London.

INTRODUCTION.

The object of this series of experiments was to determine whether *Aedes aegypti* had any preference as to the colour of clothing on which it alighted for feeding. The primary attractant to a hungry mosquito is, of course, the combination of scent and warmth given off by the human body, and this aspect of the subject has been investigated by RUDOLFS (1922) for other species of *Aedes*, by REUTER (1936) for *A. aegypti*, by HOWLETT (1910) for *A. albopictus* and *Culex fatigans*, and by GOELDI (1905). HOWLETT (1910) and ECKSTEIN (1920) noticed that mosquitoes were more attracted by dark colours than light.

BRIGHENTI (1930) carried out some experiments on the attraction exercised by different colours on *Anopheles maculipennis*. He painted the ceilings of cattle sheds with different colour washes and counted the numbers resting on each colour. He concluded that the descending order of preference for the colours he used was Carmine red, Violet, Chrome yellow, White, Green, Cobalt blue. Grey was a neutral colour, and followed pretty closely the variations of the colours near it (red and blue). HEADLEE (1937), experimenting with light sources of different colours, worked out his results in terms of mosquitoes caught per microwatt of light energy. He found that the most attractive colour was Blue (mercury argon vapour) with 21.5 times the attraction power of White. Next in order came Green-yellow (mercury vapour in stained glass) with 12.3, and Red (neon) with 6.1 times the attraction power of White. His white source was a 25 watt frosted bulb.

It is impossible to compare these two sets of results with one another, as they deal with different phenomena. BRIGHENTI was dealing with the attractiveness as a resting surface of differently coloured ceilings in a shed, the shed being a normal resting place for mosquitoes, and not so brightly lighted as out of doors. Also, the intensity of the light reflected from his

*I have to thank Mr. B. JOBLING of this Laboratory, who suggested this work, and under whose direction it was carried out. My thanks are also due to Dr. J. C. BROOM of the Wellcome Bureau of Scientific Research for much help and advice over the statistical part of this paper, and to Dr. W. D. WRIGHT of the Imperial College of Science and Technology, South Kensington, for making the trichromatic colour measurements for me, and for much advice as to the best way of making use of them. I should like to express my appreciation of the patience with which both of them have dealt with my very numerous inquiries.

coloured surfaces must necessarily have been considerably less than that of the incident light. HEADLEE, on the other hand, was dealing with primary sources of light which were, presumably, considerably brighter than their surroundings.

The present experiments are more comparable with those of BRIGHENTI. They were undertaken because it was thought possible that certain colours might be sufficiently repellent to mosquitoes to prevent them from alighting on an otherwise attractive feeding surface, or at least to reduce considerably the numbers doing so. In working out the results, account was taken of the possibility that the percentage of light reflected, and not the colour of the surface might be the cause of any preference or dislike shown by the mosquitoes.

MATERIAL AND METHODS.

The mosquitoes used were reared from a Tanganyika strain which has been bred in this laboratory since November, 1934. They were bred so as to give a supply of about 300 adult females $2\frac{1}{2}$ days old on Monday of each week. Experiments were normally made on four successive days, starting on the Tuesday when the mosquitoes were $3\frac{1}{2}$ days old. If in any week the stock was not large enough to provide the necessary number of mosquitoes all of the same age, a mixed lot emerging on two successive days was used, starting with the ages $2\frac{1}{2}$ and $3\frac{1}{2}$ days. No greater age difference than this was allowed in any of the experiments.

The mosquitoes were collected as they emerged, in cages placed over the jars containing the pupae. These cages were changed usually between 12 noon and 1 p.m. each day, but sometimes the time of changing was varied by an hour or two. Most of the mosquitoes emerged during the night, but a few emerged during the day. Thus those emerging between midday Friday and midday Saturday (i.e., 1 day's emergence) were called $2\frac{1}{2}$ days old on Monday, but there were amongst them some of as little as 2 or as much as 3 days old. For the purpose of these experiments it was not thought necessary to define the age of the mosquitoes any more closely than this. They were given a solution of brown sugar in water absorbed in cotton wool, from the time they emerged until the afternoon of the day before the first experiment, or sometimes until the morning of the first experiment. After this they were given tap water absorbed in cotton wool, each afternoon after the experiment until the following morning. By this method the mortality was kept low. Any that died in the experimental cages were made up from a stock of the same age, kept under similar conditions, and fed in the same way.

Four experimental cages were used—two each of two very slightly different types. All were 30.5×34.2 cm. in ground plan, and 30.5 cm. high, with a glass top, 3-ply wood bottom painted white, three white mosquito netting sides, and one 3-ply wood side not painted. The 3-ply wood side had a circular hole 15 cm. in diameter, to which was attached a muslin sleeve. The experimenter's hand, enclosed in the box described below was put through

this opening into the cage. The difference between the two types of cage was that in one the 3-ply wood side was one of the short ones, whereas in the other it was one of the long sides, and in this latter type the side of the cage to the right of the experimenter consisted of a mosquito netting sleeve instead of a plain piece of mosquito netting. This small asymmetry in two of the cages did not appear to affect the preference of the mosquitoes for one side or the other, and in any case it was compensated as described below.

TABLE I.

TEMPERATURE AND HUMIDITIES AT WHICH EXPERIMENTS WERE CARRIED OUT.

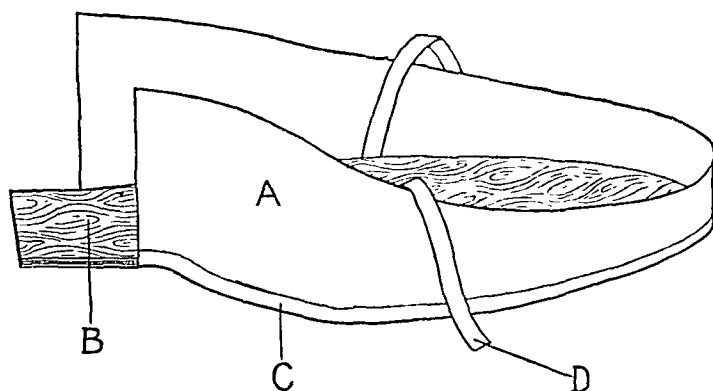
Colour Combination.	Temperature °C.			Humidity per cent.		
	Maximum.	Minimum.	Mean.	Maximum.	Minimum.	Mean.
Black and white	31.4	28.9	30.2	72.0	66.0	69.5
Blue and brown	31.1	29.4	30.37	74.5	68.5	70.4
Blue and black	32.2	29.8	31.2	71.5	63.0	67.9
Blue and white	31.9	28.6	30.9	76.0	61.0	66.3
Brown and black	31.7	30.0	30.6	78.0	68.0	71.0
Brown and white	31.9	28.9	30.4	76.0	65.5	69.5
Green and black	31.4	29.4	30.5	65.0	58.0	61.1
Green and white	32.1	29.2	30.9	75.0	58.5	64.0
Grey and black	32.2	30.0	30.5	72.0	65.0	69.2
Grey and white	31.7	29.7	30.8	71.5	65.0	68.0
Heliotrope and black	31.4	30.0	31.0	69.0	64.8	67.2
Heliotrope and white	32.0	28.9	30.3	68.5	60.0	65.3
Khaki and black	31.7	29.2	30.4	78.0	61.0	67.4
Khaki and white	31.1	29.3	30.1	84.0	63.0	77.2
Light khaki and black	31.7	28.1	30.5	75.25	62.5	67.8
Light khaki and white	31.1	29.2	30.1	77.5	69.0	72.4
Red and black	32.2	28.9	30.9	67.0	55.0	61.0
Red and white	32.5	30.3	31.0	69.0	60.0	65.5
Yellow and black	32.0	29.4	30.8	71.0	62.7	66.7
Yellow and white	31.4	29.4	30.5	69.5	60.3	64.3
Highest	32.5	30.3	31.2	84.0	69.0	77.2
Lowest	31.1	28.1	30.1	65.0	55.0	61.0

The mosquitoes were bred, and the experiments carried out in a laboratory kept at tropical heat, the temperature of which varied between 33.3° C. and 21.7° C., the mean weekly maximum and minimum temperatures during the period of experiments being 31° C. and 26.1° C. The temperatures and humidities at which experiments were carried out are shown in Table I. These readings were taken from wet and dry bulb thermometers immediately after each half experiment. The thermometers were fanned vigorously with a duster for 1 minute before taking the reading. It should be mentioned that they were kept permanently in position on the bench, and so were already

reading approximately the correct temperature before fanning commenced. The humidities were determined from the Meteorological Office hygrometric tables (1931). Within this range, variation of temperature and humidity did not appear to affect the activity of the mosquitoes, but one or two attempted experiments at 25.5°C . were failures owing to their sluggishness.

The only window in the laboratory was one facing north, 4.9 metres long and 1.1 metres high, with a bench the height of the window sill running nearly its full length. The glass was in large panes, with narrow metal frames which cut out very little light. All experiments were carried out by daylight.

The experimental cages were placed along the bench 53 cm. from the window, the left hand cage being 1 metre, and the right hand one 1.9 metres, from their respective ends of the window. They were kept in the same positions for the whole series of experiments.



BOX FOR ENCLOSING HAND (Coloured pocket not shown).

A, Tin sides ; B, 3-ply wood bottom ; C, Rubber adhesive tape, sealing joint between tin and wood ; D, Tapes to tie over back of hand.

Fifty females were placed in each cage, and there were usually two or three males as well, as it was found extremely difficult to exclude all of these.

The box enclosing the experimenter's hand, referred to above is shown in the diagram. It was made of a piece of 3-ply wood 27 cm. long and 10.7 cm. wide at the widest point, cut to the shape of the left wrist and hand when held flat with the fingers together. The sides were made of tin, graduated in height so that when the test material was stretched over the top it was always about 0.8 cm. above the highest part of the back of the hand. The mosquitoes were therefore unable to feed when they had alighted. A tape tied across the hand kept the box in position. The total alighting area exposed was 190 sq. cm.

Black and White were used as standards with which to compare the test colours, the coloured material being sewn to a piece of Black or White, and

made up into a pocket which was tied across the open top of the box with tapes. The dividing line between the Black or White and the colour was longitudinally down the middle line of the box. Care was taken, by measurements of the widths of material at frequent intervals, that equal areas of colour and standard were exposed. The material used was an opaque, but rather loosely woven cotton fabric, dyed with powder dyes of the type used for home dyeing.

At least eight experiments were made with each colour; one at each of the standard ages— $3\frac{1}{2}$ to $6\frac{1}{2}$ days—with Black and with White as standards of comparison, and in some cases additional experiments were made.

The method of carrying out the experiments was as follows:—

The left hand of the person used first as the attractant (usually myself), enclosed in the box, and covered with the test pocket as described above was put into the left hand experimental cage through the sleeve in the 3-ply wood side, this being the side away from the window. Care was taken to keep the hand in the centre of the cage. The numbers of mosquitoes alighting on the test colour and the standard during a period of 3 minutes were counted and recorded. The process was then repeated with the other three cages, and then the whole process was repeated, using my assistant's hand as the attractant, and with the colour and standard interchanged in position by the process of turning the pocket inside out. At least 15, and not more than 20, minutes elapsed between the end of one test and the beginning of the next on any one cage. After an interval of 50 minutes or more the whole of the above process was repeated, but this time my assistant carried out the first four tests and I did the remainder, each of us with the colour and standard in the opposite positions to those they had occupied in the first half of the experiment. This process was sometimes varied by my assistant carrying out the first four tests in the first half of the experiment, and then, of course, we took one another's places throughout.

Each experiment thus consisted of sixteen separate tests. The normal procedure was for one half to be done in the morning and the other in the afternoon, but sometimes this was varied so that the whole experiment was performed either in the morning or in the afternoon, and occasionally the two halves were done in different weeks, with different lots of mosquitoes, but in this case care was taken to have them of the same age.

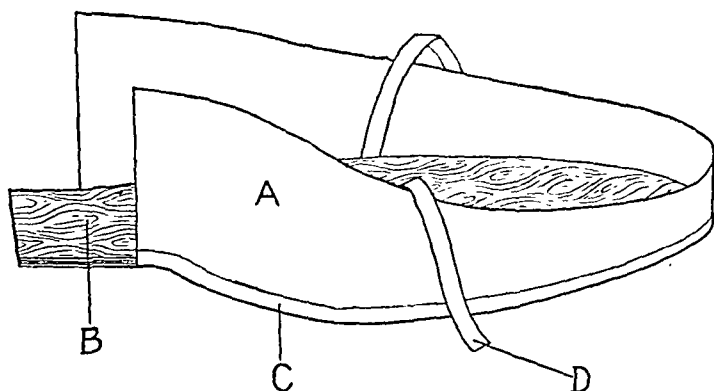
It will be realized that by the above method it was possible for a single mosquito to be counted several times if, after alighting, it flew off and alighted again, and in fact this generally happened. In the majority of the tests, although there were only fifty mosquitoes per cage, considerably more than 50 were counted as alighting during the three minute period.

It was noticed that many mosquitoes alighted on the side of the box and endeavoured to feed through the tin. These were neglected, only those alighting on the top surface being counted.

reading approximately the correct temperature before fanning commenced. The humidities were determined from the Meteorological Office hygrometric tables (1931). Within this range, variation of temperature and humidity did not appear to affect the activity of the mosquitoes, but one or two attempted experiments at 25.5°C . were failures owing to their sluggishness.

The only window in the laboratory was one facing north, 4.9 metres long and 1.1 metres high, with a bench the height of the window sill running nearly its full length. The glass was in large panes, with narrow metal frames which cut out very little light. All experiments were carried out by daylight.

The experimental cages were placed along the bench 53 cm. from the window, the left hand cage being 1 metre, and the right hand one 1.9 metres, from their respective ends of the window. They were kept in the same positions for the whole series of experiments.



BOX FOR ENCLOSING HAND (Coloured pocket not shown).

A, Tin sides ; B, 3-ply wood bottom ; C, Rubber adhesive tape, sealing joint between tin and wood ; D, Tapes to tie over back of hand.

Fifty females were placed in each cage, and there were usually two or three males as well, as it was found extremely difficult to exclude all of these.

The box enclosing the experimenter's hand, referred to above is shown in the diagram. It was made of a piece of 3-ply wood 27 cm. long and 10.7 cm. wide at the widest point, cut to the shape of the left wrist and hand when held flat with the fingers together. The sides were made of tin, graduated in height so that when the test material was stretched over the top it was always about 0.8 cm. above the highest part of the back of the hand. The mosquitoes were therefore unable to feed when they had alighted. A tape tied across the hand kept the box in position. The total alighting area exposed was 190 sq. cm.

Black and White were used as standards with which to compare the test colours, the coloured material being sewn to a piece of Black or White, and

made up into a pocket which was tied across the open top of the box with tapes. The dividing line between the Black or White and the colour was longitudinally down the middle line of the box. Care was taken, by measurements of the widths of material at frequent intervals, that equal areas of colour and standard were exposed. The material used was an opaque, but rather loosely woven cotton fabric, dyed with powder dyes of the type used for home dyeing.

At least eight experiments were made with each colour; one at each of the standard ages— $3\frac{1}{2}$ to $6\frac{1}{2}$ days—with Black and with White as standards of comparison, and in some cases additional experiments were made.

The method of carrying out the experiments was as follows:—

The left hand of the person used first as the attractant (usually myself), enclosed in the box, and covered with the test pocket as described above was put into the left hand experimental cage through the sleeve in the 3-ply wood side, this being the side away from the window. Care was taken to keep the hand in the centre of the cage. The numbers of mosquitoes alighting on the test colour and the standard during a period of 3 minutes were counted and recorded. The process was then repeated with the other three cages, and then the whole process was repeated, using my assistant's hand as the attractant, and with the colour and standard interchanged in position by the process of turning the pocket inside out. At least 15, and not more than 20, minutes elapsed between the end of one test and the beginning of the next on any one cage. After an interval of 50 minutes or more the whole of the above process was repeated, but this time my assistant carried out the first four tests and I did the remainder, each of us with the colour and standard in the opposite positions to those they had occupied in the first half of the experiment. This process was sometimes varied by my assistant carrying out the first four tests in the first half of the experiment, and then, of course, we took one another's places throughout.

Each experiment thus consisted of sixteen separate tests. The normal procedure was for one half to be done in the morning and the other in the afternoon, but sometimes this was varied so that the whole experiment was performed either in the morning or in the afternoon, and occasionally the two halves were done in different weeks, with different lots of mosquitoes, but in this case care was taken to have them of the same age.

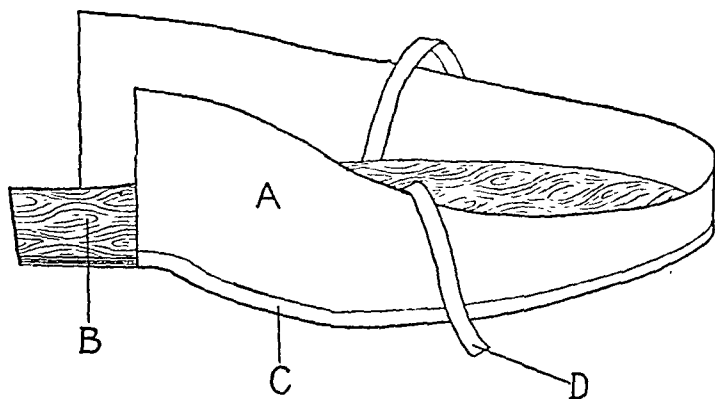
It will be realized that by the above method it was possible for a single mosquito to be counted several times if, after alighting, it flew off and alighted again, and in fact this generally happened. In the majority of the tests, although there were only fifty mosquitoes per cage, considerably more than 50 were counted as alighting during the three minute period.

It was noticed that many mosquitoes alighted on the side of the box and endeavoured to feed through the tin. These were neglected, only those alighting on the top surface being counted.

reading approximately the correct temperature before fanning commenced. The humidities were determined from the Meteorological Office hygrometric tables (1931). Within this range, variation of temperature and humidity did not appear to affect the activity of the mosquitoes, but one or two attempted experiments at 25.5° C. were failures owing to their sluggishness.

The only window in the laboratory was one facing north, 4.9 metres long and 1.1 metres high, with a bench the height of the window sill running nearly its full length. The glass was in large panes, with narrow metal frames which cut out very little light. All experiments were carried out by daylight.

The experimental cages were placed along the bench 53 cm. from the window, the left hand cage being 1 metre, and the right hand one 1.9 metres, from their respective ends of the window. They were kept in the same positions for the whole series of experiments.



BOX FOR ENCLOSING HAND (Coloured pocket not shown).

A, Tin sides ; B, 3-ply wood bottom ; C, Rubber adhesive tape, sealing joint between tin and wood ; D, Tapes to tie over back of hand.

Fifty females were placed in each cage, and there were usually two or three males as well, as it was found extremely difficult to exclude all of these.

The box enclosing the experimenter's hand, referred to above is shown in the diagram. It was made of a piece of 3-ply wood 27 cm. long and 10.7 cm. wide at the widest point, cut to the shape of the left wrist and hand when held flat with the fingers together. The sides were made of tin, graduated in height so that when the test material was stretched over the top it was always about 0.8 cm. above the highest part of the back of the hand. The mosquitoes were therefore unable to feed when they had alighted. A tape tied across the hand kept the box in position. The total alighting area exposed was 190 sq. cm.

Black and White were used as standards with which to compare the test colours, the coloured material being sewn to a piece of Black or White, and

made up into a pocket which was tied across the open top of the box with tapes. The dividing line between the Black or White and the colour was longitudinally down the middle line of the box. Care was taken, by measurements of the widths of material at frequent intervals, that equal areas of colour and standard were exposed. The material used was an opaque, but rather loosely woven cotton fabric, dyed with powder dyes of the type used for home dyeing.

At least eight experiments were made with each colour; one at each of the standard ages— $3\frac{1}{2}$ to $6\frac{1}{2}$ days—with Black and with White as standards of comparison, and in some cases additional experiments were made.

The method of carrying out the experiments was as follows :—

The left hand of the person used first as the attractant (usually myself), enclosed in the box, and covered with the test pocket as described above was put into the left hand experimental cage through the sleeve in the 3-ply wood side, this being the side away from the window. Care was taken to keep the hand in the centre of the cage. The numbers of mosquitoes alighting on the test colour and the standard during a period of 3 minutes were counted and recorded. The process was then repeated with the other three cages, and then the whole process was repeated, using my assistant's hand as the attractant, and with the colour and standard interchanged in position by the process of turning the pocket inside out. At least 15, and not more than 20, minutes elapsed between the end of one test and the beginning of the next on any one cage. After an interval of 50 minutes or more the whole of the above process was repeated, but this time my assistant carried out the first four tests and I did the remainder, each of us with the colour and standard in the opposite positions to those they had occupied in the first half of the experiment. This process was sometimes varied by my assistant carrying out the first four tests in the first half of the experiment, and then, of course, we took one another's places throughout.

Each experiment thus consisted of sixteen separate tests. The normal procedure was for one half to be done in the morning and the other in the afternoon, but sometimes this was varied so that the whole experiment was performed either in the morning or in the afternoon, and occasionally the two halves were done in different weeks, with different lots of mosquitoes, but in this case care was taken to have them of the same age.

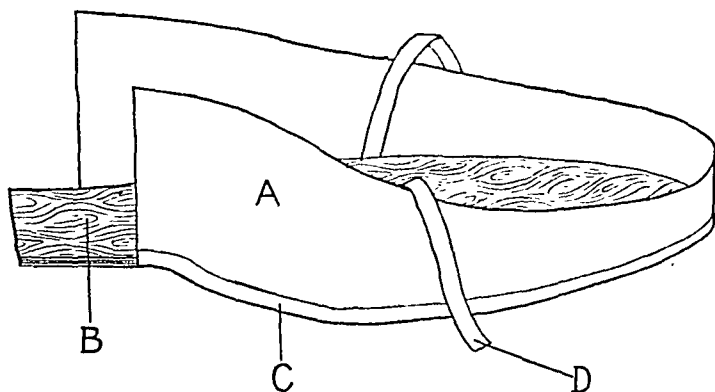
It will be realized that by the above method it was possible for a single mosquito to be counted several times if, after alighting, it flew off and alighted again, and in fact this generally happened. In the majority of the tests, although there were only fifty mosquitoes per cage, considerably more than 50 were counted as alighting during the three minute period.

It was noticed that many mosquitoes alighted on the side of the box and endeavoured to feed through the tin. These were neglected, only those alighting on the top surface being counted.

reading approximately the correct temperature before fanning commenced. The humidities were determined from the Meteorological Office hygrometric tables (1931). Within this range, variation of temperature and humidity did not appear to affect the activity of the mosquitoes, but one or two attempted experiments at 25.5°C . were failures owing to their sluggishness.

The only window in the laboratory was one facing north, 4.9 metres long and 1.1 metres high, with a bench the height of the window sill running nearly its full length. The glass was in large panes, with narrow metal frames which cut out very little light. All experiments were carried out by daylight.

The experimental cages were placed along the bench 53 cm. from the window, the left hand cage being 1 metre, and the right hand one 1.9 metres, from their respective ends of the window. They were kept in the same positions for the whole series of experiments.



BOX FOR ENCLOSING HAND (Coloured pocket not shown).

A, Tin sides ; B, 3-ply wood bottom ; C, Rubber adhesive tape, sealing joint between tin and wood ; D, Tapes to tie over back of hand.

Fifty females were placed in each cage, and there were usually two or three males as well, as it was found extremely difficult to exclude all of these.

The box enclosing the experimenter's hand, referred to above is shown in the diagram. It was made of a piece of 3-ply wood 27 cm. long and 10.7 cm. wide at the widest point, cut to the shape of the left wrist and hand when held flat with the fingers together. The sides were made of tin, graduated in height so that when the test material was stretched over the top it was always about 0.8 cm. above the highest part of the back of the hand. The mosquitoes were therefore unable to feed when they had alighted. A tape tied across the hand kept the box in position. The total alighting area exposed was 190 sq. cm.

Black and White were used as standards with which to compare the test colours, the coloured material being sewn to a piece of Black or White, and

TABLE III.

NUMBER AND PERCENTAGES OF MOSQUITOES ALIGHTING IN EACH SET OF EXPERIMENTS.

Colour Combination.	Reflec- tion Factor of Colour.	Number of Experi- ments.	Number of Mosquitoes Alighting on			Percentage of Mosquitoes Alighting on		
			Colour.	Black.	White.	Colour.	Black.	White.
	Percent.							
Blue and black ...	7.5	4	1,315	2,766	—	32.22	67.78	—
Blue and white ...	—	4	2,109	—	1,496	58.50	—	41.50
Brown and black ...	7.6	4	1,388	2,091	—	39.90	60.10	—
Brown and white ...	—	4	2,349	—	1,493	62.01	—	37.99
Green and black ...	9.3	4	1,417	3,147	—	31.05	68.95	—
Green and white ...	—	4	1,801	—	1,264	58.76	—	41.24
Heliotrope and black	10.0	4	2,820	4,193	—	40.21	59.79	—
Heliotrope and white	—	4	1,635	—	1,219	57.29	—	42.71
Red and black ...	10.4	4	3,344	4,406	—	43.15	56.85	—
Red and white ...	—	5	2,930	—	1,343	68.57	—	31.43
Khaki and black ...	14.8	5	2,717	5,862	—	31.67	68.33	—
Khaki and white ...	—	6	2,491	—	1,634	60.39	—	39.61
Grey and black ...	17.8	4	1,305	2,431	—	34.93	65.07	—
Grey and white ...	—	4	2,118	—	1,668	55.94	—	44.06
Light khaki and black	40.3	5	1,530	3,844	—	28.47	71.53	—
Light khaki and white	—	4	2,477	—	2,980	45.39	—	54.61
Yellow and black ...	48.2	4	1,022	2,723	—	27.29	72.71	—
Yellow and white ...	—	4	1,169	—	1,154	50.32	—	49.68
Black and white ...	—	5	—	2,996	1,527	—	66.24	33.76
			Blue	Brown	—	Blue	Brown	—
Blue and brown ...	—	4	2,872	3,482	—	45.20	54.80	—

The following is the order of attractiveness of the colours used :—

Compared with Black.

Black
Red
Heliotrope)
Brown)
Grey)
White) White)
Blue) Blue)
Khaki)
Green)
Light Khaki)
Yellow)

Compared with White,

Red
Black
Brown)
Khaki)
Green)
Blue)
Heliotrope)

Yellow)
White)
Light Khaki

The differences between the colours bracketed together are not statistically significant. The repetition of colours in two successive brackets, e.g. (Grey, White), (White, Blue) means that in this case though the difference between

The specifications of the colours used are given in Table II. The colour measurements and calculations were made for me by Dr. W. D. WRIGHT of the Physics Department of the Imperial College of Science and Technology, South Kensington, and I am much indebted to him for his help.

TABLE II.
SPECIFICATIONS OF COLOURS.

Colour.	Trichromatic Coefficients (C.I.E. Units).	Reflection Factor per cent.
Perfectly White surface* ...	$0.348x + 0.352y + 0.300z$	100
White material ...	$0.363x + 0.330y + 0.307z$	55.6
Black ...	$0.346x + 0.331y + 0.323z$	2.08
Blue ...	$0.225x + 0.219y + 0.556z$	7.5
Brown ...	$0.489x + 0.388y + 0.123z$	7.6
Green ...	$0.278x + 0.366y + 0.356z$	9.3
Grey ...	$0.349x + 0.318y + 0.333z$	17.8
Heliotrope ...	$0.319x + 0.235y + 0.446z$	10.0
Khaki ...	$0.427x + 0.420y + 0.153z$	14.8
Light khaki ...	$0.452x + 0.420y + 0.128z$	40.3
Red ...	$0.563x + 0.295y + 0.142z$	10.4
Yellow ...	$0.465x + 0.425y + 0.110z$	48.2

*Standard magnesium oxide surface. Not a test material. x = approx. Red colour component; y = approx. Green colour component; z = approx. Blue colour component. Colorimeter primaries were:—Red = 0.65μ ; Green = 0.53μ ; Blue = 0.46μ .

For the measurements, samples of the coloured materials were mounted on cardboard tinted approximately flesh colour. The colorimeter used was designed by Dr. WRIGHT (1929). The principle of this is that the material under test is illuminated by a standard method and is viewed through an eyepiece, when it is seen in one half of the field of vision. The colour is matched in the other half of the field by mixing by optical methods the three colours red, green, and blue, which are obtained by picking out the appropriate portions of the spectrum. The proportions (in suitable units) of these primaries needed to match the test material give a measure of its colour, and are expressed as trichromatic coefficients. These are given in Table II in the system of colour specification laid down by the Commission Internationale de l'Eclairage (1931). The source of light used to illuminate the material was the 1931 S_B source of the same body. These standards are further explained by SMITH and GUILD (1932).

RESULTS.

Table III gives the numbers and percentages of mosquitoes alighting in each set of experiments, with the reflection factors of the colours repeated from Table II for comparison. It will be seen from this that the order of attractiveness of the colours used was not the same when compared with Black as with White.

TABLE IV.

DIRECT COMPARISONS OF COLOURS WITH BLACK AND WHITE, AND INDIRECT COMPARISONS OF THESE COLOURS WITH EACH OTHER BY MEANS OF THE DIRECT RESULTS.

		White.	Blue.	Brown.	Green.	Heliotrope.	Red.	Khaki.	Grey.	Light Khaki.	Yellow.		
Black	D %	+32.48	+35.56	+20.2	+37.90	+19.58	+13.70	+36.66	+30.14	+43.06	+45.42	Direct.	
	σ_D	0.703	0.732	0.830	0.685	0.585	0.563	0.502	0.780	0.616	0.728		
	D/σ_D	46.2	48.6	24.3	55.3	33.4	24.4	73.0	38.6	69.9	62.4		
Blue	D %	+17.0	Indirect Comparison through Black.	-7.68	+1.17	-7.99	-10.93	+0.55	-2.71	+3.75	+4.93	Indirect Comparison through Black.	
	σ_D	0.821		1.106	1.002	0.937	0.923	0.887	1.069	0.956	1.032		
	D/σ_D	20.7		6.94	1.68	8.53	11.8	0.62	2.53	3.92	4.78		
Brown	D %	+24.0		+3.51		+8.85	-0.31	-3.25	+8.23	+4.97	+11.43		+12.61
	σ_D	0.786		1.137		1.076	1.016	1.003	0.970	1.139	1.034		1.104
	D/σ_D	30.5		3.08		8.22	0.31	3.24	8.48	4.36	11.1		11.4
Green	D %	+17.52		+0.26	-3.25		-9.16	-12.10	-0.62	-3.88	+2.58		+3.76
	σ_D	0.889		1.210	1.187		0.901	0.886	0.849	1.038	0.921		0.999
	D/σ_D	19.7		0.21	3.86		10.2	13.7	0.73	3.74	2.80		3.76
Helio-trope	D %	+14.58		-1.21	-4.72	-1.47		-2.94	+8.54	+5.28	+11.74		+12.92
	σ_D	0.926		1.237	1.215	1.283		0.812	0.771	0.975	0.850		0.934
	D/σ_D	15.7		0.98	3.89	1.15		3.62	11.1	5.41	13.8		13.8
Red	D %	+37.14		+10.07	+6.56	+9.81	+11.28		+11.48	+8.22	+14.68		+15.86
	σ_D	0.710		1.085	1.060	1.138	1.167		0.754	0.962	0.834		0.920
	D/σ_D	52.3		9.27	6.19	8.62	9.66		15.2	8.55	17.6		17.2
Khaki	D %	+20.78		+1.89	-1.62	+1.63	+3.10	-8.18		-3.26	+3.20		+4.38
	σ_D	0.762		1.119	1.095	1.171	1.199	1.041		0.928	0.794		0.884
	D/σ_D	27.3		1.69	1.48	1.39	2.59	7.86		3.51	4.03		4.95
Grey	D %	+11.88		-2.56	-6.07	-2.82	-1.35	-12.63	-4.45		+6.46		+7.64
	σ_D	0.807		1.151	1.127	1.200	1.228	1.075	1.109		0.994		1.067
	D/σ_D	14.7		2.22	5.39	2.35	1.10	11.8	4.01		6.50		7.16
Light Khaki	D %	-9.22		-13.11	-16.62	-13.37	-11.90	-23.18	-15.00	-10.55			+1.18
	σ_D	0.674		1.062	1.036	1.116	1.145	0.979	1.017	1.051			0.953
	D/σ_D	13.7		12.3	16.0	12.0	10.4	23.7	14.7	10.0			1.24
Yellow	D %	+0.64		-8.18	-11.69	-8.44	-6.97	-18.25	-10.07	-5.62	+4.93		
	σ_D	1.037		1.323	1.302	1.366	1.390	1.257	1.287	1.314	1.237		
	D/σ_D	0.62		6.18	8.98	6.18	5.01	14.5	7.82	4.28	3.99		
Direct			Indirect Comparison through White.										
Blue and Brown by direct comparison.			$D\%$ Blue = -9.6, σ_D = 0.624, D/σ_D = 15.3.										

D = Difference in percentage or mosquitoes attracted. σ_D = Standard Deviation of this difference.

+ or - sign before the difference indicates that the colour in the left-hand column is the more or less attractive respectively of the pair.

Grey and Blue is significant, White coming in between them is not significantly different from either. Differences between colours not bracketed together are to be considered as significant. This is shown in more detail in Table IV, which gives the percentage difference (D) between each colour and Black (top horizontal) and White (left vertical), in the number of mosquitoes attracted, and also, in the body of the table, the percentage difference between the colours taken in pairs, in the upper right half as obtained indirectly through the comparisons with Black, and in the lower left half similarly through the comparisons with White. The table also gives the standard deviations (σ_D) of these differences, and the ratios D/σ_D . Differences which have not been considered significant are given in italics. These are the cases where D/σ_D is less than 2.0, and hence the probability (P) of such a difference arising by chance is greater than 0.05. In cases where D/σ_D is between 2.0 and 2.6, P is between 0.05 and 0.01, and these have been considered as on the borderline, and in need of confirmation before they can be taken as fully established results, though in all probability they are significant. Where D/σ_D is greater than 2.6, P is less than 0.01, and the results have been considered as significant.

Various facts emerge from the above results. The orders of attractiveness of the colours when compared with Black and with White are very similar in some respects and very different in others. The colours Black, Red, Brown, Blue, Light Khaki and Yellow occupy the same or adjacent positions in both lists, whereas Heliotrope, Grey, White, Khaki and Green differ by several places.

Throughout the experiments using Black as the standard of comparison it was very obvious that it was far more attractive than the colours with which it was compared (see Table III). Only Red approached it in attractiveness, and that not very closely. White came about half way down the list, almost equal to Grey and Blue, and with Khaki, Green, Light Khaki and Yellow definitely less attractive. On the other hand, when using White as the standard of comparison it was equally obvious that except in two cases (Yellow and Light Khaki) it was nearly as much less attractive than the colours as Black had been more so. Yellow was practically equal to White in attractiveness, and Light Khaki was significantly less so. Red, from being considerably less attractive than Black became slightly more so. Grey was nearly the same with respect to White as in the comparison with Black, but Blue was considerably more attractive. No explanation of these discrepancies is at present forthcoming, but some at least of them are too large to be explained as experimental errors.

When it was found that the Blue and Brown materials used had practically the same reflection factor they were compared directly with one another, as it was thought that such a comparison might act as some sort of test of the validity of the indirect comparisons, and also show more directly than the other experiments whether these mosquitoes had any colour preference. The figures are given at the bottom of Tables II and IV. It will be seen that these confirm

TABLE IV.

DIRECT COMPARISONS OF COLOURS WITH BLACK AND WHITE, AND INDIRECT COMPARISONS OF THESE COLOURS WITH EACH OTHER BY MEANS OF THE DIRECT RESULTS.

		White.	Blue.	Brown.	Green.	Heliotrope.	Red.	Khaki.	Grey.	Light Khaki.	Yellow.	
Black	D % σ_D D/σ_D	+32.48 0.703 46.2	+35.56 0.732 48.6	+20.2 0.830 24.3	+37.90 0.685 55.3	+19.58 0.585 33.4	+13.70 0.563 24.4	+36.66 0.502 73.0	+30.14 0.780 38.6	+43.06 0.616 69.9	+45.42 0.728 62.4	Direct.
Blue	D % σ_D D/σ_D	+17.0 0.821 20.7	Indirect Comparison through Black.									
Brown	D % σ_D D/σ_D	+24.0 0.786 30.5										
Green	D % σ_D D/σ_D	+17.52 0.889 19.7										
Helio- trope	D % σ_D D/σ_D	+14.58 0.926 15.7										
Red	D % σ_D D/σ_D	+37.14 0.710 52.3										
Khaki	D % σ_D D/σ_D	+20.78 0.762 27.3										
Grey	D % σ_D D/σ_D	+11.88 0.807 14.7										
Light Khaki	D % σ_D D/σ_D	-9.22 0.674 13.7										
Yellow	D % σ_D D/σ_D	+0.64 1.037 0.62										
Direct			Indirect Comparison through White.									
Blue and Brown by direct comparison.			$D\%$ Blue = -9.6, σ_D = 0.624, D/σ_D = 15.3.									

D = Difference in percentage or mosquitoes attracted.

σ_D = Standard Deviation of this difference.

+ or - sign before the difference indicates that the colour in the left-hand column is the more or less attractive respectively of the pair.

Grey and Blue is significant, White coming in between them is not significantly different from either. Differences between colours not bracketed together are to be considered as significant. This is shown in more detail in Table IV, which gives the percentage difference (D) between each colour and Black (top horizontal) and White (left vertical), in the number of mosquitoes attracted, and also, in the body of the table, the percentage difference between the colours taken in pairs, in the upper right half as obtained indirectly through the comparisons with Black, and in the lower left half similarly through the comparisons with White. The table also gives the standard deviations (σ_D) of these differences, and the ratios D/σ_D . Differences which have not been considered significant are given in italics. These are the cases where D/σ_D is less than 2.0, and hence the probability (P) of such a difference arising by chance is greater than 0.05. In cases where D/σ_D is between 2.0 and 2.6, P is between 0.05 and 0.01, and these have been considered as on the borderline, and in need of confirmation before they can be taken as fully established results, though in all probability they are significant. Where D/σ_D is greater than 2.6, P is less than 0.01, and the results have been considered as significant.

Various facts emerge from the above results. The orders of attractiveness of the colours when compared with Black and with White are very similar in some respects and very different in others. The colours Black, Red, Brown, Blue, Light Khaki and Yellow occupy the same or adjacent positions in both lists, whereas Heliotrope, Grey, White, Khaki and Green differ by several places.

Throughout the experiments using Black as the standard of comparison it was very obvious that it was far more attractive than the colours with which it was compared (see Table III). Only Red approached it in attractiveness, and that not very closely. White came about half way down the list, almost equal to Grey and Blue, and with Khaki, Green, Light Khaki and Yellow definitely less attractive. On the other hand, when using White as the standard of comparison it was equally obvious that except in two cases (Yellow and Light Khaki) it was nearly as much less attractive than the colours as Black had been more so. Yellow was practically equal to White in attractiveness, and Light Khaki was significantly less so. Red, from being considerably less attractive than Black became slightly more so. Grey was nearly the same with respect to White as in the comparison with Black, but Blue was considerably more attractive. No explanation of these discrepancies is at present forthcoming, but some at least of them are too large to be explained as experimental errors.

When it was found that the Blue and Brown materials used had practically the same reflection factor they were compared directly with one another, as it was thought that such a comparison might act as some sort of test of the validity of the indirect comparisons, and also show more directly than the other experiments whether these mosquitoes had any colour preference. The figures are given at the bottom of Tables II and IV. It will be seen that these confirm

and Brown. These show that this mosquito has a sense of colour and a colour preference.

That such a colour preference exists is also indicated by the positive correlations of percentage of mosquitoes attracted and the x colour component, which can be considered as significant. The z correlations cannot be considered as significant, though the fact that both of them are positive may seem suggestive.

With regard to the level of significance adopted in considering these results, TIPPETT (1931) says :—

“ . . . no rigid limit of errors can be defined. Nevertheless it is conventional to regard all deviations greater than those with probabilities of 0.05 as real or *statistically significant* and we may think of those at this level as marking roughly the limits of error. The choice of 0.05 is quite arbitrary and although it is in common use many investigators prefer a severer criterion (say a probability of 0.01). . . . In adopting a level of significance of 0.05 of every 100 differences which are unreal and due only to random errors, five on the average will be judged to be real. This proportion of mistaken judgments can be reduced by using a higher level, and for important decisions that of 0.01 is used ; but on the other hand, if the criterion is too severe, differences which are important will too often be rejected as unreal. On the whole the 0.05 level is a good compromise ; but differences which are only just near the border line should be regarded doubtfully and should be tested by further observations if possible.

The statistical significance gives no information as to the magnitude or practical importance of any difference : that can only be judged by one with technical knowledge of the subject to which these methods are applied.”

In this work the 0.05 level of probability has been adopted, with the reservation as stated above, that results with a probability of error between 0.01 and 0.05 have been considered as border-line cases, and in need of confirmation.

CONCLUSIONS.

It is difficult to draw any detailed conclusions from these results. On the whole it appears that *Aedes aegypti* prefers the darker coloured materials. Of these, it prefers Black to anything else, probably because of its low reflection factor, with Red next ; and it appears to dislike Blue. Of the light colours, Light Yellowish Khaki appears to be more repellent even than White, which has a higher reflection factor. Yellow is also a repellent colour. None of these three, however, is sufficiently so to prevent mosquitoes from alighting and attempting to feed. It seems that when both attractive and unattractive colours are present the mosquitoes will go to the attractive colours for feeding, but that when all the colours present are unattractive they will still alight and feed, though possibly not in such great numbers. In terms of the trichromatic coefficients of the colours, there is a positive correlation between the percentage of mosquitoes alighting on the colour as compared with Black or White, and the x (Red) component of the colour, and a negative correlation with the y (Green, in this case combined with reflection factor) component. There is no significant correlation with the z (Blue) component.

SUMMARY.

A method is described of comparing the attractiveness of different coloured cloths as alighting surfaces for mosquitoes when about to feed. The mosquito used was *Aedes aegypti*. It showed a preference for surfaces with a low reflection factor, especially Black. Red was more attractive than several colours with a lower reflection factor. Blue was more repellent than several colours with a higher reflection factor. Light Yellowish Khaki was the most repellent colour. Yellow was also strongly repellent. The mosquitoes were not prevented from alighting by a repellent colour, but the number doing so was reduced. When no attractive colour was present the reduction was small.

Statistical analyses of the results showed that most of the differences were significant, and demonstrated conclusively that this mosquito has colour vision and a colour preference as mentioned above. Further work is necessary before any detailed statement can be made about the type of colour vision possessed by this insect.

REFERENCES.

- BRIGHENTI, DINO. (1930). Ricerche sulla attrazione esercitata dai colori sugli anofeli. *Riv. Malarial*, 9, 224.
- ECKSTEIN, F. (1920). Aus einer Feldstation für Steckmücken. *Z. angew. Ent.*, 6, 338.
- GOELDI, E. A. (1905). Os mosquitos no Para. Reuniao de gutro trabalhos sobre os mosquitos indigenas, principalmente os especies que molestam homem. *Mem. Mus. Goeldi (paraense)*, 4, 154.
- HEADLEE, T. J. (1937). Some facts underlying the attraction of mosquitoes to sources of radiant energy. *J. econ. Ent. Monacha, Wis.*, 30, 309.
- HOWLETT, F. M. (1910). The influence of temperature upon the biting of mosquitoes. *Parasitology*, 3, 477.
- Int. Comm. Photomet.* (1931).
- Meteorological Office. (1931). *Hygrometric Tables*. M.O. 265 (3rd Edition).
- REUTER, J. (1936). Orienteerend onderzoek naar de oorzaak van het gedrag van *Anopheles maculipennis* Meigen bij de voedselkenze. *Proefschr. Rijksniv. Leiden*, 118 pp.
- RUDOLFS, W. (1922). Chemotropism of mosquitoes. *Bull. N.J. Agric. Exp. stas.*, No. 367, March, 1922.
- SMITH, T. & GUILD, J. (1932). The C.I.E. colorimetric standards and their use. *Trans. opt. Soc., Lond.*, 33, 73.
- TIPPETT, L. H. C. (1931). *Methods of Statistics*, pp. 48 & 51. London: Williams & Norgate, Ltd., 1931.
- WRIGHT, W. D. (1929). A redetermination of the trichromatic mixture data. *Med. Res. Coun. Lond., Special Report Series*, No. 139.

CHYLOUS FILARIAL LYMPHATIC VARIX.

A CLINICAL PATHOLOGICAL REPORT.*

BY

PROF. F. W. O'CONNOR, M.R.C.S., L.R.C.P.

Department of Medicine, Presbyterian Hospital, Columbia University, New York City ;

AND

JAMES KNOTT, M.D.

Department of Health, St. Croix, Virgin Islands, U.S.A.

H.K., a male negro, aged 17 years, was born and lives at Christiansted, St. Croix, Virgin Islands. On October 16th, 1935, he was admitted to hospital there complaining of fever and a painful swelling in the left femoral region.

History of Condition.

At the age of 6 he first noticed this swelling. It was soft, painless and did not inconvenience him in any way ; it gradually grew larger, during the last year noticeably so. Five days before admission he had a chill in bed at night, with fever next morning, and the swelling became painful and tender for the first time. He denied ever having had any previous attacks of acute inflammation of the leg, groin glands or testicles, or any bloody or chylous urine.

* This report was found among Professor O'CONNOR's papers after his death. Dr. KNOTT has brought the man's history up to March, 1938.—C.L.

Condition on Admission.—The patient was a robust negro youth with acute rhinitis and some dental caries. Microfilariae were present in a sample of night blood. In the left groin, beneath and unattached to the skin and over the femoral ring, was a soft, convoluted mass measuring $5\frac{1}{2} \times 2\frac{3}{4}$ inches. On pressure it disappeared slowly, and collapsed tubules and enlarged nodes were then felt; it was tender but not acutely inflamed and became larger on standing or after a paroxysm of coughing, but the latter produced no local impulse. Fluid aspirated from the swelling was chylous with a few active microfilariae in it. The epitrochlear, inguinal and subinguinal glands on both sides were enlarged but caused no visible swellings. The left spermatic cord was hypertrophied and swellings caused by enlarged lymphatics were seen along its course. The external genitals were otherwise normal. Following treatment and relief of his rhinitis and extraction of two diseased teeth it was decided to excise the left femoral mass.

Operation and Further Clinical History.

The operation was performed by J.K. on 28th October, 1935, at 2.45 p.m. Anaesthesia was intraspinal, by 50 mg. procaine. An oblique incision was made over the left femoral ring; the skin was dissected well back and the mass of varicose chylous lymphatics exposed. The dissection was continued round and beneath the mass which was then severed at a pedicle emerging from the femoral ring. After excision of the diseased tissues the medial and lateral margins of the femoral ring were sutured over the pedicle and the skin incision was closed with silkworm gut. The patient made an interrupted recovery.

He remained symptom-free until May, 1937, when he had his second attack of acute lymphangitis in the left groin; onset was with a sharp chill and fever of 103° F. which lasted only 2 days. The inner aspect of the left thigh became acutely inflamed, tender and swollen, there was no swelling below the knee. He was called in for follow-up examination in March, 1938. He had been in good health and had had no more febrile attacks. He showed no evidence of the return of the chylous lymphatics; the inguinal lymph nodes on both sides had enlarged; both testes showed the effects of filariasis of the cords, they were slightly enlarged and ovoid, the cords and epididymis were partially obliterated. There was no elephantiasis of the legs or scrotum. The blood smear was still positive for microfilariae.

EXAMINATION OF THE EXCISED TISSUES (F.W.O'C.).

In chylous lymph aspirated from the mass there were a few motile microfilariae.

(a) *Macroscopic Appearance.*—Owing to some escape of fluid during operation the tissues were somewhat collapsed. The outer covering consisted mainly of fat through which could be felt some tortuous lymphatics, and many

lymphatic glands not appreciably enlarged. On incision, much fibrous tissue bound the fat to the deeper structure and held the glands together. After making several incisions to allow penetration of the fixing fluid the material was immediately placed in 10 per cent. formalin.

(b) *Histological Examination*.—The tissues were cut up into nineteen blocks and each was serially sectioned. The principal feature of all sections was extensive fibrosis containing enormously dilated and hypertrophied lymphatic vessels. In the fibrous tissue there was much infiltration with lymphocytes, while eosinophil and polymorphonuclear leucocytes were not conspicuous, in some places there was oedema of the tissues and in the outer areas extensive fat deposit. The lymph varices contained lymphocytes and *red blood cells*, in one spot a lymph thrombus was undergoing organization. One lymphatic gland was enlarged but the others not noticeably so. The capsules were much fibrosed and all sinuses very dilated, containing red blood cells and lymphocytes. Varicosities were most extensive in the central 4/5ths of the mass; near the proximal end fibrosis of the supporting tissues dominated the picture; at the more distal portion hypertrophy of the lymphatic walls was more conspicuous than dilation. There was some activity in the cortical germ centres.

Parasites.

Ten adult *Wuchereria bancrofti* were present, one male and nine females; one parasite lay in the capsule and cortex of one gland, all the others in periglandular tissues; eight were dead and degenerating while two appear to have been alive when the operation was performed; most were in the upper and middle portions of the tissue.

Living parasites.—Both living parasites were females lying free in the lumen of dilated and hypertrophied lymphatics. It is noteworthy that *parturition had not occurred*. The degree of embryonic development within each was identical. The vagina and anterior ends of the uterine tubes were crammed with extended microfilariae, behind these were coiled embryos at varying stages of development, posteriorly there were undifferentiated ova. In the containing lymphatic a few microfilariae and ova were seen, their presence there was considered to be due to needling before and after operation, or to fracture (seen in some sections) during preparation of the tissues; there was no evidence of embryos emerging from the vagina or lying in the lymphatics or gland sinuses even at a short distance from the parents. Only one or two microfilariae were seen in the vessels of the general circulation in many dozens of sections examined.

Dead Parasites.—The degree and nature of degeneration varied considerably. In two females and the solitary male only the cuticle was calcified, while the interior had undergone hyalinization; in three there was complete calcification of the worm, including the contained embryos in one; calcification

had gone so far that identification of the uterine contents was impossible; a single parasite was degenerating without calcification, it was enclosed in tubercle-like material undergoing organization, and in every section it seemed to be pressed upon by inflammatory material, and it was surrounded and invaded by many multinucleate giant cells. Round all the parasites were rings of hyalinized tissue, from which spurs of fibrous tissue invaded neighbouring regions, the whole process in each instance obliterating one or more lymphatics.

DISCUSSION.

The clinical manifestations of chylous lymphatic varix are shown to be filarial in origin, in that they are associated with advanced pathological changes in the neighbourhood of ten adult *W. bancrofti*. In previous reports (O'CONNOR and HULSE, 1932; and O'CONNOR and HULSE, 1933) there was evidence that parturition of female *W. bancrofti* is simultaneous and occurs about noon. That development in utero is simultaneous is borne out by the present study, but that parturition always occurs about noon is not upheld by the present findings, although it seems to have been imminent at the time of operation. In some previous instances microfilariae, living or degenerating, have been found in lymphatic glands in the neighbourhood of parent female *W. bancrofti*, and where such parasites were present there was marked evidence of glandular disease; in the present one, although there is extensive evidence of varicosity of the sinuses, the gland substance appears to be healthy; the very enlargement of the sinuses may therefore facilitate the passage of embryos through otherwise undamaged glands. In filariasis (where there is great variation of pathological signs, not only in different persons but in different parts of limited portions of tissue from the same person) intensive study along the present lines seems indicated by observers in various countries on all kinds of filarial material that may be available.

REFERENCES.

- O'CONNOR, F. W. & HULSE, C. R. (1932). Some pathological changes associated with *Wuchereria bancrofti* infection. *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 25, 445-454.
——— (1933). *Wuchereria bancrofti* infection—Two case reports. *Lancet*, 2, 404.

TRANSACTIONS
OF THE
ROYAL SOCIETY OF TROPICAL MEDICINE
AND HYGIENE.

VOL. XXXII. No. 2. AUGUST, 1938.

ANNUAL GENERAL MEETING

of the Society held at

Manson House, 26, Portland Place, London, W.,

on

Thursday, 30th June, 1938, at 8.15 p.m.

THE PRESIDENT

Lt.-Col. S. P. JAMES, C.M.G., M.D., F.R.S., I.M.S. (retd.)
in the Chair.

BUSINESS.

REPORT OF THE COUNCIL FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31ST MARCH, 1938.

The President presented the Annual Report of the Council, copies of which had been circulated.

Col. John Taylor proposed the adoption of the Report. This was seconded by Dr. L. Fabian Hirst and carried.

REPORT OF HON. TREASURER FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31ST MARCH, 1938.

The Hon. Treasurer (Dr. O. MARRIOTT) read his Report.

Dr. J. W. Lindsay proposed that the Hon. Treasurer's Report be adopted.

Major J. S. K. Boyd seconded the resolution and it was carried.

ELECTION OF AUDIT COMMITTEE.

Dr. VINCENT HODSON and Major J. A. Cruickshank, having expressed their willingness to serve again, were re-elected as members of the Audit Committee. Dr. W. E. COOKE was elected in place of Dr. GARROW, who had asked to be relieved of this duty.

PRESENTATION OF MANSON MEDAL.

The President : It is now my duty to present the MANSON MEDAL which, as you know, is awarded triennially for original work in any branch of either tropical medicine or tropical hygiene and is subject to no restrictions in regard to sex, age, nationality or even profession.

I am sure you will all be glad to know that on this occasion—which is the sixth since the medal was founded—our Council have decided to award it to our distinguished colleague Major-Gen. Sir LEONARD ROGERS who, as you know, was our President from 1933 to 1935 and has had, during his long professional life, one of the most brilliant careers possible to a worker in the tropics.

When I first went to India more than forty years ago, modern bacteriology was a very young science, and medical protozoology and parasitology were in their earliest infancy. But even before that time Sir LEONARD had already begun to elucidate problems in these sciences, and his later work on malaria, amoebic dysentery, snake venoms, cholera, leprosy and general pathology, has made him famous throughout the world. His example was quite wonderful in the days of pioneer medical research work in India, and his enthusiasm, industry and initiative were among the chief reasons why many men in the Indian Medical Service started a career of research. One of the greatest of his works was, in addition to his research work, the initiation and foundation of the Calcutta School of Tropical Medicine which, as you know, has been the source of very valuable research work ever since he started it. Therefore I am sure that all Fellows of our Society throughout the world will agree with me when I say that we praise and thank Sir LEONARD for the work that he has done and for the arrangements that he made to enable others to profit by the example which he set and to follow in the footsteps which he trod.

I have now much pleasure in asking him to be so good as to receive the MANSON MEDAL which our Society is honoured in presenting to him.

Sir Leonard Rogers : Mr. President, ladies and gentlemen, I regard the Medal just received from my old friend and brother officer, Colonel JAMES, as the highest award possible in tropical medicine—for the very good reason that it is awarded by those who are better able to judge this subject than any other body in the world. Its value is greatly enhanced by the fact that it is called after the Father of Tropical Medicine, whose early work on filarial infection through the bites of insects opened up an enormous new field which is still being explored successfully, and whose wonderful intuition inspired so much work through his numerous hypotheses, a number of which ultimately proved true, especially in the case of malaria. Further, it is a great honour to be admitted to the Roll of such distinguished names as those of DAVID BRUCE—who personally I regard as the greatest of British tropical medicine workers because of his work on Malta fever, the tsetse disease of cattle and sleeping sickness ; RONALD ROSS, who solving the greatest of all medical problems, went beyond MANSON's original

hypothesis and proved direct infection through the mosquito bites; and WILLIAM LEISHMAN, who solved the difficult problem of the etiology of kala-azar when other workers had failed. In that connection there is a little-known report by Sir RONALD ROSS. After he had done his malarial work with the mosquito he was sent to Assam on behalf of the Government of India to do a personal investigation in kala-azar. He declared the disease malarial, and went further to prove by mathematics that kala-azar could never be anything except malaria. Even mathematics, like Homer, may sometimes nod. Personally I look upon myself as a person of extraordinarily good fortune. As early as my third year as a medical student I had the desire to do research work, but by the time I qualified in 1891 there were exceedingly few openings for research work in this country compared with what there are now. Fortunately, two of my older brothers had entered Indian services, and my attention was drawn to that country, and in looking back I consider it extraordinarily good fortune that at that time I had no private means to tempt me to compete with my contemporaries for an appointment on the staff of my hospital. After several impatient years in military employment, I eventually obtained in Calcutta an opportunity no one will ever have again of working for 20 years as pathologist in an almost unexplored tropical field by simple clinical and pathological observations, which enabled me to do something to advance tropical medicine. Here again I was fortunate because I went to a medical college hospital where it was the custom for the pathologist to use it as a stepping stone to more lucrative clinical appointments. In due course a senior man followed this practice and gave me my opportunity; but I am afraid I did not quite play the game, because I continued my pathological researches during 20 years, and let junior men take the more lucrative appointments over my head. Strange to say, 10 years ago I was awarded by Edinburgh University the Cameron Prize, awarded internationally, in Therapeutics, and I have always regarded it as the greatest source of satisfaction that my work has been of benefit in relieving suffering and decreasing the death rate in some important tropical diseases. In this way I have been privileged to do something to lighten the white man's burden in British tropical possessions. If I may draw a lesson from my career I would say that those who are prepared to live laborious days, and make the fullest use of the talents entrusted to them, will still find in the field of tropical medicine opportunities for moulding bricks of knowledge which will find in time a place in the construction of the great temple of medical science.

ORDINARY MEETING

of the Society held after the Annual General Meeting at

Manson House, 26, Portland Place, London, W.,

on

Thursday, 30th June, 1938, at 8.45 p.m.

THE PRESIDENT

Lt.-Col. S. P. JAMES, C.M.G., M.D., F.R.S., I.M.S. (retd.)

in the Chair.

PAPER.

NUTRITIONAL MACROCYTIC ANAEMIA IN MACEDONIA. A PRELIMINARY REPORT.*

BY

N. HAMILTON FAIRLEY

AND

R. J. BROMFIELD,

Hospital for Tropical Diseases, London,

AND

Medical Division, London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine,

AND

HENRY FOY

AND

ATHENA KONDI,

League of Nations Malaria Research Laboratory, Thessaloniki.

*The expenses of this investigation were in part defrayed by a research grant from the London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
I. THE REFUGEE POPULATION IN MACEDONIA	134
II. MALARIA IN MACEDONIA	135
III. TROPICAL MACROCYTIC ANAEMIA	136
IV. NOMENCLATURE	138
V. HAEMATOLOGICAL DATA IN NUTRITIONAL MACROCYTIC ANAEMIA ASSOCIATED WITH PREGNANCY	139
1. Scope of Investigation and Methods employed	139
2. Mean Corpuscular Volume	140
3. Red Blood Corpuscles	140
4. Haemoglobin	141
5. Colour Index	141
6. Mean Corpuscular Haemoglobin	142
7. Mean Corpuscular Haemoglobin Concentration	142
8. Reticulocytes	143
9. HCl secretion in the gastric juice	144
10. Bilirubin Estimations	144
11. Price-Jones Curves	145
(a) Price-Jones Curves in Malaria, Blackwater Fever and Nutritional Macrocytic Anaemia	145
(b) Price-Jones Curves in Nutritional Macrocytic Anaemia (Haemolytic Type)	149
(1) Megalospherocytosis	150
(2) Possible artifact effect due to undue shrink- age of corpuscles	151
VI. CLINICAL DATA	152
1. Splenomegaly	152
2. Non-haemolytic Nutritional Macrocytic Anaemia... ..	153
3. Haemolytic Macrocytic Anaemia	154
(a) Subjective symptoms	156
(b) General features	156
(c) Alimentary system	156
(d) Abdominal viscera	158
(e) Cardiovascular system	158
(f) Respiratory system	158
(g) Genito-urinary system	158
(h) Central nervous system	158
(i) Temperature	159
4. Purpuric Manifestations	159
5. Bone Marrow Findings	163
(a) Red cell series	163
(b) White cell series	163
(c) Megakaryocytes	164
VII. PATHOLOGY	165
VIII. THE HAEMOLYTIC FACTOR IN NUTRITIONAL MACROCYTIC ANAEMIA ...	169
IX. TREATMENT	171
X. SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS	171

In a previous paper read before this Society, FAIRLEY and BROMFIELD (1937) pointed out that the most vivid clinical impression formed during their investigations in Macedonia had been the frequency and severity of the anaemia encountered there. Atypical clinical syndromes associated with malaria and the post-haemoglobinuric phase of blackwater fever were found to be unduly frequent. Anaemia persisted despite antimalarial treatment and iron medication, and it was ultimately demonstrated by Price-Jones curves and other methods that, in some instances at least, the anaemia was megalocytic in type. A number of pregnant women with splenomegaly and severe anaemia were also observed in the wards of the Refugee Hospital at Thessaloniki.* The first patient investigated from the haematological viewpoint during the puerperium was found to suffer from macrocytic anaemia which responded satisfactorily to large doses of campolon with a maximal reticulocytosis and good blood regeneration. At a Laboratory meeting of this Society blood films, bone marrow smears and Price-Jones curves were shown (FAIRLEY, 1937) demonstrating the characteristic features of this megalocytic anaemia associated with malaria, blackwater fever and pregnancy; the condition was regarded as falling into the category of tropical macrocytic anaemia. This year we returned to Macedonia to study the situation in more detail in conjunction with Mr. HENRY FOY and Dr. A. KONDI at the Malaria Research Laboratory, League of Nations. Most of the patients were refugees investigated in the Refugee Hospital at Thessaloniki and under these circumstances, some brief reference might at this stage be made to the conditions of life, the dietary and the incidence of malaria in the refugee population in Macedonia.

I.—THE REFUGEE POPULATION IN MACEDONIA.

BELL (1932) states that the census on the 15th and 16th May, 1928, showed that 638,253 Greek refugees from Asia Minor and elsewhere had settled in Macedonia. The refugees live mainly in villages scattered through the malarious plains and it is with this population that we are mainly concerned. The land allotted to each refugee family in the plains varies from 40 to 60 stremmata† (10 to 15 acres), and for cattle-breeding settlements in the most mountainous districts of Macedonia the area of pasturage accorded to each family is on an average some 80 to 100 stremmata (20 to 25 acres) in addition to a field.

In the refugee villages, animals are killed only once every 7 to 14 days and there are no facilities for cold storage. Our patients gave a history of eating meat once a week to once a month or more, so meat cannot be regarded as in any way forming a regular part of their diet. Amongst the poor it is eaten after long fasts, on chief Church holidays, when a farm animal sickens or a wild pig is killed. Fish is eaten by the richer peasants once or twice a week, but less often by the

* We are indebted to the Director and staff of the Refugee Hospital for placing their clinical material at our disposal.

† One stremma = 0.247 acres (approximately $\frac{1}{4}$ acre).

ordinary refugee unless his village is advantageously situated in regard to fishing facilities. Butter, eggs and chicken are too expensive for home consumption and when produced locally are marketed. Milk is mainly reserved for children and the sick. A certain amount of milk is, however, made into cheese for domestic consumption and throughout Greece, those who can afford to do so, eat yaghourt—Bulgarian sour milk. In many households milk is boiled. Bread, olives and beans are staple articles of diet, and tomatoes and preserved tomato juice are largely consumed. Both the whole fruit and the oil of olives are eaten and they constitute one of the main sources of fat. A considerable quantity of wheat is grown in Macedonia and the flour is prepared locally in the villages from whole wheat. When imported flour has to be used to reinforce the local supply, it may be either the white variety or a brown flour containing 10 to 15 per cent. bran. Amongst the refugee population with which we were working, it is probable that the bread is mainly made from whole or semi-whole meal flour, and not from white flour as was stated by FAIRLEY and BROMFIELD (1937).¹ Other sources of carbohydrate consist of macaroni and a small-grained, well-milled, white rice which is imported.

Vegetables form an important element in the diet. Broad beans are eaten dried as well as green, also lentils, split peas, onions, garlic, egg plant, pumpkin, cabbage and lettuce. Dandelion leaves and many other green-leafed plants and weeds are consumed in large quantities as vegetables; and as these provide a source of iron this is at least one of the reasons why anaemia due to iron-deficiency is rare in Macedonia. The local fruits include wild pears, melons, figs, raisins and grapes. Grapes are used for wine and are eaten both green and ripe in large quantities. A syrup is also prepared from grapes for winter use in the poor districts to replace sugar. Large numbers of oranges are imported into Macedonia, but they probably do not reach the more remote villages. Judged by European standards this dietary, though not necessarily inadequate in calorie value, appears to be poor in fat and deficient in sources of animal protein, such as meat, chicken, eggs and milk, which are so essential during growth, pregnancy and lactation.

A history of the food consumed by anaemic patients admitted to the Refugee Hospital was taken as a routine in order to gain some general impression of their dietary. The refugee family eats many communal dishes, and even the more intelligent can give little accurate information in regard to the quantity of food consumed either by themselves or by individual members of the household. To obtain quantitative data the investigator would need to live in the village, get to know the families and make house to house surveys during the preparation of food and at meal times. This was naturally quite beyond the scope of the present preliminary investigation.

II.—MALARIA IN MACEDONIA.

The malarial incidence in Macedonia as a whole is high, and as FOY and KONDI (1937) have shown blackwater fever is more prevalent than anywhere

In a previous paper read before this Society, FAIRLEY and BROMFIELD (1937) pointed out that the most vivid clinical impression formed during their investigations in Macedonia had been the frequency and severity of the anaemia encountered there. Atypical clinical syndromes associated with malaria and the post-haemoglobinuric phase of blackwater fever were found to be unduly frequent. Anaemia persisted despite antimalarial treatment and iron medication, and it was ultimately demonstrated by Price-Jones curves and other methods that, in some instances at least, the anaemia was megalocytic in type. A number of pregnant women with splenomegaly and severe anaemia were also observed in the wards of the Refugee Hospital at Thessaloniki.* The first patient investigated from the haematological viewpoint during the puerperium was found to suffer from macrocytic anaemia which responded satisfactorily to large doses of campolon with a maximal reticulocytosis and good blood regeneration. At a Laboratory meeting of this Society blood films, bone marrow smears and Price-Jones curves were shown (FAIRLEY, 1937) demonstrating the characteristic features of this megalocytic anaemia associated with malaria, blackwater fever and pregnancy; the condition was regarded as falling into the category of tropical macrocytic anaemia. This year we returned to Macedonia to study the situation in more detail in conjunction with Mr. HENRY FOY and Dr. A. KONDI at the Malaria Research Laboratory, League of Nations. Most of the patients were refugees investigated in the Refugee Hospital at Thessaloniki and under these circumstances, some brief reference might at this stage be made to the conditions of life, the dietary and the incidence of malaria in the refugee population in Macedonia.

I.—THE REFUGEE POPULATION IN MACEDONIA.

BELL (1932) states that the census on the 15th and 16th May, 1928, showed that 638,253 Greek refugees from Asia Minor and elsewhere had settled in Macedonia. The refugees live mainly in villages scattered through the malarious plains and it is with this population that we are mainly concerned. The land allotted to each refugee family in the plains varies from 40 to 60 stremmata† (10 to 15 acres), and for cattle-breeding settlements in the most mountainous districts of Macedonia the area of pasturage accorded to each family is on an average some 80 to 100 stremmata (20 to 25 acres) in addition to a field.

In the refugee villages, animals are killed only once every 7 to 14 days and there are no facilities for cold storage. Our patients gave a history of eating meat once a week to once a month or more, so meat cannot be regarded as in any way forming a regular part of their diet. Amongst the poor it is eaten after long fasts, on chief Church holidays, when a farm animal sickens or a wild pig is killed. Fish is eaten by the richer peasants once or twice a week, but less often by the

* We are indebted to the Director and staff of the Refugee Hospital for placing their clinical material at our disposal.

† One stremma = 0.247 acres (approximately $\frac{1}{4}$ acre).

ordinary refugee unless his village is advantageously situated in regard to fishing facilities. Butter, eggs and chicken are too expensive for home consumption and when produced locally are marketed. Milk is mainly reserved for children and the sick. A certain amount of milk is, however, made into cheese for domestic consumption and throughout Greece, those who can afford to do so, eat yaghourt—Bulgarian sour milk. In many households milk is boiled. Bread, olives and beans are staple articles of diet, and tomatoes and preserved tomato juice are largely consumed. Both the whole fruit and the oil of olives are eaten and they constitute one of the main sources of fat. A considerable quantity of wheat is grown in Macedonia and the flour is prepared locally in the villages from whole wheat. When imported flour has to be used to reinforce the local supply, it may be either the white variety or a brown flour containing 10 to 15 per cent. bran. Amongst the refugee population with which we were working, it is probable that the bread is mainly made from whole or semi-whole meal flour, and not from white flour as was stated by FAIRLEY and BROMFIELD (1937).³ Other sources of carbohydrate consist of macaroni and a small-grained, well-milled, white rice which is imported.

Vegetables form an important element in the diet. Broad beans are eaten dried as well as green, also lentils, split peas, onions, garlic, egg plant, pumpkin, cabbage and lettuce. Dandelion leaves and many other green-leafed plants and weeds are consumed in large quantities as vegetables; and as these provide a source of iron this is at least one of the reasons why anaemia due to iron-deficiency is rare in Macedonia. The local fruits include wild pears, melons, figs, raisins and grapes. Grapes are used for wine and are eaten both green and ripe in large quantities. A syrup is also prepared from grapes for winter use in the poor districts to replace sugar. Large numbers of oranges are imported into Macedonia, but they probably do not reach the more remote villages. Judged by European standards this dietary, though not necessarily inadequate in calorie value, appears to be poor in fat and deficient in sources of animal protein, such as meat, chicken, eggs and milk, which are so essential during growth, pregnancy and lactation.

A history of the food consumed by anaemic patients admitted to the Refugee Hospital was taken as a routine in order to gain some general impression of their dietary. The refugee family eats many communal dishes, and even the more intelligent can give little accurate information in regard to the quantity of food consumed either by themselves or by individual members of the household. To obtain quantitative data the investigator would need to live in the village, get to know the families and make house to house surveys during the preparation of food and at meal times. This was naturally quite beyond the scope of the present preliminary investigation.

II.—MALARIA IN MACEDONIA.

The malarial incidence in Macedonia as a whole is high, and as FOY and KONDI (1937) have shown blackwater fever is more prevalent than anywhere

else in the world. According to BALFOUR (1935) some areas in Macedonia have spleen rates of 97 per cent., others, such as Kastoria in the mountains in Western Macedonia, have rates as low as 3 to 8 per cent. In the city of Thessaloniki itself the rate is only 20 per cent., but in some areas just outside, it rises to from 40 to 60 per cent. The areas in which most of our patients with nutritional macrocytic anaemia lived have been very malarious. For example, ten cases came from Platy and Katerinae which have spleen rates of 70 to 90 per cent. Concerning many of the other villages it is not possible to be precise as the spleen rates have never been determined. For this purpose a special survey would be necessary. BALFOUR (1935) found that the general rate for the whole of Macedonia and Thrace in November and December, 1933, and January, 1934, was 37.9 per cent. As 1933 was an *endemic* and not an *epidemic* year for Macedonia, this figure affords some index to the general prevalence of malaria there. In epidemic years *Plasmodium falciparum* is the dominant species and the blood rate is high: in endemic years the blood rate is low, but the spleen rate may be high or low, according to the interval elapsing since the previous epidemic.

III.—TROPICAL MACROCYTIC ANAEMIA.

Tropical macrocytic anaemia has been reported from India in 1927, Malaya in 1930, West Africa in 1932 and other parts of the tropics, but despite its evident prevalence it has attracted less attention than its importance deserves.

It is especially common in pregnant women, and is generally regarded as being distinct from the "pernicious anaemia of pregnancy" occurring in temperate climates. According to WILLS (1932) the onset is gradual during the second half of pregnancy, but the final breakdown may be sudden, profound anaemia developing within a few days. As in Addisonian pernicious anaemia, many of the clinical features are directly or indirectly referable to the decrease in the number of red blood corpuscles. The tongue may be sore, but nerve changes are absent and the oxyntic cells in the stomach generally retain their power to secrete HCl. The spleen may be enlarged and fever and gastro-intestinal features may be present, but the extent to which these features develop in uncomplicated tropical macrocytic anaemia remains to be determined. The blood picture as described by WILLS (1932) is that of a megalocytic anaemia with the appearance of normoblasts and megaloblasts in peripheral blood smears, while Price-Jones curves show a shift to the right and a marked increase in variability. The reticulocyte counts are normal, the serum bilirubin is not increased and the serum calcium falls within normal limits. In the severely anaemic cases the non-protein nitrogen and blood urea are appreciably increased.

The usual course is for the patient to come into hospital in the 7th and 8th months and to have a premature labour followed either by rapid improvement, or frequently by collapse and death. In males and non-pregnant females the disease runs a more chronic course.

The oral administration of liver extract in the dosage of 600 grammes daily was found to be curative, but WILLS (1931) demonstrated in her Bombay patients that even better results followed the administration of marmite in a dosage of 30 grammes per day.

More recently a macrocytic haemolytic anaemia has been recognized in tropical patients by FAIRLEY (1934), GIGLIOLI (1936), NAPIER (1936) and others. It has been generally classified under the title "tropical macrocytic anaemia," but it differs from that disease as originally described in as much as it is associated with splenomegaly and evidences of haemolysis such as hyperbilirubinaemia, urobilinuria and bilious stools, and it often shows a variable degree of reticulocytosis.

Probably the first clear-cut recorded case of the macrocytic haemolytic type was that described by FAIRLEY (1934) before this Society. As it illustrates a number of outstanding points bearing on the present paper, reference to it at this stage is appropriate.

The patient was a Punjabi Mussulman, aged 22 years, who was very anaemic, had a hard spleen extending down to the umbilicus, haemic murmurs, râles at the bases of the lungs, a reticulocyte count which oscillated between 5 and 15 per cent. and a hyperbilirubinaemia of 4 units (indirect). Fever was present for the first 2 days in hospital: after that the course was afebrile. Investigations showed a megalocytic anaemia. R.B.C.s = 1,200,000 per c.mm.; haemoglobin = 30 per cent. (Haldane); colour index = 1.25; average corpuscular diameter = 8.6μ (halometer). Achlorhydria not responding to histamine was found. There was a history of febrile attacks since childhood and of severe malaria-like paroxysms a year or two previously, but the blood showed no malaria parasites; splenic puncture failed to reveal malaria parasites or leishmania and inoculation of citrated blood into a general paralytic did not produce malaria. Pigmented leucocytes were present in the splenic smears. The Napier formol-gel reaction was negative. No improvement followed a course of neostibosan, but after three injections of campolon (6 c.c. daily) followed by prolonged oral liver extract therapy ($= 1\frac{1}{2}$ lbs. daily), a maximal reticulocytosis of 34.5 per cent. developed on the 9th day and rapid blood regeneration followed. Thus 3,500,000 red cells per c.mm. and 60 per cent. haemoglobin were gained in 32 days.

Up to this time a provisional diagnosis of pernicious anaemia in an Indian had been made, but on repeating the fractional test meal this possibility was excluded for hyperchlorhydria was unexpectedly found. Another anomaly concerned the Price-Jones curves, in as much as the first curve (3/1/34) showed a mean diameter (M.D.) of 7.3825μ , a standard deviation (σ) of 0.752, a coefficient of variation (v) of 10.2 per cent. and a megalocytosis of only 3.0 per cent. After treatment (21/2/34) M.D. = 6.7575μ , $\sigma = 0.775$, $v = 5.6$ per cent. and megalocytosis = 0 per cent.; in fact the curve almost approximated to the ideal curve for the smallest mean diameter within normal limits. Both these curves

improved considerably without further treatment. Repeated small haemorrhages may have contributed to the reticulocytosis or the patient may have received campolon previously but no note was made about this at the time and no opportunity occurred of doing so later. For present purposes we propose to exclude these two cases from the analysis.

In the remaining thirty-five cases the average reticulocyte count made shortly after admission to hospital equalled 5.1 per cent., the minimum being 0.4 per cent. and the maximum 16 per cent. The reticulocytes in five instances were under 2 per cent. and in five others 2.0 per cent., so that in ten out of thirty-five patients prior to substitution therapy the reticulocyte count fell within normal limits.

9.—HCL SECRETION IN THE GASTRIC JUICE.

The secretory activity of the oxyntic cells was estimated in twenty-two of the patients either after an alcohol meal or the injection of histamine. In only three out of twenty-two cases was free acid noted in the fasting juice. Two other patients were given the Ewald tea and toast meal and showed HCl secretion during the fractional test meal.

Alcohol Meal.—Seven out of nine cases showed free acid $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 hour after the administration of 100 c.c. of 7 per cent. alcohol. In two cases there was achlorhydria, but, on repeating the test after histamine injections ($\frac{1}{4}$ mg.), free HCl appeared in both instances, the amount of acid being 35.5 c.c. to 41.5 c.c. N/10 HCl per cent. In the remaining seven cases the amount of free acid varied from 8 c.c. to 77 c.c. N/10 HCl per cent.

Histamine Injections.—In thirteen cases $\frac{1}{4}$ mg. of histamine (ergamine—B.W. & Co.) was injected. Free HCl appeared within half-an-hour in all instances, the amount varying from 8 c.c. to 76 c.c. N/10 HCl per cent.

In all twenty-four cases therefore the oxyntic cells were demonstrated to be capable of secreting free HCl following an adequate stimulus. The patients were all between the ages of 18 and 45 years, and this probably accounts for the notable absence of histamine-fast achlorhydria in the series. In this respect the results are very different to that observed in Addisonian pernicious anaemia.

10.—BILIRUBIN ESTIMATIONS.

(van den Bergh Reaction.)

The haemobilirubin values in the thirty-seven cases of the series were as follows :—

	Per 100 c.c.
6 cases had values of	1 mg. or less
15 „ „	1.1 — 2.0
12 „ „	2.1 — 3.0
3 „ „	3.1 — 4.0
1 „ „	4.1 — 5.0

The haemobilirubin values varied from 0.7 mg. to 4.2 mg. per 100 c.c., the average being 2.0 mg. or 5 units, estimating 1 mg. as 2.5 units. The plasma of all cases except one gave a negative immediate direct reaction, the exception being Case XXXI which yielded a doubtful immediate reaction: the urine contained traces of bile salts and bile pigments in this instance. The indirect reaction was positive, 3.5 mg. per 100 c.c.

VAUGHAN and HASLEWOOD (1938) report that in 100 healthy adults the values varied from 0.2 to 1.7 mg. per 100 c.cm., the mean value being 0.539 mg. These figures are considerably higher than have generally been recorded as normal in this country though they approximate more closely to the normal range of bilirubin values given by American observers. Differences are partly due to the different techniques adopted and partly to the exclusion or inclusion of comparatively rare and apparently healthy individuals whose plasma shows an unexpectedly high bilirubin content.

In VAUGHAN's series of healthy adults some 93 per cent. of cases had values below 0.8 mg. In the present series one case had a value of 0.7 mg., three cases of 0.8 mg., two cases of 0.9 mg., two cases of 1.1 mg., two cases of 1.2 mg., one case of 1.3 mg., one case of 1.5 mg., three cases of 1.6 mg., and two cases of 1.7 mg., the upper limit of normality according to VAUGHAN's standard; the remaining twenty cases exceeded this figure. A considerable degree of hyperbilirubinaemia was thus a very constant feature of these cases.

11.—PRICE-JONES CURVES.

The results obtained with the Price-Jones curves in nutritional macrocytic anaemia have proved somewhat anomalous. In our first Macedonian series, when measurements were made on films stained with Leishman stain and derived from cases of malaria and blackwater fever, no difficulty was experienced; but more recently, when dealing with films stained with Jenner and derived from cases of macrocytic nutritional anaemia of haemolytic type, there was often considerable divergence between the results of the mean corpuscular volume as estimated by the haematocrit and the mean diameter given by the Price-Jones curve. The two series of observations will be dealt with separately.

(a) *Price-Jones Curves in Malaria, Blackwater Fever and Nutritional Macrocytic Anaemia.*

Using Leishman stained films we have examined Price-Jones curves in three moderately anaemic patients with severe malaria at a time when parasites were present in the blood. The curves in all cases fell within the ideal curves for the smallest and largest mean diameters, the average for the series being M.D. = 7.353μ ; $\sigma = 0.520 \mu$; $v = 7.19$ per cent.; megalocytosis = 0 per cent. Two of the patients were English and living on a good diet.

In addition we have recently had an opportunity of examining an English woman (under the care of Dr. MANSON-BAHR) who was suffering from acute malarial fever and who was 5 months pregnant; M.T. parasites were present in the blood in large numbers; R.B.C.s = 2,100,000 per c.mm.; haemoglobin = 50 per cent. (Haldane); colour index = 1.2; M.C.V. = 95.2 c. μ . The urine contained a considerable quantity of urobilin, albumin and granular casts. Bilirubin = 2 units or 0.8 mg. (indirect reaction). The patient was given intravenous quinine and atebirin followed by plasmoquine, which rapidly controlled the fever and induced a maximal reticulocyte response of 12 per cent. on the 8th day followed by blood regeneration and recovery. In this case also the Price-Jones curve was normal in all respects. M.D. = 7.452 μ ; σ = 0.534 μ ; v = 7.164 per cent.; megalocytosis = 0 per cent.

We have also examined similar preparations from four different cases of blackwater fever collected on the 1st, 2nd, 3rd and 8th days respectively after haemoglobinuria had started, and data concerning them are epitomized in Table I.

TABLE I.
PRICE-JONES CURVES IN BLACKWATER FEVER.

Number.	Day of Disease.	M.D. (μ)	σ (μ)	v (per cent.).	Megalocytosis.	Microcytosis.
Case 1	1st day	7.56	0.556	7.35	0	0
Case 2	2nd day	7.54	0.68	9.1	2.6	0.4
Case 3	3rd day	7.533	0.518	6.8	0	0
Case 4	8th day	7.621	0.79	10.37	9.2	0
	26th day	7.368	0.625	8.46	0	0

The first three cases examined were from Macedonia; Case 4 was an Englishman who had contracted malaria in Africa. In this case there was increased variability of 10.37 per cent. and a megalocytosis of 9.2 per cent. on the 8th day after onset of haemoglobinuria. Reticulocytes which are known to be of larger diameter than the ordinary red corpuscles equalled 10 per cent. at this time, but some 18 days later when the reticulocytes still equalled 10 per cent. the megalocytosis had disappeared and a normal Price-Jones curve had been established. It is a reasonable assumption that the megalocytosis was in this instance directly or indirectly related to the haemolysis, but not apparently to the reticulocyte response.

In Table II are summarized the haematological findings in three patients with blackwater fever whose Price-Jones curves were of classical megalocytic type.

TABLE II.

DATA REGARDING PRICE-JONES CURVES IN CASES OF BLACKWATER FEVER AND MALARIA
COMPLICATED BY NUTRITIONAL MACROCYTIC ANAEMIA.
(MACEDONIAN SERIES NO. 1.)

Case Number.	Time of Observation after onset.	R.B.C. per c.mm.	M.C.V. (c. μ).	M.C.A.T. (μ).	Price-Jones Measurements.			
					M.D. (μ).	σ (μ).	v (Per cent.).	Megalocytosis (Per cent.).
7	3rd day	1,400,000	111.4	2.09	8.238	0.649	7.784	38.6
11*	29th day	1,550,000	130.1	2.02	9.064	0.908	10.01	72.4
	53rd day	—	—	—	6.696	0.553	8.25	0
12	53rd day	2,600,000	99.2	—	9.149	0.671	7.389	79.8

M.D. = mean corpuscular diameter ; v = coefficient of variability ; σ = standard deviation ; M.C.V. = mean corpuscular volume ; M.C.A.T. = mean corpuscular average thickness.

* This patient received campolon injections.

These three patients all developed malarial fever with parasites in the blood between the 35th and the 39th day after the onset of haemoglobinuria. Malignant tertian parasites were found in Cases 7 and 11, and benign tertian in Case 12. In both cases, where the mean corpuscular average haemoglobin was estimated, the results were within normal limits. It should also be noted that in none of them would the reticulocytosis, which follows either the haemolysis in blackwater fever or the destruction of malarial parasites by specific drug treatment, have coincided in time incidence with the days on which specimens were taken for the Price-Jones curves.

More data on Price-Jones curves in malaria, blackwater fever and nutritional macrocytic anaemia are required as the haematological factors at work are very complex, but the degree of megalocytosis as observed in these cases is too intense to have resulted from blood destruction alone. It appears far more likely that these patients were potential nutritional macrocytic anaemias, and that the erythropoietic mechanism broke down as a result of the additional strain placed on the bone marrow by the destruction of blood by malarial parasites and intravascular haemolysis, frank nutritional macrocytic anaemia supervening. The histories of the three cases are appended.

Case 7.

Male, aged 53 years, subject to chronic malaria, started shivering on 27.11.36 at 8 p.m. Black water passed 49½ hours later. Anaemia, jaundice and an enlarged spleen 2 were present. Blood pigment disappeared from the urine on 30.11.36. Next day R.B.C.s =

male with severe haemolytic megalocytic anaemia (R.B.C.s = 1,200,000 per c.mm.), and also in another male, Case XIX, with aplastic megalocytic anaemia (R.B.C.s = 880,000 per c.mm.). Two possibilities need consideration.

(1) That there might be a megalospherocytosis similar to that recently described by VAUGHAN (1937) in three out of thirty-seven cases of familial acholuric jaundice.

(2) That during fixation and staining undue shrinkage of the corpuscles was occurring owing to some inherent peculiarity of the corpuscle itself, or because of chemical defects in the stains used.

(1) *Megalospherocytosis.*

If we assume that the mean corpuscular diameter as determined by the Price-Jones curves be valid for these profound anaemias, the data in the accompanying Table III indicate that megalospherocytosis is a common occurrence and affords a basis of explanation for the peculiar haematological findings.

TABLE III (MEGALOSPHEROCYTOSIS).

DATA REGARDING PRICE-JONES CURVES AND MEAN CORPUSCULAR AVERAGE THICKNESS IN NUTRITIONAL MACROCYTIC ANAEMIA (HAEMOLYTIC TYPE).

Case Number.	R.B.C. per c.mm.	Haemoglobin (grammes per 100 c.c.).	Colour Index.	M.C.V. (μ).	M.C.A.T. (μ).	Price-Jones Curve.			
						M.D. (μ).	σ (μ).	v (Per cent.).	Megalocytosis (Per cent.).
XI	1,812,000	6.2	1.2	125	2.89	7.42	0.65	8.84	1.8
XVIII	1,774,000	6.4	1.3	113	2.5	7.594	0.839	11.05	8.4
XXII	1,028,000	3.4	1.2	122	2.64	7.67	0.685	8.93	7.2
XXVII	796,000	3.0	1.3	129	2.96	7.452	1.14	15.3	14.0
XXVIII	918,000	4.35	1.6	136	2.26	7.795	0.96	12.3	17.6
XXIX	1,252,000	5.8	1.8	127	2.94	7.421	0.685	9.23	2.6
XXXI	832,000	4.8	1.9	163	3.5	7.698	0.832	10.81	12.2
Average	1,201,000	4.85	1.47	130.7	2.81	7.58	0.827	10.92	9.1

It will be seen that the red cells averaged 1,200,000 per c.mm., the haemoglobin 4.85 grammes per 100 c.c. and the C.I. 1.47. The M.D. averaged 7.58μ , the coefficient of variability averaged 10.92 per cent., and the megalocytosis averaged 9.10 per cent. The mean corpuscular average thickness (M.C.A.T.) averaged 2.81μ .

The maximal normal value for the M.C.A.T. is 2.5μ : in only one case was a figure below this recorded, another equalled it and the remaining five exceeded it. A case appears therefore to have been established for the existence of megalospherocytosis in this series.

(2) *Possible Artifact Effect due to Undue Shrinkage of Corpuscles.*

In profound anaemia certain physical properties of blood alter. This is notably seen in the rapid sedimentation rate and tendency to rouleaux formation. Blood smears showing rouleaux formation are unsuitable for both diffraction methods and Price-Jones measurements, and under these circumstances the best index to megalocytosis is the mean corpuscular volume.

In the present series of cases certain causal observations suggested that in addition to the tendency to rouleaux formation the corpuscles might not be behaving quite normally on fixation and staining. Firstly, in a few cases where it had been possible to make reasonably suitable smears for investigation by diffraction methods (Pijper apparatus: Eve's halometer), the mean corpuscular diameter as estimated on the unstained films proved definitely higher than that obtained by the Price-Jones measurements on the stained film and approximated more closely to the M.C.V. results. Secondly, it was noted in a few of the profound anaemias, where films were available which had been simultaneously stained with Leishman and Jenner stains, that the Price-Jones curve showed more shift to the left in the Jenner stained films, and that the results given by Leishman stained films tended to approximate more closely to the anticipated results.

Fixation with methyl alcohol in the Leishman stained films was only for $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 minute, whereas there was 2 minutes contact with methyl alcohol in Jenner staining. It may be possible that shrinkage of the corpuscle is greater on this account. These observations, though disconcerting, are not sufficiently extensive for us to state that the anomalous results obtained are due to abnormal shrinkage of the corpuscle in stained films rather than to spheromegalocytosis. At the same time we are of the opinion that in these profound anaemias the greatest care must be taken in preparing suitable smears and avoiding rouleaux formation, and that more extensive and controlled observations on the effects of fixation and staining on the size of the corpuscle are necessary before the case for megalospherocytosis can be regarded as established.

The clinical features encountered in this group may be summarized as follows :—

(a) *Subjective Symptoms.*

These included lassitude, weakness, shortness of breath on effort, throbbing in the head and neck, palpitations, headache, backache, aching muscles, giddiness and syncopal attacks.

(b) *General.*

The patients were generally well nourished with blanched, strong nails and healthy teeth. The complexion was often muddy, while the pigmentation of pregnancy was frequently superadded.

The skin could be pale, a dirty, brownish-yellow colour or lemon tinted, the mucous membranes pallid, blanched white or yellow tinted, and the sclerotics white, sub-icteroid or jaundiced. Jaundice when present was invariably of haemolytic type associated with an increase in haemobilirubin in the blood. In only one case was a doubtful immediate direct van den Bergh reaction recorded; in this instance there were traces of bile salts and pigments in the urine. Purpura was by no means uncommon. Little attention appears to have been paid to this important complication by previous workers on tropical macrocytic anaemia and a separate section will be devoted to it later.

(c) *Alimentary System.*

Anorexia, epigastric discomfort, abdominal pain and flatulence after meals were frequent causes of complaint. Sore tongue was not complained of by patients seen in cool weather, though it has been described as present in tropical macrocytic anaemia by WILLS, GIGLIOLI and others, nor were the physical characters of the tongue altered. It was normal in size, a pallid grey colour and furred; the papillae were normal and ulceration was absent. In a few instances some fissuring was noted and on two occasions there was some patchy denudation of epithelium. Its normal appearance was in marked contrast to what is observed in other megalocytic anaemias such as tropical sprue and pernicious anaemia. It will be interesting to observe whether lingual features appear in the summer.

Though diarrhoea was rare the stools were frequently "bilious" in type, due to their high content in stercobilinogen. Judged by a single microscopic examination of the stools, helminthic ova and *Entamoeba histolytica* were infrequent. Ankylostome eggs were never seen. The absence of ankylostomiasis in Macedonia is no doubt one reason why microcytic hypochromic anaemia, which is one of the common types of severe anaemia in pregnancy in India, was not encountered in our series.

Fat Analysis of the Stools.—Fat globules, soap plaques and fatty acid crystals were rarely observed on microscopic examination. The average faecal fat analysis in nine consecutive cases was as follows :—

Total Fat.	Fatty Acid.	Neutral Fat.	Split Fat.	Unsplit Fat.
16.9	8.3	8.6	49.1	50.9

Eight of the nine cases had a fat content of less than 25 per cent. of the dried faeces. The lowest was 9.1 and the highest (Case XXV) 31.7 per cent.

Glucose Tolerance.—In five consecutive cases the glucose tolerance test was done employing the ferricyanide method of Folin: 50 grammes of glucose was administered in 150 c.c. of water on a fasting stomach. The findings are recorded in the accompanying Table V.

TABLE V.

GLUCOSE TOLERANCE TEST IN FIVE CASES OF NUTRITIONAL MACROCYTIC ANAEMIA.

Case.	Fasting.	$\frac{1}{2}$ hour.	1 hour.	$1\frac{1}{2}$ hours.	2 hours.	Maximal Rise.
XXV	82	128	112	109	102	46
XXVIII	94	150	134	135	120	56
XXIX	102	143	177	155	101	75
XXX	86	116	122	96	87	36
XXXI	91	141	160	150	120	69
Average	91	135	141	129	106	56

When graphed the curves all fell within normal limits and glycosuria was not observed.

Normal faecal fat values and a normal glucose tolerance in nutritional macrocytic anaemia are in marked contrast to what occurs in tropical sprue, and indicate that the absorption of fat and glucose are normal in this disease.

The clinical features encountered in this group may be summarized as follows :—

(a) *Subjective Symptoms.*

These included lassitude, weakness, shortness of breath on effort, throbbing in the head and neck, palpitations, headache, backache, aching muscles, giddiness and syncopal attacks.

(b) *General.*

The patients were generally well nourished with blanched, strong nails and healthy teeth. The complexion was often muddy, while the pigmentation of pregnancy was frequently superadded.

The skin could be pale, a dirty, brownish-yellow colour or lemon tinted, the mucous membranes pallid, blanched white or yellow tinted, and the sclerotics white, sub-icteroid or jaundiced. Jaundice when present was invariably of haemolytic type associated with an increase in haemobilirubin in the blood. In only one case was a doubtful immediate direct van den Bergh reaction recorded; in this instance there were traces of bile salts and pigments in the urine. Purpura was by no means uncommon. Little attention appears to have been paid to this important complication by previous workers on tropical macrocytic anaemia and a separate section will be devoted to it later.

(c) *Alimentary System.*

Anorexia, epigastric discomfort, abdominal pain and flatulence after meals were frequent causes of complaint. Sore tongue was not complained of by patients seen in cool weather, though it has been described as present in tropical macrocytic anaemia by WILLS, GIGLIOLI and others, nor were the physical characters of the tongue altered. It was normal in size, a pallid grey colour and furred; the papillae were normal and ulceration was absent. In a few instances some fissuring was noted and on two occasions there was some patchy denudation of epithelium. Its normal appearance was in marked contrast to what is observed in other megalocytic anaemias such as tropical sprue and pernicious anaemia. It will be interesting to observe whether lingual features appear in the summer.

Though diarrhoea was rare the stools were frequently "bilious" in type, due to their high content in stercobilinogen. Judged by a single microscopic examination of the stools, helminthic ova and *Entamoeba histolytica* were infrequent. Ankylostome eggs were never seen. The absence of ankylostomiasis in Macedonia is no doubt one reason why microcytic hypochromic anaemia, which is one of the common types of severe anaemia in pregnancy in India, was not encountered in our series.

Fat Analysis of the Stools.—Fat globules, soap plaques and fatty acid crystals were rarely observed on microscopic examination. The average faecal fat analysis in nine consecutive cases was as follows :—

Total Fat.	Fatty Acid.	Neutral Fat.	Split Fat.	Unsplit Fat.
16.9	8.3	8.6	49.1	50.9

Eight of the nine cases had a fat content of less than 25 per cent. of the dried faeces. The lowest was 9.1 and the highest (Case XXV) 31.7 per cent.

Glucose Tolerance.—In five consecutive cases the glucose tolerance test was done employing the ferricyanide method of Folin: 50 grammes of glucose was administered in 150 c.c. of water on a fasting stomach. The findings are recorded in the accompanying Table V.

TABLE V.

GLUCOSE TOLERANCE TEST IN FIVE CASES OF NUTRITIONAL MACROCYTIC ANAEMIA.

Case.	Fasting.	$\frac{1}{2}$ hour.	1 hour.	1½ hours.	2 hours.	Maximal Rise.
XXV	82	128	112	109	102	46
XXVIII	94	150	134	135	120	56
XXIX	102	143	177	155	101	75
XXX	86	115	122	96	87	36
XXXI	91	141	160	150	120	69
Average	91	135	141	129	106	56

When graphed the curves all fell within normal limits and glycosuria was not observed.

Normal faecal fat values and a normal glucose tolerance in nutritional macrocytic anaemia are in marked contrast to what occurs in tropical sprue, and indicate that the absorption of fat and glucose are normal in this disease.

(d) *Abdominal Viscera.*

The enlarged spleen was invariably very hard and not tender. The liver which was quite frequently enlarged was definitely tender. The uterus, as it enlarged upwards, was naturally displaced towards the right by the spleen, but in one patient, through upward pressure exerted by the uterus, the spleen had been bent almost double, its lower pole touching the under surface of the liver.

(e) *Cardiovascular System.*

The heart was sometimes dilated and the apex beat occasionally displaced upwards and outwards by pressure from below. Haemic and other cardiac murmurs were common. Signs of decompensation such as jugular engorgement and pulsation, congested liver, râles at the bases of the lungs and oedema of dependent parts were frequent. The pulse was not infrequently rapid, especially on slight exertion. Considering the degree of anaemia both the systolic and diastolic blood pressure were unexpectedly well sustained in the pregnant cases, hypotension being found as a rule only in the terminal phase in gravely ill patients.

(f) *Respiratory System.*

Dyspnoea on exertion was very common and cough, either dry or with muco-purulent expectoration, not infrequent. Occasionally there was huskiness or actual loss of the voice. The lungs often showed basal congestion and sometimes were definitely compressed by the upward displacement of the diaphragm. Both atelectasis and bronchopneumonia were observed as complications in our series.

(g) *Genito-Urinary System.*

Considering our patients were mainly pregnant females the incidence of genito-urinary complications was not excessive. Pyelitis was not unduly frequent. Urobilinuria was the outstanding feature on urinary analysis. Albuminuria was common, but casts were rarely found. The blood urea in thirteen cases averaged 77 mg. per 100 c.c., the minimum value being 40 and the maximum 109 mg. per 100 c.c. The increase was probably due to increased blood destruction rather than to urea retention by poorly functioning kidneys. Renal function generally appeared satisfactory and no distinctive lesions were noted at autopsy in two instances.

(h) *Central Nervous System.*

No evidence was obtained of sub-acute combined degeneration of the cord or of definite neuritis. Pains in the limbs were frequently complained of, but these appeared to be of muscular and not neuritic origin. Tenderness

of the calves was unusual and the knee jerks were generally unaltered; in a few cases they were increased, in two cases decreased and in two instances they were not elicited. Ataxia and evidence of pyramidal tract involvement were not observed.

(i) *Temperature.*

No clinical survey would be complete without reference to the temperature, observations on which were recorded in all cases. Out of thirty-five charts, available for analysis at the moment, twenty-four were completely normal or showed only a slight temperature (not exceeding 100.4° F.) for a day or two after admission, without indicating any significant rise during the remaining period of the time in hospital. Rises in temperature were generally traceable to intercurrent disease or some complication such as a febrile reaction following an intramuscular or intravenous injection, a respiratory infection such as bronchitis or bronchopneumonia, pyelitis, or childbirth with its associated dangers of uterine or pelvic sepsis, mastitis, etc. Our patients were practically all subjects of severe chronic malaria, yet fever due to recurrent malaria was surprisingly uncommon. Primary infections were not occurring during the winter months when these observations were made. In hospital, cases with fever responding to quinine or atebryn were rarely encountered, and on admission parasites were absent from the peripheral blood and marrow smears in the vast majority of cases.

The conclusion reached was that as a rule cases of nutritional macrocytic anaemia, whether of haemolytic or non-haemolytic type, ran an apyrexial course. Fever was generally traceable to the complications mentioned, but in a few patients a prolonged and unexplained remittant temperature was encountered in the absence of demonstrable complications.

4 PURPURIC MANIFESTATIONS.

Purpuric manifestations are by no means uncommon in nutritional macrocytic anaemia in Macedonia, and occurred in approximately 25 per cent. of our cases. The most common lesions were petechial eruptions involving the skin of the limbs and trunk, epistaxis and bleeding from the gums. Retinal haemorrhages occurred as well as bleeding from the mucous membranes. In our series, melaena, haematuria and uterine haemorrhage were encountered. Haemorrhages from the mucous membranes are always of grave prognostic significance. Not infrequently the purpuric manifestations are an obviously late complication, but in other cases they may so dominate the clinical picture that purpura is regarded as the primary disease. In Macedonia it is generally considered to be of scorbutic type due to vitamin C deficiency, though the evidence on which this view is based appears somewhat vague. Our enquiries certainly suggest that the diets which these patients were having—especially

throughout the summer months—could not be deficient in vitamin C, and we decided to investigate the platelet count to see if there was a thrombocytopaenia. For this purpose, the technique of CRANMER and BANNERMAN (1930) was used. The normal figure for platelets varies between 250,000 to 500,000 per c.mm. In two extremely interesting cases of aplastic anaemia, following the injection of neosalvarsan for alleged syphilis, purpuric lesions were present.

TABLE VI.

PLATELET COUNTS AND PURPURIC MANIFESTATIONS IN NUTRITIONAL MACROCYTIC ANAEMIA OF NON-HAEMOLYTIC AND HAEMOLYTIC TYPES.

Case Number.	R.B.C.s per c.mm.	M.C.V. (c. μ).	Leucocytes per c.mm.	Platelets per c.mm.	Purpuric Manifestations.
XX	1,422,000	128	3,300	46,200	Nil
XXI	1,190,000	136	4,370	57,100	Nil
XXII	1,086,000	122	2,500	54,300	Nose bleeding
XXIV	698,000	98.5 (127)	1,210	17,100	Skin petechiae. Nose bleeding.
XXVII	796,000	129	8,570	89,850	Nil
XXVIII	995,000	136	5,900	99,500	Nil
XXIX	1,252,000	127	4,040	123,000	Nil
XVI	1,210,000	101.8	—	66,500	Nil
XXX	1,022,000	114	9,440	48,200	Nose bleeding
XXXII	710,000	114	3,920	49,700	Nil
XXXIV	1,285,000	152	2,200	163,000	Nil
XXXVI	1,760,000	100	1,860	5,400	Skin petechiae. Gums and mouth bleeding.
XXXVII	1,580,000	113	2,000	95,000	Nil
XXXVIII	610,000	106	4,820	21,360	Petechial hæ- morrhages
Average	1,115,000	119.8	4,164	66,915	—

Both were refugees living on a diet poor in animal protein and fat. One case, already referred to as of megalocytic type, had an M.C.V. = $131\text{ c.}\mu$; R.B.C.s = 530,000 per c.mm.; leucocytes = 5,320 per c.mm.; reticulocytes = 0.1 per cent.; platelets = 11,660 per c.mm. The gums bled, dental sepsis was marked, the blood clotted in 10 minutes but showed no evidence of retraction after 24 hours. Hess's test was positive. The other case, a non-pregnant female, had a red cell count of 480,000 per c.mm.; leucocytes = 2,060 per c.mm.; platelets = 6,750 per c.mm. There were widespread petechial eruptions in the skin and severe uterine haemorrhage. Hess's test was positive. The patient died before more detailed investigations could be carried out. In both cases the red, watery fluid aspirated by sternal puncture was very striking to the naked eye, and corresponded microscopically to the marked decrease in cellular elements generally and to the almost complete absence of the more primitive cell types including the megaloblasts and megakaryocytes.

In fourteen cases of nutritional macrocytic anaemia the platelet counts varied from 5,400 to 163,000 per c.mm. The individual figures are given in Table VI.

The average for the fourteen cases is given in Table VI, but as the cases were to some extent selected, it is better to deal separately with those showing purpura and those without purpura.

For the five cases showing purpuric manifestations the average R.B.C.s = 1,035,000 per c.mm., the average M.C.V. = $108.1\text{ c.}\mu$, the average leucocytes = 4,000 per c.mm., and the average platelet count = 29,270 per c.mm.

In both the non-purpuric and the purpuric group the platelet counts were markedly reduced, and the data available definitely established the existence in these nutritional macrocytic cases of a thrombocytopaenia, which has for many years been recognized as the basis of the purpuric manifestations in pernicious anaemia.

In pernicious anaemia, prior to the introduction of liver extract, purpuric manifestations associated with a low platelet count were common. Thus CABOT (1927) states that 153 out of 647 or 23 per cent. of the American cases showed gross haemorrhages, while an even larger proportion of foreign cases, i.e., 29 per cent. did so. Similar purpuric manifestations such as skin petechiae and retinal haemorrhages associated with thrombocytopaenia sometimes occur in tropical sprue, and, as will be seen in the next section, it appears highly probable that the explanation of purpura in these three diseases lies in the bone marrow itself. The frequency of leucopaenia in this series (Table VI) should be noted, the average count equalling 4,160 leucocytes per c.mm., the minimum being 1,210 per c.mm., and the maximum 9,440 per c.mm. The differential count, unlike that of pernicious anaemia, tends to show a slight shift to the left. When patients are receiving injections of liver extract, this tendency may be accentuated. The leucopaenia may then be replaced by a leucocytosis and there may also be a marked increase in erythroblasts and normoblasts in the peripheral

blood. As many as 66 nucleated red cells per 100 leucocytes were noted in one of our cases (Case XXXI). The erythroblasts do not appear to haemolyse with the same ease as red cells, and may introduce a fallacy into the total leucocyte count. The following case may be cited as typical of the purpuric group and is of special interest on account of the satisfactory response to blood transfusion and intensive campolon therapy.

Case XXIV.

Female, aged 38 years old, ten previous pregnancies; $8\frac{1}{2}$ months pregnant.

History.

1. Malaria.—Much malaria both in the past and recently.

2. Diet.—Practically never had meat, chicken, fish or milk. She might have had an egg two or three times a week. Her main diet consisted of bread, rice, beans, olive oil, vegetables of every kind, many tomatoes and much fruit including prunes, apricots, grapes and pears, but not oranges.

3. Symptoms.—She complained of weakness, headache, aching and burning in the limbs, backache, dyspnoea and a dry, hot mouth. For the last month she had been subject to attacks of palpitation and giddiness and had twice fainted. Epistaxis had been troublesome.

Physical Examination. A sweating, pale yellow skin showing a widespread petechial eruption on the arms, legs and trunk; tongue pale and somewhat fissured; teeth mainly missing; nails pale but strong. Engorged cervical veins; pulsation in neck. Heart: systolic bruit at both base and apex, the latter conducted into axilla. Apex beat 4 inches from nipple line. Blood pressure — S/D = 110/56. The liver was tender and enlarged, the lower edge being palpable 2 inches below the costal margin. Spleen 1. Uterus enlarged to just below the ensiform cartilage. Central nervous system—normal. Knee jerks—elicited only on reinforcement.

Laboratory Investigations (27.2.38).—R.B.C.s = 712,000 per c.mm.; haemoglobin = 2.8 gramme per 100 c.c.; C.I. = 1.4; M.C.V. = 98.5 c. μ ; reticulocytes = 0.4 per cent.; leucocytes = 1,210 per c.mm.; bilirubin = 2.1 mg. per 100 c.c. (indirect).

28.2.38.—Epistaxis was troublesome. R.B.C.s = 698,000 per c.mm.; coagulation time = $14\frac{1}{2}$ minutes; platelets = 17,100 per c.mm.

The patient was desperately ill and campolon injections, 8 c.c. daily, were started.

1.3.38.—Reticulocytes = 0.2 per cent. Condition grave. Campolon (8 c.c.) injected and transfusion of 550 c.c. of blood given at 8 p.m.

2.3.38.—Vastly improved as a result of transfusion; 8 c.c. campolon injected. Reticulocytes = 0.6 per cent. For the next 3 days 6 c.c. of campolon were given and on 5.3.38, i.e., on the 6th day, the reticulocyte count rose to 40 per cent.; next day 4 c.c. of campolon were injected and the patient was needlessly hurried to the Maternity Hospital to have her baby.

13.3.38.—She returned to the Refugee Hospital and after doing so her baby was born at midnight.

14.3.38.—Patient stood her labour well. R.B.C.s = 1,293,000 per c.mm.; haemoglobin = 5 grammes; C.I. = 1.3; M.C.V. = 127 c. μ ; leucocytes = 14,200 per c.mm.; bilirubin = 0.9 mg. per 100 c.c.; platelets = 155,900 per c.mm. Later she developed uterine sepsis which responded to prontosil. The baby was apparently normal and the R.B.C.s = 5,600,000 per c.mm.

Comment.—There can be little doubt that blood transfusion and massive campolon injections were life-saving measures in this instance. The count rose from 698,000 to 1,293,000 per c.mm. in 14 days, the platelets from 17,100 to 155,900 per c.mm. in the same period while purpuric manifestations stopped entirely.

The observation that the infant's corpuscles equalled 5,600,000 per c.mm. at a time when the mother's count was 1,293,000 per c.mm. is of interest. Even higher counts were found in two other babies. In the second the R.B.C.s = 6,980,000 per c.mm. at a time when the mother's count = 922,000 per c.mm., and in the third the R.B.C.s = 6,730,000 at a time when the mother's count = 1,145,000 per c.mm. The findings suggest that either there is some selective distribution of the necessary haemopoietic factor to the developing foetus, or that, owing to the more primitive and megaloblastic nature of foetal marrow, a decrease or lack of this factor has not the same importance as in the adult.

5. BONE MARROW FINDINGS.

(STERNAL PUNCTURE.)

Specimens were obtained as a routine by sternal puncture shortly after admission. Smears and not imprint impressions were made; they were subsequently stained by Leishman for 2 minutes followed by 1/10 Giemsa for 10 minutes.

In the nutritional macrocytic group certain variations in the microscopic picture of the marrow were observed, and, though all were hyperplastic, some marrows were more frankly hyperplastic than others. In this regard the limitations of examining specimens of marrow derived from one site at one particular time must be remembered. The microscopical features are discussed below.

(a) *Red cell series.*

There was a general hyperplasia of the myeloid cells with increase in the activity and number of the haemocyto blasts, promegaloblasts and proerythroblasts. Erythroblasts in different stages of development were evident and basophilic and polychromatic megaloblasts, but not orthochromatic megaloblasts, were usually demonstrable. Ripening sufficient to produce a really pink cytoplasm in a cell with a finely stippled nucleus was a rarity; the nucleus in cells with this degree of ripening almost invariably showed clumping of the reticulum.

Mitosis was much in evidence. The findings at times were indicative of both a megaloblastic and a normoblastic type of erythropoiesis, and suggested that failure of maturation of the megaloblast only accounted for part of the pathological changes and abnormal activity observed in the red cell series. As suggested later, the effect of coincident blood destruction with its superadded stimulus to erythropoiesis has also to be taken into account.

(b) *White cell series.*

A very striking feature was the presence of atypical and pathological precursors of the neutrophil series, showing to a variable degree precocious nuclear

pressure—SD = 108/65. The plasma was golden brown in colour and contained oxyhaemoglobin (37.0 mg. per 100 c.c.), pseudo-methaemoglobin (extinction coefficient = 3) and bilirubin (5 units). Blood urea = 244 mg. per 100 c.c.

A catheter was passed at 8 a.m., and again at 3 p.m., and on the last occasion a few c.c. of dark red urine were obtained. It was acid in reaction and contained 21.0 mg. per 100 c.c. of oxyhaemoglobin and 226 mg. per 100 c.c. of methaemoglobin. Much urobilin and a few granular casts were also present.

COMMENT.—We were subsequently informed that the patient died with anuria and malaria on 1.1.37, some 10 days from the onset of haemoglobinuria.

APPENDIX II.

ANAEMIA.

The other aspect of the investigation concerns the haematological findings which will form the subject of a subsequent paper. In the meantime, passing reference to it might not be out of place.

Our most vivid clinical impression of the hospital population in Salonika and that of adjacent Macedonian villages was the frequency and severity of the anaemia encountered there. Similarly, the outstanding differences in Macedonian patients with blackwater fever compared with those of our London series was the persistence of anaemia due to sluggish blood regeneration.

Atypical clinical syndromes in the post-haemoglobinuric phase were unduly frequent and it was only near the end of the investigations that we realised such patients presented a megalocytic blood picture.

A number of pregnant women with splenomegaly and severe anaemia were in the wards of the Refugee Hospital at Salonika. The first case investigated from this viewpoint proved to be an example of tropical macrocytic anaemia.

After returning to London, and working out the Price-Jones curves and bone marrow findings in material collected from cases of malaria and blackwater fever, the widespread distribution of this nutritional deficiency became even more apparent.

In order to understand conditions of life in Macedonia it is necessary to remember that over 700,000 refugees from Asia Minor and elsewhere have immigrated there during the past 15 years and been settled in villages scattered through different parts of the country, many of which are highly malarious. Economically, conditions are hard, poverty is rife, diet and nutrition defective. Mr. H. Foy and Dr. KONDI inform us that white flour is widely used for bread-making and that red meat and eggs are rarely consumed. The rice in common usage is small-grained and well milled and all the available data indicate that there is a deplorable deficiency in foods containing extrinsic factor.

Our observations on this side-line are naturally incomplete, but as tropical macrocytic anaemia has never previously been recognized in Salonika and as the disease is curable by marmite and preventible by correct dietary, the problem exceeds in practical importance even that of blackwater fever and urgently requires attention.

DISCUSSION.

The President (Col. S. P. JAMES) : We have heard these two most interesting papers and I now propose to ask you to discuss them. Before I do so I would like to say that before I left Cambridge this morning I had a word or two with Professor KEILIN on the subject of Dr. HAMILTON FAIRLEY's paper, and he expressed his great regret that he could not be here to-night to speak on it himself. He considers that the discovery described is exceedingly interesting and important, and he said that if on any future occasion we should discuss the subject of haemoglobin in our Society he would be most pleased to be invited to attend. He thought it would be interesting if Dr. FAIRLEY would record the percentage of laked blood which is converted into pseudo-methaemoglobin and if he would give further particulars of conditions other than blackwater fever in which this new pigment is formed. The papers are now open for discussion.

Sir Rickard Christophers : Those who have investigated blackwater fever have always been met by two great difficulties: the first is the difficulty of getting cases, the second is, having got the cases, to get anything new about blackwater fever out of them. The paper by Mr. Foy and Dr. Kondi seems to me, apart from anything else, to have a very important bearing upon the first of these difficulties. In the tropics blackwater fever usually occurs amongst a scattered European population living under very primitive conditions where the means of communication are difficult. The result is that cases really suitable for investigation are hard to obtain. At a time when people in what was then British Central Africa were much concerned about the prevalence of blackwater fever, Professor STEPHENS and myself were able to get only some five or six cases in as many months; and when with Dr. BENTLEY, in Assam, we were about 18 months in getting together some twenty-three cases which we were able to investigate at all fully. To hear Mr. FOY speaking of 400 cases is something quite extraordinary in this disease. One had heard of very large numbers of cases described by the Greek physicians in that country, but one could not help wondering whether these could really be the same disease as blackwater fever in the tropics. Mr. FOY to-night has quite clearly settled this point. This great prevalence of blackwater fever in Greece is an extremely important fact about the disease. Mr. FOY's figures are very interesting, especially his table giving the monthly number of malaria and blackwater fever cases. I am afraid it would take too long to discuss these at all adequately. There is one question I would like to ask Mr. FOY in reference to the proof of his paper, *viz.*, whether in Table II, where he gives a column designated "Percentage of Malaria that are Blackwater Fever," this column is not the relation of total admissions of malaria to admissions for blackwater fever. I presume this is so. I ask because it would be very interesting to know what was the proportion of blackwater fever cases occurring in patients admitted for malaria as against

that in patients admitted for other conditions. Possibly such figures are not available, but if they were they might give confirmation to the view that blackwater fever is dependent on previous malarial infection.

Dr. FAIRLEY and Mr. BROMFIELD's paper records quite new facts about the disease. These authors for some years now have been working systematically in the collection of biochemical data regarding blackwater fever. I do not think I shall be far wrong in saying that for the last 20 years theirs has been almost the only work adding anything really new to what is known of the essential character of this disease. Nevertheless, in spite of its interest and importance in understanding some features in the disease the new pigment they have described is like any other product of red cell destruction in blackwater fever. It shows evidence of destruction of the red cells, but does not directly touch the fundamental question of the real cause of blackwater, apart that is from the fact now almost universally recognised that it is the result of long, or comparatively long, pre-existing malaria.

It is perhaps not uncommon to think of blackwater as a very interesting disease, but not really one of major importance. This, in my opinion, is wrong. Probably to the European nations blackwater fever is economically the most important of all tropical diseases. It is this disease which has given Africa the name of "The White Man's Grave." It is the disease of which people in many parts of the world are most afraid, that prevents the colonization of new areas, and prevents the success of many commercial and other projects. There is therefore all the greater need that we should really try to arrive at the causation of this condition.

Professor Warrington Yorke: I have always been extremely interested in blackwater fever, partly, I suppose, because nobody who is concerned with the study of tropical medicine can fail to be impressed with its dramatic onset and course, and partly because it was with the object of endeavouring to find out something of the mechanism of the disease that I first went to Central Africa with Dr. BARRATT 30 years ago. Unfortunately, of later years other interests and other duties have prevented my working on the disease; but I have turned to it from time to time in a dilatory sort of way, and it has fallen to my lot to review for the *Tropical Diseases Bulletin* all the papers published on the subject during the last 25 years. When one goes through that lengthy list one cannot fail to be impressed with the number of them that relate to the treatment of the disease. The various writers advocate some particular measure of their own, for which they claim outstanding success. But a few years ago I took the trouble to go through the figures relating to blackwater fever in one of our African dependencies—Southern Rhodesia, I think—from 1914 to 1928, and I found that although the fatality rate varied greatly from year to year it showed no general tendency to decline during the 15 years in question. The ordinary simple person, like myself, can only conclude from this that the treatment of the disease

has not improved very much during that period. But how could it improve? We have learned practically nothing of the disease during the last 25 or 30 years.

I am able to go back, I think, to the state of knowledge, or ignorance, that existed in 1907, and I remember that the view, which found most favour, of the mechanism of the most important sign, haemoglobinuria, was that of PLEHN, who said that the haemoglobin in the urine came from haemorrhage into the kidneys, and that the red cells were destroyed in the tubules of the kidneys. There are still people who support that view, but it does not receive general favour. I remember that Dr. BARRATT and I insisted that haemoglobinuria was consequential and dependent on haemoglobinaemia; and CHRISTOPHERS and BENTLEY, about the same time, pointed out the same fact. We insisted that if knowledge on the mechanism of this disease was to advance we must introduce quantitative methods into our examinations. I think Dr. HAMILTON FAIRLEY and later workers have fully confirmed that view, and Dr. FAIRLEY has gone further because he has explained a phenomenon which was very puzzling to me, and, I think, to all the early workers, and that is, Why is the oxyhaemoglobin in the plasma so small in amount? He has explained to-night why that is the case. I have the greatest admiration for the work of Dr. Fairley and Mr. Foy on this disease, but there is still so much to be done. I think there is no doubt at all that in blackwater fever the haemolysis is due to a sudden and catastrophic crisis, or to a series of such crises, somewhere in the circulation; but, as Sir RICKARD CHRISTOPHERS has pointed out, nobody knows what precipitates this crisis, and that, after all, is the essence of the whole thing; and nobody knows where the crisis occurs, whether in the general circulation or in some backwater of the circulation.

There are one or two other points to which I would like to refer. Why is it that in diseases like *Babesia* infection, for example, and in paroxysmal haemoglobinuria, there is so much free oxyhaemoglobin in the plasma, whilst in blackwater fever, where the haemolysis is at least as great, in many cases far greater, you can find very little oxyhaemoglobin? I wonder whether the relative deficiency of oxyhaemoglobinaemia in blackwater fever is bound up in some way with a proliferation of the reticulo-endothelium due to antecedent malaria: I do not know, and I do not think anybody else knows. It is common knowledge, of course, that the main cause of death in this disease is suppression of urine and uraemia. As Dr. FAIRLEY has pointed out, NAUSS and I investigated this question experimentally in 1911. We reached certain conclusions, and they have been confirmed by Dr. FAIRLEY and others. It is a curious fact that only 10 per cent. at the most—sometimes much less—of the destroyed blood is eliminated through the kidneys. Dr. FAIRLEY has offered an explanation of that, and possibly he is correct. It is interesting to note that the same fact—that only 10 per cent. is eliminated from the kidneys—is seen when you introduce a solution of its own haemoglobin into the circulation of the rabbit. In paroxysmal haemoglobinuria not more than 10 per cent. of the free haemoglobin

in the plasma gets out through the kidneys, and the same applies to *Babesia* infections. The manner of the escape of the haemoglobin from the plasma into the urine is, I think, of the greatest importance. NAUSS and I produced what, to our minds, was very weighty evidence that haemoglobin is actually secreted into the urine through the epithelium of the convoluted tubules, and that this fact played a considerable rôle in the degenerative changes leading up to suppression of urine. I should be interested to hear Dr. FAIRLEY's view on the matter. I still believe that it is this overwork of the renal epithelium that is partly responsible for the degeneration which occurs and which aids in the suppression of urine.

Sir RICKARD CHRISTOPHERS has drawn attention to what has always been one of the greatest difficulties in investigating this disease, namely, that of getting together a sufficient number of cases in a sufficiently short time and within a small enough area. Sir RICKARD CHRISTOPHERS has told us of the number of cases he encountered when he was in Nyasaland. When BARRATT and I were there a few years after CHRISTOPHERS we saw, in 18 to 20 months, fewer cases than FAIRLEY has seen in Macedonia in 6 short weeks. I quite agree with all that Sir RICKARD CHRISTOPHERS said about the importance of this disease to the European in the tropics. It is certainly one of the more important tropical diseases, not merely because of its death-rate, which is considerable, but also because of the demoralization which it produces in the patient, and of the dread of it induced in all people who suffer from frequent attacks of malaria. The problems which the investigation of blackwater fever presents are certainly complicated ; but if they were properly attacked by an adequate team of workers there is no reason, in my judgment, why they should not be solved. I hope, therefore, that every encouragement will be given to Dr. FAIRLEY and Mr. FOY to prosecute their studies in this part of the world, which is so peculiarly adapted for that purpose.

Dr. Gilles de Kock (Onderstepoort, South Africa) : I am very pleased to have been present to listen to the papers and the discussion to-night. I would like to bring to your notice observations which have been made at the Onderstepoort Laboratory, South Africa, in respect of a disease in sheep characterized by haemoglobinaemia and methaemoglobinaemia. We have carried out haematological as well as chemical and pathological studies. The aetiology of the disease is still obscure. So far, we are not able to account for the sudden and tremendous destruction of red cells in the circulation, accompanied by an excretion of their broken down pigments into the urine. Spectroscopically we also identified methaemoglobin, but in view of Dr. FAIRLEY's investigations, this whole matter will be reopened. The sudden extensive haemolysis seems to be associated with a change of environment and at the present moment our views are that the condition may be associated with some nutritional or dietetic factor. The pathology of the liver reveals very interesting pigment cells and we are of the

opinion that these cells are probably not reticulo-endothelial cells, but so-called reticulum cells (?). This pigment is not found in the sinus cells, but in the cells of the lymph follicle of the lymph glands. In conjunction with Dr. REMINGTON, micro-chemical tests have been carried out to identify the nature of the pigment in these cells. It is insoluble in absolute alcohol and stains intensely with sudan III. In the liver these pigment cells are associated with an interstitial hepatitis and their presence in this position makes it possible for us to arrive at a diagnosis. The literature of blackwater fever has been carefully scrutinized to ascertain whether anything of this nature has been described.

This haemoglobinaemia and methaemoglobinaemia in the sheep seems to be associated with an increase of copper content in the liver substance. According to preliminary investigations, the clinical healthy sheep shows about 10 mgm. per 100 grammes of liver substance, whereas in this disease this amount has been greatly exceeded. What is the significance of the copper in this breaking down process of haemoglobin and in what relation does it stand to copper poisoning which seems to produce more or less a similar pathological picture? In the field we were, however, not able to attribute this enzootic methaemoglobinaemia to copper poisoning.

The deliberations and activities of your Society are being very closely followed by us and your reports are always read with a tremendous amount of interest.

Dr. C. C. Chesterman : May I ask Mr. Foy three questions? First, does he consider infection with quartan malaria gives some degree of immunity from blackwater fever? Secondly, are we to understand that he considers that infection with *Plasmodium vivax* has some causal relationship to blackwater fever? In view of the fact that parasites often disappear during blackwater fever (as he has noted himself) and that *P. falciparum* probably disappears more readily than *P. vivax*, it makes one wonder whether he was not dealing with mixed infection. Thirdly, does he consider the alkaline treatment for blackwater fever is now quite defunct?

Major J. S. K. Boyd : Dr. Foy said that *P. vivax* seemed to be more commonly associated with blackwater fever than *P. falciparum*. I have had considerable experience of malaria parasites in Macedonia and the more that experience accumulated the more I was impressed by the number of mixed cases; in fact every case was a potential one of mixed infection. I am talking of the state of affairs among British troops during the War. Although one form of the parasite may be prevalent in the peripheral blood at the time when blackwater fever occurs, there can be little doubt that all the native population has been infected with both forms at one time or another. Therefore, if sensitization with the malignant parasite is held to play any part in the aetiology of blackwater fever, it may safely be assumed that this factor is universally present in these Macedonian cases.

Mr. H. Foy (in reply) : In reply to Sir RICKARD CHRISTOPHERS, the heading mentioned by him refers to the ratio of blackwater fever to malaria (*i.e.* $\frac{B}{M}$) and not to the number of blackwater fever cases occurring in patients admitted for malaria.

Dr. CHESTERMAN asked if infection with *malariae* may give some degree of immunity to blackwater fever. This is difficult to answer. There are villages in Macedonia which we have had under observation for the last 6 years, where originally *falciparum* formed 100 per cent. of the positives (spleen rate 100 per cent. ; parasite rate 50 per cent.) but which latterly have shown a remarkable increase in quartan infection (80 per cent. in one year were quartan) and during the whole period only three cases of blackwater fever occurred. In contrast we have another village of the same size in the Peloponessus where the spleen and blood rates were only about half that of our Macedonian village, and quartan much rarer, but in the same period twenty-three cases of blackwater fever occurred. I should add that in the former village the population was 100 per cent. refugee, whilst in the latter it was 100 per cent. indigenous. We might further add in this connection that our figures show that there appears to have been an increase in *malariae* during the last 5 years or so.

Yes, I think there is most probably some relationship between blackwater fever and *vivax*, but, as Major BOYD has pointed out, this does not exclude previous sensitization with *falciparum*.

I think it quite likely that the proportion of mixed infection may have been higher than that actually found by us, if it is assumed that *falciparum* disappears more readily from the peripheral blood than *vivax*. On this point we would like to add that so far as our experience goes *falciparum* strains in Macedonia do not appear to be more sensitive than *vivax* to quinine.

I think that the alkaline treatment of blackwater fever is by no means defunct, but Dr. FAIRLEY will deal more fully with that point in his reply.

Major BOYD's question with regard to the relative frequency of *vivax* and *falciparum* in blackwater fever cases can only be answered satisfactorily in cases where the frequency distribution of the species of parasites in the general population is known. The greater proportion of our blackwater fever cases that had *falciparum* in their blood can be accounted for by the greater abundance of this species in the population at large. Mixed infections are doubtless a very important factor, and as Major BOYD has said it is not impossible that the population has at some time or other been infected with both *falciparum* and *vivax*, so that previous sensitization with *falciparum* cannot be ruled out in the Macedonia blackwater fever cases.

As regards other questions which have been asked the answers to these will be found in the complete paper to be published in the TRANSACTIONS.

Dr. Hamilton Fairley (in reply) : I will attempt to deal briefly with some of the questions which have been asked. I agree with Sir RICKARD CHRISTOPHERS in regard to the aetiology of blackwater fever. Our paper to-night illuminates the mechanism at work after the haemolysis has started, but has nothing to do with the fundamental cause of the haemolysis ; indeed, it completely eliminates the theory we put forward 2 years ago regarding its cause. When we know the cause of haemolysis in blackwater fever we shall know practically everything we want to know. I do not altogether share Prof. WARRINGTON YORKE's scepticism about our inability to do anything towards saving the lives of patients with blackwater fever. The work we have done in Macedonia and in London shows clearly one type of case associated with polyuria and adequately functioning kidneys in which there is prolonged haemolysis, and in which repeated blood transfusion saves life. Anyone who goes into this question on a more extensive scale simultaneously collecting adequate clinical, haematological and biochemical data, will be adding a very important chapter to the treatment of this disease. We saw cases die in Macedonia which we felt certain, from our experience in London, could have been saved by repeated transfusions. They died of anaemia. Their kidneys were secreting well. It would be a pity if anything said by Professor YORKE to-night were to prevent any of you who are going out to the tropics transfusing such cases. I also think alkalization of the urine is rational therapy in blackwater fever. Our work on pseudo-methaemoglobinaemia supports the experimental work of BAKER and DODDS in this connection since it shows there is no methaemoglobin in the blood. If the urine is made alkaline sufficiently early, clinical observation suggests there is less likelihood of producing silting-up of the renal tubules which Professor YORKE originally found to be the cause of anuria, and for which he and others have rightly advocated excessive fluid intake to flush out the kidneys. But, in addition, BAKER and DODDS have shown experimentally that if a urine has a pH of 6.0 or less and a salinity exceeding 1 per cent., methaemoglobin is formed from oxyhaemoglobin in the tubules ; and blockage, with what they consider to be acid haematin, is likely to occur. That the alkaline treatment has often failed in anuric cases is true, but is not this mainly because massive haemolysis has already occurred and the renal damage been done before the reaction of the urine has been modified by treatment? BAKER and DODDS advocated alkalization, not to overcome blockage but to prevent it, and for this reason citrates and sodium bicarbonate should be immediately given not only in blackwater fever but in any intravascular haemolysis where lysis is likely to be continued or recurrent. Furthermore, by increasing the alkaline reserve, these drugs help to combat renal acidosis which we have demonstrated by biochemical methods to supervene in severe cases of this disease. Perhaps, in the future, the synthetic chemist may supply us with a drug which accelerates the conversion of oxyhaemoglobin into pseudo-methaemoglobin, thus protecting the kidneys from the dangers associated with haemoglobinuria.

In regard to the question asked by Colonel JAMES, we have only been working on this new pigment for a relatively short time and are not yet in a position to record its incidence in other diseases. In enterogenous cyanosis and drug poisonings methaemoglobin is formed within the corpuscles and the plasma has little opportunity of exerting its action since haemolysis rarely, if ever, occurs. Such cases are really examples of methaemoglobin-cythaemia and the pigment formed within the corpuscle is true methaemoglobin.

In other conditions, however, where the corpuscle is lysed and oxyhaemoglobin is liberated into circulating blood, the formation of pseudo-methaemoglobin is to be anticipated. In incompatible transfusion, for example, we noted some years ago the presence of oxyhaemoglobin and a pigment which spectroscopically resembled methaemoglobin. I am convinced the pigment which we were then observing was pseudo-methaemoglobin, and that this pigment will be found if it is looked for.

There is much to be said in favour of Professor YORKE's views that free oxyhaemoglobin is selectively secreted by the epithelium of the tubules rather than being filtered through the glomerulus as physiologists hold. In the first place, it would be interesting to know whether the size of the molecule of oxyhaemoglobin is of the order which really permits its passage through the glomerulus: not all physiologists appear in agreement as to what actually is its molecular weight; though it is generally regarded as about 68,000. Secondly, the presence of eosinophil-staining globules in the tubular epithelium similar to those observed in the lumina of the tubules and the toxic degeneration which these cells undergo, suggest that haemoglobin or some toxic bi-product is being secreted by the kidneys. Of course it might equally well result from absorption of blood pigment or some toxic katabolite from within the lumina of the tubules. This, however, would not explain why in acute malarial haemolytic anaemia of monkeys (*P. knowlesi*), where blood destruction is very great, toxic changes are not infrequently found in the renal tubular epithelium though there is no suggestion of tubular blockage and no haemoglobinuria. The subject is one requiring further investigation and we hope our own experimental observations may throw some light on the subject at a later date.

COMMUNICATIONS.

CLINICAL OBSERVATIONS ON KALA-AZAR IN THE FUNG PROVINCE OF THE SUDAN.

BY

L. H. HENDERSON, M.D., B.Sc., D.T.M. & H.*

Sudan Medical Service.

The following observations are based on the detection and treatment by the author of over 300 cases of kala-azar occurring in the Fung Province between 1933 and 1936.

Topography and Climate.

The disease occurred in villages situated on the banks of the Blue Nile and its tributaries from its entrance into the Sudan from Abyssinia down to about 150 miles short of its confluence with the White Nile at Khartoum, *i.e.*, between latitude 11 N. and 14 N. approximately. The river flows through an open flat plain of thick loam falling only about 200 feet in 200 miles.

The climate is tropical, minimum temperature rarely below 60° F., and annual mean relative humidity 50 to 55 per cent. The rainy season commences in April with about 10 mm., reaches its acme of about 200 mm. in August, and tails off by November.

*My thanks are due to the Director, Sudan Medical Service for permission to publish this paper and to Sir ROBERT G. ARCHIBALD, C.M.G., D.S.O., M.D., for assistance rendered in carrying out these observations.

Inhabitants.

The area is thinly populated by 200,000 Arabs concentrated in villages thickly dotted along the northern part of the river, 100,000 negroids widely scattered in straggly villages in the southern part, and 30,000 West African colonists, "Fellata," occupying fairly isolated large villages also in the northern part of the Province. The habits and mode of life of all these three are very much alike; all deriving a more or less precarious livelihood from keeping cattle, sheep and goats, or by cultivating small patches of cereals.

Sanitation is very primitive; the ground adjacent to villages, universally soiled, is mercifully re-sterilized by the strong sun. Spitting is promiscuous; nasal secretion discarded haphazardly by the fingers on to the ground or clothing. Personal cleanliness is a very variable factor. Bathing in the river is frequently indulged in, but the advisability of including intimate clothing in the wash is not generally appreciated, hence louse infestation is common.

Housing conditions vary. The thatched mud hut of the few better-class natives is fairly commodious and clean, but that of the poorer people is small, filthy, ill-ventilated and liable to considerable overcrowding. The occupants sleep on beds made of strips of hide or rope which are often infested with bugs. The nocturnal population of the hut is often augmented by goats, sheep, dogs, cats, poultry, etc. Donkeys, cattle and camels are tethered as close to the owners' hut as possible.

Food is liable to considerable contamination in preparation and consumption owing to the abounding filth and flies, and the prevalence of communal feeding from the same receptacle. Water is usually drawn in clay receptacles from the river but natives not immediately on the bank will readily share a muddy pool with their animals. Villages at some distance from the river depend on deep wells for their supply in the dry season.

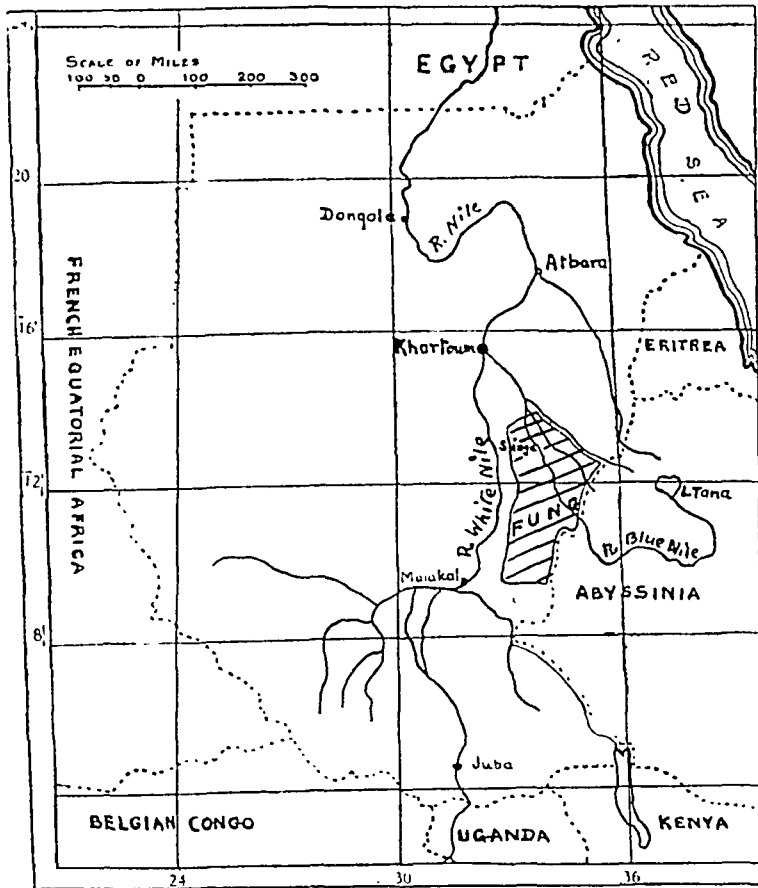
The staple article of diet is "kisra"—a kind of scone made from millet flour. A man will eat 3 or 4 lbs. of kisra a day, lubricating it with vegetable oil, "simsim," and washing it down with water, soup or milk. Vegetables are used sparingly. Meat consumption depends on personal affluence but in the poorer class rarely exceeds twice weekly. This diet though sufficient in calorie value (probably 3,000 to 4,000 calories) is obviously unbalanced, the carbohydrate being out of all proportion to the protein and fat content. The vitamin content is extremely variable. The occurrence of cases of scurvy and the low resistance to disease in general amongst the population suggests an inadequate supply of water-soluble vitamin C and fat-soluble vitamin A.

The "Fellata" colonists are better nourished than their neighbours; they are more active and productive, and consequently able to spend more on food.

ENDEMIOLGY.

Though no written records exist, kala-azar appears to have been fairly widespread in the Province some 50 years ago, and sheikhs and elders confirm

that whole villages were sometimes decimated and evacuated owing to its prevalence. A Government Commission under BOUSFIELD (1911) touring the area in 1909 noted the disease as increasing to a serious extent. A second Commission sent out at the end of the same year, under THOMSON (1911) saw thirty-seven cases on the Blue Nile. Cases continued to be recorded in the *Annual Report of the Director, Sudan Medical Service*, but not in great numbers, down to the present time.



ANGLO-EGYPTIAN SUDAN.

No epidemics such as those which have occurred in India and elsewhere have ever been authentically reported, but periodic increases in incidence have occasionally occurred in endemic foci of the disease. One such increase occurred during the period under review. At Dar Agil, a delapidated village of some 500 inhabitants, five cases were detected in March, 1934, followed by a further four in April. In May a complete survey of the natives was made and, by subjecting all with suspiciously enlarged spleens to splenic puncture, an additional

twelve cases were discovered. All these cases occurred in children or young adults under 20 years of age. Energetic treatment was instituted but no other preventive measure taken beyond keeping the village under careful supervision. The survey was repeated at the same time in the following year and four cases only were detected.

In other foci of infection the disease was just as prevalent in 1935 as it had been in the previous year. The disease appears to be endemic in certain villages which are recognized stopping places along the routes of communication. Most of the cases in the present series originated in some such village.

INCIDENCE OF THE DISEASE.

(a) *Seasonal*.—It was impossible to deduce any definite seasonal periodicity of the disease from the vague history of the duration of symptoms given by patients on admission to hospital. Cases in the area probably mostly commenced between August and February.

(b) *Racial*.—The incidence of the disease in the various tribes was as follows :—

<i>Arab.</i>	<i>Negroid.</i>	<i>Fellata.</i>	<i>Abyssinians.</i>
Per cent. 70	20	5	5

No particular racial predisposition can be deduced from the high Arab percentage as Arabs greatly predominate over all other races in the endemic area. The negroid incidence is low owing to their isolation and lack of communications. The Fellata possibly owe their low incidence partly to their better nutrition and partly to their unwillingness to mix with their Arab neighbours. The incidence in Abyssinian immigrants is relatively very high; they number about 200 ragged, ill-nourished male adults, who for the most part derive a bare existence by working as water carriers, donkey boys, etc., in the larger villages. To such a degree are they attacked by the disease, that they were formerly believed to have introduced the infection from Abyssinia. Their habits, lowly mode of life and poor physique in general render them very prone to infection.

(c) *Occupational*.—The disease was commonly found in vagrants, cultivators, labourers, water carriers, etc.—in short, the most indigent class in all tribes. Police were sometimes infected on their tours of duty in the district, presumably by associating and living with the lowly cultivators.

(d) *Age*.—In the present series of cases 66 per cent. occurred in adults and 34 per cent. in children. The age grouping was as follows :

Years	1 to 10	11 to 20	21 to 30	31 to 40	41 to 50
Per cent.	16	26	38	14	6



FIG. 1.—DAR AGIL. A typical kala-azar village.



FIG. 2.—KALA-AZAR HUT, showing three survivors out of a family of six children.
Parents not infected.

To face page 182.

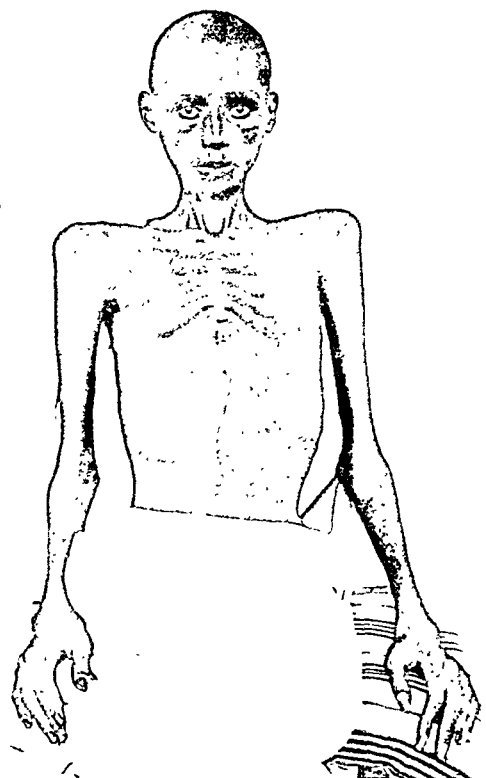


FIG. 3.
CASES OF KALA-AZAR
BEFORE TREATMENT.

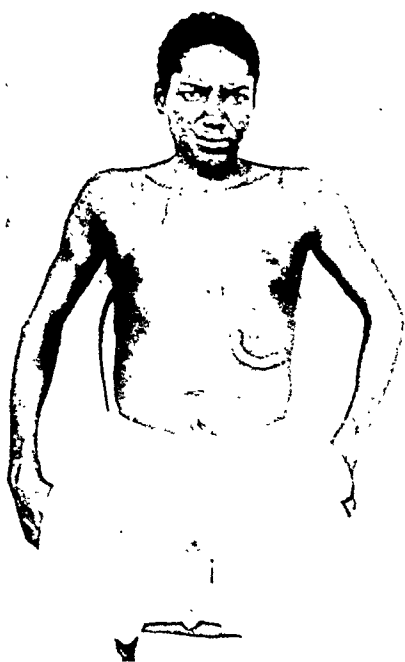


FIG. 4.
CASES OF KALA-AZAR
AFTER TREATMENT.

In children infection was commonest between the 5th and 10th year and in adults between the 20th and 25th. The youngest case treated was a boy of 18 months, the oldest a man of 47 years.

(e) *Sex*.—In children the disease was twice as common in boys as in girls; in adults there were five men for every woman treated.

(f) *Familial*.—A history of pre-existing infection in the family or household was elicited in 20 per cent. of the cases treated. Considering that nearly half of the adult males infected had no domicile at all, the actual ratio for sedentary natives was about one in three. Infection in one child was frequently followed by cases in other children in a family but rarely in adults. In several cases mothers nursed sick children through the disease, but no mother in the series became infected in this way. Two or three sick mothers had children at the breast during treatment, but in one case only could the infection possibly have been passed on—a child of 18 months being found infected 5 months after the death of the mother from kala-azar.

The history of contact in adults was practically always contact with another infected adult such as husband or wife, or with someone sharing quarters. The native habit of adults congregating in the hut of anyone seriously ill possibly accounted for the occurrence of the disease in many cases where no history of pre-existing infection could be obtained.

The period elapsing between the first and subsequent cases in a household was usually one of several months, though in a few cases it was as much as 1 or even 2 years. Amongst children, however, subsequent cases seemed to occur more quickly than in adults.

ETIOLOGY.

The diagnosis was confirmed in all cases by splenic puncture. Sometimes the parasite was difficult to find and the puncture had to be repeated three or even four times. A positive result was sometimes obtained by injecting a provocative dose of 0.2 gramme neostibosan 2 hours before puncture—a method advocated by NAPIER and GUPTA (1930) in blood examination.

Despite repeated examinations, parasites were found in the blood in three cases only throughout the series. They were always scanty and phagocytosed in polymorphonuclear or large mononuclear cells. Thin films only were used and no method was adopted to concentrate the cells. MARSHALL (1911), however, engaged in similar work in the area reported the presence of scanty parasites in thirteen out of fifteen cases examined.

Following the publication of the work of FORKNER and ZIA (1934) on this subject routine nasal smear examinations were carried out. Parasites were found in nine cases only out of 120 patients examined.

The parasite demonstrated by these methods was morphologically the same as that described in India and elsewhere.

PATHOLOGY.

Postmortem examination was rarely allowed, but when possible showed, in addition to the appearances usually reported, a fairly consistent acute inflammatory condition of the upper part of the ilium often associated with a transverse ulceration of the descending colon. Parasites were never obtained from scrapings of these bowel lesions.

Skin scrapings were examined in several cases but were consistently negative.

The parasite was never demonstrated in the urine or stool of any case in the series.

CONCOMITANT INFECTIONS.

These were present in nearly half the cases in the series.

Malaria was the commonest, and was present in 30 per cent. of cases—malignant tertian in 20 per cent. and benign tertian in 10 per cent. The superimposed malarial infection apparently frequently precipitated acute exacerbations which brought cases under medical attention. Contrary to NAPIER, KRISHNAN and LAL (1933) in the Indian type, there is apparently no antagonism between malaria and the type of kala-azar seen in this area.

Intestinal parasites were found in 11 per cent. of cases, 10 per cent. harbouring *Taenia saginata* and 1 per cent. *Ancylostoma duodenale*. The presence of these parasites undoubtedly reduced personal resistance and rendered patients more susceptible to the ravages of the major infection.

Schistosomiasis, a disease endemic in the northern part of the area, was found in 30 per cent. of children and 1 per cent. of adult cases.

Dysentery, both amoebic and bacillary, syphilis and tuberculosis were other infections occasionally encountered in routine examination of cases.

SYMPTOMATOLOGY.

The acuteness or chronicity of onset of the disease was difficult to estimate owing to the uncertainty of individual histories. Ten per cent. of the cases gave a history of acute onset of 2 weeks or less, but on blood examination two-thirds of these showed a malarial infection which may have precipitated the acute manifestations. Twenty per cent. of the cases gave a history of 1 month's duration and a further 20 per cent. of 2 months. The numbers gradually decreased up to 6 months—few cases only giving a longer history. Two cases only claimed to have suffered from the disease for 1 year and one case for 2 years. A sudden acute onset in an uncomplicated case was extremely rare. The disease as seen in this series of cases was almost invariably of a chronic nature characterized by periodic or terminal acute exacerbations which were invariably of a febrile nature, associated with splenic enlargement, epistaxis, emaciation and anaemia, passing at a later stage to exhaustion and serious toxic manifestations.

The detailed clinical character of the commoner symptoms was as follows :

Fever.—This occurred usually in the afternoon; the temperature rising to 103° to 104° F. and subsiding in a few hours with profuse perspiration. Though occasionally associated with headache, vomiting or even rigors, the patient did not look acutely ill during these paroxysms in the early stages of the disease, and preserved a clean tongue and good appetite. The fever was usually remittent, though occasionally intermittent or continuing for a few days on end. Four-hourly charts showed the usual double rise in nearly 80 per cent. of the cases. Exhibition of quinine before diagnosis frequently caused great variations in the temperature chart.

Splenic and Hepatic Enlargement.—The spleen was enlarged in all cases, varying in size from being just palpable to a large tumour extending into the right iliac fossa. Increase in size was not necessarily progressive nor was it intimately related to the duration of the disease. One case was admitted as a surgical emergency because the spleen had suddenly enlarged down to the level of the umbilicus and was associated with acute pain and abdominal rigidity. With two days of conservative treatment the tumour shrank to two fingers breadth below the costal margin, pain and rigidity disappeared, and puncture established the diagnosis. This was the only case of acute splenitis in the series.

Two cases complaining of only 4 days' illness had spleens of four fingers' breadth below the costal margin. As a general rule, however, cases with histories of several months had spleens down to the level of the umbilicus.

Hepatic enlargement was not such a constant or prominent feature; it was completely absent in 11 per cent. of the series. It occurred in the more chronic type of case extending usually one to two fingers' breadths below the costal margin. In two cases only it reached the level of the umbilicus.

Emaciation and Weakness.—From the histories obtained, it appeared that these symptoms occurred very early in the Sudan type of the disease.

Haemorrhages.—Periodic attacks of epistaxis occurred in 50 per cent. of the series, some of the cases originating after treatment had been commenced. Bleeding from the gums was occasionally present. Malaena was sometimes observed usually associated with diarrhoea.

Diarrhoea.—This was a common and troublesome symptom present in 25 per cent. of the series on admission. It was often very intractable to treatment.

Other symptoms occurring less frequently were pains in the bones and joints, cough, anorexia, amenorrhoea and slight jaundice.

The pulse was always considerably accelerated and haemic murmurs were sometimes detected.

About 20 per cent. of admissions, especially those who had been acutely ill for a few weeks, showed superadded signs of toxæmia and considerable blood destruction.

Weakness was increased to the point of extreme exhaustion, lips and tongue were coated with a brown fur from haemorrhage from the gums or gangrenous ulceration in the mouth, diarrhoea was acute with blood and mucus in the stool, oedema was marked on face and ankles, and ascites sometimes present.

It was almost exclusively in this type that the earthy grey pigmentation characteristic of kala-azar elsewhere occurred.

Haematology.

An absolute reduction in all blood elements was universally present.

Red cell counts were as follows :

1 to 2 million.	2 to 3 million.	3 to 4 million.	4 to 5 million.
Per cent. 10	40	45	5

The commonest counts were $2\frac{1}{2}$ to $3\frac{1}{2}$ million.

The most extreme degrees of anaemia were seen in the most acutely ill cases, not necessarily of long duration. The lowest count—1,400,000—occurred in an adult male with a history of 11 days' illness only.

Leucopenia was always present to the following extent :

2,000 to 3,000	3,000 to 4,000	4,000 to 5,000	5,000 to 6,000
Per cent. 15	20	60	5

No count lower than 2,000 occurred in the series.

Differential blood counts showed the following variations :

Polymorphonuclears.—Relative percentage averaged 40 to 50 per cent. ; counts as low as 25 per cent. occurred.

Lymphocytes.—Usual average 40 to 50 per cent. Low counts of 20 to 30 per cent. frequently occurred in serious cases.

Large mononuclears.—Almost invariably increased up to 15 to 20 per cent.

Eosinophils.—Showed if anything a reduction below the normal percentage. Eosinophilia was usually present in superadded helminthic infections but rarely exceeded 10 per cent.

DIAGNOSIS.

Diagnosis rarely presented much difficulty when the disease was being keenly sought.

Large spleens associated with pyrexia which did not yield to quinine treatment were suspected and subjected to puncture. Senior native staff only were allowed to carry out the operation which was freely done both in hospital and on trek with no more preparation than a preceding blood examination. A carefully dried 2 c.c. all-glass syringe with a $22 \times 1\frac{1}{8}$ in. needle was used with the usual aseptic precautions. Though over a thousand punctures were carried out, one case only possibly owed acceleration to a fatal issue to the operation—a restless moribund male at whose postmortem 2 days later were found a collection

of deeply blood-stained ascitic fluid and a small tear $\frac{1}{4}$ in. long in the splenic capsule at the site of puncture.

Junior staff in dispensaries were assisted in diagnosis by Napier's aldehyde test—a drop of 30 per cent. formalin added to 1 c.c. of serum producing well marked opacity.

Cases presenting difficulty in diagnosis were very early or very chronic infections with little splenic enlargement and only low fever. Locally occurring conditions simulated were typhoid fever, Malta fever, chronic malaria, schistosomiasis, and tuberculosis.

COURSE AND COMPLICATIONS.

The course of the disease under treatment was very variable and complications frequently occurred, chiefly cancrum oris and infections of the upper respiratory passages.

Ulceration of the mouth occurred in debilitated cases and, unless strenuously dealt with, was liable to rapid extension with a fatal termination due to septic absorption. The condition occurred in 10 per cent. of the series, originating frequently after treatment had been commenced. Ulceration was found on cheek, gums, uvula, tonsil and fauces. In children in particular necrosis frequently extended to the underlying bone; in two cases recovery followed excision of a necrosed mandible.

Extension of infection to the middle ear occurred in 5 per cent. of cases. Aural discharges were frequent and occasionally complete deafness of one or both ears followed.

A virulent pneumonia sometimes supervened and was nearly always fatal.

Dysentery, usually a Shiga bacillary infection, was a very serious complication in debilitated patients and often proved fatal.

The condition of acute agranulocytosis described by ZIA and FORKNER (1934) occasionally occurred and was nearly always associated with ulceration of the fauces.

Two in the series died of acute intestinal haemorrhage.

Antimony poisoning occurred in several cases; its onset was usually so insidious and the symptoms so like aggravation of those of the actual disease that it was missed in several of the early cases. It occurred in the prolonged use of all antimony preparations both trivalent and pentavalent and was more frequent in adults than in children.

PROGNOSIS.

Cases were occasionally seen who refused all treatment; these invariably died. The hopelessness of any form of treatment was often so firmly ingrained in the native mind that parents did not think it worth while bringing children to hospital, and adult cases were concealed to allow the victim to die peacefully in

his own village. Thus, in the first year of the work, treatment had to be administered under very adverse conditions, and the death-rate was as high as 50 per cent. This has been steadily reduced till in the latter part of the series it was 25 per cent.

The reduction is probably attributable to the following causes :—

1. Propaganda and actual results causing natives to seek treatment at an earlier stage of the disease.
2. Earlier diagnosis of suspected cases.
3. The ensuring of complete cure before discharge of hospital cases.
4. Increased care in the use of antimony preparations with a healthy respect for their cumulative possibilities.

Generally speaking, the earlier treatment could be commenced, the better the prognosis. Cases detected before serious clinical manifestations appeared, as in the Dar Agil survey previously referred to, practically always recovered.

During treatment a favourable prognosis could not be given unless amelioration of the condition was accompanied by shrinkage, to some extent at least, of the splenic tumour. An early permanent diminution of the spleen especially if associated with appreciable slowing of the accelerated pulse was a very good prognostic sign.

The number of parasites seen on successive splenic smears was of practically no prognostic significance.

Patients showing evidence of considerable toxæmia were very difficult to treat and frequently showed no reaction whatsoever to antimony treatment.

On the whole, children responded to treatment more favourably than adults.

Differential blood counts carried out at regular intervals during treatment suggested in 60 per cent. of the series that the relative numbers of lymphocytes present at the different counts had a certain prognostic significance. An original low count of under 30 per cent. which did not rapidly increase under treatment, or a rapid reduction of the lymphocyte count during treatment, often presaged a fatal termination.

The average period of hospital treatment in cases of recovery was 3 months—the shortest 1 month and the longest 1 year. This prolonged hospitalization compares most unfavourably with results obtained elsewhere. Though the difficulty in curing the condition was largely due to the frequently advanced stage of the disease before treatment was commenced, it would appear that the parasite in the Sudan is often peculiarly resistant to antimony therapy or that it readily becomes “antimony-fast.”

TREATMENT.

To avoid confusing junior native medical staff, the only specific drugs used in the series were neostibosan and antimony tartrate. As soon as diagnosis was established, a course of neostibosan, administered on alternate days, was prescribed up to a total of 4·5 grammes for adults and 3 grammes for children.

The diet was made as nourishing as possible and raw or lightly cooked liver added to it. Mouth washes were given as a routine, and concomitant infections dealt with during the course of treatment.

A complete blood analysis including total and differential counts was carried out as early as possible, and repeated fortnightly during treatment. If the total red cells fell at any time to two million, a small blood transfusion of 50 to 100 c.c. was given and repeated if necessary.

On completion of the course an interval of 1 week to 10 days was allowed to elapse during which nothing was done beyond general stimulating measures. At this time an injection of Fournau 914 often had a very beneficial effect on the general health. This interval was allowed to ensure elimination of the drug and to see if any early recurrence was likely in cases where spleens had completely disappeared under the treatment.

At the end of this period a complete re-examination including splenic puncture if possible was carried out: 60 per cent. of the "cures" were discharged at this examination. Those still positive were then given a course of 25 grains of antimony tartrate administered in the usual manner over a period of 5 to 6 weeks and re-examined after an interval as before. A further 30 per cent. of the "cures" were discharged at this stage.

Those still resistant, though in most cases showing nothing beyond a persistently enlarged and positive spleen, were subjected to a second course of antimony tartrate increased with care up to a maximum of 30 grains. Of the remainder 7 per cent. were discharged at the examination carried out after the termination of this course.

The remaining 3 per cent. were cured with a final combined course of neostibosan and antimony tartrate given alternately at successive injections until the spleen commenced to show progressive shrinkage.

Sixty per cent. only of "cures" were discharged with unpalpable or just palpable spleens. Cases were followed up as far as possible after discharge. It was frequently noted that in the size of the spleen the steady reduction, commenced during treatment, continued, and the organ was frequently unpalpable 6 months after discharge.

SUMMARY.

An account is given of the investigation of 300 cases of kala-azar in the Fung Province of the Sudan. The area is inhabited by Arabs, negroids and Fellata whose habits and mode of life are fairly primitive. Diet, though sufficient in caloric value, is ill-balanced and probably deficient in Vitamins A and C.

The disease is truly endemic and liable to periodic increase in endemic foci. One such increase involving twenty-one cases is described.

Cases probably originated mostly between August and February.

There is no particular racial predisposition; individuals in a state of malnutrition and lowered resistance generally being most prone to infection.

The disease affected mainly children and young adults, and was commonest in males.

A history of contact or familial infection was common, especially in children.

Children appeared to develop the disease more quickly than adults—the usual interval being several months after exposure to infection.

The parasite was always present in the spleen; in 1 per cent. only in the peripheral blood, and in 7.5 per cent. in nasal smears. The parasite demonstrated was morphologically the same as that described in India.

On postmortem examination inflammation of the bowel was usually present.

Concomitant infections found were malaria, intestinal helminths, schistosomiasis, dysentery, syphilis and tuberculosis.

The disease was usually a chronic infection characterized by periodic or terminal acute exacerbations. The most prevalent symptoms were fever, splenic and hepatic enlargement, emaciation, epistaxis and diarrhoea.

Blood examination showed anaemia and leucopenia with a relative increase in lymphocytes and large mononuclears. Diagnosis was always confirmed by splenic puncture.

The course of the disease varied under treatment. The chief complications were septic conditions of the buccal cavity and upper respiratory passages. Pneumonia, dysentery, agranulocytosis and acute intestinal haemorrhage also occurred. Several cases of antimony poisoning occurred, especially in adults.

Prognosis depended primarily on the stage of the disease at which treatment commenced.

Ultimate cure was always associated with splenic shrinkage in addition to disappearance of all other symptoms.

Children responded to treatment more favourably than adults. Cases peculiarly resistant to antimony therapy occurred. Routine specific treatment consisted of one course of neostibosan followed if necessary by one or two courses of antimony tartrate.

Treatment was controlled by splenic puncture.

REFERENCES.

- BOUSFIELD, L. (1911). *Rep. Wellcome trop. Res. Lab.*, No. 4, 127.
FORKNER, C. E. & ZIA, L. S. (1934). *J. exp. Med.*, 59 (4), 491.
MARSHALL, W. E. (1911). *Rep. Wellcome trop. Res. Lab.*, No. 4, 157.
NAPIER, L. E. & GUPTA, C. R. DAS. (1930). *Indian J. med. Res.*, 17 (3), 749.
———, KRISHNAN, K. V. & LAL, C. (1933). *Indian med. Gaz.*, 68, 75.
THOMSON, D. S. B. (1911). *Rep. Wellcome trop. Res. Lab.*, No. 4, 191.
ZIA, L. S. & FORKNER, C. E. (1934). *Amer. J. med. Sci.*, 188 (5), 624.

TRANSACTIONS OF THE ROYAL SOCIETY OF
TROPICAL MEDICINE AND HYGIENE.
Vol. XXXI. No. 2. July, 1937.

DERMAL LEISHMANIASIS IN A NEWLY INHABITED SECTION OF ALEPPO.

BY

PHILIPP HOVNANIAN, M.D. AND ROBERT JEBEJIAN, M.D.,
Aleppo,

AND

H. A. YENIKOMSHIAN, M.D., M.R.C.P., D.T.M. & H.,
American University, Beirut.

During the autumn of 1935 and the winter of 1936, an outbreak of Aleppo boil occurred among a group of refugee immigrants in a settlement newly established outside the boundaries of Aleppo City. The settlers had, for the past 10 or 12 years, been living in "camps" within the city, in shacks made of packing cases and kerosene tins; but Aleppo boil had never been prevalent among them. Two months after the first settlers had moved into their new homes, however, the disease appeared among them in an epidemic form, infecting a large majority of them. In many, the lesions were multiple, and some who had had Aleppo boil in the past had it again during this epidemic. The epidemiological and clinical features of dermal leishmaniasis noted in this outbreak seem to us of sufficient interest to warrant publication.

For the last 10 or 15 years the city of Aleppo has been expanding rapidly, and new settlements are being established to provide better accommodation for the refugee settlers. These settlements are located in the uncultivated hill country to the north of the city, where, up to the time of the epidemic, no special health problems had arisen. The grounds where the epidemic started, formerly part of an orchard called "Bustan Pasha," are situated just outside the northern limits of Aleppo City and extend over an area with a dimension of about 1 km. east to west and 800 m. south to north. Late in the summer of 1935, the trees were removed, plans were made to put up about 400 brick houses,

and building began in the north-eastern section of the plot. Fig. 1 gives the plan of the settlement; the squares represent the houses which were built up

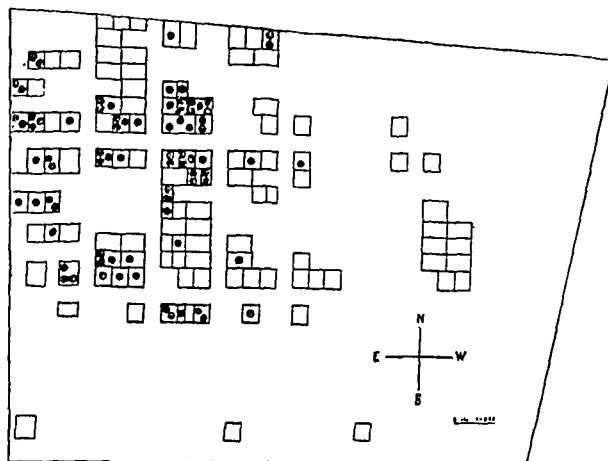


FIG. 1.—Squares denote the houses built prior to September, 1936. Black dots denote the distribution of Aleppo boil.

to September, 1936, and the dots denote the distribution of cases of Aleppo boil. Fig. 2 shows one of the newly-built brick houses. Since the building did not start until August, 1935, there was no accommodation but the bare earth

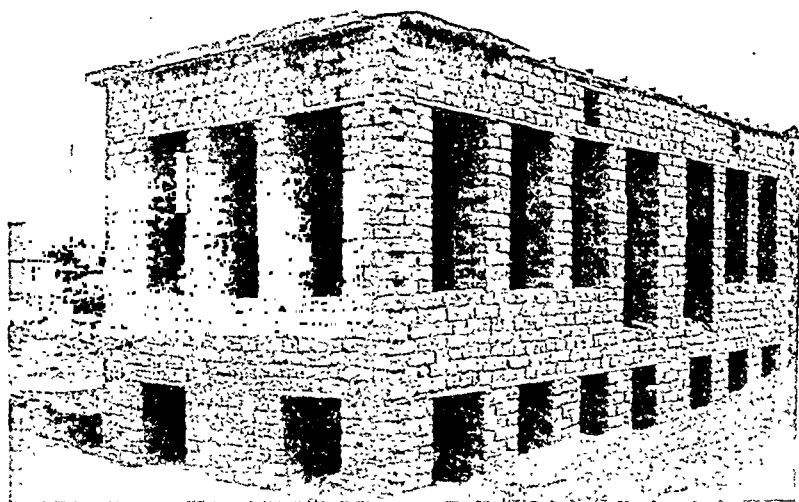


FIG. 2.—Brick houses showing construction conducive to maintenance of sandfly nuisance. Houses occupied in this state at onset of the epidemic.



FIG. 3a.



FIG. 3b.



FIG. 4.



FIG. 5.

FIG. 3a.—Eldest son before tartar emetic injections.

FIG. 3b.—Eldest son one month after the start of tartar emetic treatment.

FIG. 4.—Multiple lesions resembling dermal leishmanoids.

FIG. 5.—S.A. family (except father). The photograph is taken after a course of tartar emetic treatment, which was very efficacious in the children, but had no effect on the nodular lesions of the mother.

for those who moved into the grounds earlier in the summer. The site had not, at that time, been completely cleared of vegetation ; the ground, moreover, soon became littered with rubbish and manure. Mosquitoes, fleas, flies and, especially, sandflies were able, in these conditions, to breed abundantly, affording much discomfort to those who were compelled to sleep in the open and providing a definite menace to the health of the community.

Early in October, 1935, about 2 months after the arrival of the first settlers, Aleppo boil began to appear in this new community. In order to give an idea of the mode of onset and the extent of the outbreak, we shall describe the history of the disease in the S.A. family. This is composed of five members : father, mother and three sons. The children were born in the camps, about 1 mile to the south of their present home, where the family had been living since 1922. With the exception of the father, who had had the disease in childhood and bore its scar on his upper lip, no member of the family had previously been infected. This family was one of the first to come to the locality, and began to build their house early in August, 1935. While the construction was going on, they lived in a part of the house which was dark, unplastered, and poorly ventilated, and at night suffered much discomfort from the large number of sandflies which infested the neighbourhood. In September, their eldest son, M., 9 years of age (Fig. 3*a* and 3*b*) began to show, on his face and extremities, papular lesions, which throughout the winter remained nodular. None were seen on the abdomen and back. In the spring these lesions, especially that on the nose, started to ulcerate. The family became alarmed and, in April, 1936, brought the boy to one of us (P. H.*) for examination. In the smears taken from the edges of the lesions on the nose of this case we found Leishman-Donovan bodies. On enquiry, we learned that 1 week after the appearance of the lesions in this boy, the second son, 6 years of age, had developed similar eruptions on the exposed parts of his body. When we examined the second son later in April, we found some forty papular nodules on his face, legs and forearms. Leishman-Donovan bodies were seen in smears taken from these lesions. We learned, moreover, that about the time the lesions appeared in the second son, the mother and the youngest son (3 years of age) had the same kind of multiple eruptions. The lesions of the mother and the two younger boys remained nodular, without ulceration, throughout the winter and spring. We were interested to observe that the right cheek of the youngest son was free from boils, and to learn from the mother that this boy slept always on the right side with his cheek against the pillow.

Since April, 1936, we have been making periodical visits to this settlement to obtain data concerning the extent and progress of the outbreak and to note the response of the disease to tartar emetic treatment.

*It is with deep regret that we report the death of Dr. PHILIPP HOVNANIAN in June, 1936. His son, Mr. A. HOVNANIAN, student of Medicine in the American University, Beirut, has carried on his father's part in this work.

In September, 1936, the disease had already appeared in forty-five (35 per cent.) of the 127 families who had transferred to the new locality. Detailed study of thirty-two of these families shows that, out of a total of 181 persons (ninety-seven children and eighty-four adults), seventy-eight (43 per cent.) contracted the disease. Of these seventy-eight, fifty-five (70 per cent.) were children below the age of 12. Only 30 per cent. of the adults were infected. The low percentage of adults can be explained by the fact that, out of the total number of eighty-four adults, thirty-five had already had the disease in childhood while in Turkey, and had, presumably, acquired an immunity against the disease. If the number of the adults who had had the disease is subtracted from this total number, the percentage of the incidence of the disease in the adult group is 46 per cent. It is noteworthy that, during this outbreak the disease appeared in three persons of over 60 years of age for the first time in their lives. We have also seen active lesions contracted during this outbreak in seven persons who gave a history of having had Aleppo boil in the past and who have typical scars. All of those cases who had Aleppo boil for the second time had a mild single lesion on the hand, except one who had three lesions. The lesions in all of these cases ran a shorter course than in a first infection, and in three of them healed completely within 3 months. The time which elapsed between the first and second infections in this group varied from 10 to 50 years.

As is seen in Fig. 1, the infection was most prevalent in the north-eastern section of the affected area where, in the late summer and early autumn of 1935, building first began. The detailed case histories show that the outbreak of Aleppo boil started suddenly but was of short duration, the disease being almost exclusively confined to those who had moved to their new homes in the summer and autumn of 1935. The first cases appeared in October, 1935, the majority in November and December, fewer in January and February of 1936, until, finally, only two new cases appeared after May, 1936.

It is, again, noteworthy that in some of the houses in the north-eastern section no cases of Aleppo boil were found. One particular house, although separated by a distance of only 30 m. from the main group of buildings where the disease was most prevalent, nevertheless remained free from infection. This house was inhabited by a family of six children and their parents, none of whom had previously had Aleppo boil. In spite of the fact that these people had moved to their new home as early as the summer of 1935, they lived in a well ventilated and properly plastered room on the second story where they were not disturbed by sandflies.

CLINICAL OBSERVATIONS.

Some peculiarities of this epidemic are worthy of note.

1. The lesions were multiple. The usual number of lesions was between ten and twenty, although many had from forty to eighty and some as many as

eighty-five. The disease was more widespread and severe among the children of from 4 to 10 years of age. Very few children of this age, living in the section where the disease was prevalent, escaped the infection. On the other hand, infants below 2 years of age were not afflicted so badly, probably because infants were usually protected against biting insects by a muslin cover over their faces.

2. The distribution and the appearance of the lesions, in some cases (see Fig. 4) resembled that of dermal leishmanoid. None of the cases, however, gave any history of kala-azar; and constitutional symptoms, such as chills and fever and enlargement of liver and spleen, were lacking. Blood counts in six patients who had extensive lesions showed no definite blood changes, the white corpuscles varying from 8,000 to 10,000 per c.mm. Although infantile kala-azar occurs in different parts of the Lebanon (HITTI, 1926), no cases of kala-azar in adults have been reported from Syria and the Lebanon.

3. One may assume that those who moved into these grounds about the same time and lived under similar conditions were exposed to the infection about the same time. A review of such a group of cases indicates that the lesions appeared 1 to 3 months after exposure. We have noticed that, in general, the disease was more severe and the lesions greater in number in those who seemed to have a shorter incubation period.

4. In seven cases out of a group of seventy-eight, the disease occurred for the second time. This indicates that not all persons develop a permanent immunity to oriental sore, and/or that re-infection may occur if the infective dose is massive enough! The disease, however, was very mild in those who were infected a second time, and six of these seven patients had only a single lesion.

5. The following are some observations on treatment with tartar emetic. The drug was given intravenously to thirty-five patients three times per week, the total dose varying from 12 to 30 grains according to the age of the patient. It seemed to us that, in general, the greater the number of lesions and the younger the patient, the quicker the recovery under tartar emetic. The response to treatment was very dramatic in cases with multiple ulcerative lesions. Children who had been suffering for 2 or 3 months from extensive ulcerating lesions, where the examination of the scrapings taken from the edges of the ulcers revealed Leishman-Donovan bodies in large numbers, showed marked improvement after two injections of tartar emetic, and the lesions were completely healed within 1 month. On the other hand, patients who had the nodular non-ulcerative type of lesion (see Fig. 5), and others who had only a single lesion, especially the elderly patients, did not show appreciable improvement after a course of tartar emetic.

As to the effect of tartar emetic on Aleppo boil, our observations are somewhat different from those of KHALIL (1934). Professor M. KHALIL BEY finds no Leishman-Donovan bodies in the secondarily infected ulcerating lesions and

he denies any specific action to any of the antimony preparations in different forms of dermal leishmaniasis that he has studied in Egypt.

DISCUSSION.

In this survey we have studied an outbreak of oriental sore in a community which had been transferred to a new environment separated by a distance of about 1 mile from its previous location. The change in conditions, however, was such as to cause an immediate outbreak of the disease in the new settlement. The atmospheric conditions, the climate, the water supply, the food and mode of living remained unchanged. The state of the grounds and the type of house, on the other hand, were very different in the two localities. The kerosene tins and packing cases of which the shacks in the camps were composed may have encouraged the breeding of bed-bugs but were in no way conducive to the breeding of sandflies. The camp ground, moreover, was clean and free of any kind of vegetation. Conditions in the new settlement, however, were different. The bricks of the houses were made of straw and earth, material in which sandflies breed readily. The ground was piled with rubbish and débris and was still, in places, covered with the undergrowth of the orchard which had previously stood on that land. During the building operations of the summer and autumn of 1935, large numbers of sandflies infested the neighbourhood. As the construction progressed, however, houses were plastered and streets cleaned, and the number of sandflies became gradually less. It is significant to note that, as the improvements continued and sandflies disappeared, the outbreak of Aleppo boil subsided. In this connection it should be noted that no outbreak of this disease occurred in any of the near-by settlements, where the grounds had not been cultivated, where there was no vegetation or rubbish and where no large numbers of sandflies had appeared. It is improbable that the new settlers introduced the infection to this locality, since many of the gardeners and their families living on this ground prior to the coming in of the new settlers gave a positive history and bore the scars of the disease, which had obviously prevailed in this region in the past.

In Syria and the Lebanon dermal leishmaniasis is known as Aleppo boil. It has a patchy distribution in this country, as elsewhere. Although the disease is endemic in Aleppo, it is more prevalent during some years than others. The theory that the sandfly is responsible for the spread of oriental sore is strengthened through further evidence collected by different observers in this country who have kindly communicated their personal experiences. From Dr. A. ALTOUNYAN, who has been carrying on a wide practice in Aleppo for over 50 years, we have the information that Aleppo boil has always been more extensive and severe in those parts of the city where the hygienic conditions are poor, the streets dirty and the biting insects more abundant. Those families, moreover, residing in the cleaner quarters, who use mosquito nets or live in properly screened houses,

have either escaped the disease altogether or have had only small, insignificant lesions. Mr. J. KUENZLER, of the Swiss Mission, Beirut, who has spent more than 35 years doing hospital and missionary work in the Near East, describes similar conditions in a severe epidemic of Aleppo boil which occurred in Ourfa, Turkey, a district where the disease is endemic. During 1916-1917 there were many Kurdish and Armenian refugees in Ourfa who were brought in from the northern parts of Turkey. These people were forced to sleep in the open, having very little clothing to cover them. The epidemic was severe; the lesions, which were scattered over the exposed parts of their bodies, were multiple, and in one patient Mr. KUENZLER was able to count as many as 260 lesions. He witnessed another epidemic where orphans, being transferred from Turkey to the Lebanon, had to spend some nights during summer in the open in districts where Aleppo button was prevalent: similar conditions were present. Mr. KUENZLER also stated that in Ourfa new cases of Aleppo boil almost always appeared during the last 3 months of the year. In the light of this observation it is suggestive that the epidemic described in this paper also began in October and reached its height during November and December. The fact that sandflies are most abundant in Aleppo during the summer and Aleppo boil only appears in autumn may be significant in determining the incubation period of the disease.

SUMMARY.

A. A sudden outbreak of dermal leishmaniasis occurred in a group of people who moved from one locality in Aleppo City to another only 1 mile to the north. These people had been living in Aleppo, in "camps," for 10 or more years. While in the camps they lived in wooden and tin shacks, had no special complaint against sandflies, and dermal leishmaniasis was not prevalent among them.

B. The new houses into which they moved were built of straw and mud bricks. The area to which they transferred was formerly a fruit orchard, the grounds of which were not completely cleared of vegetation when the new settlers came in August, 1935, and sandflies were very abundant.

C. The cases of dermal leishmaniasis were more prevalent among the people who settled in this area earlier (August to September, 1935), and very much less among those who came in later (during the winter, spring and summer of 1936) when the grounds were cleared and sandflies reduced in number.

D. This outbreak was characterized by multiplicity of lesions and the prevalence of the disease among children of from 4 to 10 years old. Seven cases were observed who suffered from dermal leishmaniasis a second time. Children and those who had multiple ulcerative lesions responded to tartar emetic. Those who had nodular or single lesions did not appreciably benefit from tartar emetic injection.

E. No such outbreak of Aleppo boil occurred in similar settlements located on small hill-tops north of Aleppo where the grounds are uncultivated and there is no vegetation, where there are no manure heaps and where no particular complaint against sandflies was made.

F. Circumstantial evidence collected in this epidemic is in agreement with the conception that the sandfly is the principal if not the only vector in transmission of Aleppo boil.

REFERENCES.

- ALTOUNYAN, A. *Personal communication*.
HITTI, J. K. (1926). Infantile kala-azar in Syria. *J. Amer. med. Ass.*, 87, 1032.
KHALIL BEY, M. (1934). Dermal leishmaniasis. A study of an endemic focus in Egypt. *Arch. Schiffs- u. Tropenhyg.*, 38, (10), 417.
KUENZLER, J. *Personal communication*.

YELLOW FEVER IMMUNE BODIES AND ANIMAL SERA.

BY

F. Ó. MACCALLUM, M.D.*

AND

G. M. FINDLAY, C.B.E., M.D.

Wellcome Bureau of Scientific Research, London.

The simplest method of detecting the presence of immune bodies in the sera of human beings who have recovered from yellow fever consists in mixing the serum to be tested with a suspension of mouse brain infected with the neurotropic strain of yellow fever virus and injecting the mixture into the peritoneal cavities of mice which have been injected intracerebrally with a suspension of starch in saline. If the serum contains yellow fever immune bodies the mice survive, if the serum contains no immune bodies the mice die within 10 days from meningo-encephalomyelitis. This "mouse protection" test, first described by SAWYER and LLOYD (1931), has now been used in the examination of many thousands of human sera from all parts of the world and its specificity is undoubtedly very great though very occasionally there have been found human sera which neutralize the yellow fever virus when the donors of the sera cannot possibly have been suffering from yellow fever (SAWYER, BAUER and WHITMAN, 1937).

*Our thanks are due to the following for their assistance in obtaining sera: Sir JOHN MEGAW, Col. A. J. H. RUSSELL and Col. F. WARE (India); Dr. E. S. HORGAN, Dr. R. KIRK and Dr. S. C. J. BENNETT (Sudan); Mr. R. DAUBNEY (Kenya); Dr. W. H. KAUNTZE, Dr. H. S. DE BOER and Dr. N. J. WILLANS (Uganda); Dr. DAVID DUFF, Capt. J. STEWART, and Mr. G. S. CANSDALE (Gold Coast); Dr. T. H. DAVEY and Mr. D. H. S. DAVIS (Sierra Leone); Dr. F. C. MINETT (England); Dr. G. J. STÉFANOPOULO (France).

One of us, F.O.M., is in receipt of a full time grant from the Medical Research Council.

The mouse protection test has also been used to show the presence of immune bodies in the sera of animals which have been experimentally infected with yellow fever in the laboratory and has now been applied to the sera of animals from areas where yellow fever is known to be endemic. In endemic areas in South America (SOPER, 1936) and in Africa (FINDLAY, STÉFANOPOULO, MAHAFFY and DAVEY, 1936; FINDLAY and MACCALLUM, 1937) it has been found that approximately 20 per cent. of the sera of wild monkeys give a positive test for the presence of immune bodies to yellow fever. The sera of monkeys from Kenya where yellow fever in man is not known to occur are negative as are the sera of monkeys from India and Java. The mouse protection test was further extended to the sera of domestic and wild animals from West Africa. The sera of two sheep from the Gambia were found by FINDLAY *et al.* (1936) to give a positive protection test but the significance of this finding was uncertain as the serum from one of six English sheep also gave a "positive" test. Recently WILSON (1937) has reported that the sera of opossums from yellow fever areas in South America give positive tests.

In view of the possible rôle of animals in maintaining yellow fever infections in rural areas it appeared to be of importance to determine (1) whether the sera of wild and domestic animals, other than primates, from yellow fever areas give a positive mouse protection test and (2) the specificity of the mouse protection test when applied to such sera.

In the present communication the results of examining the sera of wild animals, other than primates, are recorded together with the findings with the sera of domestic cows and sheep.

TECHNIQUE.

The usual mouse protection test was employed, 1.5 c.c. of a 20 per cent. suspension of mouse brain infected with the neurotropic strain of yellow fever virus being mixed with 3.0 c.c. of the serum to be tested. As a routine the sera before mixing with the virus suspension were diluted 1 in 8 with saline. Six mice were used in each test and each mouse, after receiving starch intracerebrally, was injected intraperitoneally with 0.6 c.c. of the serum-virus mixture. Whenever a "positive" test was obtained, that is to say, when not more than three of the six mice died within 10 days of injection, the serum was retested and, if possible, a second sample of serum was obtained from the same animal. Sera were examined from the following wild animals:—Bush rat, *Mastomys erythro-leucus* (nine); field rat, *Arvicanthis occidentalis* (one); ground pig, *Cricetomys gambianus* (two); and antelopes, various (three). These sera were obtained from Sierra Leone and the Gold Coast. The results of the tests were all negative and need not be further discussed since they agree with the negative results already obtained by FINDLAY *et al.* (1936).

Among domestic animals the sera of cows and sheep were examined.

Cow sera were examined from Sierra Leone, the Gold Coast, Uganda, the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, Kenya, England, France and India. The results obtained with these sera by the mouse protection tests are shown in Table I: it will be seen that of 83 cow sera from Sierra Leone, Uganda and the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan 16 or 19 per cent. proved positive. These sera were all obtained from areas where human cases of yellow fever have actually occurred or in which the mouse protection test applied to human sera has given positive results. In Uganda where the percentage of human sera giving positive tests is small, the percentage of cow sera "protecting" was large, ten out of twenty-two being "positive." In Kenya, however, human cases of yellow fever have never

TABLE I.

EXAMINATION OF COW SERA FOR POWER OF NEUTRALIZING YELLOW FEVER VIRUS *in vitro*.

Country.	Number of Sera Examined.	Number of Sera "Protecting."	Number of Sera "Not Protecting."
England	119	1 (0)*	118
France	34	0	34
India	40	3 (1)*	37
Kenya	82	11	71
Sierra Leone	16	1	15
Gold Coast	15	0	15
Uganda	22	12	10
Anglo-Egyptian Sudan	30	3	27
	358	31	327

*Result of retesting a second sample of serum: in the case of the Indian bulls only two of the three positives were retested.

occurred nor has the mouse protection test applied to human sera so far given positive results: nevertheless, of eighty-two cow sera eleven were "positive." These positives curiously enough all came from the district of Lake Naivasha, which is nearer Uganda than the coastal region; no positives were obtained from the coast. The possibility that the Kenya cows had been bitten by mosquitoes or other arthropods infected with the yellow fever virus cannot be entirely excluded. In the case of the Indian cattle—Himalayan bulls—the possibility of infection with the virus of yellow fever can be entirely excluded. From two of the three Indian cattle which repeatedly gave a positive test with the first sample of serum, second specimens were obtained after an interval of

about 5 months. In the case of one bull, No. 544, the first test on the second specimen was inconclusive, three of six mice surviving, a second test negative, one of six surviving. This serum which was at first recorded as positive was therefore on further examination classed as negative. The other bull, No. 310, which had been positive with the first specimen, was also positive with the second and protected up to a dilution of one in sixty-four. Thirty-four cow sera from France were all negative. Of 119 sera from English cows 118 were negative. One serum was positive three times but a second sample obtained 5 months later was negative. This cow, "Dumpling," had lived all its life in

TABLE II.

TITRES IN WHICH COW SERA "INHIBITED" THE YELLOW FEVER VIRUS IN THE MOUSE PROTECTION TEST.*

Country.	Description of Cow.	Sex.		Dilutions of Serum.				
				1/8	1/16	1/32	1/64	1/128
England (Somerset)	"Dumpling"	F	1st sample	6	5	0	0	—
			2nd "	0	0	—	—	—
India (Himalayas)	Hill Bull 310	M	1st "	6	6	6	5	1
			2nd "	6	5	5	5	1
	" 387	M	1st "	5	5	2	0	1
			2nd "	not available				
	" 544	M	1st "	5	2	0	—	—
			2nd "	1	1	0	—	—
Kenya	No. 1	F		5	6	4	4	1
Anglo-Egyptian Sudan (Darfur)	M 20	F		6	6	1	0	—

*Number of mice living 10 days after intraperitoneal injection of virus and serum are recorded: six mice inoculated in each batch.

Somersetshire. Thus, of 175 cow sera from areas where yellow fever is not known to be present in man not more than thirteen sera (7 per cent.) could finally be classed as positive, and of these thirteen sera eleven came from an area in Kenya not very far removed from the Uganda border. Of seventy sheep sera from Kenya three protected. Two from Uganda were negative.

In Table II are shown the titres in which certain of the cow sera protected; the figures shown are the number of mice living after 10 days, six mice having been inoculated with each serum dilution.

THE SPECIFICITY OF THE MOUSE PROTECTION TEST FOR HUMAN SERA.

The specificity of the mouse protection test for the sera of man appears to be very great. Of the many thousands of human sera that have been examined, only four have given positive tests when, as far as is known, the individuals had never had an opportunity of contracting yellow fever. These four persons with positive sera reported by SAWYER, BAUER and WHITMAN (1937) included one Canadian, and two adults and one child from India. The serum of the Canadian gave partial protection in three successive tests while on further examination 5 months later another specimen of serum gave two positive tests, one inconclusive and one negative. From India the serum of a 13-year-old child from Calcutta tested three times with a 10 per cent. virus emulsion gave inconclusive results twice and full protection once. A second specimen secured 8 months later, when tested against a 20 per cent. emulsion of virus, was completely negative. Two Tamil natives who had lived in the Chingleput District in Southern India all their lives also gave anomalous results. The sera of both individuals, P. B., aged 17, and N., aged 40, gave full protection on repeated tests with a 10 per cent. emulsion of virus both with undiluted serum and when diluted one in ten. P. B.'s serum tested 15 months later, against a 20 per cent. suspension of virus gave one inconclusive test and one clear-cut negative. N.'s was retested 11 months after the first testing and again a third time after an interval of 22 months. On the first occasion, in May, 1932, with a 10 per cent. virus suspension the serum protected undiluted and in dilutions of one in two and one in ten. In June, 1933, with a 20 per cent. virus suspension the serum protected undiluted and in a dilution of one in ten but gave an inconclusive result with a dilution of one in sixteen and no protection in dilutions of one in thirty-two and one in sixty-four. In April, 1935, with a 20 per cent. virus suspension, the serum protected undiluted and in a dilution of one in two, but dilutions of one in four and one in thirty-two failed to protect.

These results are not unlike those obtained with the cow sera except that the percentage of cow sera giving "positives" is considerably higher.

THE SPECIFICITY OF THE MOUSE PROTECTION TEST FOR ANIMAL SERA.

The specificity of the mouse protection test for the sera of domestic animals is as yet unproven. Possible explanations for the virucidal action of cow and sheep sera on the yellow fever virus are:—

- (1) Virucidal substances in varying amounts may be normally present in the sera of cows and sheep.
- (2) Virucidal substances may appear under certain physiological conditions.
- (3) Virucidal substances may appear as a result of bacterial or virus infections other than yellow fever.
- (4) Virucidal antibodies may appear as a result of infection with the organism of yellow fever.

It is now well known that bacterial agglutinins and bactericidal substances may often be met with in normal human and animal sera, while trypanocidal substances in normal human sera have lately been demonstrated. In view of the fact that as shown by MACKEY and SCHROEDER (1936) cord suspensions of rabies and poliomyelitis viruses are completely inactivated by the addition of 40 to 50 per cent. urea solutions, it was thought that a high urea content of the serum might possibly have a virucidal effect. It was found that, as in the case of poliomyelitis and rabies virus, crystals of urea ground up with a mouse brain infected with neutropic yellow fever virus destroyed the virus, but the amount of urea which had to be added to the serum, if the virus was to be inactivated, was far greater than that present in cow sera. The urea content of "protecting" and non-protecting cow sera, very kindly estimated for us by Prof. E. C. DODDS, was in fact found to show no significant variation.

In the case of poliomyelitis, JUNGBLUT (1935) has suggested that virucidal substances may occur under certain physiological conditions, since he has found that the sera of pregnant mares may destroy the virus of acute anterior poliomyelitis.

In the present series of cow sera "positives" were obtained from both bulls and cows, though since the English cow, "Dumpling," was "positive" shortly after a pregnancy and "negative" 5 months later there may be some connection between the physiological conditions and the presence of virucidal substances.

The fact that infection with rickettsiae produces agglutinins for various strains of *Bacillus proteus* has suggested the possibility that other diseases may possibly give rise to yellow fever virucidal substances in cow sera. In the case of human beings the production of yellow fever immune bodies by organisms other than that of yellow fever has been intensively investigated, so far with negative results: the question of cow diseases has not been so thoroughly studied. The diseases which might conceivably give rise to such a non-specific immunity in cows are contagious abortion, rinderpest, three-day sickness of cattle and Rift Valley fever. The last disease can be definitely excluded since all the sera possessing virucidal properties against yellow fever virus were tested against Rift Valley fever virus and found to have no action on this virus while cow sera protecting against Rift Valley fever virus were not virucidal to yellow fever. Many of the African cow sera were from animals which had been immunized against rinderpest so that it seems unlikely that rinderpest produces immune bodies which neutralise the yellow fever virus. The question of infection with *Brucella abortus* and with the agent, probably a virus, causing three-day sickness of cattle is receiving further study.

Finally there is the possibility that, in addition to a few cattle sera containing non-specific virucidal substances, specific immune bodies may be caused by infection with the virus of yellow fever. In order to study the reaction of the cow to the virus of yellow fever, a 2-months-old calf was injected subcutaneously

with 5.0 c.c. of serum obtained from a rhesus monkey on the first day of fever after infection with the Asibi strain of pantropic yellow fever virus. Before injection the serum of the calf was tested for its protective action against yellow fever virus by the mouse protection test and found to give a negative result. The calf showed no febrile reaction during the following 3 weeks. Blood removed 48 hours after the injection and thereafter every 2 days up to 14 days after the inoculation was injected intracerebrally in mice. Virus was present in the peripheral blood stream 4 days after injection of the virus but absent on the 6th day. A second injection of 5.0 c.c. of infected monkey serum 3 weeks after the first inoculation failed to produce any febrile reaction: the serum tested 21 days later protected in a dilution of one in sixteen. This would seem to indicate that the cow suffers a symptomless infection with yellow fever virus, although it subsequently develops immune bodies.

DISCUSSION.

In the present state of our knowledge the results obtained from an examination of the sera of cows by the mouse protection test are difficult, if not impossible, to interpret correctly. On the one hand sera from cattle in Uganda give a high percentage of "positive" results while similar "positives" have been obtained from Sierra Leone and the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan. Cattle from these areas may conceivably have been infected by the yellow fever virus and it is possible, though improbable in view of the absence of positive human sera, that cattle from Kenya may also have been infected. The discrepancy between human and animal sera could only be explained if in East Africa the insect vectors of yellow fever were zoophilic rather than anthropophilic as in Senegal, according to MATHIS (1935), *Culex fatigans* is ornithophilic rather than anthropophilic. On the other hand the cattle from India yielding positive sera could not possibly have been exposed to infection with yellow fever.

Further observations must obviously be made on the action of cattle sera on the virus of yellow fever. Whatever the results of these further observations may be they need not be taken as in any way invalidating the specificity of the mouse protection test as applied to human sera; they do, however, suggest caution in interpreting the results of the test as applied to animal sera, unless at the same time negative results are obtained with sera from the same species living in areas where yellow fever is not endemic.

CONCLUSIONS.

1. Sera from the bush rat, *Mastomys erythroleucus*, the field rat, *Arvicanthis occidentalis*, the ground pig, *Cricetomys gambianus* and various antelopes from the Gold Coast and Sierra Leone failed to show the presence of yellow fever immune bodies.

2. Of eighty-three cow sera from Sierra Leone, the Gold Coast, Uganda, and the Anglo-Agyptian Sudan, areas where yellow fever immune bodies are found in human sera, 16 or 19 per cent. neutralized the yellow fever virus in the mouse protection test.

3. Of eighty-two cow sera from Kenya where yellow fever in man is unknown, eleven were "positive" by the mouse protection test.

4. Of 153 cow sera from England and France one was "positive" but a second sample from the same cow retested 5 months later was negative.

5. Of forty cow sera from the Himalayas in India three were positive: on retesting second samples from two of these animals one serum was positive in a dilution of one in sixty-four, the other was negative.

6. Of seventy sheep sera from Kenya three protected.

7. Possible explanations of these results are discussed.

REFERENCES.

- FINDLAY, G. M. & MACCALLUM, F. O. (1937). *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 30, 507.
———, STÉFANOPOULO, G. J., DAVEY, T. H. & MAHAFFY, A. F. (1936). *Ibid.*, 29, 419.
JUNGEBLUT, C. W. (1935). *Proc. Soc. exp. Biol.*, 33, 137.
MACKAY, E. M. & SCHROEDER, C. (1936). *Ibid.*, 35, 74.
MATHIS, M. (1935). *Bull. Soc. Path. exot.*, 28, 577.
SAWYER, W. A., BAUER, J. H. & WHITMAN, L. (1937). *Amer. J. trop. Med.*, 17, 137.
——— & LLOYD, W. (1931). *J. exp. Med.*, 54, 533.
SOPER, F. L. (1936). *Quart. Bull. Hlth. Org., L. o. N.*, 5, 19.
WILSON, D. B. (1937). Quoted by SOPER, F. L. *Amer. J. Publ. Hlth.*, 27, 1.

ONYALAI: A REVIEW.

BY

W. K. BLACKIE, M.D., PH.D., M.R.C.P. (EDIN.), D.T.M. & H. (ENG.)*
Salisbury, Southern Rhodesia.

NOMENCLATURE.

To the natives of West Central Africa the name onyalai signifies a dangerous haemorrhagic disease characterized by the formation of blood-filled bullae in the mucous membrane of the mouth and elsewhere, from which free and often fatal haemorrhage occurs. This disease, however, is known to exist beyond the confines of West Central Africa, with the result that the nomenclature of the disease is determined largely by its tribal incidence. The significance of these native names can be assessed most satisfactorily by local investigation and enquiry, hence it is not proposed to make a detailed etymological study of the nomenclature, particularly as, in a number of cases, either the clinical descriptions associated with a given native name are incomplete or else it is abundantly clear that the term employed has generic significance only, in the sense that it includes a variety of haemorrhagic diseases.

How the term onyalai is derived, or what it means, it is not possible to say; but as will be seen later it is first used by WELLMAN (1904) in his conspectus of the tropical diseases of the Highlands of West Central Africa. The name onyalai appears to be unknown to the indigenous natives of both Northern and Southern Rhodesia although they are for the most part well aware of the disease. In Northern Rhodesia GILKES (1934) states that the condition is termed *chilopa* or *akembe*. In Southern Rhodesia the term *mhuka* is used by the Mashona and *manunga* by the Matebele. It is clear, however, that whilst these terms refer to a specific haemorrhagic disease they are also employed by the native of the present day to describe practically any disease in which bleeding is a salient feature.

*My thanks are due to Dr. H. H. SCOTT, of the Bureau of Hygiene and Tropical Diseases for his generous assistance with the bibliography, to Dr. JAMES LEGGATE, of the Southern Rhodesian Medical Service, for kindly supplying me with clinical material, and to Mr. N. H. MYERS for his enthusiastic assistance with the haematological investigations.

Two other native names thought to be synonymous with onyalai are *edjuo* or *edyuo* (FELDMANN, 1905) and *kafindo* (MENSE, 1906). The name *edjuo* is first used by FELDMANN (1905) in a short article on trypanosomiasis and parotid swellings met with amongst the natives of what was then known as German East Africa. FELDMANN noted that the banana-eating natives of this area were prone to develop a parotid swelling accompanied by strabismus and mental deterioration. In some cases the syndrome was complicated by a stomatitis to which the name *edjuo* was applied and MENSE (1906) was inclined to regard *edjuo* as synonymous with onyalai. It is possible that MENSE had access to more detailed information than is contained in FELDMANN's article since it is clear that the clinical descriptions contained in this article do not, in the writer's opinion, warrant the conclusion that *edjuo* and onyalai are one and the same disease.

MENSE (1906) mentions a condition met with in the Congo and referred to by the Unyamwezi people by the name *kafindo*. The clinical features of this disease include headache, mental depression, swollen tongue, dyspnoea, cardiac disturbances and sometimes blood in the stools. As will be seen later *kafindo* has many clinical features in common with onyalai but in the description given by MENSE there is no reference to the haemorrhagic bullae so characteristic of onyalai nor does he appear to have encountered a fatal case. MENSE himself suggests that *kafindo* is probably a manifestation of *Euphorbiaceae* poisoning. At any rate it would appear unwise to regard *kafindo* and onyalai as synonymous until more information is available concerning the former disease.

The study of the nomenclature of onyalai would appear to be still further complicated by the fact that traditional knowledge of the disease extends beyond its geographical distribution. This aspect of the problem may be illustrated by making reference to a recent paper (MATTLET, 1935). Whilst working in the Ruandi-Urundi region of the Congo, MATTLET was able to investigate a grave disease regarded by the White Fathers as well as by the local natives as *kafindo* (sometimes called *kafindo-findo* or *kapfura*). It is evident, however, from MATTLET's studies that the natives of this area although aware of the existence of some such dread disease were poorly versed in its clinical features since MATTLET is satisfied that the cases shown him as typical examples of *kafindo-findo* were cases of cerebral infection with *Plasmodium falciparum*. The surprising failure on the part of a native population to recognize malarial infection is explained on the grounds that in this particular area of high plateaux malaria has only recently been introduced. If MATTLET's explanation be accepted this example serves to show that considerable care and discretion are necessary in the interpretation of the natives' names of obscure diseases.

HISTORICAL.

The first reference to onyalai in English literature appears in a paper by WELLMAN (1904). In the course of a series of notes on the various diseases met

with in the Benguela district, Angola, since 1896 WELLMAN refers briefly to "a very treacherous disease" characterized by the presence of haemorrhagic bullae in the mouth and elsewhere and designated onyalai by the natives of West Central Africa. Although no statistics are given in this paper the disease was apparently of common occurrence in the Benguela district and WELLMAN appears to have been aware of its dangerous and fatal aspects. [This paper was reproduced in America in 1905 (WELLMAN, 1905.)]

A few months later in the same year MASSEY (1904) described a short series of cases of onyalai from amongst the natives of Portuguese West Africa. MASSEY also draws attention to the fact that the natives regarded the disease with fear and dread and illustrates the rapidly fatal character of the condition by referring to a robust native girl of 17 years who died the day following the appearance of the blood-filled vesicles inside the mouth.

In part justification of the belief held by the natives of Portuguese West Africa that onyalai occurred in the "far interior of Africa" MASSEY (1906 and 1907) reports a case of the disease in a native of the Baluba tribe on the Lualaba River about 10° south latitude, his earlier cases having been encountered about 13° south latitude.

WELLMAN (1907 and 1908), after describing a fatal case of onyalai, goes on to discuss in some detail the history, nature, symptoms, prognosis and treatment of the disease based on his experiences in Portuguese West Africa. WELLMAN concludes his discussion by saying that he is inclined to regard onyalai as a specific entity—a form of acute infectious disease, the cause of which has not yet been ascertained.

BALFOUR and ARCHIBALD (1908), although unable to find any records of the condition in the Sudan, drew the attention of tropical workers to the existence of this disease and stress the need for additional information.

No further references to onyalai can be traced until WELCH (1920) described a case in a member of the Wa Meru tribe who inhabit the cool foot-hills to the north-east of Mount Kenya. So far as WELCH could ascertain the disease was unknown to the natives of Kenya and as he points out in 1934 this is the first recorded case from the East African Protectorate (WELCH, 1934).

The first mention of the occurrence of onyalai in the Rhodesias is made by SCOTT (1929) whose description of the condition is based largely on notes and observations supplied by Dr. WALLACE, of the Northern Rhodesian Medical Service. The disease is described as widespread in Northern Rhodesia where, as already stated, it is designated "chilopa" or "akembe." Thus some fifteen cases were encountered annually in the Broken Hill area. Finally, GILKES (1934) gives an interesting account of his experiences of onyalai (chilopa) in Northern Rhodesia and states that the disease occurs in the villages of the Luangwa and Zambesi valleys. He is the first writer to give a systematic account of the postmortem findings but was obviously handicapped in his laboratory studies by the lack of adequate facilities. In the matter of aetiology he is inclined to

regard the disease as a non-infectious condition attributable to vitamin deficiency. The first reference to onyalai in Southern Rhodesia appears in the Report on the Public Health for the year 1924 by Dr. A. M. FLEMING, at that time Medical Director for the Colony. Commenting on the diseases peculiar to Southern Rhodesian natives, FLEMING states that one of his officers, Dr. ELLIS, reported a case of onyalai during the year, but apart from remarking on the rarity of this disease no further comment is made. In subsequent annual reports occasional references are made to the occurrence of "purpura" amongst the natives and deaths are ascribed to this cause from time to time. It is clear, however, from conversations and personal communications that medical officers in different parts of the Colony have long been aware of the existence of onyalai amongst Rhodesian natives and, as will be shown later, a most effective method of treatment was evolved by one of them.

So far as can be ascertained onyalai has not been encountered outside the African continent although a condition bearing a superficial resemblance to onyalai has been described by J. PRESTON MAXWELL (1901) from the Fokien region of South China. This condition is characterized by the formation of tough haemorrhagic bullae situated on the roof of the mouth, on the palate, uvula, inside the cheeks and in the pharynx. It is not the result of trauma but is attributed by the Chinese to the action of the web of a peculiar fly-catching spider. MAXWELL states that several of his patients assured him that they have been immediately victimised on taking condiments from a bowl from which the spider had just escaped. Apart from occasional dysphagia or dyspnoea the prognosis in this disease is stated to be good and apparently it lacks the sinister reputation that onyalai enjoys amongst the natives of Central Africa. It appears doubtful, therefore, if this peculiar disease can be regarded as synonymous with onyalai although their identity or otherwise could readily be determined by comparative haematological studies.

AETIOLOGY.

The cause of this peculiar disease is still unknown. Various suggestions have been put forward but these will be discussed later. To judge from the records of dispensaries and native hospitals males are affected more frequently than females. It is most commonly met with in early adult life, although both MASSEY (1904) and GILKES (1934) refer to cases occurring in young children. In addition most observers draw attention to the fact that the disease occurs with considerable frequency in apparently strong and robust subjects. There is a considerable amount of circumstantial evidence in support of the idea that the disease may exhibit a familial tendency, while GILKES (1934) believes that the condition may on occasion be congenital. So far as can be ascertained from a study of the literature and from personal experience cases may be seen at all seasons of the year but always sporadically. Finally, there is no evidence that the disease is either infectious or contagious.

CLINICAL FEATURES.

The disease develops suddenly. The prodromal symptoms include malaise, headache, pains in the chest (GILKES, 1934), in the muscles of the legs and in the bones (MASSEY, 1904). The temperature rises in most cases though not in all. In the writer's experience the maximum oral temperature encountered was 101.2° F. on the 3rd day of the illness. GILKES (1934) points out that while the temperature seldom rises above 100° F., a temperature of 103° or 104° F. is usually of favourable prognostic significance. Fatal cases frequently show a persistently subnormal temperature. The patient soon grows listless and dull. The eyes are "heavy" and the conjunctivae suffused; the tongue is often swollen and painful and as WELLMAN (1908) points out the parotids may also become inflamed and tender. Anorexia is common at this early stage whilst the abdominal colic which often occurs is probably a manifestation of early bleeding into the gut. Numbness in different parts of the body is sometimes a feature.

Bleeding commonly sets in within 4 to 6 hours of these initial symptoms. In the Rhodesian cases, bleeding from the mouth and nose usually constitutes the presenting feature of the established disease, whereas in the cases described by WELLMAN and MASSEY although oral and nasal bleeding is recognized it is clear that haematuria is generally the salient clinical feature. The bleeding occurs as a sequel to the formation of haemorrhagic bullae in the skin and mucous membranes. These bullae can be studied most readily in relation to the buccal cavity where they are seen to vary in size from a few millimetres in diameter to large irregular blebs several centimetres across. The interior of the larger bullae is usually trabeculated while the outer surface shows varying degrees of umbilication. These haemorrhagic effusions consist of dark, loosely coagulated or non-coagulated blood which extend deeply into the submucous layer. The bullae so formed are found inside the cheek, on the lips, under the mucous membrane of the tongue and on both hard and soft palate. In the more serious cases bullae similar in character occur in relation to the nose, naso-pharynx, larynx, vocal cords, trachea, oesophagus, stomach, intestines and renal tract (MASSEY, 1904; WELLMAN, 1908). In addition, localized bleeding may occur into the skin and conjunctivae. It is of interest to note that the buccal lesions of onyala although bearing a superficial resemblance to scurvy are unaccompanied by the characteristic gingival "budding" of the latter disease. Blood oozes steadily or intermittently into the mouth and nose and the breath rapidly becomes offensive.

As the disease progresses the mucous membranes grow pale and according to WELCH (1920) the sclerae may become faintly tinged with yellow. The same observer states that the spleen may enlarge and extend 1½ inches below the costal margin, but this is seldom a feature of the Rhodesian cases.

The patient grows more languid and stupid and in the severe type of case active haemorrhage occurs from the intestines and urinary tract. In some

regions, as already mentioned, bleeding from the urinary tract appears to constitute the major symptom of the disease.

Another feature of the graver type of case is the occurrence of the physical signs of bronchopneumonia probably due to the presence of small haemorrhagic areas scattered throughout the lung substance to which SCOTT (1929) has drawn attention. WELLMAN (1904) states briefly that fatal haemorrhage may occur into the brain and its membranes and again in 1908 refers to the occurrence of central nervous system involvement in three of his cases, the signs being those of acute cerebral haemorrhage with or without the characteristic oral or skin vesicles. While there is no doubt that cerebral haemorrhage may constitute the presenting symptom in onyalai it would appear unwise to attribute such haemorrhages to this disease in the combined absence of mouth lesions and confirmatory haematological data.

As evidence of the occurrence of central nervous system involvement in onyalai reference may be made to a case met with in the course of the present investigation. The patient, a native of Northern Rhodesia was admitted to the Salisbury Native Hospital in a comatose state. A massive haematoma occupied the area surrounding the right eye together with the whole of the right temporal region. No clinical history could be obtained but it was believed that the native had been the victim of a murderous assault. On careful clinical examination, however, the characteristic haemorrhagic bullae of onyalai were discovered and a haematological investigation confirmed the diagnosis. The patient died within a few hours of his admission to hospital and postmortem examination revealed a massive haemorrhage into the right frontal region of the cerebrum. Although the possibility of assault was conclusively eliminated in this instance, the possible medico-legal complications which may arise in a case of this nature are apparent.

The course of the disease is very variable. Some cases show a gentle oozing of blood from the mouth and nose for a few days with or without traces of blood in the urine. Such cases recover rapidly and apart from a mild hypochromic anaemia appear little the worse for their experience. Other cases bleed freely from the mouth, nose and urinary tract where fresh crops of bullae appear from time to time and in different situations. Severe prostration and languor accompany the attack while convalescence is slow and protracted. Others again pour blood from the nose, mouth, urinary tract and bowel so that death rapidly supervenes. In the cerebral type of the disease death may occur before external bleeding of any significance has had time to occur.

TREATMENT.

It is not proposed to discuss in any detail the various native remedies employed in the treatment of onyalai, although this aspect of the subject is not without interest. Suffice it to say that these remedies consist largely of plant

extracts usually applied externally. A plant commonly employed by the natives of Portuguese West Africa, according to WELLMAN (1908), was a species of *Albizzia* (*A. anthelmintica* A Brogn) while the Angoni natives, according to a Rhodesian authority, employ an aqueous emulsion of a bush called "mupungulila" in conjunction with the leaves of a tree called "kavunguti."

MASSEY, in his original communication of 1904, states that he gave 60 grains of sodium bicarbonate and half an ounce of unpurified cod liver oil each day internally. WELLMAN (1908) describes how he has tried quinine, various alkaline salts, oil of turpentine, acetate of lead, tannic acid, ergot and suprarenal extract but with no "perceptible results." He is inclined to think, however, that greater benefit is derived from arsenic "in full doses." WELCH (1920) treated his case with calcium chloride "in moderate doses" for 2 days followed by a tonic mixture, while GILKES (1934) recommends the following measures :— (1) Transfusion of blood; (2) Fowler's solution; (3) Injections of adrenalin, and (4) Calcium lactate. In addition a diet rich in vitamins is advocated.

In the writer's experience, however, the most effective treatment of onyalaï is that introduced by Dr. R. M. MORRIS, of the Southern Rhodesia Medical Service, in 1926.

The treatment consists in the intramuscular injection of 18 c.c. of donor's blood in 2 c.c. of 10 per cent. sodium citrate. The injection is given into the buttocks or outer aspect of the thigh. The total number of whole-blood injections necessary varies with the severity of the case, but most cases recover after two injections while the more severe ones require as many as five or six injections.

The relapse rate associated with this line of therapy cannot be stated owing to difficulties in maintaining a satisfactory follow-up system, but so far no "return cases" have been encountered.

The foregoing treatment is sometimes supplemented by means of intravenous injections of a calcium salt but there appears to be no real necessity for this addition so far as the control of haemorrhage is concerned.

Autohaemotherapy has been employed by some workers but in the writer's experience this method of treatment has not proved satisfactory and has been discarded in favour of donors' blood intramuscularly. Dr. A. P. MARTIN, however, now Medical Director of Southern Rhodesia, states that in 1930 he successfully employed autohaemotherapy in two severe cases of onyalaï. The general experience, however, is that autohaemotherapy is of little value in the routine treatment of the disease.

The value of the treatment of onyalaï by means of donor's blood can be more fully assessed after it has been tried out in different regions of Africa, but there can be little doubt that it has very materially reduced the mortality rate from this disease amongst the natives of Southern Rhodesia. Some of these cases, it may be noted, came from Northern Rhodesia.

While blood transfusion is also a suitable line of treatment it seems unnecessary to resort to this more elaborate method except in those cases which

show a severe grade of anaemia together with a reticulocyte percentage of less than 5 per cent. The subsequent treatment of a case of onyalai consists in the administration of suitable haematinics together with a diet which includes adequate amounts of meat, fresh fruit and vegetables.

PROGNOSIS.

Amongst the native population of those regions of Africa where onyalai occurs, the condition has acquired a sinister reputation and is widely regarded as a fatal disease. It can readily be understood how this conviction arose when one considers the profound effect which the sight of sudden, relentless and prostrating haemorrhage must exert on the impressionable native mind. WELLMAN (1904) confesses that at first he was tempted to make light of native tradition but after seeing cases die from the disease in the space of a few hours he revised his initial opinion. Writing in 1908, he states that of fourteen cases, three died ; while MASSEY (1904) records a fatal outcome in a robust girl of 17 years who died the day following the appearance of the oral lesions. GILKES (1934) found thirteen deaths in a series of fifty-three cases admitted to the Broken Hill Hospital, Northern Rhodesia, between 1920 and 1933 ; and in his own series of seventeen cases there were eight deaths. Of the seven cases studied by the writer one died from haemorrhage into the brain substance. While it is true that the native dread of onyalai is not without justification there is evidence to show that the mortality from the disease varies significantly in different districts, and according to WELLMAN (1908) it varies also at different seasons of the year.

Those cases in which only slight bleeding occurs from the mouth and nose usually subside spontaneously and recover completely within a few days, but where severe bleeding occurs from the mouth, bladder, bowel and elsewhere the patient is rapidly prostrated and the subnormal temperature assumes sinister significance. On the other hand, as GILKES (1934) points out, a vigorous febrile response is usually a favourable prognostic sign. Of even greater importance, however, in the prognosis of onyalai is the promptness and thoroughness with which the " whole-blood treatment " is instituted. Since the adoption of this particular therapeutic measure the prognosis has been so improved that a fatal outcome is generally the result of gross bleeding into some vital organ such as the brain or pancreas. Recovery when it occurs is usually complete but most observers agree that there is, in some cases, a tendency for the condition to recur, although the recurrence may not take place until months or years afterwards. The study of this aspect of the problem, however, is beset with many difficulties in view of the virtual impossibility of maintaining a " follow-up " system under existing conditions in Africa.

POSTMORTEM FINDINGS.

Although both WELLMAN and MASSEY encountered fatal cases of onyalaï no mention of postmortem findings is to be found in their writings. Brief reference to the postmortem appearances is made by SCOTT (1929), but the first systematic account is that given by GILKES (1934) whose paper should be consulted by all those interested in the disease.

The writer has twice had the opportunity of examining a fatal case of onyalaï postmortem and the following general account of the autopsy findings is based mainly on the notes of these cases. The body is commonly well developed and well nourished, but the visible mucous membranes are observed to be strikingly pallid. Areas of haemorrhage are commonly present in the skin and under the conjunctivae while the characteristic haemorrhagic bullae are readily demonstrated inside the mouth. The distribution and characteristics of these bullae have already been described. On opening the body cavities haemorrhagic spots or effusions are present in relation to all the serous surfaces. The pleural cavity contains a slight excess of more or less blood-stained fluid while the lung substance may be diffusely studded with areas of haemorrhage 1.5 to 2.0 cm. in diameter (SCOTT, 1929). In other cases the lungs show simple hypostatic congestion. The heart may show no significant changes apart from the subendocardial purpura or there may be recognizable haemorrhages into the myocardium.

The gastro-intestinal tract presents a striking appearance. Blood, either fluid or clotted, is readily demonstrable in the lumen of the oesophagus, stomach and intestine while haemorrhagic spots or areas are seen scattered throughout the gut from the stomach downwards.

In some cases haemorrhages take place into the pancreas, liver and spleen but even more striking is the massive bilateral effusion of blood into the peri-renal tissue or into the retroperitoneal tissue extending from the lower pole of the kidney to the pelvic brim. This peri-renal haemorrhage was, however, absent from the second case examined by the writer.

The urinary tract contains a variable quantity of blood or loose blood clot while haemorrhages can be seen in the walls of the renal pelves, ureters and urinary bladder. In one case examined the postmortem findings conformed in the main to the description already given but showed in addition a massive infiltration of the tissues of the right temporal and right orbital regions together with gross haemorrhage into the anterior region of the right cerebral hemisphere. In addition the blood had passed outwards into the subarachnoid space and inwards into the ventricular system. In this instance death appears to have occurred within a few hours of the onset of the disease. (See under Clinical Features.)

LABORATORY FINDINGS.

References to laboratory findings in onyalai are few in number and those that exist in the literature throw little light on the nature of the disease. WELCH (1920) mentions the differential leucocyte count in a case reported by him from the East African Protectorate but since the total leucocyte count is not given this observation is of negligible value although it is noted that no abnormal white or red cells were found.

GILKES (1934) makes brief reference to the appearance of "secondary anaemia," the non-reduction in the haemoglobin percentage and the presence of a leucopenia associated with an increase in small round cells. In regard to the urine he noted the presence of blood and blood casts while the stools consisted either of pure blood or showed visible melaena in association with blood-stained mucus. In cases with cough and expectoration red blood cells were demonstrated in the sputum. Apart from these observations no reference to laboratory findings has been found in the literature consulted. An attempt has therefore been made to elucidate the nature of onyalai by a laboratory study of seven cases which were admitted to the Salisbury Native Hospital during the year 1935. These cases all conformed with the accepted clinical description of the established disease and may be regarded as fairly representative of the type of onyalai met with in Southern Rhodesia. One fatal case (Case VI in the Tables) was encountered in the course of this investigation.

Haematological Data.

The haematological data recorded in the sequel were obtained before systematic treatment had been instituted and represent the state of the blood after 48 to 72 hours of bleeding.

TABLE I.
THE RED CELLS IN ONYALAI.

Case Number.	R.B.C.'s per c.mm.	Haemoglobin per cent. (Newcomer).	Colour Index.	Size of R.B.C.'s.	Reticulocytes per cent.
1	1,750,000	36	1.0	7.48 μ	0.6
2	2,520,000	54	1.08	7.32 μ	6.4
3	2,240,000	48	1.09	7.32 μ	1.0
4	4,640,000	90	0.98	7.32 μ	2.2
5	2,840,000	50	0.89	7.17 μ	1.2
6	3,430,000	77	1.13	7.12 μ	3.0
7	2,860,000	43	0.74	7.20 μ	5.0

Table I shows the rapid reduction in red cells which occurs within the first 2 or 3 days of the disease. As will be shown later there is no evidence of increased intravascular haemolysis, hence the rapid drop in the number of circulating red cells may be ascribed to two factors:—(1) The steady loss of blood from the affected mucous surfaces. (2) The haemorrhagic infiltration of the tissues and organs.

In the more severe degrees of anaemia an occasional nucleated red cell may be demonstrated but the characteristic feature of the Giemsa-stained blood film from a case of onyalaï is the variation in the size of the red corpuscles. This feature was not subjected to statistical analysis through the medium of a Price-Jones curve but a rough estimate of the mean red cell diameter was arrived at by means of Eve's halometer. In spite of the striking degree of anisocytosis it will be seen from Table I that the red cell diameters in onyalaï fall within the limits of the mean normality range. Associated with the reduction in red cells there is a parallel fall in the haemoglobin percentage, hence the resultant anaemia in a typical case of onyalaï is of the normochromic type which is commonly met with in any acute haemorrhage. In spite of the anaemic state of the blood the reticulocyte count is low in the initial stages of the disease which suggests that the erythroblastic marrow is exposed to some inhibitory influence at this time. As will be demonstrated later (see Table IV) a sharp reticulocytosis occurs during recovery from the disease.

In the normal healthy person the number of platelets in the peripheral circulation ranges between 250,000 and 500,000 per c.mm. (WHITBY and BRITTON, 1935) and there is good reason for applying the same standards to Southern Rhodesian natives in a normal state of health. In onyalaï, however, a most remarkable reduction of circulating platelets occurs at the onset of the disease. Whether or not the platelet reduction precedes the development of the haemorrhagic bullae is a matter for further investigation but by the time bleeding occurs the platelets have fallen far below the accepted normality range. The actual figures obtained in the course of the present investigation are given in Table II, and the technique employed in arriving at these figures was that advocated by CRAMER and BANNERMAN (1930). In some cases the platelets were so scanty that absolute accuracy in their enumeration was a matter of some difficulty and in these cases the results have been expressed as "less than 1,000" platelets per c.mm.

Using DUKE's method it was clearly demonstrated that this striking platelet deficiency was associated with a marked prolongation of the bleeding time. The normal bleeding time in healthy natives varies between 2 and 5 minutes but in the cases of onyalaï investigated the shortest bleeding time was 14 minutes and the longest 2 hours and 40 minutes. On the other hand the coagulation time invariably fell within normal limits showing that disintegration of the existing platelets occurred in a normal fashion and that no abnormality or deficiency existed in respect of the other elements concerned in the phenomenon

TABLE II.

THE BLOOD PLATELETS AND SOME PHYSICAL PROPERTIES OF THE BLOOD AND CAPILLARIES IN ONYALAI.

Case Number.	Platelets per c.mm.	Bleeding Time in Minutes.	Coagulation Time in Minutes.	Capillary Resistance Test.
1	1,750	40	3	—
2	2,100	50	3½	+
3	20,000	14½	2½	+
4	<1,000	160	3	+
5	130,640	—	—	—
6	17,150	14	3½	+
7	<1,000	42	3½	+

+ = Capillary resistance test positive.

— = No test or estimation performed.

of coagulation. In all cases the coagulation time was determined by the method of WRIGHT and COLEBROOK (1921).

The final point of interest in Table II is the positive capillary resistance test which unfortunately was not carried out on all the cases investigated. In dark-skinned natives the haemorrhagic spots of a positive capillary resistance test are often difficult to demonstrate but if the skin of the cubital fossa and wrist is previously cleared by means of clove oil the haemorrhages can then be readily seen. A positive capillary resistance test is generally regarded as an indication of some abnormality of the capillary endothelium and it is also stated (WHITBY and BRITTON, 1935) that a positive test signifies a platelet count of less than 70,000 per c.mm. It would appear, therefore, that some abnormality of the capillary endothelium may be a contributory factor in the production of the purpuric lesions of onyalai.

TABLE III.

THE WHITE CELLS IN ONYALAI.

Case Number.	Total Cells.	Neutrophils per cent.	Lymphocytes per cent.	Monocytes per cent.	Eosinophils per cent.	Basophils per cent.
1	11,400	70	22	5	3	0
2	6,800	61	33	5	1	0
3	16,600	75	19	6	0	0
4	12,400	65	28	5	2	0
5	—	—	—	—	—	—
6	7,000	46	50	4	0	0
7	6,000	68	25	4	3	0

The impression formed by a study of the white blood cells in onyalai is that a definite leucopenia exists at the time of the onset of the bleeding. The neutrophils are reduced while the mononuclears show a relative increase. The eosinophils and basophils are not affected but no doubt the white cell picture is liable to modification in the presence of coincident parasitic infection.

Table III shows a considerable variation in the total cell counts but this variation can probably be explained in terms of the duration of the illness as it is thought that a steady rise in white cells follows hard in the wake of the initial leucopenia. This aspect of the problem, however, has not been studied in detail. So far as can be ascertained abnormal white cells are not found in the peripheral circulation.

The haematological findings discussed so far refer to the early phases of the disease but in three cases it was possible to make a limited number of observations over periods of approximately 3 weeks' duration. Since the results obtained conform to a more or less definite pattern it is proposed to select one case only in illustration of the haematological changes that occur from the onset of the disease to the stage of full recovery. These results are contained in Table IV.

TABLE IV.
HAEMATOLOGICAL CHANGES FROM ONSET TO RECOVERY IN A CASE OF ONYALAI.

Date. 1935. Dec.	R.B.C.'s per c.mm.	Haemoglobin per cent. (Newcomer).	Colour Index.	Size of R.B.C.'s.	Reticulocytes per cent.	Platelets per c.mm.
2	1,750,000	36	1.0	7.48 μ	0.6	1,750
3	1,500,000	33	1.1	7.48 μ	4.0	106,500
6	1,950,000	40	1.0	7.64 μ	20.0	229,000
8	2,310,000	44	0.96	6.64 μ	26.4	231,000
10	2,700,000	50	0.92	7.48 μ	22.2	—
11	2,830,000	56	1.0	7.64 μ	21.4	223,000
13	2,900,000	56	0.97	7.32 μ	13.0	—
16	3,220,000	61	0.95	7.48 μ	5.6	264,000
20	3,420,000	67	0.99	7.64 μ	2.2	—
27	4,140,000	67	0.82	7.48 μ	2.4	280,000

The first two blood counts listed in Table IV were made while active bleeding was still in progress. Although 20 c.c. of whole blood had been given before the second count was made, all the subsequent observations were made after the complete cessation of haemorrhage. It is clear from this table that a steady and rapid rise in the numbers of red cells occurs immediately bleeding stops while a study of the reticulocyte percentage suggests that although some attempt is made by the erythroblastic marrow to restore the red cells during the stage of active bleeding a maximal response does not occur until some 3 to 6 days

after the cessation of haemorrhage. As is usually the case, the rise in the haemoglobin percentage lags significantly behind the rise in the red cells. Great interest naturally attaches to the behaviour of the platelets and Table IV shows that from being present in insignificant numbers at the onset of the disease they show an abrupt increase which makes itself apparent in the brief space of 24 hours. The significance of this abrupt rise will be discussed later but it is of importance to note that the rise in platelets *precedes* the cessation of haemorrhages. It is thus possible that the fall in platelets may precede the onset of haemorrhage but this hypothesis requires confirmation. The platelets continue to rise slowly and steadily after the initial increase but probably several weeks have to elapse before the platelet count is fully restored to normal values.

TABLE V.

BIOCHEMISTRY OF THE BLOOD IN ONYALAI.

Case Number.	Plasma Phosphorus.	Serum Calcium.	Urea.	Non-protein Nitrogen.	Cholesterol.	Chloride.	Sugar.
1	2.0	9.1	77	83	—	310	—
2	2.95	8.40	25.2	—	—	—	—
3	3.0	7.75	25	29	165	320	—
4	2.44	8.50	30	34	140	300	—
5	—	8.75	35	39	168	320	—
6	2.7	10.3	25	34	85	300	200
7	2.28	8.5	22	—	—	—	80

It is not proposed to discuss the biochemical findings in any detail since the data collected on this aspect are far from complete but a table has been prepared from the results obtained as they may constitute a basis for some future study or comparison. It will be noted that in most instances the serum calcium falls a little below normal values but it is not possible to regard this as a particular feature of onyalai in view of the fact that Rhodesian natives as a group tend to show low values for their serum calcium. The high urea and non-protein nitrogen values in Case 1, Table V, is explained by the presence of an acute glomerulo-nephritis while the high sugar content of the blood in Case 6 was due to an intravenous glucose saline having been given shortly before the blood was collected.

The van den Bergh reaction was carried out in four cases only but no significant results were obtained which suggests that the severe anaemic state which develops so rapidly in onyalai is not the result of intravascular haemolysis. It is probable, however, that had the test been repeated during the recovery phase an indirect reaction would have appeared in some cases as a sequel to the disintegration of effused blood.

The Wassermann reaction was carried out on the serum of four cases with negative results. This suggests that neither syphilis nor yaws is concerned with the onset of onyalaï.

THE URINE.

It is noteworthy that in the Southern Rhodesian cases of onyalaï hæmaturia is a much less prominent feature than it is in the cases described from Portuguese West Africa. Indeed, it may be said that gross hæmaturia in a Rhodesian case of onyalaï is of grave prognostic significance. The results of the urinary examinations carried out on the present series of cases are summarized in Tables VI and VII.

TABLE VI.

THE URINE IN ONYALAI (A).

Case Number.	Specific Gravity.	Reaction.	Albumin.	Sugar.	Acetone.	Urobilin.
1	1,015	Alkaline	++	—	—	—
2	1,006	Acid	—	—	—	—
3	1,018	Alkaline	++	—	—	—
4	1,010	Acid	+	—	—	—
5	1,015	Acid	+	—	—	—
6	1,012	Acid	++	—	—	—
7	1,016	Acid	++	—	—	—

TABLE VII.

THE URINE IN ONYALAI (B).

Case Number.	Leucocytes.	Red Cells.	Epithelial Cells.	Casts.	Crystals.	<i>B. hæmatobium</i> .
1	+	++	A few	Granular	Phosphate	—
2	A few	—	A few	—	—	—
3	++	+	+	—	Phosphate	+
4	A few	++	A few	—	—	—
5	+	++	+	—	Oxalate	—
6	A few	++	+	—	—	+
7	++	+++	A few	—	—	—

THE FAECES.

The faeces were systematically examined for ova and protozoa and any abnormal cytological features were noted. In one case (Case 7 in the Tables) an infestation with *Taenia saginata* was demonstrated but all the others in the series appeared to be free of parasitic infection of the intestinal tract. Melaena was readily demonstrable in every case due to the swallowing of blood from the buccal and nasal lesions but in one case only (Case 6 in the Tables) was there evidence of free bleeding from the lower gut.

DISCUSSION.

The disease which has come to be known by the name onyalai may be said to be characterized by the sudden onset of bleeding from blood-filled bullae which form mainly in relation to mucous surfaces. The bleeding which occurs leads to severe grades of anaemia and in the absence of suitable treatment, frequently proves fatal.

Various views have been expressed in explanation of this peculiar disease of African natives. Thus WELLMAN (1908) sums up his discussion on the aetiology of the disease by saying that he is inclined to consider onyalai a specific entity—that is to say an acute infectious disease of unknown causation. He rules out malaria and trypanosomiasis as causal factors and although he points out that certain arrow poisons and certain forms of snake bite (especially bites by the puff-adder *Crotho arietans* (Gray)) may simulate onyalai he rightly concludes that they constitute different conditions. Finally he considers that onyalai differs from essential thrombocytopenia and from what are now known as the anaphylactoid purpuras.

MENSE (1906) in his discussion on the causation of kafindo suggested that the condition might be due to poisoning by *Euphorbiaceae* and other native plants but as it is not clearly established that MENSE was actually dealing with onyalai this aetiological factor need not be discussed further. There is certainly no evidence in support of *Euphorbiaceae* poisoning as the cause of onyalai amongst Rhodesian natives. GILKES (1934) is of the opinion that the disease is the result of vitamin deficiency though as he says, "there is no proof of this either in the history of cases or from the results of treatment." A similar view is expressed by CASTRONUOVO (1934) who concludes that the condition is probably another tropical avitaminosis although neither GILKES nor CASTRONUOVO develops the idea further. It is recognized of course that a form of purpura (simple symptomatic purpura) does arise in association with certain fevers, in certain toxic states, *e.g.*, snake bite, and in avitaminosis, *e.g.*, scurvy. In all such instances, however, the purpuric condition occurs with slight or no deficiency in the circulating blood platelets. The essential lesion appears to

consist in damage to the capillary endothelium either in the nature of an allergic phenomenon as in snake-bite poisoning or as a manifestation of some nutritional defect of the endothelium as in scurvy. Again, in simple symptomatic purpura there is no significant prolongation of the bleeding time and the clot retraction phenomenon presents no abnormalities unless for some reason an unusually severe degree of thrombocytopenia has been induced.

The nature of onyalai, however, becomes more apparent on considering the laboratory data recorded above. In the first place it may be stated that onyalai is not constantly associated with any particular form of parasitic infection. Of the seven cases subjected to laboratory investigation two showed an infection with *B. haematobium* and one with *Taenia saginata*. Repeated blood examinations failed to reveal the presence of blood parasites in any of the cases.

It has, however, been clearly established that the active phase of the disease is associated with a profound degree of platelet deficiency in the peripheral blood, so much so that in some cases it is with difficulty that an accurate enumeration of the platelets can be carried out. In support of the occurrence of this striking thrombocytopenia is the fact that the bleeding time is prolonged far beyond the limits of normality. As already stated the shortest bleeding time observed was 14 minutes and the longest 2 hours 40 minutes—a period far in excess of the normal 2 to 3 minutes. It may be said that in every instance the effect of the atmospheric temperature and the site of the puncture on the duration of the bleeding time was carefully controlled in healthy native subjects and in all cases the controls showed a bleeding time well within the normal range. The accepted explanation of the bleeding time is that given by DUKE (1915) who states that bleeding from small vessels is arrested mainly by the formation of intravascular thrombi composed of a conglomerate of platelets hence a dearth of platelets implies delay in the formation of these thrombi and therefore a prolongation of the bleeding time. Thus in onyalai the platelet deficiency is clearly reflected in a protracted bleeding time.

Further indirect evidence of platelet deficiency is to be found in the quality of the blood clot and although no special methods were employed in the study of this phenomenon, it was repeatedly demonstrated that the blood clot formed *in vitro* from cases of onyalai was soft and friable and showed imperfect syneresis. On the other hand, as shown in Table II, the coagulation time is unaffected in this disease.

One other factor remains to be considered in relation to the lesions of onyalai—namely the abnormal state of the capillary endothelium as revealed by the capillary resistance test of Hess. In this connection it may be said that while it was possible to demonstrate a positive test in five of the seven cases investigated, the purpuric lesions obtained were small and often difficult to see. This would seem to suggest that endothelial abnormality although a contributory factor is probably of secondary importance in the production of the lesions of onyalai—the thrombocytopenia constituting the primary factor.

The position is, therefore, that in onyalai there is :—

- (1) A profound thrombocytopenia,
- (2) A prolongation of the bleeding time,
- (3) A normal coagulation time,
- (4) Imperfect clot retraction, and
- (5) A positive capillary resistance test.

These findings enable onyalai to be placed in the category of the purpuras and in view of the thrombocytopenia, onyalai comes to be classed with those purpuras showing a quantitative deficiency of platelets. In this category we have :—

- (1) Essential thrombocytopenia, and
- (2) Symptomatic thrombocytopenia (WHITBY and BRITTON, 1935).

The latter condition is associated with a defect either of the bone marrow or of the spleen. The absence of a sustained granulopenia together with the reticulocytosis and rapid return of platelets to the circulation during the stage of recovery suggests that onyalai is not associated with any marrow defect. Furthermore, the rapid and complete recovery which follows upon the intramuscular injection of whole blood would be unlikely in the presence of a splenic defect of any importance, hence we may logically conclude that in onyalai we are dealing with an *acute* form of essential thrombocytopenia. Furthermore, in view of the evidence adduced in support of the contention that there is no marrow defect or aplasia in onyalai it is suggested that the thrombocytopenia is the result of defective maturation of the megakaryocyte, that is to say although megakaryocytes are present in the marrow in normal concentration there is a failure to bud off platelets in adequate numbers. This hypothesis is further strengthened by the abrupt rise in the platelet count which follows an intramuscular injection of whole blood which suggests that the reaction is due to the replacement of a factor normally required for the maturation of the megakaryocyte. How this deficiency is brought about in the first instance is not yet clear but in addition to inhibiting platelet production it leads to a modification in capillary endothelium and the subsequent appearance of the characteristic lesions of onyalai.

SUMMARY.

1. The nomenclature and previous literature relating to onyalai and allied diseases are briefly reviewed.
2. The aetiology and clinical features of onyalai are discussed.

3. The treatment of the disease is reviewed and an account given of Morris's method of treating the condition by intramuscular injections of whole blood from a healthy donor.

4. Prognosis is discussed and is shown to depend to a great extent on prompt treatment with whole-blood injections. No definite statement can be made on the question of relapses and recurrences.

5. A general account of the postmortem findings in onyalai is given.

6. The laboratory findings are discussed, the important points being (a) thrombocytopenia, (b) prolonged bleeding time, (c) normal coagulation time, (d) a positive capillary resistance test.

7. The suggestion is made, based on laboratory and clinical findings, that onyalai is an acute form of essential thrombocytopenia due to defective maturation of the megakaryocytes of the marrow with an associated modification of the capillary endothelium as a contributory cause in the production of the haemorrhagic bullae.

REFERENCES.

- BALFOUR, A. & ARCHIBALD, R. G. (1908). *Review of some Recent Advances in Tropical Medicine*, 139. London: Baillière, Tindall and Cox.
- CASTRONUOVO, G. (1934). Due gravi e mal note malattie africaine: Chilopa o onyalai: Chinkumbi o chiufo o karyembe. *Rif. med.*, 100, 1695.
- CRAMER, W. & BANNERMAN, R. G. (1929). The clinical significance of the blood platelets. *Lancet*, 1, 992.
- DUKE, W. W. (1915). *J. Amer. med. Ass.*, 65, 1600. (Quoted by WHITBY, L. E. H. & BRITTON, C. J. C., 1935 in *Disorders of the Blood*, 98. London: J. & A. Churchill, Ltd.)
- FELDMANN. (1905). *Medizinal-Berichte über die deutschen Schutzgebiete, 1903-4*, 45.
- FLEMING, A. M. (1925). *Report on the Public Health, 1924*, 20. Salisbury, Rhodesia: Government Printer.
- GILKES, H. A. (1934). Two little-known diseases of Northern Rhodesia: onyalai and chiufo. *Trans. R. Soc., trop. Med. Hyg.*, 27, 491.
- MASSEY, A. YALE. (1904). Onyalai, a disease of Central Africa. *J. trop. Med. (Hyg.)*, 7, 269.
- . (1906). Onyalai: a disease of Central Africa. (Correspondence). *Brit. med. J.* 2. 739.
- . (1907). Onyalai: a disease of Central Africa. *J. trop. Med. (Hyg.)*, 10, 116.
- MATLET, G. (1935). Le kapfura ou kafindo-findo. *Ann. Soc. belge Méd. trop.*, 15, 521.
- MAXWELL, J. PRESTON. (1901). On haemorrhagic bulla of the mouth and pharynx. *J. trop. Med. (Hyg.)*, 4, 211.
- MENSE, C. (1906). Einige wenig bekannte krankheitsbilder. *Handbuch der Tropenkrankheiten* 3, 789. Leipzig: J. A. Barth.
- SCOTT, H. H. (1929). Onyalai. *Medical Research in the Colonies, Protectorates and Mandated Territories*, 140. London: Colonial Medical Research Committee.
- WELCH, T. B. (1920). Observations on a case of onyalai in the East African Protectorate. *J. trop. Med. (Hyg.)*, 23, 138.
- . (1934). Onyalai. (Correspondence). *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. (Hyg.)*, 28, 103.

- WELLMAN, F. C. (1904). Brief conspectus of the tropical diseases common in the Highlands of West Central Africa. *J. trop. Med. (Hyg.)*, 7, 52.
- . (1905). Notes on tropical diseases of the Angola Highlands. *New York med. J.*, 82, 475.
- . (1907). Report on a peculiar disease of tropical Africa called onyalai. *Boston med. surg. J.*, 157, 365.
- . (1908). A fatal case of onyalai : with some remarks on the history, nature, symptoms, prognosis and treatment of the disease. *J. trop. Med. (Hyg.)*, 11, 119.
- WHITBY, L. E. H. & BRITTON, C. J. C. (1935). *Disorders of the Blood*, 27, 262. London : J. & A. Churchill, Ltd.
- WRIGHT, A. E. & COLEBROOK, L. (1921). *The Technique of the Teat and Capillary Glass Tube*. 2nd. Ed., 112. London : Constable.

TREATMENT OF MALARIA WITH IMMUNE BLOOD.

BY

N. LORANDO, M.D.*

AND

D. SOTERIADES, M.D.

Athens.

In September, 1935, we reported in the Panhellenic Congress of Salonika the first results of the treatment of malaria by injection of immune whole blood of persons living in the same area.

An account of this work, published in Greek, was later translated into English and published in London (LORANDO and SOTERIADES, 1936).

We think we ought now to give further details of this treatment, as from the beginning many experienced workers thought that either we were going to fail completely or to have only temporary results.

WORKING AREA.

We worked among 3,953 peasants living in the district of Marathon, in the Marathon Communal Hygiene Centre, established by the Greek Ministry of Hygiene and the American Near East Foundation in October, 1934.

The village of Marathon is situated 44 km. from Athens at the northern end of a plain 11 km. long and from 3 to 6 km. wide. This is the plain on which in ancient times Tetrapolis was situated (Marathon Trikorythos, Oenoi and Provalinthos) and which, after Thermopylae, was the most famous in Greece on account of the battle fought there in 490 B.C. between the Athenians and Persians. It has been practically deserted by the inhabitants because of another enemy, stronger than the Persians, malaria, which conquered the place and destroyed the population. Ancient towns were abandoned, and the visitor of to-day going through this area will see only the famous tomb on Marathon battlefield and the ruins of some of the old places, Oenoi and Ramnous, with a scattering fringe of population of those who dare to live there.

Near the ruins of Oenoi, for many years a natural spring supplied a water-mill (now abandoned) and watered the gardens on each side of the torrent

*We beg to express our thanks to Mr. LAIRD ARCHER and Miss ALICE G. CARR, R.N., LL.D., of the Near East Foundation for their valuable help.

known by the ancients as the Ravine of Oenoi. This ravine edges the villages of Marathon and Bey and goes on to the sea. Several swamps were formed near the running stream of this torrent, especially before the construction of the great dam of Marathon, built by the Ulen Company of America in 1932, on the other side of the mountain from the sea. Behind this dam collects the water of the Haradra and the Varnava, two small rivers, which is then sent to Athens through a great tunnel.

The Marathon plain is bounded and terminated on the north and north-east by the Mount Parness range of foothills. The plain itself, a narrow coastal plain, curves about the foot of these hills as far as Cape Kynos-oura to the north-east. The whole length of the plain is circumscribed by the Pentellikos foothills which run roughly north to south.

EARLY EFFORT IN MALARIA CONTROL.

The first effort to control malaria in this area was made in 1907 by Professor SAVAS and J. CARDAMATIS (1908) who introduced modern methods. They found that 80 per cent. of the inhabitants were suffering from malaria and that 100 per cent. of the school children of Marathon (6 to 12 years old) had enlarged spleens. They channelled a narrow water course in the torrent of Oenoi, oiled the stagnant water every 10 to 15 days. They gave quinine prophylactically, 1 gramme per person every Saturday and Sunday. For the total period of the malaria season (*i.e.*, for the 6 months, 1st May to 1st November) they distributed 24 kg. of quinine, all of which was for 1,544 of the total 1,680 inhabitants of Marathon, Bey, Vrana and Kato Souli; and also used some tins of petroleum. This work was not followed up after one season. Our total during the first year in which the Marathon Centre has functioned was 6 kg. of quinine for 1,763 persons, while the oil expended was 2 tons. The last season from 1st March to 31st October, 1936, required only 3 kg. 231 grammes for 3,953 persons, the oil expended in the same period being 7 tons.

SPLENIC INDEX AT MARATHON.

Quinine has been introduced into Greece in large quantities in the last 30 years and the spleen index of school children in many agricultural villages located near marshy places is improving. For instance, in Marathon district in 1907 the spleen index was 100 per cent. Compare that with the following years :*

1932	..	55 per cent.,	134 persons.
1933	..	39	120
1934	..	51	142
1935	..	31	129
1936	..	17	110

*Numbers given by Dr. M. C. BALFOUR, International Health Division, Rockefeller Foundation.

The spleen index of our group of 550 at the general clinic, Marathon Communal Hygiene Centre, which was 42 per cent. in 1934, dropped to 11 per cent. in June, 1936, in our group of 716 persons.

SPECIES OF ANOPHELES.

It is interesting to note that in 1907-1908 *Anopheles superpictus* and *A. maculipennis* were considered the chief transmitters of malaria, and that from 1934-1936 we found that the only mosquito with which we had to deal was *A. elutus* which had probably existed there always.* This mosquito was definitely recognized by the researchers of the Rockefeller Foundation before us (BARBER, BALFOUR, RICE, *et al.*), and it proved to be the important transmitter of malaria in our plain.

A. superpictus breeds near Oenoi and was found in great numbers formerly ; but actually we believe that few only of the inhabitants of Marathon living near Oenoi can be bitten by this mosquito because of the construction of the dam of Marathon which has taken practically all of the water from the Oenoi torrent.

THE MALARIA PROBLEM.

We cannot deal with the many phases of the work of the Near East Foundation in which we are engaged in this region but will speak only of this interesting light on malaria which has so unexpectedly come to us while pursuing regular routine work.

We note that practically all of the population of this district, men and women, work in summer time in the fields, either in tobacco production or in vineyards. Some of these people even bring their families out near the marshy places and camp for a few weeks in the summer. This is the case in Kato Souli, a village situated on the edge of a 2,000 acre swamp. It lies not far from ancient Ramnous near the Cape of Stomion or Kynos-oura and is a settlement of a few agricultural families (100 persons) where every child suffers from malaria. Adults who have lived there for years have gradually developed immunity but all their children are weak, feeble and anaemic. The spleen index of the children of this village is 100 per cent. *Anopheles* mosquitoes are very abundant in this settlement, among them the chief and practically the only carrier of malaria is *A. elutus*, previously described as *A. maculipennis* by CARDAMATIS. In 1935 and 1936, dissections proved that the sporozoite infection varies between 6 and 10 per cent. according to the month : in May we found the minimum infection, and in August the maximum.

Subtertian malaria is the commonest type of malaria, but once in a while we see cases of benign tertian. Practically everybody suffers from mixed infections in this area.

**A. bifurcatus* and *A. algeriensis* are found in this plain. They play no rôle in the transmission of malaria in Greece. *Anopheles maculipennis* is very rare in the Marathon plain. *A. elutus* breeds in the salt water marshes of the plain.

In Kato Souli 6 km. from Marathon town, no oil or Paris green was used in 1935. *A. elutus* was very abundant over the whole area where we worked. At that time only the district around Marathon town was oiled. In 1936, from 15th April to 31st October, the Kato Souli swamp was oiled as well as the rest of the district. Marathon town was anopheles-free: mosquitoes were diminished in Kato Souli. (This work was in charge of Miss ALICE G. CARR, Director of Public Health Work for the Near East Foundation, with its main centre in the Communal Hygiene Centre in Marathon.) Even after this methodic oiling some anopheles still persisted and we constantly found a high sporozoite rate among them.

New farm labourers who came from Athens, uninfected, to work in Kato Souli became infected there and suffered typical attacks of malaria. This happened also to several soldiers who were sent there to work during the malaria season.

A DEFINITION OF HAEMOTHERAPY.

After this brief introduction let us explain what we mean by haemotherapy in malaria. It is the use of whole immune blood which is injected in doses of 10 to 20 c.c. subcutaneously three or four times at intervals of a few days.

It is believed by several experts on malaria that immunity in this disease does not exist. LAVERAN (1918) stated that a first attack does not create immunity: on the contrary, individuals who had had malaria were more susceptible to it than others. He stated, however, that negroes present a greater resistance, which, however, never reaches immunity.

Experimental work on birds by E. SERGENT and BEGUET (1914) and by the SERGENT brothers (1910) found the possibility of obtaining at least what is called the *prémunition* stage.

Other workers such as MOLDOVON (1912), WHITEMORE, TALLIAFERO, have proved by their experiments the possibility of the existence of an increased resistance towards malaria. (See also especially THOMSON, 1933.)

EXPERIMENTAL IMMUNITY IN MEN.

Professor MARCHOUX, when working in Dakar in 1898, injected intravenously two negroes with 10 c.c. of blood containing numerous malarial parasites. Neither developed any rise of temperature (MARCHOUX, 1926).

We must mention other workers especially YORKE and MACFIE (1924) and YORKE (1926) who proved the specific immunity towards the same species of *Plasmodium* in the same race. Similar observations were made by BOYD in America (BOYD *et al.*, 1936).

In 1917 SOTERIADES used with success the blood serum of an immune individual to treat a patient with benign tertian fever. Plasmodia in crescent

form were present in the blood of the immune individual. In 1935 LORANDO and SOTERIADES reported twenty-three cases of malaria (different types of parasites) cured by using the whole blood of immune persons, injecting it into the sufferers. We can now add twenty more cases, bringing the total up to forty-three. In the present paper cases are reported which we think valuable for the discussion of this method.

CASES.

Case 1.—A.L., aged 5 years (No. 259). Spleen Hackett 2, weight 15 kg., had quinine treatment in April, 1935, 0.3 gramme daily for 10 days. But on 9th May, the fever and the positive blood (malignant tertian) proved that the case was not cured; 14th May, the first injection of the mother's immune blood, 4 c.c., was given subcutaneously. After this injection the girl's appearance improved, spleen not palpable. On 28th May, a second injection of mother's blood was given subcutaneously plus 0.2 gramme of quinine daily for 5 days. Since then she has been repeatedly examined and always found healthy. Spleen Hackett 0, no fever, no parasites in blood. Last weight, 15th March, 1937: 19.5 kg.

Case 2.—(No. 901), age 3 years, suffering from malaria; with positive blood (*vivax*) on 14th May, 1935, spleen Hackett 1; 4.5 c.c. of mother's blood was subcutaneously injected on that date. On 27th May, a second attack of fever with positive blood (*vivax*) occurred. A second injection of mother's blood was given. Since then the child has been very well. Weight, 18th April, 1935: 10 kg.; 13th March, 1937: 15 kg.

Case 4.—Cor. H. (No. 312), aged 18 months. On 15th Feb., 1935, showed mixed infection (subtertian and benign tertian). Quinine 0.3 gramme a day was used for 1 month: cure was not obtained. On 18th June, 1935, blood was still positive. On that day 10 c.c. of mother's blood was injected subcutaneously. On 20th June, patient had another attack of fever lasting 3 hours; we gave a second injection of 10 c.c. mother's blood. One intramuscular injection of quinine 0.25 gramme was made on 22nd June by the communal doctor without our permission. No more quinine was administered. And on 25th June, a third injection of mother's blood, 10 c.c., was given. No relapse has occurred up to 15th March, 1937.

Case 5.—Pap. C. (No. 41), aged 2 years, in November, 1934, had spleen enlarged, Hackett 4. *P. falciparum* (g + rings +++), weight 13 kg. Quinine 0.3 gramme was given daily for 1 month. On 20th June, 1935, patient showed high temperature, *falciparum* rings in the blood. First injection of 10 c.c. of mother's blood was given on that date. 25th June, 1935, a second injection of mother's blood was given. Child appears clinically cured up to 15th March, 1937.

Case 9.—C.P. (No. 39), aged 13 years. This boy was first examined on 30th October, 1934. Spleen was very much enlarged, anaemia intense, obvious cachexia, as he could scarcely walk. Blood at that time was negative for malaria. He had 1 gramme quinine daily for 1 month and quinoplasmine for 5 days. On 18th June, 1935, the blood was positive (subtertian). We gave an intravenous injection of mother's blood, 10 c.c. On 2nd July and 9th July we repeated the injection. Chill and fever with parasites in the blood followed these injections.

11th July, 1935, subcutaneous injection of 10 c.c. mother's blood plus 0.5 gramme quinine for 5 days only were administered.

14th July another subcutaneous injection of 10 c.c. mother's blood was given. After this the spleen shrank from Hackett 4 to Hackett 1.5. Since that time the child has been well. He works in the fields, usually in Kato Souli where in the year 1935 *A. elutus* was very abundant and where nobody could escape being infected. This is an instructive case as it shows that immunity in this area develops very slowly and that the children have to take courses of quinine treatment every year until they are adults.

Cases 10 and 11 show same characteristics as Case 9. Quinine was used for a month. Typical relapses were observed. Mother's blood injected subcutaneously has brought complete cure up to the present, 15th March, 1937.

Case 12.—(No. 457) aged 10 years, resident of Athens. She moved to Marathon in December, 1934. In May, 1935, she ran a high and continuous temperature, was semi-comatose, spleen not palpable, recurrent epistaxis, all of which symptoms gave the impression to the local doctor of typhoid fever. Widal test was negative. *P. falciparum* was present in great numbers, pulse very rapid. Quinine injections were used (Dr. CAPANIDES) from 27th June to 2nd July, as well as *mother's non-immune blood*, 20 c.c. each time. (The mother had then never had malaria but later suffered from it.) From 2nd July to 9th August, the patient took 60 tablets 0.15 gramme of quinine, 30 tablets of quinoplasmine, one subcutaneous injection of 10 c.c. mother's blood. *This treatment proved ineffective* as neither quinine nor quinoplasmine nor the non-immune blood prevented a relapse from 9th to 22nd August with continuous temperature and plasmodia in the blood. (Subtertian +, tertian +++). This child moved away and has been lost to our records.

Case 17.—(No. 1,144) a child 2½ years old with tertian parasites in the blood during an epileptoid attack of malaria; 10 c.c. of blood was injected (taken from the donor Dr. CAPANIDES, the communal doctor) on the 27th of August, 1935. This injection was repeated on the 3rd of September, 1935. No other attack occurred after this treatment.

Case 18.—(No. 1,143) E.Z., 15 years old, resident of Marathon, was examined on 27th August, 1935, and malarial parasites (*vivax*) were found in the blood. The spleen was enlarged Hackett 4, haemoglobin 70 per cent., high temperature every other day.

First injection of 10 c.c. of blood was given from the donor, the resident doctor of Marathon. On the 3rd of September we repeated the injection with the same amount of blood.

The child *never used quinine* or other anti-malarial drugs. Cure maintained. Spleen, December, 1935, Hackett 1. No relapses, and is now well, 15th March, 1937.

Case 23.—(No. 484) G.D., aged 12 years. Lives out of Marathon, town of Bey. First examined on 15th December, 1934, and found anaemic with enlarged spleen—Hackett 3, febrile attacks every 8 days. This child had an *idiosyncrasy for quinine*. One tablet (0.15 gramme) caused rash, vomiting, etc. On 5th December, 1935, the spleen reached as low as the left iliac fossa. We then injected 15 c.c. of mother's blood and again 10 c.c. on the 19th of December. After these injections the child improved very much. Appetite reappeared, she felt stronger and spleen was much diminished. Up to the present date, 15th March, 1937, the child has remained well.

(No. 277) Town of Nea Makri. Sophia B., aged 15 years, weight 39 kg. First examined, 3rd March, 1936. Spleen enlarged, Hackett 2.

Fever first appeared in August, 1935, lasted 8 days. Then after 6 weeks came attacks of chills and fever. On the 9th of March, 1936, patient had a severe attack of fever, high temperature and vomiting which obliged her to come to the clinic next day for blood injection. Her blood was positive for *vivax* (rings). Spleen enlarged, Hackett 2, liver palpable under the false ribs. 10th March, 1936, first injection of mother's blood was given subcutaneously, 18 c.c.; 11th March, 1936, attack of fever lasting several hours. This girl is a shepherdess, far away in the mountains and could not come down to the clinic without great difficulty, and not unless she was ill. So she had no blood test except the first one. A second attack occurred 13th March, 1936. A second injection of 18 c.c. of mother's blood was given subcutaneously on March 17th, 1936. *Never used quinine*, never had any other attacks. On 15th March, 1937, she was found very healthy and rosy; weight; 45.5 kg.

REMARKS.

We can divide our cases into two groups: (1) Cases treated with immune blood and quinine. (2) Cases treated with only immune whole blood.

I.—CASES TREATED WITH QUININE BEFORE HAEMOTHERAPY TREATMENT.

We selected these cases purposely because one quite frequently sees these children in agricultural areas of Greece suffering from continual attacks of malaria, at least during the hot months of the year. They take quinine for several

years and some unfortunately present abscesses and fistulas from quinine injections made by inexperienced people. This condition, of course, is not observed in every child; and with quinine, atebirin and plasmoquine when methodically used Greek doctors can cure most of the cases temporarily. But every year chills and fever return until the child reaches the age of 15 years or more. Even some adults living in the same area suffer once in a while from attacks. In some cases the local doctor is practically desperate because he finds that although he uses the same treatment no cure can be obtained.

For this reason we thought of using immune whole blood for the treatment of such cases. In many cases in the beginning of our experiments we added quinine to the blood treatment for some days, as we thought that small doses of quinine for some days might help in the establishing of immunity.

In practically all of our patients we observed that the temperature dropped rapidly after the subcutaneous injection of whole immune blood, and that the spleen diminished in volume in the next few days. We failed only in two cases, as the blood we used was not immune.

Case 19.—(No. 215) aged 14 years, was examined in November, 1934. He showed enlarged spleen, Hackett 3.5, and in spite of quinine treatment suffered from malaria. He had three injections of mother's blood. But even after these injections several months later, he had some attacks of malaria. It persisted even after quinine, plasmoquine and salvarsan treatment. Puncture of the spleen was negative for *Leishmania*. The child now looked a little better (15th March, 1937); but we believe that no cure was obtained because the mother's blood was not immune. We found afterwards that the mother suffered severe attacks of malaria, though she was born and lives in the Marathon area.

Case 12.—(No. 457). We also failed to have any result with this case, as the mother's blood was not immune. The whole family suffered from malaria. Unfortunately they moved away to another part of Greece and are lost to our records.

II.—CASES TREATED BY IMMUNE BLOOD ONLY.

It was quite difficult to find cases of this group as almost everybody in Greece takes quinine when suffering from any kind of fever. They do this without doctor's advice. Some rare cases had not used quinine before haemotherapy, and others had an idiosyncrasy to quinine, so we were in these cases able to study the effect clearly without the interference of quinine or atebirin. We had nine such cases, with clinical cure.

Cases Treated by Immune Blood and Exposed to Reinfection.

In order to be sure that our cases are exposed to reinfection, we ought to have cases exposed to bites of artificially infected mosquitoes. This cannot be done in our area at present as no insectarium exists as yet in Greece. We know, however, that many of our cases were exposed to naturally infected mosquitoes, as they worked and lived in Kato Souli where, as we said before, nobody can at present escape malarial infection if he stays there at night.

It is interesting to note that in May, 1935, we went to Ahmed Agha, in the island of Euboea, a village on the well-known estate of Mr. PHILIP NOEL BAKER (Member of the British House of Commons). On that day we injected two

children subcutaneously with mother's blood, and one with father's blood : all were suffering from tertian malaria. The children took no quinine. We asked Mr. BAKER to report on these cases. Below is his letter of 1st January, 1937.

" When you were here in May, 1935, I made a note of three children who were very ill with malaria and whom you injected with their parents' blood. They were : George Ts., 1½ years old ; Evangelos Bal., 1½ years old ; Chrysanthé Bel., 3 years old.

They were all very bad cases. I thought the last was sure to die. They are now very big strong children. I have seen them all and not one of them has had a single day of fever since you injected them. We all owe you great gratitude."

We feel that we have had sufficient experience in our haemotherapy for malaria immunity to believe that there is real worth in it, and that some day we may see it properly studied by researchers who have adequate equipment for doing so. Our work at present in the Near East Foundation is not research. We caught at the hope in this treatment when we went into a very malarious region. We wanted a healthy population so that we could pursue our regular programme of rural rehabilitation. So far the treatment has certainly not disappointed us, because for 2 years treated persons have been free from malaria. The older ones are able to do their work and take their place in the community. This haemotherapy does away with expensive, long-drawn-out medical treatment; and the patient suffers from no reaction or shock.

REFERENCES.

- BOYD, M., STRATMAN-THOMAS, W. K. & KITCHEN, S. F. (1936). On the duration of acquired homologous immunity to *Plasmodium vivax*. *Amer. J. trop. Med.*, 16, 311.
- GINGRICH, W. (1932). Immunity to superinfection and cross-immunity in malarial infections of birds. *J. prev. Med.*, 6, 197.
- LAVERAN, A. (1918). Paludisme et Trypanosomiase. *Nouveau Traité de Médecine et de Thérapeutique*. Paris : Baillière et fils.
- LORANDO, N. & SOTERIADES, D. (1936). Immunity in malaria. Therapeutic results obtained from subcutaneous injection of immunized blood. *J. trop. Med. (Hyg.)*, 39, 197.
- MARCHOUX, E. (1926). Paludisme. *Nouveau Traité de Médecine et de Thérapeutique*. Paris : Baillière et fils.
- MOLDOVAN, J. (1912). Ueber die Immunitätsverhältnisse bei der Vogel malaria. *Zbl. Bakt. Orig.*, 66, 105.
- MAZZA, S. (1924). On the duration of relative immunity in malaria of birds. *J. trop. Med. (Hyg.)*, 27, 98.
- SAVAS, C. & CARDAMATIS, T. (1908). *Malaria in Greece*. (Report in Greek.) Vol. iii, 54-63. Athens : Leonis.
- SERGEANT, ED. & BÉGUET, M. (1914). De l'immunité dans le paludisme des oiseaux. Les pigeons guéris de l'infection à *Haemoproteus columbae* ne sont pas immunisés contre elle. *C.R. Soc. Biol. Paris*, 77, 21.
- SERGEANT, ET. & SERGEANT, ED. (1910). Sur l'immunité dans le paludisme des oiseaux. Conservation *in vitro* des sporozoïtes de *Plasmodium relictum*. Immunité relative obtenue par inoculation de ces sporozoïtes. *C. R. Acad. Sci. Paris*, 151, 407.
- & —. (1922). Étude expérimentale du paludisme des oiseaux. Un même lot de moustiques peut infecter successivement 3 sujets. *C. R. Soc. Biol. Paris*, 86, 349.
- THOMSON, J. GORDON. (1933). Immunity in malaria. *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 26, 483.
- YORKE, WARRINGTON. (1926). Malaria treatment of general paralysis. *Lancet*, 1, 427.
- & MACFIE, J. W. S. (1924). Observations made during treatment of general paralysis. *Ibid.*, 1, 1017.

ACTION OF QUININE AND ATEBRIN ON THE SPOROZOITES OF *PLASMODIUM FALCIPARUM*.

BY

M. CIUCA, M.D., L. BALLIF, M.D. AND M. CHELARESCU, M.D.
Station de malariathérapie de Socola, Romania,

AND

M. ISANOS, M.D. AND L. GLASER, M.D.
Station de malariathérapie de Costiugeni, Romania.

In the League of Nations report on the therapeutics of malaria* based on experimental researches it is concluded that there is no known drug which, administered in therapeutic doses before and during the early days of the incubation period, is able to suppress the infection and bring about a true causal prophylaxis.

In 1934 Colonel JAMES supplied us with a solution of atebirin and a solution of quinine base to enable us to test the action of these substances in dilutions of 1 in 1,200 on the sporozoites of the parasite of malignant tertian malaria.

We followed the technique of JAMES and SHUTE and dissected the mosquitoes on a slide in the solution of the medicament. The sporozoites suspended in 0.5 c.c. of the solution were then injected in a vein of a patient whose mental state required malaria therapy. The subsequent course of events was closely followed and controlled by clinical observation and the examination of thick blood films on the one hand and the transfusion of blood to other mental patients requiring treatment.

We give below the results we have obtained noting at once, however, the imperfections of the method which, it seems to us, cannot bring about an equal exposure to the medicament of all the sporozoites owing to the lack of uniformity in the suspension.

**Quart. Bull. Hlth. Org. L.o.N.*, 1933.

A.—FIRST SERIES OF EXPERIMENTS.

1. The patient, Bg. Th., was given intravenously on 2nd October, 1935, a suspension, in 0.5 c.c. of a solution of basic quinine (1 in 2,500), of sporozoites from the salivary glands of sixteen anopheles infected with our routine strain of malignant tertian malaria (T.M.78). The dissection of the glands on the slide occupied over 30 minutes. The sporozoites from the different glands were not in contact with the drug for the same time but the minimum exposure was 30 minutes. The patient contracted an infection after an incubation period of 15 days, the parasites appearing on this day and fever on the following day. Quinine was thus without any action on the sporozoites. A number of other patients were inoculated with 60 to 75 c.c. of citrated blood, collected from the patient who had received the sporozoites, 4 hours, 1 day, 2 days and 3 days after the injection. The results are shown in the Table I.

It will be noted that of twelve patients inoculated with the blood of the donor only one (M.I.) became infected. This patient had received at the same time as two other patients a transfusion of blood taken from the donor 4 hours after the injection of a suspension of sporozoites in a solution of basic quinine. One has to conclude that the sporozoites were not uniformly distributed in the blood of the donor and that some at least of the sporozoites injected intravenously had not left the general circulation after 4 hours.

The negative results given by the other eleven patients confirm our previous observations which showed that the blood was non-infective for the first 3 days of the incubation period. In this case again proof that infection had not taken place was given by the susceptibility of the patients to inoculation with the same strain of malignant tertian malaria carried out 35 days later.

2. A patient (Bob I) was given a suspension of the sporozoites from fourteen salivary glands in a solution of 1/2,500 atebirin. Infection was found to have occurred on the 15th day; from this it can be concluded that under the conditions of the experiment atebirin in a strength of 1/2,500 has no action on the sporozoites and does not prevent infection.

Table II shows that the blood of a donor, taken after the same intervals of time after the injection of sporozoites exposed to quinine as in the first table, did not produce infection. Some of these patients were proved to be susceptible to the same strain of malignant tertian malaria (T.M.78) when inoculated later with either normal sporozoites or with virulent blood.

B.—SECOND SERIES OF EXPERIMENTS.

In these experiments we employed a more exact technique using however, the same solutions of quinine and atebirin as in the first series. As the solutions had become invaded by moulds they were sterilized before use.

TABLE I.

Patient.	First Inoculation.					Reinoculation.					
	Interval in Hours between Injection of Sporozoites and Abstraction of Blood.	Quantity in c.c. of Blood Transfused.	Infection Occurring or not.	Day of Appearance of Parasites.	Day of Onset of Fever.	Infection Occurring or not after Inoculation of Sporozoites.	Day of Appearance of Parasites.	Day of Onset of Fever.	Infection Occurring or not after Inoculation of Virulent Blood.	Day of Appearance of Parasites.	Day of Onset of Fever.
M.I	4	60	+	10	12						
Sp. C.	4	70	—	—	—	+	8	10			
McA.	4	90	—	—	—				+	12	20
Ruc. I.	24	60	—	—	—				+	12	14
Ojog I.	24	60	—	—	—				+	9	9
Pan. C.	24	65	—	—	—				Not reinoculated		
Pet. Ion.	48	90	—	—	—				Reinoculated but not controlled		
Fmb. O.	48	75	—	—	—	+	9	11			
Gaudr.	48	75	—	—	—				+	8	11
Vassal	72	80	—	—	—				Reinoculated but not controlled		
Munt. A.	72	80	—	—	—				Reinoculated but not controlled		
Mos. Eug.	72	70	—	—	—				+	8	11

Patient.	Interval in Hours between Injection of Sporozoites and Abstraction of Blood.	First Inoculation.				Reinoculation.				
		Quantity in c.c. of Blood Transfused.	Infection Occurring or not.	Day of Appearance of Parasites.	Day of Onset of Fever.	Period of Observation before Reinoculation.	Infection Occurring or not after Inoculation of Sporozoites.	Day of Appearance of Parasites.	Day of Onset of Fever.	Day of Appearance of Parasites.
Mlt.	4	60	—	—	—	6 months	Not controlled			
Ghrgh.	4	60	—	—	—	72 days	+	12	16	8
Gr. Sun	4	70	—	—	—	72 days	+	12	16	—
Ghz. D.	24	75	—	—	—	71 days	—	—	—	—
Col.	24	70	—	—	—	6 months	Not controlled			
Andr.	24	75	—	—	—	71 days	+	12	16	—
Mtr. Sp.	48	75	—	—	—	6 months	Not controlled			
Gld. I.	48	70	—	—	—	70 days	+	12	14	—
D. Tun.	48	75	—	—	—	6 months	Not controlled			
H.V.	72	60	—	—	—	69 days	—	—	—	10
Ep.	72	80	—	—	—	6 months	Not controlled			
Es. Gr.	72	75	—	—	—	6 months	Not controlled			

Each patient inoculated received intravenously a suspension of sporozoites from a single infected gland, the dissection being carried out as before in the solution of the drug : the contact of the sporozoites with the drug was 15 minutes. Four patients received a suspension of sporozoites in a solution of basic quinine, four a suspension in a solution of atebirin, and four as controls an equivalent suspension of sporozoites in Ringer's solution.

In Table III are given the results obtained and the proof of the susceptibility of those patients which were not infected as a result of the first injection.

TABLE III.

Patients.	Suspension of Sporozoites in Atebrin 1/2000.	Suspension of Sporozoites in Quinine 1/2500.	Suspension of Sporozoites in Ringer's solution.	Period of Observation before Reinoculation.	Result of Reinoculation.
T.D.	Parasites and fever			4 months	
Bl. I.	—			76 days	Left hospital
Br. A.	—			46 days	Parasites and fever
C. Mor.	—			46 days	Parasites and fever
Asb.		Parasites and fever		4 months	
Tr. M.		Parasites and fever		4 months	
Cat.		—		4 months	Parasites and fever
N.T.		—		4 months	Parasites and fever
B.N.			Parasites and fever in 10 days	4 months	
Sp. I.			Parasites and fever in 10 days	4 months	

It will be seen from the above table that one out of four individuals inoculated with sporozoites in atebirin solution and two out of four with sporozoites in quinine solution became infected just as did the controls which received sporozoites suspended in Ringer's solution. The negative results given by the other cases bear evidence of the varying factors which may be at work such as the non-infectivity of sporozoites from certain glands or their greater sensitiveness or the variations in individual resistance of persons inoculated with sporozoites of which the vitality has been impaired.

CONCLUSION.

It appears from the above experiments that malarial sporozoites under certain conditions are able to withstand the direct application of quinine and atebirin in concentration of 1 in 2,500; and that an explanation of the therapeutic efficiency of these drugs based on a direct action on the parasites is excluded.

ON DRUG PROPHYLAXIS IN THERAPEUTIC MALARIA.

BY

M. CIUCA, M.D., L. BALLIF, M.D. AND M. CHELARESCU, M.D.,

Station de malariathérapie de Socola, Romania,

AND

M. ISANOS, M.D. AND L. GLASER, M.D.

Station de malariathérapie de Costiugeni, Romania.

The earlier investigations of JAMES and SHUTE, YORKE and MACFIE, SWELLENGREBEL and DE BUCK* have shown that neither quinine nor atabrin is able to prevent infection after the bites of experimentally infected mosquitoes if the quantity of drug administered is not as great as the recognized therapeutic

**Quart. Bull. Hlth. Org. L.o.N.*, 1933, 2, No. 2.

dose and if it is not continued for at least 10 days after the exposure to infection, as YORKE and MACFIE have shown in the case of quinine. Experiments carried out in the same manner with plasmoquine have shown that the efficiency of this drug as a preventive agent depends on the dose (which for practical purposes is too near the toxic limit) and on the continuance of the treatment for at least 8 days after exposure to infection.

The experiments made with atebtrin (0.3 gramme a day for an adult) have demonstrated the failure of this drug to act as a preventive agent when administered for 5 to 8 days after exposure to infection. The treatment however gives a latent character to the infection which does not become evident till after a very long incubation period.

The varying results obtained by different observers seem to be due to the action of the drug on the asexually reproducing forms and not to its action on the sporozoite. Actually our own observations on the infectivity of blood during the incubation period of malignant tertian malaria resulting from the intravenous injection of sporozoites has shown that an interval of 5 days occurs before the schizogonic forms invade the blood. Thus all prophylactic treatment continued beyond the 5 days is directed against these schizogonic forms of the parasite which are well known to be susceptible to the action of schizonticides.

The term medico-curative prophylaxis given by SERGENT to this type of drug prophylaxis is quite logical.

It is probable that the development of the forms intermediate between the sporozoites inoculated and the asexual forms in the blood occurs gradually. This would explain the negative results, as regards prophylaxis, always obtained when the administration of the drug is stopped before this development is complete and the positive results of YORKE and MACFIE who gave quinine in therapeutic doses during the first 10 days of the experimental exposure to infection with benign tertian malaria.

The observations to be considered in this paper have to do with forty-five individuals infected with either our strain of *Plasmodium falciparum* (T.M.78) or our strain of *P. vivax* (T.B.H.). The infection of the patients, who on account of their mental condition were in need of malaria therapy, was brought about in most cases by the bites of experimentally infected mosquitoes. A certain number were infected by the intravenous injection of virulent blood. On the day preceding the inoculation and on the 10 following days the patients received either 0.3 gramme of atebtrin or 1.0 gramme of quinine hydrochloride. Controls were left untreated. The experiments were continued over a period of more than 12 months.

The results obtained are given in the table.

It appears from these results that of twelve persons, exposed to infection with the parasite of malignant tertian malaria and submitted to prophylactic doses of atebtrin over a period of 11 days, not one became infected; while of

fourteen, similarly exposed to the infection and given prophylactic quinine for the same period, one alone gave any evidence of infection and then only by showing parasites without any fever after an incubation period of 46 days. Of five controls, exposed to infection but untreated, three acquired a definite infection with both fever and parasites while two became merely carriers of the parasites.

TABLE.

Type of Parasite.	Method of Infection.	Number of Patients.	Drug Used.	Days of Treatment.	Result.		
					Parasites and Fever.	Parasites Alone.	Neither Parasites nor Fever.
M.T.	M	6	A	11			6
M.T.	B	6	A	11			6
M.T.	M	8	Q	11		1	7
M.T.	B	6	Q	11			6
M.T.	M	5	controls not treated		3	2	
B.T.	M	4	A	11			4
B.T.	M	3	Q	11	1 After incubation-period of 210 days		2
B.T.	M	7	controls not treated		3	3	1

M = mosquito bite : B = injection of virulent blood : A = atebirin 0.3 gramme :

Q = quinine hydrochloride 1.0 gramme : M.T. = *P. falciparum* : B.T. = *P. vivax*.

In the case of benign tertian malaria the results with atebirin were even better than with quinine. Of four patients treated with atebirin no case of infection occurred, while of three treated with quinine one became infected. Of the seven benign tertian cases left untreated as controls three showed parasites and developed fever, three showed parasites alone, while one proved immune.

CONCLUSIONS.

Our observations confirm the results obtained by other observers who have given prophylactic treatment for at least 10 days after exposure to infection. In spite of the small number of cases in our series it seems justifiable to conclude that atebirin gives more constant protection than quinine.

The prophylactic action of the drugs on *P. falciparum* infections seems to be more constant than on *P. vivax* infections.

These results are in agreement with the known facts regarding prophylactic treatment systematically carried out in malarial districts where the two parasites are responsible for natural infections.

The prevention of infection by a prophylactic treatment of 11 days, compared with our previous results obtained by a prolonged treatment during the incubation of malignant tertian malaria and the negative results of other observers who did not go beyond an 8-day course of prophylaxis, is an indication—it seems to us—that the therapeutic action is upon the schizogonic forms of the parasite and not upon the sporozoites or any intermediate stages. We mention in support of this hypothesis our observations on the lack of infectivity of the blood during the first 5 days of the incubation period of malignant tertian malaria.

TRANSACTIONS OF THE ROYAL SOCIETY OF
TROPICAL MEDICINE AND HYGIENE.
Vol. XXXI. No. 2. July, 1937.

FURTHER LIGHT ON THE "YAWS-SYPHILIS" PROBLEM.

BY

H. D. CHAMBERS, M.B., CH.B.

Medical Officer, Jamaica, British West Indies.

RECIPROCAL IMMUNITY.

The fact that yaws is a disease of hot damp rural districts whilst syphilis is usually more prevalent in urban communities, seems, in a measure, responsible for the two diseases being often considered differing manifestations of the same disease. Some investigators, however, while maintaining that the diseases are distinct, hold that they are mutually exclusive; that yaws confers an immunity to syphilis and *vice versa*. Cases *A* and *B* hereunder seem to suggest that if an immunity is conferred against syphilis by the acquisition of yaws, this immunity is not absolute; mothers who have had yaws may give birth to syphilitic children several years afterwards without themselves ever having shown signs of infection with syphilis. HANSHELL (1928) mentions a case in which a person contracted syphilis 9 years after an attack of yaws and when the Wassermann reaction was still strongly positive. It is to be noted in Case *A* that the mother gave birth to a syphilitic child (which was preceded by an abortion) 10 years after she had yaws.

The criticism that may be applied to most cases reported in the literature of infection with syphilis subsequent to infection with yaws is that the degree of immunity possible, whether to yaws or to syphilis, had not developed in the time elapsing between infection with yaws and the contraction of syphilis. This criticism hardly seems to apply to Case *A* or to that reported by HANSHELL.

Regarding the immunity to yaws, conferred by syphilis, TURNER (1936) states that syphilis confers an immunity to yaws which is as great as, if not greater than, that conferred by yaws itself. He previously pointed out that within the first 3 years after infection with yaws, re-inoculation with heterologous strains of yaws spirochaetes may give rise to a modified or abortive attacks of yaws, but that after a period of 10 years the majority of yaws-infected persons are refractory to re-inoculation.

In the following two cases a previous infection with yaws did not prevent two mothers from giving birth to children with signs of congenital syphilis. It is worthy of note that it was evidence of syphilis in the children which first led to the suspicion that the mothers had been infected with syphilis. These cases were seen in rural parts of Jamaica, where the incidence of syphilis is negligible.

YAWS NOT HEREDITARY.

It is generally accepted that yaws is not hereditary. On this point most writers seem to agree—ROGERS and MEGAW (1930), HERMANS (1931) who also quotes BAERMANN and HALLENBERGER (1916), STANNUS (1935) who also quotes MARTLETT (1933), MOSS and BIGELOW (1922), MAXWELL (1839). Wherever doubt has been thrown upon the non-hereditary nature of yaws, the source of information has been found to come from districts where there were cases of both yaws and syphilis, and with insufficient proof that the disease transmitted was yaws and not syphilis. On the other hand, in areas where syphilis is said to be unknown, observers in Jamaica and elsewhere seem all to agree that yaws is not hereditary. (STANNUS, 1935, quotes VIGONI and PURCELL on this point.)

Yaws, also, does not give rise to any congenital stigmata corresponding to Hutchinsonian teeth, bossing of frontal bones, iritis, etc. In a total of over 6,500 histories and examinations of yaws cases investigated, among parents and children in rural parts of Jamaica, no case met with has given any real evidence that yaws gives rise to congenital lesions or stigmata. Cases *A* and *B* are the only two instances met with that would have thrown doubt on this statement. Physical examinations and blood tests of six infants, born to mothers who received no form of treatment for yaws lesions present during the period of gestation, were quite negative. Two of the children were born within 2 years and 5 years respectively of the mothers' infection. With the other four children a very much longer time had elapsed between the dates of the original infection of the mothers and the relapsing lesions which were present shortly before the birth of the children. In Case *C* hereunder, the mother became infected with yaws in the later months of her pregnancy. The disease process remained active for the rest of the pregnancy and after the birth of the child. Nevertheless, a healthy, alert child was born with neither stigmata nor signs of yaws and with negative serological (Wassermann reaction) findings.

CASE A.

C.W., mother, 29 years of age ; born April, 1908 ; seen 7.4.37.

History.—She gave a history of yaws infection at 9 years of age—1917. The primary lesion was on the left leg. A fine scar is still visible at the site. This lesion was followed shortly by a secondary eruption. She received no specific treatment for the infection.

Pregnancies, etc.—In September, 1925, when 17 years old, she met "X" a man between 30 and 40 years of age with whom she began to consort. This man was her first lover, she stated. In October, 1925, 1 month later, she had a profuse leucorrhoeal vaginal discharge, but did not notice any abrasions or sores on the genitalia or other parts of the body. In December, 1925, 3 months later, she noticed an eruption on her thighs and legs. The eruption she described was of the nature of tiny bumps, some being quite small while others grew larger ; a few broke down into small sores. The latter lesions were some time in healing, and left fine scars which she was able to point out. She did not seek medical treatment for the lesions. They were quite gone before March, 1926 (7 months after she began to associate with "X"). Whether this eruption was due to infection with syphilis or yaws or some other skin condition, the main issue, *i.e.*, a mother giving birth to a syphilitic child 10 years after infection with yaws, remains unchanged.

She became pregnant for "X" in March, 1926, but in May, 1926, aborted. In September, 1926, she was again pregnant and gave birth on 31st May, 1927, to Hazel, a syphilitic child, whose history is stated below. There were no further abortions or miscarriages, but three other children were born on 15th June, 1928 ; 28th January, 1930, and 27th November, 1931, respectively. These last three children when seen in 1937, looked healthy and showed no stigmata of lues. No serological tests, however, were done.

In 1936, C.W. developed an ulcer the size of a two-shilling piece over the right external malleolus, for which she received six intramuscular injections of a bismuth preparation, in January and February, 1936. The ulcer did not heal until August, 1936, and that following a change in local treatment. The ulcer recurred in November, 1936. It was still present in April, 1937, but Wassermann reaction tests before and after a provocative injection of neo-arsphenamine were then negative.

When questioned as to the abortion, she admitted having had a slight fall shortly before, but asserted that more severe falls had occurred during other pregnancies without mishap.

On physical examination, C.W. had an ulcer over the right external malleolus which showed some response to a few injections of bismuth salicylate intramuscularly. There was a typical scar over the alleged site of the primary yaws lesion. Other fine scars, already referred to, were on thighs and legs. There was also a firm contracted scar over the left tendo-achilles, seemingly the result of an infected blister she had when 7 years old. There were no other abnormal findings, nor were there any in the cardiovascular and nervous systems.

"X"—*Father of children mentioned above.*

History : (As obtained from C.W.).—"X" arrived from a part of the island where there is no yaws and took up residence in the district where C.W. lived. Before and after his first association with C.W., he used to make frequent trips to the city of Kingston (a seaport) to sell provisions. According to his paramour (C.W.) he would not be above consorting with other women on his trips to the city. He had a former paramour and was also in close association with another woman while she was his paramour.

"X" died in February, 1931, after an illness lasting 6 months. He first complained, C.W. stated, of a pain as if being pierced by a needle in one knee, and later complained of abdominal pains. Before he died he had to be lifted on and off his bed. She was able to throw no further light on his previous history.

Hazel.—*Female, 10 years of age ; born 31st May, 1927 ; weight 52 lb.*

Complaint.—Child is backward at school and not thriving.

Previous History.—Conjunctivitis at birth. Had "snuffles" when 1 month old. The mother experienced much difficulty in getting her to feed at the breast. Snuffling

improved when the child was 2 years old. Had an injury to her right elbow as a baby. No previous history of yaws or of skin lesions suggestive of the disease. She had chicken-pox in March, 1937. No other illnesses of note, but has never been strong, alert or bright, her mother claims.

Physical Examination.—General condition : Undersized for age. Looks dull. Is mentally slow.

Skull bones : Slight bossing of frontal bones.

Eyes : Right corneal opacity. Is unable to see at all from this eye. Left : Pupils circular, equal, react to light and accommodation. No iritis.

Teeth : Typical Hutchinsonian teeth, upper and lower central incisors.

Nose : Bridge of nose seems rather depressed even for a negro child.

Mouth and pharynx, skin and mucous membranes, long bones, nervous system : No abnormal physical findings.

Heart : Apex within mid-clavicular line ; sounds regular, pure, not accentuated.

Serology : Wassermann reaction 4-4.

Response to Treatment : After one course of bismuth salicylate and one of neosphenamine the patient looked definitely brighter and more alert.

Note.—A period of 10 years had elapsed between the mother's infection with yaws (1917) and the birth of the child (1927). The chances of the mother transmitting yaws to her child after such a period must be considered remote even if the disease were hereditary. She had received no treatment during that time which could have interfered with the course of the disease or the development of immunity ; but between September, 1925, and the birth of the child in 1927, it does appear that the mother was exposed to infection not only with gonorrhoea but also with syphilis. It is suggested, after weighing the available evidence, that she had yaws in 1917, gonorrhoea in 1925 and syphilis in 1925 or 1926. The short course of bismuth therapy which the mother received in 1936 and lapse of time may have contributed to, if they were not fully responsible for, the negative serological findings in 1937.

CASE B.

D.H., mother, 17 years of age ; seen September and November, 1936 ; also March and April 1937.

History.—She gave a history of a first attack of yaws in 1934 when 15 years of age. The initial lesion occurred on the left internal malleolus. This was followed by secondary macular lesions on face and extremities ; later by secondary plantar lesions. She received a few intramuscular injections for the lesions in 1934. Then, in February and March, 1935, and again at the beginning of 1936, she received further intramuscular injections for relapsing plantar lesions. The lesions recurred, however, in July, 1936. When she was seen in September, 1936, there were non-ulcerative plantar lesions of yaws on both soles and one ulcerative plantar yaws papule. For these she received no further treatment. She was visited in November, 1936, when the plantar papule was found to be healed, although the non-ulcerative plantar lesions were still present.

She admitted that sexual intercourse took place for the first time in July, 1935, when she was 16 years of age, with a young man 18 years old. Pregnancy resulted and there was a miscarriage in the fourth month of her pregnancy, but there was no history of skin rashes or genital lesions of any kind.

In February, 1936, she met U.V. (whose history is given hereunder) and had sexual intercourse with him. He was her second consort. She became pregnant for this man in March, 1936. She gave no history of a vaginal discharge or of skin rashes or evident abrasions on the genitalia following intercourse with U.V., with the exception of the plantar lesions of yaws already mentioned as recurring in July, 1936.

She gave birth to a boy on 26th December, 1937. Three months later mother and child were seen. The non-ulcerative lesions on the mother's feet were just about clear. There were no definite stigmata to be observed on the child but he was thin and puny and evidently not thriving. In addition, the Wassermann reaction of the child's blood was strongly positive.

U.V., father of child ; aged 35 years ; seen 5th April, 1937.

History (as given by himself).—He had lived from babyhood until September, 1928, in a rural district where the disease of yaws is unknown. In September, 1928, he went to Kingston, a seaport city, and remained there until August, 1930. He came to reside in his present district, where D.H. lived, in 1930. He had lived with a former paramour between June, 1931, and June, 1933, when they parted. He had one attack of gonorrhoea in 1931 and another in 1932. In November, 1935, he noticed a small penile sore which grew to the size of a shilling piece. This lesion was not completely healed, in spite of constant dressings, until March, 1936. He did not, however, place any serious import on the lesion and did not seek medical attention. He first consorted with D.H. on the 22nd of February, 1936. He stated he never had yaws or injection treatment.

Physical Examination.—U.V. is an intelligent man, well built and well nourished. A fine circular scar, about the size of a shilling piece, was just perceptible on his prepuce (antero-laterally towards the right).

All other physical findings appeared to be normal.

DISCUSSION.

Some degree of immunity may have developed in the mothers of the two syphilitic children to account for the absence of symptoms and signs of the disease in the mothers. It is well known, however, that the birth of a syphilitic child may be the very first reason for suspecting a mother to have been previously infected with syphilis. The writer has seen a case with Hutchinsonian teeth, bossing of frontal bones and involvement of the eighth nerve, leading to deafness, in a girl child born to a woman whose only sign of having had syphilis was a positive Wassermann reaction. This woman gave no previous history of yaws and she never suspected that she had ever had syphilis.

It is likely that there may be some degree of reciprocal immunity between yaws and syphilis since both diseases produce the same types of serological reaction and consequently should stimulate similar defence mechanisms in the body. Any lesions, however, which may occur several years after infection with yaws and which can be simulated by syphilis in its protean manifestations, could only be ascribed to yaws after a meticulously careful history has been taken to exclude subsequent exposure and possible infection with syphilis and the possibility of late manifestations of hereditary syphilis.

CASE C.

B., mother, 21 years of age ; seen October and November, 1936, and in March and May, 1937.

History.—She gave no history suggestive of yaws or of syphilis prior to 1936. She became infected with yaws in an injury on the right thumb in August, 1936. The source of infection was, apparently, her little boy who had caught yaws from children in a neighbouring home and whose lesions the mother would bathe each morning.

She was then 5 months pregnant. When seen in October, 1936 (7th month of pregnancy) the mother had five typical framboesiform lesions on her face with others on the neck and upper chest (dark field positive to *Spirochaeta pertenuis*). The primary lesion had healed over. There were no other lesions evident, nor were there any on the palms and soles of the feet. She received an intramuscular injection of bismuth salicylate (3 c.c. of a 10 per cent. solution in olive oil) in October but did not attend for further treatment.

She was visited in November, 1936, but given no further treatment. Most of the lesions were much improved and covered with dried crusts which were being shed. A papule situated on the upper lip, at the vestibule of the nares, did not, however, seem to be receding.

A well developed male infant was born on 15th December, 1936.

Mother and child were again visited towards the end of March, 1937. On examination the papule on the mother's lip had become a typical framboesioma 1 inch in diameter; the soles of her feet were almost covered with the typical epidermal hyperkeratosis and stripping of non-ulcerative plantar yaws; in addition there were a few fissures on the soles of her feet, a condition not infrequently found accompanying plantar lesions in yaws and which is considered infectious. The infection must, therefore, be considered to have retained its activity throughout the later months of the pregnancy and subsequent to the birth of the child. (The spread of the disease to the soles of the feet is considered to have taken place haematogenously). However, the infant looked healthy, well nourished and bright. On examination no stigmata, skin or bone lesions were found. In addition, the Wassermann reaction of his blood was negative. When it was mentioned to the mother that it was a wonder she had not already infected her infant with yaws from the lesion on her lip, she replied that she was careful and never kissed the baby.

The husband, who was also seen in November, 1936, was found to be infected with yaws. His primary lesion occurred in an injury on the extensor aspect of his left elbow which he received in September, 1936. He gave no history suggestive of an infection with yaws or syphilis before September, 1936.

REFERENCES.

- HALLENBERGER. (1916). Die Framboesia tropica in Kamerun. *Arch. Schiffs- u. Tropenhyg.*, 20, Beih. 3, 35. (Quoted by HERMANS, 1931.)
- HANSCHELL, H. M. (1928). Discussion on yaws. *Brit. J. vener. Dis.*, 4, 64.
- HERMANS, E. S. (1931). Framboesia tropica. *Acta Leidensia.*, 6.
- MATTLET, G. (1933). Note au sujet de l'hérédité du pian. *Ann. Soc. belge, Med. trop.*, 13, 13. (Quoted by STANNUS, 1935.)
- MAXWELL, JAMES. (1839). *Observations on Yaws and its Influence in Originating Leprosy*, p. 42. Edinburgh: MacLachlan, Stewart & Co.
- MOSS, W. L. & BIGELOW, G. H. (1922). Yaws, an analysis of 1,046 cases in the Dominican Republic. *Johns Hopk. Hosp. Bull.*, 33, 43.
- ROGERS, L. & MEGAW, J. W. D. (1930). *Tropical Medicine*, 1st Ed. London: J. & A. Churchill, Ltd.
- STANNUS, H. S. (1936). Yaws-syphilis. (Paper presented at Empire Social Hygiene Congress, July, 1935.) *Empire Social Hygiene Year Book, 1936*, 577.
- TURNER, T. B. (1936). The resistance of yaws and syphilis patients to re-inoculation with yaws spirochaetes. *Amer. J. Hyg.*, 23, 431.

THE VIRULENCE OF *TRYPANOSOMA RHODESIENSE* IN RELATION TO CYCLICAL PASSAGE THROUGH *GLOSSINA MORSITANS*.

BY

J. F. CORSON, M.D.

There has been much discussion about whether cyclical passage through tsetse flies has any influence on the characters of polymorphic trypanosomes and a few experiments have been made with results that have varied with different workers and in different experiments by the same worker. Reference is made here only to changes in the virulence of trypanosomes. SCHILLING and SCHRECK (1930) found in 1914 that an old laboratory strain of *Trypanosoma brucei* showed a great loss of virulence after a single passage through *Glossina morsitans*. LESTER (1932) found that a single passage of a serum-fast strain of *T. brucei* from a guineapig through *G. tachinoides* resulted in a great loss of virulence for guinea-pigs and mice. In a later paper (LESTER, 1933) he referred to work by TAYLOR and MACKENZIE who found that an old London strain of *T. rhodesiense* became greatly reduced in virulence after a single passage through *G. tachinoides*. LESTER also found that another strain of *T. brucei* showed only a slight loss of virulence after a single passage through *G. tachinoides*, while with a human strain, Ayu 5, there was no well-marked change after cyclical passage.

In experimental work with a strain of *T. rhodesiense* and a strain of *T. brucei* I did not find that the virulence was less after cyclical passage through *G. morsitans*, but it was only in the case of the *T. brucei* strain that the virulence had previously become greater during maintenance by direct inoculation. The strain of *T. rhodesiense* (CORSON, 1932) was inoculated from a man into sheep and goats in March, 1930, and was maintained in them by inoculation for about 19 months. In 1930 and 1931 rats which were inoculated from the sheep and goats lived for from 20 to 50 days. In December, 1931, *G. morsitans* were infected from a sheep of the twenty-second passage and an infective fly was isolated. It afterwards bit and infected eleven rats and they lived for 15, 15, 16, 17, 18, 18, 18, 20, 21, 21 and 25 days. A strain of *T. brucei* from Zululand (CORSON, 1934) which seemed to have remained latent in a rat for several months, appeared as an acute infection of such virulence for rats that the possibility of an accidental infection with *T. rhodesiense* was considered. *G. morsitans* were infected and an infective fly was isolated and fed on a susceptible volunteer who did not become infected and this fly afterwards infected eight rats. For this and other reasons an accidental infection was regarded as excluded. The virulence for rats was not diminished after passage through the fly.

EXPERIMENT.

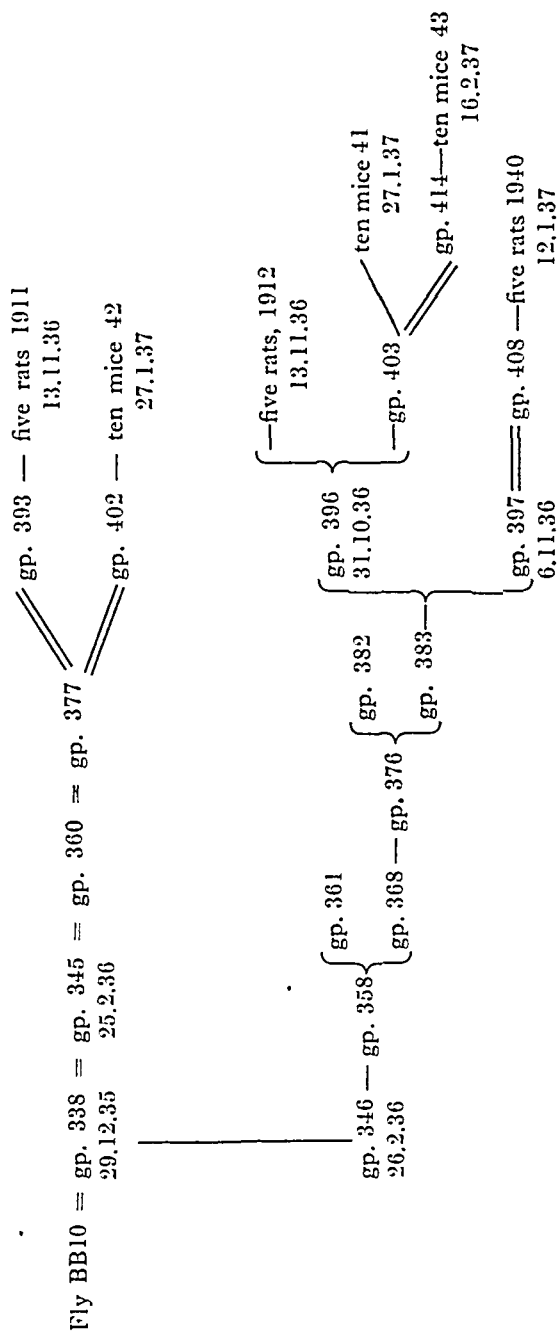
The following experiment was made with a strain of *T. rhodesiense* (*T. rhodesiense* Kahama) which was being maintained in sheep by cyclical transmission by *G. morsitans*. An isolated infective fly, Fly BB10, bit and infected Guineapig 338 on 29th December, 1935, and from this guineapig the infection was transmitted through two parallel series of guineapigs, in one series by *G. morsitans* and in the other series by inoculations with a syringe. The scheme is shown on p. 253; following a method used by DUKE the passages by flies are shown by double lines, and those by inoculations with a syringe by single lines.

An attempt to transmit the strain by *G. morsitans* from Guineapig 396 failed but it succeeded from Guineapigs 397 and 403.

The following inoculations into rats and mice were made: five rats (No. 1911) from Guineapig 393 and ten mice (No. 42) from Guineapig 402, of the series of transmissions by flies; five rats (No. 1912) from Guineapig 396 and ten mice (No. 41) from Guineapig 403, of the series of transmissions by the syringe before the trypanosomes of this series were transmitted by flies; five rats (No. 1940) from Guineapig 408 and ten mice (No. 43) from Guineapig 414, these two guineapigs having been infected by flies from Guineapigs 397 and 403 respectively.

Until towards the end of 1936, when an epidemic occurred, there was evidence from the length of life of the guineapigs and from the numbers of trypanosomes in their blood, that the trypanosomes in the series infected by *G. morsitans* were less virulent for guineapigs than those of the series infected by the syringe. Guineapigs 338, 345, 360 and 377 lived for 107, 119, 132 and 150 days respectively, while Guineapigs 346, 358, 361, 368, 376, 382 and 383 lived for 124, 80, 84, 47, 62, 54 and 42 days respectively. This evidence was strengthened by comparing the duration of life, after inoculation, of Rats 1911 with that of Rats 1912, and of Mice 42 with that of Mice 41. In order to see whether cyclical passage had reduced this acquired virulence the duration of life of Rats 1940 was compared with that of Rats 1912 and that of Mice 43 with that of Mice 41. These figures are shown together with the incubation periods in the following table.

	Incubation Period.	Duration of Life in Days.
Rats 1911	7, 8, 8, 8, 8	57, 67, 82, 84, 90
" 1912	5, 5, 5, 5, 6	22, 23, 25, 28, 61
" 1940	5, 5, 5, 5, 6	13, 16, 18, 22, 32
Mice 42	4, 5, 5, 5, 5, 5, 5, 6, 6, 6	7, 12, 51, 61, 67, 72, 74, 76, 87, 96
" 41	4, 4, 4, 4, 4, 4, 4, 4, 4, 4	9, 21, 28, 29, 29, 34, 39, 47, 48, 54
" 43	4, 4, 4, 5, 5, 5, 5, 5, 5, 5	7, 8, 8, 22, 22, 22, 25, 29, 31, 32



It appears that increased virulence for rats and mice developed in the series of guineapigs which were infected by inoculations with the syringe and that this increase was at least not diminished by passage through *G. morsitans*. The rats weighed from 60 to 80 grammes and the mice weighed about 20 grammes.

SUMMARY AND COMMENTS.

An experiment was made to compare the virulence of a strain of *T. rhodesiense* in two series of guineapigs, the infection being maintained in one series by cyclical transmissions by *G. morsitans* and in the other series by inoculations with a syringe. It was found that the virulence had increased in the latter series and apparently not in the former. This was confirmed by subinoculations into rats and mice. It was also found that this increased virulence was not again decreased by passage through *G. morsitans*.

Very little is known of the factors concerned with the development of trypanosomes in tsetse flies, and of the influences of the tissues and body fluids of flies and vertebrates on the trypanosomes. ROBERTSON (1929) in an account of experiments with *Bodo caudatus*, discussed the questions of selection, mutation and the heterogeneous composition of strains of trypanosomes. Plausible explanations of the variations in the results of transmission experiments could be based on such considerations. More work with infections by single trypanosomes seems to be needed.

REFERENCES.

- CORSON, J. F. (1932). Experiments on the transmission of *Trypanosoma brucei* and *Trypanosoma rhodesiense* to man. *Ann. trop. Med. Parasit.*, 26, 109.
- . (1934). A further note on a strain of *Trypanosoma brucei* from Zululand. *J. trop. Med. (Hyg.)*, 37, 152.
- LESTER, H. M. O. (1932). The influence of cyclical transmission by *Glossina tachinoides* on a strain of *Trypanosoma brucei*, made resistant to human serum. *Ann. trop. Med. Parasit.*, 26, 525.
- . (1933). The characteristics of some Nigerian strains of the polymorphic trypanosomes. *Ibid.*, 27, 361.
- ROBERTSON, M. (1929). The action of acriflavine upon *Bodo caudatus*. A study of heritable modification in a non-conjugating protozoan and its relation to certain aspects of chemotherapy in trypanosomiasis. *Parasitology*, 21, 375.
- SCHILLING, CLAUS & SCHRECK, HANS. (1930). The influence of passage through the invertebrate host on the biological characters of parasitic protozoa. *Ann. trop. Med. Parasit.*, 24, 437.

MURINE TYPHUS IN EGYPT.

BY

D. RIDING, M.D., M.R.C.P.,

Deputy Director, Public Health Laboratories, Cairo, Egypt.

INTRODUCTION.

In a previous paper (RIDING, 1935) the writer gave his results, all negative, of an attempt to isolate a murine strain of the typhus virus from wild rats and mice in Egypt. The examination of wild rats has been continued, principally because PRIEST (1935) and others have recently reported sporadic cases clinically resembling endemic typhus among patients in Egypt.

During March and April, 1936, a further series of 54 wild rats captured in the village of Saft el-Melouk, Ityai el-Baroud Markaz, Behera Province, where cases of mild typhus were occurring, were examined in the Central Laboratories, Cairo. On 25th April, 1936, a strain of the murine typhus virus was isolated.

EXAMINATION OF THE WILD RATS.

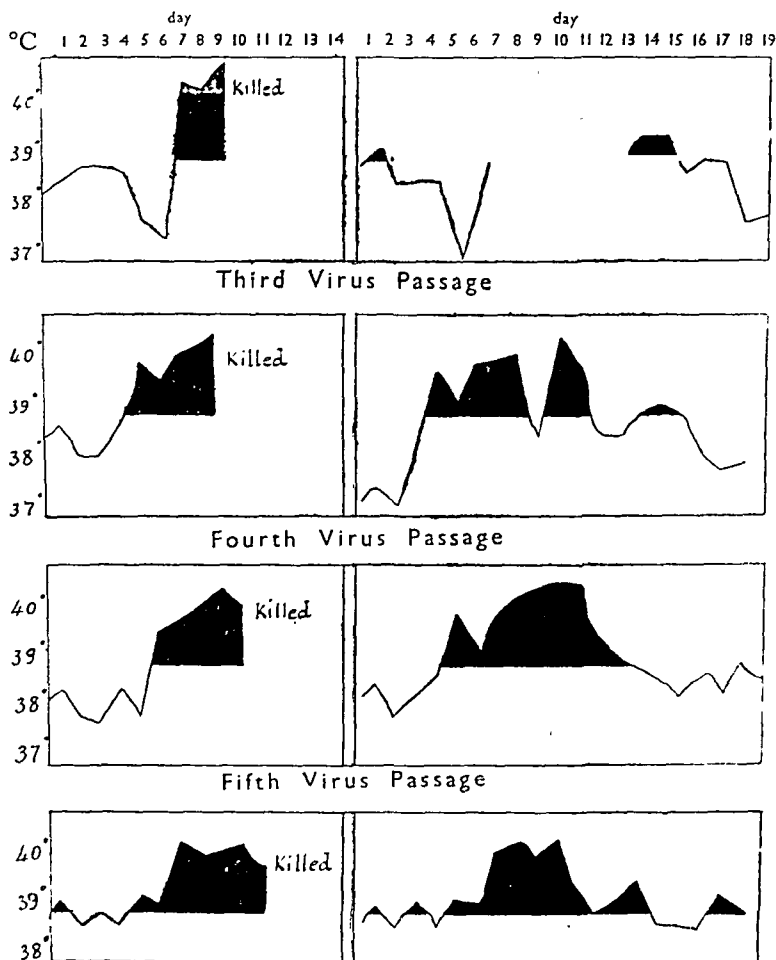
The rats consisted of: *Rattus rattus*, twenty-six; *Rattus norvegicus*, twenty-seven; *Acomys cahirinus*, one.

On arrival at the Central Laboratories, Cairo, the rats were killed with ether, heart blood was taken for blood culture and Weil-Felix test, the brain removed for guineapig inoculation, and a general postmortem examination carried out. No gross pathological lesions were noted in any of the rats. The heart blood cultures all remained sterile after 2 weeks incubation at 37° C. with the exception of one specimen from Rat 4 (*R. norvegicus*) in which a bacillus of the *Haemophilus* group was isolated.

Examination failed to reveal any infection of the rats with *Spirillum morsus muris* or *Leptospira icterohaemorrhagiae*.

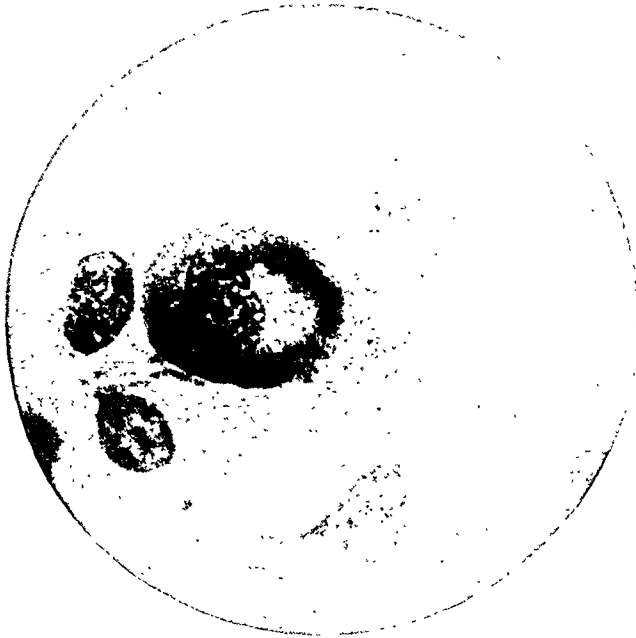
Agglutination tests were carried out with the sera of the rats against suspensions of *Proteus* OX19, OX2, and O Kingsbury, but in no case was a positive agglutination obtained in a dilution of 1 in 50 or over. It must be stated, however, that the Weil-Felix tests were carried out with *Bacillus proteus* suspensions prepared by the method of BRIDGES (1935) in order to obtain uniformity in the results. Unfortunately these concentrated alcoholized suspensions have only about 50 per cent. of the sensitiveness of living cultures.

The guineapig tests were carried out by pooling the brains of three or four rats, emulsifying these in normal saline solution, and injecting a quantity of the brain emulsion intraperitoneally into three guineapigs. By this means too many guineapigs were not sacrificed, and the occasional accidental death among the inoculated guineapigs did not destroy the experiment.



TEMPERATURE REACTION RECORDS.

Three guineapigs inoculated on 14.4.36 with the pooled brain emulsion of Rats 45, 46, 47 and 48 became infected with typhus. These rats were captured in two houses on 13.4.36 and it is interesting to note that a case of typhus was notified from one house on 24.1.36 and another case from the other house on 12.2.36.



ENDOTHELIAL CELL FROM TUNICA VAGINALIS OF A GUINEAPIG. $\times 1200$.

8th day after infection with murine typhus, showing very many rickettsia some of which are escaping from the cell.

Photograph by Dr. Basili Farag.

EXPERIMENTAL TYPHUS IN THE GUINEAPIGS.

All three guineapigs inoculated intraperitoneally with the pooled brain emulsion of Rats 45, 46, 47 and 48 developed a well-marked febrile reaction, and a very definite Neill-Mooser scrotal reaction.

By using normal saline emulsions of the brains of infected guineapigs it has been possible to passage the virus twelve times up to date, between 26.4.36 and 15.8.36. Two guineapigs were used for each virus passage, one to supply the infected brain for passage, and the other to act as a control of the temperature and scrotal reactions.

The chart shows the temperature reaction records for the second, third, fourth and fifth virus passage. It will be noted that there is a well-marked rise of temperature after an incubation period of 5 to 7 days, and a period of fever of the saddle-back type of about 5 to 6 days.

The scrotal reaction was a very constant phenomenon in all the infected guineapigs, consisting of a very characteristic reddening and swelling of the scrotum appearing about the 5th day and persisting till the 12th day after inoculation. Dissection of the scrotum between the 8th and 12th day after inoculation showed marked congestion and fibrino-purulent exudation of the parietal portion of the tunica vaginalis, congestion only of the visceral portion of the tunica vaginalis, and great oedema of and occasional haemorrhage into the head of the epididymis.

In the guineapigs inoculated intraperitoneally with the brain emulsion from Rats 45, 46, 47 and 48 rickettsia were readily found in Giemsa-stained smears of the tunica vaginalis, but in all the passage guineapigs great difficulty has been experienced in finding them and then only occasionally. (See Plate.)

Tissue Cultures of the Rickettsia.

As rickettsia were only occasionally found in very small numbers in smears of the tunica vaginalis of the passage guineapigs an attempt was made to cultivate them in tissue culture.

The method of cultivation recommended by ASCHNER and KLIGLER (1936) was closely followed with the exception that glass stoppered Erlenmeyer flasks of 50 c.c. capacity were used to hold the Tyrode-guineapig serum solution instead of flasks of 25 c.c. capacity. After inoculation with the tissue the flasks were carefully stoppered, sealed with paraffin wax, and incubated at 35° C. instead of 30° C.

Successful cultures were obtained in 80 per cent. of the flasks after 8 to 10 days' incubation.

EXPERIMENTAL TYPHUS IN RABBITS.

Rabbits inoculated intraperitoneally with either brain emulsion or saline washings of the tunica vaginalis of infected guineapigs although apparently ill

showed no definite febrile reaction. The serum of these rabbits gave an agglutination of a *Proteus* X19 O suspension obtained from the Standards Laboratory of the Medical Research Council (Oxford) and of a live OX 19 suspension in a dilution of 1 in 125 on the 14th day after inoculation. The titre of the serum did not rise by the 21st or 28th day, but in most cases was less on these days. No agglutination in a titre of 1 in 50 or over was present prior to inoculation.

EXPERIMENTAL TYPHUS IN WHITE RATS.

The intraperitoneal injection of white rats with either brain emulsion or scrotal washings from infected guineapigs failed to produce any temperature reaction, tunica vaginalis involvement, or production of serum agglutinins for *B. proteus* OX 19 in these animals. Actual infection of the white rats was proved however by the inoculation of their brain emulsion into guineapigs.

SUMMARY.

1. A strain of the murine typhus virus has been isolated from wild rats captured in an Egyptian village.

2. The virus has been passaged twelve times up to date through guineapigs, and has produced consistent febrile and Neill-Mooser scrotal reactions in these animals.

3. Rickettsia have been grown from the tunica vaginalis of infected guineapigs in tissue cultures.

4. Rabbits inoculated with the virus have produced serum agglutinins for *Bacillus proteus* OX19.

5. Inoculation of white rats with the virus failed to produce any detectable effect, although actual infection was proved by inoculating rat brain emulsion into guineapigs.

REFERENCES.

- ASCHNER, M. & KLIGLER, I. J. (1936). *Brit. J. exp. Path.*, 17 (3), 173-178.
BRIDGES, R. F. (1935). *J. R. Army med. Cps.*, 64 (3), 153-162.
PRIEST, R. (1935). *Ibid.*, 65 (1), 9-14.
RIDING, D. (1935). *J. Egypt. Med. Ass.*, 18 (3), 147-160.

CORRESPONDENCE.

BEJEL.

To the Editor, TRANSACTIONS of the Royal Society of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene.
SIR,

With reference to the paper by my friend, ELLIS H. HUDSON, on "Bejel—the endemic syphilis of the Euphrates Arab,"* may I contribute a few remarks.

In Kuwait and its outlying desert, the word "bejel," so far as I have been able to determine, is unknown. Our Bedouin, however, use the word "belesh" in much the same way as the Euphrates Arabs use "bejel." They are not always sure of their own diagnosis and I am frequently asked to give my opinion as to whether a lesion or eruption is belesh or not. I had been in Kuwait some years before I made up my mind that when the Bedou spoke of belesh, he was using *the desert name for syphilis*. The word "belesh" is never used by the people of the city of Kuwait, who call the disease "farinji," as on the Euphrates.

Among the Bedouin the initial chancre is rare. As on the Euphrates, the disease usually begins in the mouth.

HUDSON states: "General adenopathy is characteristic of bejel." These adenopathies among the Bedouin attracted my attention from the very commencement of my residence in Kuwait. I was told that they were tubercular and inasmuch as tuberculosis is extremely prevalent in the city of Kuwait, I decided that tuberculosis in the desert expressed itself in adenopathy and bone disease, rather than in pulmonary manifestations, for pulmonary tuberculosis is rare in our desert. But many of these patients were not particularly ill. They came with greatly enlarged cervical glands and apparently nothing else and asked to be treated. Many of them said they had belesh.

It is about 17 years since I began to use bismuth in these cases and in the treatment of belesh generally, and I have never turned back. The results are very encouraging. It would be most instructive to do some careful research work on these adenopathies so that we could positively rule out, or rule in, tuberculosis. It is quite likely that the two diseases frequently exist together in the same patient, and it is possible too that bismuth is of value in the treatment of tuberculosis.

Of the efficacy of bismuth in the treatment of belesh there is no longer the least doubt. For the past 8 years we have been giving 6,000 to 8,000 injections yearly in the American Hospital at Kuwait, in the treatment of belesh and also in the ordinary course of our syphilitic work. The injections have become more than popular and the people frequently ask for them. Our preference in Kuwait is for one injection every 5 to 7 days, rather than a small injection every day, although in selected instances we do follow the latter method. It multiplies work very greatly for the staff to give daily injections. Our usual course for an

**Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. & Hyg.* (1937), 31.

adult man is four to six injections of 2 grains at each injection—the course to be repeated if necessary, and if possible with the elusive Bedou. Our people have now come to realize that our standard course is four to six injections and on the whole give us fair allegiance. It is not suggested for a moment that all patients undergo the full course—all too many drop out after one or two injections, either because of severe after-effects, for one gets an occasional troublesome stomatitis; or because no apparent improvement resulted; or it was too inconvenient to come so far; or . . . or . . . or . . . However, in Arabia, as elsewhere, one has to strive for an ideal.

As to the best preparation of bismuth to use, I have long since decided that sobita (Howards), or sodium bismuth tartrate, is the preparation of choice for our kind of work. It is so cheap that the cost is negligible. When I first began using it in simple aqueous solution I was greatly troubled by the amount of pain which so frequently followed injection. We now give it in a solution of 50 per cent. glycerine in distilled water, sterilizing the solution in glazed porcelain casserole dishes. The use of glycerine very largely eliminates the problem of pain subsequent to the injection. The injections are always made into the gluteus muscle, unless there are special reasons for using the deltoid. The patient should always be advised to rest for 24 hours after the injection, if possible. It is a fact which we have noted again and again, that patients in the wards never have any pain worth mentioning following injection.

I am, etc.,

Kuwait, Arabia.

C. S. G. MYLREA.

TRYPANOSOMES IN BAT AND MARMOT.

To the Editor, *TRANSACTIONS of the Royal Society of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene.*
SIR,

While visiting Berkeley, California, I had the opportunity of finding bats, *Antrozous pallidus pacificus*, infected with haemoflagellates. Parasites were found by fresh blood examination in two out of eight bats collected in a barn at Pinole, Contra Costa County, California. The trypanosome forms are morphologically similar to those of *Schizotrypanum cruzi* and were scanty in the peripheral blood. The material was obtained through the courtesy of Dr. HAROLD KIRBY, Jnr., of the Department of Zoology, University of California.

As far as I know, trypanosomes of bats have not yet been reported in North America.

At Hamilton, Montana, while working at the Rocky Mountain Laboratory, a trypanosome resembling *Trypanosoma lewisi* was found in one out of four woodchucks (*Marmota flaviventris nosophora*) examined.

I am, etc.,

Instituto Oswaldo Cruz,
Rio de Janeiro, Brazil.

EMMANUEL DIAS.

THE FRESHWATER BIOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION OF THE BRITISH EMPIRE.

The general purpose of the Freshwater Biological Association is to investigate any side of freshwater biology, pure and applied. The English Lake District has been selected because it is an area in which one may find a great number of types of water, large and small, still and running, distributed over a considerable range of altitude. Work began at the end of 1931 and has been concentrated upon Windermere and streams that run into it. The Association's general plan is to have a group of people working in co-ordination upon the chemistry and physics of the water, the living things which occur in it, and the changes which follow drought, floods, or the progress of the seasons. At the present moment the team consists of an entomologist, principally occupied in determining insect larvae, an algologist, an investigator on salmon fry, and a worker on the animal plankton and the chemistry of the water. A Director has been very recently appointed, and he hopes later to carry out investigations on fish, a subject on which he has special knowledge.

It is thought that such work as this has considerable value to the Royal Society of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene. Could we understand clearly why certain species of *Anopheles* breed in certain waters it would effect an economy in sanitary measures and we might be able to produce some small but critical alteration in the types of water. This idea is not by any means new, indeed it has already been fruitful of results up to a point. But it is difficult for the isolated worker in the tropics to tackle so wide a problem. Perhaps the Freshwater Biological Association, with a library and a group of men concentrating their attention on one area, may hope to explain some of the causes of the abundance of organisms; in so doing they would make a substantial contribution towards our understanding of *Anopheles*. It will also be remembered but there are many creatures important in human parasitology which pass a part of their life history in water and may be assumed to be limited by the factors prevailing in the water.

The laboratory at Windermere is a meeting place which is frequently used by people who are not members of the Association's staff. It may be of service to some member of our Society, anxious to expand his knowledge, improve his technique, or use the library. Any society making a contribution of £5 per annum to the Association's funds is entitled to nominate a person who can make use of the laboratory for one month without paying a bench fee. The Royal Society of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene has therefore voted a subscription of £5 for the current year. Any Fellow wishing to avail himself of the facilities on Windermere should apply in the first instance to the Society at Manson House, 26, Portland Place, London, W.1.

ANNOUNCEMENTS.

LEGACY TO THE ROYAL SOCIETY OF TROPICAL MEDICINE AND HYGIENE.

Dr. A. S. BURGESS, formerly of the West African Medical Service, and a Fellow of the Society since 1913, died on 15th March, 1937, leaving estate of the gross value of £26,507, net personalty £24,112.

After a number of small legacies (totalling approximately £5,000) Dr. BURGESS left the estate on trust for three persons during their lives.

After the death of these three the whole residue is to be divided in equal shares between the Royal Society of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene and Caius College, Cambridge.

Though it may be many years before the Society receives this legacy, it is gratifying to know that the position of the Society is being consolidated in this way.

Gifts such as these go far to ensure the future usefulness of the Society, and it is hoped that others will follow Dr. BURGESS's example.

OFFICERS OF THE SOCIETY.

At the first meeting of the new Council, held at Manson House, on the 1st July, 1937, appointments were made as follows :—

Honorary Treasurer.

Dr. OSWALD MARRIOTT was re-elected Hon. Treasurer for the ensuing two years.

Honorary Secretaries.

Dr. C. M. WENYON and Dr. N. HAMILTON FAIRLEY were re-elected Hon. Secretaries for the ensuing two years.

Local Secretaries

Fifty-one Local Secretaries were re-elected for a further term of two years. The following new Local Secretaries were appointed, subject to their acceptance of the Council's invitation : Dr. H. JOCELYN SMYLY, *North China* ; Dr. N. KAMCHORN, *Siam* ; Dr. T. B. GILCHRIST, *Cape Province* ; Lt.-Col. E. B. MARSH, *Egypt* ; Dr. G. S. ESCOFFERY, *Jamaica*.

CORRIGENDUM.

Vol. 31, No. 1, June, 1937, p. 7, line 2.

Babesia canis should read *Babesia felis*.

TRANSACTIONS

OF THE

ROYAL SOCIETY OF TROPICAL MEDICINE AND HYGIENE.

VOL. XXXI. No. 3. NOVEMBER, 1937.

Proceedings of the
Opening Meeting of the Thirty-first Session
held at Manson House, 26, Portland Place, London, W.1,
on Thursday, 21st October, 1937, at 8.15 p.m.
Lt.-Col. S. P. JAMES, C.M.G., M.D., F.R.S., I.M.S. (ret.), *President*,
in the Chair.

PRESIDENTIAL ADDRESS.

ADVANCES IN KNOWLEDGE OF MALARIA SINCE THE WAR.

BY

S. P. JAMES.

I think everyone interested in malaria will agree that the 20 years which have passed since the War were noteworthy first for the initiation and establishment of new and better arrangements for systematic research, second for some remarkable discoveries and additions to knowledge, third for a lively renewal of practical anti-malarial efforts in many parts of the world. My paper this evening is about these encouraging events which I believe have had the result of making the outlook for future success in the fight against malaria more hopeful than it has ever been. At any rate, it is more hopeful than it was 20 years ago when, as we all know, faith in the efficacy of every prophylactic and therapeutic measure had fallen almost to zero. Everyone who had actually taken part in efforts to deal with malaria in different parts of the

world during the War came home with the uncomfortable feeling that we knew much less about the disease than we thought we did, and that it might be quite a good plan to sink our pride and to begin again, in all humility and with greater respect and reverence, to try to fathom some of its mysteries. Opportunities for this new beginning soon became available by the spread of the disease in eastern and western Europe and by arrangements for what may be called the internationalization of malaria research and control. The idea of making malaria work a matter of international as well as of national concern had its origin in England in 1923 when various countries in Europe were beginning to recover from the effects of post-War epidemics and were trying to arrange for a continuous public health policy and a permanent medical and sanitary service for carrying it out. An initial difficulty in creating and developing the service was that the countries concerned were poverty-stricken and very backward in matters of medical assistance and public health arrangements. Doctors who had received a training in public health were few and far between and there was a great lack of subordinate personnel. Malaria was everywhere prevalent and severe and it was a question whether the public health policy should be based primarily on efforts to deal with this disease, or whether primary attention should be given to general medical and public health requirements which were equally of pressing importance. It was the old question whether malaria among poor illiterate people should be dealt with as an isolated problem separate from the general medical and public health problems of the country concerned. The situation was new to European experience and it was thought that useful advice about it might perhaps be given by a group of workers who had had experience of similar conditions in the tropics. In May, 1923, a proposal to this effect was presented to the Health Committee of the League of Nations which had been asked by several of the affected countries to advise them on the matter. The proposal was favourably received. The Health Committee appointed a small Malaria Sub-Committee, and later the Malaria Commission, which in 1924 undertook the collective enquiry that had been proposed. Seventeen members from eleven countries took part in the tour and in each country and district visited, representatives of the local administrative and medical staffs accompanied the Commission and took part in its discussions. Major NORMAN LOTHIAN, who had previously given promise of a brilliant career in the Royal Army Medical Corps, was Secretary to the Commission during this tour and again during the next collective tour which was made in Palestine and part of Asia Minor in 1925. On this latter tour, the Commission had the advantage of the participation of an expert from the United States, namely, the late Dr. SAMUEL DARLING, whose early work with General GORGAS during the construction of the Panama Canal is so well known. At the period of the tour in Palestine he was at the zenith of his powers as an expert adviser on anti-malarial work. Almost at the end of this tour an accident occurred in which he and LOTHIAN were killed. I had known and admired DARLING since we



STUDY TOURS OF THE MALARIA COMMISSION.

were together on the Panama Canal in 1911. His untimely death was a loss not only to the United States, but also to the world of research workers to which he belonged.

Another collective study tour undertaken by members of the Commission in 1925 was to Spain and another to Sicily; in later years there were tours to the United States, British India and other countries. I do not propose to say anything more about these collective study tours except to make the point that they were a new arrangement for the purpose of obtaining an impartial and authoritative pronouncement on measures for dealing with malaria in the light of existing knowledge and experience. They afforded an opportunity of ascertaining and comparing conditions in a number of countries. During the tours, observations made by individual members of the Commission were examined by other members and the results were discussed in full session by malariologists belonging to very varied schools of anti-malarial practice and opinion. These mutual discussions were the first occasion on which the collective thought of malariologists of different countries and different schools of teaching and practice were brought to bear on local malaria problems studied on the spot. They had the important result that individual views

became modified to the extent that sometimes, at any rate, the Commission as a whole were able to agree on what might be the wisest course to pursue in particular circumstances when due consideration was given to administrative and social and economic as well as to technical difficulties. I say sometimes because, as you probably know, agreement was not always reached. In that case it was usually decided that no general report on the tour should be published. The photograph reproduced on the opposite page was taken at a meeting of the Commission when thirty-five malariologists from about twenty different countries were called together to discuss a report which, in the end, it was agreed not to publish. Thanks to the meetings of this kind and to other arrangements made by the Commission for bringing malariologists of different countries into touch with one another, it is probable that there never was a time when workers on this subject knew each other so well.

One cannot speak of the internationalization of malaria work through the medium of the League's Commission without mentioning at the same time the International Health Division of the Rockefeller Foundation which during the last 15 years has financed the Commission's work. In addition to the international arrangements of the League, the Foundation has initiated and maintained from 1916 onwards an international arrangement of its own for systematic anti-malarial work in various countries. It is chiefly an arrangement by which particular methods for reducing the incidence of malarial infection, such as anti-larval work, screening and the treatment of carriers, are tried out experimentally on a small scale in the field. The arrangements are made in collaboration with Governments. They were begun in Arkansas, Mississippi and other Southern States, and gradually extended to localities in the Argentine, Porto Rico, Nicaragua, Brazil, and other countries in America. In 1924 and 1925 they were extended to Italy, Poland, Palestine, and the Philippine Islands. A map showing all the Rockefeller stations for studies on malaria in Europe is printed on page 267. Each of them is under the direction of a member of the staff of the Foundation's International Health Division. Some of them are called "stations for the demonstration of methods of control" but perhaps "research stations" would be a better name.

Altogether, during the 20 years ending with 1935, the Foundation spent on anti-malaria work, exclusive of the cost of field services, about two and a half million dollars, of which one and a half million was spent in foreign countries. I should add that the scope of the Foundation's malaria programme has not been limited to what are called in the United States "Malaria Control Demonstrations." There is hardly any item of malaria research, except perhaps chemotherapy, which has not received assistance directly or indirectly from its funds.

The grant of fellowships to enable medical graduates to become trained malariologists or to enable workers to see what is being done outside their own country is another beneficent activity of the Foundation. During the last few years nearly eighty fellowships and grants for these purposes have been given.



White, Markoff, Ciuca, Maxey, Anigstein, Burnet, Taylor, Collins, Hackett, Raichman, Strode, Swellengrebel, Evans, De Buen,
Schilling, Boudreau, Marchoux, Boyd, Ascoli, Ferrell, Sfaric, Ottolenghi, Labranca, Pittaluga, Missiroli,
Moutoussis, Kligler, Balfour, Lutrario, Schüffner, Nocht, James, Brumpt, Bonamico,
(Absent : Bailey, Cantacuzene, Christophers, Marzinovsky, Raynaud, Stanton, Wenyon.)

the other by the U.S. Public Health Service in Washington. Roumania also has two centres, one at Jassy, the other at Bucharest. There has always been active co-operation between the several centres named. It is maintained by personal visits and by the exchange of species and strains of the malaria parasites and mosquitoes with which the work is done. An interesting point connected with it was the finding that anopheles confined in the cages invented by Captain BARRAUD in India travel well by sea and air. Between 1931 and 1933, batches of anopheles were received alive at Horton from countries as far distant as British-India, West Africa, Uganda and Trinidad, and on more frequent occasions from a number of countries in Europe.

New and better arrangements for research on other aspects of malaria were also a feature of the period under review. One of them was the renewal of anti-malarial chemotherapeutic research by the chemical industries in Germany and France and the creation by the British Government of an organization for systematic work in England. For various reasons, arrangements made in this country were on a small scale but since their initiation in 1925 some progress has been made, particularly with arrangements for testing new synthetic preparations and for studying the biological and physico-chemical principles underlying the action of quinine and synthetic drugs. There are special units for this side of the subject in Liverpool, London and Cambridge. Recently, the Medical Research Council, in consultation with the Department of Scientific and Industrial Research, have made plans for promoting chemotherapeutic investigation on a larger scale, for which the Government have provided an annual grant of £30,000. It is understood that the scheme includes the provision of a new Institute and that at any rate for the next year or more the income of the fund will be used to meet the cost of building. It will therefore be some time before expenditure on actual research work can be much increased.

Another Medical Research Council scheme is an arrangement by which young graduates who show an aptitude and desire for research are given grants and facilities for becoming specially trained as research workers in the tropics. It is understood that as qualified investigators become available under this scheme they will be eligible for permanent pensionable appointments for research work on malaria and other subjects of tropical medicine abroad and at home.

Lastly, I must not fail to mention arrangements made by particular societies and individuals. One example of each will suffice. Everyone will remember that the Royal Society of London, more than 35 years ago, followed up the discovery of the mosquito-cycle of the malaria parasite by sending research workers to Africa and India to study the new epidemiology of the disease and the life history and habits of the mosquitoes which transmit it. Last year the Society took a second step which everyone hopes will have equally important results. It was the decision to devote the major part of its Medical Research Fund to a scheme of malaria research consisting firstly of a study by modern experimental methods of the parasites and their relationship with human,

animal and insect hosts, secondly of an intensive study of the ecology of one or more of the species of anopheles which spread malaria in the tropics. As a recent example of arrangements made by individuals I may cite the establishment of the Dorothea Simmons Malaria Research Station in Greece where the remarkable work on blackwater fever described by Mr. Foy and Dr. HAMILTON FAIRLEY at our Society's meeting in June this year was done. The station was situated first in the Peloponnesus but for the last few years has been in Salonika. Unfortunately the donor's grant to this station will cease at the end of 1938. In view of the outstanding importance of its work on blackwater fever it is greatly to be hoped that a plan for keeping it going will be found.

II.

Now I must pass to the second part of my paper, that is to the discoveries and additions to knowledge made during the period under review. On this subject I think the outstanding feature of the advance of knowledge during the period was the discovery or invention of better ways of investigating the disease. After the War the uneasy feeling of ignorance which I mentioned at the beginning of my paper caused workers to look about for new avenues of approach to unsolved problems. Clinicians, epidemiologists and entomologists gave much thought to this matter. An early opportunity for new work was provided by the occurrence of cases of malaria in the families of soldiers who had returned to their homes. These occurrences were studied in detail with the object of ascertaining precisely the sequence of events which led to their onset and the manner in which they multiplied to constitute local epidemics. Attention was directed to the habits and behaviour of the insect vector in the adult stage, and to the circumstances in which it became infected and transmitted the infection in particular houses. In this way malaria began to be studied in individuals of selected families in their own homes as well as in the mass by random sampling in the village street, and anopheles began to be studied from the point of view of the behaviour of the adult female insect in these houses as well as from the point of view of breeding places of larvae in the general environment. These studies were the starting-point of work which led to the discovery of biological races of anopheles indistinguishable morphologically in the adult stage, but with different habits and therefore, sometimes, with a different rôle in the epidemiology of the disease which they transmitted. At first it was thought that the results of these household studies were of interest chiefly from the point of view of the epidemiology of malaria in Europe; later it was found that their application in the tropics gave equally fruitful results, so it is now generally recognized that a "malaria survey," wherever it is carried out, must include on the one hand a clinical and parasitological study, over a considerable period, of selected individuals of particular age-groups in as many families as possible, and on the other a close study of the habits and behaviour of the insect vector

in the adult as well as in the larval stage. A good example of studies of the first type was the investigation in Nigeria made by the late Prof. J. G. THOMSON, whose recent untimely death we all so much deplore. Another is the investigation made by Dr. BAGSTER WILSON in Tanganyika. Results of the second type of study have led to quite a novel method of controlling malaria among uncivilized native races in South Africa.

Another avenue of approach indicative of the general desire to break new ground was investigation into the circumstances and factors to which the apparent disappearance of malaria from England, Denmark and Holland may have been due. These enquiries showed that the apparent disappearance had come about without any reduction of the insect vector concerned. Malaria is essentially a house or family disease and its spread is greatly facilitated by circumstances which bring gametocyte carriers, insect vectors and non-immune persons into close and continuous association. It was found that in the countries named, this close association had been gradually broken in the course of years by progressive social, economic, educational, medical and public health improvements. Thus a way was opened which justified the application of other methods of dealing with malaria than those arising directly from the belief that because mosquitoes transmit the disease their elimination must be the object of chief concern and expenditure.

Other methods of investigation devised during the early post-War years were of a quite different kind. In 1924, the late Dr. ROEHL brought into application on a large scale at Elberfeld, in Germany, a method for seeking anti-malarial remedies by testing numerous quinine and quinoline derivatives to ascertain whether any of them were effective against the parasites of bird malaria. In 1925, as I have already mentioned, the practice of malariatherapy was applied systematically in England to the study of malaria itself as well as for its original purpose. Both these arrangements quickly led to great advances of knowledge on chemical and biological aspects of malaria and in particular to a change of thought and opinion on the aims and methods of anti-malarial therapeutics. On the chemical side an epoch-making advance was the discovery of plasmoquine and other synthetic compounds which promised to be effective anti-malarial agents. On the biological side additions to knowledge were no less important. The vexed question of the unicity or plurality of the human plasmodia was answered unequivocally. It is now accepted universally that the group comprises a number of species of which the morphological characters are quite distinct, and that in addition there are a number of varieties of each species with lesser morphological differences, such, for example, as those described for the indigenous type of *Plasmodium vivax* endemic in Holland as compared with those of the tropical type from Madagascar. In addition, it is accepted that within each morphological species and variety there are many strains having different biological properties; they cannot be distinguished morphologically but can be separated by their clinical effects, immunological characters and their reaction

to anti-malarial drugs. Acquired tolerance or immunity as a result of repeated attacks was found to be specific not only as regards the various species of parasite concerned but also as regards particular strains. There were also notable advances of knowledge on the therapeutics of the disease. It was found that although quinine is one of the most remarkable drugs in the world it has several defects. In particular it does not prevent infection of the human host or the insect vector, and it does not prevent relapses. Its merits and defects in these and other respects were for the first time clearly ascertained and described; and when this was done it became possible to justify anti-malarial chemotherapy on scientific grounds. Its aim is not to supplant the one and only remedy that has been available for 300 years, but to supplement it with additional weapons for particular purposes.

Except the practice of malariatherapy no method of research contributed so much to the addition of knowledge during the period under review as did the study of avian malaria parasites and the extensive use of canaries and other birds harbouring these parasites for laboratory work. Everyone knows, of course, what we owe to researches on bird malaria: MACCALLUM's discovery of the fertilization of the female gametocyte, ROSS's working out of the mosquito cycle of the parasite, the early work on the curative action of quinine by KOPANARIS, the brothers SERGENT, GIEMSA and others, ROEHL's drug-testing device which resulted in the discovery of plasmoquine, and the fundamental work of the TALIAFERROS on the mechanism of immunity. About 1931 the knowledge which had been gained on human plasmodia by their study in the practice of malariatherapy was applied in new studies of the known avian species. ROEHL's method of chemotherapeutic test was supplemented by using canaries infected by mosquito bites instead of by direct-blood inoculation and tests were made on birds harbouring the parasite *Haemoproteus* of which the schizogonic cycle is passed in endothelial cells instead of in red blood corpuscles. Finally, new avian plasmodia were discovered and brought into use for experimental studies. One of them is the malaria parasite of the domestic fowl, which Professor BRUMPT found and described in 1935 and to which he gave the name *Plasmodium gallinaceum*, another is a malaria parasite of the Java sparrow which was apparently seen by ZIEMANN* in 1896 and by ANSCHUTZ in 1909 and by several workers since, but was nameless until 1935 when Professor BRUMPT called it *Plasmodium paddae*. It would be in accord with precedent if the intensive study that is now being devoted to bird malaria were to provide the solution to problems which, even with the facilities afforded by the practice of malariatherapy, cannot be investigated in the human subject. One of them is the completion of knowledge of the schizogonic cycle of plasmodia in their respective vertebrate hosts. The sporogonic cycle of these parasites in the mosquito has been known in every detail for nearly 40 years, but we know only

*ZIEMANN, H. (1937). *Zbl. Bakt.* I Abt. Orig., 140, 63.

a part of the story of their life in the vertebrate host. An important part of the story that we do not know is what happens to the parasite during the interval between the inoculation of sporozoites by the mosquito and the appearance of trophozoites in the red blood corpuscles. When Ross had worked out the cycle of the parasite in the mosquito the end of the story was quite naturally assumed to be that the sporozoites which this insect injects into the vertebrate host penetrate quickly into the red corpuscles of the circulating blood and become the trophozoites which commence the schizogonic cycle. Nearly everyone accepted this assumption and SCHAUDINN's observations in 1902 seemed to prove that the assumption was correct. GRASSI, it is true, tried without success to repeat SCHAUDINN's observations and always remained in doubt as to the destiny of the sporozoites, but to most workers it seemed against common sense to suppose that the parasite had to go through yet another cycle before entering red cells. So it was not until between 1925 and 1927 that the question again attracted attention. Its revival was due to the observation made by YORKE and MACFIE in Liverpool, and by ourselves at Horton, that the onset of a malarial attack intentionally induced by the bites of infective mosquitoes cannot be prevented by giving quinine during the incubation period. I showed an example of this observation at a meeting of our Society in 1931.* It is clear, in this example, that if the sporozoites which the thirty mosquitoes injected had immediately entered red blood corpuscles and had become trophozoites and schizonts the quinine would have killed them and no attack would have resulted. On the basis of these and similar experiments with plasmoquine the hypothesis was published in December, 1931, that what happens to sporozoites injected by the mosquito is that they are carried by the blood stream to the internal organs where they enter reticulo-endothelial cells and go through a cycle of development resulting in the production of merozoites which are able to enter red blood cells of the general circulation. Since then the problem of the destiny of sporozoites has been studied assiduously by many workers in different countries, and as a result it seems now that its solution may be close at hand. If so, it will provide an example of the manner in which advances of knowledge come about gradually as the result of observations made independently or collectively by many workers rather than as a result of isolated discoveries made by individuals. It would take too long to mention all the observations which have been made on this problem, and the names of those who made them, so I must limit myself to a brief statement of what seems to be the present position of knowledge on the matter. Three results of experimental work are of outstanding importance. The first is the observation that very shortly after the inoculation of sporozoites intravenously or intramuscularly, or by the bites of mosquitoes, the blood of the person or bird inoculated is not infective to other persons or birds, even when injected in large amounts, and that it remains non-infective for at least 2 or 3 days. This observation has been made repeatedly

* JAMES, S. P. (1931). *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 24, 477.

as regards the sporozoites of *P. vivax* and *P. falciparum*, and as regards several species of avian plasmodia. The second is the observation, which, of course, has been made only as regards bird malaria, that during the latter part of the period of non-infectivity of the blood other birds can be infected by inoculating a small portion of the spleen, the liver or the brain. Evidently these internal organs become infective earlier than the circulating blood. The conclusion drawn from these two observations is that sporozoites injected intravenously or by the mosquito are quickly cleared from the circulating blood and become lodged in the reticulo-endothelial system of the internal organs where they remain until they have developed to the stage which can become parasitic in the red cells of the circulating blood. The third outstanding result of experimental work is the discovery that some avian plasmodia have two schizogonic cycles of development in their vertebrate hosts: one occurs in reticulo-endothelial cells in the brain, spleen, liver, kidneys, lungs and bone marrow, the other in the red corpuscles of the general circulation. It is known that after infection by the bites of mosquitoes the cycle in the reticulo-endothelial cells precedes the cycle in red blood corpuscles because, as I have just mentioned, birds can be infected by inoculating them with a small portion of blood-free tissue from the spleen or liver or brain at a time when they cannot be infected even by inoculating a large quantity of blood. At the Laboratory Meeting of the Society which was held last March I had the pleasure of showing with Dr. TATE preparations of various stages of this endothelial cell cycle as it occurs in the parasite *Plasmodium gallinaceum* of the domestic fowl. Professor RAFFAELE, of Rome, had previously discovered stages of the same cycle in canaries infected with *P. elongatum* and *P. relictum*, and Drs. HUFF and BLOOM, of Chicago, had discovered what seemed to be the same stages in cells of the bone marrow of birds infected with *P. elongatum*. Dr. TATE at Cambridge, and Dr. KIKUTH at Elberfeld, have confirmed RAFFAELE's findings with regard to *P. relictum*, and Dr. KIKUTH has obtained the same results with *P. cathemerium*. Professor BRUMPT and others have confirmed the findings with regard to *P. gallinaceum*. It has not yet been proved that the stages seen in endothelial cells are actually stages of the growth and development of sporozoites taken up by these cells from the blood stream after their injection by the mosquito, but it is difficult to suggest any good reason against this view. It must be remembered, of course, that it is not yet justifiable to assume that the sporozoites of the human plasmodia have to undergo the same kind of preliminary growth and development in endothelial cells of the internal organs before they can become parasitic in red corpuscles of the general circulation, but if, ultimately, this should be found to be the case, we should be able to explain more satisfactorily than at present the failure of such remarkable anti-malarial drugs as quinine, plasmoquine and atebrin to act as true prophylactics, and to stop the occurrence of relapses. In the meantime it seems clear that the next step in anti-malarial chemotherapeutic research should be to search for a compound which will destroy avian plasmodia during their cycle in endothelial cells.

I have talked long on the advances of knowledge resulting from the study of bird malaria, but I must not omit to mention that during recent years notable additions to knowledge have also come from studies on malaria in monkeys. The systematic use of these animals for experimental work dates only from 1932, when NAPIER and CAMPBELL, and KNOWLES and DAS GUPTA in India described malaria parasites from the blood of naturally infected monkeys imported from Singapore. Since then several of these parasites have been the subject of intensive study particularly in relation to immunology, and one of them, *Plasmodium knowlesi*, is quite commonly used, especially in Roumania, for the practice of human malariatherapy. Most of the additions to knowledge have come from work done in British India by the late Colonel KNOWLES and his collaborators, and by SINTON and MULLIGAN. The results of a remarkable collaborative study by WILLIAM TALIAFERRO and W. H. MULLIGAN, of the histopathology of malaria, based chiefly on work done on *P. knowlesi* in India, have recently been published. During the last few years Sir RICKARD CHRISTOPHERS, who directs a special unit for research in malaria at the London School of Hygiene, has used *P. knowlesi* for an entirely new type of fundamental or basic research which is concerned with the physico-chemical principles underlying the mode of action of quinine and the synthetic anti-malarial compounds.

III.

In the third part of my paper I hoped to deal adequately with advances of knowledge on anti-malarial work in the field. But I find that for lack of time I must be brief. An outstanding event of the period was the bringing to light of malarious conditions in Europe comparable with those in very malarious parts of the tropics. They had always existed, but their rediscovery attracted much attention. Medical men, public health specialists and entomologists from various parts of the world came to study them and many specific anti-malarial campaigns were started. The Malaria Commission of the League of Nations played a large part in bringing the conditions to light, and the International Health Board of the Rockefeller Foundation are doing a great work in assisting the Governments of affected countries to fight the disease. You have already seen the map of Europe showing thirty-nine areas in each of which a special anti-malarial campaign is in progress under the direction of a member of the Foundation's staff. Perhaps when you looked at the map you wondered why so much anti-malarial work is being done in Europe when so much has been left undone in the tropics. This is one of the problems of malaria that still remain unsolved. You may have wondered, too, how all this good work is to be continued by the Governments of the countries concerned when the experts from abroad who now direct it have departed. This raises the question of the *creation of permanent official anti-malarial organizations* which is the most important matter with which any attempt to review recent advances in anti-

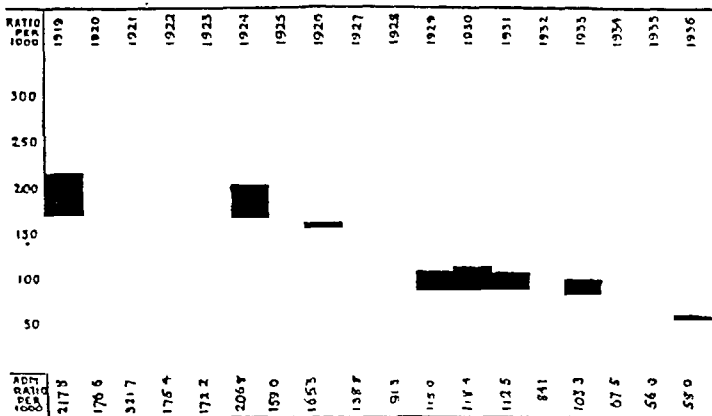
malarial field work should be concerned. The Malaria Commission, in their general report on the principles and methods of anti-malarial measures in Europe, placed the creation and development of a permanent service first among their recommendations. They advised the establishment at the headquarters of the Governments concerned of a central official organization similar to that which is usual for tuberculosis and other social diseases. They suggested that the organization should be a subsection of the Central Health Department and that its chief duties should be to advise the Governments on anti-malarial policy and measures, to arrange for malaria research, to arrange for training medical officers and subordinate personnel in malariology, to conduct malaria surveys and to give advice and assistance in the conduct of local measures. It is understood, or at any rate it is hoped, that the anti-malarial activities in Europe, in which the League of Nations and the Rockefeller Foundation are taking so great a part, are part of a programme leading to that end. But, as I said in the beginning of my paper, a chief post-War difficulty in European countries most affected by malaria was the absence of a health service of any kind and in many rural areas the absence of effective arrangements even for treatment of the sick. To create these services medical men and subordinate personnel had to be enlisted and trained and it was therefore a wise plan to begin at the periphery by using malaria as a starting-off point. But the goal aimed at is the development of a general rural medical and health service which provides for adequate medical attention in sickness of all kinds, for improvements in housing, water supply, conservancy and general welfare, and for the organization of educational campaigns designed to get the people to understand and to co-operate in the measures taken for their benefit. When this general service has been organized, arrangements for dealing with malaria will take their rightful place in it in accordance with the relative importance of this particular disease in comparison with the importance of other diseases and conditions affecting the public health. In some other countries, where medical and public health arrangements are more advanced, it has been possible to begin the organization of a special anti-malarial service at the centre rather than at the periphery. British India is a notable example of a country in which this has been done, and it is a country, too, in which definite advances in practical anti-malarial arrangements were made during the period under review. A few years after the War an official central organization called the Malaria Survey of India was inaugurated and financed by the Central Government to the extent of 2 lakhs of rupees a year. Its primary function was to conduct research into all branches of malariology, to act as an information and advisory bureau, to prepare and issue bulletins for the use of executive malariologists and public health officers, to train medical graduates in laboratory and field malaria work, to maintain a reference library, to identify specimens sent for opinion and to undertake special investigations in various parts of India for the purpose of carrying out measures of control. The wide field of research

undertaken by the Survey during the last 10 years is indicated by the numerous original articles published in the *Records of the Malaria Survey of India* which is edited by the Director. Many major field enquiries were conducted by research workers of the organization during the period as well as an investigation lasting from 1923 to 1931 into the therapeutics of malaria with reference to the efficacy of the cinchona alkaloids in comparison with quinine. Apart from this official organization maintained by the Central Government the different Provincial Governments have their own organizations, acting partly through institutes such as the Institute of Hygiene and the School of Tropical Medicine at Calcutta, the King Institute at Madras and the Assam Institute at Shillong, partly through the Public Health Departments, most of which maintain special malaria officers with assistants and field laboratories. In addition there are many local organizations for research and anti-malarial measures, such as the branches of the Ross Institute, which are chiefly occupied with industrial malaria in tea gardens, the special organizations for railways in Bengal and for reclamation and construction works in various parts of the country, the organizations in Indian native states, Mysore, Travancore, Patiala, etc., and the special anti-malaria staffs maintained by large cities, such as Bombay, Calcutta and Delhi. The campaign in the Delhi urban district is being conducted over an area of 55 square miles and is under the direct control of the Malaria Survey of India. The cost of the permanent works included in the first year's programme of measures was 14.75 lakhs of rupees and the cost of the temporary measures Rs. 75,000.

Now I must leave the question of organization and turn to advances in particular anti-malarial methods. First about treatment, everyone knows that some of the most striking advances of knowledge on malaria since the War were on the therapeutics of the disease. I need not say much about them because they were described fully in a discussion on synthetic anti-malarial remedies and quinine which was held at this Society in 1932, and in a general report published by the Malaria Commission of the League of Nations in 1933. A second general report on therapeutics by the Commission is now in the Press. In the work that has been done two quite different aims have been consistently kept in view. The first is to provide a remedy that is so abundant and can be obtained so cheaply that it can be made readily available to the whole population of malarious countries. The second is to find preparations which, regardless of their cost, will be effective for purposes for which quinine is known to fail. On the first aim the chief advance was the finding that for the treatment of the great majority of cases of malaria occurring among the indigenous inhabitants of malarious regions quinine has little or no practical advantages over the mixture of alkaloids known in India as cinchona febrifuge and in Europe as totaquina. Both are cheaper products than quinine. On the second aim an epoch-making advance was the discovery of plasmoquine, atebirin and various other synthetic anti-malarial remedies. The Malaria Commission's second general report

describes the results of clinical trials on a large scale made in various countries between 1933 and 1936 with the object of comparing the efficacy of these synthetic preparations with that of quinine. I think the results confirm most of the conclusions stated in the Commission's previous report and provide valuable further information on some questions that could not be answered definitely in 1933. One of them was whether a short course of plasmoquine given in doses of 0.02 gramme twice a week after cure of the attack by quinine reduces relapses or not. This is now answered definitely in the affirmative. It will be remembered that this practice was introduced some years ago in a standard plan of treatment adopted for the British Army in India, and that the remarkable decline of admissions to hospital illustrated in the graph below

A GRAPH SHOWING THE ANNUAL INCIDENCE OF MALARIA (NUMBER OF ADMISSIONS PER 1000 OF STRENGTH) AMONGST BRITISH TROOPS (OTHER RANKS) IN INDIA FROM 1919 TO 1936



was attributed largely to it. I wish I could have referred to other conclusions stated in this valuable report, but the Commission has taken such care to make reservations with regard to them that I have not found it possible to summarize them briefly.

Knowledge and experience in anti-mosquito work and methods advanced considerably during the period and some noteworthy successes in reducing the prevalence of particular species of anopheles were reported. Many inventions for killing larvae, for preventing anopheles from breeding in certain waters and for killing the adult insects were made, but most is expected from the new knowledge on what are called biological or natural methods of control which has been a feature of research in recent years. The successful employment of these

measures in several campaigns are described enthusiastically in Dr. L. W. HACKETT's admirable book, *Malaria in Europe*, which I am sure all of you have read. Increased attention is also being given to so-called "species-sanitation" although like most methods its practical application has been found to be difficult, particularly in the United States where the idea (as first put forward by CARTER and DARLING for dealing with *Anopheles quadrimaculatus*) did not get a favourable reception. This is chiefly because in the United States anti-malarial practice is complicated by the fact that although malaria as a disease is being dealt with sufficiently by the personal and household measures which the people themselves are already taking, or can easily be persuaded to take, these measures do not ameliorate the serious prevalence of mosquitoes which cause so much discomfort and annoyance in most localities, both urban and rural. To be rid of mosquitoes of all kinds is what the people want. No public health department in the United States can afford to neglect this desire, which is sometimes expressed in forcible language and is the governing factor in financial appropriations towards "malaria control." This makes it difficult to do selective control work on the different species. On this subject of the attitude of the inhabitants of a country towards the application of particular methods an interesting discovery made in recent years is that, in some parts of the world, killing adult mosquitoes by the use of insecticidal sprays in houses appeals more to the inhabitants than anti-larval work. The practice has been applied systematically on a large scale in native huts in Natal and Zululand, and has been reported on as being willingly and enthusiastically received, as costing only about a third of the cost of anti-larval work and as being more effective in controlling malaria. The same method is being tried in campaigns in India.

On the whole, it must be admitted, I think, that existing anti-mosquito measures are still very crude and that no striking advance can be expected until we know more of the life history, habits and behaviour of these "pestiferous insects." I have already mentioned that the Royal Society is now interesting itself in this most important subject.

I had hoped to say a few words about advances in other anti-malarial methods, particularly reclamation of land, bonification, housing, screening and propaganda, but I must end. I am afraid that the account which I have given you of what has been done about malaria since the War is incomplete and imperfect, but I hope that men of reason and goodwill may find in it some cause for a brighter outlook than seemed possible twenty years ago.

The Meeting was preceded at 7.45 p.m. by a Demonstration, arranged by Colonel JAMES, of microscope preparations of the development of the following avian plasmodia in endothelial cells: *P. elongatum*, *P. relictum*, *P. cathemerium*, *P. gallinaceum*. The exhibit included preparations kindly sent by Professor RAFFAELE (Rome), Dr. HUFF (Chicago) and Dr. KIKUTH (Elberfeld).

VOTE OF THANKS.

Sir Rickard Christophers : Mr. PRESIDENT, ladies and gentlemen, it is not customary, following the PRESIDENT's address, to have a discussion on the lines that we hold on our ordinary meeting nights, but in proposing a vote of thanks to our PRESIDENT for the very interesting and instructive address which he has given us to-night, some comment on the subject of that address is, I think, in order.

This, I think, is the first occasion on which a Presidential Address at this Society has dealt with malaria in general. I think those of us who have just listened to our PRESIDENT will have been greatly impressed with the complexity of these new developments in regard to malaria. It is not without reason, I think, that malaria is the only disease which has abrogated to itself a complete science. Though the words "malariology" and "malariologists" may be very barbaric, they have evidently come to stay. One does not hear of "pestology" or "cholerology" for plague or cholera, or—however important hookworm disease may be considered—of "ancylostomatology." But malariologists are well known, in fact, malariologists seem to increase and multiply in a most extraordinary manner. I should not be surprised if there are twenty or thirty malariologists in this room to-night.

Those of us who are malariologists will have been able to appreciate, perhaps more than others, the amusing description which our PRESIDENT has given us of those collective tours by all the high lights of malaria—the international brass-hats, one might call them—wandering about Europe. I have heard the suggestion made by someone who knew a great deal about malariologists that a very interesting book might be written concerning these tours. There is no doubt that these meetings of malariologists from all over the world have produced a most profound effect, as the PRESIDENT well indicated this evening, on the study of malaria. The indirect effect of this exchange of views alone is very great.

To many of us, however, it was probably the second part of our PRESIDENT's paper which was the most interesting, namely, that in which he gave a resumé of the recent developments emerging from a study of this disease. With Ross's discovery of the mosquito cycle one would have thought that the whole subject had been permanently closed. This may be largely so as regards the main facts in aetiology, but otherwise it has been quite the reverse. In the last 20 years especially so many new channels have been opened up that the subject has become almost hydra-headed. What we have not been told to-night is the very large part which our PRESIDENT himself has taken in almost all these recent lines of development. Whether it has had to do with immunity in malaria or the habits of the mosquito, or with new work on relapses and many other interesting points, Colonel JAMES's name, perhaps more than that of any other

single individual, comes forward. He has been the influence at the back of a great amount of the work which has been done on these lines.

It gave me great personal pleasure to hear our PRESIDENT refer to the question of the organization of malaria work in India, and especially what he said about the Malaria Survey of India. I think this organization can well be proud of the high level of work which it has put out, and of some of the unique lines it has followed. It is practically the originator of the idea of the malaria surveys, now recognized to be so important as the basis of all active work against malaria. The functions of the survey were described to us by our PRESIDENT. Perhaps the most important function of all is that it forms a kind of malaria brain for India. In this respect, the position it holds as adviser to the Government and in the control of research in India is a very desirable and effective one. Malaya has a somewhat similar organization, though on rather different lines. It, too, has turned out magnificent work.

It gives me great pleasure to propose a vote of thanks to our PRESIDENT for his delightful address to-night, and I should like to include also our thanks for the very fine demonstration of specimens he has given us to-night.

Dr. C. M. Wenyon said he had great pleasure in seconding the vote of thanks proposed by Sir RICKARD CHRISTOPHERS.

The vote of thanks was carried, and the PRESIDENT thanked the meeting for thus expressing their appreciation.

COMMUNICATIONS.

SELLAR FEVER.

BY

W. A. M. JACK, O.B.E., M.B., B.S. (LOND.), D.T.M. & H. (ENG.),
COLONEL I.M.S.

1. DEFINITION.

A mild fever showing a "saddle-back" temperature chart and lasting in the typical form for 5 days, but which may have a duration of any period from 12 hours to 6 or more days. It is accompanied by frontal headache, congestion of the throat, and slow pulse, and there is a special liability to relapse.

2. INVESTIGATION.

The investigation of this disease has been carried out amongst Indian troops, as opportunity served, for many years in the following places in India: Risalpur, Malakand, Chakdara, Abbottabad and Razmak in the North-West Frontier Province, and Ambala and Sialkot in the Punjab. The principal investigations took place in Razmak in 1932, Ambala in 1933 and in Sialkot from 1934 to 1937.

Razmak is situated in lat. 33° N. at a height of 6,500 feet above sea level. In summer the maximum shade temperature does not reach 90° F., and there is a frequent rainfall; in winter there is snow. Abbottabad, lat. 33° N., height 4,000 feet, is a semi-hill station with a maximum summer shade temperature of 97° F. and snowfall in winter, while Ambala, lat. 30° N., height 900 feet, and Sialkot, lat. 35° N., height 800 feet, experience the climatic conditions of the plains of northern India.

More than 1,000 cases have been observed personally. There has been no opportunity of observation amongst British troops, nor in other parts of India.

3. INCIDENCE.

In Sialkot, during the year 1936, out of a total number of 750 admissions (373 medical, 377 surgical) of Indian combatants to the Indian Military Hospital, no less than 126 were on account of this disease, while, in addition, 398 more received treatment either as outpatients or in the detention ward, bringing the total number of cases to 524 for the year. As the average daily strength of combatants was 1,976, this gives an incidence of 265.18 per thousand.

The total number of days of duty lost was 2,492; that is, more than one quarter of the Indian troops in the station each lost, on the average, over $4\frac{1}{2}$ days' duty during the year.

Since the admissions of combatants to hospital in Sialkot for this disease during the years 1934 and 1935 (with approximately the same daily average strength) were 145 and 91 respectively the incidence in 1936 may be considered as normal.

4. DESCRIPTION.

(a) INCUBATION PERIOD.

A careful study of the incidence in various units has failed to show any regular interval between cases. Apart from sporadic cases, the interval between cases in a barrack room varies between 5 and 20 days. This is not sufficiently constant to be regarded as the incubation period.

(b) ONSET.

Occasionally there is a prodromal sense of malaise or fever for a few hours. The onset is sudden, perhaps accompanied by shivering. Patients can state precisely the time at which they were taken ill. Frontal headache, frequently severe, and a sense of fever are invariably present. Sore throat is complained of in 75 per cent. of cases, and there may be backache, general pains, or pain in the chest or abdomen. Severity or mildness of the onset bears no relation to the duration of the attack.

The time of onset is frequently at night ; 40 per cent. of cases commence between 6 p.m. and 6 a.m.

TABLE I.
TIME OF ONSET.

Time in hours.	Cases.	Percentage.
00.00 to 03.00	16	8.6
03.00 to 06.00	10	5.3
06.00 to 09.00	26	14.0
09.00 to 12.00	25	13.4
12.00 to 15.00	26	14.0
15.00 to 18.00	34	18.3
18.00 to 21.00	32	17.2
21.00 to 24.00	17	9.2
Totals	186	100.0

(c) CLINICAL COURSE.

Typically, the duration of the disease is 5 days, but many variations are encountered. The course may be cut short at any time from 12 hours onwards, and occasionally may last beyond 5 days. It may be prolonged by a relapse or relapses.

Patients often do not report till the second or third day of the disease. Many of the cases which appear to last for more than 5 days come under this heading and their history must be regarded as doubtful. Such cases are, however, shown in the following tables in accordance with the history given.

TABLE II.

DURATION OF FEVER IN 411 CONSECUTIVE CASES OF INDIAN COMBATANTS AND FOLLOWERS ADMITTED TO THE INDIAN MILITARY HOSPITAL, SIALKOT IN 1934-35-36.

Duration of Fever.	1934.		1935.		1936.		Total.	Percentage.
	Comb.	Foll.	Comb.	Foll.	Comb.	Foll.		
1 day	1	—	5	—	12	1	19	4.62
2 days	23	—	22	3	22	5	75	18.25
3 „	38	3	18	2	26	—	87	21.17
4 „	31	6	15	8	17	2	79	19.22
5 „	30	1	16	5	27	2	81	19.71
6 „	4	—	3	1	3	2	13	3.16
7 „	1	—	—	1	1	—	3	0.73
8 „	—	—	1	—	—	—	1	0.24
Relapses	14	1	9	4	18	7	53	12.90
Totals	142	11	89	24	126	19	411	100.00

The rise in temperature reaction may reach as high as 104° F., or may, on rare occasions, be so slight as merely to be half a degree above the individual's normal, but without rising above 98.4° F.; all intermediate severities are met with. There is never any toxæmia; the general appearance of the patient gives no cause for anxiety. A striking feature of the disease is the mildness of the discomfort, except perhaps for the headache, even when the temperature is high and prolonged by relapses. Three-quarters of the cases reporting sick

do not require admission to hospital. Many, who have only a history of fever the previous day, are treated as out-patients and others, who have only slight fever for a short time, are treated with one or two nights in the detention ward.

Convalescence is rapid and nearly all cases are fit to return to full duty within a few days of the return to a normal temperature. No after-effects are left.

Temperature.—A striking characteristic of the disease is the saddleback appearance of the temperature chart. This is caused by a distinct but temporary

TABLE III.

DURATION OF FEVER IN ALL COMBATANT CASES REPORTING SICK AT THE INDIAN MILITARY HOSPITAL SIALKOT IN 1936.

Duration of Fever.	Outpatients.	Detained.	Admitted.	Total.	Percentage.
1 day ...	164*	118	12	294	383 73.09
2 days ...	—	67	22	89	
3 „ ...	—	33	26	59	11.26
4 „ ...	—	4	17	21	4.01
5 „ ...	—	7	27	34	6.49
6 „ ...	—	—	3	3	0.57
7 „ ...	—	—	1	1	0.19
Relapses ...	—	5	18	23	4.39
Totals ...	164	234	126	524	100.00

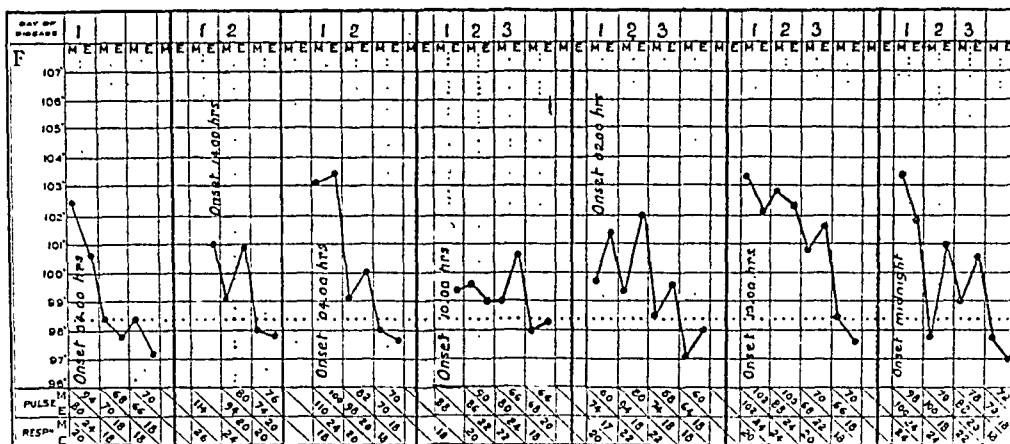
*Accurate details of the duration of disease of those treated as outpatients are not available. In the majority of cases it only lasts for 1 day.

drop in the earlier part, perhaps to normal limits, which divides the course into two phases.

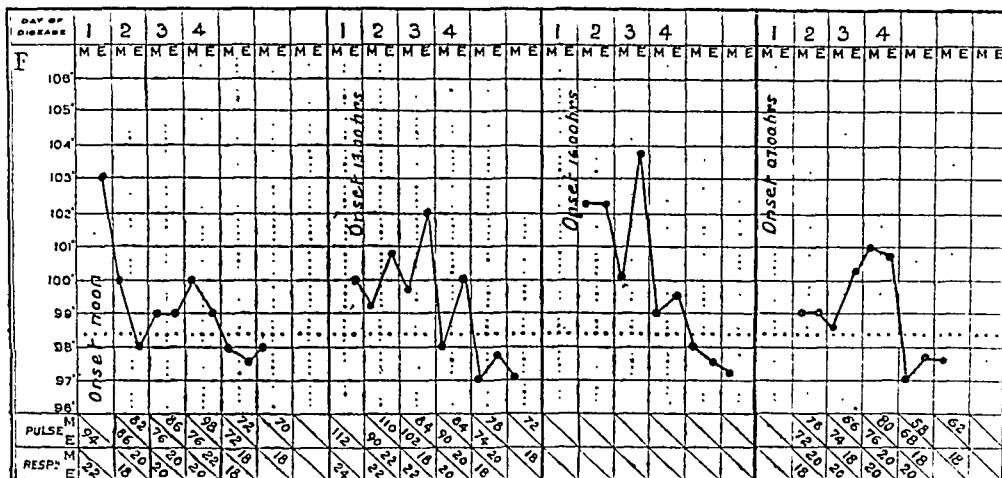
This remission usually commences on either the second or third morning, but may commence as early as the first evening (when the onset is during the previous night), and lasts from 12 hours to 2½ days.

Table IV shows the time of commencement and the duration of the remission in 178 consecutive cases of 4 or more days' duration. No useful information can be obtained from a study of cases of shorter duration. In

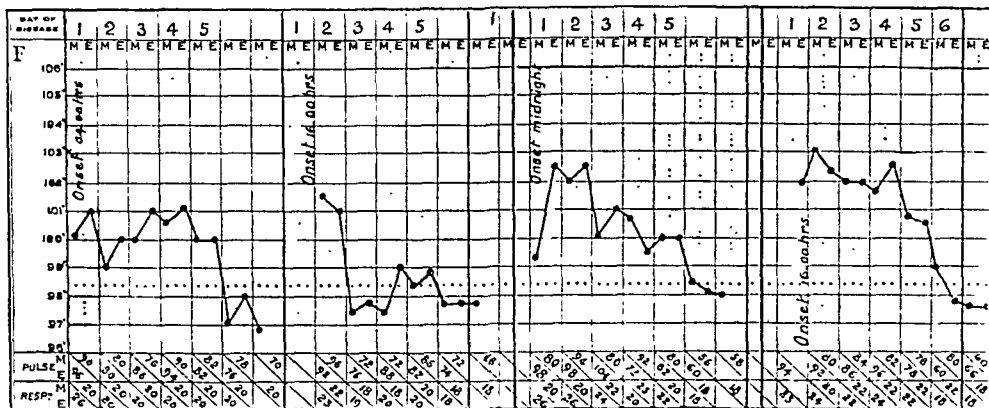
I. Sepoy P. M. Recruit K. M. Recruit P. S. II. Sowar C. S. V. Sapper T. J. VI. Sepoy S. R. VII. Sowar S. S.



CASES OF ONE, TWO AND THREE DAYS DURATION.

VIII.
W/C K. M.IX.
Naik P. N.X.
Sepoy K. N.XI.
Recruit A. S.

CASES OF FOUR DAYS DURATION.

XII.
Sowar A. K.XIII.
Recruit S. S.XIV.
Recruit G. K.XV.
Sepoy A. S.

CASES OF FIVE AND SIX DAYS DURATION.

these the remission can often be observed, but the course of the disease is not long enough to show the typical saddle-back. Cases of 3 days' duration occur with a remission on the second day which may give rise to a suspicion of malaria.

It is also to be noted that only cases in which the remission is *obvious* have been included. In many of the cases shown as having no obvious remission, indications may be seen, *e.g.* (i) A failure of the normal evening rise on the second evening, or (ii) An indication of the onset of the second phase by a rise of temperature, above the previous level, on the third day.

TABLE IV.
TIME OF COMMENCEMENT AND DURATION OF REMISSION.

		Duration of Fever.					Total Cases.
		4 Days.	5 Days.	6 Days.	7 Days.	8 Days.	
Commencement of remission		NUMBER OF CASES.					
	1st evening	1	4	1	0	0	6
	2nd morning	19	12	5	0	0	36
	2nd evening	10	3	1	0	0	14
	3rd morning	13	19	1	2	1	36
	Total cases						92
		NUMBER OF CASES.					
Reported sick late in the attack		15	23	5	0	0	43
No obvious remission		22	18	2	1	0	43
Duration of remission		NUMBER OF CASES.					
	$\frac{1}{2}$ day	12	6	2	0	1	21
	1 "	15	7	2	1	0	25
	$1\frac{1}{2}$ days	12	15	4	1	0	32
	2 "	3	4	0	0	0	7
	$2\frac{1}{2}$ "	1	6	0	0	0	7
Total cases							92

Cases reporting sick on the second evening, or later, naturally do not show the remission, and it is to be presumed that they report sick with the onset of the second phase. In such cases the existence of the first phase is only recognized by questioning, and it appears to be a feature of the disease that the first phase may be very mild as compared with the second phase.

During the course of the fever the evening temperature is usually about 1° higher than in the morning but with the exception of the remission between the two phases of the fever, normal is seldom reached except perhaps on the day before the final subsidence. The fever usually ends by lysis, but not infrequently there is an exacerbation on the last evening, in which case the fall occupies a few hours only.

In cases in which the second phase only lasts for a few hours, there is sometimes a rise of temperature to 99° F. on the fifth day. This rise is often so transient that it is only detected by a 4 hourly, or even by a 2 hourly, reading. In such cases, symptoms (*e.g.*, sore throat, headache or malaise), although alleviated with a return to normal temperature, persist until after the final rise, when they rapidly disappear.

Pulse.—The pulse rate from the onset of the disease is usually slowed by from 15 to 20 beats per minute. On cessation of the fever, the return to the normal rate is generally rapid, though in a number of cases it may remain relatively slow for as long as 1 week.

Central Nervous System.—The headache is characteristic, and is one of the most constant and typical symptoms. It appears at the commencement of the disease. It may be severe and is almost invariably confined to the frontal region, only very rarely does it extend to the temples and eyes or to the rest of the head. There is no photophobia.

There is no tendency to depression or delirium.

Pharynx.—From the onset the pharynx is acutely congested. Often this is painful, though many patients make no complaint and the throat condition is only discovered by examination. The congestion often spreads to the soft palate and posterior nares and remains till the end of the fever, when it rapidly clears up. On the soft palate there is a distinct and characteristic raised line of demarcation. There is no ulceration or membrane, and little if any mucus. In some cases only a mild hyperaemia is present, all intermediate stages being found. The intensity of the pharyngeal congestion bears little relation to the duration of the attack, except that cases of relapse more often have a milder congestion. The tonsils are never enlarged, but the mucous membrane covering them may share in the local congestion. Bacteriological examination of the throat clearly distinguishes the condition from a septic pharyngitis. There is no tendency for the ear to become involved.

Respiratory Tract.—Tracheitis, causing a hard dry cough without sputum, is frequently present. This appears to be an extension of the pharyngeal

condition and would account for the pain in the chest which is occasionally one of the initial symptoms.

Loss of voice due to affection of the larynx has been observed.

Digestive Tract.—Rarely, there is an early complaint of abdominal pain, which would appear to be referred from the chest; vomiting may occur at the time of onset. Beyond this there is no involvement. The liver is not enlarged.

Spleen.—In a proportion of cases the spleen becomes palpable, but is never enlarged to more than two fingers breadth below the costal margin. It returns to normal with convalescence.

Skin.—A transient erythematous rash appears in 2 per cent. of cases, on the first day, upon the back and, less often, upon the chest. This seldom lasts more than a few hours. No later rashes are ever observed.

Lymphatic System.—Occasionally the glands draining the pharynx are palpable. In no cases does suppuration occur. Other lymphatic glands are not involved.

Genito-urinary System.—Febrile albuminuria may occur. Careful search has failed to detect organisms.

Eyes.—Suffusion never occurs. There is no photophobia or ocular pain.

Blood.—In the large majority of cases, a leucopenia, which may be as low as 3,000 white cells per c.mm., is established early. During the period of the fever there is usually a slight increase in the percentage of large mononuclears which may even reach as high as 10 per cent., while the eosinophils are greatly diminished and, in many cases, absent. Lymphocytes are not infrequently increased to 40 per cent. with a corresponding diminution of the neutrophils. In a few cases the white cells remain unaltered. With the fall of the temperature there is a slight eosinophilia with a rapid return of the total and differential counts to normal. There is no change in the red cells or haemoglobin.

No organisms can be recovered from the blood. Special search has been made for those of the enteric group and for *Treponema recurrentis*.

There is no alteration in agglutination reactions to the enteric group, *Brucella melitensis*, *B. abortus*, *Bacillus proteus* X.

Malarial parasites cannot be found.

RELAPSES.

Of 411 cases, combatants and followers *admitted* in the years 1934 to 1936 in Sialkot, fifty-three relapsed, a percentage of 12.90.

The relapse occurs most commonly on the sixth day, but may be as early as the fifth morning or may be delayed till the tenth day. In a few cases, there may be a longer interval. Table V shows the day of onset of the first relapse.

There is sometimes more than one relapse, and cases have been met with which appear to relapse as many as six times with an irregular pyrexial period

TABLE V.

INTERVAL BETWEEN ONSET OF FIRST RELAPSE AND ONSET OF INITIAL ATTACK.

Relapse on 5th morning after initial attack	...	3 cases
" 5th evening " " "	...	16 "
" 6th day " " "	...	27 "
" 7th " " " "	...	5 "
" 8th " " " "	...	0 "
" 9th " " " "	...	1 "
" 10th " " " "	...	1 "
Total	...	53 cases

lasting in all for more than 1 month. These are believed to be caused by this disease, though examples were not met with in the series under analysis.

Of the fifty-three cases of relapse, forty-six relapsed once, four twice, two three times and one four times.

Table VI (p. 290) shows the duration of the initial attacks and also of the subsequent relapses of these fifty-three consecutive cases.

In reading charts of relapses it is necessary to bear in mind the effect of the remission as well as the interval between attacks. If this is not done, the true significance of the case will often be missed.

XVI.

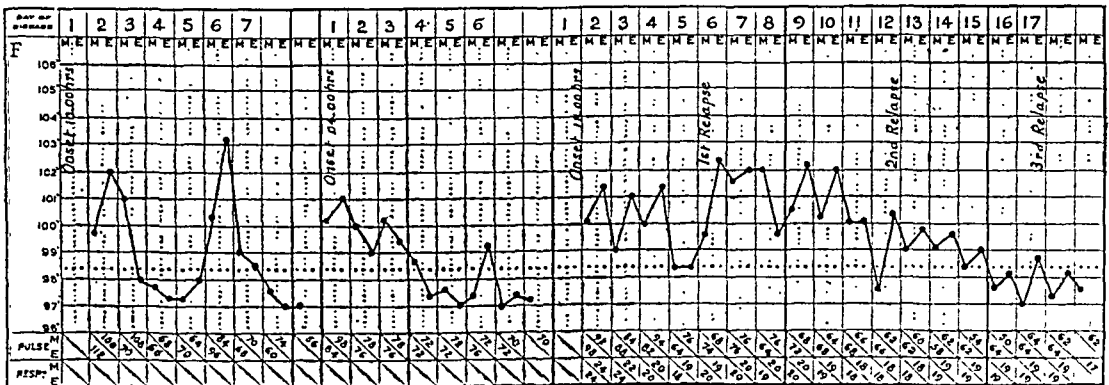
Recruit G. S.

XVII.

Naik P. S.

XVIII.

Syce L.



RELAPSE CASES.

TABLE VI.
DURATION OF INITIAL ATTACKS AND OF RELAPSES.

Duration.	INITIAL ATTACK.	RELAPSES.			
		First.	Second.	Third.	Fourth.
	Number of Cases.	Number of Cases.			
1 day	1	17	—	1	1
2 days	4	12	3	1	—
3 "	12	7	—	—	—
4 "	14	5	2	—	—
5 "	15	6	2	1	—
6 "	—	5	—	—	—
7 "	1	1	—	—	—
Unreliable history	6	—	—	—	—
Totals ...	53	53	7	3	1

(d) COMPLICATIONS.

During the winter months the respiratory tract is occasionally affected by a mild bronchitis. This complication, if found, tends to mask the remission and to cause a rise in the total leucocyte count by an increase in the neutrophils. Severe bronchitis has not been observed. The duration of the attack is not prolonged, and the bronchitis clears up immediately it is over. Dry ronchi are often heard in the chest. These are not to be taken as a sign of bronchitis ; they appear to be caused by a spread of the tracheitis to the smaller bronchi. On rare occasions, a patch of consolidation, confirmed by X-ray examination, the size of the bell of a stethoscope has been found. This affects the leucocyte count in the same manner as bronchitis, does not effect the duration of the disease, appears to be of no prognostic significance and does not delay the patient's discharge from hospital.

In one case Pfeiffer's bacillus was isolated.

Very rarely true lobar pneumonia has supervened. This was the cause of the only fatality noted. This complication is so uncommon as to suggest accidental occurrence. In one case an old tuberculous focus in the lung was lighted up and occasionally malarial relapses may be determined.

No other complications have been observed.

(e) DOUBTFUL CASES.

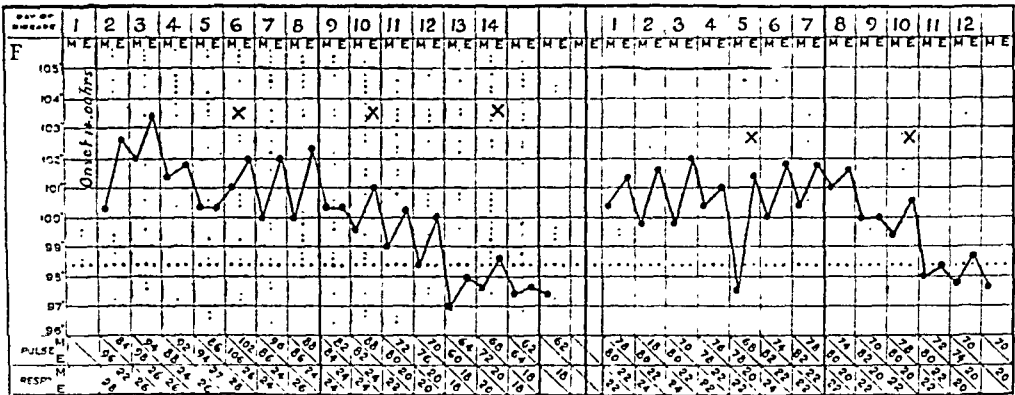
Certain doubtful cases have been excluded from the foregoing account. The general appearance is shown in Chart XIX. They have all the clinical

XIX.

Syce M. B.

XX.

Bugler S. A.



DOUBTFUL CASES. X = possible relapse.

features of the relapse cases described, but the temperature fails to fall between the attacks. It is well recognized that there may be no apyrexial period before a relapse in enteric fever. It would appear that in this disease, also, the apyrexial period may be missing. In the chart shown, peaks of pyrexia (marked X) on the sixth and tenth days suggest this possibility.

Chart XX shows a similar case in which the temperature fell for a few hours. In this chart the slight rise (marked X) on the fifth day of the relapse is also to be noted as suggestive of the commencement of a second relapse. It seems possible that in other cases the fall occurs at night and is unnoticed.

Some cases lasting 6 days show a rise on the last day. Possibly this is really the commencement of a relapse which fails to be maintained. If this is the case, it is evidence that a fall between the initial attack and the relapse is not necessary, and bears out the suggestion that these doubtful cases are, in fact, cases of relapse.

The patients never appear seriously ill and invariably make a rapid and uneventful recovery. All the bacteriological and serological examinations usual in cases of prolonged pyrexia are negative.

These doubtful cases occur amongst undoubted cases. They include a large number of the cases of pyrexia of uncertain origin met with in the north of India.

5. DIAGNOSIS, PROGNOSIS AND TREATMENT.

Diagnosis.

The diagnosis presents no difficulty if the salient features already described are borne in mind. It is necessary to recognize the fact that the throat condition is not the cause of the disease but is a symptom only. Correct diagnosis is very

desirable to avoid anxiety in cases in which the fever is prolonged by relapses, to spare patients the unnecessary discomfort of repeated blood cultures, etc., and to escape avoidable interference with men's duties caused by treatment for malaria. Recognition of this disease is also necessary in order that its causation and prevention may be worked out.

The usual diagnoses made are: pharyngitis, sandfly fever, influenza, bronchitis, dengue, clinical malaria, common cold or tonsillitis.

Fevers of the enteric group, malaria, relapsing fever and typhus are excluded not only by laboratory methods, but also by the clinical course and symptoms. The discharge of a septic throat is absent. Common cold is excluded by the absence of nasal discharge; any blocking of the nasal passages is due only to swelling of the mucous membrane of the posterior nares which has spread up from the pharynx. Tonsillitis also is excluded by the absence of follicular patches; the swelling, if present, is of the mucous membrane only, though this may of course be covering a chronically enlarged tonsil. If bronchitis is present, a study of the case will show that this is a complication, not the primary disease.

The main differential diagnosis lies, therefore, between the disease under discussion and dengue, sandfly fever and influenza. This disease is common in areas in which dengue rarely or never occurs. It occurs in the absence of *Aedes argenteus*. The rash of dengue is never seen, nor is the desquamation. Severe pains of joints and muscles are never experienced. There is no injection of the conjunctivae. The fulminating course of an outbreak of dengue is never encountered. The remission between the two phases of the fever in this disease tends to be at least 24 hours earlier than in dengue. This disease lasts longer than sandfly fever and the whole course presents an entirely different clinical picture. It is also common at seasons when *Phlebotomus papatasi* cannot be found and in places in which sandfly fever is very rare. Influenza is excluded by the duration of the fever, the invariable mildness of the effects, the rapid convalescence, and the slow pulse. The type of influenza is apt to vary from year to year; the type of this disease does not. The absence of depression and the lesser degree of malaise also clearly distinguish this disease from the three preceding diseases of which depression is a distinctive feature.

Prognosis.

Uncomplicated cases invariably recover.

Treatment.

The treatment of the disease is symptomatic. No specific treatment is known. Atebrin, plasmoquin and sulphostab are without effect.

6. ETIOLOGY.

The etiology of the disease is still in doubt.

(a) The many resemblances to the sandfly-dengue group strongly suggest

an insect vector. Attempts to find such a vector have been made with only very doubtful success.

A winged vector is not possible. At Razmak cases occur in the coldest season with snow on the ground, in the absence of mosquitoes and sandflies. The lines of British units were sandwiched between those of affected Indian units, separated by less than 100 yards, yet no cases were observed in British troops. In the Punjab, the incidence is greatest in the colder months when fresh infections of malaria are rare. The mosquito and sandfly cannot, therefore, be vectors.

The louse is not the vector: thorough disinfestation of affected units has been carried out on five occasions without any influence upon the incidence of the disease. Attempts to transmit the disease by lice have failed. In six cases lice, in batches of ten, were fed upon patients, from the first to the fourth day of disease, and thereafter fed upon volunteers (who had no history of recent illness) until the death of the lice, which occurred in five cases on, or before, the sixth day, and in one case on the ninth day. In one case lice were fed upon a patient on the first day of disease and then released in the clothing of an already louse-infested volunteer. He wore the same clothes and remained infested for 3 weeks. None of these volunteers developed the disease.

It seems unlikely that the flea is the vector. The incidence of the disease does not show the seasonal and climatic variations which would be expected if this were the case.

It appears possible that the bed-bug is the vector; the disease is present throughout the year, a prevalence which is consistent with this. Attempts to transmit the disease by bed-bugs have been made. At Ambala, in forty cases, bed-bugs (*Cimex rotundatus*), obtained from houses free from history of illness were fed, in batches of ten, upon healthy men as controls. In no case did the controls develop fever. The bed-bugs were then fed upon patients on either the first, second or third day of the disease, and thereafter upon volunteers every third or fourth day for varying periods up to 1 month. These volunteers were men who were in hospital for minor injuries and, therefore, unlikely to be exposed to infection. In two cases volunteers developed fever after being bitten. In one case the fever lasted a few hours only without typical symptoms, but in the other a nearly typical attack of the disease with relapse followed. The bed-bugs had been infected 9 and 3 days previously, and the volunteers had been in hospital for 5 and 17 days. The one might have been infected before arrival at hospital and the other might conceivably have broken out of hospital and been infected elsewhere. Similar attempts were made in Sialkot using both *C. rotundatus* and *C. lectularius*, but without success.

The disease is not spread by food, milk or water, since men in one barrack room may suffer from the disease, while others of the same caste and company fed from the same cookhouse under precisely the same conditions, but living in another barrack room, may be entirely unaffected.

(b) Attempts have been made to effect direct transmission of the disease. In one case, 5 c.c. whole blood from a patient on the third day of disease was injected subcutaneously into a volunteer; the necessity for taking the obvious precautions prevented this being carried out earlier. In another case filtered serum from a patient on the second day was injected. In another case a direct throat to throat swabbing was tried. None of these attempts was successful.

(c) Throat washings in normal saline were taken, passed through a Seitz-Werke filter and inoculated into a rabbit. The temperature rose 2° F. and the rabbit went off its food the same night, but thereafter returned to normal.

(d) The incidence of the disease appears to bear no direct relation to climatic conditions, such as temperature, rainfall or relative and absolute humidity. In Razmak the incidence appears to be greater in the temperate hot weather than in the extreme cold, whereas in the plains of the Punjab the incidence is somewhat greater in the cold weather months, especially during December and January. It is endemic in all units throughout the year; units seldom go for more than 3 weeks at a time without a case reporting sick. At irregular intervals the incidence in a unit increases into a minor epidemic.

The course of incidence in a unit is that sporadic cases occur, scattered throughout the squadrons or companies, but these cases do not communicate the disease to other men; then, from no apparent cause, cases occur more frequently in a barrack or barrack room, with any interval from a few days to 3 weeks between cases. Occasionally two cases may go sick on the same day in the same barrack room. There is no constant interval between cases. The spread is slow, and some 6 to 10 weeks may elapse before the incidence subsides to the normal rate of sporadic cases. A barrack room may go for many months without a case, and for as much as a year without an epidemic. An instance has occurred in which, in a barrack, divided into three barrack rooms of twenty men each, one room had as many as eleven men attacked in the course of a few months while in the other two rooms there were no cases, in spite of the fact that one of them had men of the same caste as the men attacked, and although they all mixed on parade. Such epidemics in one unit do not correspond with epidemics in other units, nor usually do those in the different squadrons or companies of the same unit.

It is interesting to note that though no precautions are taken with cases in hospital, the disease never spreads to other patients nor are those in attendance on the sick, medical officers and nursing orderlies, more prone to the disease than others.

Troops in camp appear less likely to contract the disease than those in barracks. In one case, amongst 450 reservists in camp for 5 weeks in Sialkot in February, ten to a tent, only six cases occurred, although the disease was prevalent in the parent unit in barracks only a few hundred yards distant. These cases were all in adjacent tents, but no two cases occurred in any one tent.

British officers of Indian units do not often contract the disease; when

married officers do so, it does not spread to their families. In the only case hitherto seen of an officer's wife having contracted the disease, she developed it within 36 hours of the officer and so both presumably contracted the infection from the same source, though this could not be traced. It is also unusual for Indian officers to be infected.

7. IMMUNITY.

Second attacks are not uncommon. One attack does not give immunity to further attacks. Second attacks are rare within 9 months, but have been noted with an interval of 6 weeks only. It appears not improbable that the varied types of the disease are due to a partial immunity due to previous attacks. The general health of the individual appears to have a direct bearing upon the susceptibility to attack. It is especially noticeable that those with a haemoglobin of less than 70 per cent. appear to be more susceptible than those above that figure, and tend to have more severe attacks.

8. DISCUSSION.

The most striking features of this disease are the saddle-back nature of the fever, frontal headache, sudden onset, sore throat and rapid convalescence. The complete absence of pain in the eyes and joints, of coryza, of late rash and of suffusion of the conjunctivae are also to be noted, as are the mildness and lack of persistence of the muscle pains. The remission in the earlier part of the course is typical, but, should this be absent, the diagnosis still holds.

That all the cases showing different durations of fever are caused by the same disease is clear from the following points :—

1. The tendency of cases of short duration to relapse about the sixth day. An initial attack of 1 or 2 days may give rise to a relapse of 5 days.
2. Not only do cases of various duration present the same clinical appearance, but as regards duration they merge into one another imperceptibly.
3. The cases of various degrees of severity and duration all appear in due proportion during the same epidemics and from the same companies and barrack rooms, as they do also in different epidemics and at different times of the year.

These points can only be fully brought out by a close study of the incidence and by a careful history of the precise time as well as date of onset. It seems probable that the varying duration is caused by the suppression of the second phase of the fever. The tendency of the second phase to suppression is well recognized in dengue, while in sandfly fever it is almost universal ; actually, the point must be raised whether the cases of sandfly fever in which a second phase has been noted were not, in fact, cases of the disease now described.

A proportion of cases report sick late in the disease. It appears that these are either cases in which the first phase is mild, or in which the first phase is short and the remission between the phases is prolonged. Such cases report

sick with the onset of the second phase, and, if the patient is not questioned carefully, the existence of the first phase is overlooked.

The disease is invariably true to type, within the limits described, in whatever locality or in whichever year or season of the year it is encountered. The distribution is widespread and it certainly exists in the country villages since men on leave in them from other stations have reported for treatment. Moreover men travelling from stations other than those in which the disease has been studied have been attacked during the journey.

The method by which the disease is spread still remains in doubt. No connecting link between cases can be discovered, except that minor epidemics appear to arise in individual barracks. No reasonable explanation can be given as to why sporadic cases should occur at one time in a barrack room without the disease spreading, while at another time a minor epidemic breaks out. Nor is it clear why such minor epidemics should appear, irrespective of climatic or other conditions, in one squadron or company, and not in another when the disease is endemic in all. Experience at Razmak and the increased incidence of the disease in the cold weather in the plains, make a winged vector impossible, but, from analogy with the dengue-sandfly group, an insect vector still seems probable. This suggestion is strengthened by the very irregular interval between cases. The bed-bug has on several occasions been a suspected carrier of disease; in this case also it seems the most likely. Perhaps there is some unknown factor which interferes with the success of attempts to use it as a vector. The attempts made to transmit the disease by this method are, however, against rather than in favour of the bed-bug as a vector. Ticks are not found in barracks.

Droplet infection is possible. The fact that the disease does not spread in hospitals can be explained by the fact that hospital cases are confined to well-spaced beds during the time that they may be regarded as infective. This method of infection, however, seems improbable: were it responsible, a more regular interval between cases would be expected.

9. CONCLUSION.

A very large number of cases of mild fever characterized by a saddle-back temperature, frontal headache, slow pulse and sore throat have been observed in various stations in northern India.

The clinical picture suggests a resemblance to the sandfly-dengue group, but there are many definite differences.

The disease has a distinct tendency to relapse and it is these relapses which form a large proportion of the otherwise undiagnosed fevers common amongst Indians in the north of India.

The existence of an insect vector, perhaps the bed-bug, is possible.

There can be no doubt that this is a disease *sui generis* hitherto undescribed, and to it the name "sellar fever" is now given, in allusion to the typical course of the fever.

NOTE ON ACUTE HEPATITIS AND YELLOW FEVER IMMUNIZATION.

BY

G. M. FINDLAY, C.B.E., M.D., D.Sc.

AND

F. O. MACCALLUM, M.D., B.Sc.

Wellcome Bureau of Scientific Research, London.

From time to time reactions have been described following immunization with attenuated viruses such as vaccinia and fixed rabies and, as is well known, various phenomena, grouped under the term "serum sickness," may follow the injection of therapeutic sera. Most of these reactions follow the injections at an interval of at most 7 to 12 days. If the occurrences described in the present note are other than fortuitous it would appear that sequelae to immunization may be delayed for as long as 2 to 7 months after immunization. The sequelae referred to are attacks of acute hepatitis, with symptoms resembling those of common infective hepatic jaundice, coming on at intervals of 2 to 7 months after yellow fever immunization. The term "common infective hepatic jaundice" is here used as a synonym for "epidemic catarrhal jaundice," a disease associated with a mild hepatitis and distinguishable as HURST and SIMPSON (1934) point out, from the rarer condition of true catarrhal jaundice. During the past $4\frac{1}{2}$ years approximately 2,200 persons have been immunized against yellow fever. Careful records have been kept of both the immediate results of the inoculations and of any remote illnesses from which the persons immunized may have suffered. In all, fifty-two cases of jaundice have been traced. Two of the patients who became jaundiced were successfully operated on for gall stones and gave a history pointing to involvement of the gall bladder which antedated the yellow fever immunization. In two other instances the patients shared a meal of curried prawns. Symptoms of acute gastro-intestinal derangement followed a few hours later and both patients subsequently developed a slight jaundice. The symptoms, suggestive of some form of food-poisoning, resembled those of the jaundice met with during the war in Gallipoli.

There is no reason to think that the occurrence of jaundice in these four persons was in any way associated with the yellow fever immunization.

In the forty-eight other patients the symptoms exhibited a striking uniformity. After a few days of slight malaise, with loss of appetite, nausea and occasional vomiting, the skin and conjunctivae were noticed to be jaundiced and the urine dark coloured. Sometimes the stools were pale in colour. The symptoms then began to clear up, though the jaundice, weakness and mental depression disappeared more gradually. No case has so far been fatal and in no case was there any complication. Of the forty-eight patients, six only were women, although of the 2,200 persons immunized nearly 400 have been women. The persons affected varied in age from 22 to 58 years. Six cases occurred in this country, fourteen in Egypt and the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, the remainder in the British West African colonies, the Gambia, Sierra Leone, Nigeria and the Gold Coast.

The interval between the yellow fever immunization and the onset of the jaundice was almost exactly 2 months in 26, between 2 and 3 months in 12, between 3 and 4 months in 8, and over 4 months and just under 7 months in 2 cases.

CLINICAL HISTORIES OF TYPICAL CASES.

Case 1, inoculated on 3.12.36 with tissue culture pantropic yellow fever virus and 28 c.c. human yellow fever immune serum: no reaction occurred after the inoculation and 3 weeks later his blood when tested for immunity to yellow fever protected in a dilution of 1 in 16. He left for Northern Nigeria at the end of January, 1937. On 18.2.37, he felt a little out of sorts but at no time had any fever. Two days later it was noticed that he was jaundiced. The jaundice deepened for a few days and was accompanied by anorexia and lack of energy. Then it gradually disappeared together with the other symptoms and at the end of 4 weeks he had completely recovered.

Case 7.—Physician, aged 30 years, was immunized against yellow fever on 21.4.36 with tissue culture pantropic yellow fever virus and 30 c.c. of human yellow fever immune serum and 5 c.c. of concentrated monkey yellow fever immune serum. Apart from a slight serum rash at the point of injection of the monkey serum, there was no reaction to the injection. The yellow fever immune body titre of the serum a month later was found to be 1 in 16 when tested by the mouse protection test. On 27.5.36 the patient was given a second inoculation of pantropic yellow fever virus alone. No reaction followed and a fortnight later the immune body titre by the mouse protection test was 1 in 64.

For some 6 weeks before the onset of illness the patient had been staying at a farm in a rural part of Sussex. About 16.7.36 a feeling of uneasiness developed as though he was carrying a weight in the epigastrium. This continued for 4 days when he felt a little faint. On this day he was given 0.5 c.c. T.A.B. vaccine. The following day he had nausea on rising and pains in the limbs but no temperature. He went to bed after a light lunch. On 23.7.36 the general lassitude was more marked and the urine was very dark coloured. The temperature in the evening was 99.6° F. It did not rise again above 99° F. throughout the course of the illness. The patient vomited in the evening. On 24.7.36 he felt better but for the first time noticed that his conjunctivae were jaundiced. Thereafter he slowly improved. He was admitted to the Hospital for Tropical Diseases on 28.7.36 under the care of Dr. N. H. FAIRLEY. An examination of the heart and lungs revealed nothing abnormal and there was no tenderness over the abdomen. Examination of the blood showed haemoglobin 100 per cent.: leucocytes 6,600 per c.mm. The differential count showed polymorphonuclear leucocytes 47 per cent., small lymphocytes 45 per cent.,

mononuclears 6 per cent., eosinophils 1 per cent. and basophils 1 per cent. The stools were pale in colour and showed an absence of ova and protozoa. Urine, sp.g. 1.018, reaction acid, albumin a trace, sugar nil, red blood corpuscles absent; leucocytes and epithelial cells a few: casts nil. Bile salts, bile pigments and urobilin positive, van den Bergh: direct reaction positive (biphasic): indirect reaction 19 units of bilirubin. Blood urea = 25 mgm./100 c.c. The patient made an uneventful recovery. An examination of the blood serum for immune bodies to leptospira carried out by Major H. C. BROWN, was negative. Attempts to demonstrate the presence of yellow fever virus in the serum by the subcutaneous inoculation of rhesus monkeys and the intracerebral injection of mice were negative. The yellow fever immune body titre of the serum examined during the illness and a fortnight after convalescence was complete was constantly 1 in 64.

Case 9.—Laboratory assistant aged 22 years: was immunized with the neurotropic strain of yellow fever virus and 20 c.c. of human yellow fever immune serum on 29.11.33. A week later he complained of a severe headache, slight photophobia and hypersensitivity of the skin. The temperature rose to but did not exceed 100.4° F. He felt out of sorts for 5 days. He remained in good health up to 3.3.34 when he had a bad cold in the chest with cough: he occasionally felt slight nausea but did not actually vomit till 10.3.34, when he noticed that his urine was dark in colour. His appetite was poor and he suffered off and on from flatulence. On 12.3.34 he noticed that he was jaundiced. On examination no abnormality was noticed except tenderness in the right hypochondrium. The stools were well formed, of normal colour and neutral reaction: the fatty acid values were low. The van den Bergh test gave direct a delayed positive, indirect 10.5 units of bilirubin: the urine sp.g. 1.024, acid reaction—albumin slight trace, occasional leucocytes and epithelial cells: bile salts, bile pigments and urobilin were all present. The patient made an uneventful recovery and on 4.4.34 the urine gave negative reactions for bile pigments and salts with but a slight trace of urobilin.

The yellow fever immune body titre of the serum tested 5 weeks after the yellow fever inoculation by the mouse protection test was 1 in 64: tested a year later it had fallen to 1 in 16.

For clinical details of the above cases I am greatly indebted to Dr. N. HAMILTON FAIRLEY, Physician to the Hospital for Tropical Diseases.

Case 18.—Physician, was inoculated with pantropic tissue culture virus and 32 c.c. of human yellow fever immune serum on 31.10.36. Beyond a slight feeling of tiredness he experienced no reaction to the inoculation and his serum 4 weeks after inoculation was found to protect in a dilution of 1 in 32. During the second week in January he felt out of sorts, was easily tired and had a poor appetite: on 16.1.37 he noticed that he was jaundiced. With the onset of jaundice the subjective symptoms improved but the anorexia and evidence of jaundice did not completely disappear for nearly 6 weeks. The faeces were pale and clay coloured, the urine very dark in colour with bile salts, bile pigments and urobilin. A differential blood count showed polymorphonuclear leucocytes 53, small lymphocytes 42, mononuclears 4, eosinophils 1. The serum tested by Major H. C. BROWN, for immunity to leptospira gave negative results. The yellow fever immune body titre remained constant throughout and no yellow fever virus could be demonstrated by inoculation of either whole or diluted blood serum into monkeys and mice. Blood cultures were bacteriologically sterile.

Case 21.—Company director, was immunized against yellow fever on 10.11.36 with pantropic tissue culture yellow fever virus and 40 c.c. of human yellow fever immune serum. His serum protected against yellow fever virus in a dilution of 1 in 32 3 weeks after inoculation. He sailed for West Africa on December 16th, 1936, and after visiting various parts of West Africa arrived at Garua, French Cameroons in early January: after spending a week or 10 days he moved on to Northern Nigeria and towards the end of January began to feel out of sorts with loss of appetite. There was no fever. This lasted for 4 days when he noticed that his stools were light in colour and his urine dark. Later he was told that his skin and conjunctivae were jaundiced. He did not have to go to bed but continued to feel below par for the next 3 months. His serum tested in May, 1937, protected mice in a dilution of 1 in 64. Major H. C. BROWN was unable to demonstrate leptospiral immune bodies in the serum.

METHODS OF PREPARING YELLOW FEVER VIRUS AND IMMUNE SERUM.

Before discussing the cause of these cases of hepatitis and their relationship if any, to the preceding yellow fever immunization, it is necessary to recapitulate the various modifications (*cf.* FINDLAY, 1936) that have been made in the method of yellow fever immunization. The method, first introduced by SAWYER, LLOYD and KITCHEN (1932), consisted in the injection of human immune yellow fever serum in doses of 0.5 c.c. per kg. of body weight, followed some 2 to 3 hours later by an injection of 0.5 c.c. of a filtered 20 per cent. suspension in normal human serum of mouse brain infected with the neurotropic strain of yellow fever virus. The immune serum was obtained either from persons who had suffered from clinical attacks of yellow fever or from persons such as laboratory assistants who had been artificially immunized against yellow fever. All donors were Wassermann negative. The serum was preserved by the addition of 0.2 c.c. of tricresol mixed with 0.2 c.c. of ether and stored in sealed glass ampoules, so that no loss of tricresol could occur on standing: before bottling it was filtered through a Seitz K filter and was tested for bacterial sterility by incubation in glucose broth under aerobic and anaerobic conditions. Later, owing to the difficulties of obtaining sufficient supplies of human serum, an attempt was made to use serum from hyperimmunized horses (PETTIT and STÉFANOPOULO, 1933) and also hyperimmunized monkeys. The same preservatives and the same precautions as to bacterial sterility were used as in the case of human sera.

Cases of jaundice have been seen in association with the use of human immune serum prepared both in these laboratories and in the laboratories of the International Health Division of the Rockefeller Foundation in Brazil (ten cases), after the use of hyperimmune horse serum prepared in the Pasteur Institute, Paris (thirteen cases) and after the use of hyperimmune monkey serum (two cases) prepared in these laboratories. The smallest dose of serum which has been followed by jaundice is 10 c.c.

The virus component used from 1932 to the middle of 1936 consisted of a 20 per cent. suspension in normal human serum of mouse brain infected with the neurotropic strain of yellow fever virus. The normal human serum employed was filtered through Seitz K filters and tested for sterility before use. The mice used in the production of this vaccine were of a specially selected strain which was periodically tested for freedom from intercurrent infection. The vaccine before use was filtered through a Seitz K filter and tested both aerobically and anaerobically for bacterial contamination. Use has been made of neurotropic yellow fever vaccine prepared in these laboratories and in the yellow fever laboratories of the International Health Division of the Rockefeller Foundation in New York. Jaundice has occurred after the use of vaccines prepared in both laboratories. From the middle of 1936 onwards an attenuated pantropic strain of virus has been exclusively used. This attenuated strain of ordinary yellow fever virus, first prepared by LLOYD (1936), was to begin with grown in tissue culture flasks

containing minced mouse embryo tissues in normal serum Tyrode solution. Later (FINDLAY, 1936), minced chick embryo was substituted for the mouse embryo. Jaundice has occurred after the use of vaccines prepared from virus grown in either mouse or chick embryo and prepared both in New York and London.

POSSIBLE EXPLANATIONS OF THE OCCURRENCE OF HEPATITIS FOLLOWING YELLOW FEVER IMMUNIZATION.

An explanation of the occurrence of hepatitis as a sequel to yellow fever immunization is by no means easy. The following possibilities suggest themselves :—

(1) *Coincidence*.—Since epidemics, and apparently sporadic cases, of common infective hepatic jaundice are by no means rare in the general population it was at first thought that the appearance of an occasional case of jaundice following yellow fever immunization was purely fortuitous. Nevertheless the fact that between 2 and 3 per cent. of those inoculated over a period of 4 years have developed jaundice suggests that a positive correlation exists between the inoculation and the jaundice.

The following facts must also be taken into consideration, (a) the invariable interval of at least 2 months between the inoculation and the onset of jaundice, (b) the occurrence within a few days of each other of jaundice in three out of five immunized persons in a mining camp in Sierra Leone: no non-immunized persons developed jaundice, (c) the occurrence within a few days of each other of jaundice in seven out of thirty-two immunized persons in a camp in the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan almost exactly 2 months after immunization: no case of jaundice occurred at the same time in 198 non-immunized persons in the same camp. In another camp of twenty persons immunized one became jaundiced, in 798 not inoculated no case of jaundice occurred.

On the other hand in order to obtain a rough idea of the frequency of jaundice in the general population the last one hundred people coming up for inoculation have been asked whether they have suffered from jaundice during the past 10 years. Four persons reported that they had had jaundice during this period, two of them in Africa.

(2) *Jaundice may be caused by the yellow fever virus*.—The next suggestion was that the jaundice was directly due to the yellow fever virus and that the illness was a modified form of yellow fever, the virus having gained entrance into the liver where it remained unneutralized till the immune serum had been excreted, when it again became active. The following facts contradict this suggestion: (a) the clinical symptoms; these closely resemble those associated with common infective hepatic jaundice and differ from those of yellow fever in the almost complete absence of fever, the absence of headache and backache, the frequent paleness of the stools, the long continuance of the jaundice, (b) failure

to obtain virus from the blood, (c) lack of increase in the yellow fever immune body titre of the serum as a result of the attack of jaundice. All persons who developed jaundice with one exception had been shown *before* the onset of the hepatitis to have yellow fever immune bodies present in their blood, (d) failure of all efforts to obtain yellow fever virus from the tissues of animals after the development of yellow fever immune bodies (HINDLE, 1932), (e) development of jaundice in a woman following the injection of yellow fever immune serum and neurotropic yellow fever virus, the patient having already suffered from an attack of yellow fever some 8 weeks before the date of her immunization. Her serum taken immediately before injection of the serum-virus mixture was shown by the mouse protection test to protect in a dilution of 1 in 128. Two clinical attacks of yellow fever in the same individual have never been recorded nor is there any record of jaundice or hepatitis coming on 2 months after recovery from naturally occurring yellow fever.* (d) After the injection of yellow fever immune serum into animals BAUER (1930) has shown that immune bodies have disappeared 14 days later. If yellow fever virus were lying latent in the liver it is curious that no cases of jaundice occurred till 60 or more days after inoculation.

(3) *The jaundice may be due to some organism injected with the virus or serum.*—It is conceivable that some extraneous organism might have gained entrance when the yellow fever immune serum or the virus was injected. Since both the yellow fever immune serum and the virus suspension were filtered through Seitz filters and were bacteriologically sterile after filtration the hypothetical organism would almost certainly have to be a virus. If the virus were introduced with the serum it must be present in the serum of apparently healthy human beings both in England and South America and in the serum of horses and monkeys and it must not be killed by the addition of 0·2 per cent. tricresol and 0·2 per cent. ether. If the hypothetical virus were injected with the yellow fever virus then the virus must have been originally present in the brains of mice in New York and London or in the monkeys tissues from which the pantropic yellow fever virus was originally obtained. No evidence from other sources has been obtained that mice or rhesus monkeys harbour a virus capable of producing jaundice in human beings. If a hypothetical virus pathogenic for man were directly injected with the virus or serum inoculum it is surprising that under 3 per cent. of persons developed symptoms. Although the presence of a hypothetical virus cannot be entirely excluded the evidence against it is very great. All serum used in growing the virus or in making the vaccine is now being inactivated before use.

*Since the above was written we have seen a European, A. M., who suffered from a typical attack of yellow fever in November, 1933, on the Gold Coast. Two other Europeans were attacked at the same time, one of whom died. Between two and a half and three months after his attack of yellow fever A. M., while still in West Africa, suffered from an attack of jaundice with clay coloured stools and symptoms in every way similar to those reported above.

(4) *The jaundice may be due to some toxic substance contained either in the virus or serum inoculated.*—The possibilities which suggest themselves are :—

(a) Foreign proteins derived either from the mouse or chick tissues included in the virus inoculum.

(b) Foreign proteins contained in the immune serum.

(c) Tricresol.

(d) A toxic compound of tricresol and protein.

In regard to the toxic possibilities of the very small dose of mouse or chick protein injected with the virus component it seems improbable that the small amounts of foreign protein would in themselves cause an hepatic lesion. Cresol in large doses is known to have a toxic action on the liver, an action which it shares with other phenolic compounds, but the quantity (0·2 per cent.) actually injected into each individual has never exceeded 0·1 c.c. Many tens, if not hundreds, of thousands of persons must have been injected with serum containing tricresol without developing jaundice. Nevertheless experiments are now in progress to determine whether on standing tricresol forms with proteins compounds which might possibly injure the liver.

(5) *The jaundice may be due to some infection acting on a damaged liver.*—The symptoms recorded in the cases of jaundice following yellow fever inoculation are, as already mentioned, very similar to those of common infective hepatic jaundice, the disease formerly, though incorrectly, termed epidemic catarrhal jaundice. Common infective hepatic jaundice can be distinguished from leptospiral jaundice by the failure to infect guineapigs from the blood or urine, by the absence of agglutinins to leptospira in the serum, and by the differential leucocyte count which in infective hepatic jaundice shows an increase in lymphocytes, while in leptospiral jaundice there is commonly an increase in polymorphonuclear leucocytes.

Owing to the similarity in the symptoms of common infective hepatic jaundice and the hepatitis following yellow fever immunization the question naturally arose as to whether any of the persons who contracted jaundice following yellow fever injections could possibly have been infected with the agent, almost certainly a virus, of common infective hepatic jaundice. Common infective hepatic jaundice is by no means a rare disease in this country (*cf.* MORGAN and BROWN, 1927; FINDLAY, DUNLOP and BROWN, 1932; BASHFORD, 1934; FRAZER, 1935; BARBER, 1937; LISNEY, 1937) and in America (BLUMER, 1923). It has also been frequently noted in Egypt, the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan (*cf.* PRIDIE, 1936), where incidentally Weil's disease has never been recorded and West Africa (KUMM, 1932; FINDLAY, DUNLOP and BROWN, 1932). A widespread epidemic has recently been reported in Finland by WICKSTROM (1936). The chief pathological change is an acute but mild hepatitis (EPPINGER, 1922; FINDLAY and DUNLOP, 1932; GASKELL, 1933; HURST and SIMPSON, 1934). The incubation period has been shown by PICKLES (1930, 1937), and others to be about 4 weeks and the infectious stage would appear to be the preicteric period

when the disease is probably spread as a droplet infection. It is thus by no means easy to determine a clear association between sporadic cases of hepatitis and epidemics of common infective hepatic jaundice. Nevertheless in two instances in this series it has been possible to trace a connection between an outbreak of infective hepatic jaundice and the onset of jaundice in an inoculated person.

Case 18.—This physician, 4 weeks before the onset of his illness, had examined a number of children suffering from common infective hepatic jaundice in the out-patient department of a children's hospital.

Case 21.—This patient on arriving at Garua, French Cameroons, found that a European employee of his firm had just gone to bed with jaundice. This employee, O.H., who has since returned to England, reports similar symptoms to those described in *Case 21*; he also informed us that during January, 1937, there was a widespread outbreak of infective hepatic jaundice in the town of Garua. O.H. had never been inoculated against yellow fever and his serum failed to show either yellow fever or leptospiral immune bodies. *Case 21* developed jaundice after an incubation period which is consistent with his having contracted the infection at Garua.

A third instance of association between common infective hepatic jaundice and post-inoculation jaundice is reported to us by Dr. G. J. STÉFANOPOULO who in 1935 immunized 102 white persons against yellow fever at Pointe Noire, French Gabon (*cf.* STÉFANOPOULO, 1937). Yellow fever hyperimmune horse serum and neurotropic yellow fever virus were employed. Two persons developed jaundice between 2 and 3 months after the inoculation, but as cases of infective hepatic jaundice were present in the town in non-inoculated persons no particular significance was attached at the time to the occurrence.

Even if the cases of post-inoculation jaundice are really cases of common infective hepatic jaundice, and the occurrence of cases of post-inoculation jaundice in little groups in Bathurst, Gambia, in a mining camp in Sierra Leone and in a camp in the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan is suggestive of some common source of infection, it is necessary to explain why persons who have received therapeutic inoculations against yellow fever should be more prone than the uninoculated to infection with the organism of infective hepatic jaundice. It is suggested that a possible explanation lies in a previous weakening of the liver by some hepatotoxic substance contained in the inoculum in insufficient quantities to produce by itself any demonstrable action. In one case in this series the onset of jaundice appears to have been precipitated by an operation for hernia; the anaesthetic was A.C.E. As is well-known, two toxins acting together in small doses are more likely to produce extensive liver necrosis than a single toxin. OPIE (1910) for instance showed that while the effect of chloroform on the liver was very variable, the combined injection of living bacteria and chloroform produced much more constant and severe damage. Similar results on the liver were obtained by HURST and HURST (1928) on the combined effects of manganese chloride and

Bacillus coli infections, and by FINDLAY, DUNLOP and BROWN (1932) on the combined effects of arsphenamine and bacterial infections.

In human beings numerous outbreaks of jaundice have occurred in persons undergoing arsphenamine treatment. These outbreaks have, it is suggested, been due to the causal agent of common infective hepatic jaundice acting on the liver damaged by arsphenamine; in some instances it has been found that contact cases not receiving arsphenamine have also suffered from hepatitis. Earlier literature is summarized by FINDLAY (1930). A more recent outbreak is described by RICHARDS (1933). From 1931 onwards jaundice appeared in patients receiving antisyphilitic treatment in a clinic until finally one in every three patients developed symptoms. In all over 120 cases were seen. Female patients were relatively immune. Eventually one patient developed jaundice who had not received arsenical treatment for over a year, while another patient with jaundice had received only bismuth. It was found that the patients were forced to wait in a badly-ventilated corridor. When excessive crowding was avoided and all patients were made to wait in a large well-ventilated Out-Patient Hall the incidence of jaundice immediately fell.

MURRAY (1930) reported that of patients treated with acriflavine for gonorrhoea no less than 11 per cent. developed symptoms indistinguishable from those of infective hepatic jaundice (epidemic catarrhal jaundice) 8 or more weeks after cessation of the treatment.

DISCUSSION.

The evidence which has been obtained may be briefly summarized. Cases with symptoms closely resembling common infective hepatic jaundice have occurred 2 to 6 months after yellow fever immunization in from 2 to 3 per cent. of 2,200 persons immunized against yellow fever. Jaundice has occurred in those persons who have received immune serum and virus and also in persons who have received virus alone (five cases). The jaundice does not appear to be due to a form of yellow fever since no rise in the yellow fever immune body titre of the serum occurred during or after the illness and also because symptoms of jaundice occurred in a woman who had suffered from a natural attack of yellow fever and had a very high serum immune body titre already present when she received injections of virus and serum.

The occurrence of jaundice after yellow fever immunization is analogous to the occurrence of outbreaks of jaundice following antisyphilitic treatment or injections of acriflavine.

In two of the forty-eight cases discussed the attack of jaundice came on 4 weeks after exposure to infection from the organism of common infective hepatic jaundice. The incubation period of common infective hepatic jaundice is 4 weeks.

when the disease is probably spread a means easy to determine a clear association and epidemics of common infective hepatitis. In instances in this series it has been possible to trace an outbreak of infective hepatic jaundice and its source to a single person.

Case 18.—This physician, 4 weeks before, examined a number of children suffering from jaundice in the out-patient department of a hospital.

Case 21.—This patient on arriving at the hospital that a European employee of his firm had just died. The employee, O.H., who has since returned to London, had been exposed to those described in *Case 21*; he also informed that there was a widespread outbreak of infective hepatitis at Garua. O.H. had never been inoculated against yellow fever. He failed to show either yellow fever or leptospirosis but developed jaundice after an incubation period which was probably contracted the infection at Garua.

A third instance of association between common and post-inoculation jaundice is reported to us by Dr. J. H. in 1935 immunized 102 white persons against yellow fever in French Gabon (*cf.* STÉFANOPOULO, 1937). Yellow fever serum and neurotropic yellow fever virus were present in the town. Developed jaundice between 2 and 3 months after the inoculation. Infective hepatic jaundice were present in the town. No particular significance was attached at the time to the association.

Even if the cases of post-inoculation jaundice are not associated with infective hepatic jaundice, and the occurrence of common jaundice in little groups in Bathurst, Gambia, in a miniature epidemic in a camp in the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan is suggestive of infection, it is necessary to explain why persons who have had inoculations against yellow fever should be more prone to develop jaundice with the organism of infective hepatic jaundice. A possible explanation lies in a previous weakening of the liver. The substance contained in the inoculum in insufficient quantities to produce any demonstrable action. In one case in this series the onset of jaundice have been precipitated by an operation for hernia; the association is well-known. As is well-known, two toxins acting together in small doses produce extensive liver necrosis than a single toxin. OPIE (1937) showed that while the effect of chloroform on the liver was not severe, combined injection of living bacteria and chloroform produced constant and severe damage. Similar results on the liver were obtained by HURST and HURST (1928) on the combined effects of mangani-

TRANSACTIONS OF THE ROYAL SOCIETY OF
TROPICAL MEDICINE AND HYGIENE.
Vol. XXXI. No. 3. November, 1937.

THE LEUCOCYTE PICTURE IN IRAQ.

BY

WALTER P. KENNEDY, PH.D., L.R.C.P. & S., F.R.S.E.*

*From the Royal College of Medicine, Baghdad, and the Royal Air Force Hospital,
Hinaidi, Iraq.*

INTRODUCTION.

Differential counts are so commonly used in clinical practice that it is important to have accurate standards for comparison. Tropical climates are usually stated to cause alterations in the blood, and if this is true European standards are not applicable to tropical medicine without test of validity. Few investigations appear to have been made on this important subject. Forty-three text-books of tropical medicine, European medicine, physiology, etc. gave figures, but none to which statistical tests had been applied; and the majority gave normal ranges far narrower than would be expected, assuming that differential counts behave like the majority of variable populations. Comparison was complicated by differences in the names of the mononuclears; allowing for this, a résumé of the data is given in Table I.

TABLE I.

PERCENTAGE STANDARDS EXTRACTED FROM FORTY-THREE TEXT-BOOKS.

	Polymorphs.	Eosinophils.	Basophils.	Lymphocytes.	Monocytes.
Extreme ranges	50-75	0-6	0-1	15-45	0.2-15
Average maximum	71.1	4.5	0.6	30	3.8
Average minimum	64.5	1.5	0.4	20.8	6.8
Mean average	68	2.6	0.5	24.2	4.8

*The paper is published by permission of the Air Ministry and the Director-General of Health, Baghdad.

Thanks are due to Dr. A. C. AITKEN for advice on some of the statistical points.

- PICKLES, W. N. (1930). Epidemic catarrhal jaundice : an outbreak in Yorkshire. *Brit. med. J.*, 1, 944.
- . (1936). Epidemic catarrhal jaundice : with special reference to its epidemiology. *Brit. J. Child. Dis.*, 33, 192.
- PRIDIE, E. D. (1936). Yellow fever. *Rep. Sudan Med. Serv.*, 1935. p. 74. Khartoum. McCorquodale.
- RAMAGE, G. (1935). Epidemic jaundice in school children. *Publ. Hlth., Lond.*, 48, 391.
- RICHARDS, H. R. M. (1933). Some aspects of syphilis therapy. *Trans. Derby med. Soc.*
- SAWYER, W. A., LLOYD, W. & KITCHEN, S. F. (1932). Vaccination against yellow fever with immune serum and virus fixed for mice. *J. exp. Med.*, 55, 945.
- STÉFANOPOULO, G. J. (1937). Résultats fournis par l'application du test de séroprotection contre la fièvre jaune sur les indigènes de l'Afrique équatoriale française (Juillet 1935 ; Janvier 1936). *Ann. Méd. Pharm. colon.*, 35, 74.
- THEILER, A. (1919). Acute liver atrophy and parenchymatous hepatitis in horses. *Rep. Vet. Res. S. Afr.*, 5th and 6th, p. 7.
- WICKSTROM, J. (1936). Epidemic hepatitis. *Finska LäkSällsk. Handl.*, 79, 499.

THE LEUCOCYTE PICTURE IN IRAQ.

BY

WALTER P. KENNEDY, PH.D., L.R.C.P. & S., F.R.S.E.*

*From the Royal College of Medicine, Baghdad, and the Royal Air Force Hospital,
Hinaidi, Iraq.*

INTRODUCTION.

Differential counts are so commonly used in clinical practice that it is important to have accurate standards for comparison. Tropical climates are usually stated to cause alterations in the blood, and if this is true European standards are not applicable to tropical medicine without test of validity. Few investigations appear to have been made on this important subject. Forty-three text-books of tropical medicine, European medicine, physiology, etc. gave figures, but none to which statistical tests had been applied; and the majority gave normal ranges far narrower than would be expected, assuming that differential counts behave like the majority of variable populations. Comparison was complicated by differences in the names of the mononuclears; allowing for this, a résumé of the data is given in Table I.

TABLE I.

PERCENTAGE STANDARDS EXTRACTED FROM FORTY-THREE TEXT-BOOKS.

	Polymorphs.	Eosinophils.	Basophils.	Lymphocytes.	Monocytes.
Extreme ranges	50-75	0-6	0-1	15-45	0.2-15
Average maximum	71.1	4.5	0.6	30	3.8
Average minimum	64.5	1.5	0.4	20.8	6.8
Mean average	68	2.6	0.5	24.2	4.8

*The paper is published by permission of the Air Ministry and the Director-General of Health, Baghdad.

Thanks are due to Dr. A. C. AITKEN for advice on some of the statistical points.

Only KILDUFFE (1931) and TIDY (1934) gave the range of polymorphs as 50 to 75 per cent., none gave extreme ranges of eosinophils, lymphocytes, and monocytes so wide as the figures above, which are taken over all the texts consulted. Recent studies in Iraq showed that the polynuclear count and differential count did not conform to these standards (KENNEDY, 1935; KENNEDY and MACKAY, 1935 and 1936), and it was felt that the importance of the leucocyte picture in clinical practice justified the extension of the work. Under tropical conditions opportunities are infrequent for studying the physiological states of large groups of healthy Europeans owing to the relatively small size of the populations, the calls of routine work on the practitioner, and it may be added that the summer heat tends to induce an irritability of temper or a *laissez faire* attitude which is not conducive to useful co-operation.

MATERIAL AND METHODS.

KENNEDY and MACKAY (1936) studied the leucocyte picture in 271 airmen and officers of the Royal Air Force (177 stationed at Hinaidi, 32 at Amman, Transjordan, 33 at Aden, and 29 at Khartoum, Sudan) and 29 Iraqi medical students. To the results are now added those from 30 airmen stationed at Shaiba, Iraq, 49 more stationed at Hinaidi, and 21 Iraqi medical students, bringing the total to 400. As it was pointed out before that the Royal Air Force population offered special advantages for the investigation, the most important being that the health standard was singularly high, it is not necessary to recapitulate the detailed reasons. The Iraqi students were drawn from a socially favoured class, had undergone a medical examination before entering College, and were re-examined to exclude minor pathological influences. At the same time parallel investigations were made on pathological groups to discover the statistical differences from the normal standard, and to find whether the polynuclear count reacted to diseased conditions as it does in Europe.

Malaria.—The clinical material in this group was not so uniform as in the case of the normals. Forty-six were British airmen, and 254 were Iraqis of all social classes with an age group of 12 to 59, though the majority were Iraq Levy troops between 19 and 26. The samples were mostly collected at the height of the malaria season, but some were taken throughout the year. Of a total 300 cases, 171 were benign tertian, 122 were malignant, and only 7 were quartan, the last being comparatively rare in Iraq. The severity of the infections varied within wide limits, but in all cases parasites were observed in the bloods examined. It has been shown that the blood reaction varies with the different stages of the parasite's development (GARIN, 1930), further some of the cases were new infections, a few had received quinine, and some were relapses. Thus comparison with the normal group is only to be made with considerable reservation. It must be emphasized that the aim of this part of the research was to find the range of relative leucocyte reaction which could occur in malaria and the other pathological conditions, rather than to study the detailed response in groups

where as many variables as possible were controlled. Such observations would have required an impracticable number of cases, and would have introduced complications unnecessary at this stage. On the other hand it is possible that the diversity of sampling did not introduce such a disturbance of the basic statistics as might be expected, since it has been shown that so far as the polynuclear index was concerned, a male Iraqi population, healthy but otherwise taken at random, did not differ statistically from one of the airmen (KENNEDY and MACKAY, 1935).

Tuberculosis.—This group included 97 cases of active phthisis of whom two were British airmen, the rest being young Iraqi adults, and 36 cases of surgical tuberculosis. Again, it must be made clear that the inclusion of two different types of tuberculosis in the same division is permissible only since a general view of the blood reaction to the disease is wanted.

Leprosy.—The lepers were all of the nodular type, 72 being from Baghdad, 32 from Amara, and 29 from Basrah. All were Arab fellahin, and only 10 were women.

Phlebotomus or Sand-fly Fever (three-day fever).—Of these cases 101 were British airmen and 29 were Assyrians of the Iraq Levies. Difficulty is also encountered in this group for the differential diagnosis of phlebotomus fever, in Iraq at least, is not entirely satisfactory. Similar brief fevers are not uncommon which, however, differ sufficiently from sand-fly fever to suggest that the ætiology is different.

Bilharziasis.—The 100 cases were infections with *Schistosoma haematobium* drawn from all ages of the male population of a village, Han-beni-Saad, near Baghdad, where the disease was endemic. The diagnosis was made from the presence of ova in the urine. The samples were taken during an intensive treatment campaign, and opportunity was unfortunately not then afforded to examine the stools for helminthic infestation. It is probable that a proportion, estimated at 5 to 10 per cent. may also have been infected with ankylostomiasis. *Ascaris* and *Taenia* are not common in this district.

The methods of preparation and counting were the same as detailed in the previous papers, and it will suffice to discuss the classification of the leucocytes. A feature of both normal and pathological groups was the relatively large number of cells with ruptured membranes and scattered granules, and degenerate cells of the smear and basket types. Eosinophils were especially fragile. The degenerate cells were omitted from the count, but eosinophils, which only appeared to have ruptured through drawing the film, were included.

The division of granulocytes into neutrophil, eosinophil, and basophil is familiar and needs no remark. Opinions differ regarding non-granular cells. The lymphocytes are divided by certain writers into large and small; the former are generally considered immature, as shown by the more constant presence of nucleoli; and are relatively more common in children. All stages of intermediate forms occur, so the division into two groups is arbitrary and unnecessarily

complicates the differential count. Further, there does not seem to be any well-founded clinical reason for making a separation.

The upholders of different theories of the origin of monocytes have given these cells a number of names, among which are large uninuclears, large mononuclears, large hyalines, macrocytes, splenocytes, endotheliocytes, endothelial leucocytes, and transitional cells. The last was applied on the incorrect assumption that there was a transition form between the monocyte and the neutrophil. MAXIMOW and BLOOM (1935) state that in most animals it is impossible to separate all monocytes as distinct from lymphocytes, and that transitions between them are usually present. In the present investigation cells occurred which were difficult to classify as either monocytes or lymphocytes and appeared to be intermediate types. No special class was made for these, but they were included in the group they most resembled. Different forms of monocytes can be distinguished but there does not appear to be any advantage in separating them. All cells conforming to the following description were considered monocytes. The diameter is usually between 16 and 22μ , though the upper limit may be exceeded. The nucleus is relatively smaller than that of the lymphocyte, and is eccentrically placed, round or oval (but if so, the margin is always slightly indented), reniform, horseshoe shaped, or deeply constricted. The nucleus stains paler than that of the lymphocyte; the nuclear membrane is thinner. The chromatin granules are finer and more numerous, the appearance is generally of a loose mesh with thickenings where the chromatin threads meet. The cytoplasm is a pale greyish-blue colour, sometimes pale violet, and with critical illumination well-stained slides show reddish-blue granules much finer and more numerous than those of the neutrophil. In the pathological series particularly, monocytes were found with polymorph nuclei showing three, four or even more lobes, the staining reaction being always that of the typical monocyte. As many of this type had vacuolated cytoplasm, it is considered that they were senile or degenerating from pathological causes.

The occurrence of cells other than the above in normal blood is seldom mentioned. DIEULAFOY (1912), however, says certain rare or abnormal elements occur, not exceeding 1 to 2 per cent. These he gives as plasma cells, mononuclear basophils, myelocytes and maztzellen. OSGOOD and HASKINS (1931) define metamyelocytes, or cells intermediate between staff cells (Stabkernige) and myelocytes thus:—"any cell with specific granulations in the cytoplasm which has a nucleus which is not segmented and cannot be described as either round or oval, nor as a curved or coiled band, should be classed as a metamyelocyte." It is said that metamyelocytes occur rarely in normal blood, while NICHOLSON (1934) states there is less than 1 per cent. in the blood of normal people. GRADWOHL (1935) agrees that they are found very occasionally in a percentage of 0 to 1. OSGOOD and HASKINS (1931) criteria for distinguishing these, and other unusual cells, have been adopted here as they are clear, distinct and perhaps the least liable to cause confusion.

The myelocyte is a cell with a round or oval nucleus which does not contain nucleoli, and has neutrophilic or very slightly basophilic cytoplasm containing specific granulations, but not azur granules. No myelocytes were found in the normal group.

Promyelocytes are intermediate in structure between stem cells or myeloblasts, and myelocytes.

Stem cells, myeloblasts, or lymphoblasts have deeply basophilic cytoplasm, and a relatively large round oval nucleus containing nucleoli, which though finely reticular is almost homogeneous. Azur granules may occur in the cytoplasm. The distinction between myeloblast and lymphoblast depends on criteria so slight as to be unreliable, though in pathological bloods the predominant features of the differential count often make it possible to place a cell in one of the two groups. PINEY (1931) and also GRADWOHL (1935) describe a monoblastic type of stem cell, and while some specimens were found which resembled their descriptions in certain respects, none fitted them exactly. It has been thought best to include all these under the term stem cells, particularly as they only occurred sporadically.

The Rieder cell resembles the stem cell except that the nucleus is a coiled or curved rod or band, though its internal structure is that of the myeloblast. The ones found here were all smaller than stem cells.

Plasma cells have an eccentric nucleus and a large amount of very basophilic cytoplasm, the circumnuclear area being paler than the remainder. They have little diagnostic value, but are sometimes found in the course of infections which cause a lymphocytosis. None occurred in any normal blood of this series. The Türk irritation form has the cytoplasm of the plasma cell, is often vacuolated, while the nucleus resembled that of the stem cell. Some authorities believe they are identical with the plasma cell. They occur in many conditions in which there is assumed to be an irritation of the bone marrow, but are not considered of diagnostic significance.

The basis and methods of the polynuclear count have been fully discussed in the two previous papers in these TRANSACTIONS. It will suffice to say it gives an index of mean maturity of the neutrophils.

RESULTS.

The principal statistics of the normal group are given in Table II. As graphic comparison is often more vivid than numerical, frequency histograms of this and the pathological groups are shown in the diagram on p. 314. In the figure the pathological sets have been stepped up to the same percentage scale as the larger normal group to facilitate comparison. As the numbers of basophils and "abnormal" cells is so small, standard deviations, etc., have not been calculated for them but a detailed analysis is set out in Table VII (p. 319).

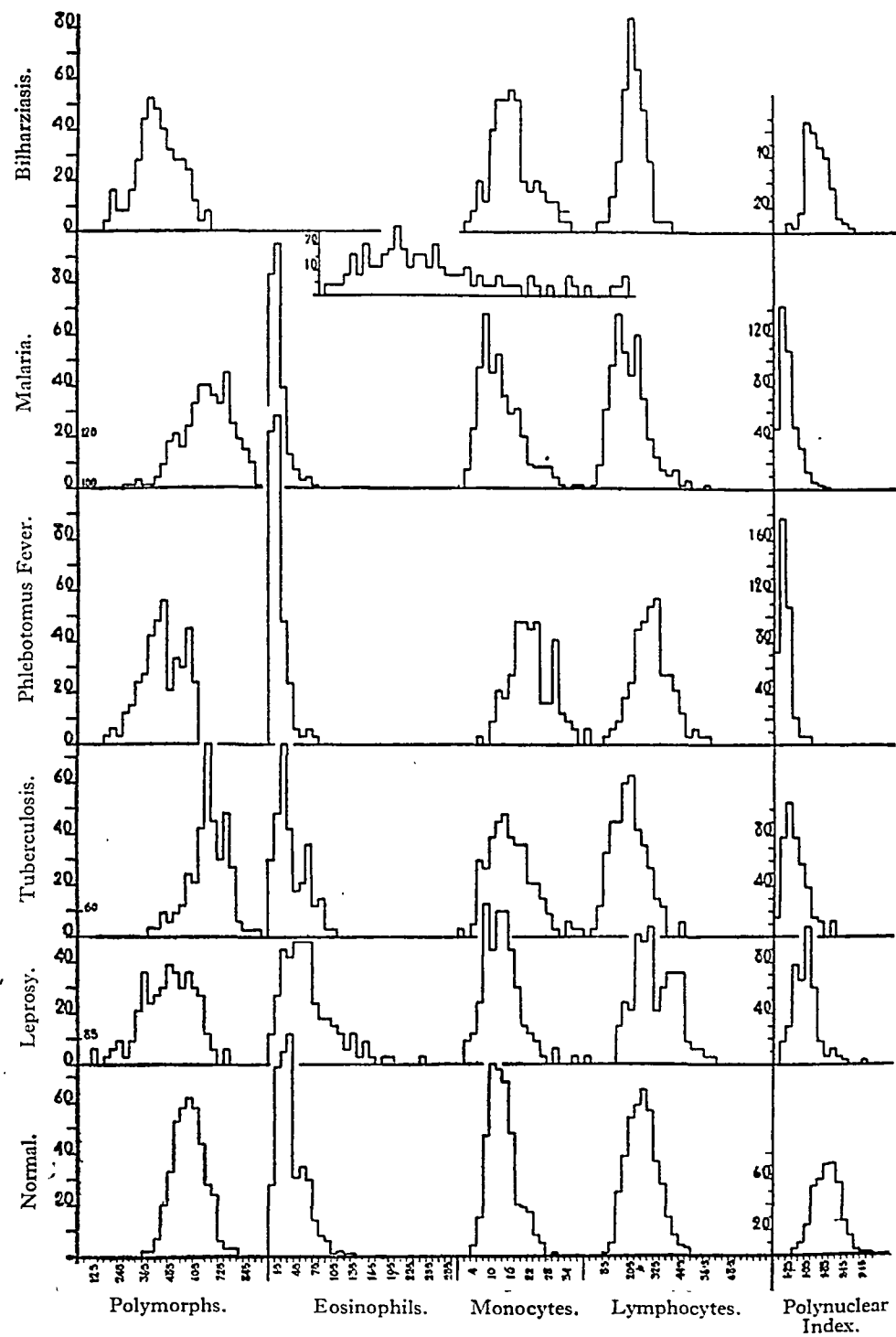


TABLE II.
400 NORMAL INDIVIDUALS.

	Mean.	Standard Deviation.	Standard Error. \pm	Coefficient of Variation.	Range.	
					Low.	High.
Polymorphs	57.10	7.23	0.363	12.66	35.5	75.0
Eosinophils	3.63	2.67	0.113	62.49	0	13.0
Lymphocytes	26.07	7.25	0.363	27.87	9.0	48.0
Monocytes	13.08	4.57	0.228	34.93	3.0	29.5
Polynuclear index	1.864	0.206	0.103	11.08	1.30	2.51

It will be seen that the mean percentage of the different cells does not add up exactly to 100. This is due to the method of grouping the data. By centering a group at the middle value of its range of x (instead of its mean value which would be ideal, but practically laborious) a certain error is introduced, and it is this error (which in practice is nearly negligible) which has accumulated over the averages of the different cell groups and produced the discrepancy. The danger of the statistical method is to strain after greater accuracy than the conditions of the experiment warrant, and while it would be possible to extract means for these percentages which would total 100, the results would not justify the labour necessary, and the additional fineness would not be consistent with the method of the observations.

Compare the normal polymorph data with those in Table I. The mean is 10.9 per cent. less, and the range is 15 per cent. greater than the extreme range which, it will be remembered, was only given by two authorities out of forty-three. The question which immediately appears is whether the present results constitute a probable or an improbable event. Characters of not excessively small probability when sampled in a large number of trials tend to normal distribution under a wide variety of circumstances. Statistical tests were therefore applied to discover the type of curve given by the experimental results. Following the method of ELDERTON (1927) the curve criteria of PEARSON'S system of frequency curves were calculated, then by means of his table it was decided which curve should be used.

TABLE III.
CURVE CRITERIA OF DISTRIBUTIONS IN NORMAL GROUP.

	β_1	β_2	κ
Polymorphs	0.00001732	2.6671	-0.00001958
Lymphocytes	0.13806	2.8760	-0.15656
Monocytes	0.5684	3.4592	-0.89936
Eosinophils	1.2185	4.4476	-1.6944
Polynuclear index	0.001628	2.8520	-0.004071

The polymorphs and lymphocytes satisfy the criteria for the Normal or Gaussian curve fairly well, that is $\beta_1 = 0$. $\beta_2 = 3$. $\kappa = 0$. The next step was to fit a normal curve to the distribution and examine the agreement by means of the χ^2 test. The area method of fitting the normal curve was used (ARKIN and COLTON, 1935). The details are set out in Table IV. The data in column 6 were derived from the table given by PEARL (1930).

TABLE IV.
FITTING A NORMAL CURVE TO THE POLYMORPH DISTRIBUTION.

Class limits.	Class mid points.	Frequency of class f	Deviation of class limit from mean x	Deviation in terms of class interval x/σ	Per cent. area between class limit and mean	Per cent. area in class interval.	Theoretical frequency f_t
35-37.99	36.5	2	22.3	3.08	49.90	0.28	1.1
38-40.99	39.5	2	19.3	2.67	49.62	0.84	3.4
41-43.99	42.5	7	16.3	2.25	48.78	2.07	8.3
44-46.99	45.5	20	13.3	1.84	46.71	4.49	18.0
47-49.99	48.5	33	10.3	1.42	42.22	7.84	31.4
50-52.99	51.5	53	7.3	1.01	34.38	12.14	48.6
53-55.99	54.5	58	4.3	0.59	22.24	15.10	60.4
56-58.99	57.5	62	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1.3 \\ 1.7 \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 0.18 \\ 0.23 \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 7.14 \\ 9.10 \end{array} \right.$	16.24	65.0
59-61.99	60.5	58	4.7	0.65	24.22	15.12	60.5
62-64.99	63.5	44	7.7	1.06	35.54	11.32	45.3
65-67.99	66.5	28	10.7	1.48	43.06	7.52	30.1
68-70.99	69.5	24	13.7	1.89	47.06	4.00	16.0
71-73.99	72.5	6	16.7	2.31	48.96	1.90	7.6
74-76.99	75.5	3	19.7	2.72	49.67	0.71	2.8

FISHER (1932) states, "For any value of n , which must be a whole number, the form of distribution of χ^2 was established by PEARSON in 1900; it is therefore possible to calculate in what proportion of cases any value of χ^2 will be exceeded. This proportion is represented by P , which is therefore the probability that χ^2 shall exceed any specified value. To every value of χ^2 there thus corresponds a certain value of P ; as χ^2 is increased from 0 to infinity, P diminishes from 1 to 0. Equally, to any value of P in this range there corresponds a certain value of χ^2 . Algebraically the relation between these two quantities is a complex one, so that it is necessary to have a table of corresponding values if the χ^2 test is to be available for practical use."

In applying the $P\chi^2$, the small frequencies at the ends of the distribution were pooled into single larger classes. The use of χ^2 rests on a mathematical approximation which is satisfactory if class frequencies exceed 10 or 12, but is somewhat in error if any very small frequencies are present. Further, since the mean and standard deviation were not given *a priori*, but were computed from

the data, it was necessary to allow for this amount of forced agreement by subtracting what FISHER calls "degrees of freedom," that is, to find, n the point at which his table of $P\chi^2$ is entered, 2 is subtracted from the number of classes (one for the mean, and one for the standard deviation). The method of determining χ^2 is shown in Table V.

TABLE V.
"GOODNESS OF FIT"—DATA OF TABLE IV.

Class mid point.	Observed frequency f	Theoretical frequency f_t	$(f - f_t)$	$(f - f_t)^2$	$\frac{(f - f_t)^2}{f_t}$
36.5	2	1.1			
39.5	2	3.4	-1.8	3.24	0.253
42.5	7	8.3			
45.5	20	18.0	2.0	4.00	0.222
48.5	33	31.4	1.6	2.56	0.082
51.5	53	48.6	4.4	19.36	0.398
54.5	58	60.4	-2.4	5.76	0.095
57.5	62	65.0	-3.0	9.0	0.139
60.5	58	60.5	-2.5	6.25	0.103
63.5	44	45.3	-1.3	1.69	0.037
66.5	28	30.1	-2.1	4.41	0.147
69.5	24	16.0	8.0	64.0	4.000
72.5	6	7.6	-1.4	1.96	0.188
75.5	3	2.8			
					$\chi^2 = 5.664$

Using FISHER's (1932) table we find that for $n = 9$ and $\chi^2 = 5.664$, that P lies between 0.8 and 0.7, and by interpolation the value is approximately 0.77. This means that if the frequencies were normally distributed, we should expect to obtain a worse fit by a normal curve in approximately 77 per cent. of future samples of 400 cases. Hence for a sample of 400 the observed deviations from the normal curve are in no way exceptional, and we conclude that the distribution of frequencies is adequately represented by a normal curve.

In similar fashion the theoretical normal curve was constructed for the polynuclear index, the χ^2 test applied, and P was found to be 0.84, that is, a satisfactory fit. Likewise the data for lymphocytes was similarly treated, and P was 0.59 which is rather less good owing to the presence of slight positive skewness, but still may be considered a satisfactory fit. The monocytes and eosinophils appear to satisfy the criteria for PEARSON's Type I curve rather than any other, but this point was not pursued since it did not seem that any conclusion that might be drawn would be immediately useful. It would not be expected that these two distributions would be of the "normal" type for

they form a relatively small proportion of every hundred cells examined, and the means are relatively small numbers.

The number of basophils found was so small that no distributions were attempted. The statistics are given in Table VI, and those for the pathological material are included for the sake of brevity.

TABLE VI.
OCCURRENCE OF BASOPHILS.

	Normal.	Malaria.	Leprosy.	Tuberculosis.	Phlebotomus Fever.	Bilharzia- sis.
Number of cases	400	300	133	133	130	100
Number with basophils	35	52	63	31	9	53
Percentage with basophils	8.8	17.3	47.4	23.3	6.9	53
Average per case	0.067	0.102	0.775	0.169	0.055	0.460
Range, 0 to	2.5	1	3	1.5	1.5	2

In like manner the occurrence of so-called "abnormal" cells is set out in Table VII. The figures in the first column are the percentages found for each kind of cell, and the corresponding figures in the subsequent columns give the total number of individuals in which each percentage occurred.

One case might have 1.5 per cent. of metamyelocytes, 0.5 per cent. of stem cells, and say, 0.5 Rieder cells. This overlapping could not be readily shown, but the total effect can be gauged by inspecting the second and third lines of the Table.

In Table VIII the statistics of the pathological material have been collected. To facilitate comparison the figures for the healthy population have been included, and the grouping has been made primarily in cell types rather than diseases. The mean and standard deviation require no explanation. The Standard Error of the mean has been used in preference to the Probable Error, following FISHER (1932) who says: "The common use of the probable error is its only recommendation; when any critical test is required the deviation must be expressed in terms of the standard error." If instead of making one series of N observations, a large number, m , of a series of means were obtained, each series having the same number of N observations, the m means would be distributed in a normal curve, the standard deviation of which is σ/\sqrt{N} = the standard error of the mean. Since 99.73 per cent. of cases in this universe will be included within a distance of 3 standard deviations from the mean, then in 99.73 chances out of 100 no error (difference between the sample mean and "true" mean) will occur larger than 3 times the standard error. The coefficient of variation, $v = 100 \frac{\sigma}{\bar{M}}$ or the percentage ratio of the standard deviation to the arithmetic mean, was

TABLE VII.
OCCURRENCE OF SO-CALLED "ABNORMAL" CELLS.

	Percentages.	Normal	Malaria.	Leprosy.	Tuberculosis.	Phlebotomus Fever.	Bilharziasis.
Number of cases		400	300	133	133	130	100
Total with abnormal cells		242	237	72	81	110	51
Percentage with abnormal cells		60.5	79	54.2	62.3	84.6	51
Metamyelocytes	0.5	107	63	23	19	28	13
	1.0	57	26	8	9	24	2
	1.5	19	21	3	2	16	
	2.0	4	15	2	0	8	
	2.5	3	6	0	1	2	
	3.0	2	8	0		1	
	3.5	1	2	1			
	4.0	2	2				
	4.5	1	0				
	5.0		0				
	5.5		0				
	6.0		1				
	6.5		1				
Myelocytes	0.5	—	19	8	6	8	1
	1.0		1	1	1		
	1.5		2				
	2.0		2				
	2.5		1				
Promyelocytes	0.5	6	8	1	—	2	1
	1.0	6	3				
Eosinophil-metamyelocytes	0.5	11	1	12	3	3	5
	1.0			0			6
	1.5			1			1
Eosinophil-myelocytes	0.5	4	1	2	1	—	2
	1.0	2					
Basophil-metamyelocytes	0.5	—	—	—	1	—	—
Macropolycytes	0.5	1	10	7	8	1	—
Stem cells	0.5	34	67	16	27	15	8
	1.0	5	20	1	6	6	
	1.5		9		1	2	
	2.0		6		2	0	
	2.5		0			1	
	3.0		1				
Plasma cells	0.5	—	13	7	8	1	3
	1.0		12	0	5		0
	1.5		1	1			0
	2.0		1				1
	2.5		0				
	3.0		0				
	3.5		1				1
	4.0		0				
	4.5		0				
	5.0		0				
	5.5		0				
	6.0		1				
Rieder cells	0.5	2	3	—	1	—	4
	1.0				1		2
Türk cell	0.5	3	25	16	11	9	11
	1.0		17		3	3	3
	1.5		3		1		
	2.0		4		1		
	2.5		2				
	3.0		1				
	3.5		0				
	4.0		1				
	4.5		0				
	5.0		1				
	5.5		0				
	6.0		1				

devised by PEARSON (quoted from YULE, 1932) as a measure of relative dispersion. It is a mere number and is independent of the units of measurement employed, but is useful in the comparison of the amount of dispersion in differing groups.

The curve criteria for the pathological data have not been calculated since the groups are much smaller than the healthy population, too many uncontrolled variables enter into them, and the information derived from classifying these distributions would have little medical importance. An inspection of the histograms on p. 314 shows most are more skew than the corresponding normals but with the exception of the eosinophils in bilharziasis, they do not depart from the "expectation of distribution." These eosinophils have a very wide range so that the number of classes on the same scale as the others is large while the number of cases in each class is relatively small. It is probable that if, say, 1,000 cases had been examined, the distribution of the population would approximate to "normal" though slight skewness might occur.

The data in Table VIII enables us to discover if the groups differ significantly from each other, that is, whether the observed differences are small enough to be within the limits of sampling error or whether they are so great that the event of their being determined by chance is highly improbable. In the present instance the only important differences are between each of the pathological groups and the healthy group. The standard error of the difference of two means (standard deviation of the theoretical distribution of differences between means of samples) can be obtained from the equation:—

$$\sigma_D = \sqrt{\frac{\sigma_1^2}{N_1} + \frac{\sigma_2^2}{N_2}}$$

Where

- σ_1 = standard deviation of the first sample.
- σ_2 = standard deviation of the second sample.
- N_1 = number of items in first sample.
- N_2 = number of items in second sample.

If the difference between the means is greater than $3 \times$ the standard error of the difference between the means (that is, if the probability of such a difference being due to chance is very small) one can say the difference is significant and not due to chance. The results of the application of this test are given in Table IX. The columns headed "Difference" refer to the difference between the mean in each case and that of the healthy population. The difference is not significant in four instances only; the eosinophils in tuberculosis, the lymphocytes in phlebotomus fever, and the monocytes in malaria and leprosy.

DISCUSSION.

The analysis of the results of the differential counts is consistent with the general expectation of the distributions of biological commensurables, and it may be concluded that the samples are fair representatives of the particular

TABLE VIII.
STATISTICS OF PATHOLOGICAL MATERIAL.

		Mean.	Standard Error. \pm	Standard Deviation.	Coefficient of variation.	Range.	
						Low.	High.
Polymorphs	Normal	57.10	0.363	7.23	12.66	35	75
	Malaria	66.18	0.628	10.88	16.44	26	90
	Tubercle	68.10	0.843	9.72	14.28	38	93
	Leprosy	47.87	1.055	12.16	25.41	12	75
	Phlebotomus fever	44.92	0.860	9.79	21.80	18	60.5
	Bilharziasis	42.98	1.004	10.44	24.32	19.5	67.5
Polynuclear index	Normal	1.864	0.0103	0.206	11.08	1.30	2.50
	Malaria	1.207	0.0079	0.137	11.36	1.04	1.78
	Tubercle	1.342	0.0151	0.174	12.95	1.03	1.96
	Leprosy	1.513	0.0184	0.213	14.10	1.13	2.44
	Phlebotomus fever	1.188	0.0089	0.101	8.50	1.04	1.57
	Bilharziasis	1.700	0.0188	0.188	11.07	1.23	2.22
Eosinophils	Normal	3.63	0.113	2.67	62.49	0	13
	Malaria	1.99	0.635	1.10	55.20	0	7
	Tubercle	4.27	0.244	2.82	65.91	0	10.5
	Leprosy	6.54	0.360	4.15	63.41	0	25
	Phlebotomus fever	1.46	0.010	1.18	81.10	0	7
	Bilharziasis	25.89	1.002	10.02	38.72	9.5	56.5
Lymphocytes	Normal	26.07	0.363	7.26	27.87	9	48
	Malaria	19.70	0.492	8.51	43.23	3	56
	Tubercle	19.51	0.702	8.08	41.48	3	45
	Leprosy	31.98	0.866	9.97	31.34	13	58
	Phlebotomus fever	28.12	0.837	9.54	33.96	4.5	57
	Bilharziasis	23.18	0.645	6.45	27.84	10	40
Monocytes	Normal	13.08	0.228	4.57	34.93	3	29.5
	Malaria	12.58	0.379	6.55	52.08	1	38
	Tubercle	9.24	0.311	3.59	38.86	1	20
	Leprosy	13.21	0.511	5.89	44.59	2	39
	Phlebotomus fever	22.34	0.579	6.59	29.54	5.5	39.5
	Bilharziasis	8.56	0.331	3.31	38.66	1	17

TABLE IX.

SIGNIFICANCE OF MEANS COMPARED WITH NORMAL STANDARD.

	Polymorphs.		Eosinophils.		Lymphocytes.		Monocytes.		Polynuclear index.	
	Difference.	$3\sigma_D$	Difference.	$3\sigma_D$	Difference.	$3\sigma_D$	Difference.	$3\sigma_D$	Difference.	$3\sigma_D$
Malaria	9.08	2.173	1.64	0.443	6.37	1.834	0.50	1.324*	0.657	0.0389
Tuberculosis	11.00	2.761	0.64	0.836*	7.19	2.368	3.84	1.157	0.512	0.0580
Leprosy	9.23	3.350	2.91	1.060	5.91	2.814	0.13	1.678*	0.351	0.0634
Phlebotomus fever	12.18	2.800	2.17	0.505	2.05	2.738*	9.26	1.864	0.676	0.0406
Bilharziasis	14.12	3.320	22.16	1.960	2.89	2.220	4.52	1.205	0.161	0.0643

* Difference not significant.

universes. The percentage count is divided into unequal classes, three (neutrophils, lymphocytes and monocytes) being considerably larger than the others. The larger classes would be expected to approximate to the normal curve, though probably with some degree of skewness. The smaller classes would not be expected to fit the normal curve as the means are under 10. The histograms of the normal neutrophils and lymphocytes are slightly platykurtic, that is, β_2 is less than 3, being 2.667 and 2.867 respectively. The difference is not statistically significant. The standard error of the kurtosis is:—

$$\sigma_{\beta_2} = \sqrt{\frac{24}{N}} = 0.245$$

and $3\sigma_{\beta_2}$ is greater than the actual difference. The normal monocytes are slightly, but not significantly, leptokurtic, β_2 being 3.459, but the curve is also more skew. The measure of the skewness suggested by PEARSON is the distance between the mean and the mode divided by the standard deviation, or in terms of moments

$$\chi = \frac{\sqrt{\beta_1}(\beta_2 + 3)}{2(5\beta_2 - 6\beta_1 - 9)}$$

The larger the value of χ , the greater is the departure of the curve from symmetry. Applying this equation to the values given in Table III, we have

for normal neutrophils $\chi = 0.0833$

for normal monocytes $\chi = 0.4984$

Of the normal group the monocytes differ most from the text-book standard. When at first some very high monocyte counts were found the results were viewed with suspicion, the most obvious possibility of error was that some lymphocytes were being classed as monocytes. Thereafter great care was taken to avoid this, but no difference resulted. It has been noted that degenerate cells were more commonly encountered here than in Britain, and that cells occurred which were difficult to classify as between lymphocytes and monocytes. Both factors required careful attention, and it is emphasised that when doubt arose all criteria of each class were considered before a decision was made. While the average monocyte range of the text-books is from 3.8 to 6.8, MARTINET (1934) gives a range of 12 to 15, CHIRAY and CHENE (1934) from 10 to 12, and NICHOLSON (1934), WHITBY and BRITAIN (1935), and WOOD (1918) give ranges of 5 to 10 per cent. In view of these figures, and the frequent statement that monocytes tend to increase in the tropics (though we have not seen the extent of the increase mentioned) the mean of 13.08 per cent. found here does not appear so unlikely. Further, in a sample of 400 values normally distributed about a mean of 13, a few values exceeding 25 would be expected. After careful consideration it has therefore been concluded that the data for the monocytes give a true picture of the sample, and have not been significantly disturbed by avoidable errors.

Similar doubts were felt as to the validity of such high counts as over

10 per cent. eosinophils. The cases in which these occurred were symptomless, and negative to repeated tests for worm infection. POINDEXTER (1935) has reported on 401 apparently healthy negroes in Alabama who were negative for malarial parasites, helminthic parasites in the stools, tuberculin reaction; and who had no history of any disease usually associated with eosinophilia. He found an average of 8.3 per cent. eosinophils over all, and in the age groups 5 to 9 and 15 to 19, percentages of 12.7 and 10.3 respectively. PETERSEN (1936) reports high eosinophil counts from Hawaii. STITT (1929) refers to NEISSER's belief that increased eosinophil may be an expression of sympathetic system irritation; and there is some evidence that the latter is a factor worth considering in Iraq. Further, a symptomless familial eosinophilia is well recognized, though reports are few. Again, the figures may be accepted as a true reflection of the facts.

Relatively high numbers of the so-called " abnormal cells " were observed. Desultory references to the occurrence of these in normal blood has been made by DIEULAFOY (1912) and other authors, though they are more frequently passed over. Metamyelocytes constituted the bulk of the unusual types in the normal group, the next most numerous being stem cells. Both tend to appear when the marrow is stimulated to extra activity and the evidence afforded by the polynuclear count indicates that this stimulation does in fact take place. Macropolycytes are dealt with fully by KENNEDY and MACKAY (1937).

The normal percentage of basophils is usually given as 0 to 1, with an average of 0.5, but the proportion of people in whom they are absent is only mentioned by COOKE (1928) (*ca.* 60 per cent.). In the course of 11 years' teaching histology in Edinburgh to classes of over 200 students difficulty was always experienced in finding basophils for demonstration in the students' blood films, and though no records were kept, the impression is that they occurred in about 10 per cent. of the films. The incidence of basophils in 8.8 per cent. of normals here cannot be regarded as unusual.

The distribution of the polynuclear counts fits the normal curve well and it can be accepted as a true representation of the facts. As the basis of the count, and its special relation to Iraq have been discussed in the previous papers, this need not be repeated here.

Data from a similar group of healthy Britons were not available for statistical comparison but the consensus of opinion in standard text-books makes it reasonable to conclude that there is an alteration of the leucocyte picture in this country, though it should be added that other recent work tends to throw doubt on the validity of accepted standard. OSGOOD and HASKINS (1931) in Oregon are of the opinion that the neutrophil range of 55 to 75 per cent. (average 64 per cent.) is from 5 to 15 per cent. too high and the figures for lymphocytes are correspondingly too low. They are certain that neutrophil counts over 70 per cent. must be interpreted with caution. It is, however, generally agreed, that blood cell changes occur in the tropics, though more attention has been paid to erythrocytic differences than to leucocytic.

Observations have been made indicating that alterations of geographical locale other than tropical apparently influence the blood picture. GÄNSSLEN (1937) has recently reported regional differences in leucocyte counts in patients suffering from other than blood diseases in Tübingen and Frankfort, and notes that he, and others who moved from Tübingen to Frankfort, underwent profound leucocytic changes. The total counts fell; the percentage of lymphocytes approximately doubled. He concludes that the leucocyte count must be influenced by geographical and climatological factors, though the precise nature is yet unknown.

STAMMERS (1935) examined 171 healthy European adults in Johannesburg, 5,750 feet above sea level, and compared the blood picture with the means of 68.2 per cent. neutrophils and 25.8 per cent. lymphocytes, which were derived from twelve standard texts. His results are given (a) in Table X which includes also his quotation from SACHS on 81 natives at Pretoria Mental Hospital (b).

TABLE X.

	Mean.	Standard Error. \pm	Standard Deviation.	Range.
(a) Neutrophils	54.2	0.510	6.670	38.0-73.0
Eosinophils	1.88	0.094	1.231	0.2- 7.0
Basophils	0.69	0.042	0.548	0.0- 2.6
Lymphocytes	39.72	0.473	6.190	21.0-55.3
Monocytes and transitional	4.24	0.097	1.272	1.7- 7.5
(b) Neutrophils	54.70	0.247	3.23	38.0-72.0
Lymphocytes	36.80	0.578	7.56	21.0-53.0

The most striking differences between these figures and those in Table II are for the lymphocytes, which are much higher here, and the monocytes, which are much less.

Several papers have reported deviations of the polynuclear count from COOKE and PONDER's (1927) standard in various localities. Among them MACLEOD gives figures for eleven widely scattered points from Alberta to Australia; others are BURKE-GAFFNEY (1931) (Tanganyika); SHAW (1935) (Egypt); SHANKLIN (1936) (Syria); PAI (1936) (China), who also quotes BANNERJEE (India); ABELS (1934) (New York); similar deviations using ARNETH's (1904) method are recorded by DUKE (1920) (Uganda); BREINL and PRIESTLY (1934), Australia and New Guinea, quoted by PAI (1936); CHAMBERLAIN and VEDDER (1911) (Philippine Islands); MACFIE (1916) (Gold Coast, quoted by SHAW). Significantly different counts have been obtained in these localities, but the distributions about the respective means show that the index is remarkably constant for each locality. Thus the validity of the method as a sensitive test of the neutrophil state is not impaired. Before it can be used clinically it is necessary to establish a local standard of reference.

After considering etiological factors which might be responsible for the alteration of the blood picture of British Airmen in Iraq, KENNEDY and MACKAY (1935 and 1936) concluded the likeliest agent was climate, which is in line with the opinions of most writers. One would not claim this is the only factor, but a circumspect examination of the airmen's food, habits, exercise, health and general environment failed to disclose any other agency on which responsibility could be placed.

Space does not permit a detailed discussion of the influence of climate, which will be made the subject of a further study dealing with variations in temperature, air density, ultra-violet radiation, etc.

Pathological Material.

This was less uniform than the normal group. No attempt was made, for example, to subdivide the cases according to severity of infection. The aim was to find the range of deviation which could occur in the leucocyte picture which might be met clinically in Iraq in any instance of the particular conditions. This is perhaps a somewhat crude criterion but in the absence of established figures it had to be applied before more stringent classifications could be used.

Malaria.

The usual teaching is that a monocytosis accompanies malaria. WHITBY and BRITTON (1935) say an increase of the monocytes to the order of 15 per cent. is of definite diagnostic value. The present results are at first sight contradictory to this for all the means of cell types in malaria differ significantly from the normal standards *except* that of the monocytes. The neutrophils are increased, the lymphocytes and eosinophils diminished. But the coefficient of variation of the monocytes is greater (52.08 against 34.93), as also is the range (1-38 against 3-29.5). If the results were compared with the text-book percentage for monocytes there would apparently be monocytosis. In the absence of data for a large control group of normal persons in some tropical locality, a practitioner there, never having occasion to examine normal bloods, might well be misled by the malarial differential counts into assuming the existence of a relative monocytosis. Further, some of the cases showed very high neutrophil percentages—up to 90. This would reduce the monocyte percentage, and lower the mean value over the series.

The neutrophils may vary within wide limits as there is a leucocytosis during the paroxysm and a leucopenia in the apyrexial stage. GARIN (1930) found a massive increase of neutrophils prior to the paroxysm which diminished progressively during the attack, and in 72 cases there was a left deviation of the Arneth count.

In the present instance 117 of the 300 cases showed no eosinophils. A high proportion of abnormal cells occurred, including notably myelocytes, macropolycytes, stem cells, Türk cells, and plasma cells.

When the sample population is drawn from a universe of malarial patients at all stages of the disease, the common factor being the presence of the parasite in the peripheral blood, a typical blood picture cannot be defined. It is possible, however, to say that for Iraq at least, monocytosis cannot be taken as a diagnostic character of malaria.

Tuberculosis.

Considerable variation in the blood picture may be found in the different kinds of tuberculosis. A low total count with a relative lymphocytosis is generally considered typical, and a leucocytosis combined with a marked "shift to the left" is taken as indicative of secondary infection. In the acute miliary form there may be extreme leucopenia with the majority of the cells neutrophils; in less acute degrees there may be a neutrophil leucocytosis. The chronic pulmonary type in healing shows progressive changes from neutrophilic to monocytic to lymphocytic predominance. Several authors state that monocytes are increased. MEDLAR (1929) says there is no specific haemacytic reaction in the tuberculous, and that four variables are to be considered. First, the neutrophil plays the chief role in tuberculous abscess formation and in the extension of tuberculous ulcers; second, lymphocytes predominate when the lesions are healing; third, the monocyte is the chief cell of new tubercle formation; and finally, the total leucocyte counts by themselves indicate roughly the amount of diseased tissues with which the leucocytes have to cope. This conception of the reaction to tuberculosis explains the wide variation of blood picture which may be found.

In the present cases the eosinophils do not differ significantly from the controls but the other cell types do. The polymorphs are increased; lymphocytes and monocytes are diminished. This is probably due to the incidence of secondary infection as the majority of the cases were well advanced, and only a few early ones were included. The mean polynuclear index was 1.34. COOKE and PONDER's mean index for ninety tuberculous patients in Britain was 1.82. Their standard deviation is not given, but on calculating it from their distribution it is found that the difference is significant. COOKE and PONDER's tuberculous group was a miscellaneous one comparable to the Iraq cases. There is then, a greater "shift to the left" in tuberculosis in Iraq than in Britain, and so the deviation in the latter was also greater than was found by KENNEDY and FLINT (1930) in surgical tuberculosis in Switzerland, *a fortiori*, the Iraq results are still more "left-handed" than the Swiss.

Leprosy.

STITT (1929) says that other than a secondary anaemia, the blood picture is not characteristic, and BYAM and ARCHIBALD (1922) state it is of no particular significance. An as extensive as possible search through the large periodical literature on leprosy yielded only one paper on the white cells. ARIZUMI (1933)

states that the neutrophils are increased, the lymphocytes decreased, and the eosinophils few but may be increased. The cases in Iraq showed the neutrophils diminished, the polynuclear index slightly but significantly left-handed. Eosinophils and lymphocytes were increased, the latter giving the highest mean of all groups, the monocytes were not significantly altered. One cannot exclude the possibility that the eosinophilia may be in part due to coincident helminthic infection. Though the stools of all the cases were examined for ova, and positive ones omitted from the group, I did not conduct this examination personally. Although only about half the cases showed any basophils, the average per case was 0.775 as against 0.067. Admittedly the numbers are very small and the statistical significance difficult to estimate, but one gains the impression that these cells are distinctly more common in lepers. The chief character of the leprous blood picture in Iraq is a lymphocytosis. Considering that the disease is of the granulomatous type, and that the deviation of the polynuclear index is small, one may conclude the lymphocytosis is at the expense of the neutrophils. A few total white counts did not show a significant leucocytosis, which confirms this view.

Phlebotomus Fever.

This is common in Baghdad and most European residents suffer an attack in their first year of residence. The leucocyte state is usually given as a leucopenia with absolute neutropenia.

In this series all the means differed significantly from the controls excepting the lymphocytes ; there was a neutropenia and monocytosis, while the eosinophils were reduced to less than half the normal figure. Had all the blood specimens been taken at the end of the first day the effect would probably have been greater. A number taken on the second and third days showed a tendency for the leucopenia and monocytosis to be less marked. A striking character of the white cells was the large proportion which showed degenerative changes. Smear and basket cells were common ; the granulation of many neutrophils was deficient and even absent, and numbers of monocytes were vacuolated or had pale, diffuse cytoplasm and lightly staining nuclei, and the chromatin network had a washed-out appearance. Equally striking was the exceedingly low polynuclear index. The deviation was the most left-handed of all the groups.

Although the fever is short and never fatal, the disease is characterized by an aftermath of depression both mental and physical which may last for months. This is more understandable when it is seen what a profound alteration in the blood picture results from an attack.

Bilharziasis.

Besides the general appearance of a secondary anaemia, the characteristic blood reaction of this disease is eosinophilia. In this series, the mean was 25.9 compared

with 3.6 in the control, and the range was 9.5 to 56.5 per cent. This wide range in the relatively small number of cases flattened the frequency histogram but with regrouping the data or multiplying the number of subjects an approximation to the normal curve would probably be obtained. The neutrophils were diminished and the index deviated significantly to the left but less so than any of the other groups. The smallness of the deviation is interesting in view of the severity of the condition in the majority of the cases. The lymphocytes were reduced slightly and the monocytes considerably. The absence of any marked leucocytosis leads one to the opinion that the eosinophilia is at the expense of the other cells. Over half the blood counts included basophils, and the percentage of basophils per case though absolutely low (0.46) was much higher than the control group value (0.067). Though no exact figures are available, one has the impression from these and other observations, that basophils tend to be more numerous in cases with eosinophilia.

CONCLUSIONS.

The aim of this communication will have been attained in the main if it succeeds in demonstrating the need for accurate measurement of haemic variability in a population before standards of normality can be established. Extreme ranges and arithmetic means do not present an adequate picture of variability, and it is only by the application of statistical methods that a proper representation may be got. Data derived in this way are particularly necessary if different populations are to be compared whether they are of varying kind in the same locality, or of the same kind in different localities.

1. The differential leucocyte count and polynuclear index of 400 carefully controlled healthy persons in Iraq (the majority being British airmen) are described and statistical tests have been applied to the data. The statistics show the variation of the population is consistent with the normal curve of frequency distribution, as would be expected on general physiological grounds.

2. On comparing the results with an estimate derived from standard text-books of the differential blood picture in temperate climates, it is found that in Iraq the percentage of neutrophils is decreased, the percentage of eosinophils, lymphocytes and monocytes is increased. The polynuclear index is significantly lowered or deviated to the left.

3. The range of normal variation is much wider than is given in any of the available text-books.

4. The incidence of so-called abnormal cells, or cells not usually present in normal blood, is found to be greater than reported in standard works. This is taken to be evidence of irritability or greater activity of the haemopoietic system, and the contention is supported by the deviation of the polynuclear index.

5. It is suggested that the cause of the alterations in the blood are climatic but the detailed discussion of the evidence for this is left to a future paper.

No other generally acting factor could be found, to which the blood changes could be ascribed, though the possibility of such a factor existing is recognized.

6. Similar studies giving statistics and comparative standards are presented on the blood in malaria, tuberculosis, leprosy, phlebotomus fever, and bilharziasis. As would be expected in all these diseases the blood picture differs significantly from the control group. The polynuclear index shows a shift to the left as compared with the normals, and it is concluded that the value of this test is not invalidated by the deviation of the control group from British standards for under pathological stimuli it becomes *a fortiori* greater.

7. It is concluded that in Iraq at least, monocytosis is not a diagnostic characteristic of malaria.

8. Considerable variation is found in the differential count of the tubercular cases, and the impression is gained that the ranges are greater than those in similar cases in Britain. The polynuclear count is also significantly deviated to the left as compared with a British group of tubercular patients.

9. Relative lymphocytosis is a characteristic of the blood of lepers in Iraq. It is remarked that basophils are commoner in lepers than in the other groups.

10. The leucocytic alterations in phlebotomus fever are profound and attention is drawn particularly to the very low polynuclear index, and to the prolonged after-effects of the disease.

11. The wide range of eosinophils in bilharziasis is noted. The polynuclear count is just significantly deviated.

REFERENCES.

- ABELS, J. C. (1934). The normal polynuclear count in man. *Proc. Soc. exp. Biol., N.Y.*, 31, 560.
- ARIZUMI, S. (1933). On the blood picture of lepers. *J. med. Ass. Formosa.*, 32, 344.
- ARKIN, H. & COLTON, R. R. (1935). *Statistical Methods as Applied to Economics, Business, Education, Social & Physical Sciences, etc.* New York: Barnes & Noble.
- ARNETH, J. (1904). Die neutrophilen Leucozyten bei Infektionskrankheiten. *Dtsch. med. Wschr.*, 30, 54.
- BREINL, A. (1921). On the Arneth count in hookworm infected white children in Northern Queensland. *Ann. trop. Med. Parasit.*, 15, 49.
- BREINL, A. & PRIESTLY, H. (1934). *Ibid.*, 8, 591.
- BURKE-GAFFNEY, H. J. O'D. (1931). The polynuclear count of Cooke in tropical practice. *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 24, 549.
- BYAM, W. & ARCHIBALD, R. G. (1922). *The Practice of Medicine in the Tropics*. London: Henry Frowde and Hodder & Stoughton.
- CHAMBERLAIN, W. P. & VEDDER, E. B. (1911). *Philipp. J. Sci.*, 6, 405.
- CHIRAY, M. & CHENE, P. (1934). *Précis de sémiologie médicale appliquée*. Paris: Masson & Cie.

- COOKE, W. E. (1928). *Elementary Haematology*. London : Griffin & Co.
- COOKE, W. E. & PONDER, E. H. (1927). *The Polynuclear Count*. London : Griffin & Co.
- DIEULAFOY, G. (1912). *Manuel de Pathologie Interne*. Paris : Masson & Cie.
- DUKE, H. LYNDHURST. (1920). *Rep. bact. Dep. Uganda*. Entebbe : Government Printer.
- ELDERTON, W. P. (1927). *Frequency Curves and Correlation*. 2nd Ed. London : C. & E. Layton.
- FISHER, R. A. (1932). *Statistical Methods for Research Workers*. Edinburgh : Oliver & Boyd.
- GÄNSSLEN, M. (1937). *Dtsch. med. Wschr.*, 63, 505.
- GARIN, C. L. (1930). Recherches sur le sang des paludiens. *Rev. prat. Mal. Pays chauds*, 10, 55.
- GRADWOHL, R. B. H. (1935). *Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis*. London : Henry Kimpton.
- KENNEDY, W. P. (1935). The polynuclear count in an Iraq population. *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 28, 475.
- KENNEDY, W. P. & FLINT, K. N. (1930). Studies on the Arneth count :—XIV. The count in surgical tuberculosis in the High Alps. *Quart. J. exp. Physiol.*, 20, 101.
- KENNEDY, W. P. & MACKAY, I. (1935). Further studies on the Arneth count in Iraq. *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 29, 291.
- & —. (1936). The normal leucocyte picture in a hot climate. *J. Physiol.*, 87, 336.
- & —. (1937). The macropolocyte in health and disease in Iraq. *J. Path. Bact.*, 44, 701.
- KILDUFFE, R. A. (1931). *The Clinical Interpretation of Blood Examinations*. Philadelphia : Lea.
- MACFIE, J. W. S. (1916). *Rep. Accra Lab.* Accra : Government Printer.
- MACLEOD, J. (1935). Local variations in the normal polynuclear count in man. *Amer. J. Physiol.*, 111, 655.
- MANSON-BAHR, P. (1935). *Manson's Tropical Diseases*. London : Cassell & Co.
- MARTINET, A. *et al.* (1934). *Diagnostic Clinique*. 6th Ed. Paris : Masson & Cie.
- MAXIMOW, A. A. & BLOOM, W. (1935). *Text book of Histology*. Philadelphia. W. B. Saunders Co.
- MEDLAR, E. M. (1929). An evaluation of the leucocytic reaction in the blood as found in cases of tuberculosis. *Amer. Rev. Tuberculosis*, 20, 312.
- NICHOLSON, D. (1934). *Laboratory Medicine—Guide for Students & Practitioners*. Philadelphia : Lea.
- OSGOOD, E. E. & HASKINS, H. D. (1931). *A Textbook of Laboratory Diagnosis with Clinical Applications*. London : J. & A. Churchill.
- PAI, H. C. (1935). Comparison of polynuclear count in healthy and diseased subjects in Moukden (China) and in Great Britain. *J. Path. Bact.*, 40, 381.
- (1936). The polynuclear count in health and disease and its significance in China. *Chin. med. J.*, Suppl. 1, 13.
- PEARL, R. (1930). *Introduction to Medical Biometry and Statistics*. Philadelphia : W. B. Saunders Co.
- PETERSEN, W. F. (1936). *The Patient and the Weather*. Vol. 1, pt. 2. *Autonomic Integration*. Ann Arbor : Edwards Bros.
- PINEY, A. (1930). *Recent Advances in Haematology*. London : J. & A. Churchill.
- POINDEXTER, H. A. (1935). The differential blood picture in a group of rural inhabitants of Alabama. *Amer. J. med. Sci.*, 190, 416.
- SHANKLIN, W. M. (1936). Polynuclear count of the Alouites. *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 30, 173.
- SHAW, A. F. BERNARD. (1936). Polynuclear count in Egyptians and British subjects resident in Egypt. *J. Path. Bact.*, 43, 165.
- STAMMERS, A. D. (1935). Polymorphonuclear-lymphocyte ratio at an altitude of 5,750 feet. *J. Physiol.*, 78, 335.
- STITT, E. R. (1929). *Diagnostics and Treatment of Tropical Diseases*. 5th Ed. London : H. K. Lewis & Co.

- SUNDSTROEM, E. S. (1926). Contributions to tropical physiology. *Univ. Calif. Publ. Physiol.*, 6.
- TIDY, H. L. (1934). *A Synopsis of Medicine*. 6th Ed. Bristol : Wright.
- WHITBY, L. E. H. & BRITTON, C. J. C. (1935). *Disorders of the Blood: Diagnosis, Pathology, Treatment and Technique*. London : J. & A. Churchill.
- WOOD, F. C. (1918). *Chemical and Microscopical Diagnosis*. New York : D. Appleton.
- YULE, G. UDNY. (1932). *An Introduction to the Theory of Statistics*. 10th Ed. London : Griffin & Co.

THE TREATMENT OF SLEEPING SICKNESS WITH NEOCRYL.*

BY

IAN S. ACRES, M.B., B.S.,

B.M.S., Bolobo, Congo Belge.

At the request of the Therapeutic Trials Committee of the Medical Research Council, the "Crylarsan" brand of neocryl was tested clinically in a number of cases of sleeping sickness in the region of Bolobo.

Neocryl (sodium succinanimethylamide-*p*-arsonate) was originally prepared for the Chemotherapy Committee of the Council by Sir GILBERT MORGAN and his colleagues at the Chemical Laboratory, Teddington (Department of Scientific and Industrial Research). It was first tested by WARRINGTON YORKE, MURGATROYD *et al.* (1936),† who reported favourably on its actions in experimental trypanosome infections in animals, in human syphilis and in cases of Nigerian sleeping sickness. The "Crylarsan" brand of the compound has been supplied to us in generous quantity by Messrs. May and Baker, Ltd., for the purposes of the trials described below.

Selection of Cases.

As far as possible consecutive cases were taken, the only condition being that there should be a fair possibility of following up the case for a number of years, so that later it might be possible to give a report on the ultimate results of treatment with neocryl.

Classification and Control of Cases.

The series includes both first and second stage cases, while, in addition, there are three cases previously treated and found to be unresponsive to trypanarsyl (the Belgian equivalent of tryparsamide). Diagnosis was made in most cases by gland puncture, but in some cases the diagnosis was made on the symptoms and a suggestive cerebrospinal fluid, i.e., a high cell count of lymphocytes, and in some cases vacuolated cells. Unfortunately, it was not possible to centrifuge the blood of these latter cases.

Lumbar puncture was performed at the time of diagnosis and again at the end of the course of injections. In a few cases the albumin content was estimated but in general the progress of the case was estimated by the change of the cell content of the cerebrospinal fluid. If at the end of treatment the cell-count

*A report to the Therapeutic Trials Committee of the Medical Research Council on twenty-four cases treated at the Baptist Mission Hospital, Bolobo, Belgian Congo.

†YORKE, W., MURGATROYD, F. *et al.* (1936). A new arsenical for the treatment of syphilis and trypanosomiasis. *Brit. med. J.* 1, 1042.

TREATMENT OF SLEEPING SICKNESS WITH NEOCRYL.
SUMMARY OF RESULTS.

Group.	Case No.	Reg. No.	Sex Age.	Weight kg.	Examination at Diagnosis.		Treatment with Neocryl.				Examination at End of Treatment.		Observations on Result of Treatment.
					Gland Puncture.	C.S.F. Cells.	Dose in Grammes.	Grammes per kg. Body Weight.	Total Neocryl in Grammes.	Gland Puncture.	C.F.S. Cells.		
A	1	278/36	♀ 22	49	+	5	2.0 weekly	0.04		24	—	3	Condition good : no symptoms
	2	280/36	♀ 17	56	+	2	2.5 "	0.044		30	—	2	do.
	3	275/36	♂ 14	41	+	Blood	2.0 "	0.049		24	—	6	do.
	4	276/36	♂ 7	27	+	7	1.5 "	0.055		18	—	2	do.
	5	2/37	♂ 25	59	+	2	3.0 "	0.05		36	—	5	do.
	6	254/36	♂ 25	53	+	15	2.5 "	0.048		30	—	2	do.
B	1	282/36	♂ 16	59	+	18	1.5 then 2 twice weekly	0.03		27.50	—	5	do.
	2	286/36	♀ 28	61	+	23	2.0 twice weekly	0.03		32	—	5	do.
	3	299/36	♂ 22	61	+	10	2.0 twice weekly	0.03		30	—	Blood	do.
C	1	262/36	♂ 22	63	—	420	3.5 weekly	0.055		42	—	30	Feels better : reported 6 weeks after treatment not feeling well, C.S.F. = 12
	2	251/36	♀ 10	225	—	330	1.5 "	0.07		18	—	130	6 weeks after treatment, onset of fits : sleeping : C.S.F., approx. 750 cells and trypanosomes present—relapse

Second stage.	3	264/36	♂ 20	55	—	950	3.0	0.055	36	—	16	No longer complains of symptoms Feels well but control lumbar puncture 6 weeks after treatment = 120 cells
	4	259/36	♀ 45	56	—	253	3.0	0.05	36	—	30	Feels well: no symptoms Feels well: treated with 2 × 1.0 grammes Bayer 205 to sterilize blood
	5	287/36	♀ 12	275	+	34	2.0	0.07	24	—	4	Feels well: no symptoms
	6	285/36	♀ 32	50	+	258	2.0 twice weekly then 3.0 weekly	0.06	33	+	32	Feels well: treated with 2 × 1.0 grammes Bayer 205 to sterilize blood
	7	300/36	♂ 32	61.5	—	247	3.5 weekly	0.055	42	—	18	Feels well: no sleeping
	8	304/36	♂ 30	63	+	55 & Tryps. 316	9 × 3.5 "	0.055	40.5	—	12	Feels and seems well
	9	306/36	♀ 30	41	—	316	3 × 3.0 "	0.06	30	—	38	Feels better: still some headache
	10	305/36	♂ 14	34	+	200	2.0 "	0.06	24	—	58	Feels and seems much improved
	1	283/36	♂ 30	70	+	43	3.0 twice weekly	0.04 twice weekly	39	—	44	Feels well
	2	8/37	♀ 30	47	+	150	2 × 3 weekly then 2 twice weekly	0.04 twice weekly	30	—	24	No sleeping: general condition improved
Relapsed cases.	1	281/36	♂ 25	62	—	72	4.0 weekly	0.06	20	Refused		After 20 grammes ocular trouble: general health and vision deteriorating Bad general condition after treatment: control lumbar puncture 1 month, after treatment = 220 cells Course discontinued after 7.5 grammes. General condition deteriorating
	2	279/36	♂ 30	53	—	80	3.5 "	0.07	35	—	205	
	3	245/36	♂ 12	35	—	42	1.5 twice weekly	0.04 twice weekly	75	Too ill		

in the cerebrospinal fluid was nearly normal, i.e., between 5 and 10 cells per c. mm., then rest from treatment was given for 6 months; if, however, the count was definitely abnormal, a rest of 1 to 3 months only was given.

Treatment and Dosage.

The dosage of the drug was calculated on the body weight of the patient, corresponding closely with the method described by CHESTERMAN (1931) for tryparsamide.

Dosage in grammes per kg. body weight.				
1st Stage :	Child	...	...	0·07
	Young person	...	...	0·055
	Adult	...	...	0·045
2nd Stage :	Child	...	...	0·09
	Young person	...	...	0·07
	Adult	...	...	0·06

The maximum dose used was 4·0 grammes and the maximum total dosage used was 42 grammes. Normally a series of 12 weekly injections were given, but in five cases (three first stage and two second stage) injections were given twice weekly and then it was calculated that the total weekly dosage should exceed the calculated dosage by 1 gramme, e.g., if the calculated dose by body weight was 3 grammes, then 2 gramme doses were given twice weekly, i.e., a total of 4 grammes in the week. In one case 3 gramme doses were given twice weekly.

A 40 per cent. solution of neocryl was used intravenously.

It may be noted that normally the form of sleeping sickness with which we deal reacts very well to arsenic in the form of tryponarsyl.

Clinical Records of Cases under Observation.

For the purposes of description, the cases are divided into five groups, and a summary of the results of treatment is given in tabular form on pages 334 and 335.

Group A.—First stage, with weekly injections. Cases with a cell count in the cerebrospinal fluid of up to fifteen cells were considered as in the first stage.

Group B.—First stage, with injections twice weekly. In this series one early second stage case (B2 in the series) was treated as a first stage case.

Group C.—Second stage, with weekly injections.

Group D.—Second stage, with injections twice weekly.

Group E.—Cases previously unresponsive to arsenical treatment.

Reactions and Toxic Effects.

In some of the cases, Cases A3, A4, C2, the temperature was taken 3 hours after the first injection; in no case was it raised by more than 1° C. upon the resting temperature.

In none of the cases recorded in Groups A, B, C, D, was any toxic symptom recorded, except in Case C6, in which there was an indefinite history of dimness of vision. In one case, Case D2, a dose of 3 grammes of neocryl was given twice weekly without untoward effect.

In Group E, cases previously treated with arsenical compounds, there was one definite case (Case E1) of severe ocular symptoms.

DISCUSSION OF CLINICAL RESULTS.

It will not be possible to give any definite estimate of the value of neocryl until the results of a single course of treatment have been followed up for a period of years. From the immediate results obtained in this series, it is possible to form a rough comparison of neocryl and tryponarsyl, since dosage was similar to that used in routine treatment with the latter drug.

In first stage cases the immediate results are satisfactory clinically and from the laboratory point of view: they compare favourably with those with tryponarsyl.

In second stage cases the immediate results are not so satisfactory, and do not compare so favourably with those treated with tryponarsyl. It is usual, with the dosage of tryponarsyl that we employ, that the cell count in the cerebro-spinal fluid is reduced very considerably (usually below twenty cells per c. mm.) at the end of a single course of 12 weekly injections. It will be noted that this occurs in a number of the recorded cases with neocryl, but the reduction is not so marked, nor does it occur regularly. After treatment, with tryponarsyl rapid relapse is, in our experience, not common, and a single course if it does not give a complete cure, will usually give a year's freedom from relapse. In two of the cases recorded, Cases C2 and C4, there are signs of relapse occurring 2 months after treatment with neocryl.

In one case (Case C6) trypanosomes were persistent in the gland juice after 33 grammes of neocryl had been given. This persistence has, however, been noted rarely with tryponarsyl, say, once in every 300 cases.

Although perhaps the number of cases treated with injections twice weekly is not sufficiently large to give a fair comparison, yet no advantage was noted with the more frequent treatment, rather the contrary (*vide infra*).

Throughout the series one has had the impression that neocryl is a less toxic drug than tryponarsyl, and in view of the large dose given with impunity in Case D1 (3 grammes twice weekly) it is possible that larger doses than those used in tryponarsyl treatment might be given with safety, and perhaps with advantage.

SUMMARY.

1. A series of twenty-one cases of sleeping sickness were treated with neocryl with dosage similar to that of tryponarsyl, the Belgian equivalent of tryparsamide: three cases previously unresponsive to arsenical compounds were similarly treated.

2. In first stage cases there was definite clinical improvement, and the immediate results as determined by gland and lumbar puncture were satisfactory.

3. In second stage cases despite marked clinical improvement, the immediate results were not so satisfactory. The result of the treatment in these cases seems uncertain, in view of the rapid relapse of Cases C2 and C4, and the trypanosomes persistent in the blood of Case C6. In reference to this last case it is worthy of note that in the blood of some cases treated with tryponarsyl in our district trypanosomes can be found even after a full course of the drug.

4. In cases previously treated by arsenical compounds the results were not encouraging.

5. No advantage was found in giving injections twice weekly, although the number of cases treated thus does not perhaps permit a fair comparison.

6. No definite toxic reaction was noted, except in cases previously treated with tryponarsyl. A dose of 3 grammes twice weekly was given without untoward effect in a normally developed man.

7. It is impossible to compare the result of treatment with neocryl with that of tryponarsyl (tryparsamide) until the cases reported have been followed up for at least 2 years, but the evidence submitted in the addendum suggests that it is definitely inferior to tryponarsyl.

In conclusion I wish to thank M. LE MÉDECIN EN CHEF, of the Medical Service, Belgian Congo, for permission to test neocryl on the patients under my charge at Bolobo.

ADDENDUM.

Since the above paper was sent for publication, it became evident that there were many relapses. Accordingly I re-examined all the test cases before 6 months had elapsed after their courses of treatment. The following gives a brief idea of the results :—

Of nine first-stage cases, two have had to be taken under treatment again because of raised cell count in the cerebrospinal fluid.

Of twelve second-stage cases, either seven or eight have relapsed and have been taken under treatment again.

It is interesting to note that the two first-stage cases which relapsed were those that were treated by two injections weekly. This is a remarkably high relapse rate, and the symptoms have in most cases returned. It is usual for a patient to say that he had relief from the symptoms for perhaps a month, but then they returned. On the whole neocryl is apparently a somewhat dangerous drug to use in sleeping sickness, as it gives rather rapid clinical improvement which, however, is only temporary in second-stage cases; the danger is in the treatment of patients who cannot be adequately followed up, and who, as in the case of some of those reported by LESTER in the paper by YORKE, MURGATROYD, *et al.*, disappear before the end of treatment.

ENDEMIC ENLARGEMENT OF THE PAROTID GLAND IN EGYPT.

BY

M. R. KENAWY, M.D.*

Medical Tutor, Kasr-el-Aini Hospital, University of Cairo.

INTRODUCTION.

It is now 49 years since MIKULICZ (1888) demonstrated the first case of the disease now called after his name and since known to be a hyperplasia of the lymphadenoid tissue of the salivary and lachrymal glands. Recently certain other affections of the salivary glands, especially the parotids, have been described : a recurrent pyogenic parotitis by PYRAH and ALLISON (1931), PYRAH (1933) and PAYNE (1933), as well as a non-infective type of recurrent enlargement described by PEARSON (1935 and 1936). This last is associated with allergic conditions but may be complicated by secondary infection.

Endemic parotid enlargement in Egypt differs from the above-mentioned forms in its clinical and pathological features. It is a chronic painless hyperplasia common among agricultural workers, who are generally unaware of its presence.

Various medical men in Egypt have referred to this condition. SANDWITH (1905) attributed it to chronic parotitis or to some obstruction of Stenson's duct.

*I must record my grateful thanks to Prof. H. B. DAY for his constant help and criticism ; to Prof. A. F. BERNARD SHAW for his encouragement and for the pathological studies, and to Prof. M. OMAR BEY for the help of his Department of Clinical Pathology in many of the investigations.

DAY (1933) described it as occasionally associated with endemic (bilharzial) cirrhosis, while BIGGAM and GHALIOUNGUI (1934) noticed it among *Ankylostoma* cases.

KIEVIET DE JONGE (1928) described "a curious broadness of the face recalling parotitis" in beriberi. He stated that the parotid glands are enlarged and the enlargement is not due to oedema. MILLER (1925), working on pellagra, noticed the condition and offered an explanation which is discussed later.

In Madagascar a parotid enlargement known there as "mangy" was described by FONTOYNOT (1911). Some cases are familial or hereditary and apparently resemble the Egyptian form. It is said to occur in localities resembling "goitre belts" and FONTOYNOT ascribes it to "a low grade regional infection."

CLINICAL FEATURES.

The following account is based on a study of a hundred cases admitted to hospital for various diseases.

Age.—Varies widely; the youngest was a boy of 10 years, the oldest a man of 65. Most patients were between 20 and 40 years of age.

Sex.—Males strikingly predominated. Only seven cases were in females.

Family.—Three patients only could tell of a family incidence.

Residence.—Most of the patients came from Lower Egypt, a considerable proportion from the neighbouring province of Giza.

Occupation.—All were agriculturists or field workers.

Habits.—None of chewing were present. Only a few patients who harboured ankylostomes were mud-eaters.

Diet.—This consisted mainly of maize bread, salted cheese and onions; possibly its salt content might initiate much salivation.

Onset.—No patient gave a history of acute parotitis; the onset of the parotid swelling was gradual in the minority who were aware of the condition; and in one case was watched in the early stage.

Symptoms.—The condition gave rise to no complaints from the patients, who were admitted for some associated disease. Only five had noticed sialorrhoea; two of these harboured ascarids which might be responsible.

Local Signs.—The swelling of the cheek corresponded with the anatomical boundaries of the parotid. In eighty-two cases both parotids were enlarged, generally equally, though in ten patients the glands were of unequal size. The enlargement varied in degree; when the swellings were marked it gave a triangular appearance to the face, hiding the lobules of the ears (Fig. 1, *a* & *b*). The consistency was usually soft but tended to be firm when the gland was much enlarged. In one diabetic patient the glands were nodular. In eighteen of the hundred patients the enlargement was unilateral; no less than sixteen of these cases were pellagrins.



FIG. 1a.



FIG. 1b.



FIG. 2a.



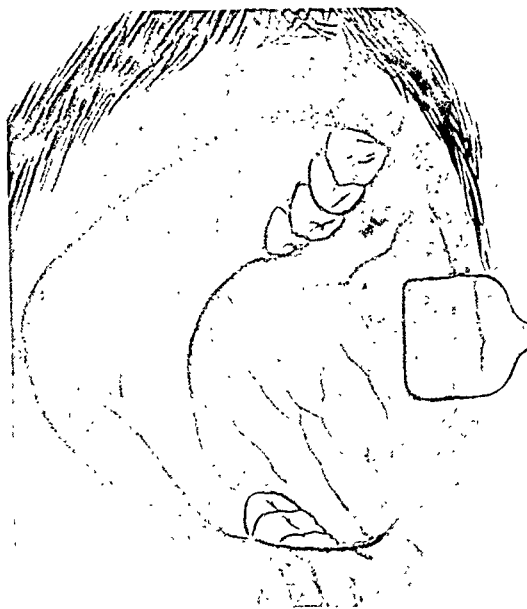
FIG. 2b.

FIG. 1a.—Bilateral parotid enlargement, giving a triangular appearance of the face and hiding the lobules of the ears.

FIG. 1b.—Profile view of same. The left submaxillary gland is also enlarged.

FIG. 2a.—Bilateral parotid enlargement before X-ray treatment.

FIG. 2b.—Same, showing marked regression of enlargement after application of X-ray therapy.



From drawing by W. Strek.

FIG. 3.

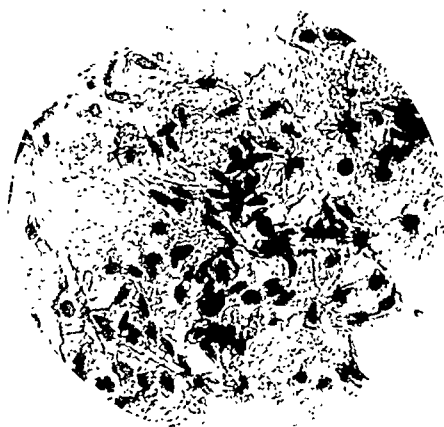


FIG. 4.

FIG. 3.—Mucous membrane, left cheek, showing fissuring.
The opening of Stenson's duct looks normal.

FIG. 4.—Flask shaped and squamous epithelial cells in catheterized saliva, from a case of parotid hyperplasia and pellagra.

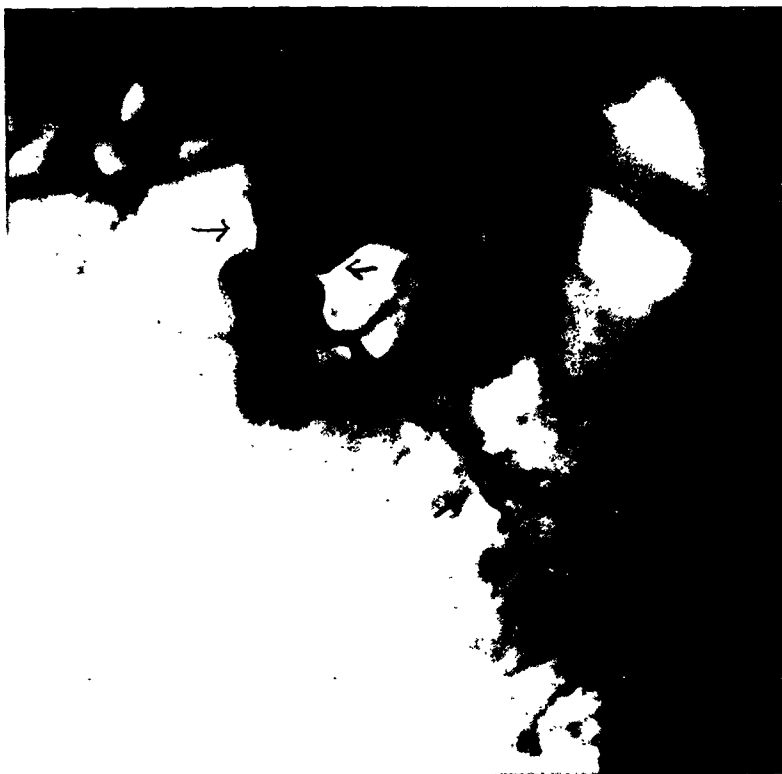


FIG. 5



FIG. 6.

FIG. 5.—Sialogram showing marked dilatation of the main branches. Some tortuosity is seen.

FIG. 6.—Sialogram showing a "leafless tree" appearance and dilatation of the small ductules.



FIG. 7a.



FIG. 7b.



FIG. 8a.



FIG. 8b.

FIG. 7a.—(Low power.) Photomicrograph from a normal parotid.

FIG. 7b.—(Low power.) Photomicrograph from a case of parotid hyperplasia of same age as FIG. 7a, showing hyperplasia of the ductules and compactness of the acini.

FIG. 8a.—(High power.) Photomicrograph of normal parotid.

FIG. 8b.—(High power.) A mild degree of hyperplasia from another case of enlarged parotid.

Inspection of the mouth showed no constant change in the appearance of the mucosa nor in the opening of Stenson's duct. In some cases, generally pellagrous, there was fissuring or pigmentation inside the cheek; sometimes both (Fig. 3). Ten patients had pyorrhoea, but in general there was no relation between any mouth infection and parotid enlargement.

Other glands.—The submaxillary glands were enlarged on both sides in eight cases only. The lachrymal glands were enlarged in one case.

ASSOCIATED DISEASES.

There was no relation between the parotid condition and the general state of nutrition. The following table shows the associated diseases in one hundred cases :—

ASSOCIATED DISEASES IN 100 CASES.

	Number.		Number.
Pellagra	65	Pure <i>Ankylostoma</i> anaemia ...	4
Diabetes (manifest or latent) ...	10	Heart failure	4
Cirrhosis of liver	6	Various (1 case of each)...	11

This table shows that the commonest disease associated with endemic parotid enlargement is pellagra (65 per cent.); the next being diabetes (10 per cent.). Owing to the occurrence of parotid enlargement in diabetics in other countries, this group must be considered separately, for which purpose the various associated diseases in the above hundred cases may be grouped as follows :—(a) a pellagrous group, sixty-five cases; (b) a simple (non-pellagrous) group, twenty-five cases; (c) a diabetic group, ten cases.

The parotid enlargement was bilateral in all the diabetic cases, while sixteen of the eighteen cases of unilateral involvement occurred in pellagrins. In the latter group the manifestations of pellagra varied in severity; two patients also had cardiac beriberi.

Groups (a) and (b).

To determine the influence of other possible factors, an analysis of the cases in these groups gave the following incidence of various infestations :—

	(a) Pellagrous group. 65 cases.	(b) Simple non-pellagrous group. 25 cases.
Cirrhosis and splenomegaly	25	6
Intestinal parasites	42	8
<i>Ankylostoma</i>	24	5
<i>Schistosoma mansoni</i>	18	5
<i>Ascaris</i> ...	13	0
<i>Hymenolepis nana</i>	0	1

From the figures it is evident that pellagra is the commonest disease associated with the condition, and that cirrhosis and ankylostomiasis are present in less than half the total number.

Anaemia.—There was no definite relationship between parotid enlargement and the degree of anaemia. Haemoglobin values varied from 12 to 90 per cent., and the red cell count from 1,250,000 to 5,050,000. The white count varied from 3,000 to 9,000.

Gastric Function.—The gastric function was investigated in forty-five cases; high acidity was found in five; absence of free acid in eight; hypochlorhydria in five; low normal curves in seven and normal curves in twenty cases. This variation seems to exclude any relationship between parotid enlargement and derangement of gastric functions.

The Diabetic Group.

Five cases had manifest diabetes; one of these was insulin-resistant. Five other cases are included in this group; they had diminished sugar tolerance but no glycosuria nor obesity.

FLAUM (1932) described a condition of diminished sugar tolerance without glycosuria, associated with parotid enlargement; his cases occurred in middle-aged, hypertensive and obese persons. To separate endemic parotid enlargement from FLAUM's type in latent diabetes, it was found essential to test the sugar tolerance in a series of cases. Owing to some well-known abnormalities met with in the oral glucose tolerance test when used in cases of pellagra, dysentery and ankylostomiasis, the intravenous glucose tolerance test was employed to check the results. It was found that endemic parotid enlargement is not associated with any disturbance in the sugar regulating mechanism, with the exception of the ten cases described as the diabetic group. Further, the constitutional type of the patients differed from those in FLAUM's series.

Relation to Pancreatic Function.

In selected cases the efficiency of pancreatic digestion was tested by the method of "nuclear digestion" using Schmidt's diet or thymus gland. Of ten cases, only two showed diminished pancreatic efficiency; eight showed good digestion.

Diastatic Index.—DUNLOP (1933) recorded a rise in the diastatic index in sixty cases of mumps. The diastatic index was estimated in a series of twenty-eight cases of endemic parotid enlargement. Only eleven cases gave readings above 30; two of them gave 32, the others between 40 and 112 units. Three of the high readings were in cases complicated by bilharzial cirrhosis, and can be excluded because of the possibility of bilharzial disease of the pancreas (DAY, 1933). Therefore only six cases of pure parotid enlargement showed a definite rise in the diastatic index out of the twenty-eight

examined. Whether this rise indicates a pancreatic affection or not is uncertain ; no involvement was found in cases examined at autopsy, and the complication, should it occur, appears to be quite unusual. Renal disease was excluded in cases showing a normal index.

INCIDENCE.

The incidence of parotid enlargement was investigated at two provincial hospitals devoted to the treatment of endemic diseases.

	Total.	Male.	Female.
Shanshour Hospital—			
Number of patients seen	4,076	2,157	1,919
.. of parotid cases	80 (2%)	69 (3·5%)	11 (0·5%)
Kalleen Hospital—			
Number of patients seen	1,585	1,041	544
.. of parotid cases	24 (1·5%)	23 (2·2%)	1 (0·2%)

It should be mentioned that at Kalleen ankylostomiasis is rare, but parotid enlargement common.

Incidence among Pellagrins.—This was determined approximately from the admissions to Kasr-el-Aini Hospital from November, 1935, to October, 1936. Of 201 cases of pellagra admitted, sixty-five had parotid enlargement, giving an incidence of 32·2 per cent.

STUDY OF THE SALIVA.

Cytological and Bacteriological.—Microscopic examination of the catheterised saliva from Stenson's duct occasionally showed peculiar flask-shaped cells, a few pus cells and squamous flat cells in cases of parotid enlargement, especially when pellagra was present. Some cases of severe pellagra without parotid enlargement gave similar findings. The saliva was always clear and alkaline in reaction. No organisms were seen and cultures were uniformly sterile. The microscopical picture is shown in Fig. 4.

In the recurrent pyogenic parotid affection described by PAYNE these flask-shaped cells were also seen, and sometimes " duct casts " ; but organisms were also demonstrated.

Physiological.—The following investigations were made :—

A—Estimation of the ptyalin content of the saliva in cases of enlarged parotids of varying degree, with different associated conditions, and also in a series of normal controls. B—Determination of the response of enlarged and of

normal parotids to pilocarpine. C—Estimation of the total solids and of the calcium content in normal and enlarged parotids. D—Estimation of the thiocyanate content of the saliva from normal and enlarged parotids.

A—Ptyalin Content of Parotid Saliva.—COLE's method (COLE, 1926) was used. The range of the ptyalin content in thirty-one normal Egyptians varied between 4,000 and 31,000 units per 100 c.c. saliva. One dark coloured individual gave a higher range (72,000 units), and some diurnal variations were also observed. In twenty-nine patients with parotid enlargement (including diabetics) the range varied from 4,400 to 40,000 units. Two cases of mumps gave figures of 11,200 and 16,000 respectively.

There is therefore no diminution of the ptyalin content of the parotid saliva of patients with parotid enlargement as compared with normal Egyptians.

B—Response to Pilocarpine.—Saliva was collected by catheter after injection of pilocarpine and drainage maintained for half an hour. The average response in normal controls was 24.7 c.c. per 30 minutes, and that of enlarged parotids (diabetics included) 42 c.c. This shows that the secretion of saliva in cases with enlarged parotids is far greater than that of the normal gland. The output was nearly proportionate to the degree of enlargement. It is interesting to find that very few of these patients complained of sialorrhoea.

C—Total Solids and Calcium Content.—The average total solids in saliva from enlarged parotids was 0.57 gramme per cent. and the calcium 6.9 mg. per cent.; from normal controls 0.65 gramme and 7.9 mg. respectively. This shows lower figures for enlarged parotids. The difference, though small, could be accounted for by the invariable absence of potassium thiocyanate in cases of enlarged parotids (*vide infra*), and also possibly by the normal variability of the calcium content of saliva.

D—The Thiocyanate Content.—This was estimated in a series of ten patients only of the endemic group. The normal range in controls varied between 0.00025 and 0.005 per cent., while in cases with enlarged parotids it was totally absent from parotid as well as from mixed saliva. This was proved to be due to deficiency of thiocyanate and not to failure of its excretion by the salivary glands, for when thiocyanate or thiosulphate was administered, thiocyanate was demonstrated in saliva from enlarged parotids in amounts within the normal range.

RADIOLOGICAL STUDY.

Sialography with lipiodol injected into Stenson's duct by a Luer needle and record syringe was performed on a series of patients, and also on normal controls. The following appearances were found and are illustrated:—

(a) Spherical dilatations of the ends of the small ducts. This "bronchiectatic" appearance was seen also by PAYNE in recurrent pyogenic parotitis and by PEARSON in the allergic type.

(b) Fusiform and segmental dilatations affecting the medium and larger

ducts occurred in 8 per cent. of cases ; some tortuosity of the duct was also noticed (Fig. 5).

(c) Another picture presented may be termed the " leafless tree " type. The medium ducts and ductules were so numerous as to suggest fresh formations. In some cases the main duct was varicose (Fig. 6).

(d) In two cases only of parotid enlargement (one in a diabetic, the other in a pellagrin) there was a filling defect.

(e) Fifty per cent. of cases gave appearances which differed little from the normal sialogram, except in demonstrating the large size of the gland. In some the acini were quite conspicuous, suggestive of dilatation.

MORBID ANATOMY.

Material was obtained from three postmortem cases and two biopsies. In the former the weight of the parotid was two to four times that found in normal control specimens. No naked eye evidence of cysts or neoplasm was found.

Histological examination showed a striking increase in the number of ducts and ductules, some of which were ectatic. The secretory part of the gland looked more compact and the acini more crowded. (See microphotographs Figs. 7 (*a, b*), 8 (*a, b*). There was no proliferation of the duct epithelium, in contrast to that found by PAYNE in recurrent parotitis. No signs of inclusion bodies, neoplastic growth nor scarring was seen. The appearance was that of a hyperplasia of an actively functioning gland. The degree of hyperplasia varied in different cases ; in two biopsy specimens, removed from the superficial portion of the parotid, the histology was almost normal. This coincides with the normal type of sialogram obtained in 50 per cent. of the cases.

Examination of the pancreas in the autopsy cases showed neither naked eye nor histological abnormality.

For the sake of analogy, hypertrophied sebaceous glands from pellagrins were compared with normal controls. No differences in histological structure were found.

On the evidence collected it was justifiable to call the endemic parotid enlargement a " parotid hyperplasia."

ETIOLOGICAL CONSIDERATIONS.

These investigations gave some indications of the possible origin as well as the nature of the disease. It appeared that endemic parotid enlargement was not of inflammatory nature and that the hyperplasia could not be attributed to ankylostomiasis or other infestation. Clinical evidence connected the condition with pellagra and with diabetes.

Pellagra.—This disease might act as an etiological factor in various ways :—

(a) By representing or producing some deficiency state to which the

parotid glands respond by undergoing hyperplasia, analogous to enlargement of the thyroid in iodine deficiency.

Parotid enlargement has been described by DE JONGE (1928) in beriberi; which suggests that the vitamin B₁ complex might be the deficient factor, in the absence of which the parotids undergo hyperplasia of a compensatory character. Some doubt was thrown on this hypothesis because parotid enlargement developed in one of the Egyptian cases during treatment with marmite.

(b) Parotid enlargement might be related to the absence of potassium thiocyanate from the saliva. According to A. CLARK (personal communication) this sulphur compound is excreted in excess in the early stages of pellagra and so might induce an overwork hypertrophy. The bactericidal action claimed for thiocyanate might predispose, in its absence at a later stage, to infection by some mild agent. At present the significance of the variations in salivary thiocyanate which are found in pellagra is uncertain.

(c) Experimentally a parotid hyperplasia in guineapigs was obtained by WARTIN and FLORENTINE (1927) on exposure to X-rays. The exact mechanism is unknown. It is doubtful if this observation has any bearing on pellagra.

(d) The local changes in pellagra affecting the buccal mucosa, the papillae and main duct (desquamation), combined with a lowering of the body resistance from malnutrition, might pave the way for some unknown infective agent.

Diabetes.—This could also be regarded as a predisposing factor. Parotid enlargement only occurs in a small percentage of diabetic patients and is unrelated to the severity of the disease. FLAUM regards parotid enlargement as a symptom of diabetes, manifest or latent, in obese middle-aged persons. He considers that the parotids have an internal secretion which has the property of increasing sugar tolerance. In one diabetic, referred to the writer by Prof. ISMAIL PASHA, the parotid enlargement was associated with infected teeth which were all removed; therefore the possibility of infection in diabetes should be considered.

Other Factors.—ULTIMURA (1927), following German writers, believes that the salivary glands are organs of internal secretion. A deficiency state, which may often be associated with pellagra, might be responsible for parotid hyperplasia. This theory is purely hypothetical and there is no clinical connection of parotid enlargement with endocrine disease.

That a salty diet might cause excessive salivation and lead to parotid hyperplasia did not appear a likely explanation. This diet is common to a large section of the population and the patients made no complaint of salivation.

The possibility that an irritant or toxic agent is excreted in the saliva and provokes an enlargement is difficult to accept. Such agents would tend rather to depress the functions of the gland and lead to degeneration, not to hyperplasia.

Alternative Theories.—Limiting consideration to the endemic group, there were two main theories to account for the parotid enlargement (1) compensatory hyperplasia, (2) some form of infection.

THEORY OF INFECTION ; TESTS.

The parotid gland is naturally liable to infection ; according to SEIFERT (1926) the secretion is lacking in bactericidal action owing to the poor content of mucin.

The infection theory would explain the unilateral enlargement found in one-fifth of the cases, and its occurrence in patients not suffering from any obvious deficiency. Malnutrition and the insanitary conditions under which the poorer classes live would predispose to infection.

The absence of signs of inflammation and the negative results of cultures excluded an ordinary bacterial infection, but there remained the possibility of some virus disease. According to KUTTNER and WANG (1934) there is a liability to virus infection of the salivary glands of guineapigs, hamsters and human beings. These viruses may remain dormant without causing any symptoms. While the effect of many virus infections is ultimate necrosis of affected cells, certain viruses cause a proliferation of parasitized cells producing hyperplasia or even neoplasia, as in the infectious papillomatosis of wild cotton-tail rabbits (SHOPE, 1933).

The source of such a possible infection was looked for in localities from which the patients came. The writer examined a large number of domestic animals from various parts of Egypt, but found no instance of parotid enlargement among them.

Allergic Tests.

Intradermal tests with saliva and parotid emulsion from affected patients were made on other cases and on normal individuals. The results showed no constant difference. The common association with pellagra diminished the value of these tests because pellagrins do not possess normal skin reactivity.

Animal Inoculation.

(1) Rabbits. Intracerebral inoculation of rabbits with catheter specimens of saliva from affected and control persons was performed, after Gordon's technique. Both classes of saliva occasionally induced a lymphocytic encephalitis or a meningo-encephalitis, apparently due to a contaminating virus.

To avoid contamination that might be present in saliva, the experiments were repeated with ground parotid gland tissue obtained by biopsy. No single rabbit developed encephalitis ; when the animals were eventually killed there was neither naked eye nor microscopical evidence of any abnormality.

(2) Guineapigs. At the same time injections of saliva and parotid emulsion from human cases were made into the parotid and submaxillary glands of guineapigs, on one side ; the other was left as a control. No sign of disease appeared, and on subsequent histological examination no difference in structure could be detected between the injected and control salivary glands.

(3) Monkeys—*Macacus rhesus*. To imitate the probable route of an

infection, a considerable amount of saliva from human cases (taken by catheter) was injected through Stenson's duct to the parotids of two monkeys. The procedure was similar to that of JOHNSON and GOODPASTURE in producing experimental mumps in *M. rhesus*. The two monkeys injected were kept for periods of 5 and 8 months respectively without result, and even intraglandular injection with human parotid emulsion failed to produce signs of disease.

The results of these experiments gave no support to the theory of infection as responsible for endemic parotid hyperplasia.

TREATMENT.

To supply any dietary deficiency, trial was made of various remedies as used for pellagra. A due supply of animal protein vitamins B₁ and B₂, sometimes supplemented with vitamins C and D was given to patients for varying periods without effect on the parotid enlargement. Iron and hydrochloric acid, with or without pepsin, were also useless. In view of the anatomical condition of the gland no rapid results could be expected from such measures.

Spontaneous regression occurred in one case, and also followed biopsy in two other patients. The possibility of the pressure of a bandage causing this regression was excluded. The enlargement subsided in another patient following an attack of erysipelas of the buttock. An analogy may be drawn between these examples and similar experiences in Mikulicz's disease. In cases of the latter affection a regression has been reported after erysipelas and other infections such as pneumonia and influenza; also after removal of the lachrymal gland.

X-Ray Therapy.—Conflicting opinions on the value of this form of treatment in Mikulicz's disease have been expressed. But in view of the simple hyperplasia found in this endemic form, it was decided to apply the treatment, and the results were very satisfactory. Small doses at weekly intervals were applied, first to one side only, leaving the other side as a control. After regression of the swelling on one side, the other parotid was similarly treated. The course consisted of five doses. Out of ten cases treated, nine responded with regression in the size of the glands. There was no evidence of fibrosis nor disturbance of function, producing dryness of the mouth, after treatment. The result is illustrated in Fig. 2 (*a* & *b*).

DISCUSSION.

In view of the failure of all attempts to transmit the disease or to show the presence of an infective agent, it is extremely doubtful whether endemic parotid enlargement is of infective origin. No form of infection is known which produces uniform hyperplasia with full retention of functional efficiency in any organ. In spite of unilateral involvement sometimes found, the probabilities are strongly against an infective origin.

It is a familiar fact that most deficiency diseases with an endemic distribution or with sporadic outbreaks have been at some time attributed to an infection.

The reports of chronic parotid enlargement in widely separated countries associated with conditions of malnutrition, indicate that the hyperplasia occurs in response to some increased functional demand on the glands. This demand arises from some need of the body secondary to some deficiency.

Parotid hyperplasia does not appear to be related to any known alimentary disorder, such as gastric achylia or pancreatic disease. MILLER (1925) considers that an increased secretion of ptyalin is called for in pellagra on account of a diminution in amylase and pancreatic secretion generally. His view is that pellagra is characterised by achlorhydria which prevents the formation and action of Starling's secretin and so leads to pancreatic deficiency. This hypothesis fails to explain the frequent association of parotid hyperplasia with normal gastric function and its absence after complete gastrectomy.

Whether a primary dietary deficiency, either of B vitamins or of some other factor, is directly responsible is uncertain. The parotid enlargement did not usually regress in pellagrins when the general condition improved on special feeding, and it was found in some individuals who showed no malnutrition. The absence of thiocyanate may be etiologically significant and this subject requires further investigation.

The possibility that the parotids may furnish an internal secretion, as suggested by FLAUM and others, has been mentioned. There may even be some unknown constituent of saliva itself, analogous to Castle's intrinsic factor in gastric juice, that may play an important part in the body economy. Recently SYDENSTRICKER *et al.* (1936) have found that the administration of normal gastric juice causes marked improvement in pellagrins, even when kept on a pellagra-producing diet. SALAH (1935) has demonstrated the presence of Castle's intrinsic factor in the gastric juice of pellagrins; therefore some other intrinsic factor must be postulated as absent in pellagra. It is possible that this is really derived from saliva and not from pure gastric secretion.

These suggestions must be left for future research to verify or reject.

SUMMARY.

1. A chronic painless enlargement of the parotids is common in Egypt; in some districts about 2 per cent. of the poorer agricultural workers are affected.

2. Males are particularly affected; about ten times as frequently as females. The usual age of the patients is between 20 and 40.

2. Of one hundred cases seen among hospital in-patients, sixty-five were associated with pellagra and with twenty-five others represented an endemic group. The condition was not specially associated with any other endemic disease; in one-fifth of these cases the parotid enlargement was unilateral.

4. The remaining ten cases had manifest or latent diabetes; this association has been noticed in northern latitudes.

5. In the endemic group the condition bore no relation to any derangement

of the gastric or pancreatic functions, or to the blood count. There was no disturbance of the blood sugar regulating mechanism in these cases.

6. The saliva occasionally showed abnormal cell elements and was sterile. Functional tests showed increased secretion with a full ptyalin content, but there was a striking absence of thiocyanate.

7. Sialograms were normal in half the cases. Abnormalities seen were dilatations of the main duct or ductules, or a multiplicity of ducts giving a "leafless tree" appearance.

8. Microscopical examination of the glands showed chronic hyperplasia with entire absence of any inflammatory changes.

9. Allergic tests and experiments on animals, including monkeys, failed to demonstrate an infective origin. Intracerebral inoculation of saliva was found unreliable because of the presence of contaminating viruses in normal and abnormal cases.

10. A satisfactory method of treatment by X-rays was applied.

11. The etiology is discussed and various theories reviewed.

REFERENCES.

- BIGGAM, A. G. & GHALIOUNGUI, P. (1934). *Lancet*, 2, 300.
 COLE, S. W. (1926). *Pract. Physiol. Chem.*, 7th Ed., 325. Cambridge : Heffer & Sons.
 DAY, H. B. (1933). *J. trop. Med. (Hyg.)*, 36, 17.
 DE JONGE, K. (1928). *Lancet*, 2, 267.
 DUNLOP, G. A. (1933). *Ibid.*, 2, 183.
 FLAUM, E. (1932). *Klin. Wschr.*, 2, 1704.
 FONTOYNOT. (1911). *Pr. méd.*, 19, 455.
 KUTTNER, A. G. & WANG, S. (1934). *J. exp. Med.*, 60, 773.
 MIKULICZ, J. (1888). *Berl. klin. Wschr.*, 25, 759.
 MILLER, R. S. (1925). *Amer. Med.*, 20, 211.
 PAYNE, R. T. (1933). *Lancet*, 1, 348.
 PEARSON, R. S. (1935). *Arch. Dis. Childh.*, 10, 363.
 ———. (1936). *Guy's Hosp. Rep.*, 3, 333.
 PYRAH, L. N. (1933). *Brit. J. Surg.*, 20, 508.
 PYRAH, L. N. & ALLISON, P. R. (1931). *Brit. med. J.*, 2, 1028.
 SALAH, M. (1935). *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 29, 299.
 SANDWICH, F. M. (1905). *Medical Diseases of Egypt*, 295. London : Henry Kimpton.
 SEIFERT, E. (1926). *Dtsch. Z. Chir.* 198, 387.
 SHOPE, R. E. & HURST, E. W. (1933). *J. exp. Med.*, 58, 607.
 SYDENSTRICKER, V. P., ARMSTRONG, E. S., DERRICK, C. J. & KEMP, P. S. (1936). *Amer. J. med. Sci.*, 192, 1.
 ULTIMURA, S. (1927). *Int. J. med. Paed. & Psych.*, 1, 481.
 WARTIN, J. & FLORENTIN, B. (1927). *C. R. Soc. Biol., Paris*, 97, 1297.

SPRUE IN EGYPT.

REPORT OF A CASE.

BY

M. SALAH, M.R.C.P. (LOND.), D.T.M., D.T.H. (LIV.).

From the Research Institute, Ministry of Public Health, Cairo.

Since the description of the features of the disease by MANSON (1880) and VAN DER BURG (1880) and the adoption of its popular designation in Java as the medical name, the individuality of sprue has been established and its nature has been described by many authors.

There are two peculiarities about sprue, namely its patchy distribution between 40° north and 20° south, with the exception of Central Africa; and its occurrence mainly in Europeans sojourning in those countries. With the exception of the natives of Puerto Rico it was supposed to be limited to Europeans but recently it has also been reported in natives in India (1930, 1931). As the aetiology of sprue is not yet known, it is difficult to explain this peculiar distribution and racial preference. Until now no case has ever been recorded from Egypt.

The first case of sprue occurring in an Egyptian was detected in the Research Institute, Cairo, and is described below.

CASE REPORT.

Z.A.T., male, aged 40, was sent from the State Railways Hospital to the Research Institute on 16th February, 1936, for investigation.

Complaint.—Rapid wasting and general weakness, inability to take food because of pain in the tongue; diarrhoea, three to five semi-fluid, offensive stools daily, having the same colour as the food taken. Gurgling noises in the abdomen 2 hours after a meal.

History.—On 7th July, 1935, patient was suffering from cough without expectoration but accompanied by fever.

Ten days later he developed diarrhoea with occasional blood and mucus.

In December, 1935, he first noticed a burning sensation in his tongue and diarrhoea with three to five bulky and light coloured stools daily, 2 hours after taking food.

The patient was admitted to the State Railways Hospital where he was given medicine and light diet; there was a slight subjective improvement.

Physical Examination.

Patient is greatly wasted, weighs 47·5 kg. Skin dry and inelastic. No evidence of previous pellagra, no abnormal pigmentations.

Tongue red, glazed and fissured.

Abdomen retracted on admission. Liver not felt below the costal margin, liver dullness diminished. Spleen not felt. No masses or glands in the abdomen. Heart weak sound, no murmurs.

Blood pressure 110/70.

Chest free. No glands, no oedema.

Nervous system free with the exception of weak knee and ankle reflexes.

INVESTIGATIONS.

Haematological.—Haemoglobin 55 per cent.; Reticulocytes 0·8 per cent.; Red Blood Corpuscles 3,110,000; Diameter index 8·03; Vol. index 0·9; Fragility, normal; White Blood Corpuscles total 3,600; Differential Eosinophils 1 per cent.; Neutrophils 58 per cent.; Lymphocytes 36 per cent.; Mononuclears 3 per cent.

Bone-marrow megaloblastic, hypoplastic. No parasites could be demonstrated in the blood.

Biochemical.—Icterus index 3 units; Van den Bergh, negative; Urea, 25; Calcium 9 mg. per cent.; Sugar tolerance curve 71/87/100/95/75; Cholesterol, 90, free 50, 88, ester 38.

Serological.—Wassermann and Kahn reactions negative. Sediment rate ++.

Bacteriological.—Widal negative; Stool culture negative for pathogenic micro-organisms and tubercle bacilli.

Gastro-intestinal.—Test meal: rapid emptying, HCl absent with alcohol meal, only present after histamine.

Sigmoidoscopy.—Diffusely congested mucous membrane with occasional flakes of mucus, no ulcers. Scraping from bowel, negative for amoebae and pathogenic micro-organisms (by culture).

Stools light coloured, bulky and offensive.

Fat:—Total 60 per cent, combined fatty acids 58.9 per cent., neutral fat 1.1 per cent.

Urine.—No albumin, sugar, urobilinogen or bile.

Radiograph of stomach, colon, lungs, mediastinum and bones did not show evidence of disease.

DIAGNOSIS.

The case was admitted with the provisional diagnosis of steatorrhea, ? pancreatic disease, ? sprue.

The demonstration of marked glossitis, macrocytic anaemia and the chemistry of the fatty stools excluded pancreatic disease and the case was put under the category of steatorrhea due to deficient absorption of split fat.

Obstructed lacteals due to tuberculosis, Hodgkin's disease or cancer were then excluded by the absence of any clinical or radiological evidence and also by the subsequent course of the disease. The presence of marked glossitis as a prominent feature of the case, the absence of megalocolon as well as absence of marked hypocalcaemia and osteoporosis were rather in favour of tropical sprue than of idiopathic steatorrhea manifesting itself late in life, if the separation of the two conditions is to be admitted.

Pellagra is associated with diarrhoea, anaemia, glossitis and wasting and thus may be confused with sprue. The difficulty of their differentiation in endemic areas has been discussed (McLESTER, 1930). The absence of any history or evidence of cutaneous manifestations exclude this possibility in our case. Moreover, the anaemia of pellagra (in Egypt) is almost invariably of the hypochromic normocytic type (SALAH, 1935) and the stools do not contain excess of fat.

Addisonian anaemia is unlikely because of the extreme wasting of the patient, the presence of HCl after histamine and the normal icterus index; besides, the diarrhoea in Addisonian anaemia is not of the steatorrhoeic type.

Accordingly the diagnosis of sprue was finally arrived at. As a matter of fact, the most decisive evidence in favour of sprue was given by the response of the condition to treatment as shown by the return of the stools to normal in regard to number, amount and fat content, the disappearance of the glossitis with return to normal of the previously desquamated papillae, the return to normal of the gastric secretion, decrease in the anaemia and the increase of weight by 21 kg.

TREATMENT.

The line of treatment suggested and reported to be successful by FAIRLEY (1930 and 1932) was followed. The main objects of this treatment are :—

(1) To produce alimentary rest by a suitable diet; BAUMGARTNER and HUBBARD (1927) found that high protein diet gives alimentary rest and does not damage the kidneys in sprue, but because of its high dynamic value it is not suitable for increasing weight. THAYSEN (1932) has pointed out that although fats and carbohydrates are not well tolerated yet the proteins are well absorbed as shown by the finding of a normal nitrogen balance. Accordingly the patient was put on a high protein, low carbohydrate and low fat diet. This regime produced alimentary rest with reduction of motions within 2 weeks to twice daily.

(2) The treatment is directed against the existing anaemia. CASTLE and his co-workers (1935) have shown that the mechanism of production of the macrocytic anaemia of sprue resembled that of Addisonian anaemia, *i.e.* the intrinsic haemopoietic factor is absent in some cases although in others it seems to be the lack of the extrinsic factor which is responsible. In our case the high protein diet alone was without effect on the blood picture. This diet is expected to be haemopoietically effective only when the intrinsic factor is present in the gastric content and absorption from the intestinal tract is adequate. The former could not be verified in our patient owing to the absence of Addisonian anaemia cases to be used as test patients; the latter is shown to be inadequate by the result of the glucose tolerance test. Marmite, as a representative of the extrinsic factor, was administered in doses of one teaspoonful *t.d.s.* for 12 days without effect on the blood picture.

Liver, 300 grammes *per os*, followed by intramuscular injections of liver extract (2 c.c. campolon and hepractone) for a period of 15 days, was then given. Prompt improvement of the blood picture, tongue and general condition resulted from this treatment as shown in the chart.

(3) The replacement of demonstrable deficiencies is the third aim of the treatment.

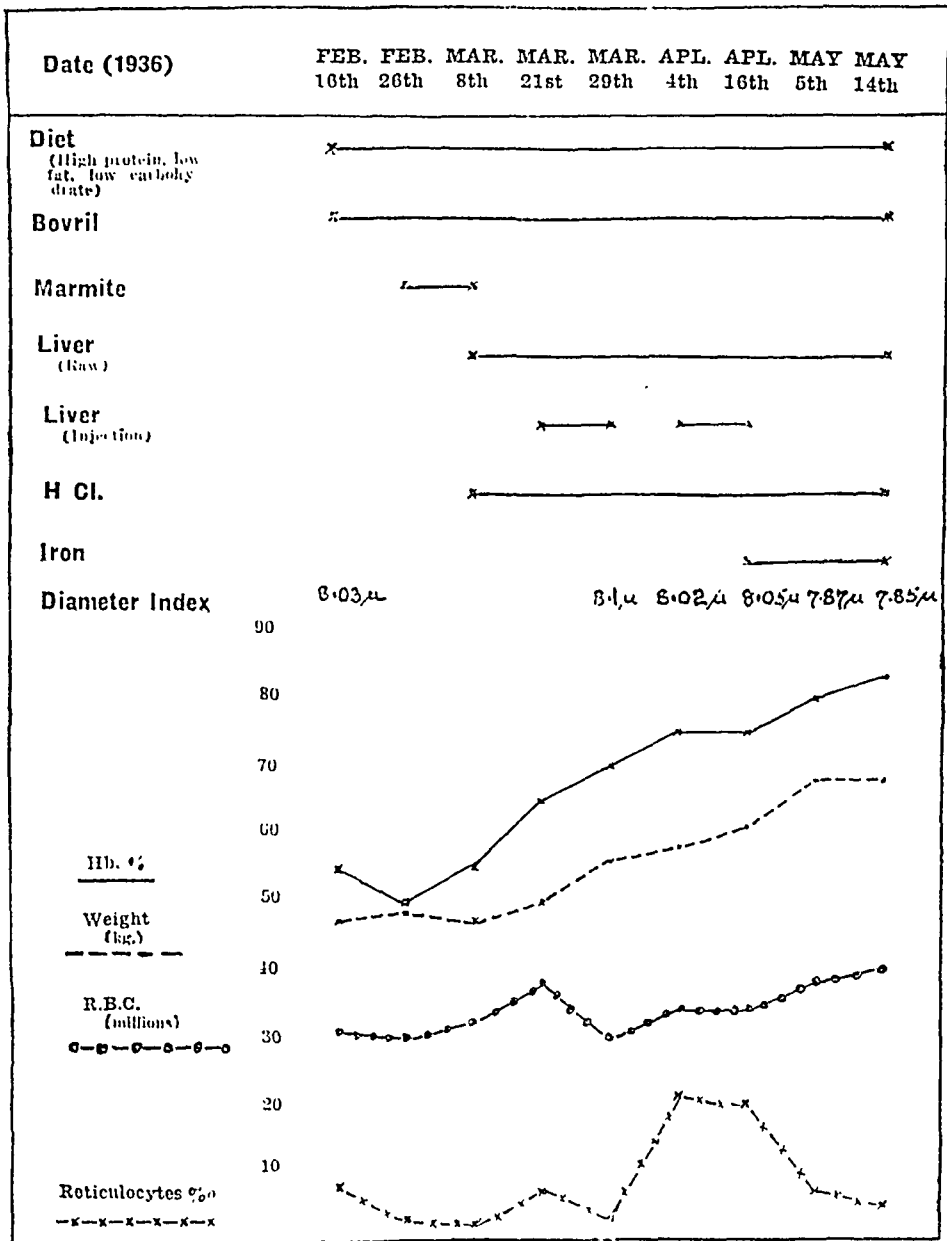
HCl in doses of 4 c.c. in lemonade, *t.d.s.* was given for a period of 2 months. Iron in the form of Blaud's pills, nine daily for 18 days after stopping the liver injections, resulted in a further rise of 5 per cent. haemoglobin.

The improvement became noticeable within 2 weeks of beginning the treatment and reached a maximum at the end of 3 months. (See chart, p. 355.)

A comparison of the various findings on admission, on discharge and also 14 months later is found in the table on page 357.

COMMENT.

Although no cases of sprue have ever been recorded in Egypt the case described in this paper represents the condition in an Egyptian. The diagnosis



of this case was based on clinical, biochemical and therapeutic evidence as well as on exclusion of other conditions giving rise to similar pictures.

Clinically the case demonstrates the glossitis, steatorrhoea, wasting and anaemia which characterize the well-developed condition. The anaemia was of the hypochromic, macrocytic type with a hypoplastic bone-marrow of megaloblastic character suggesting deficiency of both iron and haemopoietic principle.

The abdomen, although sunken on admission, showed the peculiar distension when the number of motions decreased. The liver was clinically smaller than normal; a sign which was reported by MANSON-BAHR (1930) as occurring in about 50 per cent. of sprue cases.

With the exception of diminished deep reflexes there were no signs to suggest implication of the nervous system.

Radiological investigations of the alimentary canal, chest and bones excluded organic lesions and manifestations of any other morbid conditions that might give rise to a similar combination of symptoms (Hodgkin's disease, carcinoma, abdominal tuberculosis, gastro-colic fistula, etc.).

Biochemically the case showed (a) achlorhydria with the alcohol meal, HCl appearing only after histamine; (b) low blood sugar curve after glucose administration suggesting deficient intestinal absorption; (c) normal icterus index; (d) chemical analysis of the stools showed marked excess of fat with preponderance of split fat suggestive of steatorrhoea resulting from deficient absorption and excluding pancreatic disease; (e) serum calcium value was not reduced although it was at a low normal level.

These biochemical findings are peculiar to sprue.

Therapeutically the case showed marked and complete improvement of all its features under the treatment given and known to cure cases of sprue. This treatment consisted of (1) high protein, low fat, low carbohydrate diet; (2) liver by mouth and by injection, and (3) iron and HCl.

The effects of this treatment were:—

(a) An increase in weight of 21 kg. within a period of 3 months, although the character of the diet does not as a rule favour such considerable weight increase. This result is peculiar to sprue.

(b) The gastro-intestinal functions returned to normal as shown by the return of HCl secretion; improvement of the glucose tolerance curve; and return of stools to normal in number, character and chemical composition.

(c) Disappearance of the glossitis with return to normal of the previously desquamated papillae.

(d) Decrease in the anaemia following liver therapy, the haemoglobin rising to 83 per cent. and the red blood corpuscles to 4,875,000 within about 7 weeks. A slight further response occurred after administration of iron. Despite this marked improvement of the blood picture under liver therapy the reticulocytic response was but slight. The same lack of a good response was also reported by CASTLE *et al* (1935) in some of their cases.

The bone-marrow in our case was hypoplastic rather than hyperplastic. ASHFORD (1932) also found cases with a plastic histological picture in specimens of tibial marrow removed during life. It may be that this marrow hypoplasia was responsible for the low reticulocytic response in our case as well as in similar cases reported by others.

The bone-marrow picture returned to normal (erythro-normoblastic) in the course of treatment.

TABLE

Investigations.	On Admission.	On Discharge.	After 14 Months.
Gastric secretion	Achlorhydria, Histamine positive	Normal	—
Stools	Total fat, 60% ; fatty acids, 58.9 % ; neutral fat, 1.1%	Total fat, 45% ; fatty acids, 40% ; neutral fat, 5%	Normal by naked eye and microscopical examination
Glucose tolerance	71/87/100/95/75	77/90/118/100/80	—
Blood picture	Hb. 55% ; R. B. C. 3,110,000 ; R e t . 0.8% ; Diam. Ind. 8.03 ; W.B.C. 3,600 ; E. 1% ; N. 58% ; L. 36% ; Mono. 3%	Hb. 83% ; R.B.C. 4,875,000 ; R e t . 0.5% ; Diam. Ind. 7.87 ; W.B.C. 6,000 ; E. 9% ; N. 54% ; L. 32% ; Mono. 5%	Hb. 90% ; R.B.C. 4,625,000 ; R e t . 1% ; Diam. Ind. 7.66 ; W.B.C. 6,000 ; E. 5% ; N. 63% ; L. 25% ; Mono. 7%
Bone-marrow sternal puncture)	Hypoplastic, megaloblastic	Normoblastic	—
Icterus index	3 units	3 units	—
Calcium	9 mg. %	9.3 mg. %	—
Weight	47.5 kg.	68 kg.	67 kg.
Tongue	Glazed, red and fissured	Normal	Normal
Motions	4-5 daily	Once daily	Once daily

The patient was discharged in a nearly normal condition and advised to resume his normal diet gradually. This change in diet did not produce any relapse. The case was kept under observation for 14 months after discharge, during which time he remained normal. Some of the findings at the end of this period of observation are reported in the table. The long period of observation in this case has made it possible to exclude certain organic diseases (abdominal Hodgkin's disease, abdominal tuberculosis, etc.) which are known to be able to present for some time a clinical picture simulating sprue (FAIRLEY, 1937).

REFERENCES.

- ASHFORD, BAILEY K. (1932). *Amer. J. trop. Med.*, 12, 199.
- BAUMGARTNER, E. A. & HUBBARD, R. S. (1927). *Clifton med. Bull.*, 13, 52.
- CASTLE, W. B., RHOADS, C. P., LAWSON, H. A. & PAYNE, G. C. (1935). *Arch. intern. Med.*, 56, 627.
- FAIRLEY, N. HAMILTON. (1930). *Proc. R. Soc. Med.*, 24, 131.
- . (1932). *Ibid.*, 25, 297.
- . (1936). *Lancet*, 1, 911.
- MCLESTER, J. S. (1930). *J. Amer. med. Ass.*, 95, 719.
- MANSON, PATRICK. (1880). Quoted by CASTLE *et al.*
- MANSON-BAHR, P. & WILLOUGHBY, H. (1930). *Quart. J. Med.*, 23, 92.
- SALAH, M. (1935). *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 29, 299.
- THAYSEN, TH. E. HESS. (1932). *Non-Tropical Sprue*. Copenhagen : Levin & Munksgaard. London : Humphrey Milford, Oxford University Press.
- VAN DER BURG, C. L. (1880). Quoted by CASTLE *et al.*

TRANSACTIONS OF THE ROYAL SOCIETY OF
TROPICAL MEDICINE AND HYGIENE.
Vol. XXXI. No. 3. November, 1937.

A SUSPECTED CASE OF NON-EPIDEMIC TYPHUS IN A CHILD IN TRINIDAD.

BY

MINNIE GOSDEN, M.B., B.S., D.T.M. & H.
Pathologist, Trinidad.

As far as can be discovered from the records available locally no case of epidemic typhus has been reported in Trinidad for many years, nor have any cases of typhus-like fevers such as have been found in many tropical countries in recent years. In countries having constant communication with the island, recognised forms of non-epidemic typhus occur such as Brill's disease of the United States and tarbardillo in Mexico. Although the diagnosis was not absolutely proved the following case is thought worth recording if only to stimulate search for possible cases of fever due to this group of diseases in the West Indies. Though evidence of human infection has not been recorded here, the existence of the virus in wild rats in Port of Spain has been proved by the Government Bacteriologist (PAWAN, 1935, verbal communication).

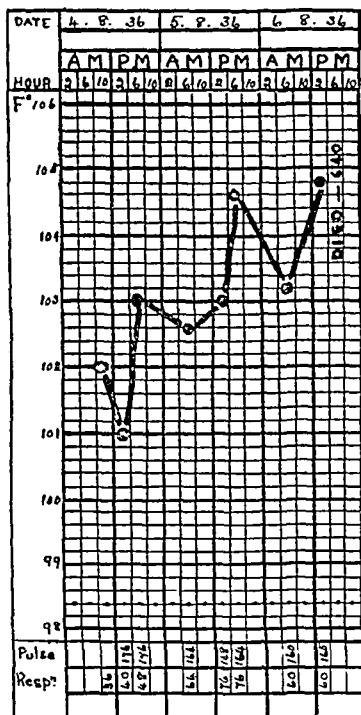
CASE HISTORY.

S. C., an African female child, born in Trinidad, age 4 months, was admitted to the Colonial Hospital, Port of Spain, on 6th September, 1936, with a history of having had fever for about a week and having developed a generalized rash.

On admission, the child was very ill, with a temperature of 101.6° F., a generalized haemorrhagic rash over the body, thickest on the thighs, both hands cold, with marked cyanosis of the left finger tips, and less of the right; the motions were green and offensive.

While in hospital the child had a continuous rising temperature, was very weak and showed evidence of toxæmia, the fingers of both hands became gangrenous, the motions became normal in appearance and death took place 58 hours after admission.

Postmortem Examination.—Unfortunately the parents refused permission for a routine examination, and delay in the internal examination occurred while a certificate was refused and an order obtained for the examination which was eventually carried out 19 hours after death.



The body was that of a moderately nourished female negro infant ; the rash was still visible, although faint ; discrete spots were present chiefly on the body and especially on the thighs, very few being present on the face ; there was dry gangrene of the tips of the fingers of the left hand, with gangrene of the skin extending half way up the forearm, moist gangrene of the fingers of the right hand with the skin peeling off half way up the forearm, the gangrenous skin sharply demarcated from the healthy skin above, the eyes and fontanelles were sunken and the face very toxæmic in appearance.

Thorax.—There was marked hypertrophy of the anterior descending coronary artery, no other abnormality in the heart, the muscle of which was

pale and soft. There were patches of haemorrhagic consolidation in the lungs, especially in the lower lobes, the pharynx was very injected and the cervical glands red and swollen, the thymus was small.

Abdomen.—The liver was swollen and showed patchy congestion, the kidneys were congested with haemorrhages in the left kidney, the pulp in the rather soft spleen was grey with clear Malpighian bodies. The stomach contained undigested milk and the Peyer's patches were conspicuous and the mesenteric glands soft and purple.

Head.—There was oedema of the pale brain, fluid blood in all cranial sinuses and both middle ears were dry and clean.

Laboratory Investigations.

Blood serum (obtained by heart puncture postmortem) agglutination.

	1/10	1/20	1/40	1/80	1/100
<i>Bacillus proteus</i> HX19	++	++	++	+	—
„ „ OX19	++	++	++	++	—
„ „ X2	+-	+-	+-	+	—
„ „ XK	—	—	—	—	—

Wassermann reaction, weakly positive ; Kahn, negative.

Animal inoculation.—Intraperitoneal inoculation of a guineapig with brain emulsion had no effect.

DISCUSSION.

This case presented considerable difficulty in diagnosis, no other members of the child's family were, or had been, ill, and no cases of infectious disease likely to give rise to such serious symptoms were present at the time. The possibility of typhus was suggested by the character of the rash and especially the complication of gangrene of the hands, a recognized occurrence in serious cases. It was felt that the titre of agglutinins in the blood for *B. proteus* X19 was not high enough to justify the diagnosis of epidemic typhus in an area completely free from the disease and in the absence of any evidence of the presence of lice on the child or in its home. This opinion has been confirmed by the absence of any other similar cases. The severity of the case was also striking, since epidemic typhus is often a mild disease in small children.

However, the appearance of agglutinins for both *B. proteus* X19 and X2 and the absence of those for the Kingsbury strain in the blood appears suspicious of infection with a fever of the typhus group.

FELIX* states that complete agglutination of the O type of 1/80 to 1/100 are significant for diagnosis ; and that dilutions of 1/25 to 1/50 while not

*FELIX, A. (1930). *A System of Bacteriology*, vol. 7, 415. London : Medical Research Council.

decisive should not be ignored. The strains used, from the National Collection of Type Cultures, have shown no agglutination with other sera before or subsequent to this case.

In the absence of a scrotal reaction in the inoculated guineapig a certain diagnosis of the case is doubtful, although this may have been due to the dose of virus being small or to the time elapsing between death and the removal of the brain for injection ; but it seems possible that this was really a case of an unusually severe infection with non-epidemic typhus, possibly flea-borne.

SUMMARY.

A case of fatal illness with a typhus-like rash and gangrene of the hands in a child is reported, with agglutinins in the blood postmortem in low titre for both *B. proteus* X19 and *B. proteus* X2, but none for the Kingsbury strain.

TYPHOID AGGLUTININS IN THE NATIVE POPULATION.

BY

R. M. DOWDESWELL, B.Ch., M.R.C.S., L.R.C.P.

*Medical Research Laboratory, Nairobi.**

Between December, 1936 and July, 1937, 400 sera from the native population of Kenya Colony sent in for the Kahn test were examined for the presence of agglutinins demonstrable with "H" and "O" suspensions of *Salmonella typhi*. No examination was made for the presence of Vi antibody.

Technique.—The agglutination tubes used had an internal diameter of about 6 mm., the total quantity of suspension and serum dilution was just under 1 c.c. measured by the

*This paper is published by permission of the Hon. the Director of Medical Services, Kenya.

The writer wishes to thank Dr. G. L. TIMMS of this Laboratory for the supply of sera.

drop method.† The tubes, after mixing of suspension and serum dilution, were kept in a water bath at 52° C. for 2 hours, the water being about one-third the way up the column of fluid and readings were taken after 15 minutes at room temperature. The "H" antigen was a broth culture of a locally isolated smooth strain, showing motility, of 20 hours incubation preserved with 0·2 per cent. formalin and the "O" antigen was made up by diluting to 1 in 10 a 33 per cent. alcoholic suspension, prepared according to Bien's method. Normal saline was used as the diluting fluid throughout. These suspensions were standardized with those provided by the Oxford Standard Laboratories and a suspension factor obtained for them. For instance, if the end point of a given serum with our suspension was 1/500 and corresponded to that of 1/250 with the Oxford suspension having a factor of x, the S.F. of our suspension was recorded as 2x. The sensitivity of the suspensions used has, in fact, been very close to that of the standard ones. In the majority of cases, the sera had been heated to 56° C. for half an hour, but it was found by repeated tests that this procedure affected the agglutination only very slightly, causing a reduction in titre of not more than one-tenth for both "H" and "O," that is a titre of 1/100 might after heating become 1/90; so that the results were not significantly affected.

The end point was taken throughout as a trace of agglutination visible to the naked eye [indicated as + according to the conventions used in the international experiment published by GARDNER (1937)].

A preliminary test with serum dilutions of 1/25, 1/50 and 1/150 was first done and all positive sera were then tested again over an appropriate range of finely graded dilutions, with saline controls. No sera showing marked haemolysis were used.

The results obtained giving unreduced titres were as follows:—

TOTAL NUMBER 400—TOTAL NEGATIVES 214.

Observed Titres.	Negative.	1/25 to 1/50	1/50 to 1/100	1/100 to 1/250	1/250 to 1/1,000	Over 1/1,000	Total Positive.
"H" agglutination	291	44	34	17	11	3	109
"O" agglutination	257	76	43	20	4		143
"O" agglutination with the absence of "H"		47	21	8	1		77
"H" agglutination with the absence of "O"		21	15	4	3		43

It will be seen that there were therefore 16 per cent. positive for "H" agglutinins in over 1/50, and 3·5 per cent. positive in over 1/250.

For all "O" agglutinins there were 17 per cent. positive in over 1/50 and 7½ per cent. of the total showed a titre of over 1/50 for "O" agglutinins in the absence of "H" agglutinins.

†Note.—It was found by a number of trials that the use of twice the quantity of suspension and serum dilution here used, in tubes of internal diameter 8·5 mm., gave readings precisely similar to those recorded by this technique.

These results expressed as reduced titres are, therefore :—

Reduced Titres.	0 to 10	10 to 25	25 to 50	50 to 100	100 to 250	250 to 1,000	Over 1,000	Total.	Percentage Positive.
" H " agglutination	—	33	37	19	11	7	2	109	27.25
" O " agglutination	129	10	2	2	—	—	—	143	35.75
" O " agglutination alone	72	4	0	1				77	19.25
" H " agglutination alone		17	18	5	1	2		43	10.75

This shows 9.75 per cent. positive for " H " in a reduced titre of over 50, including 2 per cent. which gave no " O " agglutination : also 3.5 per cent. positive for " O " in a reduced titre of over 10, including 1.25 per cent. which gave no " H " agglutinations.

It should be pointed out that the method used by GARDNER (1929) for the calculation of R.T., by which he estimates standard agglutination before using the S.F. would, applied here, cause a reduction of the R.T., but by not more than 30 per cent.

The three sera showing the highest titres were possibly from patients in the convalescent period or shortly after a true typhoid infection. Unfortunately, it has not been possible to exclude entirely the possibility of a previous inoculation,* but the percentage of such cases would be very small.

DISCUSSION.

A strict comparison of the results obtained here, with those published by others, is not possible and such an attempt would be misleading. For

*Note.—There is no doubt that inoculation with the phenolized vaccine prepared here will give rise to an appreciable production of " O " antibodies, and apart from a number of examinations after secondary inoculations which have shown unreduced titres for *S. typhi* " O " of over 1/500 and some of over 1/1,000 the only case of a primary inoculation done at the Laboratory on a European adult, whose serum showed no agglutination in dilutions of 1/25 or over before inoculation, gave 10 days after the last injection unreduced titres :—

<i>S. typhi</i>	" H "	...	...	...	1/1,250	(S.F. 1.1)
<i>S. "</i>	" O "	...	...	...	1/833	(S.F. 13)
<i>S. paratyphi</i>	" A " " H "	...	...	...	1/500	
<i>S. "</i>	" A " " O "	...	...	...	1/125	
<i>S. "</i>	" B " " H "	...	...	...	1/1,200	
<i>S. "</i>	" B " " O "	...	...	...	1/100	

instance, although GARDNER (1929), GARDNER and STUBBINGTON (1932) and SMITH (1932) show results as reduced titres ; others as ALVES (1936) and BEATTIE and ELLIOT (1937) make use of standardized suspensions from the Oxford Laboratories but do not refer to the suspension factors ; while some as GRASSET and LEWIN (1936), GIGLIOLI (1933), HORGAN (1932) and DENNIS and BERBERIAN (1934) do not appear to have standardized their suspensions. Further anomalies may be caused by differences in technique, such as reading of end points : anomalies only too clearly demonstrated in the international experiment already quoted. However, a few results are quoted below for rough comparison :—

RESULTS OBTAINED WITH "NORMAL" SERA.

"H" Agglutination.			
Author.	Material.	No. of Sera.	Result.
GIGLIOLI (1933)	Population, British Guiana	350	34.2 per cent. positive in dilutions of over 1/10 16 per cent. positive in dilutions of over 1/40
HORGAN (1932)	Natives of Sudan	70	0 per cent.
WHITEHEAD (1930)	British Army	67	"
BEATTIE and ELLIOT (1937)	British	47	"
ALVES (1936)	Natives, Southern Rhodesia	530	12.6 per cent. positive in dilutions from 1/50 to 1/500
"O" Agglutination.			
Author.	Material.	No. of Sera.	Result.
GARDNER (1929)	Europeans, England	47	17 per cent. positive between R.T. 1.5 and 4
GARDNER and STUBBINGTON (1932)	Europeans, England	47	38 per cent. positive in an R.T. of less than 3 except one of 15
GIGLIOLI (1933)	Population, British Guiana	350	31.4 per cent. positive in dilutions of 1/10 to 1/80
HORGAN (1932)	Natives of Sudan	70	7 per cent. positive in dilutions of 1/25 and 1/50
WHITEHEAD (1930)	British Army	67	21 per cent. positive in dilutions of 1/25 and 1/50
BEATTIE and ELLIOT (1937)	British	47	13 per cent. positive in dilutions of 1/20 and 1/40
ALVES (1936)	Natives, Southern Rhodesia	300	15 per cent. positive in dilutions of 1/50 to 1/500

In typhoid infection, GARDNER (1929) reports forty cases in which the reduced "O" titre varied between 6 and 114. SMITH in Scotland found no reduced "O" titres of over 100 in twenty-eight cases; HORGAN apparently obtained low titres from 0 to 1/500 in fourteen cases except one previously inoculated who gave 1/2,500. From a very small series of observations here, where of forty consecutive sera sent for Widal examination, of which only eleven showed an "H" titre of more than 1/50 for T., A. or B., these eleven with typhoid "H" titres of from 1/250 to 1/6,000 gave reduced titres for "O" of 275, 2, 115, 270, 641, 192, 77, 77, 192, 6 and 64. A further series is contemplated, but it is, however, suggested that the presence of such a considerable percentage of "O" agglutinins in the "normal" native population although in very low titre may be correlated with the production of unusually high titres in disease.

CONCLUSIONS.

1. The results of the examination of 400 sera of natives, not suspected of typhoid fever, for the "H" and "O" agglutinins of *S. typhi* are given.
2. That the high incidence of both "H" and "O" agglutinins suggests the presence among the population of a considerable amount of typhoid infection.
3. The finding of "O" agglutinins alone suggests previous infections overt or latent, possibly by other members, having "O" antigen IX, XII, of the *Salmonella* according to the KAUFFMANN-WHITE schema (1934).

REFERENCES.

- ALVES, W. D. (1936). *S. Afr. med. J.*, 10, 6 and 7.
 BEATTIE, C. P. & ELLIOT, J. S. (1937). *J. Hyg. Camb.*, 37, 36.
 DENNIS, E. W. & BERBERIAN, D. A. (1934). *Amer. J. Hyg.*, 20, 469.
 GARDNER, A. D. (1929). *J. Hyg. Camb.*, 28, 376.
 ———. (1937). *Ibid.*, 37, 124.
 GARDNER, A. D. & STUBBINGTON, E. F. (1932). *Ibid.*, 32, 516.
 GIGLIOLI, G. (1933). *Ibid.*, 33, 379.
 GRASSET, E. & LEWIN, W. (1936). *Brit. J. exp. Path.*, 17, 179.
 HORGAN, E. S. (1932). *J. Hyg. Camb.*, 32, 523.
 KAUFFMANN, F. & WHITE, P. E. (1934). *Ibid.*, 34, 333.
 SMITH, J. (1932). *Ibid.*, 32, 143.
 WHITEHEAD, N. T. (1930). *J. R. Army med. Cps.*, 55, 81.

instance, although GARDNER (1929), GARDNER and STUBBINGTON (1932) and SMITH (1932) show results as reduced titres ; others as ALVES (1936) and BEATTIE and ELLIOT (1937) make use of standardized suspensions from the Oxford Laboratories but do not refer to the suspension factors ; while some as GRASSET and LEWIN (1936), GIGLIOLI (1933), HORGAN (1932) and DENNIS and BERBERIAN (1934) do not appear to have standardized their suspensions. Further anomalies may be caused by differences in technique, such as reading of end points : anomalies only too clearly demonstrated in the international experiment already quoted. However, a few results are quoted below for rough comparison :—

RESULTS OBTAINED WITH "NORMAL" SERA.

"H" Agglutination.			
Author.	Material.	No. of Sera.	Result.
GIGLIOLI (1933)	Population, British Guiana	350	34.2 per cent. positive in dilutions of over 1/10 16 per cent. positive in dilutions of over 1/40
HORGAN (1932)	Natives of Sudan	70	0 per cent.
WHITEHEAD (1930)	British Army	67	"
BEATTIE and ELLIOT (1937)	British	47	"
ALVES (1936)	Natives, Southern Rhodesia	530	12.6 per cent. positive in dilutions from 1/50 to 1/500
"O" Agglutination.			
Author.	Material.	No. of Sera.	Result.
GARDNER (1929)	Europeans, England	47	17 per cent. positive between R.T. 1.5 and 4
GARDNER and STUBBINGTON (1932)	Europeans, England	47	38 per cent. positive in an R.T. of less than 3 except one of 15
GIGLIOLI (1933)	Population, British Guiana	350	31.4 per cent. positive in dilutions of 1.10 to 1/80
HORGAN (1932)	Natives of Sudan	70	7 per cent. positive in dilutions of 1/25 and 1/50
WHITEHEAD (1930)	British Army	67	21 per cent. positive in dilutions of 1/25 and 1/50
BEATTIE and ELLIOT (1937)	British	47	13 per cent. positive in dilutions of 1/20 and 1/40
ALVES (1936)	Natives, Southern Rhodesia	300	15 per cent. positive in dilutions of 1/50 to 1/500

In typhoid infection, GARDNER (1929) reports forty cases in which the reduced "O" titre varied between 6 and 114. SMITH in Scotland found no reduced "O" titres of over 100 in twenty-eight cases; HORGAN apparently obtained low titres from 0 to 1/500 in fourteen cases except one previously inoculated who gave 1/2,500. From a very small series of observations here, where of forty consecutive sera sent for Widal examination, of which only eleven showed an "H" titre of more than 1/50 for T., A. or B., these eleven with typhoid "H" titres of from 1/250 to 1/6,000 gave reduced titres for "O" of 275, 2, 115, 270, 641, 192, 77, 77, 192, 6 and 64. A further series is contemplated, but it is, however, suggested that the presence of such a considerable percentage of "O" agglutinins in the "normal" native population although in very low titre may be correlated with the production of unusually high titres in disease.

CONCLUSIONS.

1. The results of the examination of 400 sera of natives, not suspected of typhoid fever, for the "H" and "O" agglutinins of *S. typhi* are given.

2. That the high incidence of both "H" and "O" agglutinins suggests the presence among the population of a considerable amount of typhoid infection.

3. The finding of "O" agglutinins alone suggests previous infections overt or latent, possibly by other members, having "O" antigen IX, XII, of the *Salmonella* according to the KAUFFMANN-WHITE schema (1934).

REFERENCES.

- ALVES, W. D. (1936). *S. Afr. med. J.*, 10, 6 and 7.
 BEATTIE, C. P. & ELLIOT, J. S. (1937). *J. Hyg. Camb.*, 37, 36.
 DENNIS, E. W. & BERBERIAN, D. A. (1934). *Amer. J. Hyg.*, 20, 469.
 GARDNER, A. D. (1929). *J. Hyg. Camb.*, 28, 376.
 ———. (1937). *Ibid.*, 37, 124.
 GARDNER, A. D. & STUBBINGTON, E. F. (1932). *Ibid.*, 32, 516.
 GIGLIOLI, G. (1933). *Ibid.*, 33, 379.
 GRASSET, E. & LEWIN, W. (1936). *Brit. J. exp. Path.*, 17, 179.
 HORGAN, E. S. (1932). *J. Hyg. Camb.*, 32, 523.
 KAUFFMANN, F. & WHITE, P. E. (1934). *Ibid.*, 34, 333.
 SMITH, J. (1932). *Ibid.*, 32, 143.
 WHITEHEAD, N. T. (1930). *J. R. Army med. Cps.*, 55, 81.

CORRESPONDENCE.

BANCROFTIAN FILARIASIS AND THE RETICULO- ENDOTHELIAL SYSTEM.

To the Editor, TRANSACTIONS of the Royal Society of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene.

SIR,

All those whose paths have now diverged from their original first love—the study of filariasis—a study which must always be regarded as the corner stone of tropical medicine, will find their interest aroused afresh by Colonel CLAYTON LANE's paper in these TRANSACTIONS.*

There may be some who, like myself, find his arguments, though clearly expressed in faultless English, just a little difficult to follow. The recent advances in knowledge are so many and so diverse in this direction that it is hard to keep pace with them. Into the vexed question of the mechanism of periodicity, I do not propose to enter now, as I am definitely of the opinion that this matter cannot be settled unless many more detailed observations can be obtained and some suitable experimental animal, susceptible to infection with *Wuchereria bancrofti*, discovered. Then, and only then, can this matter be transferred from the *cumuli* of speculation to the *terra firma* of verifiable facts.

But where I feel inclined to disagree with Colonel CLAYTON LANE is where he refers to my own part in the elucidation of the pathology of filariasis. Naturally I feel it a great honour that he should refer to my own work at all, and I feel loathe to enter, at this stage, on any question of priority. But I do maintain that I was the first to demonstrate the complete, and as it has proved to be, accurate pathology of filariasis. This was described by me in the account of my work in Fiji in 1910 and 1911, published in 1912. I feel disposed to claim that my figures and drawings clearly demonstrate that I was the first to show the part played by endothelial cells in the pathology of Bancroftian filariasis. A great deal of the credit for the proper explanation of the pathological picture has been attributed by Colonel CLAYTON LANE to my friend, the late Professor F. W. O'CONNOR. It is true, I admit, that his material was much more extensive and much more carefully worked out than in the case of the scantier and hastily collected material I was able to obtain under much more primitive conditions and with less extensive assistance; but I do claim that the main facts have been borne out by more recent work. I cannot and do not claim that it was proved that the dead and defunct microfilariae

*LANE, CLAYTON. (1937). Bancroftian filariasis and the reticulo-endothelial system. *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. & Hyg.*, 31, 61.

are engulfed by endothelial cells, but I was able to demonstrate proliferation of the endothelial lining of lymphatic channels, giant cell formation and proliferation of fibroblasts in glands from which adult filariae were obtained. In mentioning the fact (p. 62) that CRUICKSHANK and WRIGHT (1914)* demonstrated the formation of giant cells in the vicinity of adult filaria parasites, my previous work mentioned above appears to have been overlooked. My figures (Plate XXV., Figs. 1, 2 and 3)† abundantly prove that I had already, in 1912, described and figured this giant cell formation.

No one more than myself is ready to confess that many gaps existed in the completeness of my work on filariasis and elephantiasis in Fiji, but even at this distance of time I think that what I was able to show was the best that could have been done under the circumstances.

I am, etc.,

PHILIP MANSON-BAHR.

BEJEL.

To the Editor, TRANSACTIONS of the Royal Society of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene.

DEAR SIR,

I have read with very great interest the paper by Dr. E. H. HUDSON‡ on bejel and the discussion thereon. Dr. HUDSON has described a disease existing under this name amongst a relatively small Bedouin population of the Euphrates valley, whilst Dr. CORNER has seen the same disease under the same name in the Tigris valley. Dr. HUDSON has suggested that the disease presents a sufficiently distinct clinical and epidemiological entity to justify the inclusion of the word "bejel" in medical nomenclature.

Throughout much of the Sudan, "bagl" ("g" usually soft) is a well-known disease. There is no doubt that "bejel" and "bagl" are transliterations from the same Arabic word. The difference is but one of phonetic convention.

In the Sudan, however, "bagl" is a colloquial word with the sole meaning of gonorrhoea. Unlike the British clinicians before the day of JOHN HUNTER's classic experiment, the Sudanese make a clear distinction between gonorrhoea and syphilis and they are aware of the generally venereal origin of both diseases.

I am informed by Dr. R. H. KHABBAZ, a graduate of Beirut, that the word "bagl" or "bejel" is not used in Syria to mean either syphilis or gonorrhoea. I understand that the word is not used in Egypt. It is not given in *An English-Arabic Dictionary of Medicine, etc.*, by Dr. MOHAMAD SHARAF (published by the Ministry of Education, Egypt).

*CRUICKSHANK, J. A. & WRIGHT, R. E. (1914). *Indian J. Med. Res.*, 1, 741.

†BAHR, P. H. (1912). *J. Lond. Sch. trop. Med.*, Supplement No. 1.

‡HUDSON, E. H. (1937). Bejel: the endemic syphilis of the Euphrates Arab. *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 30 (1), 9.

Through the kindness of Mr. TEWFIK KHABBAZ, a scholar of Arabic, I learn that "baglah" is an obsolete Arabic word meaning ulcer. Of this word, "bagl" is a plural form. Dr. HUDSON's patients are thus, apparently, complaining of ulcers. The singular form of "bagl" is occasionally used in the Sudan meaning gonorrhoea.

It is generally held that the Arabic penetration into the Sudan came originally from the East. It is striking that the word transliterated "bejel" or "bagl" has survived in two districts relatively remote and has apparently not survived in the associated countries of Syria and Egypt. I do not know whether it is used or not in other parts of the Arabic-speaking world. It is furthermore interesting to speculate as to the different meanings, venereal and non-venereal, which the word has acquired.

Dr. HUDSON has pointed out that gonorrhoea is rare amongst the Bedouin Arabs of the Euphrates. It would interest me to learn the name they give to this disease and whether they realize its venereal origin.

Finally, it remains to raise a mild protest against the incorporation of "bejel," meaning non-venereally acquired endemic syphilis, in medical nomenclature. We, and our several million Sudanese patients, shall continue to look upon "bagl" as a generally venereally acquired disease—gonorrhoea.

*Mudiria, Khartoum,
Sudan.*

I am, etc.,

H. RICHARDS.

ELECTION OF HONORARY FELLOW.

PROFESSOR BERNHARD NOCHT.

At the Council Meeting on 21st October, 1937, reference was made to the forthcoming celebrations in Hamburg on 4th November, in connection with the eightieth birthday of the veteran Professor BERNHARD NOCHT.

In recognition of the great importance and international value of his work in tropical medicine, it was unanimously decided to make Professor NOCHT an HONORARY FELLOW of the Royal Society of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene, and to send to him the congratulations of the Council on the occasion of his eightieth birthday.

TRANSACTIONS
OF THE
ROYAL SOCIETY OF TROPICAL MEDICINE
AND HYGIENE.

VOL. XXXI. No. 4. JANUARY, 1938.

Proceedings of a **Clinical and Laboratory Meeting of the Society**, held at the
Hospital for Tropical Diseases, Gordon Street, London, at 8.15 p.m.,
on Thursday, 18th November, 1937.

Lt.-Col. S. P. JAMES, *C.M.G.*, M.D., F.R.S., I.M.S. (ret.), *President*,
in the Chair.

DEMONSTRATIONS.

Mr. A. H. McIndoe and Dr. P. Manson-Bahr.

Unusual case of elephantiasis of the leg in a woman treated by operation.

The circumference of the thigh measured 36 inches, that of the leg 32 inches.
The elephantoid condition was undoubtedly of streptococcal origin and its

development had been associated with pyrexial attacks in which the patient was severely ill. All sources of focal sepsis were eliminated prior to operation, the mouth being cleaned and all septic teeth extracted. Operation consisted in the removal of a considerable quantity of skin and subcutaneous tissue from the medial aspects of leg and thigh.

Dr. P. Manson-Bahr.

Cases :

- (1) Amoebic infection of skin surrounding a colostomy wound (photograph and sections).
- (2) Amoebic ulcer of the rectum of 20 years' standing, resembling carcinoma.
- (3) Two cases of abortus fever.
- (4) A case of acute dilatation of the stomach in amoebic dysentery.
- (5) Case of pancreatic cyst—diagnosed primarily as a malarial spleen.
- (6) Acute amoebic hepatitis resembling typhoid.

Dr. G. W. M. Findlay.

Two methods of growing viruses for purposes of immunization.

- (1) Growth in flasks of serum Tyrode solution containing a small amount of minced chick embryo.
- (2) Growth on the chorio-allantoic membrane of the developing chick embryo.

Mr. W. H. McMullen and Major J. A. Cruickshank.

A case of *Filaria bancrofti* in the interior of the eye.

Only two certain cases have been reported previously, one by KOMAN NAYAR and one by R. E. WRIGHT. The present case is an Indian student from Calcutta. He has microfilariæ in the blood and an eosinophilia of 27 per cent., but he shows no clinical signs of filariasis.

He gives a history of iritis a year ago and the present attack of iritis commenced in September. It presented no special features at first, and was gradually clearing up. On 6th October during examination with the slit lamp, there suddenly came into sight in the aqueous a minute worm-like object, actively motile and very thin. Its extremely sinuous form and active motility made estimation of length very difficult. It was seen only for a few seconds and apparently disappeared behind the iris. It was seen again on 13th October, and shown to Colonel WRIGHT who agreed that the object seen in the anterior

chamber was undoubtedly a nematode, a very young one, much smaller than those he had seen previously in the eye in India.

Dr. G. R. Mather Cordiner.

A series of radiograms showing appearances in ulcerative colitis.

Dr. A. F. Cole.

X-ray photographs of a case of extensive necrosis of the cranial bones following empyema in a boy aged 17½.

May, 1936.—Pleurisy followed by empyema. *June*, 1936.—Rib resection and siphon drainage: contents 3 pints pus. No tubercle bacilli but anaerobic streptococci present. Healed completely. *November*, 1936.—Slight blow to occiput was followed by necrosis of occipital bone. Anaerobic streptococci present.

Subsequently there has been progressive necrosis of both parietals, both temporals, and both frontal bones. Many sequestra have been removed and seven drainage incisions made. Necrosis steadily advancing.

Treatment.—6 ferrous sulphate pills (Glaxo) daily; 3 prontosil tablets daily; open air and good feeding; peroxide of hydrogen lavage.

Present Blood Picture, *November*, 1937.—Haemoglobin, 78 per cent. Reds, 5,080,000 per c.cm. Whites, 13,800 per c.cm. Colour index, 0.78. Differential count: Polymorphs, 80 per cent.; lymphocytes, 14 per cent.; monocytes, 6 per cent. No abnormal red cells. Wassermann negative.

Summary.

It is difficult to decide whether to advise extensive necrosis operations or to continue to encourage natural resistance with local drainage and drugs.

The periodic examination of pus films shows remarkable decrease in numbers of streptococci: on one occasion two out of seven cultures from different sinuses remained sterile and it is possible that prontosil may have been a factor in producing this result.

Dr. N. Hamilton Fairley.

I. Pathological specimens in recent fatal cases of Weil's disease.

II. Cases.

(1) Hepatic cirrhosis with haematemesis and megalocytic anaemia (storage defect?).

(2) Tropical sprue treated with anahaemin—Haematological response.

(3) Case with calcification of the spleen of unknown aetiology (X-ray picture).

Dr. N. Hamilton Fairley and Mr. Naunton Morgan.

Case.

Segmental ulcerative colitis with polyposis (X-ray pictures).

Dr. N. Hamilton Fairley and Mr. R. J. Bromfield.

Pseudo-methaemoglobin, occurring naturally in pancreatic cyst fluid as well as that produced artificially was demonstrated on the Hartridge reversion spectroscope. Tables were shown comparing and contrasting pseudo-methaemoglobin with other blood pigments such as methaemoglobin and sulphaemoglobin having an α band in the red portion of the spectrum.

I. Pseudo-methaemoglobin—its demonstration in pancreatic cyst fluid.

Over 3 litres of dark brown turbid fluid was aspirated by Mr. McINDOE from a large pancreatic cyst in a patient under the care of Dr. MANSON-BAHR. The fluid, which was just alkaline to litmus, contained albumin and diastase, but no bile salts or pigments. The benzidine test was positive. After centrifugalization an occasional red cell and leucocyte were found in the deposit.

Spectroscopical examination showed no oxyhaemoglobin but an α band in the red at approximately 6230 Å, with a diffuse absorption in the green-blue portion of the spectrum. The α band remained unaltered after treatment with (1) freshly prepared Stokes's reagent; (2) ammonium sulphide (10 per cent.); (3) hydrogen peroxide (10 volumes); (4) coal gas; (5) hydrazine hydrate (50 per cent.). On the other hand, it was definitely dispersed by solid sodium hydrosulphite ($\text{Na}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_4$). In its behaviour to chemical reagents the pigment corresponded to pseudo-methaemoglobin. Pseudo-methaemoglobin can be readily distinguished from methaemoglobin and sulphaemoglobin by carrying out the above-mentioned tests, as well as by comparison on a Hartridge reversion spectroscope, as was demonstrated at the meeting. The α band of pseudo-methaemoglobin was shown to lie mid-way between methaemoglobin (6300 Å) and sulphaemoglobin (6180 Å). With methaemoglobin the α band was dispersed with all six reagents mentioned. With sulphaemoglobin, though the α band was slowly dispersed with hydrogen peroxide and showed a slight shift towards the green with coal gas, it remained unaltered with Stokes's reagent, ammonium sulphide (10 per cent.), sodium hydrosulphite and hydrazine hydrate (50 per cent.).

Comment.—In a former communication* to the Society we have shown that pseudo-methaemoglobin is produced in severe intravascular haemolysis such as occurs in blackwater fever and incompatible transfusion where oxyhaemoglobin is liberated from the corpuscles into the circulating plasma.

*FAIRLEY, N. H. & BROMFIELD, R. J. (1937). Pseudo-methaemoglobin in blackwater fever and its clinical significance. *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 31, 139.

The present finding is of importance in as much as it shows that pseudo-methaemoglobin may also be produced outside the vascular system when blood escapes into a cavity, is haemolysed and subsequently mixes with plasma or serous transudate or exudate. We predict its presence in the brown coloured fluids found in other types of cysts which have contained blood as well as in joint effusions occurring in the haemarthroses.

II. Artificial production of pseudo-methaemoglobin

(a) *By incubating Solutions of Oxyhaemoglobin with Plasma derived from certain Animal Species.*

For this purpose plasma derived from man and monkeys of the species *Macacus rhesus*, *M. iris* and *Cercopithecus aethiops* were utilised. When 1 volume of a strong solution of oxyhaemoglobin from any of these sources was incubated at 40° C. with 3 volumes of human or monkey plasma collected under sterile conditions, pseudo-methaemoglobin was produced within a period of 2 to 3 days. On the other hand, when solutions of oxyhaemoglobin were incubated with plasma derived from laboratory animals such as the rabbit, guineapig and rat, pseudo-methaemoglobin was never demonstrated, though methaemoglobin appeared in certain of the specimens. Control solutions of oxyhaemoglobin from all species readily produced methaemoglobin when incubated alone for a period of 12 to 24 hours.

(b) *By adding Alkaline Haematin to Plasma derived from certain Animal Species.*

Alkaline haematin was prepared by adding pure haemin to water made alkaline with two or three drops of 10 per cent. sodium hydroxide, and this was subsequently added to plasma derived from man, *Macacus rhesus*, *M. iris* and *Cercopithecus aethiops* and certain other animals including the rabbit and guineapig.

In the case of human and monkey plasma pseudo-methaemoglobin was immediately produced, but not in that of any of the other animals investigated.

Comment.—The spectroscopic picture of pseudo-methaemoglobin produced by incubating oxyhaemoglobin with plasma at 40° C. was identical with that encountered in blackwater fever, the β and γ bands closely approximating to those of oxyhaemoglobin. When the pigment was synthesised by adding pure alkaline haematin to appropriate human or simian plasma known to be spectroscopically free from oxyhaemoglobin, the α bands closely approximated or were co-linear, but the β and γ bands were no longer demonstrable, being replaced by a general absorption in this portion of the spectrum.

Apart from these different spectroscopical features, which appear to be dependent on the absence of oxyhaemoglobin in solutions of the synthesised pigment, the chemical reactions of the incubated and synthesised pigment are similar in all respects.

From these and other observations there can be little doubt that pseudo-methaemoglobin is a by-product of haemoglobin katabolism, and is formed both *in vivo* and *in vitro* by the union of haematin with some protein or other nitrogenous constituent contained in human and simian plasma. The observation that the plasma of laboratory animals is incapable of producing pseudo-methaemoglobin either on prolonged incubation with strong solutions of oxyhaemoglobin at 40° C. or on the direct addition of alkaline haematin, indicates that the particular protein or nitrogenous constituent implicated is either absent or present in insufficient concentration to form the new pigment in demonstrable amounts. On the other hand, the oxyhaemoglobin, derived from any species of animal, is equally effective as a source of pseudo-methaemoglobin. This, however, is not surprising since the haemoglobin of mammals varies in the globin and not in the haematin content of the molecule.

From the physiological and pathological viewpoints, these observations imply that pseudo-methaemoglobin is only likely to be formed in man and monkeys, and not in ordinary laboratory animals. This is probably one of the reasons why pseudo-methaemoglobin has not been previously recognised by laboratory workers.

TRANSACTIONS OF THE ROYAL SOCIETY OF
TROPICAL MEDICINE AND HYGIENE.
Vol. XXXI. No. 4. January, 1938.

Proceedings of an Ordinary Meeting of the Society, held at Manson House,
26, Portland Place, London, at 8.15 p.m.,
on Thursday, 9th December, 1937.

Lt.-Col. S. P. JAMES, *C.M.G.*, M.D., F.R.S., I.M.S. (ret.), *President*,
in the Chair.

PAPERS.

THE EPIDEMIOLOGY AND CONTROL OF LEPROSY.*

BY

ERNEST MUIR, *C.I.E.*, M.D., F.R.C.S.E.,

Medical Secretary, British Empire Leprosy Relief Association.

Either of the two subjects mentioned in the title of this paper might, in its complexity and far-reaching scope, be worthy of a treatise, I shall therefore now study the epidemiology of leprosy only briefly and in so far as is necessary to suggest methods of controlling the disease.

Epidemiology is a word which has to be justified when applied to leprosy. We think of epidemics in connection with acute diseases introduced from without with a more or less rapid rise and fall of incidence and virulence; or as related to a temporary increase in an endemic disease. What do we know of the introduction of leprosy? We read of leprosy in India in the Vedic times, and of leprous slaves being imported from the sources of the Nile into Egypt several thousands of years before Christ; but all is so vague and so distant in time and space that it is difficult to associate leprosy with a graphic curve. Leprosy, as found in the great continents of Asia and Africa, seems like the surface of the ocean, almost a dead level, stretched out over the centuries from the time of prehistoric man.

It is when we find leprosy introduced in recent times into islands where it

*This paper was read previously at the Edinburgh Branch of the Royal Society of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene on 25th October, 1937.

did not previously exist, and rapidly spreading through the native population ; and where, as in the Island of Nauru, in the Western Pacific, modern methods of control have checked and are gradually eliminating the disease, that we can see clearly that leprosy is subject to the laws of epidemiology.

Whatever the actual causes which control the spread of leprosy, it seems clear that it belongs to a certain stage of human social development. In India it is not found among the nomadic tribes or among the aborigines until they forsake their tribal customs and mix with, and adopt the customs of, more civilized people. In Arabia and in the Sudan in the wild nomadic life of the desert leprosy apparently hardly exists. It is in the comparatively fertile Yemen and at points where the contact with the outer world is most close that the disease is found.

On the other side of the picture we find leprosy constantly being introduced in our own country, by those who have been infected in the tropics ; and yet, though it is not a notifiable disease and few special precautions are taken, leprosy with a few notable exceptions, does not spread. Recently some agitation was caused in France because of the ninety-five known lepers in Paris. Six had never been outside the country, and had contracted the disease by sexual contact with lepers and four others had contracted it conjugally. It is noteworthy that they were all adults. Perhaps the reason why leprosy does not spread in western Europe (with the exception of the Iberian Peninsula) is that, though it enters the community, it seldom enters the family. Those who settle in this country after contracting leprosy in the tropics seem for various reasons seldom to come into close contact with young children. There is evidence that, apart from the infection of children, leprosy has little tendency to spread.

MOLESWORTH upholds the theory that the present-day exemption of western Europe is due to racial immunity, the more susceptible strains having been eliminated during the Middle Ages, when leprosy was prevalent. There is little evidence, however, to support this theory. It is true that there were once 2,000 lazarets in France, and 300 in this country ; but there is reason to believe that many of those formerly called lepers were not suffering from HANSEN'S infection, and that leprosy was never sufficiently prevalent to have considerably immunized the community.

The general statement therefore holds good that leprosy lies in the social stratum between nomadism and a certain moderately high level of sanitary and economic advancement. But even short of a high degree of such advancement there are many factors which have considerable influence in controlling the disease.

Among these factors are the traditional customs regarding leprosy which grow up in the community. Recently reports have appeared of outrages in China, where some 200 lepers are known to have been lined up and shot by military leaders. It is only recently that such occurrences have been widely reported in the Press, but this method of dealing with leprosy is no new thing

in China. Nor is China the only place where such action has been taken. In south-west Nigeria leprosy is comparatively uncommon in spite of its great frequency in the Northern Provinces, and especially in the centre and east of the Southern Provinces. One likely explanation is that in the old slave-trade days lepers were got rid of in a manner similar to that in China. Such methods, apart altogether from their appalling cruelty, often defeat their own object, as they drive likely victims to concealment and consequently favour further spread of the disease.

The same rule holds good regarding all use of compulsion in leprosy, if it is applied from outside the community. This has been well exemplified in the Philippine Islands, where compulsory laws of segregation applied since the beginning of this century have done but little to get to the root of the problem.

The relationship of density of population to leprosy is an interesting one. Unlike many other diseases leprosy is not as a rule associated with a dense population. In Great Britain it lingered on longest in scattered hamlets of Cornwall and Shetland. In Norway it continued in the fishermen's huts in the lonely fjords. In the lonely valleys of the Himalayas it lingers on in little cabins generation after generation. This is probably explained in part at least by the peculiar susceptibility of the child to leprosy, the low toxicity and low fatality of the disease, and the long period after infection before the first signs are recognized. Thus leprosy is a disease of the crowded house, room and bed, and the more crowded and insanitary these are, the more likely is it to spread. In India the joint family system has an important bearing. In the first generation the house may be adequate in size; but in the second generation, when the families of several sons have to be accommodated in the same building, overcrowding is the result; and if one leper is introduced the infection has every chance of spreading by close daily contact. In Indian villages, the greater the amount of mixing of all castes and strata of the population, the more does leprosy tend to spread. This is especially so in industrial centres where tribal and caste rules are to a large extent laid aside, and those among whom leprosy is a common disease mix freely with other races who know little of leprosy and are unable to recognize it.

The rise and fall of the leprosy curve in an area is not due to the development of physiological immunity so much as to the growth of a mental and social immunity. As the disease increases in the community its members learn to recognize it and take precautions. These precautions may not be adequate, nor sufficient to eliminate the disease, but they are generally sufficient to curtail it. Often the deformed neural case, in whom infection has more or less died out, will, because of his conspicuous signs, be isolated outside the village; while the highly infectious cutaneous type is still allowed to mix with all and sundry. The fact that children, though infected in their earliest years, do not show conspicuous signs till puberty, leads to the wrong assumption that they are not susceptible, and they are allowed to mix freely with infectious cases.

The Use of Compulsion.

What then are the general principles which should govern a campaign for the control of leprosy in an endemic area? Compulsory segregation of all cases in institutions would be the ideal method. This may be possible in small isolated areas like the island of Nauru in the Western Pacific, where autocratic power is effective; or it might be applied where people are sufficiently intelligent and advanced to lend co-operation. But in vast areas like India, China and Africa the people are ignorant and superstitious, and the incidence is often 1 per cent. of the population, and not infrequently may rise much higher (in West Africa it is 10 to 15 per cent. in many places). There institutional segregation is obviously out of the question except for a certain small fraction of the whole, and compulsory laws enforced by those outside the community would lead to concealment and thus defeat their own end.

Compulsion has its right place, however, when it is applied not from without but from within—by the community itself. In England one of the most important factors in stamping out leprosy was the application of a modified form of the old Jewish law. The certified leper was counted as dead and banished by the community from its midst. The burial mass was pronounced over him and he was forbidden to buy or sell in the market or to come into close contact with others, and especially with children. These measures may not have been very humane, but they were in keeping with the times, and they were apparently effective. They were a result of the translation of the Bible, and were a modified application of the levitical law following on an educational campaign by the Church, which was at that time the chief source of enlightenment and progress in the land.

In some parts of Africa leprosy is proving an alarming problem. In parts of the Belgian Congo the proved incidence is from 10 to 15 per cent., and in some places even more. There seems little doubt that this is largely due to lack of sanitation and the poor physique of the people, suffering severely as they do from parasitic and nutritional diseases. The people realize the danger of contagion, and their clan system would drive out the foreign leper. But family instincts are strong and the child is closely nursed and tended by the infectious parent or relation, and so the disease spreads within the family and clan. Formerly the people were always at war with each other and the clans did not mix. Now, under European control, war is abolished and former enemies fraternize and the conditions for the spread of leprosy are thus more favourable.

Treatment.

The place of treatment in the control of leprosy is an important one, but one which has often been exaggerated and misunderstood. We have no specific treatment for leprosy, any more than we have for tuberculosis. The most we can say is that leprosy compared stage by stage with tuberculosis is somewhat

more amenable to treatment than the latter disease. In both, the main reliance must be placed upon general methods and improvement of the health of the patient. When this can be secured, and with the help of certain special remedies, such as chaulmoogra oil and its preparations, the majority of cases may be expected to recover, though the more the disease advances beyond a certain stage the more difficult and hopeless does it become. But the main difficulty, at least at present, is to secure the general hygienic and nutritional conditions necessary to make special treatment of any avail.

Perhaps the main value of out-patient treatment is as a means of winning contact and the good will of the patient. Once these are secured it is possible to follow him up to his home, and there, after examination of contacts and thorough investigation of social and economic conditions, to institute an educational campaign.

Such a campaign is not by any means confined to leprosy. In fact leprosy may be used as a key to open the door to general hygienic reform. When arbitrary compulsion is attempted the fear of leprosy drives to concealment. But when the patient's co-operation has been won by offering him treatment, and this has been followed up by a careful survey in the village, tracing the spread of the disease through past generations, then the dread of leprosy may be used as a potent factor in inducing the individual and the community to take the simple means necessary to prevent the spread of the disease. For leprosy, though difficult to cure, is easy to prevent when the good will, understanding and co-operation of those concerned have been won.

Leper Settlements.

One of the all-essential factors in the control of leprosy is the large, well-staffed leper settlement. Such an institution must not be confused with the old type of leper asylum, where hopeless cases, driven out from their homes, congregate and pass their miserable and hopeless days fed by charity. The modern leper settlement, some of the best of which may be seen in Nigéria, is a very different place. There the patients are suitably housed and spend their lives in cheerfulness and usefulness. There it is possible to organize treatment in its only effective form—occupational therapy. Such a settlement is a hive of industry; agriculture, horticulture, various industries, house building and road making are among the many activities. School and Church, scouts and guides, orchestra and dancing are among the many educational and social amenities, while the lepers themselves act as chiefs, magistrates and police to maintain order and organize various departments.

The well-run leper settlement is in fact a model village, or cluster of villages—a centre of culture and progress, not only benefitting its own inhabitants but potentially a source of enlightenment and sanitary and social development to the whole area. This is indeed the most important aspect of the leper settlement.

It is a thoroughly democratic institution, and yet discipline and training enter into all its activities. A certain proportion of the patients can look forward to complete recovery, and after their years of training in public health, and especially in the prevention of leprosy, they may take a valuable share in the campaign against leprosy in the villages.

Such an institution requires money, but when well organized it is astonishing how far the money will go. It cannot of course be self supporting. Many of the patients are in excellent general health, and the large majority can do a good day's work, but there is always a residue of the weak and the helpless, the crippled and the blind. In Nigeria the financial burden is largely met by the Government and Native Administrations, but the staff and organization and administration come from various missions. The success of a leper settlement necessarily depends on the man in charge; and highly qualified and devoted men and women have not been wanting to undertake this difficult and laborious task, on salaries little more than a subsistence allowance; all honour to their noble and altruistic spirit.

What of the Future of Leprosy Control ?

Leprosy in endemic countries is so inextricably bound up with economic, social, educational and sanitary problems, that its control can only advance simultaneously with the solution of these problems. It is significant that in this country the lazaret was the precursor of the modern hospital, and that many of the early public health laws in this country were passed for the control of leprosy. From its very nature leprosy is qualified to be a key disease, a key to open the door to further general sanitary and social reforms. I have already described the Nigerian leper settlement as a centre of general enlightenment in the district where it is situated. Likewise the fear of leprosy may be used as a force which, if wisely directed, will drive the endangered villager to adopt general sanitary reforms.

Dr. MUIR showed a cinematograph film illustrating the activities of a leper settlement.

TRANSACTIONS OF THE ROYAL SOCIETY OF
TROPICAL MEDICINE AND HYGIENE.
Vol. XXXI. No. 4. January, 1938.

TUBERCULOID LEPROSY.

BY

WILLIAM HUGHES, M.D., M.R.C.P. (LOND.).*

Acting Physician, General Hospital, Singapore.

Lately Medical Superintendent, Federal Leper Settlement, Sungei Buloh, F.M.S.

INTRODUCTION.

There is no other aspect of leprosy which has attracted so much attention in recent years as the tuberculoid lesion. The recognition of this variety of leprosy is probably the most important advance in the study of the disease since HANSEN discovered the leprosy bacillus in 1874. After the discovery of hydnocarpus oil attention was almost exclusively devoted to the application of its soaps and esters in the treatment of leprosy. In India especially the drug was hailed as a specific, and adverse reports from other countries scarcely tempered the enthusiasm of the Indian leprologists. In any case the circumstances were peculiar. The fact is that hydnocarpus *was* producing results in India even though it was not so successful elsewhere. Again, outside India, doctors were reporting trials on series of patients with discrete lesions which could be accurately described, measured and, above all, photographed before and after treatment. In such a series of cases the results of treatment—no matter what drug was used—especially over a short period, were almost invariably good. Now, the tuberculoid lesion is a discrete lesion which lends itself to photography and measurement. The incidence of tuberculoid leprosy in northern India according to LOWE's (1937b) latest figures is about 40 per cent. of the total cases. When it is realised that tuberculoid leprosy is easily influenced—although not necessarily cured—by various medicaments and further that it is subject to various changes

*I am indebted to the staff and patients of the Federal Settlement, Sungei Buloh, F.M.S., for much help and co-operation. I am deeply indebted to the staff of the Institute of Medical Research, Kuala Lumpur, and especially to Dr. R. LEWTHWAITE and Dr. SAVOOR who have very kindly cut and prepared some hundreds of sections of leprosy material for me. To Prof. W. A. YOUNG, of Singapore, I am indebted for some helpful criticism and to the Director of Medical Services, Straits Settlements, for permission to publish this paper.

in appearance even in the absence of treatment, then we begin to understand why workers in different countries should report such conflicting results. I think it is a good thing that the attention of leprologists has been diverted for the moment from the treatment of leprosy to a study of the evolution and significance of the tuberculoid lesion.

HISTORICAL.

From the histological point of view all the main facts in regard to tuberculoid leprosy have been known for many years. WADE (1934a) gives an historical review of the subject and says JADASSHON first mentioned giant cells in leprosy in 1898. PAUTRIER and BOEZ, describing a case of tuberculoid leprosy at the Strasbourg conference in 1923, stated that RAMON Y CAJAL, THOMA, MITSUDA and others had previously recognized the existence of giant cells in leprosy. HANSEN and LOOFT (1895), however, state: "in the many . . . thousands of preparations of leprosy affections, which we have had under the microscope, we have never seen either a typical giant cell with marginal nuclei or caseous degeneration. There are indeed multinuclear cells . . . but never giant cells like those of tubercle." It is strange that ROGERS and MUIR (1925) do not mention it in their *Leprosy* although many of the cases at their disposal must have been tuberculoid. For all that, one can recognize the lesion in their illustrations. HENDERSON described the annular lesion and the uniformly raised plaque in 1928. The most important step in the study of the condition was made in 1934, when WADE crystallized his experiences into a systematic description of the lesion.

CLINICAL FEATURES.

It would be difficult to improve on WADE's (1934a) excellent description of the tuberculoid lesion, to which the reader is referred. His illustrations are good and they make the recognition of typical lesions a comparatively simple affair. There are, however, so many divergencies from the typical, especially in that borderland where the lesion tends to degenerate to the cutaneous type, that this aspect of tuberculoid leprosy will be a fascinating and, I think, a profitable study for years to come.

For purposes of description the basic skin lesions fall under two headings: (1) the annular or "zone" lesion and (2) the raised plaque. There is a tendency for these two types to follow different courses, especially during reaction, but it would be unwise in our present state of knowledge to lay too much emphasis on minor differences. The raised plaque can, in my opinion, merge into the annular type and both types of lesion can occur at the same time in the same patient.

(a) The annular lesion consists typically of a depigmented patch surrounded by a narrow, raised, erythematous border. The centre is usually anaesthetic

to light touch but not completely analgesic. As a matter of interest it might be noted that it reacts to leprolin just as the surrounding skin does and may give Lewis's triple reaction on heavy stroking. The margin is raised, sometimes very slightly indeed, and often scaly. The colour of the margin in a light-skinned race—Chinese, for example—is red or dusky and is always in contrast with the depigmented centre. The margin is usually one-eighth to half an inch wide (see Figs. 1 and 2). Two or more patches may coalesce to give a serpiginous outline. The lesions vary greatly in size and number. One sees small lesions—not more than 1 inch in diameter—or again, large patches covering many square feet on the trunk.

(b) The raised plaque is not so easy to recognize as the annular type. Typically it is slightly raised above the level of the surrounding skin. The surface is scaly and often puckered, or it may be granular, or even warty. It has a peculiar and almost distinctive colour due no doubt to a certain amount of venous stasis in the underlying granuloma. The edge is sloping, but it may be abrupt, or again, abrupt in one direction and shelving off imperceptibly into healthy skin in another direction. There are great variations in number and in size. In some cases the lesions are small and multiple; in other cases there are only two or three large patches (Figs. 2, 4, 5). The larger plaques are commonly met with on the face, back and about the large joints—especially near the shoulders and knees.

PATHOLOGY.

For purposes of description the pathology of the plaque is identical with that of the margin of the annular type.

The essential feature of this lesion is a dense cellular infiltration of the corium which tends to destroy the specialized structures contained therein, including the hair follicles (Figs. 9 and 10), sebaceous glands and superficial nerves. The infiltration is circumscribed, but it may extend upwards to flatten the papillae and downwards into the subcutis. MUIR and CHATTERJI (1933) noted that it followed the course of the superficial nerves for some distance. WADE (1936), in a recent classification, reserves the term "major tuberculoid" for these extensive infiltrations.

The predominant and characteristic cell in this infiltration is the epithelioid cell, easily recognized by its oval, vesicular nucleus. The origin of this cell, which is an essential constituent of all the granulomata, has given rise to much discussion in the past. Most modern authorities agree in classifying it with the histiocytes as part of the reticulo-endothelial system of ASCHOFF. A more important matter is the question of the identity of this cell with the "foam" cell (lepra cell, Virchow cell) of cutaneous leprosy. HENDERSON (1930), in a review of the pathology of leprosy, considered that the foam cell was an epithelioid cell in which the nucleus was pushed aside by a felted mass of bacilli. MUIR (1934a) and MUENDE in SILCOCK's (1934) case seem to regard

the two cells as identical. WADE (1936), however, would draw a sharp distinction between the two cells. MITSUDA (1935) found globi and LOWE (1936) found bacilli in giant cells. As the latter are presumably derived from the epithelioid cells, it is probably safe and it is certainly convenient to regard the foam cell and the epithelioid cell as identical in origin and purpose.

The infiltration in the tuberculoid lesion takes the form of more or less discrete aggregates of epithelioid cells with a sprinkling of round cells and fibroblasts especially at the periphery of each bundle. Giant cells occur frequently and even when they are not present the cells tend to be arranged in whorls as if preparatory to giant cell formation. The giant cells are of the Langhans type with a homogenous centre and radially arranged nuclei at the periphery and very like those seen in tuberculosis. There is not usually so much round-celled infiltration at the periphery, however, as there is in tuberculosis. Necrosis is unusual, but it does occur. This is the basis of nerve abscess, which must be regarded as part of tuberculoid leprosy. These abscesses are rare outside India and are probably an index of high incidence of tuberculoid leprosy.

Bacilli are difficult to find in the slowly progressive lesion, but, as will be shown later, they can be very numerous during reaction.

The above accounts—necessarily brief and by no means complete—are intended to describe lesions in which activity is at a low ebb. Leprosy is confusing, because, during the progress of the disease, the pathology may undergo a radical change. It is only by frequent biopsy that we can study the dynamic pathology of the disease. The ideal to be aimed at is continuous study of series of cases over a long period. This was not possible during my stay at Sungei Buloh, but by studying a series of cases at different stages of the condition I have tried to construct a composite picture of the progress of the disease. Illustrative cases will be quoted at this stage.

GROUP I.

TYPICAL CASES OF TUBERCULOID LESIONS IN DIFFERENT RACES.

Case 1.

No. 4,400. Chinese, male, aged 55 years. Duration of leprosy 5 years. He began as a neural leper and had a perforating ulcer of the right foot for which his leg was amputated 4 years ago. His main lesions at the moment consist of two large patches on the abdomen and flanks each covering more than 1 square foot in area. The lesions have raised erythematous margins and hypopigmented centres (Fig. 1). Anaesthesia is not complete in the centres.

Laboratory findings.*

Nose.		Ears	Patches
R. — ve.	L. — ve.	R. few.	L. few.
		Neck: few.	

W.R. and Kahn test negative. S.I. 20. A section from one of the abdominal patches showed compact granulomatous infiltration with many giant cells. No acid-fast bacilli were seen in the section.

*W.R. = Wassermann reaction. Bacteriological findings are given as : — ve (negative), few, + ve (positive), ++, according to bacillary content. S.I. = Sedimentation index.



FIG. 1.



FIG. 2.



FIG. 3.



FIG. 4.

FIG. 1.—Large annular lesions on the abdomen, edges infiltrated and raised. Small patches on right cheek and on neck.

FIG. 2.—Annular and plaque lesions.

FIG. 3.—Annular lesion in reaction. Note extensive ulceration, which in some instances has spread to involve the depigmented centre.

FIG. 4.—The facial plaque in reaction. The appearance of the ear, which looks “cutaneous,” is deceptive in such cases. The eye is completely closed. Paralysis of the orbicularis is an inevitable sequel.

the two cells as identical. WADE (1936), however, would draw a sharp distinction between the two cells. MITSUDA (1935) found globi and LOWE (1936) found bacilli in giant cells. As the latter are presumably derived from the epithelioid cells, it is probably safe and it is certainly convenient to regard the foam cell and the epithelioid cell as identical in origin and purpose.

The infiltration in the tuberculoid lesion takes the form of more or less discrete aggregates of epithelioid cells with a sprinkling of round cells and fibroblasts especially at the periphery of each bundle. Giant cells occur frequently and even when they are not present the cells tend to be arranged in whorls as if preparatory to giant cell formation. The giant cells are of the Langhans type with a homogenous centre and radially arranged nuclei at the periphery and very like those seen in tuberculosis. There is not usually so much round-celled infiltration at the periphery, however, as there is in tuberculosis. Necrosis is unusual, but it does occur. This is the basis of nerve abscess, which must be regarded as part of tuberculoid leprosy. These abscesses are rare outside India and are probably an index of high incidence of tuberculoid leprosy.

Bacilli are difficult to find in the slowly progressive lesion, but, as will be shown later, they can be very numerous during reaction.

The above accounts—necessarily brief and by no means complete—are intended to describe lesions in which activity is at a low ebb. Leprosy is confusing, because, during the progress of the disease, the pathology may undergo a radical change. It is only by frequent biopsy that we can study the dynamic pathology of the disease. The ideal to be aimed at is continuous study of series of cases over a long period. This was not possible during my stay at Sungei Buloh, but by studying a series of cases at different stages of the condition I have tried to construct a composite picture of the progress of the disease. Illustrative cases will be quoted at this stage.

GROUP I.

TYPICAL CASES OF TUBERCULOID LESIONS IN DIFFERENT RACES.

Case 1.

No. 4,400. Chinese, male, aged 55 years. Duration of leprosy 5 years. He began as a neural leper and had a perforating ulcer of the right foot for which his leg was amputated 4 years ago. His main lesions at the moment consist of two large patches on the abdomen and flanks each covering more than 1 square foot in area. The lesions have raised erythematous margins and hypopigmented centres (Fig. 1). Anaesthesia is not complete in the centres.

Laboratory findings.*

	Nose.		Ears		Patches
	R. — ve. L. — ve.		R. few. L. few.		Neck: few.

W.R. and Kahn test negative. S.I. 20. A section from one of the abdominal patches showed compact granulomatous infiltration with many giant cells. No acid-fast bacilli were seen in the section.

*W.R. = Wassermann reaction. Bacteriological findings are given as: — ve (negative), few, + ve (positive), ++, according to bacillary content. S.I. = Sedimentation index.



FIG. 1.



FIG. 2.



FIG. 3.



FIG. 4.

FIG. 1.—Large annular lesions on the abdomen, edges infiltrated and raised. Small patches on right cheek and on neck.

FIG. 2.—Annular and plaque lesions.

FIG. 3.—Annular lesion in reaction. Note extensive ulceration, which in some instances has spread to involve the depigmented centre.

FIG. 4.—The facial plaque in reaction. The appearance of the ear, which looks "cutaneous," is deceptive in such cases. The eye is completely closed. Paralysis of the orbicularis is an inevitable sequel.

the two cells as identical. WADE (1936), however, would draw a sharp distinction between the two cells. MITSUDA (1935) found globi and LOWE (1936) found bacilli in giant cells. As the latter are presumably derived from the epithelioid cells, it is probably safe and it is certainly convenient to regard the foam cell and the epithelioid cell as identical in origin and purpose.

The infiltration in the tuberculoid lesion takes the form of more or less discrete aggregates of epithelioid cells with a sprinkling of round cells and fibroblasts especially at the periphery of each bundle. Giant cells occur frequently and even when they are not present the cells tend to be arranged in whorls as if preparatory to giant cell formation. The giant cells are of the Langhans type with a homogenous centre and radially arranged nuclei at the periphery and very like those seen in tuberculosis. There is not usually so much round-celled infiltration at the periphery, however, as there is in tuberculosis. Necrosis is unusual, but it does occur. This is the basis of nerve abscess, which must be regarded as part of tuberculoid leprosy. These abscesses are rare outside India and are probably an index of high incidence of tuberculoid leprosy.

Bacilli are difficult to find in the slowly progressive lesion, but, as will be shown later, they can be very numerous during reaction.

The above accounts—necessarily brief and by no means complete—are intended to describe lesions in which activity is at a low ebb. Leprosy is confusing, because, during the progress of the disease, the pathology may undergo a radical change. It is only by frequent biopsy that we can study the dynamic pathology of the disease. The ideal to be aimed at is continuous study of series of cases over a long period. This was not possible during my stay at Sungei Buloh, but by studying a series of cases at different stages of the condition I have tried to construct a composite picture of the progress of the disease. Illustrative cases will be quoted at this stage.

GROUP I.

TYPICAL CASES OF TUBERCULOID LESIONS IN DIFFERENT RACES.

Case 1.

No. 4,400. Chinese, male, aged 55 years. Duration of leprosy 5 years. He began as a neural leper and had a perforating ulcer of the right foot for which his leg was amputated 4 years ago. His main lesions at the moment consist of two large patches on the abdomen and flanks each covering more than 1 square foot in area. The lesions have raised erythematous margins and hypopigmented centres (Fig. 1). Anaesthesia is not complete in the centres.

Laboratory findings.*

	Nose.	Ears	Patches
R. — ve.	L. — ve.	R. few.	L. few.
			Neck: few.

W.R. and Kahn test negative. S.I. 20. A section from one of the abdominal patches showed compact granulomatous infiltration with many giant cells. No acid-fast bacilli were seen in the section.

*W.R. = Wassermann reaction. Bacteriological findings are given as : — ve (negative), few, + ve (positive), ++, according to bacillary content. S.I. = Sedimentation index.



FIG. 1.



FIG. 2.



FIG. 3.



FIG. 4.

FIG. 1.—Large annular lesions on the abdomen, edges infiltrated and raised. Small patches on right cheek and on neck.

FIG. 2.—Annular and plaque lesions.

FIG. 3.—Annular lesion in reaction. Note extensive ulceration, which in some instances has spread to involve the depigmented centre.

FIG. 4.—The facial plaque in reaction. The appearance of the ear, which looks "cutaneous," is deceptive in such cases. The eye is completely closed. Paralysis of the orbicularis is an inevitable sequel.



FIG. 5.



FIG. 5a.

FIGS. 5 and 5a.—In Fig. 5 paralysis of the superficial facial muscles has occurred. Note the quiescent plaques on the elbows and knee (Fig. 5a).



FIG. 6a.



FIG. 6.



FIG. 6b.

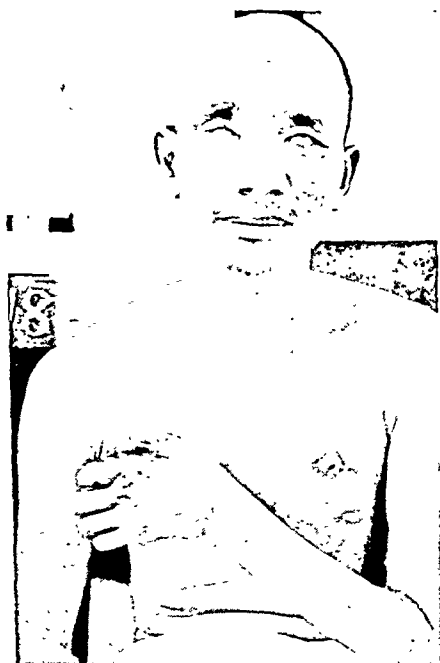


FIG. 7.

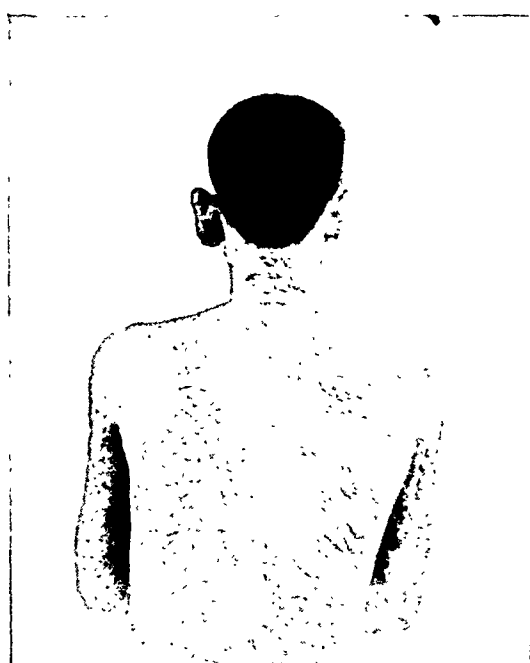


FIG. 8.

FIGS. 6, 6a and 6b.—Note again the discrete lesion with the sharply defined margin. The swelling of the lip gives a good idea of the depth of the infiltration in such a case.

FIG. 7.—The photograph shows the facial lesion and the paralysis of the orbicularis palpebrarum. The patient is trying to close his eyes. The lesion on the hand had receded considerably when the picture was taken.

FIG. 8.—Note that although the lesions are multiple, each is discrete.



FIG. 5.



FIG. 5a.

FIGS. 5 and 5a.—In Fig. 5 paralysis of the superficial facial muscles has occurred. Note the quiescent plaques on the elbows and knee (Fig. 5a).



FIG. 6a.



FIG. 6.



FIG. 6b.

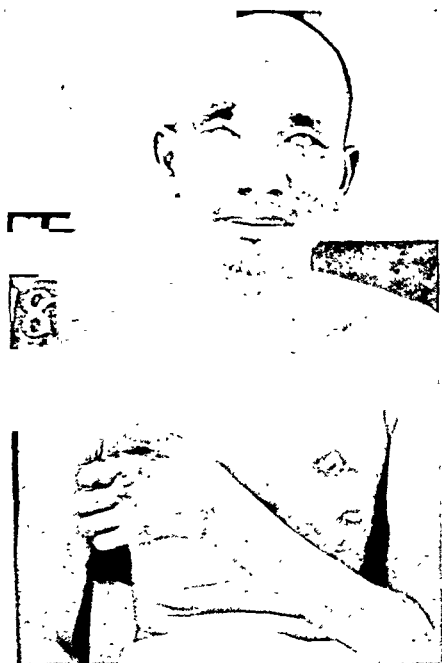


FIG. 7.



FIG. 8.

FIGS. 6, 6a and 6b.—Note again the discrete lesion with the sharply defined margin. The swelling of the lip gives a good idea of the depth of the infiltration in such a case.

FIG. 7.—The photograph shows the facial lesion and the paralysis of the orbicularis palpebrarum. The patient is trying to close his eyes. The lesion on the hand had receded considerably when the picture was taken.

FIG. 8.—Note that although the lesions are multiple, each is discrete.

to WADE (1934a), necrosis is rare in the tuberculoid of leprosy, though common enough in tuberculosis. The growth of the tuberculoid causes pressure on the epidermis, finally leading to erosion. This, and not necrosis, is the basis of ulceration in these cases. The growth and consequent erosion seem to be uniform over wide areas for we have often observed extensive ulceration to occur over-night.

This local upheaval must lead to the extrusion of a large number of bacilli and, apart from the public health point of view, must be regarded as a beneficial reaction. No doubt it was a reaction of this kind, ROGERS and MUIR (1925) had in mind when they discussed "elimination phenomena" in their "third stage" of leprosy.

GROUP III.

THE PLAQUE IN REACTION.

Case 4.

No. 4,569. Chinese, male, aged 36. Duration of leprosy 4 months. The disease began with infiltration of the right cheek and ear lobe. Then another patch appeared on the abdomen. The infiltration on the cheek spread to involve most of the right side of the face. Then it became uniformly raised, cyanosed and succulent, involving the ear and completely closing the right eye (Fig. 4). The abdominal patch is depigmented in the centre with a raised erythematous margin—annular type. A section from here showed typical epithelioid infiltration with a few giant cells. Bacilli were present but very scarce.

Laboratory findings :—

Nose		Ears		Patch
R. few.	L. few.	R. — ve.	L. — ve.	Neck : — ve.

W.R. and Kahn tests negative. S.I. 18.

This case is interesting because it shows a typical reaction in a plaque, while the annular lesion is quiescent.

The infiltration in such cases goes very deep into the tissues. The superficial facial muscles and the superficial branches of the fifth and seventh nerves get caught in the infiltration and are destroyed. This gives rise to a local paralysis and anaesthesia involving the peripheral branches of two different cranial nerves in the same situation—the "extremely peripheral neuritis" of MONRAD-KROHN (1924). The end results of this type of reaction will be seen in the next case.

Case 5.

No. 4,410. Tamil, male, aged 35 years. Leprosy began 5 years ago with ulceration of the right foot. Later fingers became mutilated. He has involvement of face, elbows and left knee. Six months ago face reacted involving eyes. There was a uniform swelling which has now receded causing paralysis of the superficial muscles of the face and ectropion of the right eye (Fig. 5).

Laboratory findings :—

Nose		Ears		Patches
R. — ve.	L. — ve.	R. — ve.	L. — ve.	L. arm : few.

A section from the left knee showed compact granulomatous foci with numerous giant cells. No bacilli were seen.

This case is similar to Case 4. It illustrates the end result of this type of reaction. Smears from the conjunctiva were positive for lepra bacilli. It looks as if ultimate blindness were inevitable. The lesion on the left knee (Fig. 5a) is a typical plaque tuberculoid in a Tamil. It shows no sign of reaction.

Case 6.

No. 4,532. Tamil, female, aged 18 years. Duration of leprosy doubtful. Right small toe lost 8 months before admission. First confinement 6 months before admission. Admitted to Sungei Buloh, 2.4.36. Her skin lesions appeared 2 months after her first confinement.

On admission, she had a large annular lesion extending over buttocks and thighs. There were two plaques on left arm. The left side of the face was greatly swollen and erythematous. The infiltration involved the forehead and left ear lobe. It looked not unlike a cellulitis, but the margin was discrete and constitutional symptoms were very mild. The eye was completely closed. This lesion scaled freely and went down in 3 weeks. It reacted again and she was admitted to hospital on 25.5.36, with reaction in the face and arm lesions. When the reaction subsided in the face a narrow depigmented band appeared on the border of the lesion. (See Figs. 6, 6a and 6b for varying appearances during reaction).

Laboratory findings :—

Nose

Ears

R. few. L. few. R. + ve. L. + ve.

Of four "snips" taken from different parts of the arm lesion two were negative, one showed one acid-fast and one showed two acid-fasts.

The three cases in this group call for special comment. In the first place this form of facial lepride in reaction constitutes one of the most striking features in leprosy. Once recognized they present little difficulty in diagnosis. In appearance, they are sharply demarcated, turgid, smooth and cyanosed. They have a tendency—noticeable in Case 6—to react and subside with considerable frequency. We might summarize the special features of this group as follows :—

(1) If plaques and annular lesions are present, reaction, if it occurs, will affect the plaques.

(2) The facial plaque will react before lesions in other situations whether the latter are plaques (Case 5) or annular lesions (Cases 4 and 6).

(3) Reaction in facial plaques often subsides quickly and recurs frequently.

(4) The extremely local nature of the reaction is further borne out by the absence of malaise, pyrexia, or any symptoms of general systemic disturbance.

GROUP IV.

RECESSION OF LESIONS.

(a) In severe complicating disease. (b) Without apparent cause.

Case 7.

No. 4,018. Chinese, male, aged 45 years. Duration of leprosy 5 years. Original lesion on nose (?) annular type. Paralysis of fingers of left hand developed later and this was followed by contractures. The facial lesion had spread to involve both cheeks and lower eyelids on admission to the Settlement in June, 1935. He had intradermal and intramuscular esters and fluorescein and resorcin intravenously, by way of treatment. In January,

1936, he was admitted to the Settlement hospital with signs of active pulmonary tuberculosis. X-ray revealed infiltration of all zones of the left lung and suspicious shadows at the right base. On admission the skin lesions had all gone down. He improved considerably with rest and put on 18 lb. in weight before he was discharged from hospital in June, 1936.

As soon as his lung condition began to improve the skin lesions showed signs of activity. In the face reaction took the form of a warty hyperkeratosis with some underlying infiltration. An old depigmented lesion on the dorsum of the left hand came up as a swollen, cyanotic, glistening, discrete patch. (See Fig. 7.) A section from the hand revealed epithelioid infiltration, not as discrete as usual, and acid-fast bacilli were present. No giant cells were found.

This reminds one of a case described by MUIR (1934b). In MUIR's case the initial lesion was a macule on the face. This was stationary for some years until the patient developed typhoid. The lesion disappeared during the course of the typhoid fever, only to recur during convalescence. Later he had an attack of dysentery. Once again his leprosy disappeared and the patient thought himself cured. During convalescence, however, the leprosy recurred in a more widespread form.

In our case we see much the same train of events—recession of lesions during the course of severe disease with recurrence during convalescence. This recession of leprotic lesions in debilitating circumstances is common to all forms of leprosy. In the case of tuberculoid leprosy with lesions of low bacillary content such recession can be—and often has been—mistaken for cure. The next case to be quoted illustrates the problem in prognosis which arises in circumstances of this nature.

Case 8.

No. 3,156. Chinese, male, aged 46. Duration of leprosy 3 years. According to his account his original lesions were raised erythematous plaques on the face. He was first admitted into the Settlement on 18.2.33 and discharged on parole on 2.8.35 at which time his lesions had all subsided. He was re-admitted on 23.2.36. He had multiple lesions all over the face, chest and abdomen (Fig. 8). The lesions were in various stages of reaction. They were raised, erythematous and discrete. The fresh ones looked red and succulent, the older ones were scaling. In the course of 2 to 3 months the lesions subsided leaving very dark patches, some of which were actually below the level of the surrounding skin. There was very little evidence of systemic disturbance in the way of pyrexia or malaise during the period of reaction.

Laboratory findings :—

Nose		Ears		Patch
R. — ve.	L. — ve.	R. ++.	L. ++.	Abdomen' ++

W.R. and Kahn tests negative. S.I. 18. A section from one of the patches on the trunk showed dense granulomatous infiltration with very few giant cells. Acid-fast bacilli were present in large numbers.

Here is an important case from many points of view. In the first place, he was discharged on parole 6 months before re-admission. At the time of discharge we can take it that he was clinically and bacteriologically free from signs of leprosy. And yet 6 months later he had widely disseminated active lesions. On enquiry it was found that he was treated by intramuscular injections of hydnocarpus esters during his first sojourn in the Settlement.

In the second place the high bacillary content of his lesions should be noted. At the same time the histological findings were those of tuberculoid leprosy. Giant cells were actually present although very few in number. It was interesting to reconcile the presence of numerous bacilli with giant cells in the section. It will be noted that Case 3 presented similar findings.

EFFECTS OF TREATMENT.

It is not proposed to discuss fully the influence of treatment on the course of tuberculoid leprosy. Of the cases in Group III—reacting plaques—two came into the Settlement in a state of reaction. One case in this group (*Case 4*) was given tuberculin, a second had no treatment. The third had hydnocarpus treatment before reaction. *Case 7* had a variety of treatments including hydnocarpus and various organic chemicals. *Case 8* relapsed after becoming “clinically cured” on orthodox hydnocarpus treatment. WADE (1934c) quotes a case of reaction in a tuberculoid leper brought on by excess potassium iodide. A cursory glance through the literature is sufficient to emphasize the fact stated at the beginning of this article, viz., that therapeutists in leprosy have unwittingly concentrated their best efforts on the tuberculoid lesion. MUIR (1934b) has already emphasized the fallacy of taking recession of lesions as a criterion of cure. To appreciate this it is necessary to bear in mind the initial paucity of bacilli in these tuberculoid lesions. A debilitating disease or the indiscriminate injection of toxic chemicals can and, in my experience does, cause the lesions to disappear temporarily. On recurrence, the cutaneous rather than the tuberculoid response is just as likely to be seen. Meanwhile, during the period of recession, especially in the beginning, the case may quite easily be bacteriologically negative and this, with the clinical silence, has been responsible for a host of spurious cures. A “temporary benefit in a certain number of cases” is a phrase all too familiar to the student of leprosy. The position is that we have only begun to recognize the peculiarities of the tuberculoid lesion. When we know more about its natural history then we can begin experiments designed to assess the influence of treatment.

RELATIVE INCIDENCE OF TUBERCULOID LEPROSY IN THE DIFFERENT RACES IN MALAYA.

A survey of the inmates of Sungei Buloh Settlement was carried out by the writer in 1936. It was not found possible to examine all the Chinese and Indian adults, but all the children and all the Malay adults were examined. For various reasons which it is not necessary to detail here it can be taken that the group of adult Chinese and Indians examined constituted a random sample of their respective races in the Settlement. To make the survey complete all doubtful

cases should have been submitted to biopsy or prolonged clinical study. The population should have been grouped by duration of disease as well as by age, sex and nationality. Such a laborious procedure was out of the question but a certain amount of useful information can be gleaned from the comparatively superficial study which was carried out. The results of the survey are set out below.

TABLE I.
INCIDENCE IN ADULTS OF THE VARIOUS RACES.

Number Examined.	Nationality.	Sex.	Tuberculoid.	Doubtful.
581	Chinese	M	66 (11.3%)	38 (6.3%)
201	Chinese	F	9 (4.5%)	11 (5.5%)
166	Tamil	M	17 (10.2%)	15 (9%)
23	Tamil	F	3 (13%)	1 (4.3%)
50	Malay	M	2 (4%)	nil
26	Malay	F	nil	nil

TABLE II.
INCIDENCE IN CHILDREN AND YOUNG ADULTS BY NATIONALITY AND SEX.

Number Examined.	Nationality.	Sex.	Tuberculoid.	Doubtful.
2	Tamil	M	1	nil
4	Malay	M	nil	nil
40	Chinese	M	1	1
2	Tamil	F	nil	nil
2	Malay	F	1	nil
29	Chinese	F	1	1
Total children examined 79			Tuberculoid 4 (5%)	

The diagram shows the results at a glance. Only those who were definitely tuberculoid are included.

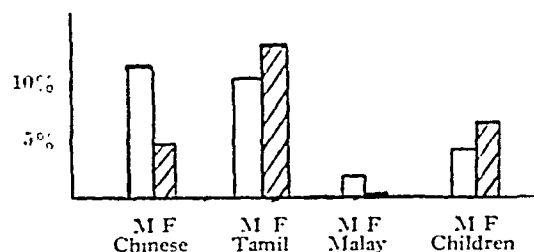


Diagram to illustrate the relative incidence in the different races and in children (7-18 years). M=Male ; F=Female.

Before proceeding to the interpretation of the figures revealed by the survey there are a few items which call for comment.

Under the heading "Tuberculoid" I have put only those cases which had typical discrete lesions and which would certainly show a tuberculoid picture on biopsy. The "Doubtful" cases are a miscellaneous group. There were lesions of the plaque type which might have been cutaneous on the one hand, or neural with a slight hyperkeratosis on the other hand. There were annular lesions with or without depigmented centres and in which the margins were erythematous and soft without being scaly. There were depigmented macules especially in Tamils, in which an erythematous border was not very definite. Finally, there were cases similar to *Case 5* who had parchment-like lesions probably denoting the existence of old reacting plaques.

It is hardly necessary to point out that these figures relate to a community of segregated, more or less advanced, lepers. The incidence of tuberculoid leprosy here is bound to be lower than in the community outside, although the relative incidence in the different races will probably be about the same. For obvious reasons the early tuberculoid will tend to conceal his lesions unless they are in an exposed situation, e.g., the face. By the time they are segregated no doubt many will have become cutaneous.

The survey reveals a low incidence in Malays. The incidence in Chinese is surprisingly high, equalling that in southern Indians. Generally speaking, Tamils show a high incidence of neural leprosy, while the cutaneous type is more common in the Chinese. LOWE (1936) states that he did not find the tuberculoid lesion common in Dichpali—I take it he was working with Tamils and Telegus. There is, therefore, an enormous difference between the figures for the southern and for the northern Indian. This fact should be of interest to the student of the epidemiology of leprosy.

The incidence in children—all nationalities—is low. The interpretation of this fact presents some difficulties at first sight. MUIR, at various times, has insisted that the cutaneous lesion is the most likely manifestation of leprosy to occur in children. On the other hand, I have noticed at the skin clinic at the General Hospital, Singapore, that a very high proportion of the leprosy cases which come up for diagnosis are tuberculoid. Many observers will, I believe,

agree with this finding, viz., that the tuberculoid lesion is more commonly found in the early stages of leprosy. A study of the age at which the signs of leprosy first appear throws some light on the matter. Among others, MUIR and ROGERS (1925) and, more recently, LOWE (1937a) have produced graphs to show the age at which the signs of the disease are first manifest. The peak of such a curve is always in the second or third decades. Hence the early case is not necessarily that seen in a child. Actually some of the earliest lesions are seen in adult life and middle age and some of the most advanced cutaneous cases in Sungei Buloh are in Chinese under 18 years of age.

Figures for the world distribution of tuberculoid leprosy are not yet complete. It must be remembered, after all, that the recognition and study of the lesion are comparatively recent events. One gathers, however, from the available literature that the highest incidence is in northern India. The incidence among Chinese in Sungei Buloh is unexpectedly high. It should show a closer parallelism with the incidence of the neural type if the tuberculoid lesion is to be regarded as a sub-type of neural leprosy. The incidence among Malays is seen to be low and, I gather, this also applies to the Filipinos—a closely related race—and to the Japanese. MOISER (1935) gives the impression that the disease is not common in some parts of Africa. Perhaps future work may alter this impression. At the moment, the indications are that the incidence is high among these races that have been affected from time immemorial, e.g., the northern Indians, comparatively common among the Chinese and much rarer among the more recently infected Malays and Filipinos.

THE SIGNIFICANCE OF TUBERCULOID LEPROSY.

What does tuberculoid leprosy mean to us? How does the recently accumulated knowledge of the subject affect current ideas on leprosy as a whole? WADE, who has done so much valuable work on the condition, has always regarded it as a sub-type of neural leprosy. In his more recent work (WADE, 1936), I consider that he rather minimises the importance of the tuberculoid lesion. He somehow gives the impression that it can never transcend in importance and significance the parent neural leprosy. No doubt from the clinical, and perhaps from the pathological, standpoint such a view is justified but there are many other considerations which demand a broader outlook on the whole subject.

In tuberculosis we are familiar with the following types of tissue response to tuberculin or to the living bacilli:—

1. No reaction to tuberculin in the non-immune untainted child.
2. Ghon's focus in the lung—a response which involves the regional glands.
3. Chronic pulmonary tuberculosis—a local epithelioid-giant-cell response.

In rapidly advancing disease, especially in primitive races, giant cells are often absent. I gather from our local pathologists that this is often the case in Malays, in whom the disease is apt to run a rapid course.

4. In pregnancy and severe disease, including the later stages of pulmonary tuberculosis, reaction to tuberculin does not occur.

5. We might regard epituberculosis as the "acute reaction" of chronic pulmonary tuberculosis.

In leprosy we recognize many types of response in the skin, nerves and internal organs which are difficult to classify. MUIR (1934a) considered that the cellular exudate in the affected nerves was always less than that in the skin in individual cases. He excised pieces of skin with thickened nerves attached and so was in a just position to compare data. Sections of the internal organs are from postmortem specimens and are not strictly comparable with biopsy material from the skin during life. It is a common experience in leprosy to find the internal organs flooded with bacilli without any sign of recent exudate in cases of death from wasting diseases, e.g., cancer, tuberculosis, etc. This, however, should not be interpreted as a manifestation of complete indifference to the presence of the bacilli, but rather as a depression of reaction in the terminal stages of the intercurrent disease. Indeed, I have good reason to believe from a study of sections that there is a cellular response in the kidneys and liver in many cases of leprosy, leading ultimately to chronic focal nephritis and to hepatic cirrhosis respectively.

HENDERSON (1930) has described three types of cellular response in the skin, putting them in chronological order.

1. The chronic inflammatory type of exudate consisting of "small round cells" with a few epithelioid cells and occasional fibroblasts. Bacilli are scarce.

2. The tuberculoid lesion, characterized by an exudate of epithelioid cells with or without giant cells. Bacilli may be very difficult to find in quiescent lesions.

3. The cutaneous type of exudate in which the "lepra cell" predominates. Bacilli are present in enormous numbers.

We might put forward a tentative classification of the varied responses to lepra bacilli and to leprolin on the following lines.

1. Indifference to leprolin in the untainted child and tolerance (*a*) in debilitating disease and (*b*) in advanced cutaneous leprosy.

2. The simple chronic inflammatory type of exudate—chiefly "small round cells" with few bacilli. The injection of leprolin produces a local reaction.

3. The epithelioid-giant-celled (tuberculoid) response. Bacilli are scarce. Acute reaction—a purely local phenomenon—is an intensification of the process and is often associated with increased bacillary content. Leprolin produces intense reaction and may, according to MUIR (1934a), lead to giant cell formation, caseation, etc.

4. The cutaneous type of response. There are enormous numbers of bacilli and relatively few cells. Acute reaction—lepra fever—is an

intensification of the local response plus systemic involvement in the way of fever, etc. The injection of leprolin produces little or no reaction.

5. Tolerance to leprolin and to lepra bacilli in severe debilitating disease. A similar phenomenon is, for all practical purposes, unknown in human tuberculosis. STEINBACH (1935) records that the albino rat can be infected with human bacilli and live for many months without any signs of disease. At autopsy, although there are no lesions, even microscopically, the tissues can be shown to contain bacilli by the results of guineapig inoculation. In man there is a similar tolerance to the presence of lepra bacilli during severe disease. MUIR (1934a) states—and I can confirm this—that the lesions often recede to such an extent that previously nodular cases may present an appearance calculated to deceive even those with a considerable experience of the disease.

The local and general reactions of tuberculosis and leprosy are often explained on the basis of allergy. There is considerable justification for such a point of view, but the mechanism of the reactions is much more complicated, especially in leprosy, than in simple allergic conditions like hay fever or bronchial asthma. The latter conditions are very much all-or-none responses to specific stimuli. In tuberculosis, as we have seen, there are gradations in the intensity of the response. Even so, the intensity of the response is in great measure roughly proportional to the amount of bacilli present. In leprosy it seems as if the immunity mechanism of the body was geared to produce different types of response at different levels of bacillary content, but the response is not necessarily in direct proportion to the bacillary content. In tuberculoid leprosy we find an exudate containing an enormous number of cells per unit of bacilli. If an advanced cutaneous case responded in a similar manner the resulting tuberculoma would fill St. Paul's.

Probably the first response to the presence of the lepra bacillus is a perivascular infiltration of "small round cells" as described above. This—the initial lesion—will probably be in nervous tissue. No doubt there are many cases in which this is sufficient to eradicate the infection. In the event of its being unsuccessful there are many possibilities to consider.

1. A local equilibrium may be established between the bacilli and the tissue. A similar equilibrium is thought to occur in tuberculosis. This would be just sufficient to confine the bacilli *in situ*. Organization of the exudate in the affected nerve will lead to increasing palsy and anaesthesia. The response in such cases, although teleologically sound, may lead to appalling results in the way of disease. Quite a small infection in the sciatic nerve, for example, may lead to complete disorganization of the foot.

2. It seems that tuberculoid leprosy can occur in three different sets of circumstances.

(a) As the equilibrium shifts in favour of the tissue the sensitivity to the presence of the bacilli seems to increase. This has been noted in cutaneous cases on the way to cure.

(b) As the infection passes from the nerves to the more sensitive skin.

(c) Possibly as the result of a massive dose of infection in a previously sensitized (abortive) case.

The tuberculoid response seems to be very successful in limiting the spread of the bacilli in neural leprosy. ROGERS and MUIR (1925), WADE (1934b), LOWE (1934) have all, in dealing with nerve abscess, drawn special attention to this fact. In the skin the tuberculoid response may be similarly successful. In both cases, however, we see an excessive response to the number of bacilli present.

3. The tuberculoid exudate may completely disappear and be replaced by the cutaneous type of response. The change over is in many cases accomplished after a latent period in which there is no exudate. There may be distinct improvement in neural and skin lesions as a result. No doubt the original round-celled lesion mentioned above (see 1) can degenerate directly into the cutaneous type without an intermediate tuberculoid phase. There is good reason to believe, however, that the intermediate tuberculoid phase more often occurs.

The increase in the red cell sedimentation rate, the fact that the Wassermann and similar reactions become positive, should be interpreted as evidence of a humoral or systemic response as well as a local response. There is depression of the local response as evidenced by the negative leprolin reaction, the fact that bacilli can frequently be recovered from the blood stream and the temporary amelioration of neural symptoms when the change over to the cutaneous type occurs.

Beyond a certain concentration of bacilli the tuberculoid response cannot very well occur. As the ratio between the cells and bacilli is many hundred times greater in tuberculoid than in cutaneous leprosy, it would be natural to expect a quantum, rather than a gradual, change over in some cases. Actually this does occur as evidenced by a distinct time lag in the production of lesions. During this "temporary cure" sensitivity has fallen well below the tuberculoid phase, but the bacilli may take weeks or even months to reach a concentration sufficient to evoke the cutaneous response.

4. In advanced cutaneous leprosy we often find bacilli in snips from patches of skin which look perfectly normal. Similarly, in severe disease, not alone is there no response to fresh showers of bacilli, but pre-existing lesions become flattened out. This completes the cycle; having started at a point where there is no reaction to leprolin, we end up at a stage where there is no response to the living bacilli.

Neither the humoral nor the phagocytic theory of immunity will solve the problem of leprosy. BESREDKA'S (1927) conception of local or tissue immunity is more helpful. Response in the nerves is said to be less intense than in the skin and response in the internal organs lags behind both. In these circumstances

nerve abscess could not occur in a cutaneous case and it certainly has not been described in races in which the cutaneous type of leprosy predominates.

Acute reaction does not represent the peak of sensitivity at the level of either the cutaneous or tuberculoid response. Rather is it a recovery phenomenon. It is the expression of an urgent attempt to establish the response on the level at which it existed prior to the advent of some debilitating factor.

The tuberculoid lesion represents the peak of local response. Taking it over a large series of cases it seems to be efficient in limiting the spread of the infection. Although it is purposeful, it is, nevertheless, a stereotyped reflex and it will sacrifice an eye or a limb or a group of unimportant sweat glands with equal facility. We can in many cases depress or abolish the reaction by "heroic" methods of treatment. No doubt there are cases, e.g., lesions about the eye, in which such a step might be justified. One sees considerable clinical and bacteriological improvement occur in cutaneous cases occasionally, and cures have been described. The trouble is that even if we are successful in establishing the change over from the tuberculoid to the cutaneous response, there is still the probability that the procedure will be reversed if the bacilli decrease and then tuberculoid lesions will recur. Until we know more of the natural history of the tuberculoid lesion, until we are in a better position to predict the outcome in an individual case, it is unwise to use heroic measures to destroy such an excellent local defence against the invading bacilli.

Tuberculoid leprosy does not receive due recognition in the present classification of leprosy. To agree with WADE in regarding it as a sub-type of neural leprosy is to miss much of its significance. There is not really a sound pathological basis for the recognition of neural leprosy itself as a separate type. The exudate in an affected nerve may be simple inflammatory, "cutaneous," tuberculoid, or completely absent. Tuberculoid leprosy, on the other hand, is a definite histological and pathological entity whether it occurs in nerve or skin, whether it is quiescent or reacting, and even though it appears to assume so many different forms to an observer like TISSEUL (1936)—"primitives, secondaires, intermédiaires; en médaillon, en aires, rose-jaunâtre, parakératosique, granitée, en plateau, rosée, rouge, brillante."

SUMMARY.

1. The unrecognized existence of the tuberculoid lesion has been a source of confusion for many years in the prognosis and treatment of the disease.
2. The incidence seems to be high in those races which have been associated with leprosy for a long time. In children the incidence is relatively low.
3. Tuberculoid leprosy is a stage in the natural evolution of immunity in the disease. It represents the peak of local response.

4. Acute reaction in tuberculoid leprosy is still a local phenomenon. This is in contrast with the position in cutaneous leprosy where there is a systemic component as well.

5. Continued study of the evolution and course of the tuberculoid lesion will, it is felt certain, provide a key to the very difficult problem of immunity in leprosy and, for that matter, in many varieties of proliferative disease.

6. A more scientific classification will correlate the clinical appearances with the types of exudate present in the underlying lesions.

REFERENCES.

- BESREDKA, A. (1927). *Local Immunization*. Translated by H. Plotz. London : Baillière Tindall & Cox.
- HANSEN, G. A. & LOOFT, C. (1895). *Leprosy in its Clinical and Pathological Aspects*, Translated by N. Walker. Bristol : John Wright & Co.
- HENDERSON, J. M. (1930). *Indian med. Gaz.*, 65, 93.
- (1928). *Indian J. med. Res.*, 16, 7.
- (1929). *Ibid.*, 17, 33.
- LOWE, J. (1934). *Int. J. Leprosy*, 2, 301.
- (1936). *Ibid.*, 4, 195.
- (1937). *Indian med. Gaz.*, 72, 160.
- (1937b). *Leprosy Rev.*, 69.
- MITSUDA, K. (1935). *Int. J. Leprosy*, 3, 311.
- MOISER, B. (1935). *Ibid.*, 3, 279.
- MONRAD-KROHN, G. H. (1924). *IIIe Conf. Int. de la Lèpre*. Paris : Baillière et fils.
- MUIR, E. (1934a). *Indian J. med. Res.*, 22, 383.
- (1934b). *Leprosy in India*, 6, 12.
- & CHATTERJI, S. N. (1933). *Int. J. Leprosy*, 1, 129.
- PAUTRIER, L. H. & BOEZ, L. (1924). *IIIe Conf. Int. de la Lèpre*. Paris : Baillière et fils.
- ROGERS, L. & MUIR, E. (1925). *Leprosy*. Bristol : John Wright & Co.
- SILCOCK, F. A. E. (1934). *Proc. R. Soc. Med.*, 27, 1459.
- STEINBACH, M. M. (1935). *Agents of Disease and Host Resistance*. (By Gay and others.) p. 1003. London : Baillière, Tindall & Cox.
- TISSEUL, J. (1936). *Bull. Soc. Path. exot.*, 29, 238.
- WADE, H. W. (1934a). *Int. J. Leprosy*, 2, 7.
- (1934b). *Ibid.*, 2, 293.
- (1934c). *Ibid.*, 2, 279.
- (1936). *Ibid.*, 4, 409.

DISCUSSION.

Dr. J. M. H. MacLeod : I have been much interested in Dr. HUGHES's paper and especially in his interesting description of the pathology of tuberculoid leprosy.

(1) It seems to me that there is a close analogy between certain cutaneous lesions of tuberculosis and tuberculoid leprosy. Some years ago when I first saw sections of tuberculoid leprosy I could scarcely believe that they were leprosy as they so closely resembled sections of Boeck's sarcoid. For many

years histologists have been wondering what was the precise relation between sarcoid and lupus vulgaris and it is still undecided. The relationship between tuberculoid leprosy and cutaneous leprosy is probably somewhat similar. In both sarcoid and tuberculoid leprosy there is a formative infiltration in the corium with giant cells, epithelioid cells, and occasional plasma cells and only in rare instances have bacilli been found in either of them.

The analogy of leprosy to tuberculosis has been further strengthened recently by the observation by WADE of grouped acuminate papular lesions in leprosy. A photograph of this condition which he kindly sent me showed a type of eruption similar to lichen scrofulosorum. The latter eruption is a tuberculide and due not to bacilli *in situ* in the skin but to toxins in some tuberculous focus elsewhere. It is probable that the lichenoid lepride has a similar etiology.

(2) With regard to the treatment of leprosy by extracts of, or other preparations from, bacilli the results as far as I am aware, have been unsatisfactory. I am reminded that years ago DEYCKE in Constantinople succeeded in growing a streptothrix from a piece of tissue teeming with bacilli excised from a case of cutaneous leprosy and incubated in normal saline solution. The streptothrix was regarded as a phase in the life history of the bacillus. An ethereal extract was made of the organism to which the name "Nastin" was given. This was put on the market and extensively used and reported on favourably in certain quarters. A trial of it in this country on a number of cases in private and at the Tropical Hospital at the Albert Dock gave negative results.

Dr. A. C. Howard: I have worked among lepers in Nigeria during the last few years. My impressions were, that chiefly in the south there is a tendency for the cutaneous or C3 type to predominate, while in the north the neural or tubercular type is most common. In his lecture, Dr. MUIR mentioned that one of the commonest neural signs in India was the enlargement of the auricular nerve. I have never seen an enlarged nerve in leprosy, I have palpated them once or twice but never seen them; and I wonder whether he would explain why in different parts of the world the predominating type of the disease varies as it does: India, for instance, being very different from Nigeria in this respect.

Maj.-Gen. Sir John Megaw: When I was house physician at the Medical College of Calcutta more than 30 years ago, I came across a large number of cases of leprosy of a very mild neural type, and having read so much about leprosy being a dreadful disease, I could hardly persuade myself that these were really cases of leprosy. The majority of the cases were of such a mild nature that I was firmly convinced that many of them never went on to the serious type.

I discussed the point with the late Sir JONATHAN HUTCHINSON, and asked him whether there was any other disease in which there occurred anaesthetic patches associated with thickening of the nerve without any tendency to progress to an advanced stage, as is expected in leprosy? His reply was that they could not be anything else but leprosy, and that he himself had been much struck by the number of mild cases which were seen in India as compared with other countries. On the whole there is a good deal of evidence to show that leprosy in India is frequently a mild disease which may be in many cases trivial. Dr. MUIR emphasized quite rightly the importance of exercise in the treatment of leprosy. But I have seen patients in leprosy institutions being exercised in the heat of the day; they were badly nourished and it struck me that in those cases the exercising process was distinctly overdone. I think the important thing, as Dr. MUIR has emphasized, is to maintain the nutrition of the patient. There is a line of treatment which we hear of from time to time, and I am rather surprised that more people do not give it a trial. I refer to the specific treatment by the leprosy antigen. A glance at one of the sections demonstrated this evening will show that there is practically a pure culture of lepra bacilli in the skin. In Lucknow 20 years ago, I had a patient with a very pronounced type of cutaneous leprosy. He had practically leontiasis, and a section from his ear lobes revealed enormous numbers of bacilli. I cut out some of the more conspicuous nodules, sliced them up in a freezing microtome, converted them into a very fine emulsion, killed them by heat, and added a little carbolic. I started injecting very small doses of this emulsion in very much the same way as tuberculin is used in the treatment of tuberculosis, and gradually increased the dose. There was no other special treatment but at the end of 6 months the patient was to all intents and purposes cured. He came back 18 months later and nobody would have suspected he ever had leprosy. He made the very interesting proposition that, as I had found a cure for him we should become partners, that I should supply the material and he should tour the country and that we should go fifty-fifty in the profits from this new treatment. Unfortunately I had not much opportunity of pursuing that method of treatment. Of course, it had been done before, though I was not aware of this at the time, and it has been done on several occasions since. But I am rather surprised that it has not been given a more extensive trial, because it sounds perfectly reasonable. We are quite familiar with the remarkable results due to chaulmoogra oil, but it is quite possible that vaccine might be a useful auxiliary line of treatment, especially as so many patients can supply enormous numbers of leprosy bacilli in a very rich culture from their skin lesions.

Dr. A. Felix: May I carry further the interesting point raised by Sir JOHN MEGAW? It may have escaped the attention of those present here that quite recently the transmission of human leprosy to an experimental animal

years histologists have been wondering what was the precise relation between sarcoid and lupus vulgaris and it is still undecided. The relationship between tuberculoid leprosy and cutaneous leprosy is probably somewhat similar. In both sarcoid and tuberculoid leprosy there is a formative infiltration in the corium with giant cells, epithelioid cells, and occasional plasma cells and only in rare instances have bacilli been found in either of them.

The analogy of leprosy to tuberculosis has been further strengthened recently by the observation by WADE of grouped acuminate papular lesions in leprosy. A photograph of this condition which he kindly sent me showed a type of eruption similar to lichen scrofulosorum. The latter eruption is a tuberculide and due not to bacilli *in situ* in the skin but to toxins in some tuberculous focus elsewhere. It is probable that the lichenoid lepride has a similar etiology.

(2) With regard to the treatment of leprosy by extracts of, or other preparations from, bacilli the results as far as I am aware, have been unsatisfactory. I am reminded that years ago DEYCKE in Constantinople succeeded in growing a streptothrix from a piece of tissue teeming with bacilli excised from a case of cutaneous leprosy and incubated in normal saline solution. The streptothrix was regarded as a phase in the life history of the bacillus. An ethereal extract was made of the organism to which the name "Nastin" was given. This was put on the market and extensively used and reported on favourably in certain quarters. A trial of it in this country on a number of cases in private and at the Tropical Hospital at the Albert Dock gave negative results.

Dr. A. C. Howard : I have worked among lepers in Nigeria during the last few years. My impressions were, that chiefly in the south there is a tendency for the cutaneous or C3 type to predominate, while in the north the neural or tubercular type is most common. In his lecture, Dr. MUIR mentioned that one of the commonest neural signs in India was the enlargement of the auricular nerve. I have never seen an enlarged nerve in leprosy, I have palpated them once or twice but never seen them ; and I wonder whether he would explain why in different parts of the world the predominating type of the disease varies as it does : India, for instance, being very different from Nigeria in this respect.

Maj.-Gen. Sir John Megaw : When I was house physician at the Medical College of Calcutta more than 30 years ago, I came across a large number of cases of leprosy of a very mild neural type, and having read so much about leprosy being a dreadful disease, I could hardly persuade myself that these were really cases of leprosy. The majority of the cases were of such a mild nature that I was firmly convinced that many of them never went on to the serious type.

I discussed the point with the late Sir JONATHAN HUTCHINSON, and asked him whether there was any other disease in which there occurred anaesthetic patches associated with thickening of the nerve without any tendency to progress to an advanced stage, as is expected in leprosy? His reply was that they could not be anything else but leprosy, and that he himself had been much struck by the number of mild cases which were seen in India as compared with other countries. On the whole there is a good deal of evidence to show that leprosy in India is frequently a mild disease which may be in many cases trivial. Dr. MUIR emphasized quite rightly the importance of exercise in the treatment of leprosy. But I have seen patients in leprosy institutions being exercised in the heat of the day; they were badly nourished and it struck me that in those cases the exercising process was distinctly overdone. I think the important thing, as Dr. MUIR has emphasized, is to maintain the nutrition of the patient. There is a line of treatment which we hear of from time to time, and I am rather surprised that more people do not give it a trial. I refer to the specific treatment by the leprosy antigen. A glance at one of the sections demonstrated this evening will show that there is practically a pure culture of lepra bacilli in the skin. In Lucknow 20 years ago, I had a patient with a very pronounced type of cutaneous leprosy. He had practically leontiasis, and a section from his ear lobes revealed enormous numbers of bacilli. I cut out some of the more conspicuous nodules, sliced them up in a freezing microtome, converted them into a very fine emulsion, killed them by heat, and added a little carbolic. I started injecting very small doses of this emulsion in very much the same way as tuberculin is used in the treatment of tuberculosis, and gradually increased the dose. There was no other special treatment but at the end of 6 months the patient was to all intents and purposes cured. He came back 18 months later and nobody would have suspected he ever had leprosy. He made the very interesting proposition that, as I had found a cure for him we should become partners, that I should supply the material and he should tour the country and that we should go fifty-fifty in the profits from this new treatment. Unfortunately I had not much opportunity of pursuing that method of treatment. Of course, it had been done before, though I was not aware of this at the time, and it has been done on several occasions since. But I am rather surprised that it has not been given a more extensive trial, because it sounds perfectly reasonable. We are quite familiar with the remarkable results due to chaulmoogra oil, but it is quite possible that vaccine might be a useful auxiliary line of treatment, especially as so many patients can supply enormous numbers of leprosy bacilli in a very rich culture from their skin lesions.

Dr. A. Felix: May I carry further the interesting point raised by Sir JOHN MEGAW? It may have escaped the attention of those present here that quite recently the transmission of human leprosy to an experimental animal

years histologists have been wondering what was the precise relation between sarcoid and lupus vulgaris and it is still undecided. The relationship between tuberculoid leprosy and cutaneous leprosy is probably somewhat similar. In both sarcoid and tuberculoid leprosy there is a formative infiltration in the corium with giant cells, epithelioid cells, and occasional plasma cells and only in rare instances have bacilli been found in either of them.

The analogy of leprosy to tuberculosis has been further strengthened recently by the observation by WADE of grouped acuminate papular lesions in leprosy. A photograph of this condition which he kindly sent me showed a type of eruption similar to lichen scrofulosorum. The latter eruption is a tuberculide and due not to bacilli *in situ* in the skin but to toxins in some tuberculous focus elsewhere. It is probable that the lichenoid lepride has a similar etiology.

(2) With regard to the treatment of leprosy by extracts of, or other preparations from, bacilli the results as far as I am aware, have been unsatisfactory. I am reminded that years ago DEYCKE in Constantinople succeeded in growing a streptothrix from a piece of tissue teeming with bacilli excised from a case of cutaneous leprosy and incubated in normal saline solution. The streptothrix was regarded as a phase in the life history of the bacillus. An ethereal extract was made of the organism to which the name "Nastin" was given. This was put on the market and extensively used and reported on favourably in certain quarters. A trial of it in this country on a number of cases in private and at the Tropical Hospital at the Albert Dock gave negative results.

Dr. A. C. Howard: I have worked among lepers in Nigeria during the last few years. My impressions were, that chiefly in the south there is a tendency for the cutaneous or C3 type to predominate, while in the north the neural or tubercular type is most common. In his lecture, Dr. MUIR mentioned that one of the commonest neural signs in India was the enlargement of the auricular nerve. I have never seen an enlarged nerve in leprosy, I have palpated them once or twice but never seen them; and I wonder whether he would explain why in different parts of the world the predominating type of the disease varies as it does: India, for instance, being very different from Nigeria in this respect.

Maj.-Gen. Sir John Megaw: When I was house physician at the Medical College of Calcutta more than 30 years ago, I came across a large number of cases of leprosy of a very mild neural type, and having read so much about leprosy being a dreadful disease, I could hardly persuade myself that these were really cases of leprosy. The majority of the cases were of such a mild nature that I was firmly convinced that many of them never went on to the serious type.

I discussed the point with the late Sir JONATHAN HUTCHINSON, and asked him whether there was any other disease in which there occurred anaesthetic patches associated with thickening of the nerve without any tendency to progress to an advanced stage, as is expected in leprosy? His reply was that they could not be anything else but leprosy, and that he himself had been much struck by the number of mild cases which were seen in India as compared with other countries. On the whole there is a good deal of evidence to show that leprosy in India is frequently a mild disease which may be in many cases trivial. Dr. MUIR emphasized quite rightly the importance of exercise in the treatment of leprosy. But I have seen patients in leprosy institutions being exercised in the heat of the day; they were badly nourished and it struck me that in those cases the exercising process was distinctly overdone. I think the important thing, as Dr. MUIR has emphasized, is to maintain the nutrition of the patient. There is a line of treatment which we hear of from time to time, and I am rather surprised that more people do not give it a trial. I refer to the specific treatment by the leprosy antigen. A glance at one of the sections demonstrated this evening will show that there is practically a pure culture of lepra bacilli in the skin. In Lucknow 20 years ago, I had a patient with a very pronounced type of cutaneous leprosy. He had practically leontiasis, and a section from his ear lobes revealed enormous numbers of bacilli. I cut out some of the more conspicuous nodules, sliced them up in a freezing microtome, converted them into a very fine emulsion, killed them by heat, and added a little carbolic. I started injecting very small doses of this emulsion in very much the same way as tuberculin is used in the treatment of tuberculosis, and gradually increased the dose. There was no other special treatment but at the end of 6 months the patient was to all intents and purposes cured. He came back 18 months later and nobody would have suspected he ever had leprosy. He made the very interesting proposition that, as I had found a cure for him we should become partners, that I should supply the material and he should tour the country and that we should go fifty-fifty in the profits from this new treatment. Unfortunately I had not much opportunity of pursuing that method of treatment. Of course, it had been done before, though I was not aware of this at the time, and it has been done on several occasions since. But I am rather surprised that it has not been given a more extensive trial, because it sounds perfectly reasonable. We are quite familiar with the remarkable results due to chaulmoogra oil, but it is quite possible that vaccine might be a useful auxiliary line of treatment, especially as so many patients can supply enormous numbers of leprosy bacilli in a very rich culture from their skin lesions.

Dr. A. Felix: May I carry further the interesting point raised by Sir JOHN MEGAW? It may have escaped the attention of those present here that quite recently the transmission of human leprosy to an experimental animal

years histologists have been wondering what was the precise relation between sarcoid and lupus vulgaris and it is still undecided. The relationship between tuberculoid leprosy and cutaneous leprosy is probably somewhat similar. In both sarcoid and tuberculoid leprosy there is a formative infiltration in the corium with giant cells, epithelioid cells, and occasional plasma cells and only in rare instances have bacilli been found in either of them.

The analogy of leprosy to tuberculosis has been further strengthened recently by the observation by WADE of grouped acuminate papular lesions in leprosy. A photograph of this condition which he kindly sent me showed a type of eruption similar to lichen scrofulosorum. The latter eruption is a tuberculide and due not to bacilli *in situ* in the skin but to toxins in some tuberculous focus elsewhere. It is probable that the lichenoid lepride has a similar etiology.

(2) With regard to the treatment of leprosy by extracts of, or other preparations from, bacilli the results as far as I am aware, have been unsatisfactory. I am reminded that years ago DEYCKE in Constantinople succeeded in growing a streptothrix from a piece of tissue teeming with bacilli excised from a case of cutaneous leprosy and incubated in normal saline solution. The streptothrix was regarded as a phase in the life history of the bacillus. An ethereal extract was made of the organism to which the name "Nastin" was given. This was put on the market and extensively used and reported on favourably in certain quarters. A trial of it in this country on a number of cases in private and at the Tropical Hospital at the Albert Dock gave negative results.

Dr. A. C. Howard: I have worked among lepers in Nigeria during the last few years. My impressions were, that chiefly in the south there is a tendency for the cutaneous or C3 type to predominate, while in the north the neural or tubercular type is most common. In his lecture, Dr. MUIR mentioned that one of the commonest neural signs in India was the enlargement of the auricular nerve. I have never seen an enlarged nerve in leprosy, I have palpated them once or twice but never seen them; and I wonder whether he would explain why in different parts of the world the predominating type of the disease varies as it does: India, for instance, being very different from Nigeria in this respect.

Maj.-Gen. Sir John Megaw: When I was house physician at the Medical College of Calcutta more than 30 years ago, I came across a large number of cases of leprosy of a very mild neural type, and having read so much about leprosy being a dreadful disease, I could hardly persuade myself that these were really cases of leprosy. The majority of the cases were of such a mild nature that I was firmly convinced that many of them never went on to the serious type.

I discussed the point with the late Sir JONATHAN HUTCHINSON, and asked him whether there was any other disease in which there occurred anaesthetic patches associated with thickening of the nerve without any tendency to progress to an advanced stage, as is expected in leprosy? His reply was that they could not be anything else but leprosy, and that he himself had been much struck by the number of mild cases which were seen in India as compared with other countries. On the whole there is a good deal of evidence to show that leprosy in India is frequently a mild disease which may be in many cases trivial. Dr. MUIR emphasized quite rightly the importance of exercise in the treatment of leprosy. But I have seen patients in leprosy institutions being exercised in the heat of the day; they were badly nourished and it struck me that in those cases the exercising process was distinctly overdone. I think the important thing, as Dr. MUIR has emphasized, is to maintain the nutrition of the patient. There is a line of treatment which we hear of from time to time, and I am rather surprised that more people do not give it a trial. I refer to the specific treatment by the leprosy antigen. A glance at one of the sections demonstrated this evening will show that there is practically a pure culture of lepra bacilli in the skin. In Lucknow 20 years ago, I had a patient with a very pronounced type of cutaneous leprosy. He had practically leontiasis, and a section from his ear lobes revealed enormous numbers of bacilli. I cut out some of the more conspicuous nodules, sliced them up in a freezing microtome, converted them into a very fine emulsion, killed them by heat, and added a little carbolic. I started injecting very small doses of this emulsion in very much the same way as tuberculin is used in the treatment of tuberculosis, and gradually increased the dose. There was no other special treatment but at the end of 6 months the patient was to all intents and purposes cured. He came back 18 months later and nobody would have suspected he ever had leprosy. He made the very interesting proposition that, as I had found a cure for him we should become partners, that I should supply the material and he should tour the country and that we should go fifty-fifty in the profits from this new treatment. Unfortunately I had not much opportunity of pursuing that method of treatment. Of course, it had been done before, though I was not aware of this at the time, and it has been done on several occasions since. But I am rather surprised that it has not been given a more extensive trial, because it sounds perfectly reasonable. We are quite familiar with the remarkable results due to chaulmoogra oil, but it is quite possible that vaccine might be a useful auxiliary line of treatment, especially as so many patients can supply enormous numbers of leprosy bacilli in a very rich culture from their skin lesions.

Dr. A. Felix: May I carry further the interesting point raised by Sir JOHN MEGAW? It may have escaped the attention of those present here that quite recently the transmission of human leprosy to an experimental animal

has been described. The Syrian hamster has been suggested for this purpose by Dr. BALFOUR-JONES, of the National Institute for Medical Research, and Professor ADLER, of the Hebrew University in Jerusalem reported in a preliminary note in *The Lancet*,* 18th September, 1937, the results of a successful experiment carried out on a small number of Syrian hamsters. If these results are confirmed a basis will be provided for an adequate study of the problem of specific therapy of human leprosy.

Dr. C. C. Chesterman : I would like to ask either one of the speakers what is the relative infectivity of the tuberculoid type and the cutaneous type, because it makes a great difference from the point of view of segregation. In the north-east of the Congo the majority are of the tuberculoid type, and it does not advance quickly. The annular patches remain for many years. The natives have two distinct names, one for the tuberculoid type and another for the cutaneous type. In that same area, Dr. DUBOIS has found that 33 per cent. of the people have acid-fast bacilli in the glands, although not more than 10 per cent. show symptoms of leprosy, I would like to support what Dr. HOWARD of Nigeria says. He mentioned the rarity of anything like thickened nerves. I have rarely seen that myself, and one rarely finds any dullness in the perception of the skin inside the annular eruption.

Dr. C. J. Austin (Fiji) : Dr. MUIR mentioned the massacre of lepers in China, and said that possibly this had occurred in the past in Nigeria. It was not long ago that I was informed by one of the old paramount chiefs in Fiji that in an island known as De-ni-Kia in his province, a former chief used to segregate all his advanced lepers in order that he should never be without a "bokola" or a body prepared for the oven, with which to welcome his friends or important guests! Evidently the same policy was to some extent carried out in Fiji. I think possibly Dr. MUIR was rather hard on the efforts of some of our Governments in those districts where compulsory segregation is carried out. I admit that in India and parts of Africa, this compulsory segregation is impossible. He mentions it as an ideal but seems to regard it as nothing more. In Fiji compulsion has been in force since 1911, and while we cannot say that our number of admissions is going down to any great extent, we *are* getting a far better type of case coming along than we had in the past. The idea of compulsion does quite probably cause hiding of early cases, but we are trying to get over that by the education of Fijian and other native students. Our station in Fiji is known as the Central Leper Hospital, and is to a certain extent "central" because we take cases from other island groups, Cook Islands, Samoa, Tonga and the Gilbert Islands, and we are getting in young men from

*ADLER, S. (1937). Inoculation of human leprosy into Syrian hamster. *Lancet* 2, 714.

each of those groups to the Central Medical School in Suva. I do not know if any of you were on the British Medical Association tour last year, and passed through Suva, but if so you saw something of this school. Quite a number of people have been there, and have been surprised at the way our students are getting a grip of medical subjects. They have a four-years' course, and, as long as they are under a certain amount of supervision, do valuable work. They can educate the people in a way that we cannot do and they get to know more easily than we can if there are lepers in the village. I think we are in that way getting to the root of the problem.

With regard to Dr. HUGHES's paper and this question of tuberculoid leprosy, I wonder whether we are strictly correct in speaking of tuberculoid leprosy; whether it is a type, or whether it is not rather a question of a tuberculoid lesion occurring in either a neural or cutaneous type? He raised a further point in my mind. He states that owing to the less response or reaction of the nervous tissues one does not get nerve abscess in a cutaneous case; but I have myself operated on two cases in which I had to avoid nodules in the skin incision, so I would say it is definitely possible to get nerve abscess in a cutaneous case. One or two pictures that he shows of tuberculoid lesions of the face seem to me to give definite signs of cutaneous leprosy of the ear, and I think it is generally admitted that tuberculoid lesions can occur concurrently with cutaneous lesions. Questions of classification arise and will have to be thrashed out again at the International Congress of Leprosy, in Cairo next year, but to try to make a new type of the tuberculoid form does not seem to me to help us to understand it. Whether it can be regarded as related to nerve leprosy, as has been the tendency, is another matter. The whole point is that leprosy is a more or less regular gradation or a series of changes, no one of which can be accurately delimited from another. It may go forward to a certain stage and then retrogress. I am not quite sure whether I got Dr. HUGHES's meaning when he spoke of the results of treatment. He appeared to suggest that in the past we have been trying to overcome tissue response whereas what we should have done was to encourage the bacillus to carry on in its own way. There is no obvious disease unless the tissue responds, but there may be no tissue response for either of two reasons (1) because the body is not capable of tissue response or (2) because the organism has been overcome and, there are, therefore, no signs of leprosy. Perhaps Dr. HUGHES would go into that aspect again.

Dr. Gushue-Taylor (Formosa, Japan): On the point raised by one of the speakers in regard to enlargement of the nerve: among Chinese lepers this is quite a common feature. You need only to turn the head, putting the sterno-mastoid on the stretch and you can frequently feel the great auricular nerve: not only can you feel it but you can actually see it standing out. The point is that the manifestations of leprosy probably vary in different countries. Take for instance the question of lesions of the scalp. I remember some years

ago Dr. WADE remarking to me that leprosy did not affect the scalp. But a short time after that I went to Japan and there Dr. MITSUDA showed me scores of his patients with marked cutaneous lesions of the scalp. One speaker spoke of the danger of over-exercising your patients, but I would say from my experience that the patients will not allow anyone to over-exercise them.

Lt.-Colonel C. H. Barber : Has Dr. HUGHES come across cases where inter-current tuberculosis has caused recession in leprosy, and can he say whether some of those cases have been not only recessed but apparently permanently cured ? It seems to me possible that there is an antagonism between tuberculosis and leprosy, similar to that between smallpox and malaria, malaria and general paralysis and some other diseases.

Dr. Hughes (in reply) : The similarity between tuberculoid leprosy and sarcoid has been recognized. I recently saw a case of sarcoid in Singapore and structurally it seemed indistinguishable from tuberculoid leprosy. I understand that modern dermatologists have found adenopathy and X-ray signs of pulmonary lesions in many cases of Boeck's sarcoid and that this condition is being more and more regarded as a tuberculide. I should like very much to see some of Dr. McLEOD's sections some time and discuss these sarcoid and lichenoid lesions with him.

Regarding treatment there is much confusion as to the effect of various remedies. The important thing to remember is that in tuberculoid leprosy one sees an enormous number of cells per unit bacillary content, whereas in the cutaneous type the numerical relation between cells and bacilli is reversed. It is quite obvious that without cellular exudate there is no disease, leprosy, as we know it. Leprosy is the nodular skin plus trophic lesions. These nodular lesions consist of the underlying cellular exudate and if these cells disappear there is no clinical disease. As to treatment—as I see it, any wasting disease will cause recession of these leprotic lesions and the difficulty is to distinguish between recession of lesions and cure. This may sound purely theoretical, but Dr. MUIR has actually shown a picture in which it was difficult to decide whether the patient was a leper or not although the skin contained large numbers of bacilli. I have seen cases of cirrhosis of the liver in which you could not say whether the patient was a leper or not and yet, if you took a " snip " you would find the skin teeming with bacilli—this, too, from parts of the skin which looked perfectly normal. What would happen eventually if the bacilli continued to propagate I do not know. I have seen some cases where I got the impression that there was as much bacillary substance as there was tissue.

The effect of drugs in heroic doses seems to be identical with that of wasting disease. Lesions recede—the cellular exudate is absorbed—clinical cure is established and, unfortunately, too often recorded. In my own short experience

—twelve months all told—the impression I got was that less than 1 per cent. of cases subjected to drastic treatments were cured eventually. Clinical “cures” might amount to 50 or 60 per cent., but the permanent results were bad. Hence it is only with the greatest caution one should recommend a new treatment of leprosy. What we want really is more information about the progress of the disease and the effect of such factors as race, climate and nutrition on that progress. We want to know the natural history and evolution of every form of the disease before we can assess the influence of any particular form of treatment. In view of the fact that recession of lesions can be produced equally well by either drugs or debility, any new form of treatment must be subjected to the most searching criticism if we are to avoid causing harm to lepers by our misguided enthusiasm.

With regard to nerve abscess, it was interesting to hear Dr. AUSTIN say he met the condition in cutaneous leprosy. If Dr. MUIR's contention that reaction in nervous tissue is always less than that in the skin it seems impossible that nerve abscess should occur in cutaneous cases. The condition is rare outside India, and I have no recollection of meeting a typical case in Malaya. One would like to hear full details of Dr. AUSTIN's cases as it seems almost impossible to visualise a pure tuberculoid response in the nerves and a frank cutaneous response in the skin, simultaneously. I am sorry that our time is limited and that it is not possible to carry the discussion on nerve abscess any further to-night.

Dr. Ernest Muir (in reply): There are one or two points to which I should like to refer. There is the question of finding nerve abscess in cutaneous leprosy; I have seen it in three or four cases. When it occurs I think the patient has probably been originally of the neural type, and has then developed caseous lesions inside his nerves. Later his health deteriorates and the disease advances to the cutaneous type. At some subsequent period during lepra reaction the caseous material liquefies, and a nerve abscess forms.

As regards the finding of nerve leprosy more commonly in some places than in others, Dr. HOWARD suggested there was less nerve leprosy in Southern Nigeria. That was the impression which I also gained during my short visit there last year. But as a matter of fact two thorough surveys have been made in limited areas in the Onitsha and Owerri Provinces during the last few months. In one of these surveys, out of 27,900 examined 2·4 per cent. were found to have leprosy, though the probable actual percentage is 3·1 per cent. But out of these, 97 per cent. were scheduled as neural. Much depends on the standard of classification; and still more depends on whether the total population is examined, or only those who attend for treatment or present themselves for admission to a leper settlement. Nerve leprosy is exceedingly common in India, and why it is not so common in Malaya I cannot say; all I can suggest is that they are not looked for by a thorough survey. I may point to the picture

I have shown tonight of a patient who had a caseous auricular nerve, with an abscess forming. As a matter of fact that patient was sent to me from Singapore. Many doctors say they have never found leprosy attack the cutaneous nerves, but when I have pointed it out to them in cases where they had previously failed to find it, they have realized that it is very much more common than they imagined. I may say it was only after some years experience that I found the nerves thickened to anything like the extent I did latterly.

The other question was the relative infectivity of tuberculoid and skin leprosy. I think that there is no doubt that the tuberculoid, if it is infectious at all, is very much less so than the skin type. I think everybody agrees on that point. There is always the danger that the tuberculoid or neural case may pass on into the infectious cutaneous type of leprosy.

COMMUNICATIONS.

FILARIASIS OF GROUND DOVES IN ST. CROIX, VIRGIN ISLANDS.

BY

F. W. O'CONNOR, M.R.C.S.

AND

H. A. BEATTY.*

On 22nd December, 1936, while searching for an animal naturally infected with sheathed microfilariae, we shot a ground dove, *Columbigallina passerina nigrirostris* (Fig. 1). Sheathed microfilariae were abundant in the heart blood but scanty in the peripheral blood from the wing. In fresh blood mixed with heparin it was subsequently found that the microfilariae exhibited progressive

*From the Department of Medicine, Presbyterian Hospital, Columbia University, New York, and the Department of Health, St. Croix. We are grateful to Dr. JAMES KNOTT, Civil Medical Officer, St. Croix, for facilities arranged for doing this work and for making available the help of the co-author.

Owing to the death of Professor O'CONNOR, Col. CLAYTON LANE kindly undertook the responsibility of seeing this and the following paper through the press.—ED.

as well as wriggling movements. Stained specimens were, at our request, demonstrated before the Royal Society of Tropical Medicine by Col. CLAYTON LANE (O'CONNOR, 1936). In several doves examined adult parasites were found in large blood vessels beneath the liver and between the abdominal organs and elsewhere. An infected bird was sent to Dr. DONALD L. AUGUSTINE (1937) who named the parasite *Vagrifilaria columbigallinae*. Because of the similarity of both adult worms and microfilariae (Fig. 2) to the corresponding stages of *Wuchereria bancrofti* in man and because of the interesting pathology associated with the bird parasites, we decided to make further studies of the latter in the hope that some light might be thrown on the kindred human infection.

Up to date, the heart blood of sixty-five ground doves has been examined in St. Croix and in sixty-three or 96.9 per cent., the same sheathed microfilariae have been found. On the other hand, in four ground doves of the same species kindly collected and sent to us by Dr. J. P. O'MAHONEY from Antigua, serial section failed to reveal any evidence of infection. A similar microfilaria was once found in each of the following birds: the white headed pigeon, *Columba leucopala*, the red headed pigeon, *C. squamosa* and the mountain dove, *Zenaida zenaida*, but studies of more birds of these species indicate that they are not commonly infected.

Method of Study.—Having ascertained that the majority of adult parasites were located in the abdomen or chest, the internal organs from the throat to the anus were removed in one piece. This was of suitable size for embedding in one paraffin block and the resulting serial sections were found to fit conveniently on an ordinary microscope slide under a No. 1 coverslip 22 × 50 mm. Such sections revealed in their normal anatomical relationship the lungs, heart, gizzard, liver, spleen, pancreas, intestines, kidneys and sex organs.

Forty-nine doves were studied by serial section. In one no evidence of infection was found and *no pathological changes* were observed. In another while microfilariae were found in the organs and blood vessels, the adults were not discovered, indicating that the latter were in tissues outside the thorax and abdomen. In the remaining forty-seven doves recently-living adult worms were found in the following locations—in blood vessels in the neighbourhood of the liver forty-four times (Fig. 3), lungs nine times, pancreas six, and heart six; and between the coils of the intestines four times. Dead and degenerating adult worms were found in sixteen birds; eleven in the liver and five in the lungs. Degeneration was always by caseation and fragmentation, the dead worms being surrounded and invaded by foreign-body giant cells and small round cells with eosinophils. Calcification of dead worms was not observed.

In sections of the brains and eyes of four doves a few healthy microfilariae were found, but as they were not associated with any observable pathology these organs were not subsequently studied. In the very small spleen micro-



FIG. 1.—*Columbigallina passerina nigrirostris* (natural size).

a



b



FIG. 2.—*Microfilaria bancrofti* and *columbigallinae* from fresh blood, compared.
Both same magnification.

(a) *Mf. bancrofti*.

(b) *Mf. columbigallinae*.



FIG. 3.—Section through liver of dove showing mass of male and female worms in dilated blood vessel. $\times 28$.

FIG. 4

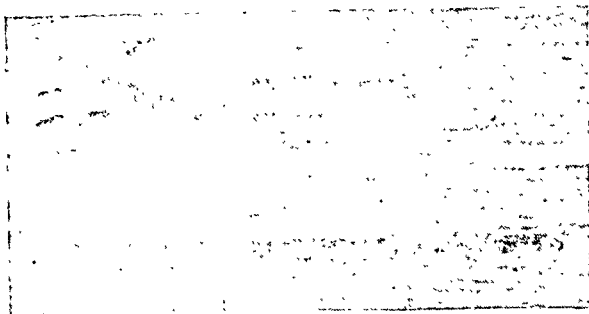


FIG. 5a

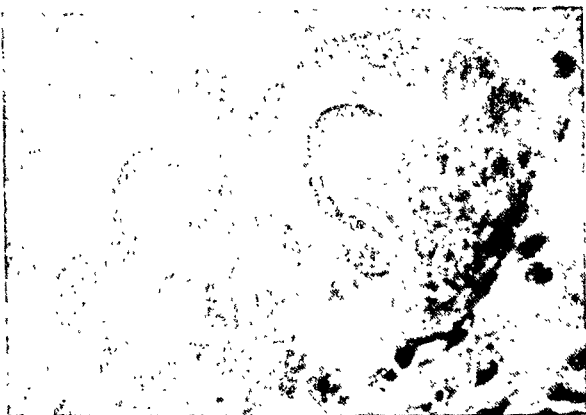


FIG. 5b.

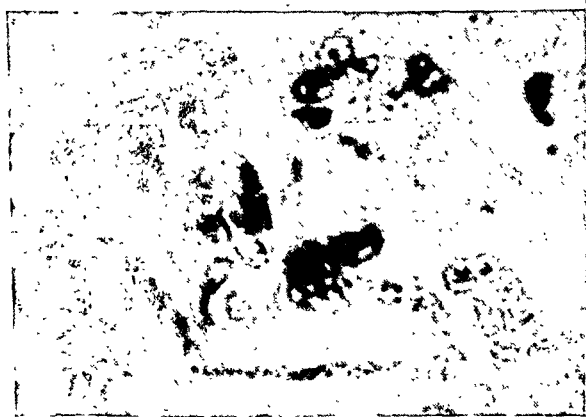


FIG. 4.—Microfilariae between muscle fibres of heart of ground dove. $\times 970$.
FIGS. 5a and 5b.—Degenerating microfilariae in giant cells of liver of dove. $\times 970$.

filariae were not conspicuous and no sign of degeneration was seen. In the skin, gizzard, sex organs and pancreas microfilariae were not present in large numbers. In the kidneys embryos were easily found between the tubules and sometimes in masses in the large vessels. On only a few occasions were they found in the diminutive glomeruli. In the intestines several microfilariae, sometimes in groups, were found in the submucosa especially at the bottom or in the middle of the villi. A few parasites were occasionally found to be degenerating in these situations but never with the regularity to be described elsewhere. In the *lungs* microfilariae were usually present in large numbers *at any time of day or night* even when adult worms were present only in the liver. Sometimes in a section masses of embryos were present in large and small lung vessels while close by in similar vessels they were scanty. They were also very numerous in the blood of the heart chambers. In all these situations the majority of the parasites were in mid-stream* and showed no tendency to adhere to the sides of the vessels or chambers. In the heart wall microfilariae were often very numerous and were frequently seen straightened out between the muscle fibres (Fig. 4). The embryos in lungs and heart exhibited clear morphology and appeared to be perfectly healthy, nor was any cellular response occasioned by their presence.

The most striking changes were found in the *liver* which was generally enlarged in proportion to the number of adult worms in the body and of microfilariae in the general circulation. In the livers of thirty-four doves, on holding to the light sections stained with haematoxylin and eosin, local areas of smaller or larger size could be seen which were much bluer than the rest of the hepatic tissue. These areas were frequently at or near liver margins and were sharply differentiated from the adjacent healthy tissue. Sometimes only one such area was found but at other times several islets of such tissue were observed. The position of these areas did not seem to bear any relationship to the site of adult parasites in the liver and were found in doves in which parent worms were present only in the lungs. On microscopical examination, the "blue" areas were found to be heavily infiltrated with lymphocytes amidst which were a large number of multinucleate giant cells. Varying numbers of eosinophil leucocytes were scattered or grouped in the vicinity. While microfilariae, generally dead and degenerating, were scattered throughout the liver they were much more numerous in the "blue" areas and especially in the giant cells (Figs. 5*a* and *b*). In one section, 7 μ thick $\frac{1}{8}$ inch square, 336 giant cells were counted and, in 139 of these, degenerated microfilariae were found. Examination of serial sections showed microfilariae in many of the other giant

*It should be noted that the majority of the birds were killed instantly by shooting or by chloroform and that within a minute the internal organs after removal were placed in 10 per cent. formalin for fixation.

cells. Owing to the curled position of the dead embryos, the giant cells frequently appeared like a spiral nebula. In the livers of eleven doves giant cell formation was not present but islands of dense round-celled infiltration with eosinophils were conspicuous. In many of these islands degenerating microfilariae were seen. In two livers there was no such marked cellular reaction and it is worth noting that in both of these cases very few microfilariae were present in the general circulation; nevertheless, dead and degenerating microfilariae were found between some of the liver cells. In all cases where present, the dead microfilariae showed every stage of degeneration varying from cloudy specimens, with otherwise clear morphology, to forms in which a chain of fragmented nuclei alone revealed their presence. The whole picture seen again and again in the different livers suggested massive death, degeneration and absorption of parasites going on continuously in the organ.

The method of transmission of the dove filaria was not determined. Immediately after shooting birds, a number of *Olfersia americana* living on the doves were captured and dissected but no microfilariae or larvae were found in these insects. Believing that possibly the birds might be infected while still in the nest, six squabs, about 10 days old, were serially sectioned but no parasites were found. The only suggestive finding was perivascular infiltration of some of the portal vessels with eosinophil leucocytes.

Periodicity.—Evidence of periodicity of the microfilariae was not observed although two methods were adopted to ascertain if the microfilaria of *Vagrifilaria columbigallinae* exhibited any.

From the wing veins of two doves 10 c.mm. of blood was drawn into a syringe containing heparin every 2 hours for 24 hours and the microfilariae counted. It appeared at first that there was some decrease in numbers of the embryos between 10 a.m. and 4 p.m., but control specimens from an adjacent wing vein frequently showed the large numbers of parasites that had been found at night.

A batch of twelve doves were captured and, after finding that all had microfilariae in the blood of the wing vein, one was killed with chloroform every 2 hours for 24 hours. Immediately after death the internal organs were placed in 10 per cent. formalin and were subsequently examined by serial section. No evidence of periodicity resulted from the study of the sections. Most of the parent female worms contained embryos and ova in varying numbers and in the vagina microfilariae were stretched in bundles. On the other hand, there was no evidence of continuous parturition and frequently embryos were noticeably scanty near the parent worms although abundant in lungs and heart. No microfilariae were found issuing from the vagina in sections showing that area of the worm. No collapsed worms suggestive of recent parturition

were seen. Two female worms were considered immature because they were smaller than usual and because there was no evidence of either ova or microfilariae in the uteri. No collapsed parent females, like those seen in some human cases were discovered. It may be noted that in the same section of the uterus nearly fully developed microfilariae and partially developed ova were seen together.

The findings in one dove seem worth mentioning. Killed and examined at 10 p.m., very few microfilariae were found in any of the blood vessels or organs although a few degenerating ones were found in giant cells of the much enlarged liver. No living adult worm was found but a recently dead female containing ova and some microfilariae was present in the lung. The parasite was surrounded by a zone of giant cells and lymphocytes with eosinophils. The findings suggest that with the death of the parent worm not only the latter but also the liberated microfilariae degenerate rapidly. An extensive pathology of the liver was judged by Dr. ALVIN PAPPENHEIMER to be due to adeno-carcinoma involving especially the biliary ducts. The few microfilariae found outside the liver, e.g., lungs, heart, etc., were undergoing degeneration. With this exception degenerating microfilariae were only marked in the livers and occasionally in the intestine.

During examinations of the sections, the following intestinal parasites were noticed, all in the small intestine ; a tapeworm with hooks on the rostellum twice, an oviparous nematode worm four times, and coccidia twice.

SUMMARY.

1. Of the ground doves examined in St. Croix *Microfilaria columbigallinae* was found in the blood of 96.9 per cent.
2. The adult worms were most commonly found in the liver, less often in the lungs, heart, pancreas and tissues of the intestines.
3. The microfilariae were most numerous in the lung vessels and heart chambers and heart muscle ; in these situations they appeared to be healthy.
4. Massive destruction of microfilariae was constantly observed in the liver associated with varying degrees of cellular response.

REFERENCES.

- O'CONNOR, F. W. (1936). Microfilariae in the blood of the ground dove of St. Croix, Virgin Islands. [Demonstration at Laboratory Meeting], *Trans. Roy. Soc. trop. Med.*, 30, 6.
- AUGUSTINE, D. L. (1937). Description of a new filariid from ground doves of St. Croix, Virgin Islands. *Ibid.*, 31, 47.
-

Professor O'CONNOR died 4 days after the date of the postmark on the envelope enclosing the paper. In his accompanying letter, he emphasized, with italics, that this paper was a *Prelude* to a larger one which he was beginning at once on "massive destruction of microfilariae in man: 1, in the lymphatics before reaching the blood stream (four cases), and 2, in the liver and spleen after reaching the blood stream (probably six cases)."

CLAYTON LANE.

WUCHERERIA BANCROFTI IN MOSQUITOES OF ST. CROIX.

BY

F. W. O'CONNOR, M.R.C.S.,

AND

H. A. BEATTY.*

The present work was undertaken in the hope that better acquaintance with the fate of *Wuchereria bancrofti* in some of its arthropod hosts might reveal information indicating methods for the prevention of Bancroft's filariasis.

SCOPE OF THE PRESENT STUDIES.	PAGE
1. General information about St. Croix	413
2. History and incidence of Bancroft's filariasis	414
3. Examination of the blood of wild and domestic animals	415
4. Determination of the duration of larval development in <i>Culex fatigans</i>	416
5. Dissection and examination of 5,000 wild female <i>C. fatigans</i>	417
6. Examination of other wild mosquitoes	420
7. The fate of microfilariae and larvae in and after leaving <i>C. fatigans</i>	422
8. Distribution of fully developed larvae in <i>C. fatigans</i>	425
9. Variations in the incidence of infection in wild <i>C. fatigans</i>	426
10. Studies and methods advocated with a view to reducing the incidence and severity of Bancroft's filariasis in a town such as Christiansted in St. Croix	429

1.—GENERAL INFORMATION ABOUT ST. CROIX.

The island of St. Croix (Fig. 1) lies between 17th and 19th parallels north latitude and 64° 10' and 65° 30' west longitude. It comprises 84 square miles. The length is 21 miles, while the breadth, which varies considerably, is at most 6 miles. There are two large towns, 15 miles apart, Christiansted, the capital, on the north and Fredericksted, the principal port, on the west coast. The surface is of sandy loam grading off into gravel and the land is very porous, in consequence there is little surface water as compared with the neighbouring

* From the Department of Medicine, Presbyterian Hospital, Columbia University, New York City and the Department of Health, St. Croix, Virgin Islands, U.S.A.

The laboratory facilities for these studies were made available by Dr. JAMES KNOTT, Civil Medical Officer, St. Croix, who also lent the services of the joint author. We acknowledge our cordial thanks for the assistance.

REFERENCES.

- O'CONNOR, F. W. (1936). Microfilariae in the blood of the ground dove of St. Croix, Virgin Islands. [Demonstration at Laboratory Meeting], *Trans. Roy. Soc. trop. Med.*, 30, 6.
- AUGUSTINE, D. L. (1937). Description of a new filariid from ground doves of St. Croix, Virgin Islands. *Ibid.*, 31, 47.
-

Professor O'CONNOR died 4 days after the date of the postmark on the envelope enclosing the paper. In his accompanying letter, he emphasized, with italics, that this paper was a *Prelude* to a larger one which he was beginning at once on "massive destruction of microfilariae in man: 1, in the lymphatics before reaching the blood stream (four cases), and 2, in the liver and spleen after reaching the blood stream (probably six cases)."

CLAYTON LANE.

WUCHERERIA BANCROFTI IN MOSQUITOES OF ST. CROIX.

BY

F. W. O'CONNOR, M.R.C.S.,

AND

H. A. BEATTY.*

The present work was undertaken in the hope that better acquaintance with the fate of *Wuchereria bancrofti* in some of its arthropod hosts might reveal information indicating methods for the prevention of Bancroft's filariasis.

SCOPE OF THE PRESENT STUDIES.	PAGE
1. General information about St. Croix	413
2. History and incidence of Bancroft's filariasis	414
3. Examination of the blood of wild and domestic animals	415
4. Determination of the duration of larval development in <i>Culex fatigans</i>	416
5. Dissection and examination of 5,000 wild female <i>C. fatigans</i>	417
6. Examination of other wild mosquitoes	420
7. The fate of microfilariae and larvae in and after leaving <i>C. fatigans</i>	422
8. Distribution of fully developed larvae in <i>C. fatigans</i>	425
9. Variations in the incidence of infection in wild <i>C. fatigans</i>	426
10. Studies and methods advocated with a view to reducing the incidence and severity of Bancroft's filariasis in a town such as Christiansted in St. Croix	429

1.—GENERAL INFORMATION ABOUT ST. CROIX.

The island of St. Croix (Fig. 1) lies between 17th and 19th parallels north latitude and 64° 10' and 65° 30' west longitude. It comprises 84 square miles. The length is 21 miles, while the breadth, which varies considerably, is at most 6 miles. There are two large towns, 15 miles apart, Christiansted, the capital, on the north and Fredericksted, the principal port, on the west coast. The surface is of sandy loam grading off into gravel and the land is very porous, in consequence there is little surface water as compared with the neighbouring

* From the Department of Medicine, Presbyterian Hospital, Columbia University, New York City and the Department of Health, St. Croix, Virgin Islands, U.S.A.

The laboratory facilities for these studies were made available by Dr. JAMES KNOTT, Civil Medical Officer, St. Croix, who also lent the services of the joint author. We acknowledge our cordial thanks for the assistance.

island of Puerto Rico. The average rainfall is 46 inches; the dryest months are between January and March after which the rainfall rises until it is highest in October; from July to October hurricanes are liable to occur. For the year 1st July, 1935, to 30th June, 1936, the general average maximum temperature was 89° F., the minimum 66° F.; the maximum temperatures were 90° F. in July, 92° F. in August, 91° F. in June, 64° F. in November, 61° F. in December, 62° F. in February and 60° F. in March.

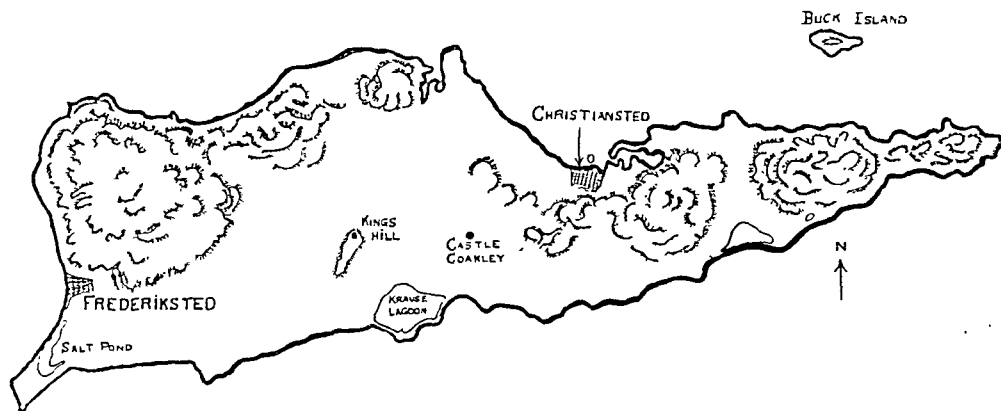


FIG. 1.—ST. CROIX, VIRGIN ISLANDS, U.S.A.

According to the latest census (1930) the population of the island was 11,413; 414 of them are white, 9,592 negro, 1,386 mixed colour, and 21 Asiatic. In the Christiansted area, with which we are most concerned, the population for the same year was: white 164, negro 3,126, mixed 475 and Asiatic 2.

2.—HISTORY AND INCIDENCE OF BANCROFT'S FILARIASIS.

Although discovered in 1493, little effort was made to colonize St. Croix before 1625 and in 1645 there were only 600 inhabitants. In 1650 the island was depopulated by the Spaniards from Puerto Rico. Attempts by the French under the monarchy and subsequently by the Knights of Malta to develop the island failed and it was again deserted in 1720. The Danes obtained possession in 1733 and began importing slaves the following year. Tropical diseases including filariasis could only have become permanent factors in invaliding as late as 1734. The Danes doubtless collected important data during their occupation but these were not available for the present studies. The earliest record we can find of filariasis is in the death returns of the Moravian missionaries* which have been kept since 1844. In that year "rose" (lymphangitis) is

* Information placed at our disposal by the Rev. Dr. JOHN GOERNER, Minister of the Moravian Church in St. Croix.

mentioned and thereafter this condition and elephantiasis appear frequently. NEUMANN (1881) estimated that about 6 per cent. of the population had elephantiasis. Following the acquisition of the Virgin Islands by the United States in 1917, with organization of the Health Department under the U.S. Naval Medical Service, a series of important papers concerning filariasis appeared. BUTLER and HAKANSSON (1917) estimated filarial infection in St. Croix as being 25 per cent. in a population of 14,901. STENHOUSE (1924) found microfilariae in 10 per cent. of bloods examined. HUGHENS (1927) observed microfilariae in 12.5 per cent. of patients in the Christiansted hospital and in 23.8 per cent. of patients in the Fredericksted Hospital. Clinical filariasis as indicated by elephantiasis and hydrocele, common in both towns, was more so in the latter. Under the Civil Administration KNOTT (1936) has made extensive studies on filariasis. In an examination of 2,000 school children, using 1 c.c. of blood in each case, 16 per cent. had microfilariae. At the Old People's Farm, King's Hill, in the centre of the island, using the same quantity of blood from 124 persons he found microfilariae in 46 per cent. At the Civilian Conservation Corps camp, where there were boys from 16 to 25 years of age from all over the island, using 1 c.c. of blood he found microfilariae in 43 per cent. At night, using 20 c.mm. of blood, he found 39 per cent. with microfilariae and studying 10 c.c. of blood he found 53 per cent. with embryos. As to clinical manifestations of filariasis, from personal observation it is clear that all the obstructive and inflammatory phenomena previously seen in Puerto Rico and Antigua are present. There is abundant evidence therefore that filariasis is very prevalent in St. Croix and is probably more so in Fredericksted than in Christiansted. There seems to be a focus of high prevalence at King's Hill (see Table I). There is considerable variation in the incidence of microfilariae noted by different observers and by different methods of study by the same observer (KNOTT). The 10 c.c. studies by KNOTT should, we believe, be considered as the most reliable; if, therefore, considering his work we roughly estimate the microfilarial incidence of Christiansted as being between 40 and 50 per cent. of the inhabitants, it will be interesting to analyze the degree of infection in mosquito hosts of the same locality.

3.—EXAMINATION OF THE BLOOD OF WILD AND DOMESTIC ANIMALS.

Since filaria larvae found in wild *Culex fatigans* might conceivably come from wild or domestic animals other than man, it was considered advisable to examine the blood of as many, particularly of the former, as possible.

Thus, throughout the studies at various times the blood of large numbers of the following were examined: cats, rats and mice (living trapped specimens), goats, bats (captured alive in their day shelters), fowl, ducks, turkeys and domestic pigeons, the wild mongoose and several species of small lizards. In none of these were microfilariae found.

Christiansted, like all towns in St. Croix, harbours large numbers of mongrel dogs.

An examination of 1 c.c. of blood of thirty-three dogs by Dr. JAMES KNOTT showed that 33 per cent. contained the microfilaria of *Dirofilaria immitis*. It was therefore decided to observe the behaviour of this parasite in two of its reputed insect vectors, namely, *C. fatigans* and *Aedes aegypti*. That the parasite does not develop readily under experimental conditions in either insect in St. Croix was indicated by our efforts to infect them. Using *C. fatigans* fed on a dog with many larvae in the blood, many parasites, all dead, were found next day in old stomach blood, but none had emigrated to the abdomen or thorax. On the other hand amongst the wild *C. fatigans* examined, on two occasions half-grown larvae active and greenish in colour with developed intestinal canal were found near the Malpighian tubes or in the abdomen (Table IV). With experimental *A. aegypti* attempts to get full development failed on many occasions till May, when in two insects fully developed larvae, much shorter than those of *W. bancrofti*, were found in the proboscis on the 15th day. In wild *A. aegypti* young larvae similar to those found in experimental insects were only once found in the abdomen. Considering the large number of dogs in Christiansted and the high percentage of those which have embryos of *Dirofilaria immitis* in the blood, it would appear that although *C. fatigans* and *A. aegypti* may become infected under natural conditions, neither of these insects is the main factor in transmitting the canine infection in St. Croix.

There are many horses, mules and asses in St. Croix but most of these are stabled in the country and they were not examined for the embryos of *Setaria equina*.

In wooded and bush country and generally at some distance from human habitations are numerous ground doves, *Columbigallina passerina nigrivostis*. These were found to be heavily infected with a sheathed microfilaria (O'CONNOR, 1936), belonging to a filarial worm, *Vagrifilaria columbigallinae* AUGUSTINE, 1937. A similar microfilaria was rarely found by the writer in the white-headed pigeon, *Columba leucocephala*, the redheaded pigeon, *C. squamosa*, and the mountain dove, *Zenaida zenaida*. Efforts to infect *C. fatigans* with this microfilaria were not successful, and as the four bird hosts mentioned do not nest or roost close to human habitations it is improbable that they would infect domestic mosquitoes within the area of the present studies.

On the whole then, we feel reasonably sure that in our studies with wild mosquitoes we have, with the exceptions already mentioned, been dealing with the microfilaria and larvae of *W. bancrofti*.

4.—DETERMINATION OF THE DURATION OF LARVAL DEVELOPMENT IN *Culex fatigans*.

This was decided by means of 48-hour old imagines fed at night on volunteers in whose blood microfilariae were present. The insects collected next morning after a single blood feed were subsequently kept in mosquito-proofed lantern globes and fed on weak sugar syrup. Each day a few insects were dissected until larvae were found fully developed in the proboscis. The minimum period for this development was found to be : November, 1935, 13 days; December, 1935, to January, 1936, 17 days; and July, 1936, 9 days.

On most occasions with fully developed parasites in proboscis, head, etc., a few parasites which had not completely reached that stage were found in the thorax. The maximum period for larval development was on each occasion 1 to 3 days longer than the minimum figure quoted. The largest number of fully developed larvae found in an apparently healthy insect was thirty-two, distributed as follows : proboscis two, head ten, thorax fourteen and abdomen

six. In addition two parasites, about two-thirds developed, were present in the thorax. These studies made it possible at the different seasons to estimate the phase of parasitic development in wild mosquitoes (see Table I and Fig. 2).

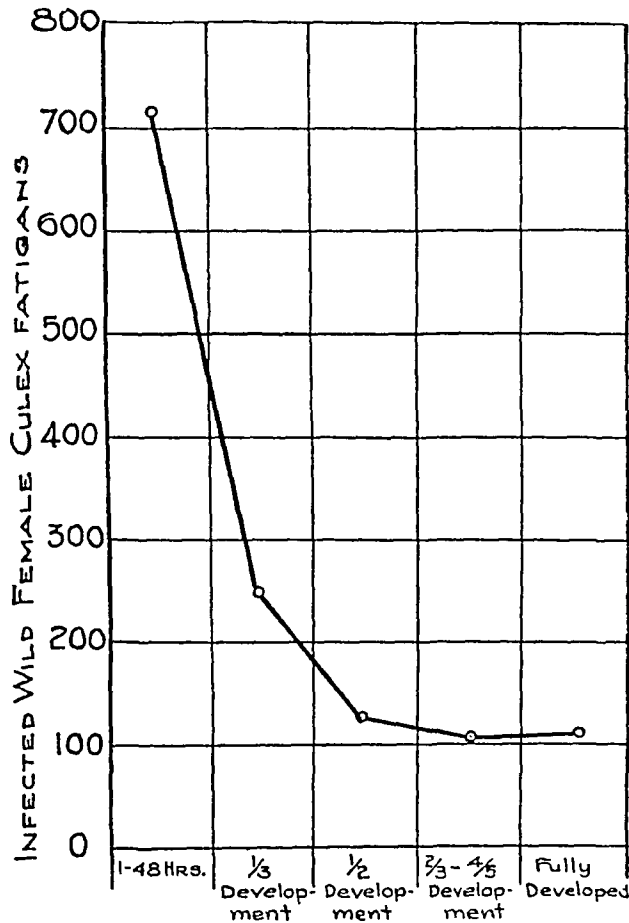


FIG. 2.—Phase of development of *Wuchereria bancrofti* in wild *Culex fatigans*.

5.—DISSECTION AND EXAMINATION OF 5,000 WILD FEMALE *Culex fatigans*.

Most of the insects were captured in Christiansted.

This city is situated on the north coast at the base of high hills which enclose it on the north-east, east and south, it is thus sheltered from the eastern trade-winds and visitors frequently find it unpleasantly warm ; it is well laid out, most of the thoroughfares running north to south or east to west. The houses are generally well constructed, the better-class ones large and airy, being constructed on the Danish plan, in many of these a high staircase leads to the ground floor which is well above the street level ; even the houses of the poor are generally superior to those of the same classes in such neighbouring islands as Puerto

TABLE I.
RESULTS OF EXAMINATIONS OF FEMALE *Culex fatigans* CAPTURED AT ST. CROIX, VIRGIN ISLANDS.

Number Examined.	With Stomach Blood.	Without Stomach Blood.	Infected.	Per cent. Infected.	Phase of Larval Development.†					Per cent. Infective.	Insects with two Generations of Parasites.	Insects with Parasites without Stomach Blood.	Insects with Chicken Blood in Stomach.	Chicken Blood in Stomach. Parasites elsewhere.	Location.
					I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.						
929	535	394	430	46.2	316	69	28	12	28	3	22*	90	81	8	Inside H. P.'s house.†
252	170	82	49	19.4	17	13	13	6	6	2.3	5*	15	26	2	Outhouses, rain barrels of H. P.'s house.†
336	291	45	119	35.4	84	25	7	5	5	1.4	7	10	27	0	Inside V. H.'s house.†
362	234	128	46	12.7	20	7	10	6	5	1.3	2	8	72	0	Outhouses, rain barrels of V. H.'s house.†
669	464	205	103	15.3	44	32	14	13	6	0.9	6	25	14	0	Municipal Hospital, Christiansted.
2,339	1,453	886	462	19.7	226	107	65	53	48	2.05	36*	126	203	10	Town of Christiansted, houses, outhouses, rain barrels.
107	80	27	42	39.2	14	6	1	8	17	15.8	4	5	2	0	Old Peoples' Farm, Kings Hill.
6	6	0	3	50	2	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	Town of Castle Coakley.
5,000	3,233	1,767	1,254	25.08	723	259	138	104	115	2.3	82	279	427	20	Totals.

* One mosquito with three generations of *W. bancrofti* larvae.

† One occupant of each house was known to have microfilariae in the blood.

‡ As the length of each phase varies according to atmospheric conditions at different seasons they are here classed as follows :—

Phase I. From sheathed microflaria till parasites begin to shorten in thorax.

Phase II. Larvae about one-third developed.

Phase III. Larvae about half grown.

Phase IV. Larvae about two-thirds to four-fifths grown.

Phase V. Fully developed larvae.

Rico and Antigua ; most have a yard of varying dimensions with one or more outhouses for fowls, toilet and working tools, etc. The natives are almost entirely dependent on rain for drinking water which is collected in unguarded, wooden or metal barrels in the vicinity of each house ; in these receivers most of the *C. fatigans* and *A. aegypti* breed. Other sources for the breeding of *Culex* are surface wells with brackish water used for washing and cleaning, pools near the coast with brackish water when after rains the diluted water becomes suitable for breeding, cisterns, tanks, unused sugar kettles, gasoline and other tins, broken bottles and cans in rubbish heaps. Breeding also occurs in damaged or obstructed gutters and water spouts of the roofs, and inside houses in disused tubs, pails and vases (HAYES, 1930).

SOURCE OF THE INSECTS.—*Culex fatigans* was collected from the following places :—

A.—In Christiansted.

1. Inside the house of H. P. (occupant known to have microfilariæ).
2. Outhouses in yard of same.
3. Inside house of V. P. (occupant known to have microfilariæ).
4. Outhouses in yard of same.
5. Inside Municipal Hospital.
6. A miscellaneous group taken from houses and outhouses in every part of the city regardless of information as to parasitization of the human population.

B.—Outside Christiansted.

7. Old People's Farm at King's Hill (centre of the island).
8. Castle Coakley.

Although many mosquitoes were taken at 1, 2, 3, 4 and 7 where one or more persons were known to have microfilariæ in the blood, yet in the hospital group with a constantly moving population parasites were frequently not found for long periods in any of the insects. In the miscellaneous town group large numbers of insects were collected from houses where probably, and in some instances (from observation) certainly, no persons had microfilariæ. It is felt therefore that the study represents a fairly practical cross section of the mosquito population of the city.

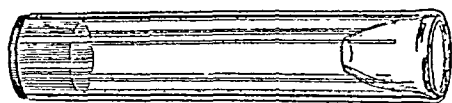


FIG. 3.—Pyrex glass mosquito catcher.

The insects were captured in ordinary pyrex glass mosquito catchers (Fig. 3) between 7.30 and 8.30 a.m. daily. After labelling the dishes with the place of capture they were brought to the laboratory and the mosquitoes were at once partially stunned with tobacco smoke. The wings were removed and they were put aside in dry Petri dishes. Working between 9 a.m. and 5 p.m.

it was found possible, one person dissecting and one making the microscopic examinations and recording results, to study between seventy and seventy-five daily. The head and proboscis, the thorax, and the abdomen respectively were examined on the same microscopic slide in three separate drops of sterile saline. Only insects with blood in the stomach or with mature eggs, as evidence of a previous meal, were studied. The results of the studies are shown in Tables I and II.

TABLE II.

INFECTION OF WILD *Culex fatigans* WITH THE LARVAE OF *W. bancrofti*.
SEASONAL INCIDENCE.

Month.	Number. Examined.	Number Parasitized.	Percentage Parasitized.	Number Infective.	Percentage Infective.	Percentage of Parasitized which are Infective.
1935.						
October	315	76	24.1	5	1.5	6.5
November*	1,367	317	23.1	42	3.07*	13.2
December*	517	160	30.9	10	1.9	6.3
1936.						
January	484	139	28.7	5	1.03	3.59
February	157	53	33.7	3	1.91	5.66
March	38	4	10.5	0	0	0
April	16	1	6.25	0	0	0
May	131	24	18.3	0	0	0
June	1,005	293	29.15	25	2.48	8.5
July	635	95	14.9	16	2.51	16.8
October	23	4	17.3	0	0	0
November	88	31	35.2	1	1.13	3.19
December	224	57	25.4	8	3.6	14
Totals	5,000	1,254	25.08	115	2.3	9.1

* In considering the high percentage of parasitized insects it should be noted (see Table I) that all the King's Hill dissections were made during these two months.

6.—EXAMINATION OF OTHER WILD MOSQUITOES.

Aedes aegypti.—In this series 386 female insects were studied between 5th October, 1935, and 15th January, 1936. One hundred and ninety, or 49 per cent., were found to be infected with the microfilariae or young larvae of *W. bancrofti*. Small infections predominated and only in ten individuals were more than twenty parasites found. The largest number recorded were fifty-four in the thorax of one and sixty-six in the thorax of another taken in the house of H. P.

Under natural conditions microfilariae exsheath rapidly in *Aedes* and quickly reach the thorax, for their greatest number were generally found there, a conclusion confirmed when insects were fed on volunteers with microfilariae in the blood. In such insects most parasites had left the stomach within a few hours, and those left in it dead or dying were very few compared with the numbers usually observed in *C. fatigans*. After leaving the stomach of *Aedes* the parasites are found in the thorax, and were not observed developing in or near the Malpighian tubes or elsewhere in the abdomen. On arrival in the thorax many parasites die even before shortening; survivors may remain active and unshortened for several days; on the other hand shortening may take place early. In experimentally fed insects, parasites, shortened and sluggish or active and unshortened, have been found alive in the thorax as late as nine days after infection, but in no case did development of the intestinal canal take place. After this time only dead parasites were found in the thorax up to the 13th day. Dead and degenerating parasites were found in the thorax of sixty-eight of the wild *A. aegypti*. In degenerating parasites granulation occurs and is followed by fragmentation. Whether living or dead the parasites did not apparently affect the mosquito host and amongst the experimentally fed insects the mortality was much lower than was the case when using *C. fatigans*. Parasites were found in large, medium and small varieties of *A. aegypti*. In no instance was chicken blood found in the stomach of these, and efforts to make these imagines feed on blindfolded chickens in cages were invariably unsuccessful in St. Croix.

The high incidence of infection of wild *A. aegypti* seems related to the biting habits of the insect which, being shy and easily disturbed, has been observed to bite several or more individuals in the same room within a few minutes. It is thus more liable to acquire parasites than *C. fatigans* which more commonly feeds to repletion on one person. The small infections usually found in *A. aegypti* are due in part to the fact of the smallness of the interrupted feeds, but even more so to its feeding more commonly during those hours of the day when fewer parasites are present in the peripheral blood of the human host. As noted, the larvae never reached the infective stage.

Anopheles albimanus.—KNOTT and BEATTY in 1935 found that in St. Croix *A. albimanus* was, under experimental conditions, a suitable host for the larval phase of *W. bancrofti*; during the present studies this observation was confirmed. In *A. albimanus* imagines fed on 9th October, 1935, fully developed larvae were found in the proboscis on the 27th day of the same month, development being apparently a little slower than in *C. fatigans*; in one out of ten wild *A. albimanus* studied, young very active *W. bancrofti* larvae were found. In St. Croix *A. albimanus* has only been found in limited areas; it has sometimes become so prevalent as to cause severe outbreaks of malaria, but with the effective methods of the Public Health Service under Dr. KNOTT's administration it has been easily controlled, so that it was difficult to procure even a few specimens during these studies. For this reason in St. Croix it cannot under ordinary conditions be considered of major practical importance as a vector of filariasis, although because of malaria vigilance is always necessary.

Culex habitator was likewise shown by KNOTT and BEATTY in 1935 to be a good laboratory vector for the larvae of *W. bancrofti*. In the present studies development of the parasites in this insect was of the same duration as in *C. fatigans*. Throughout the year, however, the insect was never found in very

great numbers and so, though contributory, is not considered very serious as a transmitting agent of filariasis. Parasites varying in development between one and seven days were found in four out of five wild *C. habilitator* which were captured.

Aedes taeniorhynchus.—This insect was collected four times in houses near the seashore at Christiansted. Young parasites, dead and degenerated, were found in two of the insects.

7.—THE FATE OF MICROFILARIAE AND LARVAE IN AND AFTER LEAVING *Culex fatigans*.

During, and soon after feeding, sheathed microfilariae are passed by *C. fatigans* per rectum, and sheaths and subsequently exsheathed larvae are found in the droppings until 24 hours later. This was demonstrated by placing newly fed mosquitoes in containers made by apposing microscope slides held together by adhesive tape (Fig. 4).* The slides were subsequently separated,



FIG. 4.—Container made from microscope slide for collection and examination of fly droppings.

fixed and stained with haematoxylin when the parasites were demonstrated in the droppings. Many droppings were washed off in efforts to fix them, so it was not estimated how many parasites were lost, but from the numbers found it is clear that many succumb in this way.

* Photographs of such boxes and demonstration of the slides which made them up were first shown by me for Professor O'CONNOR at this Society's Laboratory Meeting in March, 1936.—CLAYTON LANE.

In fifty-five instances only dead parasites were found in the stomach blood, none having reached the thorax. These were generally small infections but ten or more such parasites were found in seven insects, the highest recorded being twenty-six on two occasions.

TABLE III.

FATE OF LARVAE OF *Wuchereria bancrofti* IN WILD *Culex fatigans* DURING THE FIRST 20 HOURS AFTER AN INFECTIVE FEED.

	50 Mosquitoes dissected from 4 to 16 hours after an Infective Feed.						50 Mosquitoes dissected from 16 to 20 hours after an Infective Feed.					
Blood ...	Red : little clotting.						Dark : much clotting.					
	Number of Larvae.						Number of Larvae.					
	Total.	Some variations.					Total.	Some variations.				
In stomach												
Dead	289	0	1	8	123	12	591	55	51	67	18	18
Feeble	71	0	0	0	0	12	92	5	2	1	0	17
Active	590	50	25	25	17	0	8	0	0	0	0	1
In thorax	596	56	72	31	13	1	643	25	63	1	58	44
Grand total	1546						1,334					

Table III shows that of 2,880 parasites found in 100 wild culex (others had doubtless been passed previously in droppings) 880 or 30.5 per cent. died in the stomach blood ; 163 more parasites described as " feeble " should be added to this loss since they could not possibly in this condition extricate themselves from the clots which become larger and more numerous from 12 hours after the insect feeds. That such feeble parasites do not reach the thorax will be appreciated by comparing Parts I and II of the Table. Thus, if these parasites are added to those already dead, then of 2,880 parasites found 1,043 or 36.2 per cent. would eventually have succumbed without further development.

Having " exsheathed," a comparatively small number of larvae pierce the stomach wall and travel through the abdomen to the thorax which they may reach as early as two hours after the insects feed. The majority, however, as shown by IYENGAR (1936) and O'CONNOR and BEATTY (1936) reach the thorax later by way of the anterior midgut which they penetrate. Since parasites reach the thorax from 2 to 24 hours after the infective feed, the great variation in size, shape and motility at the latter time is explained, for some will have already

become shortened, broad and sluggish while others of the same generation will be long, narrow and very active. For the first few days after feeding there was sometimes a heavy mortality of insect hosts while the survivors showed a fair number of parasites, all dead, in the thorax; on other occasions the insects themselves were apparently healthy when killed 24 hours after the feed but all the parasites in the thorax were dead both in heavy and light infections. This shows that, even in a known suitable insect vector, parasites which have reached the thorax do not invariably survive. On two occasions exsheathed larvae were found in the proboscis of the mosquito 24 hours after ingestion; these apparently had wandered out of the thorax while seeking a suitable location for development. After the first two days few parasites seem to die in the mosquito. No parasites were found developing except in the thorax until about 2 days before full development was reached; then, however, even before the tail papillae were recognizable a few parasites were found in the abdomen, while others from the thorax exhibited definitely progressive movements.

Although 25.08 per cent. of *C. fatigans* had become "infected" only 9.1 per cent. of these contained fully developed or "infective" parasites; while of 5,000 insects studied only 2.3 per cent. contained fully developed, infective larvae (Table II).

Probably, however, the percentage of *C. fatigans* which actually infect man in Christiansted is much smaller, as the following considerations suggest.

I.—A number of insects are killed by strong wind, sudden torrential rain, spiders, bats and small lizards. Living, dying and dead larvae may be found in drowned insects. Chickens probably destroy many. In a first experiment to see if *C. fatigans* would feed on chickens, the mosquito-proofed cage used was so small that the mosquitoes could not get out of reach of the bird, and next morning every one of several dozen had disappeared; the next evening the chicken placed in the same cage was blindfolded with an adhesive tape bandage and the following morning all the insects had not only survived but their stomachs contained chicken blood. Furthermore, chickens wandering into the laboratory were observed devouring culex and aedes resting in the dark corners of the room.

II.—Both mosquito and parasites may be killed by mutilation while biting. Experimentally, when insects with mature larvae were allowed to bite man and crushed by a blow as soon as the sting was felt, it was found that while some parasites survived others were either killed outright or so damaged as to prevent their further activity. It is possible that when so crushed some parasites, surviving, might make their way from thorax or abdomen to the human skin, yet probably more succumb than survive by such treatment.

III.—The bite of *C. fatigans* is immediately irritating to a person who is awake, and scratching by the victim results, so that some parasites having reached the skin are damaged or killed while wandering on or entering it.

IV.—Parasites may be deposited on an unsuitable host. It has been shown that culex will readily bite domestic fowl. Moreover, from the frequency with which developing *W. bancrofti* larvae were found in the thorax of insects with chicken blood in the stomach it appears that *C. fatigans* is almost as partial to this kind of avian blood as it is to human blood. If *W. bancrofti* larvae are fully developed in a mosquito biting a fowl it is probable that the parasites get on to the skin or get lost among the feathers of the bird.

V.—Parasites may leave the proboscis as the result of stimuli other than that of contact between mosquito and the skin of any animal. While separating the head of *C. fatigans* from the thorax without touching the proboscis, larvae were observed fairly frequently to leave the tip of the latter and enter the drop of saline in which the parts were lying. The method

used for making permanent preparations of "infective" mosquitoes was as follows. The insects were partially stunned by tobacco smoke and allowed to drop into hot Schaudinn fixing fluid. The wings were only removed after fixation and prior to mounting. Nevertheless, on several occasions larvae were found fixed in the act of leaving the proboscis (Fig. 5). In many of the small houses of the poor people the atmosphere is thick with



FIG. 5.—Fully developed larva of *W. bancrofti* leaving proboscis of *C. fatigans*. $\times 100$.

smoke from tobacco or stoves and it is probably that larvae leave the proboscis of resting mosquitoes under such conditions. Whether mature larvae require any stimulus whatever to entice them from the proboscis would be well worth investigating. Once arrived there and with an available exit before them there seems to be no reason why they should not, by their wriggling and progressive movements, work their way to the exterior.

Apart, however, from this last mere speculation there is abundant reason for believing that less than 1 per cent. of *Culex fatigans* in Christiansted succeed in so depositing their larvae as to insure the latter entering their definitive host, man.

8.—DISTRIBUTION OF FULLY DEVELOPED LARVAE IN *C. fatigans*.

During previous studies in different countries and in experimentally fed insects it was frequently observed that fully developed larvae may be found in different parts of the body of the mosquito. In the present instances this was closely studied in ninety-two of the infective *Culex* considered in Table IV. It is probable that such parasites in the thorax are "waiting their turn" for entry to the already occupied head and proboscis, but why 57, or 62 per cent., of the parasites should wander to the abdomen seems worth inquiry. A few parasites might aimlessly find their way to this locality but that so many do so suggests that this phenomena is not accidental. It is possible that for some reason the insects leave the thorax just before or on becoming fully developed

and go to the abdomen, until after going back to the thorax they can finally reach the head. Such parasites in the abdomen were carefully observed to see if they ever tried to pierce the tissue at the posterior end of the insect but no suggestion of an effort to do so was observed. It does seem possible that some larvae in

TABLE IV.

DISTRIBUTION OF LARVAE OF *Wuchereria bancrofti* WITHIN 92 *Culex fatigans* FOUND ON CAPTURE TO BE INFECTED.

Site of Infection.	Number of Mosquitoes Infected.	Number of Larvae in the Developmental Phases.*					Greatest Number of Larvae in any one Mosquito.
		I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.	
Proboscis	37					50	2
Head	27					39	3
Thorax	7	33					12
	10		36				12
	6			32			16
	25				80		21
	47					95	11
Abdomen	36					57	4

* The larvae in 70 of these mosquitoes were assigned to one infective feed ; in 19 to two, and in 3 to three infective feeds. In two mosquitoes certain larvae appeared to be those of *Dirofilaria immitis* ; in three the stomach held bird's, probably chicken's, blood ; in four, all previously infected, the stomach held fresh blood with microfilariae still in it.

the abdomen of the mosquito might, if the insects themselves were crushed during biting, make their way through ruptures of the insects to the human skin. While five parasites almost fully developed were found in the thorax of the same insect, the largest number of fully developed larvae found in a wild culex was 14, distributed thus—proboscis 2, head 5, thorax 6, abdomen 1.

9.—VARIATIONS IN THE INCIDENCE OF INFECTION IN *Culex fatigans*.

It has been demonstrated that in and about certain habitations, where one or more persons have fairly high numbers of microfilariae in the blood at night (H. P., V. H. and Old People's Home, Tables I and II), the insects are frequently heavily infected. It remains to consider the degree of insect infection at the

Municipal Hospital with its constantly changing population and also the miscellaneous group from Christiansted. The microfilarial incidence of the general population had not been estimated at the time of these studies but much was learned from the study of the mosquitoes. Not only were insects examined from many parts of every street in the city but the collections were made again and again from the same places. Considering fifty parasites as heavy infections in the whole series, the distribution of such will be easily appreciated by examining Table V.

TABLE V.

LOCALITIES IN WHICH THERE WERE FOUND MORE THAN 50 LARVAL
Wuchereria bancrofti IN A *Culex fatigans*.

Place.	Number Examined.	With 50 or more Parasites. Number.	Per cent.	Number of Parasites in each Mosquito.
Inside house H. P.	929	17	1.8	141, 69, 67, 55, 153, 60, 76, 63, 106, 85, 98, 63, 54, 116, 121, 119, 80.
Outhouses, rain barrels H. P.	252	4	1.6	111, 54, 52, 144.
Inside house V. H.	336	6*	1.8	80, 61, 67, 62, 72, 72.
Outhouses, rain barrels V. H.	362	0*	0	
Municipal Hospital	464	2	0.43	67, 90.
Christiansted	2,339	16	0.69	88, 52, 28, 76, 64, 318, 82, 63, 53, 111, 119, 60, 50.
Old People's Farm	107	1	0.93	74.

*Residence and outhouses fairly well separated on top of hill in open clearing.

With regard to the town of Christiansted, subsequent analysis of this group showed that all the high counts except three came from one house in which the occupant, A., was later found to have a high microfilarial count. Thus, except for this house only three large counts were found in insects from the rest of the city. Similarly it was found throughout the studies that the highest incidence

of infected and infective mosquitoes were found in the same locations (except the Old People's Farm) in which counts ranging from fifty to about 150 parasites were found most commonly in wild *Culex*. These locations are therefore of major importance, both as disseminating foci of *Wuchereria bancrofti* infection and from the point of view of reinfection of the patient and his living companions. If the locations where there is evidence of heavy infection of mosquitoes are investigated it will be found that other factors have to be considered in determining the danger of the spread of filariasis.

The highest incidence of infection of *C. fatigans* was found at the Old People's Farm where Dr. KNOTT found microfilariae in 46 per cent. of 124 people examined. Here obviously infection is spreading amongst the small group of occupants but, as the farm is situated on a hill in the middle of the island (Fig. 1) and far from the populated sections, there is little likelihood of filariasis spreading from this to other neighbourhoods. At the Municipal Hospital on a high hill behind Christiansted, with a constantly changing population it is probably not disseminated to any great extent especially since few of the patients remain long enough to acquire heavy infections. In the town generally, while small infections are disseminated everywhere, mosquito studies indicate that the more serious menace is from certain houses like those of H. P., V. H. and A. With this information certain facts may be considered with a view to preventing or at least reducing the prevalence of filariasis.

1. It would be impracticable to kill all or appreciably reduce the number of transmitting mosquitoes. Most of the *C. fatigans* breed in rain barrels on which the population mainly depends for its drinking water since there are neither rivers, ponds nor suitable wells with potable water. Larvicidal fish have been distributed freely for use in such barrels and are undoubtedly useful, but with limitations. When the larvae are killed, the stronger may devour the weaker fish and the supply dwindles. Moreover, the population are careless in maintaining these or requisitioning further supplies when necessary. The treatment of water in rain barrels and other receptacles with oil or Paris green is obviously unsuitable. The screening of all rain barrels and other receptacles has been considered but the enormous amount of material that would be required, the frequent repairs necessary owing to wear and careless handling by the people, and the fact that many receptacles could not be properly screened indicate that this measure would not prove successful. Daily destruction of mosquitoes in houses and outhouses might be tried but this measure, requiring considerable supervision of personnel, has not been found applicable in large towns.

Adoption of any of the foregoing measures would entail a large staff of inspectors or supervisors on constant service for indefinite periods at a cost beyond the power of government or municipality to maintain.

It seems, therefore, that with our existent lack of knowledge we have no method for application which would insure the destruction of all insect carriers

and therefore the complete prevention of filariasis. It remains to be seen whether short of such an ambitious project something might not be done to limit appreciably the prevalence of filariasis and so (believing that much reinfection is necessary to produce symptoms), to reduce the degree of such reinfection and therefore the severity of the manifestations.

The present work shows that, while some degree of infectivity of wild *Culex fatigans* is found almost everywhere in Christiansted, foci of high infectivity of the insect are not many. From family incidence studies reported in other contributions as well as from the present work, it is clear that the greatest number of cases and the most severe ones occur in single houses or groups of houses. Such foci are easily detected by studying the microfilarial incidence in man in all houses in conjunction with the infective mosquito incidence. It would seem that just as in dealing with hookworm and ascaris, methods of prevention are concentrated especially on families with heavy infections, so preventive measures on filariasis should be especially directed against houses with high microfilariae numbers and high insect infectivity incidence. In Christiansted up to the present, high insect infectivity was only observed in three houses. While a few more may be subsequently discovered the indications are that less than a dozen houses would require preventive measures of an intensive nature.

10.—STUDIES AND METHODS ADVOCATED WITH A VIEW TO REDUCING BANCROFT'S FILARIASIS IN A TOWN SUCH AS CHRISTIANSTED, ST. CROIX.

A. The general measures adopted should be as follows :—

I.—The incidence of persons with microfilariae should be determined at the same time for the whole population.

II.—The percentage of infective mosquitoes should be determined in the same houses and outhouses, etc. The mosquito "infective" incidence may be more valuable than the microfilarial incidence, partly because while some natives do not readily submit to having blood taken from them, yet when the reasons are explained to them they rarely object to their mosquitoes being collected. Furthermore, a person with microfilariae having been infected in another locality may be in a place where there are few or no mosquitoes and so will not be a serious menace. On the other hand, the repeated finding of infected mosquitoes is proof positive that one or more persons with microfilariae is near by.

III.—These studies might well be repeated about every three years.

B. In houses of high human and mosquito infectivity incidence the following local measures should be carried out :—

I.—The nature of filariasis, its transmission and prevention should be completely and simply explained to the occupants of the house where control measures are instituted.

II.—Suitable containers for potable and other water supplies should be adequately screened with wire netting. Where containers are not suitable they should be replaced.

III.—The use of the mosquito net should be demonstrated. (If the occupants cannot afford them these should be provided from public funds.)

IV.—The proper maintenance and use of all screening should be supervised at intervals by the existing sanitary officers.

V.—When possible occupants should be encouraged to keep fowls in their yards *near* the house.

VI.—The number of mosquitoes in the houses and the percentage of these which are infective should be recorded from time to time in order to evaluate the results of preventive measures.

VII.—Efforts to have adult mosquitoes killed daily by the inhabitants while highly desirable will usually be found impracticable. This measure would be too expensive for government maintenance, but where full co-operation is assured should be adopted to supplement the foregoing.

REFERENCES.

- AUGUSTINE, D. L. (1937). Description of a new filariid from ground doves of St. Croix, Virgin Islands. *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, **31**, 47.
- BUTLER, C. S. & HAKANSSON, E. G. (1917). Some first impressions of the Virgin Islands, medical, surgical and epidemiological. *Nav. med. Bull. Wash.*, **11**, 465.
- HAYES, T. H. (1930). Report of mosquito survey in St. Croix. *Ibid.*, **28**, 194.
- HUGHENS, H. V. (1927). Filariasis, report on 1,742 persons observed in St. Croix, Virgin Islands. *Ibid.*, **25**, 111.
- IYENGAR, M. O. T. (1936). Entry of filaria larvae into the body cavity of the mosquito. *Parasitology*, **28**, 190.
- KNOTT, JAMES. (1936). *Personal Communications*.
- Moravian Mission Records for St. Croix*. (1844). Death Registrations.
- NEUMANN, L. (1881). *Symptomatologien Elephantiasis Arabum pedum ophlyst ved I Agthagelsar Paa St. Croix*. Aphanaling for Dochorgaden I Medicinen af L. Neumann. Oftenlieg. Laege i Christiansted, København, August Bangs Boghandetries Bogtrykkeri (H. J. Schor).
- O'CONNOR, F. W. (1936). Microfilariae in the blood of the ground dove of St. Croix, Virgin Islands. [Demonstration at Laboratory Meeting.] *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, **30**, 6.
- O'CONNOR, F. W. & BEATTY, H. (1936). The early migrations of *Wuchereria bancrofti* in *Culex fatigans*. *Ibid.*, **30**, 125.
- STENHOUSE, H. M. (1924). The Kondoleon operation and filariasis. *Nav. med. Bull. Wash.*, **20**, 715.

MECHANISM OF OEDEMA IN HELMINTHIC ANAEMIAS.

BY

M. SALAH, M.R.C.P. (LOND.), D.T.M., D.T.H. (LIVERPOOL).

From the Research Institute and Endemic Diseases Hospital, Public Health Department, Cairo.

The occurrence of oedema in helminthic anaemia is not uncommon. The fact that the association is variable suggests that more than one factor plays a role in its production. In order to determine the causative factors, twenty-two cases of helminthic anaemia with oedema have been subjected to special clinical and biochemical investigations and the effect of various diets and therapeutic measures on the conditions were observed.

The following observations and findings may throw light on the mechanism and significance of this associated oedema.

1. Although all cases showing oedema are markedly anaemic (haemoglobin below 50 per cent.) yet there is no constant relation between the occurrence and degree of the oedema and the severity of the anaemia, e.g., many cases having haemoglobin values of 10 to 20 per cent. showed no evidence of oedema. This suggests the presence of other factors beside the anaemia in its production.

2. Oedema most commonly occurs in anaemia due to ancylostomiasis and intestinal bilharziasis. In the latter it is more common in the dysenteric cases. These two infections are the ones which give rise to marked disturbance of the gastro-intestinal tract and to marked anaemia.

3. The oedema is usually soft, pale and following gravity in distribution; mostly limited to the lower half of the body, it may occasionally acquire a generalised character (four out of twenty-two cases).

Ascites did not occur as a part of the general oedema except in three cases in which a moderate degree of cirrhosis was present. These cases do not include those associated with portal obstruction or polyserositis.

4. Clinical examination as well as blood pressure and pulse estimations have excluded a purely cardiac origin of this oedema. There was a tendency to slightly low figures of both systolic and diastolic pressures in most cases; in some cases there was dilatation of the heart (general, not limited to the right heart; without evidence of venous engorgement, thus excluding beriberi). These findings suggest a certain degree of circulatory weakness but no actual failure.

In three cases the oedema disappeared, within 3 or 4 days after admission, on a protein-free diet, suggesting that rest was the main cause of its disappearance and that circulatory fatigue had been an important additional factor in its production.

5. With the exception of diminished deep reflexes in some cases, there was no evidence of peripheral neuritis suggesting avitaminosis B₁ in any case.

6. Albuminuria is absent in these cases, with the exception of the slight albuminuria produced by bilharziasis. Blood urea estimations and urea concentration tests were within normal limits in all cases. These findings together with the low blood pressure and low blood cholesterol are definitely against any nephritic or nephrotic factor in the causation of this oedema. These observations do not agree with those of DE LANGEN and EERKENS (1933) who found a combination of nephrosis and ancylostomiasis in seventeen out of twenty cases in Java. They concluded accordingly that there is an aetiological relationship between the two diseases. Such a conclusion cannot be accepted for the following reasons :—

(a) No mention has been made of the degree of infection in these cases. From the haemoglobin values it can be seen that the anaemia was mild (above 60 per cent. in sixteen cases) and, therefore, not sufficient to produce an intoxication severe enough to result in nephrosis.

(b) The frequency of *Ancylostoma* infection in an endemic area results in its association with many diseases. An aetiological relationship based only on such an association especially in an endemic area could not be safely accepted without further proof.

(c) We met with a case (outside this series) which showed the typical picture of nephrosis (albumin, fatty, hyaline and epithelial casts without nitrogenous retention, or circulatory disturbances and high blood cholesterol, 785 mg. per cent.).

When this case was followed, signs of a nephritic process were detected 6 months later (nitrogen retention, rise of blood pressure to 170/120, appearance of retinal changes of albuminuric nature) thus the case proved to have been in the nephrotic stage of nephritis when first seen.

This case shows the importance of following up cases showing the nephrotic syndrome over long periods in order to detect signs of renal insufficiency of inflammatory origin. The absence of these signs is to be accepted as the final proof of their purely degenerative nature.

BIOCHEMICAL INVESTIGATIONS.

Investigations on the blood chemistry of these cases have been carried out in fifteen cases ; the following findings were obtained and will be discussed :—

1. The role of *serum calcium* in diminishing capillary permeability has led us to study its concentration in such cases. It was found to be slightly diminished in seven out of seventeen cases. It is to be noted that these cases with hypocalcaemia showed hypoproteinaemia as well.

The cause of this hypocalcaemia cannot be attributed to either deficient supply, as the food of the hospital class of people is rich in calcium (milk, cheese); or to deficient absorption, as vitamin D is also available in milk while the exposure to sun helps the ultra-violet rays to synthesise still some more. Moderate hypocalcaemia is observed in patients with chronic malnutrition especially if advanced to the stage where oedema develops (JANSEN, 1919).

Moreover, it appears to be established that the presence of an adequate amount of protein in the serum is one of the conditions essential for the maintenance of the normal calcium concentration. The fact that the seven cases with hypocalcaemia in our series were associated with hypoproteinaemia supports our conception that the hypocalcaemia here is secondary to the hypoproteinaemia and not a primary nutritional deficiency.

That this hypocalcaemia may have something to do with the occurrence of oedema in these cases was shown by the fact that injections of calcium (in addition to the high protein diet) did hasten the disappearance of the oedema in three cases.

2. The determination of the *plasma proteins* showed low values in 12 out of the 15 cases analysed.

STARLING (1896) showed that the exchange of water between the blood and tissues depends on a balance between the colloidal osmotic pressure of the plasma proteins and the hydrostatic pressure within the capillaries. The significance of hypoproteinaemia in the production of nephrotic oedema has been suggested by EPSTEIN (1917) and confirmed by other observations. There is no reason why a similar mechanism may not be responsible for the production of various oedemas of obscure origin. This induced us to investigate the total plasma proteins as well as the albumin-globulin ratio in these cases.

Although the total proteins were not greatly below normal limits, the albumin fraction was unusually low. In anaemia without oedema hypoproteinaemia of a lesser degree has occasionally been found (three cases). Such cases, if left for some time, will certainly pass into the oedematous group.

TABLE.
SERUM PROTEINS.

Hospital Number.	Total Protein.	Albumin.	Globulin.	Albumin/Globulin Ratio.	Calcium.
4562	5.44	3.63	1.81	2	9
4681	6.31	2.56	3.75	0.78	7.5
4911	6.12	2.56	3.56	0.71	9.7
5726	6.03	3.2	2.83	1.13	10.3
4420	6.15	3.73	2.42	1.54	8.38
4792	5.02	1.89	3.13	0.7	7.7
3971	6.73	3.58	3.15	1.13	8.25
3948	5.59	2.15	3.44	0.77	8.41
5121	6.72	2.28	4.44	0.54	9.1
3061	6.32	3.76	2.56	1.46	8.7
5619	5.95	3.07	2.88	1.41	7.97
5815	5.62	2.82	2.8	1	9.9

Results are expressed in grammes of proteins per 100 c.c. serum. The average serum proteins in normal healthy Egyptians, free from parasitic infections, were found to be : Total proteins, 7.13 ; Albumin, 4.49 ; Globulin, 2.64 ; Albumin/Globulin ratio, 1.7.

Twelve cases showing hypoproteinaemia with albumin reduction, disturbed albumin/globulin ratio and hypocalcaemia.

6. Albuminuria is absent in these cases, with the exception of the 'slight albuminuria produced by bilharziasis. Blood urea estimations and urea concentration tests were within normal limits in all cases. These findings together with the low blood pressure and low blood cholesterol are definitely against any nephritic or nephrotic factor in the causation of this oedema. These observations do not agree with those of DE LANGEN and EERKENS (1933) who found a combination of nephrosis and ancylostomiasis in seventeen out of twenty cases in Java. They concluded accordingly that there is an aetiological relationship between the two diseases. Such a conclusion cannot be accepted for the following reasons :—

(a) No mention has been made of the degree of infection in these cases. From the haemoglobin values it can be seen that the anaemia was mild (above 60 per cent. in sixteen cases) and, therefore, not sufficient to produce an intoxication severe enough to result in nephrosis.

(b) The frequency of *Ancylostoma* infection in an endemic area results in its association with many diseases. An aetiological relationship based only on such an association especially in an endemic area could not be safely accepted without further proof.

(c) We met with a case (outside this series) which showed the typical picture of nephrosis (albumin, fatty, hyaline and epithelial casts without nitrogenous retention, or circulatory disturbances and high blood cholesterol, 785 mg. per cent.).

When this case was followed, signs of a nephritic process were detected 6 months later (nitrogen retention, rise of blood pressure to 170/120, appearance of retinal changes of albuminuric nature) thus the case proved to have been in the nephrotic stage of nephritis when first seen.

This case shows the importance of following up cases showing the nephrotic syndrome over long periods in order to detect signs of renal insufficiency of inflammatory origin. The absence of these signs is to be accepted as the final proof of their purely degenerative nature.

BIOCHEMICAL INVESTIGATIONS.

Investigations on the blood chemistry of these cases have been carried out in fifteen cases ; the following findings were obtained and will be discussed :—

1. The role of *serum calcium* in diminishing capillary permeability has led us to study its concentration in such cases. It was found to be slightly diminished in seven out of seventeen cases. It is to be noted that these cases with hypocalcaemia showed hypoproteinaemia as well.

The cause of this hypocalcaemia cannot be attributed to either deficient supply, as the food of the hospital class of people is rich in calcium (milk, cheese); or to deficient absorption, as vitamin D is also available in milk while the exposure to sun helps the ultra-violet rays to synthesise still some more. Moderate hypocalcaemia is observed in patients with chronic malnutrition especially if advanced to the stage where oedema develops (JANSEN, 1919).

Moreover, it appears to be established that the presence of an adequate amount of protein in the serum is one of the conditions essential for the maintenance of the normal calcium concentration. The fact that the seven cases with hypocalcaemia in our series were associated with hypoproteinaemia supports our conception that the hypocalcaemia here is secondary to the hypoproteinaemia and not a primary nutritional deficiency.

That this hypocalcaemia may have something to do with the occurrence of oedema in these cases was shown by the fact that injections of calcium (in addition to the high protein diet) did hasten the disappearance of the oedema in three cases.

2. The determination of the *plasma proteins* showed low values in 12 out of the 15 cases analysed.

STARLING (1896) showed that the exchange of water between the blood and tissues depends on a balance between the colloidal osmotic pressure of the plasma proteins and the hydrostatic pressure within the capillaries. The significance of hypoproteinaemia in the production of nephrotic oedema has been suggested by EPSTEIN (1917) and confirmed by other observations. There is no reason why a similar mechanism may not be responsible for the production of various oedemas of obscure origin. This induced us to investigate the total plasma proteins as well as the albumin-globulin ratio in these cases.

Although the total proteins were not greatly below normal limits, the albumin fraction was unusually low. In anaemia without oedema hypoproteinaemia of a lesser degree has occasionally been found (three cases). Such cases, if left for some time, will certainly pass into the oedematous group.

TABLE.
SERUM PROTEINS.

Hospital Number.	Total Protein.	Albumin.	Globulin.	Albumin/Globulin Ratio.	Calcium.
4562	5.44	3.63	1.81	2	9
4681	6.31	2.56	3.75	0.78	7.5
4911	6.12	2.56	3.56	0.71	9.7
5726	6.03	3.2	2.83	1.13	10.3
4420	6.15	3.73	2.42	1.54	8.38
4792	5.02	1.89	3.13	0.7	7.7
3971	6.73	3.58	3.15	1.13	8.25
3948	5.59	2.15	3.44	0.77	8.41
5121	6.72	2.28	4.44	0.54	9.1
3061	6.32	3.76	2.56	1.46	8.7
5619	5.95	3.07	2.88	1.41	7.97
5815	5.62	2.82	2.8	1	9.9

Results are expressed in grammes of proteins per 100 c.c. serum. The average serum proteins in normal healthy Egyptians, free from parasitic infections, were found to be : Total proteins, 7.13 ; Albumin, 4.49 ; Globulin, 2.64 ; Albumin/Globulin ratio, 1.7.

Twelve cases showing hypoproteinaemia with albumin reduction, disturbed albumin/globulin ratio and hypocalcaemia.

6. Albuminuria is absent in these cases, with the exception of the slight albuminuria produced by bilharziasis. Blood urea estimations and urea concentration tests were within normal limits in all cases. These findings together with the low blood pressure and low blood cholesterol are definitely against any nephritic or nephrotic factor in the causation of this oedema. These observations do not agree with those of DE LANGEN and EERKENS (1933) who found a combination of nephrosis and ancylostomiasis in seventeen out of twenty cases in Java. They concluded accordingly that there is an aetiological relationship between the two diseases. Such a conclusion cannot be accepted for the following reasons :—

(a) No mention has been made of the degree of infection in these cases. From the haemoglobin values it can be seen that the anaemia was mild (above 60 per cent. in sixteen cases) and, therefore, not sufficient to produce an intoxication severe enough to result in nephrosis.

(b) The frequency of *Ancylostoma* infection in an endemic area results in its association with many diseases. An aetiological relationship based only on such an association especially in an endemic area could not be safely accepted without further proof.

(c) We met with a case (outside this series) which showed the typical picture of nephrosis (albumin, fatty, hyaline and epithelial casts without nitrogenous retention, or circulatory disturbances and high blood cholesterol, 785 mg. per cent.).

When this case was followed, signs of a nephritic process were detected 6 months later (nitrogen retention, rise of blood pressure to 170/120, appearance of retinal changes of albuminuric nature) thus the case proved to have been in the nephrotic stage of nephritis when first seen.

This case shows the importance of following up cases showing the nephrotic syndrome over long periods in order to detect signs of renal insufficiency of inflammatory origin. The absence of these signs is to be accepted as the final proof of their purely degenerative nature.

BIOCHEMICAL INVESTIGATIONS.

Investigations on the blood chemistry of these cases have been carried out in fifteen cases ; the following findings were obtained and will be discussed :—

1. The role of *serum calcium* in diminishing capillary permeability has led us to study its concentration in such cases. It was found to be slightly diminished in seven out of seventeen cases. It is to be noted that these cases with hypocalcaemia showed hypoproteinaemia as well.

The cause of this hypocalcaemia cannot be attributed to either deficient supply, as the food of the hospital class of people is rich in calcium (milk, cheese); or to deficient absorption, as vitamin D is also available in milk while the exposure to sun helps the ultra-violet rays to synthesise still some more. Moderate hypocalcaemia is observed in patients with chronic malnutrition especially if advanced to the stage where oedema develops (JANSEN, 1919).

as well as loss of blood in the stools (ankylostomiasis). Similar observations have been reported in gastro-enteritis in children with subsequent oedema by ASIBY and MOSCHCOWITZ, and in repeated small bleedings into the intestine by MOSCHCOWITZ (1933).

(d) There is little in the literature to indicate whether the anaemic state itself is capable of producing hypoproteinaemia. Hypoproteinaemia has been demonstrated in Addisonian anaemia by KAHN and BARSKY (1919) in three cases and by MEULENGRACHT (1927) in twelve cases. MEULENGRACHT maintains its possible significance in the production of oedema in this disease. Here the hypoproteinaemia has been ascribed either to deficient blood formation or to excessive blood destruction; but we cannot exclude the possibility of deficient absorption of proteins (constant achylia, diarrhoea, etc.) in this disease as well, as there is no evidence in the literature of any investigations carried out on these lines. PETERS, EISENMAN and BULGER (1925) found low proteins in three out of seven cases of profound anaemia; in all moderate oedema was present, but no mention of the mechanism of the hypoproteinaemia in these cases was made.

(e) Occurrence of *ascites in bilharzial cirrhotic cases* tends to aggravate the degree of hypoproteinaemia as some of the serum proteins will be lost in the ascitic fluid.

(3) *Chlorides of the whole blood* estimations did not show any alteration suggestive of their implication in the causation of the oedema in these cases. The increase of the whole blood chlorides found in this series is attributed to preponderance of plasma chlorides over cell chlorides and not to actual increase in the former.

4. *Cholesterol* content of the blood was diminished in all the cases examined, the lowest figure being 54 mg. and the highest 133 mg. Seven controls without anaemia from the same class of patients showed figures of 150 to 180 mg. per cent., suggesting that this reduction is related to the anaemia present, and not to any extrinsic dietetic factor.

5. There remains a group of three cases where in the blood chemistry no changes were met with that could be incriminated in the causation of the oedema; and in which the oedema did not disappear until the anaemic condition improved under anti-anaemic therapy. This group demonstrates that the *anaemic state* may be the most important factor in the causation of oedema.

THERAPEUTIC INVESTIGATIONS.

1. In three cases the oedema disappeared within 2 to 4 days after admission on protein-free diet, suggesting that rest was the main factor in its cure and that circulatory fatigue is an important factor in its production.

2. In sixteen cases the oedema disappeared on protein diet within 10 to 15 days after admission before anything had been done to combat either the anaemia or the parasitic infections.

The final confirmation that hypoproteinaemia was the main factor in the production of oedema in these twelve cases was given by the fact that their oedema disappeared on full hospital diet with additional proteins within 10 to 15 days after admission before any therapeutic measures to combat the anaemia or the parasitic infection were taken. Nevertheless, the anaemic state seems to be important as a factor participating in the causation of the hypoproteinaemia as well as predisposing to an easier exchange of water possibly by increasing the permeability of the capillary walls through malnutrition or by other alterations in the physico-chemical character of the blood (viscosity, osmotic pressure, etc.).

The slight degree of reduction of the plasma proteins would by itself be unable to produce oedema in the absence of anaemia. The possible factors responsible for the production of hypoproteinaemia in these cases are discussed in the following :—

(a) *Insufficient intake of proteins.*—Hypoproteinaemia was demonstrated in war oedema by SCHITTENHELM and SCHLECHT (1918), JANSEN (1919), NIXON (1920) but they did not ascribe it to the hypoproteinaemia. Later experimental work has shown the relation between protein-poor diet and oedema. DENTON and KOHMAN (1918) found that rats fed on a diet of carrots develop oedema, but if the diet contained an adequate supply of proteins no oedema occurred; SHELburnE and EGLOFF (1931), caused hypoproteinaemia in a dog by reducing the protein intake, oedema only appearing when the plasma proteins reached 3·2 grammes per cent. on the 83rd day. MAVER (1920) reported oedema in oxen and horses fed exclusively on distiller's wash, the total amount of protein in this foodstuff being 0 to 5 per cent.

That the diet of our hospital class of patients contains a small amount of proteins is manifested by the fact that some of them reported having had their last meat meal 2 years ago while scarcely any eggs are consumed. To consider deficient protein intake as a contributing cause of the hypoproteinaemia and oedema in this class of patients is justified, i.e., this oedema is in part if not entirely nutritional.

(b) *Insufficient absorption of protein.*—A certain degree of enteritis is a common sequel of intestinal parasitism (bilharziasis and ancylostomiasis) and may interfere with the absorption of food proteins while the concomitant diarrhoea may hurry the passage of the intestinal contents before absorption is complete. Evidence of the occurrence of impaired absorption is found (a) in the presence of undigested muscle fibres in the stools in the diarrhoeic cases; (b) in the glucose absorption curve as compared with intravenous glucose. In fourteen of these cases there was evidence of delayed absorption.

Achlorhydria or hypochlorhydria may also be responsible for the incomplete digestion of proteins.

(c) *Excessive loss of proteins* can occur in the diarrhoeic cases especially if dysenteric in character (intestinal bilharziasis) through loss of serum proteins

as well as loss of blood in the stools (ankylostomiasis). Similar observations have been reported in gastro-enteritis in children with subsequent oedema by ASHBY and MOSCHCOWITZ, and in repeated small bleedings into the intestine by MOSCHCOWITZ (1933).

(d) There is little in the literature to indicate whether the anaemic state itself is capable of producing hypoproteinaemia. Hypoproteinaemia has been demonstrated in Addisonian anaemia by KAHN and BARSKY (1919) in three cases and by MEULENGRACHT (1927) in twelve cases. MEULENGRACHT maintains its possible significance in the production of oedema in this disease. Here the hypoproteinaemia has been ascribed either to deficient blood formation or to excessive blood destruction; but we cannot exclude the possibility of deficient absorption of proteins (constant achylia, diarrhoea, etc.) in this disease as well, as there is no evidence in the literature of any investigations carried out on these lines. PETERS, EISENMAN and BULGER (1925) found low proteins in three out of seven cases of profound anaemia; in all moderate oedema was present, but no mention of the mechanism of the hypoproteinaemia in these cases was made.

(e) Occurrence of *ascites in bilharzial cirrhotic cases* tends to aggravate the degree of hypoproteinaemia as some of the serum proteins will be lost in the ascitic fluid.

(3) *Chlorides of the whole blood* estimations did not show any alteration suggestive of their implication in the causation of the oedema in these cases. The increase of the whole blood chlorides found in this series is attributed to preponderance of plasma chlorides over cell chlorides and not to actual increase in the former.

4. *Cholesterol* content of the blood was diminished in all the cases examined, the lowest figure being 54 mg. and the highest 133 mg. Seven controls without anaemia from the same class of patients showed figures of 150 to 180 mg. per cent., suggesting that this reduction is related to the anaemia present, and not to any extrinsic dietetic factor.

5. There remains a group of three cases where in the blood chemistry no changes were met with that could be incriminated in the causation of the oedema; and in which the oedema did not disappear until the anaemic condition improved under anti-anaemic therapy. This group demonstrates that the *anaemic state* may be the most important factor in the causation of oedema.

THERAPEUTIC INVESTIGATIONS.

1. In three cases the oedema disappeared within 2 to 4 days after admission on protein-free diet, suggesting that rest was the main factor in its cure and that circulatory fatigue is an important factor in its production.

2. In sixteen cases the oedema disappeared on protein diet within 10 to 15 days after admission before anything had been done to combat either the anaemia or the parasitic infections.

3. In three cases without changes in the blood chemistry, the oedema did not disappear until the anaemic condition improved.

4. Administration of marmite alone did not produce any improvement in ten cases, including three with and four without hypoproteinaemia.

CONCLUSIONS.

Twenty-two cases of helminthic anaemia with oedema were subjected to critical clinical, biochemical and therapeutic studies in order to investigate the various causative factors and the mechanism of production of the oedema. The following results have been obtained :—

1. Three cases showed a circulatory factor.

2. Three cases were due to the anaemic state.

3. Twelve cases showed hypoproteinaemia (biochemically investigated); four additional cases responded to high protein diet.

4. Neither the hypoproteinaemic nor the normal cases showed any evidence of avitaminosis B₁.

5. In addition to the demonstration of the various causative factors that may be concerned in the production of this oedema and the blood changes associated with it, the investigation indicates new lines of treatment for this condition. By replacing the deficiencies in the blood chemistry the equilibrium will be re-established, and not only the disappearance of the oedema but also adequate blood regeneration will be helped.

REFERENCES.

- BULGER, H. A., & PETERS, J. P. *et al.* (1925). *J. clin. Invest.*, 2, 213.
 DE LANGEN, C. D. & EERKENS, J. W. (1933). *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 27, 195.
 DENTON, M. C. & KOHMAN, E. (1918). *J. biol. Chem.*, 36, 249.
 EPSTEIN, A. A. (1917). *Amer. J. med. Sci.*, 154, 638.
 JANSEN, W. H. (1919). *Dtsch. Arch. Klin. Med.*, 130, 144, 330.
 KAHN, M. & BARSKY, J. (1919). *Arch. intern. Med.*, 23, 334.
 MAVER, M. B. (1920). *J. Amer. med. Ass.*, 74, 934.
 MEULENGRACHT, E. (1927). *Ugeskr. f. Laeg.*, 89, 1020.
 MOSCHCOWITZ, E. (1933). *J. Amer. med. Ass.*, 100, 1086.
 NIXON, J. A. (1920). *Lancet*, 1, 933, 1169.
 SCHITTENHELM, A. & SCHLECHT, H. (1918). *Berl. klin. Wschr.*, 55, 1138.
 SHELBURNE, S. A. & EGLOFF, W. C. (1931). *Arch. intern. Med.*, 48, 51.
 STARLING, E. H. (1896). *Lancet*, 1, 1331.

THE RELATION OF BLOOD FEEDS TO THE MATURATION
OF OVA IN *ANOPHELES ELUTUS*.

BY

M. YOELI

AND

G. G. MER, M.D.

Malaria Research Station, Department of Hygiene, Hebrew University, Jerusalem.

INTRODUCTION.

Previous experiments (MER, 1936) showed that after the ovaries of *A. elutus* reached stage II in their development, a blood feed was essential for the maturation of the ova. Certain races of *Culex pipiens* are known to mature their eggs if fed only on sugar, raisins, etc.; in the Anophelinae, however, ingestion of blood seems to be a *sine qua non* for the maturing of eggs. In the experiments reported below an attempt was made to determine which fraction of blood contained the factor or factors indispensable for egg maturing in anopheles. Newly-hatched *A. elutus* females were used. These mosquitoes generally require two blood meals to bring the eggs to maturity. Feeding on sugar or fruit juices results in the development of the ovary only up to stage II (CHRISTOPHERS *et al.*, 1936) and then a single blood meal induces egg maturation.

Technique.

Freshly hatched *A. elutus* females were fed on whole blood, suspensions of washed red blood corpuscles in saline, serum, haemoglobin solutions in distilled water, sugar or raisins. After the digestion of the meal, the mosquitoes were dissected, the ovaries examined and their stage of evolution noted according to the scheme suggested by CHRISTOPHERS. Full blood meals were given by allowing the mosquitoes to feed on a donkey. Moist raisins and sugar solutions were introduced into the cages in which the mosquitoes were kept. Solutions of haemoglobin, suspensions of blood cells and serum were fed through a special animal membrane, in order to prevent their penetration into the diverticulum of the mosquitoes, which occurs regularly when the anophelines do not feed on an animal. In each experiment a number of mosquitoes were dissected to make sure that the food actually penetrated

into the midgut. In some experiments the exudate of cantharid blisters was used instead of serum.

EXPERIMENTS.

Experiment A. Feeding on Red Blood Cells. (Table I.)

The red blood cells of a donkey were separated from the serum by centrifugation and washing in saline three times. After the last washing a quantity of saline approximately equal to that of the plasma was added. The suspended cells were fed to anophelines through an animal membrane. The results are shown in Table I.

TABLE I.
EFFECT OF RED BLOOD CELLS ON MATURATION OF OVA.

	Number of Newly-hatched Female <i>A. elutus</i> .	Character of Feed.	Dissected after Digestion of 1st Feed.		Dissected after Digestion of 2nd Feed.	
			Number with Ovary Stage II.	Number with Ovary Stage V.	Number with Ovary Stage II.	Number with Ovary Stage V.
Experiment	57	Red blood cells suspended in saline	26	2	2	27
Control	57	Donkey	26	—	—	31

Experiment B. Feeding on Serum. (Table II.)

This series included three types of experiments: B, B₁, B₂. In Series B. serum separated from the coagulum and free from red blood corpuscles was fed to mosquitoes through an animal membrane. In Series B₁ gelatin in proportions of 1:3, 1:6, 1:10 was added to the same serum in order to make the mosquitoes retain the serum for a longer period in the midgut (pure serum disappears from the midgut during the first 36 hours after feeding, while gelatinized serum is digested as slowly as whole blood). In Series B₂ mosquitoes were fed on cantharid blisters; the fluid from these contains a serous exudate, a considerable number of white blood cells and a few red cells. The results of these experiments are summarized in Table II.

TABLE II.

EFFECT OF SERUM OR SEROUS EXUDATE ON MATURATION OF OVA.

Number of Newly-hatched Female <i>A. elutus</i> .	Character of Feed.	Dissected after Digestion of 1st Feed.	Dissected after Digestion of 2nd Feed.	Dissected after Digestion of 3rd Feed.	Dissected after Digestion of 4th Feed.
		Number with Ovary Stage I.	Number with Ovary Stage I.	Number with Ovary Stage I.	Number with Ovary Stage I.
Series B 36	Pure serum	10	3	2	11
Series B ₁ 36	Gelatinized serum	36	—	—	—
Series B ₂ 21	Blister exudate	5	16	—	—

Experiment C. Feeding on Haemoglobin. (Table III.)

Solutions of haemoglobin were prepared from donkey red blood cells separated from serum by centrifugation. The cells were laked by freezing and thawing or else distilled water was added to give a 50 per cent. solution. In either case the stroma of the red cells was removed by centrifugation. The haemoglobin solutions were fed to anophelines through an animal membrane. The results are summarized in Table III.

TABLE III.

EFFECT OF HAEMOGLOBIN ON MATURATION OF OVA.

Number of <i>A. elutus</i> .	Character of Feed.	Dissected after Digestion of 1st Feed.		Dissected after Digestion of 2nd Feed.		Dissected after Digestion of 3rd Feed.	
		Number with Ovary Stage I.	Number with Ovary Stage II.	Number with Ovary Stage I.	Number with Ovary Stage II.	Number with Ovary Stage I.	Number with Ovary Stage II.
42	Pure haemoglobin 50 per cent. solution of haemoglobin	4	15	—	5	1	17
23		4	4	3	12	—	—

It will be noted from the preceding experiments (Experiments B and C) that no maturing of eggs could be obtained either with serum alone or with haemoglobin alone. However, while the feeding on serum has no effect on the initial development of the follicles, feeding on haemoglobin leads to the development of the ova up to stage II. The effect of feeding on haemoglobin seems to be the same as that of feeding on sugar or raisins.

Experiment D. (Table IV.)

Since the ovaries of anopheles which had fed on raisins or sugar reach stage II and require very little blood for egg maturing it was to be expected that the specific egg maturing factor, contained in the blood, would be more readily detected if the various fractions were fed to insects previously maintained on these substances. In the following experiments serum or solutions of haemoglobin were fed to anopheles females which had been kept 6 to 8 days on raisins. The ovaries of these mosquitoes dissected before the serum or haemoglobin feed were always in stage II and the mosquitoes contained a certain amount of fat. The results of these experiments are shown in Table IV.

TABLE IV.

EFFECT OF HAEMOGLOBIN SOLUTIONS OR SERUM FED TO *A. elutus* FEMALES WHICH HAD PREVIOUSLY BEEN KEPT ON SUGAR OR RAISINS.

Series of <i>A. elutus</i> Females.	Character of Feed.	Dissected after Digestion of 1st Feed.		Dissected after Digestion of 2nd Feed.	
		Number with Ovary Stage II.	Number with Ovary Stage V.	Number with Ovary Stage II.	Number with Ovary Stage V.
D ₁	Haemoglobin	39	—	14	—
D ₂	Cantharid blister exudate	4	26	—	—
D ₃	Serum	2	34	—	—
Control	Full blood	3	15	—	—

It is apparent from Table IV that haemoglobin solutions have no effect on the ovaries of anophelines in which the initial development of the follicles was completed up to stage II by a previous feed on sugar or raisins. On the other hand, under the same conditions, one serum meal leads to egg maturation. In this respect, the effect of the serum is equivalent to that of whole blood.

Experiment E. (Table V.)

From the results of Experiment C, it was to be expected that a feed on concentrated haemoglobin solution followed by a feed on serum would be sufficient for egg maturation. This proved to be the case, as is shown by the results tabulated below :—

TABLE V.

Eighteen newly-hatched <i>A. elutus</i> females were fed once with haemoglobin and then with serum	Five Mosquitoes dissected after Digestion of Haemoglobin.		Thirteen Mosquitoes dissected after Digestion of Serum.	
	Number with Ovary Stage II.	Number with Ovary Stage V.	Number with Ovary Stage II.	Number with Ovary Stage V.
	5	—	1	12

It appears, therefore, that the reason why blood is an essential food for egg maturation lies not in the need of haemoglobin but of some factor present in the serum. The haemoglobin can perform the same function as raisins or sugar and bring the evolution of the follicles up to stage II. Its effect is not, however, specific; the specific factor in the blood necessary for egg maturation exists in the stroma of the red cells and in cell-free serum.

NATURE OF EGG-MATURING FACTOR.

It was pointed out by MER (1936) that in *Anopheles* the process of development of the ovary may be divided into two distinct stages: (a) up to stage II and (b) from this to maturity. This division is not an artificial one; there is a basic physiological difference in the process of development. While the development up to stage II does not depend on blood or any of its constituents, the further development of the ovary is impossible without a factor which is apparently contained in serum as well as in the stroma of the red blood cells. In the following experiments we have attempted to ascertain the nature of this factor.

Experiment F. Effect of Heat. (Table VI.)

Whole serum was heated at 60° C. for 1 hour, and serum diluted in water 1 in 3 was heated to 100° C. for half an hour. The heated sera were then fed to mosquitoes, with ovary development at stage II, through a membrane.

The results of typical experiments are given in Tables VI and VII respectively.

TABLE VI.
HEAT RESISTANCE OF EGG-MATURING FACTOR IN SERUM.

	Ten dissected <i>before</i> Serum Feed.		Twenty dissected <i>after</i> Serum Feed.	
	Number with Ovary Stage II.	Number with Ovary Stage V.	Number with Ovary Stage II.	Number with Ovary Stage V.
Thirty <i>A. elutus</i> females were fed on raisins for 4 days, ten were then dissected; and the remaining twenty were fed on serum which had been heated at 60° C. for 1 hour	10	—	1	19
<i>Control</i> — Twenty-one <i>A. elutus</i> females were fed on raisins for 4 days; eight were then dissected and the remaining thirteen were fed on unheated serum	8	Eight —	Thirteen 2	11

TABLE VII.
HEAT RESISTANCE OF EGG-MATURING FACTOR IN SERUM.

Number of <i>A. elutus</i> Females with Ovaries at Stage II.		Character of Feed.	Dissected after Serum was Digested.	
			Number with Ovary Stage II.	Number with Ovary Stage V.
Heated serum.	23	Serum (1 : 3) heated for 30 minutes at 100° C.	18	5 (21 per cent.)
Control, with unheated sera.	a. 50	Whole serum	4	46 (92 per cent.)
	b. 32	Serum diluted 1 : 1	17	15 (46 per cent.)
	c. 28	Serum diluted 1 : 2	20	8 (28 per cent.)
	d. 18	Serum diluted 1 : 3	14	4 (22 per cent.)

These experiments show (1) that the egg-maturing factor is heat-resistant and (2) that a certain concentration (or quantity) is required. Dilution of the serum, heated or unheated, decreases the percentage of mosquitoes with mature ovaries.

Experiment G. (Table VIII.)

In this experiment, the serum was heated to 100° C. for 15 to 20 minutes and the coagulated proteins separated by centrifugation. The supernatant fluid was decanted and the sediment dried. After drying, the powdered proteins were resuspended in water in a dilution of 1 in 4; 5 per cent. gelatin was added in order to obtain a stable suspension.

Mosquitoes of the same batch were then fed through a membrane either with the supernatant fluid or with the serum suspension. The results are given in Table VIII.

TABLE VIII.
PRESENCE OF EGG-MATURING FACTOR IN THE SERUM PROTEINS OR SERUM WHEY.

Number of Anopheles Dissected after Digestion of Feed.	Character of Feed.	Number with Ovary Stage II.	Number with Ovary Stage V.
13	Serum whey	13	—
30	Serum protein suspension in water (1:4)	5	25 (82.5 per cent.)

It is apparent from the data given in Table VIII that the egg-maturing factor is associated with the proteins of the serum and that its efficacy is not reduced by heating to 100° C. and subsequent drying.

Experiment H. Function Lipoids. (Table IX.)

In this experiment serum was treated with ether, allowed to stand for 24 hours with repeated shaking. The ether layer was then removed, evaporated, and the ether-free residue emulsified in a concentrated solution of haemoglobin.

Anopheles of the same lot, with ovaries in stage II of their development, were fed on the lipid-free serum and on the lipid suspension respectively. The results are given in Table IX.

TABLE IX.
EFFECT OF LIPOIDS, EXTRACTED FROM SERUM OR FROM RED CELLS, ON MATURING OF EGGS.

Number of Anopheles.	Character of Feed.	Dissected after Digestion of Meal.
(a) 15	Serum after extraction of lipoids	All (15) had ovary Stage V
(b) 14	Serum lipid suspension	All (14) had ovary Stage II
(c) 14	Red cell-lipoid suspension	All (14) had ovary Stage II

These results demonstrate that the lipoids have no effect on egg maturing; the lipid-free serum, however, still retains its full potency in this respect.

SUMMARY.

A study was made of the blood elements essential for the maturation of eggs of anopheles mosquitoes. The results may be briefly summarized as follows :—

1. Blood contains a factor which is necessary for the maturation of eggs of *A. elutus*.

2. Neither haemoglobin alone nor serum alone is capable of inducing egg maturation.

3. Haemoglobin can bring the ovaries to stage II of their development but no further ; in this respect it serves as do raisins and sugar.

4. If anopheles whose ovaries are at stage II are fed on serum, then complete ripening of the ovaries occurs.

5. The specific egg-maturing factor is found, therefore, in the stroma of the erythrocytes as well as in the cell-free serum.

6. This factor is still active after the serum has been heated at 100° C. for 1 hour.

7. In serum coagulated by boiling the specific factor is associated with the coagulum and is absent in supernatant fluid.

8. Lipoids extracted from serum or red cells are inactive, whereas the extracted serum is still active.

9. It is not clear whether we are dealing with an accessory substance or with the specific action of the protein itself. It is clear that the substance is heat-stable, and is associated intimately with the serum protein and cell stroma. It appears also that a certain quantitative relation exists because, when the serum is diluted progressively, fewer and fewer of the anopheles fed mature their ovaries.

REFERENCES.

- CHRISTOPHERS, S. R., SINTON, J. A. & COVELL, G. (1936). How to do a malaria survey. *Health Bull.* 14. Malaria Bureau, No. 6. Delhi : Government of India Publications.
- HECHT, O. (1933). Die Blutnahrung, die Erzeugung der Eier und die Ueberwinterung der Stechmueckenweibchen. *Arch. Schiffs-u. Tropenhyg.*, 37, Beih. 3, 125.
- MER, G. G. (1936). Experimental study on the development of the ovary in *A. elutus* Edw. *Bull. ent. Res.*, 27, 3.

TRANSACTIONS OF THE ROYAL SOCIETY OF
TROPICAL MEDICINE AND HYGIENE.
Vol. XXXI. No. 4. January, 1938.

STUDIES ON THE GABOON VIPER (*BITIS GABONICA*) AND THE PREPARATION OF A SPECIFIC THERAPEUTIC ANTIVENENE.

BY

E. GRASSET, M.D.

AND

A. ZOUTENDYK.

Serum Department, South African Institute for Medical Research, Johannesburg.

Of the interesting results afforded by continuous researches on the polyvalent action of antivenenes prepared in our Serum Department, probably the most significant are those connected with the venom of the Gaboon viper (*Bitis gabonica*). We have shown (GRASSET and ZOUTENDYK, 1936 and 1937) that the concentrated polyvalent antivenene prepared by us from puff adder (*Bitis arietans*) and Cape cobra (*Naia flava*) anavenoms exhibits but a negligible neutralizing action against the venom of the Gaboon viper; and, with the exception of some sera of Asiatic origin, this lack of action is even more marked in the case of those numerous sera of European, South American and South African origin which we have had the opportunity of testing in the course of very extensive comparative investigations. One can, therefore, conclude that no serum has hitherto been available for the treatment of bites by the largest viper in Africa, and although this is of no practical significance in the Union since the species does not occur here, it is a distinct hazard in those equatorial regions of Africa where it is comparatively common. Conversation and correspondence with well informed persons who have spent many years in tropical Africa tend to show that considerable confusion exists regarding the identification of the Gaboon viper—due to its nocturnal habits, its lethargic nature and its natural protective colouring. It is hoped that the following

description (from the *British Museum Catalogue of Snakes*, iii, 499) and the plates at the end of this paper will assist in clearing up this difficulty to some extent.

Bitis gabonica.

"Nostrils directed upwards and outwards. Rostral very small, once and a half to twice and a half as broad as deep; head covered with small, moderately keeled scales, smallest on the vertex, 13 to 16 from eye to eye; 15 to 19 scales around the eye; four or five series of scales between the eye and the labials; a pair of more or less developed, compressed, erectile, triangular, sometimes bi- or tri-cuspid shields in contact with each other, between the supranasals, forming a pair of nasal horns; four or five series of scales between the nasal and the rostral; 13 to 16 upper labials; four or five lower labials in contact with the chin shields. Scales in 33-41 rows, strongly keeled, outer row smooth; lateral scales slightly oblique, pointing downwards. Ventrals 125-140; anal entire; subcaudals 17-33. Brown above with a vertebral series of elongate, quadrangular, yellowish or light brown spots connected by hour-glass shaped dark brown markings, a series of crescentic or angular dark brown markings on each side; head pale above, with a dark brown median line, a dark brown oblique band behind the eye, widening towards the mouth; yellowish beneath with small brown or blackish spots.

Total length 1,170 millimetres; tail 70 millimetres.

Tropical Africa (West Africa from Liberia to Damaraland; Zanzibar; Mozambique)."

In a recent comprehensive study of the reptiles of French West Africa (ANGEL, 1932), the length of a specimen is given as 1,750 mm. The author also describes and illustrates *Bitis nasicornis* which we have reason to believe is frequently confused with the Gaboon viper even by people who have spent many years in the tropics. This mistake is hardly likely to occur if it is remembered that the Gaboon viper possesses a pair of comparatively insignificant horns set closely together whilst *B. nasicornis* possesses two or three pairs of much more prominent hornlike shields separated by small scales; the colour of the latter snake is purple or reddish brown with olive or dark brown spots, a vertebral series of brown spots and an olive belly spotted with black or yellow. Its venom when desiccated is white compared with the canary yellow colour of Gaboon viper venom.

GABOON VIPER VENOM.

We have not been able to trace any researches on the venom of the Gaboon viper, it having been apparently overlooked by workers in the field of immunological studies of venoms and antivenenes.

Yield.—The average yield may be taken as 200 mg. venom when desiccated; but individual specimens have yielded as much as 300 mg. and in one instance 484 mg. were obtained. By manipulating the glands of a dead Gaboon viper which measured 1,150 mm. in length, a volume of 1.73 c.c. was obtained from one gland.

Toxicity.—The toxicity of *Bitis gabonica* venom as compared with that of *B. arietans* is shown in the following table; in every case the fatal dose kills in 12 to 24 hours.

TABLE I.

TOXICITY OF THE VENOM OF *Bitis gabonica* COMPARED WITH *Bitis arietans* VENOM.

	Route.	Venom in mg.	
		<i>Bitis gabonica.</i>	<i>Bitis arietans.</i>
Mouse	Subcutaneous	0.4	0.15
Rat... ..	"	3	1.5
Guineapig (500 grammes) ...	"	75	50
Rabbit (1,500 grammes) ...	Intravenous	3.2	1
Pigeon	"	0.075	0.075*
	Subcutaneous	2.5	2
Fowl	Intravenous	0.6	1.5
Sheep	Subcutaneous	80	50

*Note.—In a paper dealing with the toxic and antigenic properties of snake venoms (GRASSET, ZOUTENDYK and SCHAAFSMA, 1935), the fatal dose of *Bitis arietans* venom for the pigeon appeared as 0.75 mg. ; this should read 0.075 mg. as in the present table.

The figures indicate that the potency of *Bitis gabonica* is considerably lower than that of *B. arietans* when administered subcutaneously ; but, except in the case of the rabbit, this difference is more than compensated for by the highly coagulant nature of *B. gabonica* venom when administered intravenously ; this coagulant property has been the subject of considerable investigation in connexion with haemophilia in humans.

DETOXICATION OF *Bitis gabonica* VENOM AND INVESTIGATION OF ITS ANTIGENIC PROPERTIES.

By subjecting 1 per cent. solutions of *B. gabonica* venom to the action of 0.75 per cent. formalin at incubator temperature, we were able to procure atoxic derivatives analogous to those originally obtained by us in the case of *B. arietans* and other viperine and colubrine venoms. By dissolving the venom in normal saline the average time of incubation necessary for detoxication was from 5 to 6 weeks, but this period could be reduced considerably by the substitution of Martin's broth for saline, the aspecific protein playing a similar role here to that which we have already reported upon in connexion with the detoxication of various colubrine venoms. Rabbits injected intravenously with 50 mg. of the detoxicated material survived without ill effects. That the antigenic properties remained unimpaired was demonstrated by the subcutaneous immunization of rabbits with the anavenom ; animals which received three injections of 30 mg., 50 mg. and 70 mg. at intervals of 8 days were so highly protected that they were able to withstand intravenous test doses of 15 mg. *B. gabonica* venom, controls dying regularly in from 10 to 17 minutes. The possession of this atoxic antigenic material

facilitated the carrying out of comparative tests with *B. arietans* anavenom on the following lines :—

Two groups of rabbits were taken ; Group I received three subcutaneous injections of 30 mg., 50 mg. and 70 mg. *B. gabonica* anavenom at intervals of 8 days, Group 2 receiving the same quantities of *B. arietans* anavenom. On being tested intravenously at the end of this course of immunization the animals reacted as follows to specific and cross neutralization tests.

TABLE II.

THE SPECIFIC AND CROSS PROTECTION AFFORDED BY *Bitis gabonica* AND *Bitis arietans* ANAVENOMS.

	Limit of Specific Protection.	Limit of Cross Protection.
Rabbits immunized with <i>Bitis gabonica</i> anavenom	15 mg. <i>B. gabonica</i> venom (5 fatal doses)	10 mg. <i>B. arietans</i> venom (10 fatal doses)
Rabbits immunized with <i>Bitis arietans</i> anavenom	10 mg. <i>B. arietans</i> venom (10 fatal doses)	No protection against <i>B. gabonica</i> venom

The entirely unexpected fact is thus revealed that of two species zoologically classified as belonging to the genus *Bitis*, the venom of one (*Bitis gabonica*) possesses an additional fraction, probably coagulant, which is not included in the antigenic structure of the venom of *Bitis arietans*. The importance of this fraction is emphasized by the fact, already alluded to, that no antivenene, whether of African or overseas origin, among all those with which we have had the opportunity of working, is capable of exerting any appreciable action against the venom of the Gaboon viper ; the preparation of an antivenene possessing specific neutralizing properties is, therefore, highly desirable.

PREPARATION OF A SPECIFIC *Bitis gabonica* ANTIVENENE.

The chief difficulty in applying the knowledge already gained to the hyperimmunization of horses was the question of adequate supplies of Gaboon viper venom ; thanks, however, to the co-operation of Mr. B. PEERS of the Cape Town Snake Park, and of a few public health authorities in tropical Africa, we were furnished with approximately 3½ grammes of the venom ; and we had perforce to rest content with this, for when it became known that no available serum was of therapeutic value in the event of a bite there was an understandable reluctance to handle living specimens of a formidable reptile like the Gaboon viper.

With the exception of a small quantity retained for titration purposes, the available supply was converted into Gaboon viper anavenom by submitting

a 1 per cent. solution in Martin's broth to the action of 0.75 per cent. formalin at 37° C. for 3 weeks. At the end of this period Horse 278 received a preliminary subcutaneous injection of 50 mg. and continued to receive weekly injections consisting of, respectively, 100 mg., 200 mg., 300 mg., 400 mg., 500 mg., 600 mg., 700 mg., and a final injection of only 400 mg. due to the exhaustion of the supply of antigen. The neutralizing properties of the serum were assessed at different stages of the immunization, the tests being carried out by the intravenous injection of rabbits weighing 2,000 grammes with mixtures of serum and venom which had remained in contact at laboratory temperature for 1 hour. The samples of blood were taken from the horse immediately prior to an injection, i.e., 7 days after the preceding dose. The tests evinced a progressively increasing neutralizing action. For example, after the fourth injection (300 mg.) the action was negligible and irregular, whilst after the fifth (400 mg.) the time of death was delayed to 16 hours in rabbits injected with mixtures consisting of 3 c.c. serum and 7.5 mg. venom. After seventh injection (600 mg.) rabbits receiving similar test doses survived without ill effects, as did those receiving mixtures consisting of 2 c.c. serum and 5 mg. venom. A bulk bleeding was carried out 10 days after the last injection, tests showing that 3 c.c. serum were sufficient to neutralize 10 mg. venom, 1 c.c. being thus able to neutralize approximately one fatal dose for the rabbit. Cross neutralization tests showed that 3 c.c. of the serum were able to neutralize 5 mg. puff adder venom (five fatal doses for the rabbit), this confirming the results already referred to in which rabbits were submitted to active immunization with the respective anavenoms.

Although the neutralizing power of the serum of Horse 278 was sufficiently high for our immediate purpose, there is no doubt that a larger supply of antigen would have afforded even more gratifying results by making possible a more intensive and extended course of immunization.

CONCENTRATION OF THE *Bitis gabonica* ANTISERUM.

All antivenene produced in our Serum Department is concentrated and refined by fractional precipitation with sodium sulphate; the newly-produced Gaboon viper antiserum was submitted to the same process with equally successful results. Tests carried out with the resulting pseudoglobulin showed that 0.45 c.c. was able to neutralize 5 mg. venom, the concentrated and refined serum being thus 3.3 times more potent than the natural serum from which it was derived. After diluting the pseudoglobulin with distilled water for therapeutic use, 1 c.c. of the finished product neutralized 7 mg. Gaboon viper venom; since a dose of 20 c.c. is recommended for the treatment of a bite by the average sized specimen, a total quantity of 140 mg. venom would be neutralized, this being approximately equivalent to the amount delivered by a normal bite if one can judge by the weight of venom obtained by manipulation of the glands. It is therefore possible to treat bites by the Gaboon viper with

a specific antivenene and there is consequently a real need for either the production of a monovalent serum or the incorporation of Gaboon viper anavenom in the antigen employed for the preparation of a polyvalent antivenene destined for use in equatorial Africa. Lack of the necessary venom is the only obstacle; and now that specific protection is available for workers in this field it is hoped that with the aid of health officials in the territories concerned this difficulty will be overcome in the near future.

SUMMARY.

The *Bitis gabonica* (Gaboon viper) is described and contrasted with the *Bitis arietans* (puff adder) and the *Bitis nasicornis*.

Emphasis is laid on the fact that no domestic or foreign serum hitherto tested has exerted more than a negligible neutralizing action on *B. gabonica* venom.

B. gabonica venom is characterized by a toxic fraction not present in *B. arietans* venom; rabbits immunized with anavenom derived from the former show a high resistance to *B. arietans* venom, whilst injections of *B. arietans* anavenom afford no protection against *B. gabonica* venom.

B. gabonica venom may be rendered atoxic by means of formalin; the resulting anavenom is antigenic and gives rise in the horse to a specific antivenene of therapeutic value.

The natural serum may be concentrated and refined by means of sodium sulphate, the neutralizing power being increased more than threefold.

REFERENCES.

- ANGEL, M. F. (1932). Les serpents de l'Afrique occidentale française. *Bull. Com. A.O.F.*, 15, 613.
- GRASSET, E. & ZOUTENDYK, A. (1936). The antigenic characteristic and relationships of viperine venoms based on the cross neutralizing action of heterologous antivenomous sera. *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 30, 347.
- & ———. (1936). Recherches sur le venin et l'anavenin de la vipère du Gabon (*Bitis gabonica*): importance de l'introduction de son antigène dans la préparation du sérum antivenimeux pour l'Afrique équatoriale. *Bull. Soc. Path. exot.*, 29, 210.
- & ———. (1937). Préparation d'un sérum antivenimeux contre le venin de la vipère du Gabon (*Bitis gabonica*). *C. R. Soc. Biol.*, 74, 609.
- GRASSET, E., ZOUTENDYK, A. & SCHAAFSMA, A. (1935). Studies on the toxic and antigenic properties of Southern African snake venoms with special reference to the polyvalency of South African antivenene. *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 28, 601.



FIG. 1.—*Bitis gabonica* under natural conditions.

Photographs 1 and 2 by Mr. B. Peers, Cape Town.

Photographs 3 to 8 by Mr. F. Brandt, South African Institute for Medical Research, Johannesburg.



FIG. 2.—*Bitis gabonica* under natural conditions.

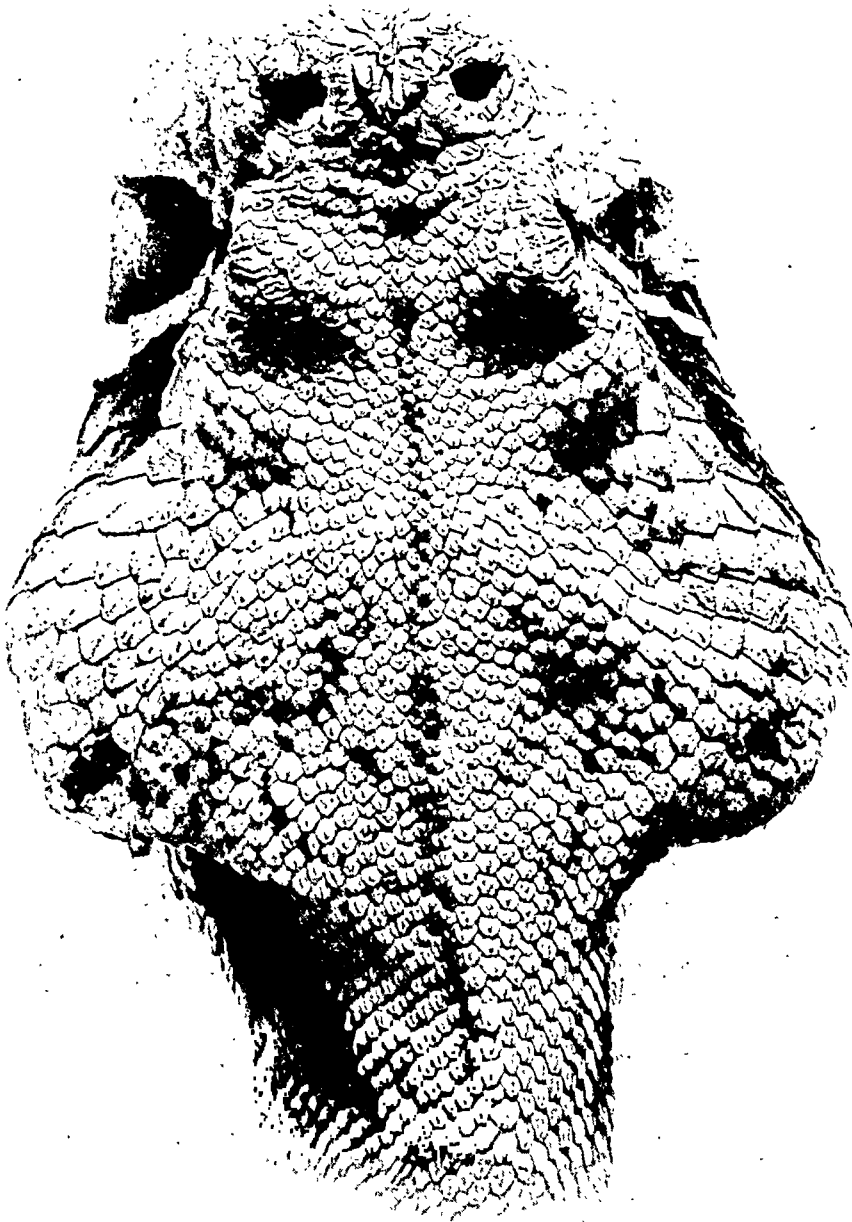


FIG. 3.—Head of *Bitis gabonica*. Dorsal view.

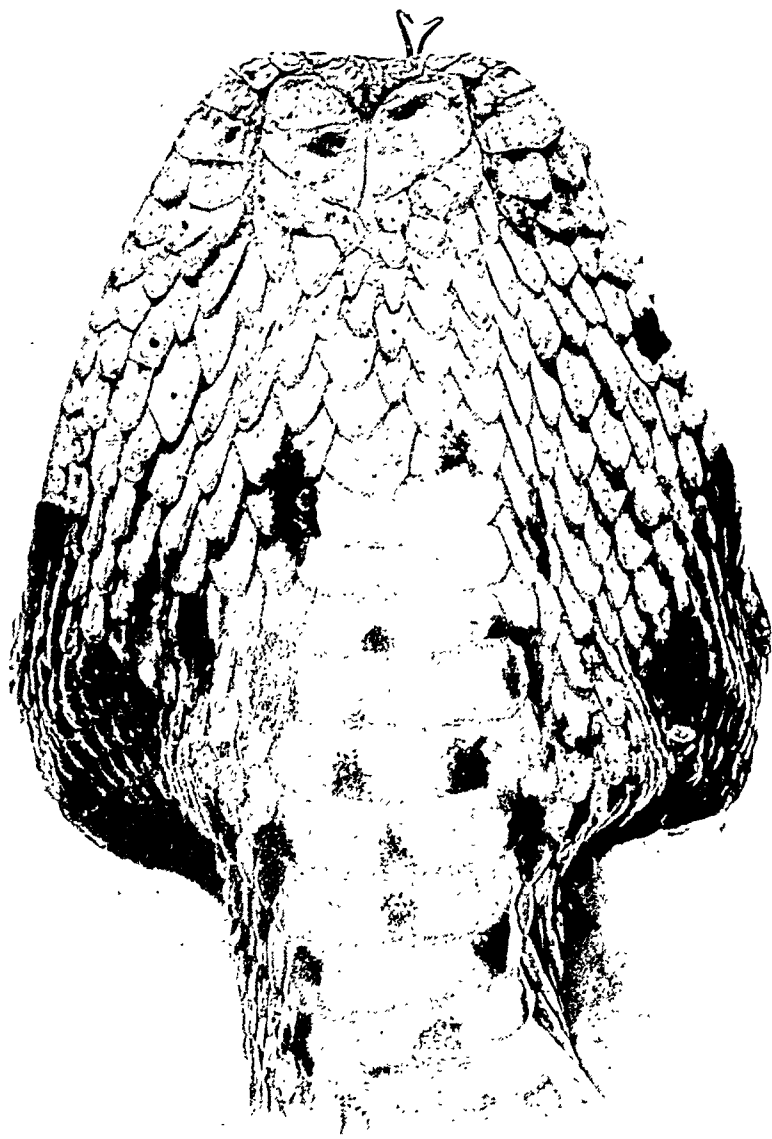


FIG. 4.—Head of *Bitis gabonica*. Ventral view.



FIG. 5.—Head of *Bitis gabonica*. Side view.



FIG. 6.—Head of *Bitis gabonica* showing fangs.

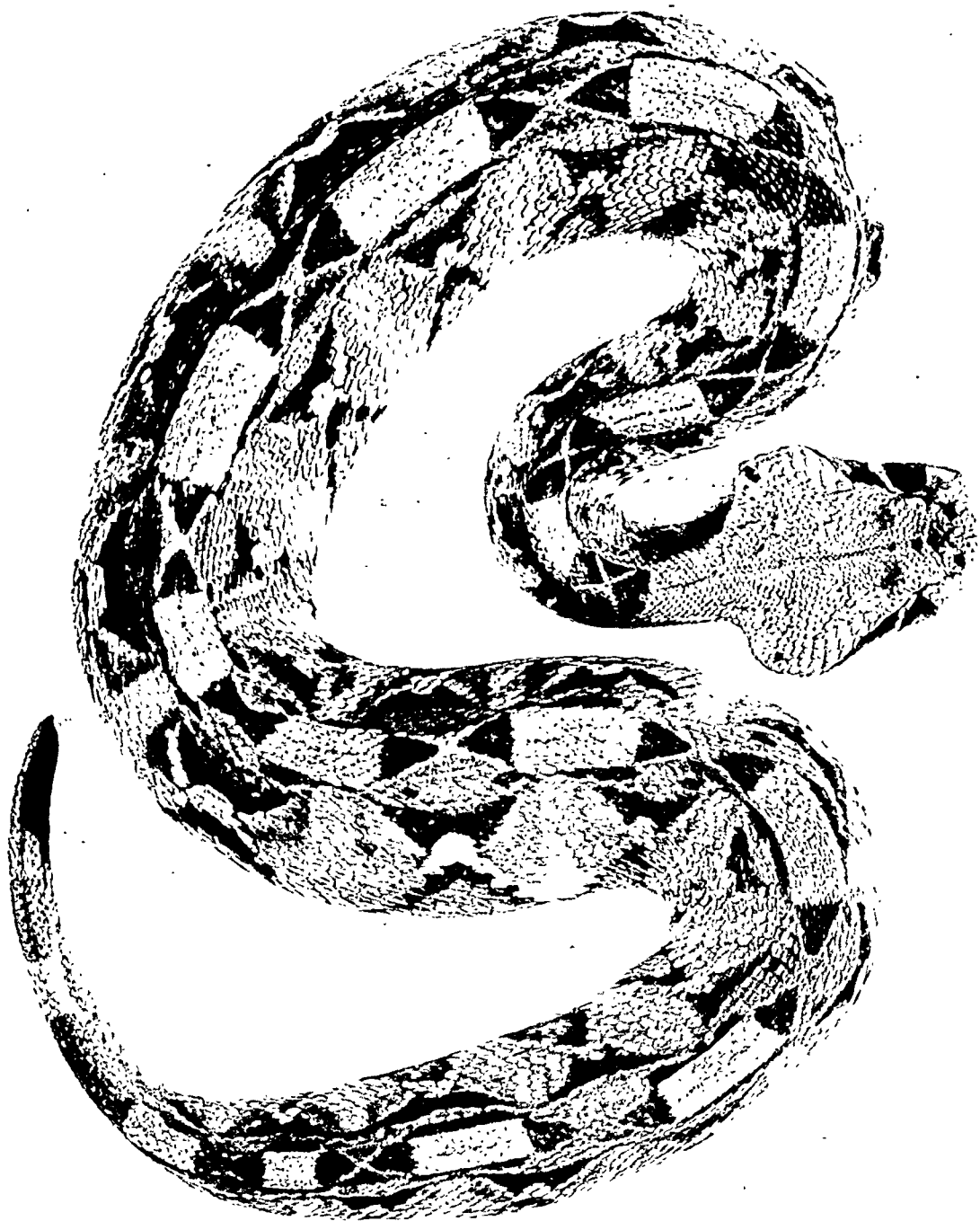


FIG. 7.—*Bitis gabonica* showing hour-glass markings.

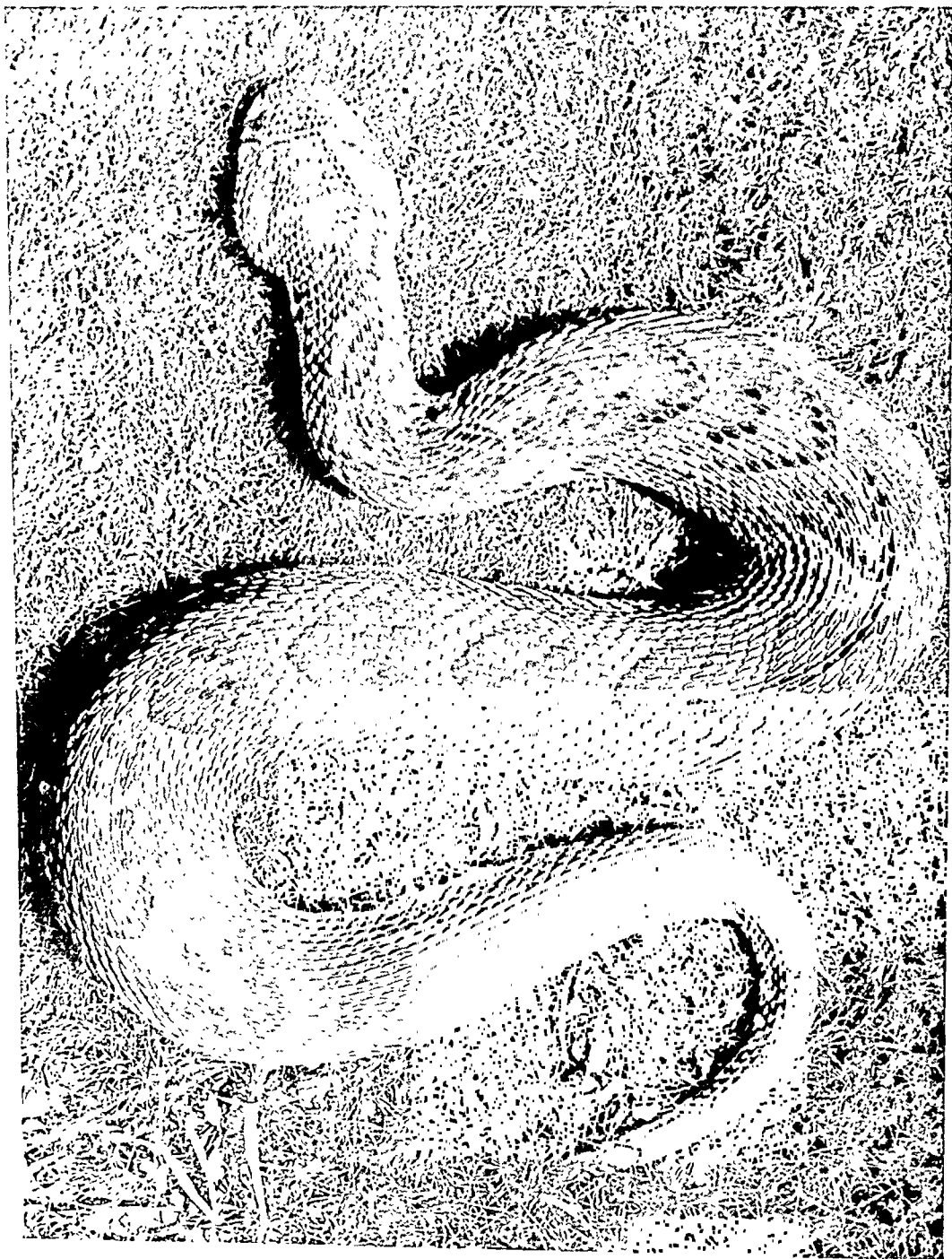


FIG. 8.—*Bitis arietans* under natural conditions.

TRANSACTIONS OF THE ROYAL SOCIETY OF
TROPICAL MEDICINE AND HYGIENE.
Vol. XXXI. No. 4. January, 1938.

WARMTH AND HUMIDITY AS PREDISPOSING FACTORS IN THE INCIDENCE OF YAWS.

BY

H. D. CHAMBERS, M.B., CH.B.,
Medical Officer, Jamaica.

The purpose of this article is to emphasize the fact that the chief factors in the distribution of yaws are a warm climate and humidity. Factors such as rainfall, geological formation of soil, vegetation, altitude, distance from the sea are of importance only in so far as they affect humidity. Any influence which unhygienic conditions may exert or which flies, such as *Hippalates pallipes*, may have in the dissemination of the disease can occur only in areas with a tropical, humid climate.

These deductions have been made as a result of the study of environmental factors and of their comparison in areas of Central America and of the West Indies where there is a high incidence of yaws with areas in the territories named in which there is no yaws. These investigations began on a visit to Central America and to Cuba in September, 1933, and were continued in Jamaica from October, 1933. The world distribution of the disease as expressed in the literature on yaws tends to confirm these deductions.

The disease is rarely found in countries where the mean isotherm is under 70° F. In countries lying between isotherms 70° F. and 79° F. the incidence of the disease is moderate except in regions with very heavy rainfall. In regions with isotherms of 80° F. and over the disease abounds, provided these regions are not arid or semi-arid.

When these general principles are considered in relation to Jamaica, a small island surrounded by the Caribbean Sea, it is found that the distribution of yaws is very variable. The island records of the averages of minimum and maximum temperature of places where there is yaws and where there is no yaws, do not, however, reveal any parallel differences that could account for this uneven distribution of the disease.

The living conditions and the pursuits of the masses throughout the island are fairly constant. Neither also from hygienic nor from economic standpoints is there any accountable difference between many areas where yaws abounds and those where there is no yaws. Unhygienic and poor economic conditions play important roles in the spread of the disease, but they are not in themselves essential factors, for in the slum areas of large towns in the island yaws does not occur. The occasionally reported cases have always been brought in from rural areas and give no cause for anxiety to the sanitary authorities: the disease quickly dies out again. Yet, hygienic and economic conditions in the slums show no improvement on those of rural yaws-infested areas.

It has been found that in Jamaica where there is yaws the rainfall is generally fairly high, but the reverse is not always true. There are areas with little or no yaws which have a heavier annual rainfall than many yaws-infested areas. For example, in two rural districts, Duncans and Devon, widely separated, there is no yaws, yet the average annual rainfall for the past 60 years is 80 inches 41 parts, and 73 inches, respectively. Duncans is 300 feet above sea level and Devon 2,560 feet. In another district, Duanvale, of elevation approximately 500 feet, and with an average annual rainfall for the past 60 years of 51 inches, the incidence of yaws is fairly high. Duanvale is only about 7 miles from Duncans. In a rural district, Crawle, which lies between Duanvale and Duncans, with an approximate elevation of 400 feet, there is no yaws among its population of over one thousand. Several like instances could be stated of areas in Jamaica where there is a heavy annual rainfall but with little or no yaws. There are also districts situated 1,800 feet to 2,300 feet above sea level where over 57 per cent. of the population give a history of yaws, while in other districts of an equal elevation yaws does not exist.

A study was made of the differences in living conditions and of environmental factors between Duncans and Crawle on the one hand and Duanvale on the other hand. The most striking difference was that while Duncans and Crawle in spite of heavier rainfall appeared to be well drained and comparatively dry, Duanvale was to all appearances damp. The presence of a swamp and of a few ponds in Duanvale emphasized this fact. The underlying geological

formation of these districts is limestone. To the south of Duanvale is a range of hills on a geological formation of conglomerates. The seepage of water from these hills carries in solution deposits which on settling make the top soil of Duanvale a marly alluvium. This surface soil is more tenacious than the top soil of Duncans and Crawle which are further removed from the hills. Because of the underlying limestone formation there are no rivers to carry deposits from the foothills to the plains on which the districts of Crawle and Duncans lie. For a time, however, it was thought that a certain pH of the soil may have been the cause which determined the presence or absence of yaws in a district. It was found that in some districts there is a distinctly alkaline soil with a high incidence of yaws. This also holds good in districts where there is no yaws. The only characteristic constant and predominant in all areas with a high incidence of yaws is a higher state of humidity as compared with areas with little or no yaws. This higher degree of humidity may be gauged by the amount of moisture in the surface soil. The incidence of yaws tends to rise in so far as there are factors which tend to increase the dampness of the soil. This dampness in turn is dependent on the colloidal content and the associated capillarity of the soil or on its imperviability, or on other conditions encouraging dampness, such as poor drainage, seepage from watersheds, a persistently high sub-soil water level, or limitations to evaporation such as may occur in sun-starved valleys. The greatest contributory factor lies in the colloidal content and in the thickness of the top soil. When the surface soil is loose, water sinks rapidly till an impervious sub-soil is reached. The tendency is for the surface soil to be kept moist by water that rises from this sub-soil. As a result of the colloidal content of heavier soils there will be a greater tendency also to deposits of hygroscopic water. Coarse, sandy soils obviously cannot hold water as do clay soils. STOCKLEY* states that the colloid content of calcareous soils differs from normal clay or from soil of igneous origin; that under drought conditions calcareous soils become gradually dehydrated at a quicker rate than do normal clay soils or soils derived from igneous rocks, both of which hold water more effectively. Thus, the non-moisture-retaining qualities of sandy soils with the very partial retaining qualities of soils of limestone formation tend to reduce humidity, and this accounts for the absence of yaws in such areas. In areas where the surface soil is of marl or alluvium some yaws will be found if any of the factors encouraging dampness are present. There is marked correlation between the heavier geological formations in Jamaica—such as carbonaceous shale, yellow limestone, conglomerates and igneous rocks—with a high incidence of yaws.

Very little purpose would be served in giving a long list of districts with a high incidence of yaws and of the respective factors which make them damp, or of districts with little or no yaws and of the respective factors which tend to

*STOCKLEY, G. M. (1925). *Report of the Government Geological Department*, 27th March, p. 26. Jamaica: Government Printing Office.

lower the humidity. A few illustrations will suffice to emphasize the points mentioned.

There are a few places which have little or no yaws notwithstanding an impervious soil. There must be other factors to produce this incongruity. These may be improved drainage, the paving of roads and pathways as in some townships, a larger percentage of people wearing shoes and stockings, improved types of dwellings with advanced sanitation which necessarily reduce the evils of overcrowding.

To illustrate the relationship of humidity with a high incidence of yaws, a district came under purview in which the top soil was a sandy loam but which had other features that tended to render it damp. This district, although at an elevation of 600 feet, is surrounded by mountains rising to 1,730 feet towards the east and to 2,000 feet towards the west; these serve to cut off hours of sunshine in the morning and in the evening. The mountains lie on an impervious formation of igneous and conglomerate rocks. Seepage of water into the soil of this district is abundant. The standard of living is not below the average, yet the percentage of persons with a history of yaws was found to be 76·38, a percentage which is unusually high and only equalled in another district which lies in a valley and where the soil consists of impervious conglomerates and carbonaceous shale. The standard of living of the people in this district is somewhat below the average for rural Jamaica. Another district adjoining the first mentioned (with 76·38 per cent. incidence of yaws) is comparable to it in respect to soil, elevation, rainfall, standard of living and seepage from water-sheds, but owing to the arrangement of the mountain ranges which run due east and west it receives more of the sun's rays and is therefore not as damp. The percentage of yaws is here 60·5.

It is hoped that in the near future records will be obtained of the relative humidity of several yaws endemic areas for comparison with areas where there is no yaws. At present meteorological records on humidity are only available for one of the areas in Jamaica with a high incidence of yaws. A comparison is made of the relative humidity of this area during 1 month in summer, 1 month in autumn and 1 month in winter, with another area 16 miles away where there is no yaws. The relative humidity of the yaws endemic area was consistently higher than that of the area without yaws. The mean relative humidity for the period of observation was 89·6 per cent. in the yaws endemic area as compared with 74·5 per cent. for the area with no yaws.

If humidity in relation to yaws incidence is of the importance that is claimed for it, then in the same district under more humid conditions of rainy seasons an increase in the prevalence of the disease is to be expected in comparison with drier seasons of the year. As a test a census was taken and examinations for yaws lesions carried out on all persons living in one small defined area after 2 months of moderate rains. The area was left untreated until the end of a dry season when as many of the same individuals as possible were re-examined.

The rainfall for the 2 months preceding the first census was 12 inches 63 parts, and that for 2 months preceding the re-examinations was 3 inches 73 parts. The number of persons with lesions in this area was definitely higher by 9.2 per cent. during the wet season than in the dry season. The higher percentage was due almost entirely to the larger number of individuals with infectious lesions after the wet season. The total number of persons examined at the end of the wet season was 625. Of these only 500 were available for a second examination at the end of a *dry* spell. (Forty-five having died or removed in the interval, and eighty more not being found.) Of these 500 cases (examined twice)

116 gave a history of a first attack of yaws 4 years ago
 128 " " " " " " over 4 years ago.

This makes a total of 244 (48.8 per cent.) with a history of yaws and therefore possibly with some degree of immunity; while the remaining 256 (51.2 per cent.), giving no history of yaws, may be considered as possibly non-immune.

Lesions found on Examination.	Wet Season.		Dry Season.	
	Number.	Per cent.	Number.	Per cent.
Infectious lesions	60	12.0	15	3
Non-infectious lesions	36	7.2	35	7
Totals	96	19.2	50	10

A similar estimate was made in another area after two separate dry periods. There was no appreciable difference in the number of persons with lesions. Other estimates of the prevalence of the disease in the same area in wet seasons as compared with dry seasons showed an increase of lesions, mostly of the infectious type, in the wet seasons.

In damp or humid areas vegetation is usually profuse. Vegetation tends to increase humidity. Any other influence of vegetation in the spread of the disease is not upheld. The presence of increased numbers of flies such as *Hippalates pallipes* in yaws endemic areas seems incidental to factors promoting dampness and to the presence of food supplies for the flies, among which yaws sores would figure prominently. In many dry areas of Jamaica there is less vegetation but there are many briars which provide greater facilities for injuries to the extremities. One might think these injuries would provide means for dissemination of the disease, but this does not appear to be the case. There is no

reason to believe that any type of vegetation would sustain the infecting organism outside the human body.

In areas where there is little or no yaws, but which are readily accessible to persons from yaws endemic areas, a temporary increase or a few cases may occur in abnormal periods of humidity dependent on prolonged rainy seasons.

The true position seems to be that a humid atmosphere slows up the evaporation of moisture from the skin. A moist skin seems to have some influence on the exuberance of skin lesions. *Treponema pertenue* coming in contact with moist surfaces whether of skin or of soil, will survive for longer periods than it does with dry surfaces.

TRANSACTIONS OF THE ROYAL SOCIETY OF
TROPICAL MEDICINE AND HYGIENE.
Vol. XXXI. No. 4. January, 1938.

THE CHINESE URBAN DEATH RATE IN HONGKONG.

BY

K. H. UTTLEY, M.A., M.D. (CAMB.), D.T.M. & H.
Medical Officer, Hongkong.

INTRODUCTION.

The geographical, social and climatic conditions of Hongkong are described in detail in a paper now in the press (UTTLEY, 1938) and only a brief outline will be given here.

Hongkong is just within the tropics on the coast of South China. It is subject to the effects of the monsoons, November to March being dry and cool, and the rest of the year being hot, damp and muggy, when most of the annual 87 inches of rain fall. Of the population 97 per cent. are Chinese, who live either in the two cities, Victoria, on the Island of Hongkong, and Kowloon, which is on the mainland across the harbour; in the country villages; or on the sampans and junks in the waters about the colony. Their main occupation is commerce and trade with the neighbouring parts of China, and a considerable minority of the population is constantly on the move to and from China. It is stated that 7,000 persons enter or leave the colony daily.

With such a large migration constantly taking place, any attempt to calculate a standardized death rate is bound to result only in an approximation. Nevertheless the attempt is justified since death registration in Hongkong is accurate, and the census returns are very fairly accurate, while no such calculation has hitherto been made either for Hongkong or for any Chinese city.

The results I have obtained, though not as accurate as similar data for Western European countries or North America, are I believe reasonably near the truth.

This paper discusses only the urban Chinese of the colony. While personally scrutinizing each of the 420,000 death returns dealt with in this paper, I excluded those occurring among the non-urban population, such as the country dwellers, harbour inhabitants, those passing through the colony and also those of non-Chinese. Similarly census figures concerning only the urban Chinese of Victoria and Kowloon were used, and not those for the whole colony. It is necessary to emphasize this, because all official returns dealing with disease and deaths in the colony relate to the colony as a whole, and up to the present no attempt has been made to consider one section of the population alone; from a statistical point of view such official data are of little value.

Victoria throughout the last 50 years has been very overcrowded, and is no less so to-day than in the past. Its 740 acres of built-over land house over 400,000 people. In Kowloon the greater proportion of its 250,000 inhabitants live in an area accommodating over 300 to the acre. Victoria and Kowloon are in many respects one city separated by a mile of harbour; in this paper they will be taken together as such when dealing with data referring to 1901 or later. Prior to that date, Kowloon was too small to be considered an urban area, and I have not included it in my figures for 1897 to 1900. Whenever the name Hongkong is used in this paper, it refers to the urban areas I have mentioned, and not to the colony as a whole.

THE CENSUS POPULATIONS.

Table I shows the growth and the structural changes which have taken place in the urban Chinese population of Hongkong since 1897. In that year the first census sufficiently accurate for the purpose was taken. All figures are adjusted to estimated mid-year populations in the census years.

In the early years of the colony, *i.e.*, in the 'forties and 'fifties of last century, Hongkong from the Chinese point of view was a place to which the young adult male came to seek a living; but from which, after the best years of his life were over, he departed to rejoin his wife and children who had been left behind in the ancestral village up country. This might lie anywhere in the neighbouring provinces of China. By the middle of the 'eighties some of the labouring classes began to bring their brides or families to Hongkong to live, after the

husbands had found an occupation. By the turn of the century this tendency was well marked, and has continued at an ever increasing rate. As conditions became more favourable for the growth of family life, and incidentally as the standard of life improved, this tendency to bring relatives and dependents to Hongkong became the rule: no longer were children, born in Hongkong, sent back in large numbers to the ancestral village to live until old enough to be married or to earn a living.

TABLE I.

HONGKONG URBAN CHINESE POPULATIONS AT SUCCEEDING CENSUSES, 1897-1931, WITH THE PERCENTAGE OF THE POPULATION IN EACH AGE GROUP.

Age in Years.	1897	1901	1911	1921	1931
0 upwards	4.42	3.94	4.70	7.78	8.59
5 ..	5.37	4.81	6.15	7.03	7.44
10 ..	6.27	6.16	6.84	8.85	8.14
15 ..	25.53	27.55	24.30	25.33	25.21
25 ..	25.71	26.92	26.06	22.43	21.21
35 ..	17.05	16.58	17.82	15.81	14.57
45 ..	10.33	9.07	8.93	8.05	8.84
55 ..	4.13	3.84	3.77	3.28	4.33
65 ..	0.98	0.90	1.15	1.23	1.31
75 ..	0.19	0.20	0.27	0.20	0.40
85 ..	0.01	0.04			
Totals—					
Males	117,544	163,169	195,322	272,153	371,906
Females	45,531	57,150	90,796	162,571	268,850
Persons	163,075	220,319	286,118	434,724	640,756
Intercensal increase		57,244	65,799	148,606	206,032

These changes show themselves in the figures of Table I, where it is seen that a steady increase has taken place in the relative and absolute numbers of the very young and the elderly during the last 40 years. There has always been a preponderance of males, though now much less than in the past.

There are two points to which attention should be drawn in these census figures. In those for 1911 there are stated to be included about 20,000 refugees who had fled from the revolution which resulted in the destruction of the Manchu dynasty. The census in 1921 was taken at a time of poor trade conditions when a certain unknown number of people would have returned to their homes up country to await better times. Average conditions prevailed when the remaining censuses were taken. From the census reports one can infer that so far as the urban population is concerned there was very little

With such a large migration constantly taking place, any attempt to calculate a standardized death rate is bound to result only in an approximation. Nevertheless the attempt is justified since death registration in Hongkong is accurate, and the census returns are very fairly accurate, while no such calculation has hitherto been made either for Hongkong or for any Chinese city.

The results I have obtained, though not as accurate as similar data for Western European countries or North America, are I believe reasonably near the truth.

This paper discusses only the urban Chinese of the colony. While personally scrutinizing each of the 420,000 death returns dealt with in this paper, I excluded those occurring among the non-urban population, such as the country dwellers, harbour inhabitants, those passing through the colony and also those of non-Chinese. Similarly census figures concerning only the urban Chinese of Victoria and Kowloon were used, and not those for the whole colony. It is necessary to emphasize this, because all official returns dealing with disease and deaths in the colony relate to the colony as a whole, and up to the present no attempt has been made to consider one section of the population alone; from a statistical point of view such official data are of little value.

Victoria throughout the last 50 years has been very overcrowded, and is no less so to-day than in the past. Its 740 acres of built-over land house over 400,000 people. In Kowloon the greater proportion of its 250,000 inhabitants live in an area accommodating over 300 to the acre. Victoria and Kowloon are in many respects one city separated by a mile of harbour; in this paper they will be taken together as such when dealing with data referring to 1901 or later. Prior to that date, Kowloon was too small to be considered an urban area, and I have not included it in my figures for 1897 to 1900. Whenever the name Hongkong is used in this paper, it refers to the urban areas I have mentioned, and not to the colony as a whole.

THE CENSUS POPULATIONS.

Table I shows the growth and the structural changes which have taken place in the urban Chinese population of Hongkong since 1897. In that year the first census sufficiently accurate for the purpose was taken. All figures are adjusted to estimated mid-year populations in the census years.

In the early years of the colony, *i.e.*, in the 'forties and 'fifties of last century, Hongkong from the Chinese point of view was a place to which the young adult male came to seek a living; but from which, after the best years of his life were over, he departed to rejoin his wife and children who had been left behind in the ancestral village up country. This might lie anywhere in the neighbouring provinces of China. By the middle of the 'eighties some of the labouring classes began to bring their brides or families to Hongkong to live, after the

husbands had found an occupation. By the turn of the century this tendency was well marked, and has continued at an ever increasing rate. As conditions became more favourable for the growth of family life, and incidentally as the standard of life improved, this tendency to bring relatives and dependents to Hongkong became the rule: no longer were children, born in Hongkong, sent back in large numbers to the ancestral village to live until old enough to be married or to earn a living.

TABLE I.

HONGKONG URBAN CHINESE POULATIONS AT SUCCEEDING CENSUSES, 1897-1931, WITH THE PERCENTAGE OF THE POPULATION IN EACH AGE GROUP.

Age in Years.	1897	1901	1911	1921	1931
0 upwards	4.42	3.94	4.70	7.78	8.59
5 "	5.37	4.81	6.15	7.03	7.44
10 "	6.27	6.16	6.84	8.85	8.14
15 "	25.53	27.55	24.30	25.33	25.21
25 "	25.71	26.92	26.06	22.43	21.21
35 "	17.05	16.58	17.82	15.81	14.57
45 "	10.33	9.07	8.93	8.05	8.84
55 "	4.13	3.84	3.77	3.28	4.33
65 "	0.98	0.90	1.15	1.23	1.31
75 "	0.19	0.20	0.27	0.20	0.40
85 "	0.01	0.04			
Totals—					
Males	117,544	163,169	195,322	272,153	371,906
Females	45,531	57,150	90,796	162,571	268,850
Persons	163,075	220,319	286,118	434,724	640,756
Intercensal increase		57,244	65,799	148,606	206,032

These changes show themselves in the figures of Table I, where it is seen that a steady increase has taken place in the relative and absolute numbers of the very young and the elderly during the last 40 years. There has always been a preponderance of males, though now much less than in the past.

There are two points to which attention should be drawn in these census figures. In those for 1911 there are stated to be included about 20,000 refugees who had fled from the revolution which resulted in the destruction of the Manchu dynasty. The census in 1921 was taken at a time of poor trade conditions when a certain unknown number of people would have returned to their homes up country to await better times. Average conditions prevailed when the remaining censuses were taken. From the census reports one can infer that so far as the urban population is concerned there was very little

evasion when filling in the returns except for infants, a deficiency which will be discussed later in the paper. Table I shows that there has been a gradual increase in the percentage of the age group 0-4 years. One reason for this has already been mentioned, namely, the gradual increase in family life, with the resulting increase in the number of children. Another reason, also mentioned, was the diminishing tendency to send children back to the ancestral village with the passage of time. The small percentage of children among Chinese families may come as a surprise to some. Contrary to general belief, Chinese families are not large.* In the age groups 5-9 and 10-14 years, the percentages have also risen throughout the period. Throughout working life, *i.e.*, in the age groups from 15 to 44 years of age, there has been some decline in the proportions.

After the age of 45 years the percentages are very low and much less than in Britain. One reason for this is the very much shorter expectation of life among Chinese. Old people, namely those over 60 years of age, are rare in China, even in country places. (This is my impression. I hope to prove it statistically for a rural community in a later paper.)

THE DEATH RATES AT ALL AGES.

Table II shows the standardized death rates for the urban Chinese population at each of the censuses since 1897 (directly standardized against the England and Wales population of 1901). The crude rate is also given for each year. With a very fluctuating population such as that of Hongkong it is not possible to work out accurate standardized rates for intercensal years, and for the calculation of the crude death rates I assumed that in intercensal years the population increased in geometrical progression.

During the first two-thirds of the period under review Hongkong was afflicted with epidemics of plague which caused great variations in the death rate from year to year. Since 1922 the disease has been absent.† Additional factors contributing to the fluctuations are the smallness of the colony's population, and the habit of the Chinese, mentioned elsewhere (UTTLEY, 1938) of returning to their native village when they consider themselves sick enough to die. This last factor will tend to reduce the rate to a value lower than it otherwise would have been, especially in an epidemic year, because

*LENNOX (1919) in dealing with a series of 4,000 fathers, states that in Peking there are 2.1 children per family, 1.4 being alive and 0.7 dead. GRAY, quoted by LENNOX, working on another group in Peking of 1,000 mothers, found the corresponding figure to be 2.3 living children per family. HAMMOND and HSU (1927) when dealing with a series of 903 families, also in Peking, obtained a figure of 3.7 per family. FAN (1933) in Tsinan, Shantung, with 2,500 families found an incidence of 3.4 living births per family.

†Except for one death in 1928 and two in 1929.

K. H. UTTLEY.

TABLE II.
STANDARDIZED AND CRUDE DEATH RATES. HONGKONG, 1897-1934.
(England and Wales standardized death rate for comparison.)

Year.	Hongkong.				England and Wales.	
	Standardized Death Rate.			Crude Rate.	Standardized Death Rate.	
	Male.	Females.	Persons.	Persons.	Males.	Females.
1897	33.9	39.0	37.3	20.7	18.8	
1898				24.0		
1899				26.3		
1900				28.1		
1901	38.3	54.9	46.7	26.0	18.5	
1902				23.9		
1903				21.4		
1904				20.9		
1905				21.8		
1906				26.0		
1907				23.1		
1908				30.2		
1909				22.6		
1910				22.9		
1911	42.3	49.7	46.0	24.4	15.6	
1912				28.6		
1913				28.1		
1914				25.1		
1915				20.4		
1916				26.3		
1917				25.0		
1918				30.6		
1919				27.3		
1920				27.0		
1921	33.2	32.4	33.0	23.7	12.5	
1922				27.7		
1923				27.5		
1924				28.8		
1925				27.8		
1926				22.4		
1927				25.4		
1928				24.9		
1929				27.4		
1930				28.8		
1931	40.0	35.9	36.7	30.7	11.4	
1932				27.8		
1933				26.6		
1934				24.9		

which will
a gradual
for this
life, with
so men-
ancestral
n among
al belief,
cars, the
ing life,
decline

less than
n of life
rare in
prove it

se popula-
against the
for each
gkong it is
ensal years,
intercensal

ngkong was
e death rate
Additional
the colony's
elsewhere
er themselves
te to a value
year, because

in Peking there
LENNOX, work-
ing figure to be
series

Chinese are easily alarmed by an epidemic, and if they can afford to do so they try to get away from an infected area to their homes for the time being.

A consideration of Table II shows that the standardized rate of males was less than that of females up to and including 1911. In 1921, the rates were the same for the two sexes, in 1931 the male rate was 4·1 per 1,000 higher than the female rate. The rates both for persons and for the sexes separately have varied considerably from one census year to the next and show no definite trend. Concerning certain of the years it must be pointed out that 1901 was a year in which a severe outbreak of plague accounted for a fifth of all deaths. In 1906, there was a similar though less severe epidemic which caused a tenth of all deaths. In 1908 plague and smallpox between them accounted for an eighth of all deaths. 1911, 1912 and 1913 were plague years, 1912 and 1913 smallpox years, the deaths from these causes averaging about a tenth of the total each. In 1918, there was the influenza pandemic, in addition to which cerebrospinal meningitis visited the colony for the first time in epidemic form and caused 9 per cent. of all deaths ; a large fire accounted for another 5 per cent. and plague was also somewhat severe.

On the other hand, there was no epidemic of any disease in 1897, 1903-4-5, 1909, 1910 and 1915. With reference to the relatively high crude death rates for the last 15 or 20 years it must be remembered that in the earlier years the population contained a larger proportion of people aged 5 to 44 years than it did later, and consequently favoured a lower crude rate in the first half of this period than it did in the latter half.

THE DEATH RATES AT AGES.

Table III shows the death rates at ages for each of the five census years. Similar figures for England and Wales in 1931 are given for comparison.

It must be remembered that the 1901 figures are unduly high because of the severe epidemic of plague that occurred in that year. Taking first the rates on both sexes combined it will be seen that there has been relatively little change in the enormously high death rate during the first five years of life. It seems to have been at its highest in 1911, but too much reliance must not be placed on this rate of early childhood because a certain unknown number of infants are not registered at the censuses. This applies more especially to female infants (see later). In the second 5 years of life, there has also been little change ; the figures suggest a slight fall. At ages 10-14 the rate has declined by half, the fall taking place entirely in the latter half of the period. At 15-20 years there has been a well marked drop since the peak in 1901, but little improvement between 1897 and 1931. At all later ages there has been not only no improvement in the mortality experience but a rising rate in the last 20 years. (The figures for 75 years of age and upwards are unreliable owing to the smallness of the numbers involved.)

TABLE III.
DEATHS AT AGES PER 1,000 LIVING AT SUCCESSIVE CENSUS YEARS, HONGKONG, 1897 TO 1931.
(P. = persons; M. = males; F. = females.)

Age.	1897			1901			1911			1921			1931			England and Wales, 1931		
	P.	M.	F.	P.	M.	F.	P.	M.	F.	P.	M.	F.	P.	M.	F.	P.	M.	F.
0 —	190	164	211	209	159	258	283	257	310	165	165	164	199	198	201	20.0	22.4	17.5
5 "	15	14	15	25	18	29	17	15	18	14	13	15	13	13	14	2.1	2.3	2.0
10 "	8	8	9	17	13	22	8	7	9	6	3	6	4	4	4	1.5	1.5	1.5
15 "	6	5	10	12	10	21	8	4	9	5	4	6	5	5	6	2.5	2.6	2.4
20 "	8	8	10	12	11	15	7	6	10	6	6	6	9	9	8	3.0	3.2	2.9
25 "	10	10	11	16	15	18	9	8	10	9	9	9	11	12	10	3.4	3.5	3.3
35 "	14	15	11	18	18	15	12	12	10	13	14	11	15	18	10	5.1	5.8	4.5
45 "	19	22	12	22	22	22	17	19	12	20	22	15	24	29	16	9.8	11.6	8.2
55 "	30	33	22	42	43	40	28	30	25	39	46	28	45	56	31	20.2	33.5	17.3
65 "	62	66	58	08	103	114	55	57	53	70	74	63	117	127	107	52.9	60.5	46.6
75 "	179	142	203	217	146	273	145	160	175	225	267	204	80	126	65	128.3	141.4	119.5
85 +	304	200	333	239	290	213										285.5	291.2	282.6

Chinese are easily alarmed by an epidemic, and if they can afford to do so they try to get away from an infected area to their homes for the time being.

A consideration of Table II shows that the standardized rate of males was less than that of females up to and including 1911. In 1921, the rates were the same for the two sexes, in 1931 the male rate was 4.1 per 1,000 higher than the female rate. The rates both for persons and for the sexes separately have varied considerably from one census year to the next and show no definite trend. Concerning certain of the years it must be pointed out that 1901 was a year in which a severe outbreak of plague accounted for a fifth of all deaths. In 1906, there was a similar though less severe epidemic which caused a tenth of all deaths. In 1908 plague and smallpox between them accounted for an eighth of all deaths. 1911, 1912 and 1913 were plague years, 1912 and 1913 smallpox years, the deaths from these causes averaging about a tenth of the total each. In 1918, there was the influenza pandemic, in addition to which cerebrospinal meningitis visited the colony for the first time in epidemic form and caused 9 per cent. of all deaths; a large fire accounted for another 5 per cent. and plague was also somewhat severe.

On the other hand, there was no epidemic of any disease in 1897, 1903-4-5, 1909, 1910 and 1915. With reference to the relatively high crude death rates for the last 15 or 20 years it must be remembered that in the earlier years the population contained a larger proportion of people aged 5 to 44 years than it did later, and consequently favoured a lower crude rate in the first half of this period than it did in the latter half.

THE DEATH RATES AT AGES.

Table III shows the death rates at ages for each of the five census years. Similar figures for England and Wales in 1931 are given for comparison.

It must be remembered that the 1901 figures are unduly high because of the severe epidemic of plague that occurred in that year. Taking first the rates on both sexes combined it will be seen that there has been relatively little change in the enormously high death rate during the first five years of life. It seems to have been at its highest in 1911, but too much reliance must not be placed on this rate of early childhood because a certain unknown number of infants are not registered at the censuses. This applies more especially to female infants (see later). In the second 5 years of life, there has also been little change; the figures suggest a slight fall. At ages 10-14 the rate has declined by half, the fall taking place entirely in the latter half of the period. At 15-20 years there has been a well marked drop since the peak in 1901, but little improvement between 1897 and 1931. At all later ages there has been not only no improvement in the mortality experience but a rising rate in the last 20 years. (The figures for 75 years of age and upwards are unreliable owing to the smallness of the numbers involved.)

TABLE III.
DEATHS AT AGES PER 1,000 LIVING AT SUCCESSIVE CENSUS YEARS, HONGKONG, 1897 TO 1931.
(P. = persons; M. = males; F. = females.)

Age.	1897			1901			1911			1921			1931			England and Wales, 1931		
	P.	M.	F.	P.	M.	F.	P.	M.	F.	P.	M.	F.	P.	M.	F.	P.	M.	F.
0 -	190	164	211	209	159	258	283	257	310	165	165	164	199	198	201	20.0	22.4	17.5
5 "	15	14	15	25	18	29	17	15	18	14	13	15	13	13	14	2.1	2.3	2.0
10 "	8	8	9	17	13	22	8	7	9	5	3	6	4	4	4	1.5	1.5	1.5
15 "	6	5	10	12	10	21	8	4	9	5	4	6	5	5	6	2.5	2.6	2.4
20 "	8	8	10	12	11	15	7	6	10	6	6	6	9	9	8	3.0	3.2	2.9
25 "	10	10	11	16	15	18	9	8	10	9	9	9	11	12	10	3.4	3.5	3.3
35 "	14	15	11	18	18	15	12	12	10	13	14	11	15	18	10	5.1	5.8	4.5
45 "	19	22	12	22	22	22	17	19	12	20	22	15	24	29	16	9.8	11.6	8.2
55 "	30	33	22	42	43	40	28	30	25	39	46	28	45	56	31	20.2	33.5	17.3
65 "	62	66	58	08	103	114	55	57	53	70	74	63	117	127	107	52.9	60.5	46.6
75 "	179	142	203	217	146	273	145	160	175	225	267	204	80	126	65	128.3	141.4	119.5
85 +	304	200	333	239	290	213										285.5	291.2	282.6

Chinese are easily alarmed by an epidemic, and if they can afford to do so they try to get away from an infected area to their homes for the time being.

A consideration of Table II shows that the standardized rate of males was less than that of females up to and including 1911. In 1921, the rates were the same for the two sexes, in 1931 the male rate was 4.1 per 1,000 higher than the female rate. The rates both for persons and for the sexes separately have varied considerably from one census year to the next and show no definite trend. Concerning certain of the years it must be pointed out that 1901 was a year in which a severe outbreak of plague accounted for a fifth of all deaths. In 1906, there was a similar though less severe epidemic which caused a tenth of all deaths. In 1908 plague and smallpox between them accounted for an eighth of all deaths. 1911, 1912 and 1913 were plague years, 1912 and 1913 smallpox years, the deaths from these causes averaging about a tenth of the total each. In 1918, there was the influenza pandemic, in addition to which cerebrospinal meningitis visited the colony for the first time in epidemic form and caused 9 per cent. of all deaths ; a large fire accounted for another 5 per cent. and plague was also somewhat severe.

On the other hand, there was no epidemic of any disease in 1897, 1903-4-5, 1909, 1910 and 1915. With reference to the relatively high crude death rates for the last 15 or 20 years it must be remembered that in the earlier years the population contained a larger proportion of people aged 5 to 44 years than it did later, and consequently favoured a lower crude rate in the first half of this period than it did in the latter half.

THE DEATH RATES AT AGES.

Table III shows the death rates at ages for each of the five census years. Similar figures for England and Wales in 1931 are given for comparison.

It must be remembered that the 1901 figures are unduly high because of the severe epidemic of plague that occurred in that year. Taking first the rates on both sexes combined it will be seen that there has been relatively little change in the enormously high death rate during the first five years of life. It seems to have been at its highest in 1911, but too much reliance must not be placed on this rate of early childhood because a certain unknown number of infants are not registered at the censuses. This applies more especially to female infants (see later). In the second 5 years of life, there has also been little change ; the figures suggest a slight fall. At ages 10-14 the rate has declined by half, the fall taking place entirely in the latter half of the period. At 15-20 years there has been a well marked drop since the peak in 1901, but little improvement between 1897 and 1931. At all later ages there has been not only no improvement in the mortality experience but a rising rate in the last 20 years. (The figures for 75 years of age and upwards are unreliable owing to the smallness of the numbers involved.)

TABLE III.
DEATHS AT AGES PER 1,000 LIVING AT SUCCESSIVE CENSUS YEARS, HONGKONG, 1897 TO 1931.
(P. = persons; M. = males; F. = females.)

Age.	1897			1901			1911			1921			1931			England and Wales, 1931		
	P.	M.	F.	P.	M.	F.	P.	M.	F.	P.	M.	F.	P.	M.	F.	P.	M.	F.
0 —	190	164	211	209	159	258	283	257	310	165	165	164	199	198	201	20.0	22.4	17.5
5 "	15	14	15	25	18	20	17	15	18	14	13	15	13	13	14	2.1	2.3	2.0
10 "	8	8	9	17	13	22	8	7	9	5	3	6	4	4	4	1.5	1.5	1.5
15 "	6	5	10	12	10	21	8	4	9	5	4	6	5	5	6	2.5	2.6	2.4
20 "	8	8	10	12	11	15	7	6	10	6	6	6	9	9	8	3.0	3.2	2.9
25 "	10	10	11	16	15	18	9	8	10	9	9	9	11	12	10	3.4	3.5	3.3
35 "	14	15	11	18	18	15	12	12	10	13	14	11	15	18	10	5.1	5.8	4.5
45 "	19	22	12	22	22	22	17	19	12	20	22	15	24	29	16	9.8	11.6	8.2
55 "	30	33	22	42	43	40	28	30	25	39	46	28	45	56	31	20.2	33.5	17.3
65 "	62	66	58	08	103	114	55	57	53	70	74	63	117	127	107	52.9	60.5	46.6
75 "	179	142	203	217	146	273	145	160	175	225	267	204	80	126	65	128.3	141.4	119.5
85 +	304	200	333	239	290	213										285.5	291.2	282.6

The general trend of the rates of males and females has been fairly similar. In the years of childhood, 0-5 and 5-10, neither shows any definite improvement over the 34 years. At 10-15 both sexes show a declining rate and with females this improvement also extends to the age groups 15-20 and 20-25. At ages 25-45 both sexes show a rate that is nearly stationary over the period while at ages over 45 both show a rising mortality, the increase being, however, substantially greater amongst the males.

The ratios of the male to the female rates at each age and at each period are shown in Table IV. The figures for ages 0-4 show at first higher values

TABLE IV.

RATIO OF MALE TO FEMALE MORTALITY.

$$\text{i.e. } \frac{\text{Male death rate} \times 100^*}{\text{Female death rate at Ages}}$$

Age Group.	1897	1901	1911	1921	1931	England and Wales, 1931.
0	77	62	83	101	99	128
5	93	62	82	87	93	115
10	89	59	77	50	100	100
15	47	48	46	67	83	108
20	79	73	57	100	113	110
25	95	83	80	100	120	106
35	136	120	126	127	180	129
45	188	100	155	147	181	141
55	146	108	119	164	181	136
65	114	90	106	117	119	130
75	67	64	57	131	194	112

*These figures do not always correspond exactly with those derivable from Table III owing to the omission of decimals in that table.

for females than for males ; in the last two census years the rates were equivalent. It has already been pointed out that the figures for the first few years of life must be accepted with some reserve. I believe, however, that the infant mortality of females in China has always exceeded that of male infants, if only because of the much greater care bestowed on the latter in Chinese homes.

ly similar.
 improvement
 th females
 At ages
 riod while
 however,

ch period
 er values

Female infants are usually valued less than males (and CHU, 1930).

At the ages 5-19 the rate of males is less than 20-34 in the earlier years this was also found, but now ages 35 and onwards the rate of males has always exceeded except possibly in old age. A reasonable explanation for of young adult Chinese females in Hongkong is to be so many young and healthy brides and wives are constant colony from the country. To a certain, though limited, home is less strenuous and less exposed to the unhealthy home which are the lot of their husbands in the shop, carrying trades that absorb so large a number of the coolies

COMPARISON OF THE HONGKONG RATES IN 1931 ENGLAND AND WALES.

Table III shows that the greatest difference between western experiences lies in the first 10 years of life, the age lack of knowledge of antenatal and postnatal care and of hygiene tells so severely on mortality rates. The very crowding in the tenements, the closing of all windows weather and often in the hot weather as well, the promise and rice-bowls, the universal habit of spitting on floor and mothers have of chewing their children's food before mouths, the very poor quality food of the coolie class avitaminosis, the intense struggle for existence which compel each child work as soon as it can walk, so as to increase tell on the health of the growing infant and child and result who in England would recover and be healthy citizens that the rate is so high, rather is one surprised that it is not

Throughout the years of working life, from puberty the rates are only from two to three times the British these relatively low rates are produced by the constant arrivals, already referred to, who come seeking work therefore, more apparent than real, because if it were dealing only with those who have been born and bred in they would certainly be higher.

Wales, 1931.

28
 15
 00
 08
 10
 106
 129
 141
 136
 130
 112

from Table III

in an increase of the infirmities and sicknesses of old age and, therefore, an increase in mortality at these ages.

The Mortality at ages 0-5.

During the last 2 years registration of births in Hongkong has been much more strictly enforced and now probably all births are registered. In the past there was a certain amount of evasion of birth registration, whereas there was no evasion of death registration. This results in an apparently very high death rate for the first quinquennium of life, and makes it impossible to calculate an infant mortality rate with any reasonable degree of accuracy. I do not consider, however, that this evasion has ever exceeded 20 per cent. of all births in urban areas, and I think that 10 per cent. would be a more likely figure. Even if we accept the higher figure and assume that the death rate in the first 5 years of life in 1931 was in the neighbourhood of 170 per 1,000 living, instead of the recorded rate of 200, we still have a rate eight or nine times that of England and Wales; 49.8 per cent. of the deaths of males and 63.6 per cent. of the deaths of females in Hongkong in 1931 belonged to these first 5 years of life.

THE SEASONAL INCIDENCE OF DEATHS.

Table V shows the monthly distribution of deaths in different intercensal periods. I have assumed a standard month of 31 days; the average number of

TABLE V.

PERCENTAGE MONTHLY DISTRIBUTIONS OF DEATHS IN HONGKONG, 1897-1936.

Month.	1897-1900	1901-1910	1911-1920	1921-1930	1931-1936	1897-1936
January	79.5	75.6	88.1	87.2	86.3	84.6
February	92.5	77.4	89.3	91.3	88.4	87.6
March	92.4	81.8	88.6	88.8	93.1	88.3
April	110.7	98.3	96.8	97.8	101.1	98.3
May	140.1	126.1	114.6	104.6	110.3	112.0
June	127.3	136.4	128.4	108.1	104.6	116.4
July	108.7	111.4	113.5	114.2	107.8	110.9
August	92.3	110.3	98.2	108.3	107.8	104.5
September	91.0	98.4	100.3	101.9	101.7	111.3
October	92.6	101.7	98.0	99.9	103.1	99.5
November	96.6	93.2	95.1	99.2	96.8	96.0
December	84.6	82.0	88.6	95.9	99.3	92.9
Total number of deaths	16,837	59,455	93,360	137,576	113,037	420,265

deaths in this period (*i.e.*, the yearly total divided by 12) I have called 100 and have expressed the deaths registered in each month in proportion to this. The table shows that there is a uniform tendency for more deaths to occur in the months May to September, than at other times. January is the healthiest month, in that fewest deaths occur then. The autumn and winter months are cool, there is little rain and the climate is very healthy at that time. Against this must be put the fact that in the cool weather people are huddled together at night in their tenements and all windows are closed. In the summer large numbers sleep out of doors, with a consequent lessening of the overcrowding. With the advent of summer a minimum of clothes is worn, all winter ones are put away and plenty of light and air can get to the skin. With the arrival of the first cold spell winter clothes are unpacked or taken from the pawnbroker, and any fomites present are liable to cause outbreaks of smallpox or other infectious fevers. The presence of intestinal diseases during the summer months and such conditions as malaria, which have their greatest incidence in the summer, will account for the seasonal increase seen in the table. The fall in recent years from the high figures previously recorded for May and June is due to the disappearance of plague.

SUMMARY.

(1) The standardized death rate of males living under urban conditions in Hongkong has varied between 1897 and 1931 from 33·2 to 42·3 per 1,000 living, of females from 32·4 to 54·9, and of persons from 33·0 and 46·7. Without a radical change in the conditions prevailing in the city as described in this paper, one cannot expect any great lowering of this high rate.

(2) Owing to deficiencies in registration the infantile and early childhood death rates cannot be calculated with accuracy. Mortality at ages 0-4 appears to be in the neighbourhood of 170 per 1,000 living or at least eight times the rate in England and Wales.

(3) There appears to be a higher death rate for females than for males up to the age of 20, while beyond this age, and especially after age 35, the rates of males are the greater.

(4) In every age group the death rate in Hongkong in 1931 is considerably greater than the rate in England and Wales in the same year, being never less than two to three times as high.

(5) In 1931, 49·8 per cent. of all male deaths and 63·6 per cent. of all female deaths occurred in the first quinquennium of life.

(6) A larger proportion of deaths occurs in the five months, May to September, than at other times of the year.

REFERENCES.

- FAN, P. L. (1933). *Chin. med. J.*, 47, 652-661.
HAMMOND, J. & HSÜ, K. L. (1927). *Ibid.*, 41, 1006-1010.
HSU, K. L. & CHU, F. T. (1930). *Nat. med. J. China*, 16, 744-755.
LENNOX, W. G. (1919). *China med. J.*, 33, 325-345.
UTTLEY, K. H. Studies in tuberculosis in Hongkong. *J. Hyg.* (In the press.)

CORRESPONDENCE.

BEJEL.

To the Editor, TRANSACTIONS of the Royal Society of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene.

SIR,

Dr. RICHARDS' interesting letter on bejel, which you published in the November issue, and a carbon copy of which Dr. RICHARDS kindly addressed to me, raises several important points. Perhaps I may be permitted to reply to one or two where confusion may have arisen.

As to the word 'bejel,' my advocacy of its use grew out of a realisation that this type of syphilis would never be clearly seen as a clinical entity until it had been properly *labelled*.

It seemed to me that a clear distinction had to be made between venereally acquired syphilis and the acquired syphilis of childhood. As long as the word 'syphilis' was used for *both*, even with qualifying adjectives, there would be confusion in medical thought. What I wanted was a term which would gather up in one word the whole intricate picture of non-venereal syphilis, all the qualifying and descriptive adjectives which had been applied to it—a single word which would evoke that specific concept in the mind of reader or listener. It was appropriate and inevitable that I should select as this label the word bejel which the Arab villagers themselves use to differentiate their childhood syphilis from the "syphilis of the foreigner" (franghi). None of my writings give ground for inference that bejel is being introduced as the name of a separate disease; but in justifying my inclusion of the word bejel in medical nomenclature, I might have made plainer that I was not using nomenclature in the technical taxonomic sense. I believe that bejel is caused by infection with *T. pallidum*, and is therefore a type of syphilis.

Now if the word bejel is a *label*, it has no longer any geographical moorings and can be legitimately used in the sense of a label anywhere this type of syphilis is found; and it can be used in medical thought and literature as a useful term to describe a certain clinical entity. I cannot, therefore, share any apprehension that it can be confused with the "bagl" of the Sudanese which, if it should appear in medical literature, would properly be referred to as gonorrhoea.

Dr. RICHARDS has laid us in his debt for the information he gives about the word bejel. The meaning of "ulcers" would seem more suitable to syphilitic than to gonorrhoeal conditions.

As I have not met gonorrhoea among the semi-nomad Bedouin Arabs, I have not had occasion to learn whether they have a colloquial word of their own for gonorrhoea. I suspect not, and rather imagine they would give it the generic name for a "discharge," *nizl* or *nasool*, or the word used for gonorrhoea in the town of Deir-ez-Zor and in the other parts of Syria and the Lebanon, namely, *ta'aqibah*,

(5) In 1931, 49·8 per cent. of all male deaths and 63·6 per cent. of all female deaths occurred in the first quinquennium of life.

(6) A larger proportion of deaths occurs in the five months, May to September, than at other times of the year.

REFERENCES.

- FAN, P. L. (1933). *Chin. med. J.*, 47, 652-661.
HAMMOND, J. & HSÜ, K. L. (1927). *Ibid.*, 41, 1006-1010.
HSU, K. L. & CHU, F. T. (1930). *Nat. med. J. China*, 16, 744-755.
LENNOX, W. G. (1919). *China med. J.*, 33, 325-345.
UTTLEY, K. H. Studies in tuberculosis in Hongkong. *J. Hyg.* (In the press.)

BEJEL.

TRANSACTIONS of the Royal Society of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene.

RICHARDS' interesting letter on bejel, which you published in the *Transactions*, and a carbon copy of which Dr. RICHARDS kindly addressed to me, are of great importance. Perhaps I may be permitted to reply to one or two points which have arisen.

The word 'bejel,' my advocacy of its use grew out of a realisation that syphilis would never be clearly seen as a clinical entity until it had been labelled.

It occurred to me that a clear distinction had to be made between venereally transmitted syphilis and the acquired syphilis of childhood. As long as the word *bejel* was used for *both*, even with qualifying adjectives, there would be no clear medical thought. What I wanted was a term which would gather up the whole intricate picture of non-venereal syphilis, all the descriptive adjectives which had been applied to it—a single word which would evoke that specific concept in the mind of reader or listener. It was inevitable that I should select as this label the word *bejel* which the villagers themselves use to differentiate their childhood syphilis from the syphilis of the foreigner " (franghi). None of my writings give ground for the impression that *bejel* is being introduced as the name of a separate disease ; but my inclusion of the word *bejel* in medical nomenclature, I think, is made plainer that I was not using nomenclature in the technical sense. I believe that *bejel* is caused by infection with *T. pallidum*, a type of syphilis.

The word *bejel* is a *label*, it has no longer any geographical moorings. It is not primarily used in the sense of a label anywhere this type of syphilis is found. It can be used in medical thought and literature as a useful term for a certain clinical entity. I cannot, therefore, share any apprehension that it will be confused with the " *bagl* " of the Sudanese which, if it should appear in medical literature, would properly be referred to as gonorrhoea. Dr. RICHARDS has laid us in his debt for the information he gives about the true meaning of " *ulcers* " would seem more suitable to syphilitic conditions.

When I have not met gonorrhoea among the semi-nomad Bedouin Arabs, I have endeavoured to learn whether they have a colloquial word of their own for it. I suspect not, and rather imagine they would give it the generic name " *nisl* or *nasool*, or the word used for gonorrhoea in the town of Aleppo, and in the other parts of Syria and the Lebanon, namely, *ta'aqibah*,

he says, it was the best that could be done in the circumstances—but it was done 25 years ago.

For the settlement of the question of microfilarial periodicity in this infection Dr. MANSON-BAHR feels that two things are needed—many more detailed observations, and the discovery of a suitable experimental animal. As to the second, the well-known reluctance of parasitic helminths to lead fully normal lives in more than one host species, or at most in a few of them, may well mean that insistence on this second need will put off the settlement of this important practical point for long, perhaps for ever; this cannot be Dr. MANSON-BAHR's wish. It becomes necessary, then, to concentrate on the need for many more detailed examinations, and it is reassuring to feel that here we are in complete agreement. What follows is an account of my own share in trying to get this done. Professor O'CONNOR has left me by Will his microscope slides, and if all those in his laboratory in New York at the time of his death were his to give, the number at my disposal will be great; and his letters to me during the past 7 years show that they concern many persons. I propose to set out a typical demonstration of these slides at this Society's Laboratory Meeting next March, so that they may come under the observation of many. Further, I propose, so far as the material at my disposal goes, to distribute similar sets of these (perhaps a dozen sets in all, apart from those which will be needed for the United States) to workers and teaching centres concerned with tropical medicine in different countries. My reasonable mental reservation in parting with this valuable material (so making it available for more leisurely examination by others) is that it shall go where it will in my view be used with open mind to further the spread of knowledge for its own sake, and that it shall in this way furnish a deserved tribute to the memory of the fine and indefatigable worker by whom they have been entrusted to me. Again, I have interested the heads of two Schools of Tropical Medicine within the Empire and have thus, I am satisfied, insured that O'CONNOR's great work shall be repeated. All this I had done before, in some cases months before, Dr. MANSON-BAHR's letter was written, in order to make it as certain as I may that many more detailed observations shall be made on this matter. With the great opportunities open to him through his position at the London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine, no doubt Dr. MANSON-BAHR has, necessarily on rather different lines, done as much as I have to insure that there shall be made that adequate and essential examination of what he regards as the cornerstone of tropical medicine. I again deprecate the mixing of helminthology and poetic imagery, but if his cornerstone simile is a good one, and the whole structure of tropical medicine accordingly imperilled by a doubt about the soundness of views on the cause of microfilarial periodicity, Dr. MANSON-BAHR will, of course, increase to the utmost such efforts as he may now be making to put this matter to the test.

I am, etc.,

CLAYTON LANE.

TRANSACTIONS
OF THE
ROYAL SOCIETY OF TROPICAL MEDICINE
AND HYGIENE.

VOL. XXXI. No. 5. MARCH, 1938.

Proceedings of an Ordinary Meeting of the Society, held at Manson House,
26, Portland Place, London, W.1, at 8.15 p.m., on
Thursday, 20th January, 1938.

Lt.-Col. S. P. JAMES, C.M.G., M.D., F.R.S., I.M.S. (ret.), *President*,
in the Chair.

PAPERS.

- (1) THE TREATMENT OF ACUTE FULMINATING CARDIAC
BERIBERI (SHÖSHIN) - - - - By R. BRUNEL HAWES
- (2) THE PHYSIOLOGY AND BIOCHEMISTRY OF VITAMIN B₁
By R. A. PETERS
- (3) BIOCHEMICAL CHANGES, ESPECIALLY OF PYRUVIC ACID,
IN RELATION TO SOME CLINICAL FEATURES OF
BERIBERI - - - - - By B. S. PLATT

THE TREATMENT OF ACUTE FULMINATING CARDIAC BERIBERI (SHÖSHIN).

BY

R. BRUNEL HAWES, M.B., F.R.C.P.

Professor of Medicine, King Edward VII College of Medicine, Singapore.

The knowledge of the vitamins and other food factors has advanced so rapidly of recent years, and has opened up such enormous possibilities of treating and preventing diseased states, that it becomes of the utmost importance to describe and define as accurately as possible the gross manifestations of pure deficiencies and the manner of their reaction to specific treatment before profitable progress can be made with minor maladies.

I must therefore first describe as closely as possible what I wish to speak about tonight.

I intend to refer only to the acute fulminating dying beriberi or shöshin. The type of patient that comes for treatment desperately breathless, restless, throwing himself about in bed, groaning with pain in the epigastrium, tries to sit up, tries to lie down flat, on his right side, then on his left side, finding no ease in any position, vomits, demands water, vomits again. Often pulseless with engorged veins, particularly in the neck, and within a few minutes to 6 hours falls back and dies, intensely dyspnoeic to the end.

The heart is greatly enlarged, particularly to the right; this enlargement of the right auricle and ventricle comes on very quickly and is easily demonstrable by percussion.

The pulse rate rises to perhaps only 120 to 130, never so rapid as in many acute toxic conditions, the systolic pressure often remains normal and only drops in the very late stages; the diastolic pressure, however, always drops with the onset of severe symptoms, and in dying patients pressure frequently cannot be determined as pistol-shot sounds are audible in the uncompressed arteries. These sounds and the presence of capillary pulsation give some resemblance to aortic regurgitation although no other resemblance to this condition is present.

Just before death the systolic pressure drops also, and the veins (except the veins in the neck) collapse, so that in some of our cases no record of blood pressure could be made of the collapsed pulseless patient.

I am speaking then, *not* about the mild case or severe case or the nervous case, but about the dying case.

In 1928 Professor JANSEN sent me ten phials of the crystals of vitamin B₁ that he had isolated and made up for injection. I tried these on dying patients with dramatic results, the same patients in a few hours showing a complete

clinical recovery: in others there was a temporary amelioration of symptoms although they subsequently died.

I wrote congratulating Professor JANSEN, giving him my results and asking for further supplies. He replied, saying that Dr. AALSMEER, of Soerabaia, had observed temporary flushing and dizziness with the injections, and therefore he had purified his extract further and sent me a supply of the purified product. With these I had no results at all; they did not seem to have the slightest effect.

On writing again suggesting that something in the purification had destroyed the activity, Dr. DONATH promised to prepare ampoules of pure crystalline vitamin in weighed amounts. Unfortunately, Dr. DONATH became ill and had to return to Holland and our collaboration ceased as the further products had no apparent effect in dying patients.

It was suspected, as is now well known, that the reaction was quantitative. Professor ROSEDALE prepared for me enormous quantities of a concentrated extract, which I gave by the mouth or rather forced into the stomach of these severe cases—again with no result. Not realizing that to obtain any result large doses must be given by injection, we endeavoured to discover what was missing in the extract; for, having seen the initial results, I refused to believe what has so often been postulated, namely, that incurable damage had occurred in these cases.

MOURIQUAND divided the disease into three stages: Imperceptible, incomplete fastigium and incurable fastigium, and it was the last that I hoped to prove did not exist in the human, any more than in the laboratory animal. Eventually the advent of the synthetic products of WILLIAMS so lessened the cost that I was able to afford large doses in all our cases. Clinically, after the injection of an adequate amount, in a few minutes the moribund patient becomes less restless, and often drowsy, as if the great discomfort was now disappearing and exhaustion taking its place. Yet not for an hour or more is any effect noticed in the pulse rate or on the systolic or diastolic pressure. In fact, in a few cases, the patient states that he now feels quite comfortable and is no longer breathless, yet the pulse rate and blood pressure remain unaltered and do not show any change for many hours.

If insufficient vitamin has been given, shortly after a temporary amelioration of symptoms, there is a return of dyspnoea or a sudden collapse and death. On the other hand, however, if sufficient has been given, after the patient has recovered from his exhaustion, he states that he feels quite well again and in a few days is able to leave hospital.

In many cases the recovery is extremely dramatic and I well remember my shock when first using JANSEN and DONATH's crystals, on seeing, when returning to a ward in the afternoon that a dying man whom I had injected with them in the morning had waddled away out of his bed the whole length of the ward to get a drink of tea.

The dosage necessary seems to vary from case to case: Table I illustrates the enormous amount sometimes needed.

TABLE I.
RESPONSE OF VASOMOTOR SYSTEM TO B₁.

Case No.	Duration of Dyspnoea.	Dosage.	Blood Pressure and Pulse Rate.							Blood Urea.		Diuresis in 7 days.	
			Before.	1 hour after.	2 hours after.	4 hours after.	24 hours after.	48 hours after.	7 days after.	Before.	2 days after.		
B.													
B.4	4 days	1,600 p.u.	124/28 100	122/28 158	118/30 152	118/32 146	114/40 120			Mg. % 50	50	Intake	Output
B.6	5 "	1,600 p.u. 800 p.u. 12 hours later 800 p.u. 24 hours later	95/45 88	86/40 82	84/40 80	90/50 92	108/80	120/90 74	135/100	146	132	Intake	Output
R.													339 ozs. 553½ "
R.17	4 "	1,500 i.u. 1,000 i.u. 1,000 i.u. 2,000 i.u. 1,000 i.u. 11 hours after	70/35 130	70/35 110	70/45 136	70/46 146	118/82 106	120/94 78	110/90 84	50	77	Intake	Output
R.24												224 "	255 "
												Intake	Output
												220 "	263 "
S.B.												In 4 days	
S.B.1	3 "	1,600 p.u. 800 p.u. 1,500 i.u. (Java)	65/40 122	60/40 114	80/40 116	80/40 110	70/57	116/90		77	95	Intake	Output
												171 ozs. 14 grammes	

Notes on Table.—Though as yet there is no final agreement on exact relationship, approximately:

1 mg. B₁ crystal = 250 — 300 international units (i.u.) = 150 pigeon units (p.u.)

B = Betaxin; R = Roche; S.B. = Synthetic Betaxin; J = Java; G = Geneeskundig Laboratorium.

Betaxin.

B.4. This patient died within 48 hours of injection. He seemed to improve, became less dyspnoic and cyanosed, pulse rate down from 150 to 120 but suddenly collapsed and died. A type of death from insufficient dosage.

B.6. Very severe case, dyspnoic and cyanosed, vomiting, restless, pulse feeble but heart fairly slow with extrasystoles, pretibial oedema; 6 hours after very restless, no improvement in heart and blood pressure; 12 hours after quiet but still no improvement in blood pressure and pulse, still vomiting; 24 hours, considerable improvement marked after third injection.

Roche.

R.17. No improvement after 1,500 units. Another injection 1,000 units 6 hours after. Condition: blood pressure and pulse improved. Remarkable recovery due to second injection; 8 days later another 1,000 units given to accelerate progress; 5 days later able to walk with support. Discharged after 21 days in hospital. B.P. maintained.

R.24. Very severe case with typical signs; restlessness marked, B.P. could not be recorded, unable to obtain blood from veins for examination. The injection had to be given into the jugular vein; 8 hours later considerable improvement, pulse could now be felt.

Synthetic Betaxin.

S.B.1. Severe case, rapid weak pulse, dyspnoic; 9 hours after still very distressed, pulse rate slower but blood pressure same, another 800 p.u. given; 21 hours after not so distressed, but blood pressure and pulse rate same; 24 hours later condition worse, body cold, pulse very feeble; Java 1,500 i.u. given; 2 hours after improvement noticed, but all the time urine output was very scanty, this did not improve with diuretics and cupping; 4 days after admission drowsy, some increase in blood urea—18 mg. \times 100 c.c., blood pressure still high. Patient died. Postmortem: only feature very congested kidneys.

TABLE II.
RESPONSE OF VASOMOTOR SYSTEM TO B₁.

Case No.	Duration of Dyspnoea.	Dosage.	Blood Pressure and Pulse Rate.								Blood Urea.	
			Before.		1 hour after.	2 hours after.	4 hours after.	24 hours after.	48 hours after.	7 days after.	Before.	2 days after.
J.											Mg. %	Mg. %
J.2	3 days	1,500 i.u.	130/- 116		130/- 108	122/40 104	126/46 98	122/106 80	130/106 64	130/90 72		
J.3	2 "	1,500 i.u.	118/- 132		80/- 126	80/- 112	90/60 112	130/110 80	130/95 78	180/114 74		25
R.												
R.6	6 "	1,500 i.u.	110/- 126		110/- 124	110/- 122	115/30 110	115/60 100	110/60 98	112/50 80	82	101
R.7	1 day	1,000 i.u.	105/- 126		96/- 124	102/- 120	106/60 120	120/80 100	122/74 84	110/70 72	156	37
R.14	6 hours	1,000 i.u.	110/- 120		105/- 112	105/35 98	110/40 100	100/60 80	104/58 74	108/62 72	35	22
R.19	9 days	1,500 i.u.	130/- 90	136/48 80	140/62 78	154/86 71	180/110	180/120			30	20
R.20	3 "	1,500 i.u.	120/- 124	116/- 122	110/30 118	108/60 112	130/100 78	135/100 76			38	24
R.23	1 day	1,500 i.u.	85/- 88	110/46 100	110/46 104		110/70 74	156/110		135/95	154	
S.B.	3 days	1,600 p.u.	90/20 118	90/20 116	100/50 122	94/60 118	122/102 82	122/102 60			102	131
S.B.5												
R.												
R.24		3,000 i.u.	No pressure	No pressure	No pressure	No pressure	90/75	116/100	112/85			

Java.

J.2. Considerable improvement within 3 hours; drowsiness developed 1 hour after injection; 7 days after able to walk about, gait steady, able to rise from squatting position, sluggish knee jerks. Complication: malaria.

J.3. Typical case. Great clinical improvement in condition within an hour—quiet, less cyanosed, not collapsed, pain in abdomen gone. Although as sometimes occurs the systolic pressure had fallen and the diastolic not yet reappeared, it was not measurable

until after 3 hours; 1 day after injection arterial wall hard and rigid as in hypertension—remained so for 5 days. On discharge 8 days later, reflexes still absent, steady gait, able to rise from squat.

Roche.

R.6. Considerable improvement in 4 hours; B.P. maintained for 2 weeks. Patient absconded after 16 days when he was able to walk fairly well. No reflexes. Complication: malaria.

R.7. Suddenly became dyspnoeic; improved in 4 hours after injection; blood pressure still maintained.

R.14. *Early* case improved rapidly. Complication: malaria.

R.19. *Not* a severe case, oedematous but not very dyspnoeic. Improvement in blood pressure 1 hour after treatment. Patient comfortable, reflexes absent but walked steadily.

R.20. Severe case, improved as usual. Blood pressure maintained.

R.23. Old case of cardiac beriberi and malaria (B.T.), treated with one dose of betaxin 7 months ago with good results. Very severe this time, pulse imperceptible, dyspnoeic. Partial improvement with Roche first injection, 4½ hours later restless again; steady improvement after second injection; but urine scanty and general anasarca, vomiting. Blood urea 154 mg. × 100 c.c. rose to 227 mg. in 11 days, then fell to 26 mg. in 1 month. Urine: albumin +, casts +, diuresis after calcium chloride on the 11th day. Oedema subsided, blood pressure maintained 1 month after. On discharge, urine: albumin casts nil; blood urea normal.

Synthetic Betaxin.

S.B.5. Severe case, improvement in general condition in 3 hours, but blood pressure and pulse rate did not improve till next day.

Hyperpiesia.

A most interesting reaction can be seen here; it is one that occurs in many patients but not all.

After injection of the vitamin the diastolic pressure continues to rise until within 24 hours it is often well over 100 mm. of Hg (R.19, 120) with a corresponding rise in the systolic. At the same time the arteries can be felt gradually from hour to hour becoming more rigid and harder until they feel exactly like the peripheral arteries of essential hypertension.

The heart shows no reaction and does not appear to labour, there is no heaving apex beat nor increased first sound. The rise appears to be solely due to hypertonus of the musculature of the arteries.

This lasts, maybe a week or more, when the diastolic pressure falls to normal limits.

TABLE III.
INFLUENCE OF B₁ ON BLOOD PRESSURE.

	Before.	Dosage.	1 hour.	3 hours.	24 hours.	48 hours.	72 hours.	
Normal case	118/78	1,500 i.u.	118/76	118/74	114/75	120/78	118/78	No ill effect.
Aortic incompetence	135/40	1,000 i.u.	130/40	132/40	135/40	138/40	138/44	No effect.
Thyrotoxic goitre	128/64	1,500 i.u.	130/64	134/64	120/68		114/72	No effect.
Hypertension with cardiac beriberi	200/112	1,500 i.u.		205/115	210/122	210/118		Great improvement. No influence on B.P.
Chronic interstitial nephritis with cardiac beriberi	200/130	1,000 i.u.			186/128	210/120	212/120	Great improvement. No influence on B.P.

It was only natural that I investigated this curious action in other conditions ; firstly to see if there existed any danger in the use of these large doses and secondly if the action could be used in treating other conditions.

A few of our results are given in Table III.

1. *Normal case.* No effect.

2. *Aortic regurgitation.* No hardening of the arteries, decrease of capillary pulsation or alteration of the pulse pressure.

3. *Thyrotoxic goitre.* No effect for good or ill.

All conditions and all diseases can be complicated by cardiac beriberi, and hyperpiesic states are no exception.

In these two cases, which were very dyspnoeic but did not really come into the shōshin group, in other words they probably had 2 days or more of life left, you will notice the diastolic pressure had not yet dropped.

The beneficial results of the injection were immediate and obvious, and you will notice that no effect on the blood pressure is observable, either in the essential or rather dietetic hypertension, or in the case of chronic interstitial nephritis.

The explanation therefore of this phenomenon remains obscure and suggests a secondary factor.

TABLE IV.
DIURESIS FOLLOWING B₁.

Case No.	Duration of Dyspnoea.	Dosage.		Fluid.						
				1st day	2nd day	3rd day	4th day	5th day	6th day	7th day
J.				oz.	oz.	oz.	oz.	oz.	oz.	oz.
J.10	4-5 days	1,500 i.u.	Intake	13	70	49	49	65	51	35
			Output	7	127	69	64	74	104½	82
S.B.										
S.B.1	3 "	1,600 p.u.	Intake	38	43	74	54			
		800 p.u.	Output	1	1	9½	3½			
		1,500 i.u.								
		(Java)								
S.B.5	3 "	1,600 p.u.	Intake	23	53	28	29	30	23	25
			Output	8½	65	78	47½	72	37	26
R.										
R.20	3 "	1,500 i.u.	Intake	60	47	53	44	33	47	41
			Output	17½	29¾	108¾	157	71½	52½	63½
R.23	1 "	1,500 i.u.	Intake	59	62	38	35	27	38	34
		1,000 i.u.	Output	3	5½	10	6½	7	13	

There is a general misconception with regard to beriberi, which is still perpetuated in the name wet beriberi as opposed to dry beriberi.

Gross oedema, *i.e.* subcutaneous oedema, serous effusions or oedema in the lungs, are due to the functional failure of renal secretion consequent on the general vascular derangement and therefore their presence, duration or extent are a measure of so many factors such as the water intake, concomitant disease, loss of fluid from bowels, skin or lungs, etc., that they can bear no direct relationship to the clinical picture of shōshin and are no guide to the severity of the attack.

The swelling that is typical is a colloid interstitial swelling and does *not* cause a pitting oedema, this subcutaneous oedema is secondary and is not present in all cases.

The interstitial swelling occurs in muscle and gland tissues throughout the body, probably in nervous tissue as well, but the great increase in the pressure in the cerebro-spinal fluid may be due to the enormous venous congestion.

This interstitial swelling gives the appearance of enlarged muscles all over the body, particularly noticeable in the leg muscles and the rounded facial appearance due to the swelling of the parotids, while other glands are similarly affected.

In some patients, as shown in Table I, practically no diuresis occurs, in others, in which the kidney has been thrown out of action and subcutaneous oedema is present, diuresis occurs on the second day or later, in other words, well after the patient has made a clinical recovery from his cardiac attacks.

J.10. Diuresis occurred on the second day.

S.B.1. Died.

S.B.5. Diuresis on the second and third days.

R.20. Diuresis on the third day, long after he had apparently recovered.

R.23. Not until the eleventh day.

In oedematous patients where a diuresis cannot be established, death occurs with all the signs of a pseudo-uraemia.

TABLE V.

CHANGES IN BLOOD UREA AFTER B₁.

Case No.	Duration of Dyspnoea.	Dosage.	Blood urea.		Fluid.							
			Before.	2 days after.		1st day	2nd day	3rd day	4th day	5th day	6th day	7th day
S.B.			Mg. %	Mg. %		Oz.	Oz.	Oz.	Oz.	Oz.	Oz.	Oz.
S.B.2		1,600 p.u.	87	35	Intake	16	31	32	28	28	26	23
					Output	8½	18½	30½	60	51	48	40½
B.												
B.5		800 p.u.	71	35								
B.9		800 p.u.	80	42	Intake	37	24	30	23	34	52	38
					Output	19	25	19½	31½	22	52½	65
J.												
J.10	4-5 days	1,500 i.u.	75	45	Intake	13	70	49	49	65	51	35
					Output	7	127	69	64	74	104½	82
J.11		1,500 i.u.	61	115	Intake	8	23	28	30	48	48	28
					Output	19	22	12½	12	13		
R.												
R.9	4 "	1,000 i.u.	84	22	Intake	31	23	34				
					Output	39	85	124				
R.7	1 "	1,000 i.u.	156	37	Intake	52	50	64	54	40		
					Output	33	45	50	26	27		
R.16	7 "	1,000 i.u.	133	42	Intake	64	55	29	38	41	38	42
					Output	37½	46	48	49	32	56	44

*Blood Urea.**Synthetic Betaxin.*

S.B.2. Fairly severe case, usual improvement.

Betaxin.

B.5. Not a severe case—no improvement in foot and wrist drop up to time of discharge 6 weeks later.

B.9. Average case, but response delayed till next day when B.P. rose up and pulse rate came down.

Java.

J.10. Severe case, general improvement in 4 hours, but blood pressure and pulse improved in 12 hours.

J.11. Severe case, developed dyspnoea whilst a patient in ward. Low pulse pressure, improvement noticed in 6 hours, developed diarrhoea with blood and mucus next day (bacillary dysentery)—probable cause of rise in blood urea, which was still high 4 days later, dropped to normal in 2 weeks.

Roche.

R.9. Usual improvement in 4 hours ; 1 month later blood pressure 118/72.

R.16. Same improvement noticed as usual, developed multiple liver abscesses and died. Postmortem : no signs of cardiac beriberi.

The kidney frequently shows a functional insufficiency, giving rise to scanty urine with albumin and casts and high blood urea.

Provided no complicating disease maintains the increased blood urea, this always falls as the volume of urine increases.

J.11 is a case in point as he was a severe case suffering also from bacillary dysentery and the blood urea did not fall to normal for 2 weeks, although the kidneys had started to function on the second day.

R.16. This case was suffering from multiple liver abscesses and eventually died 2 weeks after admission. Postmortem showed no signs of cardiac beriberi.

If the renal function is not re-established the patient soon dies.

TABLE VI.
EFFECT OF B₁ ON BLOOD SEDIMENTATION.

Case No.	Duration of Dyspnoea.	Dosage.	Day.	Total Red.	H. B. %	Colour Index.	Bld. Calcium. Mg. %	Bld. Sedimentation in 1 hour.
G.23	7 days	1,500 i.u.	1st	5,610,000	100	0.89	11.6	3 mm.
			2nd	4,910,000	100	1.02	11.2	3 mm.
			3rd	5,010,000	101	1.01	11.4	3 mm.
G.27	1 month	1,500 i.u.	1st	4,700,000	80	0.85	10.4	5.7 mm.
			2nd	4,750,000	80	0.85	9.9	5 mm.
			3rd	4,010,000	75	0.93		5 mm.
G.29	1 day	1,500 i.u.	1st	4,470,000	80	0.95	11.6	4 mm.
			2nd	4,210,000	85	1.01	11.6	5 mm.
			3rd					
G.30	3 days	1,500 i.u.	1st	3,900,000	75	0.97	10.2	
			2nd	3,740,000	75	1.01	10.2	3 mm.
			3rd	3,730,000	75	1.01	9.8	4 mm.
G.35	1 month	1,500 i.u.	1st	4,240,000	83	0.98	10	3 mm.
			2nd	4,580,000	90	1.00	10.6	6 mm.
			3rd	4,590,000	91	1.01	10.9	7 mm.

I put these figures up as it is frequently stated that a B₁ deficiency leads to anaemia and it was noticed that these patients had on the average as high red cell counts as the average among other patients in the wards. You will see that the red cell count does not fall much on the onset of diuresis. The sedimentation rate was generally lower than normal.

The explanation was suggested that it was due solely to abstraction of fluid from the blood stream ; these figures, however, do not confirm this, but more accurate measurements of blood volume are required. However, they are enough to show the gross error of that common diagnosis of anaemia due to deficiency of B complex. If the expression is used at all it might be (B complex-B₁), which would be slightly less vague.

CONCLUSION.

The main facts that emerge from a study of a pure vitamin B₁ deficiency are :—

1. The reaction is quantitative, the vitamin is non-toxic.
2. The effect of one dose is lasting.
3. It must be given by injection to have any rapid effect.
4. The diagnosis of a pure B₁ deficiency can be confirmed by an injection of an adequate amount of the vitamin and the response to treatment is very rapid. In England this may be important in children in whom I suppose the pure deficiency is most likely to occur.

My thanks are due to the successive directors of the Geneeskundig Laboratorium, Batavia-Centrum, Drs. JANSEN, DONATH, BRUG, VAN VEEN and MERTENS who have so willingly prepared carefully standardized extracts for my use, to Bayer's who have given supplies of their synthetic products and to my assistants Dr. C. E. SMITH and Dr. E. S. MONTEIRO who at all hours have been ready to treat these urgent cases and make careful observations.

THE PHYSIOLOGY AND BIOCHEMISTRY OF VITAMIN B₁.

BY

R. A. PETERS, M.C., M.D., F.R.S.,

Professor of Bio-chemistry, University of Oxford.

A brief synopsis of some of the main features of vitamin B₁ deficiency in animals seems needed by way of introduction. The first symptom to be noticed is lack of appetite, followed naturally by loss of weight unless the animals are fed artificially. When the weight has fallen to some 65 per cent. of the maximum possible, terminal symptoms appear; these are decreased sugar tolerance, and nervous symptoms, in pigeons opisthotonus; changes in temperature also occur; there is usually lack of vision as also bradycardia; excitement and sudden noises aggravate the symptoms. Sometimes oedema occurs. Cure takes place very rapidly upon giving the vitamin; too quickly for gross histological change to have occurred. With larger amounts of food the symptoms are induced more

I put these figures up as it is frequently stated that a B₁ deficiency leads to anaemia and it was noticed that these patients had on the average as high red cell counts as the average among other patients in the wards. You will see that the red cell count does not fall much on the onset of diuresis. The sedimentation rate was generally lower than normal.

The explanation was suggested that it was due solely to abstraction of fluid from the blood stream; these figures, however, do not confirm this, but more accurate measurements of blood volume are required. However, they are enough to show the gross error of that common diagnosis of anaemia due to deficiency of B complex. If the expression is used at all it might be (B complex - B₁), which would be slightly less vague.

CONCLUSION.

The main facts that emerge from a study of a pure vitamin B₁ deficiency are :—

1. The reaction is quantitative, the vitamin is non-toxic.
2. The effect of one dose is lasting.
3. It must be given by injection to have any rapid effect.
4. The diagnosis of a pure B₁ deficiency can be confirmed by an injection of an adequate amount of the vitamin and the response to treatment is very rapid. In England this may be important in children in whom I suppose the pure deficiency is most likely to occur.

My thanks are due to the successive directors of the Geneeskundig Laboratorium, Batavia-Centrum, Drs. JANSEN, DONATH, BRUG, VAN VEEN and MERTENS who have so willingly prepared carefully standardized extracts for my use, to Bayer's who have given supplies of their synthetic products and to my assistants Dr. C. E. SMITH and Dr. E. S. MONTEIRO who at all hours have been ready to treat these urgent cases and make careful observations.

TRANSACTIONS OF THE ROYAL SOCIETY OF
TROPICAL MEDICINE AND HYGIENE.
Vol. XXXI. No. 5. March, 1938.

THE PHYSIOLOGY AND BIOCHEMISTRY OF VITAMIN B₁.

BY

R. A. PETERS, M.C., M.D., F.R.S.,
Professor of Bio-chemistry, University of Oxford.

A brief synopsis of some of the main features of vitamin B₁ deficiency in animals seems needed by way of introduction. The first symptom to be noticed is lack of appetite, followed naturally by loss of weight unless the animals are fed artificially. When the weight has fallen to some 65 per cent. of the maximum possible, terminal symptoms appear; these are decreased sugar tolerance, and nervous symptoms, in pigeons opisthotonus; changes in temperature also occur; there is usually lack of vision as also bradycardia; excitement and sudden noises aggravate the symptoms. Sometimes oedema occurs. Cure takes place very rapidly upon giving the vitamin; too quickly for gross histological change to have occurred. With larger amounts of food the symptoms are induced more

rapidly. It will be realized that symptoms of vitamin B₁ deficiency are mixed up with those of general inanition, but it is possible now to separate the two. The problem has been to find out which symptoms are primary, so that we may be able to view the question in proper perspective.

Some experimental facts established recently in the Oxford Department of Biochemistry about vitamin B₁ seem to be of so much interest that they should be widely known by those whose work brings them into contact with beriberi or vitamin B₁ deficiency. Briefly, it is now clear that vitamin B₁ is intimately concerned with the degradation by oxidation or otherwise of the substance pyruvic acid. The experimental work provides a proof from another angle that this acid is an important intermediary of carbohydrate metabolism; this possibility had been suspected from other indirect evidence based upon experiments performed elsewhere with tissues *in vitro* under rather artificial conditions of hydrogen ion concentration and by the use of tissue poisons. In absence of the vitamin there is an accumulation of pyruvic acid owing to the stoppage of metabolism at this stage. This induces a biochemical lesion in some tissue cells, and therefore their activity is inhibited. These facts are clear: they provide probably an explanation of some of the other more obscure symptoms found in the vitamin B₁ deficient animal.

HISTORICAL.

It has long been suggested that vitamin B₁ was concerned with carbohydrate metabolism. We may trace this idea at least from 1912 onwards, especially in the writings of FUNK (1914, 1922) and of BRADDON and COOPER (1914), and later in that of the French worker RANDOIN (1923). The evidence supporting this view was at best indirect; large amounts of food were shown to cause the appearance of avitaminous symptoms more quickly, but this is generally summed up in the statement that finally found expression in COWGILL's formula:

$$\frac{\text{Vitamin B}_1}{\text{Calories}} = k \times \text{weight}.$$

A close examination of the earlier work, which purported to support the idea that there are changes in intermediary carbohydrate metabolism in vitamin B₁ deficiency carried no conviction except in two respects, *viz.*, the finding that blood lactic acid was raised (first noticed by COLLAZO and MORELLI, 1925) and that there was decreased tolerance to sugar in the terminal stages. Even the increased blood lactic acid was not found to be a constant phenomenon. Similarly, the view that changes in tissue oxidation were present and responsible for the symptoms received no universal support; the evidence for this is to be traced back to DUTCHER (1918) and FINDLAY (1921), and it was energetically investigated by ABDERHALDEN and WERTHEIMER (1920) and HESS (1921). The work however carried no real conviction, and it is now clear that several statements were not correct. Also there was not complete control of

gated by dyes such as methylene blue. The more recent work has
because of the realization that the brain tissue held the key to this

and been noticed by HESS in 1921 that pigeons suffering from cyanide
tended to have symptoms similar to those of the so-called polyneuritic*
in pigeon. I found in 1927 that an overdose of insulin in pigeons also



Opisthotonus symptoms in pigeon produced by insulin.

a similar condition, a picture of this I reproduce here. (It may be
incidentally that birds tolerate enormous doses of insulin.) This led
KINNERSLEY and myself (KINNERSLEY and PETERS, 1929, 1930) to investigate
mediary carbohydrate metabolism in these brains. Brain tissue *in vitro*
as do other cells, to induce a rapid glycolysis; *i.e.* the degradation of
—> lactic acid ($\text{CH}_3\text{CHOHCOOH}$). We found this effect to be
in the brain from the avitaminous animal. On the other hand,
abnormality in lactic acid metabolism. The brain tissue from pigeons

consider this term a bad one, now that there is so much evidence that the symptoms
in origin.

suffering from opisthotonus was found to contain larger amounts of lactic acid than the normal. We found, as MCGINTY and GESELL (1925) had done, that it was necessary to work very quickly to show any of these effects. Brains had to be removed with the guillotine, and plunged rapidly into liquid air. The upshot was to confirm the idea that the seat of the trouble lay in the brain, and to suggest to us that the first phases were to be found in the lower parts of the brain. Curiously enough we have never been able to convict the cerebellum of abnormality!

The next step was to investigate again, as others had done, the oxygen uptake in suitable apparatus *in vitro* in buffered Ringer's solutions; but we made the change that after mashing the brain tissue, the samples were suspended in Ringer-phosphate (pH 7.3) with additions of lactic acid or glucose. Without the latter substances, Dr. GAVRILESCU and I could find nothing certainly abnormal in the uptake (GAVRILESCU and PETERS, 1931); but when these were added, there was noticeable a definitely smaller respiration than the normal. Further, the most interesting point of all was that vitamin B₁ itself in very small amount 0.001 mg./3 c.c. restored the respiration of the brain mash almost

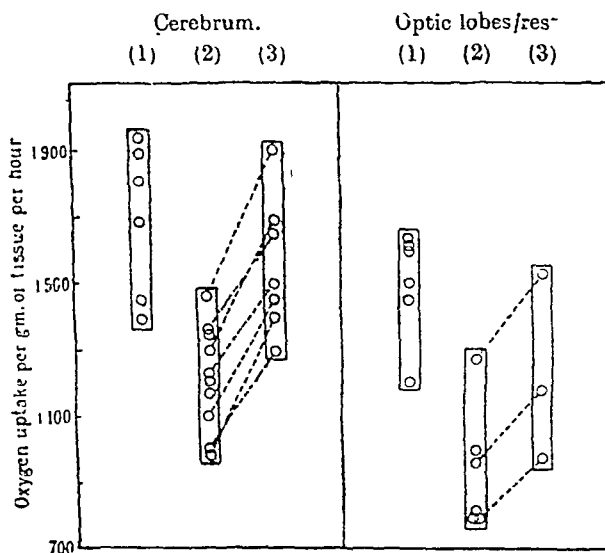


FIG. 1.—Oxygen uptake mm³/g/hr. in presence of 0.037 M lactate, for (1) normal, (2) avitaminous and (3) avitaminous brain with addition of vitamin B₁ concentrates. Pigeon, From *Proc. R. Soc.* (1932). Ser. B, 110, 439.

to normal again. Diagram 1 is reproduced from a paper by GAVRILESCU, MEIKLEJOHN, PASSMORE and PETERS (1932). It shows very clearly that the brain of the pigeon deficient in vitamin B₁ has an abnormal lesion in the enzyme systems concerned with oxidation. Further work by MEIKLEJOHN (1933) indicated that the oxidation effects were not directly upon either glucose or lactic acid because,

though vitamin B₁ restored respiration when lactate was present in the medium, there was no increased disappearance of the lactate. Hence some further intermediate of oxidation was involved. Search has proved that this was pyruvic acid (CH₃.CO.COOH), the natural step for oxidation of lactate. H. M. SINCLAIR and the author were led to look for this in the bottles in which the pigeon's brain had been respiring (PETERS and SINCLAIR, 1933).^{*} There is a convenient reaction of SIMON and PIAUX for pyruvic acid, resembling in technique that for the Rothera; one saturates a small amount of the solution (1 to 2 c.c.) with ammonium sulphate until a layer of crystals remains at the bottom of the test tube; upon this is placed a diffused layer of sodium nitroprusside crystals, and then an equal volume of concentrated ammonia is cautiously poured on top. Pyruvic acid is detected by the presence of a slowly developing blue green colour. We know now from the work of JOHNSON and EDWARDS (1937), that this reaction is given by urine of men shortly after running to exhaustion.[†] We found that it was present in the bottles containing no vitamin, but absent when vitamin had been present. The question was studied further by R. H. S. THOMPSON and the author quantitatively (PETERS and THOMPSON, 1934). The substance giving the blue green reaction was identified as pyruvic acid chemically (formation of the 2:6 dinitrophenylhydrazone), and quantitative work gave results of the kind given in the accompanying table.

TABLE.

DISAPPEARANCE OF PYRUVATE AND INCREASE IN O₂ UPTAKE BY THE ACTION OF VITAMIN B₁ WITH AVITAMINOUS PIGEON BRAIN RESPIRING *in vitro*. SUBSTRATE LACTATE. AVERAGE OF SIX EXPERIMENTS. FIGURES MG./GM. PYRUVATE PRESENT AT END OF 2-HOUR PERIOD OF RESPIRATION.

L.	L + V.	Difference.	Difference O ₂ uptake mm. ³ /gm.
3.40	1.66	1.73	+ 1,102

Period of respiration = 2 hours. L = lactate. L + V = lactate + vitamin.
(From results of PETERS and THOMPSON, 1934.)

^{*} We were led to search for this acid because of the prevailing interest at the time of the EMBDEN-MEYERHOF scheme of muscle fermentation. According to this, sugar is broken down by a complicated series of phosphorylations in which pyruvic acid plays an important rôle.

[†] P. I. SÜNER and FARRAN had already found it in the urine of diabetics.

suffering from opisthotonus was found to contain larger amounts of lactic acid than the normal. We found, as MCGINTY and GESELL (1925) had done, that it was necessary to work very quickly to show any of these effects. Brains had to be removed with the guillotine, and plunged rapidly into liquid air. The upshot was to confirm the idea that the seat of the trouble lay in the brain, and to suggest to us that the first phases were to be found in the lower parts of the brain. Curiously enough we have never been able to convict the cerebellum of abnormality!

The next step was to investigate again, as others had done, the oxygen uptake in suitable apparatus *in vitro* in buffered Ringer's solutions; but we made the change that after mashing the brain tissue, the samples were suspended in Ringer-phosphate (pH 7.3) with additions of lactic acid or glucose. Without the latter substances, Dr. GAVRILESCU and I could find nothing certainly abnormal in the uptake (GAVRILESCU and PETERS, 1931); but when these were added, there was noticeable a definitely smaller respiration than the normal. Further, the most interesting point of all was that vitamin B₁ itself in very small amount 0.001 mg./3 c.c. restored the respiration of the brain mash almost

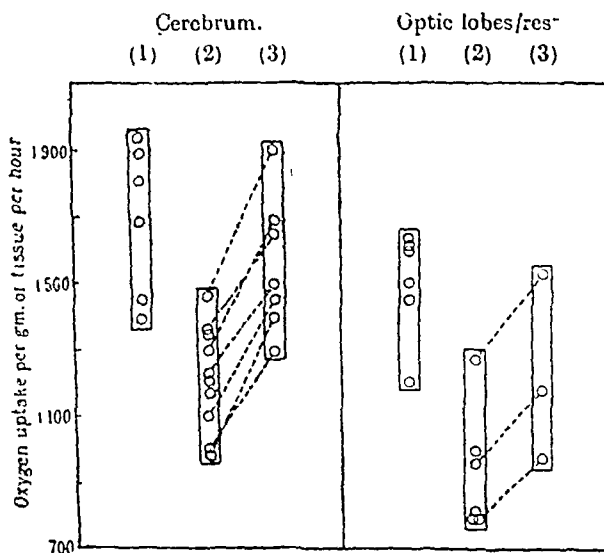


FIG. 1.—Oxygen uptake mm³/g/hr. in presence of 0.037 M lactate, for (1) normal. (2) avitaminous and (3) avitaminous brain with addition of vitamin B₁ concentrates. Pigeon, From *Proc. R. Soc.* (1932). Ser. B, 110, 439.

to normal again. Diagram 1 is reproduced from a paper by GAVRILESCU, MEIKLEJOHN, PASSMORE and PETERS (1932). It shows very clearly that the brain of the pigeon deficient in vitamin B₁ has an abnormal lesion in the enzyme systems concerned with oxidation. Further work by MEIKLEJOHN (1933) indicated that the oxidation effects were not directly upon either glucose or lactic acid because,

though vitamin B₁ restored respiration when lactate was present in the medium, there was no increased disappearance of the lactate. Hence some further intermediate of oxidation was involved. Search has proved that this was pyruvic acid (CH₃.CO.COOH), the natural step for oxidation of lactate. H. M. SINCLAIR and the author were led to look for this in the bottles in which the pigeon's brain had been respiring (PETERS and SINCLAIR, 1933).^{*} There is a convenient reaction of SIMON and PIAUX for pyruvic acid, resembling in technique that for the Rothera; one saturates a small amount of the solution (1 to 2 c.c.) with ammonium sulphate until a layer of crystals remains at the bottom of the test tube; upon this is placed a diffused layer of sodium nitroprusside crystals, and then an equal volume of concentrated ammonia is cautiously poured on top. Pyruvic acid is detected by the presence of a slowly developing blue green colour. We know now from the work of JOHNSON and EDWARDS (1937), that this reaction is given by urine of men shortly after running to exhaustion.[†] We found that it was present in the bottles containing no vitamin, but absent when vitamin had been present. The question was studied further by R. H. S. THOMPSON and the author quantitatively (PETERS and THOMPSON, 1934). The substance giving the blue green reaction was identified as pyruvic acid chemically (formation of the 2:6 dinitrophenylhydrazone), and quantitative work gave results of the kind given in the accompanying table.

TABLE.

DISAPPEARANCE OF PYRUVATE AND INCREASE IN O₂ UPTAKE BY THE ACTION OF VITAMIN B₁ WITH AVITAMINOUS PIGEON BRAIN RESPIRING *in vitro*. SUBSTRATE LACTATE. AVERAGE OF SIX EXPERIMENTS. FIGURES MG/GM. PYRUVATE PRESENT AT END OF 2-HOUR PERIOD OF RESPIRATION.

L.	L + V.	Difference.	Difference O ₂ uptake mm/ ³ gm.
3.40	1.66	1.73	+ 1,102

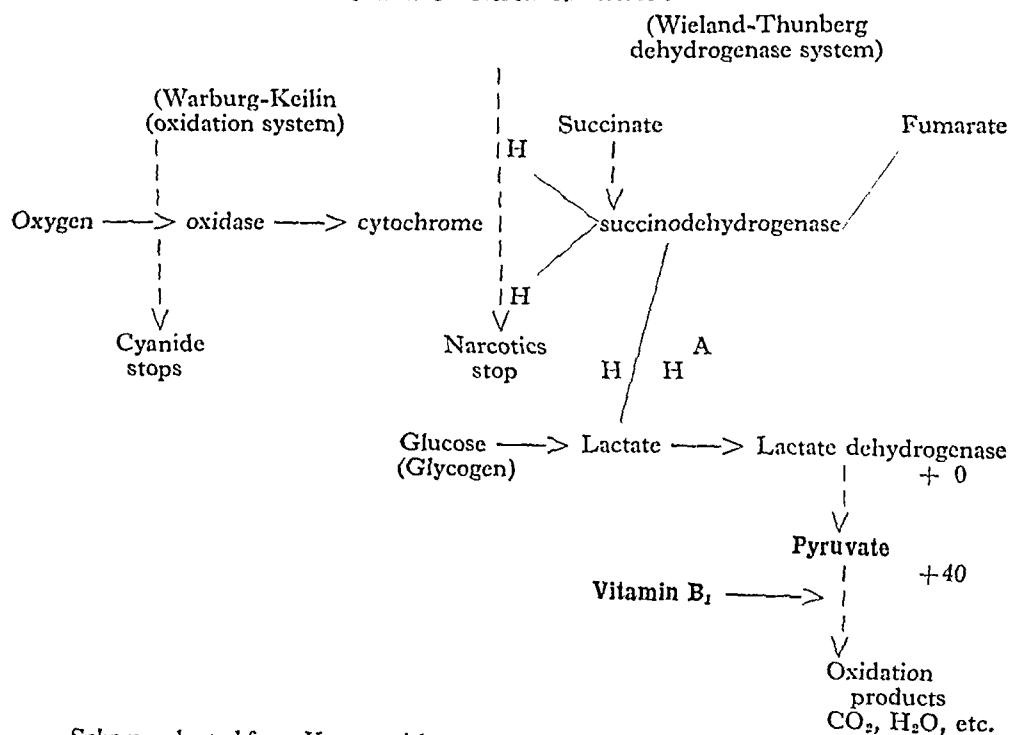
Period of respiration = 2 hours. L = lactate. L + V = lactate + vitamin.
(From results of PETERS and THOMPSON, 1934.)

^{*} We were led to search for this acid because of the prevailing interest at the time of the EMBDEN-MEYERHOF scheme of muscle fermentation. According to this, sugar is broken down by a complicated series of phosphorylations in which pyruvic acid plays an important rôle.

[†] PI SÜNER and FARRAN had already found it in the urine of diabetics.

Hence there was now proof that the appearance and disappearance of the organic substance pyruvic acid was regulated by the amount of vitamin present. I have purposely left out one essential part of the proof until the present time for clarity. It might be said that there was a general failure of tissue oxidation in the avitaminous brain rather than a specific one. That this is not so was first shown clearly by the use of succinate ($\text{COOH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COOH}$). This is a four-carbon atom compound present in muscle and other tissues which is actively metabolized by tissue *in vitro*; but its oxidation is quite normal even in the abnormal brain, and there is no influence of vitamin upon it. So it is with many other possible substances tried. We may now embody this and certain other results in the following diagrams. Fig. 2 is adapted from KEILIN and WARBURG; it shows the place of this oxidation in the scheme of tissue respiration by which oxygen is activated by the Warburg-Keilin oxidation system to be handed on to the hydrogen activated by the dehydrogenases. There is indicated specifically in black type what happens with lactic and pyruvic acid in relation to the point of action of the vitamin.

FIGURE 2.
SCHEME OF TISSUE OXIDATION.



Scheme adapted from KEILIN with modern additions from work of GREEN and colleagues (at Cambridge). Hydrogen is mobilized by the specific dehydrogenase systems, ultimately to reduce oxidized cytochrome. Transfer of H at A is speculative; it is possible that pyruvate is first formed from glucose and then reduced to lactate.

Our next enquiry is how far this condition is really specific to the avitaminous state, and what organs of the body show it. The diagram from MEIKLEJOHN, PASSMORE and PETERS (1932) shows that as the bird becomes cured by

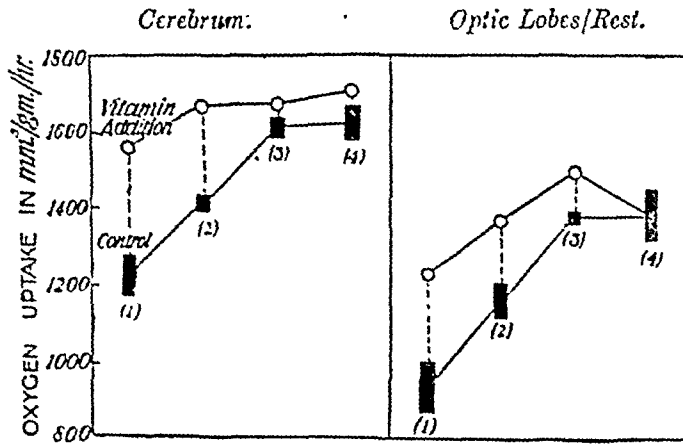


FIG. 2.—1, Avitaminous ; 2, Just out of symptoms ; 3, Recovered well ; 4, Normal. The black rectangles represents the standard deviation of the mean of the observations. From *Proc. R. Soc. (1932). Ser. B., 3, 394.*

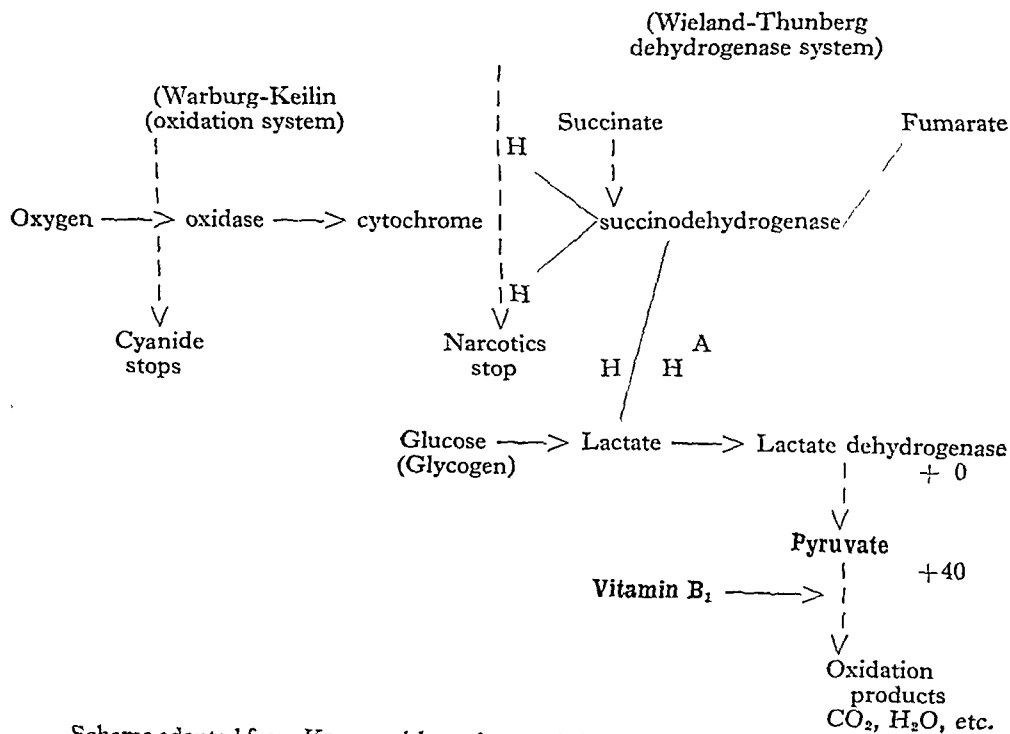
vitamin B₁ (and this is a rapid process), so abnormality of the respiration decreases together with the corresponding effects of vitamin upon the system. With normal brain, the action of vitamin is only slight if at all present. This contrasts with the large effects observed in the avitaminous brain, and forms a very important link between the brain enzyme systems which we found *in vitro* and the condition of the brain in life.

In the case of other parts of the avitaminous bird, THOMPSON (1934) was only able to find a cataturulin effect with the kidney. This is interesting in relation to the latent oedema in these birds, which can be developed by giving them salt. An effect has been reported by SHERMAN and ELVEHJEM (1936a) for the heart, but this is not so clear. They have also confirmed these results for chicken brain (1936b), and rather similar effects have been obtained by O'BRIEN and PETERS (1935) for the rat brain. The facts seem therefore to be general.

We now come to the important point discovered by THOMPSON and investigated by himself and JOHNSON (THOMPSON and JOHNSON, 1935), namely that pyruvic acid is abnormally present in the blood of the avitaminous pigeon and rat up to 10 mg. per 100 c.c. blood ; it disappears upon cure of the animal. This can be estimated by use of the property of pyruvic acid to bind bisulphite, a property which it shares with other keto- and aldehyde substances. In the case of the animal, the increase in B.B.S. value has been found by JOHNSON to be mainly due to pyruvic acid. (In man, PLATT has stated that this is not so.) Hence, we have been led to find a biochemical abnormality in the blood by a

Hence there was now proof that the appearance and disappearance of the organic substance pyruvic acid was regulated by the amount of vitamin present. I have purposely left out one essential part of the proof until the present time for clarity. It might be said that there was a general failure of tissue oxidation in the avitaminous brain rather than a specific one. That this is not so was first shown clearly by the use of succinate ($\text{COOH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COOH}$). This is a four-carbon atom compound present in muscle and other tissues which is actively metabolized by tissue *in vitro*; but its oxidation is quite normal even in the abnormal brain, and there is no influence of vitamin upon it. So it is with many other possible substances tried. We may now embody this and certain other results in the following diagrams. Fig. 2 is adapted from KEILIN and WARBURG; it shows the place of this oxidation in the scheme of tissue respiration by which oxygen is activated by the Warburg-Keilin oxidation system to be handed on to the hydrogen activated by the dehydrogenases. There is indicated specifically in black type what happens with lactic and pyruvic acid in relation to the point of action of the vitamin.

FIGURE 2.
SCHEME OF TISSUE OXIDATION.



Scheme adapted from KEILIN with modern additions from work of GREEN and colleagues (at Cambridge). Hydrogen is mobilized by the specific dehydrogenase systems, ultimately to reduce oxidized cytochrome. Transfer of H at A is speculative; it is possible that pyruvate is first formed from glucose and then reduced to lactate.

Our next enquiry is how far this condition is really specific to the avitaminous state, and what organs of the body show it. The diagram from MEIKLEJOHN, PASSMORE and PETERS (1932) shows that as the bird becomes cured by

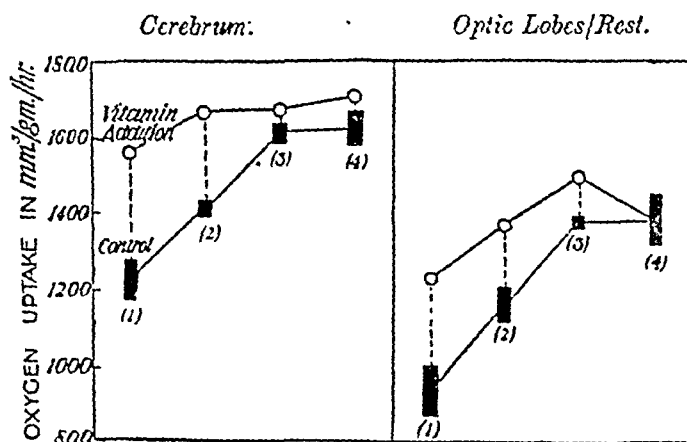


FIG. 2.—1, Avitaminous ; 2, Just out of symptoms ; 3, Recovered well ; 4, Normal. The black rectangles represents the standard deviation of the mean of the observations. From *Proc. R. Soc.* (1932). Ser. B., 3, 394.

vitamin B₁ (and this is a rapid process), so abnormality of the respiration decreases together with the corresponding effects of vitamin upon the system. With normal brain, the action of vitamin is only slight if at all present. This contrasts with the large effects observed in the avitaminous brain, and forms a very important link between the brain enzyme systems which we found *in vitro* and the condition of the brain in life.

In the case of other parts of the avitaminous bird, THOMPSON (1934) was only able to find a catatorulin effect with the kidney. This is interesting in relation to the latent oedema in these birds, which can be developed by giving them salt. An effect has been reported by SHERMAN and ELVEHJEM (1936*a*) for the heart, but this is not so clear. They have also confirmed these results for chicken brain (1936*b*), and rather similar effects have been obtained by O'BRIEN and PETERS (1935) for the rat brain. The facts seem therefore to be general.

We now come to the important point discovered by THOMPSON and investigated by himself and JOHNSON (THOMPSON and JOHNSON, 1935), namely that pyruvic acid is abnormally present in the blood of the avitaminous pigeon and rat up to 10 mg. per 100 c.c. blood ; it disappears upon cure of the animal. This can be estimated by use of the property of pyruvic acid to bind bisulphite, a property which it shares with other keto- and aldehyde substances. In the case of the animal, the increase in B.B.S. value has been found by JOHNSON to be mainly due to pyruvic acid. (In man, PLATT has stated that this is not so.) Hence, we have been led to find a biochemical abnormality in the blood by a

research which had its origin in "*in vitro*" experiments of an academic type upon brain enzyme systems—an interesting instance of how research works out. It should be noted that it is a mistake to think that the pyruvic acid itself is responsible for the symptoms. It is only a reflection of tissue abnormality; DE JONG (1936), in Holland, with a beautiful microtechnique found cases in pigeons in which the opisthotonus did not run parallel with the change in the blood B.B.S. value. Further, there is no evidence that injections of pyruvic acid are toxic. The symptoms are due to dysfunction of certain cells in the brain due to the failure of oxidation at the pyruvic acid stage.

The brain lesion has been further followed by MCGOWAN (1937) in the attempt to investigate the oxidation of the pyruvic acid. This question is somewhat outside the scope of this article; quantitative work shows that 3/5 to 4/5 of the pyruvic acid is completely oxidized. The fate of the remainder is unknown. It is not believed to pass through succinic acid, though this has been proved to be an intermediary in anaerobic brain metabolism (WEIL-MALHERBE, 1937). Attempts have been made also to trace the exact way in which vitamin B₁ exerts its effect upon pyruvic acid. Here a very recent discovery by LOHMANN and SCHUSTER (1937*a, b*) is of outstanding importance and interest. It means no less than that a vitamin B₁ compound is an important catalyst, *viz.* (co-carboxylase), in the formation of alcohol by yeast, and so in alcoholic fermentation; the compound is a vitamin B₁-pyrophosphoric ester. The reaction catalysed by the carboxylase enzyme is $\text{CH}_3\text{CO}\cdot\text{COOH} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{CHO} + \text{CO}_2$, the aldehyde being subsequently converted to alcohol. In the microorganism there is therefore also evidence that vitamin B₁ is concerned with pyruvic acid. Whether the vitamin B₁ pyrophosphate is present in brain tissue has yet to be proved. The *in vitro* effect is better exerted by vitamin B₁ itself, in our experiments.

Explaining the symptoms as due to an enzyme fault (failure in pyruvate oxidase) we are still left with certain other abnormalities, namely (1) the initial failure in appetite, which occurs long before any other avitaminous manifestations. This has been much studied by COWGILL and colleagues. (2) There is also the increase in blood lactic acid and the change in the sugar tolerance in the terminal stages of deficiency together with possible disturbances in the regulation of glycogen stored in the liver. (3) Also bradycardia* (DRURY, HARRIS and MAUDSLEY, 1930) and (4) Tendency to oedema. No. 2 can be brought into line by the following hypothesis; the lactic acid accumulates (see Fig. 2) because there is a block in the further oxidation of lactic acid by pyruvate. This is known to happen in isolated enzyme systems from the work of GREEN and BROSTEAUX (1936). The changes in sugar tolerance, etc., may well be due to the fault in brain cells, caused by the enzyme failure. It is not unreasonable to suppose that there is interference with the central regulation of sugar metabolism; on this view the initial enzyme fault in intermediary carbohydrate metabolism induces a secondary change in carbohydrate regulation. To the fault in the brain may also be ascribed certain secondary changes such as interference with temperature regulation. No. 4, the tendency to oedema, can be explained along

* Not to be confused with the dietary heart block of pigeons (CARTER and DRURY) which is not due to lack of vitamin B₁, but some other factor.

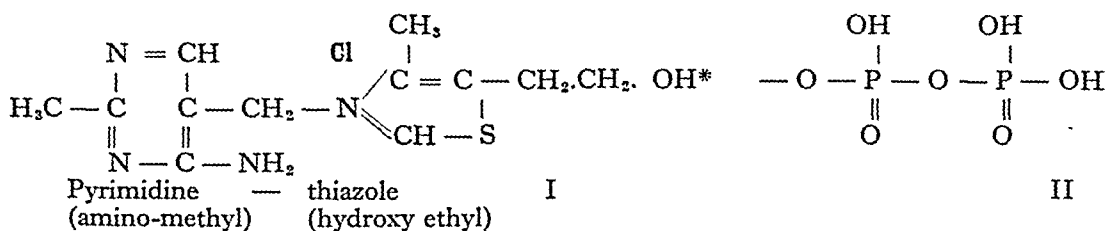
similar lines by the fault found in the kidney cells. The bradycardia (3) has not yet been explained properly, and as yet we have no clear ideas as to how the failure of appetite is induced. If it is caused reflexly by some diminution in the concentration of this vitamin in the blood some cells must be sensitive to very minute changes in concentration of this substance, which is almost incredible, though not impossible in living matter. That changes in the blood vitamin B₁ concentration probably occur is indicated by work of MEIKLEJOHN (1937). By the use of a modified mould test of Schopfer in which the growth of the micro-organism (*Phycomyces blakesleeanus*) with vitamin as catalyst is used as a means of estimation, he has found the apparent vitamin B₁ content of pigeon's blood much lowered in the deficient condition. Similarly in unpublished work H. M. SINCLAIR considers that there can be variations in human blood in disease; the amount present in the normal human appears to be about 0.008 mg./100 c.c. blood.

Much of the above experimental work upon animals has now been found by Dr. PLATT and his colleagues in excellent work to apply to the human. So that we can have confidence in the practical application of studies of animal research in this way.

APPENDIX.*

Some Chemical Points.

Vitamin B₁ chloride, hydrochloride is now available owing to the independent synthesis by R. R. WILLIAMS and J. K. CLINE in America, by H. ANDERSAG and K. WESTPHAL in Germany, and BERGEL and TODD in this country based upon fundamental work of WILLIAMS, CLARKE and colleagues, WINDAUS and GREWE and others. It has the formula I being substituted at * with pyrophosphate II to form co-carboxylase.



About 0.5 to 1.0 mg. is the daily dose for man, and about 0.005 to 0.02 mg. for a small animal. It can be detected chemically either by a special azo test (KINNERSLEY and PETERS), or by conversion to a blue fluorescent oxidation product (thiochrome of Kuhn) by oxidation with potassium ferricyanide in alkaline solution. The blue fluorescence is detectable in the ultra-violet light. Pyruvic acid can be estimated either by use of its property of binding bisulphite or by conversion to the 2.4 dinitrophenylhydrazone; the latter forms a strong reddish colour in alkaline alcoholic potash solution which can be estimated colorimetrically. This is more specific. The bisulphite binding property is shared with substances like aceto-acetic acid, which must therefore be excluded if this is used.

* For references see *Ann. Rev. Biochem.*, 1937 and 1938 (in Press), articles on water-soluble vitamins.

REFERENCES.

Some general references to the large literature upon this problem may be found by consulting the following :—

1932. No. 167, Med. Res. Council Report. *Vitamins. A Survey of Present Knowledge.*
PETERS, R. A. (1936). *Lancet*, 1, 1161.

———. (1937). *Chem. Weekbl.*, 34, No. 26.

Also Articles on B vitamins in *Ann. Rev. Biochem.*

ABDERHALDEN, E. & WERTHEIMER, E. (1920). *Pflüger Arch.*, 185, 141.

BRADDON, W. L. & COOPER, E. A. (1914). *J. Hyg. Camb.*, 14, 331.

COLLAZO, J. A. & MORELLI, E. (1925). *J. Physiol. Path. gén.*, 24, 77.

DE JONG, S. (1936). *Arch. néerl. Physiol.*, 21, 465.

DRURY, A. N., HARRIS, L. J. & MAUDSLEY, C. (1930). *Biochem. J.*, 24, 1632.

DUTCHER, R. A. (1918). *J. biol. Chem.*, 36, 63.

FINDLAY, G. M. (1921). *Biochem. J.*, 15, 104.

FUNK, C. (1914). *Hoppe-Seyl. Z.*, 89, 378.

———. (1922). *The Vitamines*. Baltimore : Williams and Wilkins, Co.

GAVRILESCU, N. & PETERS, R. A. (1931). *Biochem. J.*, 25, 1317.

———. & MEIKLEJOHN, A. P., PASSMORE, R. & PETERS, R. A. (1932). *Proc. roy. Soc., Ser. B.*, 110, 431.

GREEN, D. E. & BROSTEAUX, J. (1936). *Biochem. J.*, 30, 1489.

HESS, W. R. (1921). *Hoppe-Seyl. Z.*, 117, 287.

JOHNSON, R. E. & EDWARDS, J. T. (1937). *J. biol. Chem.*, 118, 427.

KINNERSLEY, H. W. & PETERS, R. A. (1929). *Biochem. J.*, 23, 1126.

——— & ———. (1930). *Ibid.*, 24, 711.

LOHMANN, K. & SCHUSTER, PH. (1937a). *Naturwissenschaften*, 25, 26.

——— & ———. (1937b). *Biochem. Z.*, 294, 188.

MCGINTY, D. A. & GESELL, R. (1925). *Amer. J. Physiol.*, 75, 70.

MCGOWAN, G. K. (1937). *Biochem. J.*, 31, 1627.

MEIKLEJOHN, A. P. (1933). *Ibid.*, 27, 1315.

———. (1937). *Ibid.*, 31, 1442.

———. PASSMORE, R. & PETERS, R. A. (1932). *Proc. roy. Soc. B.*, 111, 391.

O'BRIEN, J. R. & PETERS, R. A. (1935). *J. Physiol.*, 85, 454.

PETERS, R. A. & THOMPSON, R. H. S. (1934). *Biochem. J.*, 28, 916.

———. & SINCLAIR, H. M. (1933). *Ibid.*, 27, 1677, 1910.

RANDOIN, L. (1923). *C. R. Acad. Sci.*, Paris, 177, 498.

RYDIN, H. (1935). *Inaugural Dissertation*, Upsala.

SHERMAN, W. C. & ELVEHJEM, C. A. (1936a). *Biochem. J.*, 30, 785.

——— & ———. (1936b). *Amer. J. Physiol.*, 117, 142.

THOMPSON, R. H. S. (1934). *Biochem. J.*, 28, 909.

———. & JOHNSON, R. E. (1935). *Ibid.*, 29, 694.

WEIL-MALHERBE, H. (1937). *Ibid.*, 31, 2080.

BIOCHEMICAL CHANGES, ESPECIALLY OF PYRUVIC ACID, IN
RELATION TO SOME CLINICAL FEATURES OF BERIBERI.

BY

B. S. PLATT, M.B., PH.D.

Associate in Medicine, Henry Lester Institute of Medical Research, Shanghai.

Recent investigations have led to considerable advances in our knowledge of diseases due to the deficiency in the body of essential food factors. A good illustration is afforded by the progress made in the study of vitamin B₁ in its relationship to beriberi.

In common with other deficiency states, developments have followed rapidly on the identification and preparation of the pure vitamin. The effects of pure vitamin B₁ on tissues have now been investigated and, by appropriate biochemical methods, well-defined changes have been discovered in tissues from experimental animals deprived of the vitamin.

It is evident from the results of PETERS and his co-workers (PETERS and SINCLAIR, 1933; PETERS and THOMPSON, 1934, and THOMPSON and JOHNSON, 1935), that pyruvic acid is of importance in relation to the metabolic processes in vitamin B₁ deficiency states. It therefore appeared probable that information might be obtained from an investigation of the changes in pyruvic acid in the body fluids of patients suffering from beriberi. Blood, cerebrospinal fluid and urine have now been examined for the occurrence of pyruvic acid.

Since quantities of blood and cerebrospinal fluid were being withdrawn as a therapeutic measure, it was possible to isolate and identify pyruvic acid as the 2:4 dinitro-phenylhydrazone from both these fluids as well as from urine (PLATT and LU, 1935 and 1936). It is of interest to note that occurrence of pyruvic acid in the blood of vitamin B₁ deficient animals was established by similar methods at about the same time by JOHNSON (1935).

For the detection and estimation of pyruvic acid in smaller amounts of body fluids, three methods have been employed. The first was a method based on the extraction of the 2:4 dinitro-phenylhydrazone. This method appeared to be sufficiently precise and specific for pyruvic acid so that it has been employed extensively and is the method by which most of the results reported in this communication were obtained. The second method depends on the property which pyruvic acid possesses in common with other carbonyl compounds of binding bisulphite. The total bisulphite binding substances (B.B.S.) however are expressed in terms of pyruvic acid (mg. per 100 gramme of fluid). A third test, the nitroprusside reaction, is believed to be specific for pyruvic acid but cannot be used for accurate quantitative determinations. It is, however, of value where facilities do not exist for applying the hydrazone method.

The results of estimations of total B.B.S. are of interest (Editorial, *Lancet*, 1938) and may be presented at this point. Various figures have been reported for the amounts in the blood of apparently normal subjects; a summary of the results is given in the table on page 495.

The differences between these figures are probably accounted for by the condition of the subjects when blood was taken for examination.

Three or four times these amounts of B.B.S. were reported by PLATT and LU (1935) in cases of fulminating beriberi, the values ranging from 7 to 16 mg. per cent. (PLATT and LU, 1936). WILSON and GHOSH (1937) found a mean value in epidemic dropsy of 8.33 mg. per cent. for blood.

It must, however, be recognized that elevation of B.B.S. may occur in conditions other than vitamin B₁ deficiency. WILKINS *et al.* (1937) have observed increases in conditions associated with acidosis, ketosis, anoxaemia, "toxaemia" and uraemia.

Furthermore, even in beriberi, usually not more than about half of the increase in B.B.S. was accounted for by increase of pyruvic acid, when this was estimated by the hydrazone method (PLATT and LU, 1936). However, pyruvic

acid values and total B.B.S. fall to normal levels in such cases of beriberi when adequate amounts of vitamin B₁ are administered.

TABLE.

Investigators.	Country.	Results.
JOHNSON, <i>et al.</i> (1935)	England	22 subjects. Range 1.96-4.0 mg. per 100 gm. blood. Average 2.81.
PLATT and LU (1936)	China	23 subjects. Range 2.22-4.82 mg. per 100 gm. blood. Mean 3.27, standard deviation 0.70.
WILKINS, <i>et al.</i> (1937)	U.S.A.	30 subjects. Range 3.66-5.75 mg. per 100 ml. Average 4.74.
WILSON and GHOSH (1937)	India	6 subjects. Range 2.9-3.77 mg. per cent. Average 3.38.

These observations in man differ from those recorded in experimental vitamin B₁ deficiency in animals. For it has been shown (THOMPSON and JOHNSON, 1935) that the additional B.B.S. accumulated in the blood of the rat and pigeon in vitamin B₁ deficiency are almost wholly accounted for by increase in pyruvic acid as determined by the hydrazone method.

Attention may be directed to the observation that the pyruvic acid level may be raised, whilst the B.B.SS. are within the normal range. This is now known to be true of some of the patients whose B.B.S. values have been recorded as normal (PLATT and LU, 1936, Table III) whilst the pyruvic acid values range from 0.41 to 1.27 mg. per cent. These results may be taken as further evidence in support of the suggestion previously made (PLATT and LU, 1936) that pyruvic acid should be sought for in all cases of vitamin B₁ deficiency.

In view of the observations of PI SUÑER and FARRÁN (1936) that pyruvic acid occurs in the urine of compensated diabetic patients, it may be that increased amounts of pyruvic acid in body fluids are not necessarily always associated with vitamin B₁ deficiency. This is a matter for further investigation. It would, however, not be surprising to find abnormal amounts of pyruvic acid in the body in conditions in which disturbances of intermediate carbohydrate metabolism are involved.

The values for pyruvic acid determined by the hydrazone method for blood obtained from apparently healthy subjects or from patients who have received adequate doses of vitamin B₁ were usually between 0.4 and 0.6 mg. per 100 grammes. About half these amounts of pyruvic acid were present in cerebro-

It is evident from the results of PETERS and his co-workers (PETERS and SINCLAIR, 1933; PETERS and THOMPSON, 1934, and THOMPSON and JOHNSON, 1935), that pyruvic acid is of importance in relation to the metabolic processes in vitamin B₁ deficiency states. It therefore appeared probable that information might be obtained from an investigation of the changes in pyruvic acid in the body fluids of patients suffering from beriberi. Blood, cerebrospinal fluid and urine have now been examined for the occurrence of pyruvic acid.

Since quantities of blood and cerebrospinal fluid were being withdrawn as a therapeutic measure, it was possible to isolate and identify pyruvic acid as the 2:4 dinitro-phenylhydrazone from both these fluids as well as from urine (PLATT and LU, 1935 and 1936). It is of interest to note that occurrence of pyruvic acid in the blood of vitamin B₁ deficient animals was established by similar methods at about the same time by JOHNSON (1935).

For the detection and estimation of pyruvic acid in smaller amounts of body fluids, three methods have been employed. The first was a method based on the extraction of the 2:4 dinitro-phenylhydrazone. This method appeared to be sufficiently precise and specific for pyruvic acid so that it has been employed extensively and is the method by which most of the results reported in this communication were obtained. The second method depends on the property which pyruvic acid possesses in common with other carbonyl compounds of binding bisulphite. The total bisulphite binding substances (B.B.S.) however are expressed in terms of pyruvic acid (mg. per 100 gramme of fluid). A third test, the nitroprusside reaction, is believed to be specific for pyruvic acid but cannot be used for accurate quantitative determinations. It is, however, of value where facilities do not exist for applying the hydrazone method.

The results of estimations of total B.B.S. are of interest (Editorial, *Lancet*, 1938) and may be presented at this point. Various figures have been reported for the amounts in the blood of apparently normal subjects; a summary of the results is given in the table on page 495.

The differences between these figures are probably accounted for by the condition of the subjects when blood was taken for examination.

Three or four times these amounts of B.B.S. were reported by PLATT and LU (1935) in cases of fulminating beriberi, the values ranging from 7 to 16 mg. per cent. (PLATT and LU, 1936). WILSON and GHOSH (1937) found a mean value in epidemic dropsy of 8.33 mg. per cent. for blood.

It must, however, be recognized that elevation of B.B.S. may occur in conditions other than vitamin B₁ deficiency. WILKINS *et al.* (1937) have observed increases in conditions associated with acidosis, ketosis, anoxaemia, "toxaemia" and uraemia.

Furthermore, even in beriberi, usually not more than about half of the increase in B.B.S. was accounted for by increase of pyruvic acid. This is estimated by the hydrazone method (PLATT and LU, 1936).

acid values and total B.B.S. fall to normal levels in such cases of beriberi when adequate amounts of vitamin B₁ are administered.

TABLE.

Investigators.	Country.	Results.
JOHNSON, <i>et al.</i> (1935)	England	22 subjects. Range 1.96-4.0 mg. per 100 gm. blood. Average 2.81.
PLATT and LU (1936)	China	23 subjects. Range 2.22-4.82 mg. per 100 gm. blood. Mean 3.27, standard deviation 0.70.
WILKINS, <i>et al.</i> (1937)	U.S.A.	30 subjects. Range 3.66-5.75 mg. per 100 ml. Average 4.74.
WILSON and GHOSH (1937)	India	6 subjects. Range 2.9-3.77 mg. per cent. Average 3.38.

These observations in man differ from those recorded in experimental vitamin B₁ deficiency in animals. For it has been shown (THOMPSON and JOHNSON, 1935) that the additional B.B.S. accumulated in the blood of the rat and pigeon in vitamin B₁ deficiency are almost wholly accounted for by increase in pyruvic acid as determined by the hydrazone method.

Attention may be directed to the observation that the pyruvic acid level may be raised, whilst the B.B.SS. are within the normal range. This is now known to be true of some of the patients whose B.B.S. values have been recorded as normal (PLATT and LU, 1936, Table III) whilst the pyruvic acid values range from 0.41 to 1.27 mg. per cent. These results may be taken as further evidence in support of the suggestion previously made (PLATT and LU, 1936) that pyruvic acid should be sought for in all cases of vitamin B₁ deficiency.

In view of the observations of PI SUÑER and FARRÁN (1936) that pyruvic acid occurs in the urine of compensated diabetic patients, it may be that increased amounts of pyruvic acid in body fluids are not necessarily always associated with vitamin B₁ deficiency. This is a matter for further investigation. It would, however, not be surprising to find abnormal amounts of pyruvic acid in the body in conditions in which disturbances of intermediate carbohydrate metabolism are involved.

The values for pyruvic acid determined by the hydrazone method for blood obtained from apparently healthy subjects or from patients who have received adequate doses of vitamin B₁ were usually between 0.4 and 0.6 mg. per 100 grammes. About half these amounts of pyruvic acid were present in cerebro-

spinal fluid from similar subjects. It is important as will be seen later to draw the blood from the subject under basal conditions.

The results of JOHNSON *et al.* (1935) indicated that normal blood contained less than 1.64 mg. per cent. Later, JOHNSON and EDWARDS (1937) reported values of 0.1 to 0.18 mm. per litre for blood (*i.e.* 0.66 to 1.49 mg. per cent.).

The blood of the fulminating type of beriberi contained more than 1 mg. per cent. and values as high as 6 and 7 mg. per cent. have been recorded. The values for pyruvic acid in the blood of a series of usually fatal cases of this acute form of vitamin B₁ deficiency have been published (*Annual Report, 1936*). Of twenty-one cases, seven individuals had values between 1 and 2 mg. per cent., and the values of the remaining fourteen ranged from 2 to 4.5 mg. per cent. Seventeen of these patients were cured with a single dose of pure vitamin given intravenously. Four died within a short time after administration of a similar dose; three of the four fatal cases had pyruvic acid values over 2 mg. per cent.

The amount of vitamin found to be effective in the cure of the fulminating cases was 5 mg. The injection was always given intravenously as a solution made up from the crystalline substance in acid-alcohol. Products from natural and synthetic sources appeared to be equally effective.

When no complicating factors were present, the pyruvic acid in the blood fell steadily to the normal level in the course of 10 to 15 hours, after a dose of vitamin B₁. The patients who did not respond to treatment died before normal levels had been attained.

A number of patients who had some febrile disease associated with evidences of vitamin B₁ deficiency also failed to respond to treatment with vitamin B₁. These individuals usually died within a few hours after treatment. Generally, the accumulation of pyruvic acid in the blood was not so marked in these as in the cases uncomplicated by other disease. However, if a remission of the fever occurred, the prominent symptoms of vitamin B₁ deficiency could be relieved by injection of vitamin B₁ and the pyruvic acid level was found to return to normal. With recurrence of fever a marked rise of pyruvic acid occurred and some of the more acute symptoms of vitamin B₁ deficiency also developed again.

If the blood pyruvic acid levels of a "cured" case of fulminating beriberi were determined daily after treatment with a single dose of 5 mg. of vitamin, it was usual to find that a rise occurred, even with resting subjects, about the fifth day. The increase was maintained until a further dose (2 to 3 mg.) was given. The explanation of this phenomenon was found to be related to the diet.

Immediately after recovery from the acute phase of beriberi, the patient was allowed to take the customary diet. About three-quarters of the calorie value of a typical diet was obtained from rice. The rice taken by the patients under consideration was a highly milled product and, in the amounts taken per day, supplied about 0.3 mg. of vitamin B₁. The estimated daily intake of the average patient who develops beriberi is about 0.5 mg. per day. After a single

dose of 5 mg. of vitamin B₁ measurements of food intake show that the appetite temporarily improved and the calorie intake in the form of rice doubled in the course of 2 or 3 days. For the metabolism of this increased amount of carbohydrate in the diet, more vitamin B₁ was required than was furnished by the rice. In consequence, the metabolism of cells for which vitamin B₁ is essential was deranged and one of the products of metabolism—pyruvic acid—was found to accumulate in the blood. Increased intake of carbohydrates therefore, as well as fever, appears to influence metabolic processes in the body in vitamin B₁ deficiency states.

Increased metabolic activity arising as a result of muscular effort may also be expected to accentuate the disturbances found in vitamin B₁ deficiency. Experiments were therefore made to determine the effect of exercise on blood pyruvic acid in the normal and in the vitamin B₁ deficient subject.

Examination of a "normal" individual showed that immediately after mild exercise a rise of pyruvic acid occurred in the blood, but the pyruvic acid value rapidly returned to normal. Mild exercise of a subject in a state of vitamin B₁ deficiency having a normal or slightly raised resting pyruvic acid level produced an increase of pyruvic acid in the blood immediately after exercise. In this type of subject the raised value was found to be maintained for a comparatively long period.

Severe muscular effort in a normal subject has been shown (JOHNSON and EDWARDS, 1937) to be accompanied by a marked rise in the pyruvic acid level in the blood (3 to 4 mg. per cent.). Such an accumulation of pyruvic is comparable with that observed in fulminating beriberi. In less than an hour, however, the pyruvic acid returned to its resting value.

When a "cured" case of beriberi who has been kept for some time after treatment with a single dose of vitamin on his customary vitamin B₁ deficient diet is subjected to severe exercise and considerable increase in blood pyruvic acid induced, the recovery phase after exercise was found to be 3 to 4 hours. Moreover, the subject became exhausted after an amount of exercise insufficient to cause any distress in a healthy normal subject.

The foregoing observations demonstrate three main points: firstly, that there are metabolic disturbances arising in consequence of vitamin B₁ deficiency as evidenced by accumulation of pyruvic acid in the blood; secondly, a connection with vitamin B₁ is clear from the fact that administration of an adequate amount of pure vitamin B₁ is followed by a restoration of pyruvic acid to normal levels; thirdly, factors which are known to intensify metabolism in the body—fever, increased food intake and muscular work—accentuate the accumulation of pyruvic acid in the body in vitamin B₁ deficiency.

It may therefore be argued from these observations that factors which affect metabolism are likely to play a part in the development of the phenomena of beriberi.

The metabolic disturbances are most marked in the fulminating type of beriberi and it is in this group that accentuating circumstances appear definitely to contribute to the onset of the acute phase. The condition commonly occurs in active, usually muscular subjects who have continued to work until shortly before the attack. The acute phase is characteristically of short duration. It is remarkable that this form is rarely seen except in hot and humid weather when sustained muscular effort is difficult and proper rest and sleep often impossible.

The operation of factors other than the degree of vitamin B₁ deficiency in the development of the various types of beriberi appears to be so important that it is a question whether considerable differences in the magnitude of the vitamin defect are likely to arise.

In this connection it is important to point out that the vitamin B₁ content of the daily diets in areas endemic for beriberi is about 0.5 mg. per person. Under ordinary conditions diets completely free from vitamin are not taken and an intake of 0.75 mg. daily represents a "border-line" supply. WILLIAMS (1938) suggests that for optimal nutrition with respect to vitamin B₁ it may be necessary to allow as much as 4 mg. per day. Yet, the foregoing results show that it is possible to "cure" a case of fulminating beriberi with a 5 mg. dose of vitamin B₁. Furthermore, there is evidence that the body does not store appreciable amounts of vitamin B₁.

In contrast with the fulminating type of beriberi, the development of the "dry, atrophic" type may be the result of a similar grade of vitamin insufficiency to which the patient has been subjected for some time in the absence of appreciable accentuating factors. The view may be advanced that nervous tissue is attacked primarily because of all the body tissues its need for vitamin B₁ for normal metabolism is most pronounced. Moreover, when nervous tissue is predominantly involved, the localisation of the disturbances appears to be determined by metabolic factors especially related to work. No significant alterations of blood pyruvic acid are found in this type of beriberi (PLATT and LU, 1936).

The incidence in hospital practice in Shanghai of these two extreme types of beriberi in their well-developed forms is only about 10 per cent. of the total cases presenting manifestations of vitamin B₁ deficiency. The majority of the cases cannot be clearly classified.

On clinical grounds, accentuating factors relating to metabolic activity in the body appear to play a part in the occurrence of these less severe forms of beriberi. For example, it was pointed out (PLATT and GIN, 1934) that nearly half of a hundred patients traced the onset of their symptoms of beriberi to a short bout of fever.

Further discussion of the features of these cases is not possible in this short communication. It is, however, important to recognize the part played in the symptomatology of these cases by changes which are secondary to impair-

ment of the function of tissues and organs and that the clinical picture is often complicated by association with other disease.

Nevertheless, noteworthy improvement may follow treatment with amounts of vitamin B₁ of the same order as have been used for the fulminating cases. There may, however, be no remarkable variations in the levels of pyruvic acid in the blood. In some instances, disturbances appear to have progressed to the stage at which recovery cannot be effected merely by supplying adequate amounts of vitamin B₁.

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS.

There are substances which bind bisulphite normally present in the blood of human subjects. These substances are found in increased amounts in the blood of cases of fulminating beriberi.

Pyruvic acid is one of these substances. Increased amounts of pyruvic acid are shown to occur in trichloroacetic acid extracts of blood, urine and cerebrospinal fluid taken from patients with fulminating beriberi.

In uncomplicated cases of fulminating beriberi showing increased amounts of pyruvic acid, normal levels are restored in the course of 10 to 15 hours after intravenous administration of 5 mg. of pure vitamin B₁.

Vitamin B₁ has been shown by other workers to be concerned in the intermediate metabolism of carbohydrates. Changes in amounts of metabolites in the blood in vitamin B₁ deficiency states are considered to be evidences of disturbances arising in tissues whose carbohydrate metabolism involved vitamin B₁.

The operation of some factors—fever, increased intake of carbohydrates, muscular effort—which are known to affect metabolism in the body, leads to accumulation of pyruvic acid in the blood in vitamin B₁ deficiency states.

It is suggested that the effects of accentuating factors contribute to the development of the various clinical types of beriberi. These effects may be of more importance in this respect than the differences in the grade of vitamin B₁ deficiency. When accentuating factors are minimal it is probable that well-defined changes only appear after a comparatively long period of deficiency.

Changes secondary to the failure of various organs and associated disease modify the clinical picture of beriberi.

The effects of treatment with vitamin B₁ must be assessed with cognisance of the fact that damage to tissues may ensue, especially in long term deficiency, which cannot be repaired merely by correcting the vitamin deficiency.

The metabolic disturbances are most marked in the fulminating type of beriberi and it is in this group that accentuating circumstances appear definitely to contribute to the onset of the acute phase. The condition commonly occurs in active, usually muscular subjects who have continued to work until shortly before the attack. The acute phase is characteristically of short duration. It is remarkable that this form is rarely seen except in hot and humid weather when sustained muscular effort is difficult and proper rest and sleep often impossible.

The operation of factors other than the degree of vitamin B₁ deficiency in the development of the various types of beriberi appears to be so important that it is a question whether considerable differences in the magnitude of the vitamin defect are likely to arise.

In this connection it is important to point out that the vitamin B₁ content of the daily diets in areas endemic for beriberi is about 0.5 mg. per person. Under ordinary conditions diets completely free from vitamin are not taken and an intake of 0.75 mg. daily represents a "border-line" supply. WILLIAMS (1938) suggests that for optimal nutrition with respect to vitamin B₁ it may be necessary to allow as much as 4 mg. per day. Yet, the foregoing results show that it is possible to "cure" a case of fulminating beriberi with a 5 mg. dose of vitamin B₁. Furthermore, there is evidence that the body does not store appreciable amounts of vitamin B₁.

In contrast with the fulminating type of beriberi, the development of the "dry, atrophic" type may be the result of a similar grade of vitamin insufficiency to which the patient has been subjected for some time in the absence of appreciable accentuating factors. The view may be advanced that nervous tissue is attacked primarily because of all the body tissues its need for vitamin B₁ for normal metabolism is most pronounced. Moreover, when nervous tissue is predominantly involved, the localisation of the disturbances appears to be determined by metabolic factors especially related to work. No significant alterations of blood pyruvic acid are found in this type of beriberi (PLATT and LU, 1936).

The incidence in hospital practice in Shanghai of these two extreme types of beriberi in their well-developed forms is only about 10 per cent. of the total cases presenting manifestations of vitamin B₁ deficiency. The majority of the cases cannot be clearly classified.

On clinical grounds, accentuating factors relating to metabolic activity in the body appear to play a part in the occurrence of these less severe forms of beriberi. For example, it was pointed out (PLATT and GIN, 1934) that nearly half of a hundred patients traced the onset of their symptoms of beriberi to a short bout of fever.

Further discussion of the features of these cases is not possible in this short communication. It is, however, important to recognize the part played in the symptomatology of these cases by changes which are secondary to impair-

ment of the function of tissues and organs and that the clinical picture is often complicated by association with other disease.

Nevertheless, noteworthy improvement may follow treatment with amounts of vitamin B₁ of the same order as have been used for the fulminating cases. There may, however, be no remarkable variations in the levels of pyruvic acid in the blood. In some instances, disturbances appear to have progressed to the stage at which recovery cannot be effected merely by supplying adequate amounts of vitamin B₁.

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS.

There are substances which bind bisulphite normally present in the blood of human subjects. These substances are found in increased amounts in the blood of cases of fulminating beriberi.

Pyruvic acid is one of these substances. Increased amounts of pyruvic acid are shown to occur in trichloroacetic acid extracts of blood, urine and cerebrospinal fluid taken from patients with fulminating beriberi.

In uncomplicated cases of fulminating beriberi showing increased amounts of pyruvic acid, normal levels are restored in the course of 10 to 15 hours after intravenous administration of 5 mg. of pure vitamin B₁.

Vitamin B₁ has been shown by other workers to be concerned in the intermediate metabolism of carbohydrates. Changes in amounts of metabolites in the blood in vitamin B₁ deficiency states are considered to be evidences of disturbances arising in tissues whose carbohydrate metabolism involved vitamin B₁.

The operation of some factors—fever, increased intake of carbohydrates, muscular effort—which are known to affect metabolism in the body, leads to accumulation of pyruvic acid in the blood in vitamin B₁ deficiency states.

It is suggested that the effects of accentuating factors contribute to the development of the various clinical types of beriberi. These effects may be of more importance in this respect than the differences in the grade of vitamin B₁ deficiency. When accentuating factors are minimal it is probable that well-defined changes only appear after a comparatively long period of deficiency.

Changes secondary to the failure of various organs and associated disease modify the clinical picture of beriberi.

The effects of treatment with vitamin B₁ must be assessed with cognisance of the fact that damage to tissues may ensue, especially in long term deficiency, which cannot be repaired merely by correcting the vitamin deficiency.

REFERENCES.

- Annual Report, 1936, Henry Lester Institute of Medical Research, 24.*
Editorial, Lancet. (1938), 1, 148.
 JOHNSON, R. E. (1936). *Biochem. J.*, 30, 31.
 ——— & EDWARDS, H. T. (1937). *J. biol. Chem.*, 118, 427.
 ——— MEIKLEJOHN, A. P., PASSMORE, R. & THOMPSON, R. H. S. (1936).
Biochem. J., 19, 2506.
 PETERS, R. A. & SINCLAIR, H. M. (1933). *Ibid.*, 27, 1910.
 ——— & THOMPSON, R. H. S. (1934). *Ibid.*, 28, 916.
 PI SÜNER, A. & FARRAN, M. (1936). *Biochem. Z.*, 287, 113.
 PLATT, B. S. & GIN, S. Y. (1934). *Trans. Far-East. Ass. trop. Med.*, XIth Congress, 2, 407.
 ——— & LU, G. D. (1935). *Proc. Chin. Physiol. Soc.*, 16.
 ——— & ———. (1936). *Quart. J. Med.*, 5, 355.
 THOMPSON, R. H. S. & JOHNSON, R. E. (1935). *Biochem. J.*, 29, 694.
 WILKINS, R. W., TAYLOR, F. H. L. & WEISS, S. (1937). *Proc. Soc. exp. Biol. N.Y.*, 35, 584.
 WILLIAMS, R. R. (1938). *Ergebnisse der Vit. u. Horm. Forsch.*, 1, 233. Leipzig: Akademische Verlags-gesellschaft m.b.h.
 WILSON, H. E. C. & GHOSH, B. K. (1937). *Indian med. Gaz.*, 72, 147.

DISCUSSION.

Miss Harriette Chick, D.Sc.: As a laboratory worker on vitamins I would wish to offer my warm congratulations to the authors of these papers. To those of us who have been struggling with the experimental work on this subject it is wonderful to hear this story of the striking clinical effect of crystalline vitamin B₁ which is now available for the treatment of acute beriberi. There have been many disappointing and discouraging reports from workers in clinical medicine in the tropics, full of doubt as to whether vitamin B₁ had any real importance in the etiology of beriberi. The work which has been reported this evening is very encouraging, as giving evidence which is overwhelming that vitamin B₁ has *all* to do with the development and symptomatology of beriberi, anyhow in this particular form. I would like to know whether any explanation can be offered of the contradictory opinions which have been expressed in the past in the published clinical work on this subject.

Professor R. Brunel Hawes : The reaction is quantitative and therefore much of the disappointment has been due to too small doses. Sometimes the standardization of commercial products is not correct and mistakes with insufficient dosage occur with fatal results.

Miss Harriette Chick : What is the source ?

Professor R. Brunel Hawes : The extract from natural sources has been especially prepared for me by the Geneeskundig Laboratorium in Batavia-Centrum, Java. Other carefully standardized products were from Bayer's who produced a natural extract but now make synthetic products. Another synthetic product came from Switzerland.

Dr. P. Manson-Bahr : I have listened to the remarks of Professor PETERS with great attention, and especially to his observations upon the effect of vitamin B₁ upon the appetite in animals. Purely empirically, as far as the true etiology of the disease is concerned, I have for the last six months been using vitamin B₁ injections (*Benerva*-Roche 1.25 mgm. of crystalline B₁) daily in sprue. One of the chief characteristics of the advanced stages of the disease is anorexia, and in this respect it appears to have a remarkable effect in increasing the patient's desire for food. I have observed some ten cases in which this form of treatment has been carried out, but in eight of these it has been combined with the generally accepted liver injection therapy.

Whether the stomatitis of sprue is a separate entity or whether it is comparable to that observed in Addisonian anaemia, pellagra and the peculiar condition, now known to be due to B₂ deficiency, which was first observed by myself in Ceylon, by J. V. LANDOR and R. A. PALLISTER in Malaya, and later again by L. NICHOLLS in Ceylon, is an interesting point. I have noted, however, that in vitamin B₁ therapy in sprue there is a rapid improvement in the tongue and mouth in association with the stimulus to the appetite. By making these observations I do not wish to infer that I consider that the syndrome of sprue is due to a vitamin B₁ deficiency but merely to point out that this new and active product may play a part in the therapeutics of this distressing disease.

Professor Warrington Yorke : I suppose there is improvement as regards other symptoms *pari passu* with that of the stomatitis ? If the patient recovers from sprue the stomatitis would disappear as part of this general improvement.

Dr. P. Manson-Bahr : Our sprues always do get better.

Professor Warrington Yorke : That is exactly the answer I expected.

Dr. J. Barcroft Anderson : The late Dr. ROWLANDS, about a year before he died, described the result of his work on rats, and he gave me the impression, so far as that work went, that the vitamins B were necessary to all the tissues of the kidney. Dr. ROWLANDS represented that continued deficiency of the vitamins of the germ of grain diminished the size of nerve cells and nerve fibres ; reduced the unstriated muscle tissue to one-third of its bulk in the intestine of the rat, and produced degenerative changes in all the tissues of its kidney. I have never seen any allusion in medical literature to Dr. ROWLANDS' work, and I do not know if the speakers this evening have studied the effect on kidney tissue ?

Dr. H. S. Stannus asked Professor PETERS whether there was any evidence, in man, of interference in the oxidation of carbohydrate in the brain tissue into the series of normal products he had described, by other means than a deficiency of vitamin B₁—whether toxic substances could thus act ; also whether any other substance than B₁ played any part in the normal metabolism.

Professor R. A. Peters : I do not know what histamine cures mean. They do not occur at all constantly, and I believe they are really to be grouped with temporary cures which we often observe. When we worked with these avitaminous pigeons we early found that we had to be extremely careful not to be misled by temporary pseudo-cures. We usually induce the symptoms of vitamin deficiency in the cold, and then we bring the birds into a warm room, because in this condition they die off rather rapidly if the surrounding temperature is not about 70° F. We then find if we give water plus or minus a little sugar, that a number of birds will recover for a period of 2 or 3 days. If you had been testing for vitamin B₁ and had been giving a vitamin B₁ preparation you would be inclined to say that the cure had been effected by this. However, the symptoms usually come on again in a period varying from 1 to 3 or 4 days, and it is then found impossible to clear them up by giving further doses of water or sugar. We find that the birds are then quite safe to use for tests. If you take the view that vitamin B₁ has to be present in the brain for normal function, then you will also think that this vitamin has to be brought to the brain in the blood. A temporary interference with circulation will prevent vitamin B₁ from passing from other tissues to the brain. If a few more molecules of B₁ are brought to the brain by improving circulatory conditions the brain recovers temporarily. I do not know how far this is supported by Dr. SINCLAIR's observations. The kidneys we know to be out of order, and very often we see in a bird, especially if salt is administered, a massive oedema, and it is interesting that these conditions clear up in the bird on injections of vitamin B₁ just as Professor HAWES has said is the case with human patients. I have seen cases of intense oedema in

the pigeon which could only be cured by injection of vitamin B₁ : oral administration produced no effect at all.

There is a question I wanted to ask Dr. PLATT, a very interesting question for us as specialists, whether acetaldehyde can be found in the blood of his cases. SHINDO* this year claimed to have isolated acetaldehyde from beriberi cases.

Dr. B. S. Platt : We have no evidence that acetaldehyde occurs in the blood of cases of fulminating beriberi. There are, however, bisulphite binding substances not yet accounted for.

Dr. T. F. Macrae : Professor HAWES told us there was some discrepancy between the alleged vitamin content of some preparations and the actual quantity found. Is it not possible that some vitamin B₁ had decomposed? We know vitamin B₁ is not a very stable compound, and in the heat of those tropical countries it seems possible that there might have been some decomposition. The vitamin is specially unstable in alkaline solution. One other point : Professor HAWES mentioned that Dr. WILLIAMS had made available synthetic vitamin B₁. Dr. WILLIAMS is deservedly recognized to have done more to elucidate the chemical nature of vitamin B₁ than any other worker. The synthesis of vitamin B₁, however, was achieved in three countries independently and almost simultaneously—in Germany in the laboratories of the I.G. Farbenindustrie, in America by Dr. WILLIAMS and his co-workers, and in this country, where it was carried out by TODD and BERGEL first in the Department of Medical Chemistry in Edinburgh, and then in the Lister Institute.

Major-General Sir Leonard Rogers : I should like to draw attention to the remarkable similarity between the rapid clearing up of adult beriberi under vitamin B₁ injections, and the equally rapid recoveries from acute infantile beriberi in the Philippines following the oral administration of *tiki tiki*, an extract of rice polishings containing vitamin B, and to ask if the injection treatment has been tried in infantile beriberi.

Dr. William Hughes : I would like to corroborate what Professor HAWES has said about the striking effect of vitamin B₁ as seen in Malaya. Laboratory workers should have our sympathy : they turn out wonderful products and do not see the effect ; but if they saw the effect of vitamin B₁ in beriberi they would be pleased with their efforts. One thing which would please them is the effect of the vitamin in infantile beriberi, because there is hardly anything more pathetic than to see a child with infantile beriberi : it has aphonia and paralysis, and the effect of vitamin B₁ in such cases is really magical.

* Editorial. *Lancet*, 1, 1938.

Professor Sir John Ledingham : Might I ask what is the immediate effect on the pneumogastric nerve ?

Dr. William Hughes : In infantile beriberi in my own experience it takes about 3 days before the child cries fairly well, that is, after 1,500 units in 3 days. Dr. HARIDAS,* of Singapore, has recently reported a number of cases and the dose of the vitamin he recommends is 500 to 2,000 units. The voice should return in 2 to 3 days and vigorous crying and voluntary movements in a week.

Professor Peters : There was one question about poisons which has not been answered. I think the questioner wanted to know whether there was any evidence that poisons blocked the action of vitamin B₁ in man. I do not know of any evidence of this. Of course, it was not possible for me to go into all the details of the oxidation system in my lecture but actually it has been shown in these cases that if iodo-acetic acid is introduced into the brain system *in vitro* an accumulation of pyruvic acid is found just as in vitamin B₁ deficient tissue in absence of vitamin. But actually if vitamin B₁ is added to that system in excess the pyruvic acid is not oxidised. Probably the enzyme system is composed of two parts. One is vitamin B₁, the other is a protein and the action of poisons is on the protein part.

Dr. H. M. Sinclair : I should like to ask Professor HAWES one question and Dr. MANSON-BAHR another. Has Professor HAWES any information about the neuritis of beriberi ? He dealt only with the acute cardiac condition ; is the neuritis also due to a deficiency of vitamin B₁ and does it respond to therapy ?

I am not at all clear about Dr. MANSON-BAHR's experiments. We have heard that vitamin B₁ greatly improves appetite. Could not the increased appetite of his cases of sprue treated with vitamin B₁ cause an alteration in their diet which would supply them with a factor which cures glossitis ?

Professor R. Brunel Hawes : There are one or two questions with regard to the effect on the kidneys. It is perfectly true that the incidence of many diseases varies in different races whose diet is different and the nephrotic syndrome appears to be more common in peoples whom we know to be short of B₁. But B₁ has not the slightest curative effect on this condition or on parenchymatous nephritis. In ordinary cases where the circulation is deranged, as it is in fulminating beriberi, you will find albumin and casts in the urine. Probably all the glands in the body, from the pituitary to the pancreas are deranged. In man there is no evidence that there is any effect on the actual brain itself. The death I do not think is a medullary death. When we were endeavouring to find out whether there was anything else required in the vitamin we used various other drugs. There was a theory that symptoms were

* HARIDAS, G. (1937). *J. Malayan Branch. Brit. med. Ass.*, 1, 26.

due to degeneration of the vagus, and we used large doses of acetylcholine. It has a very curious effect on the pigeon but none on the human cardiac beriberi. Adrenalin aggravates the symptoms of beriberi whilst the pituitary tends to diminish in size. B_1 does not deteriorate if kept in the dark: after many months in the tropics it shows no signs of loss of potency. The neuritic condition is rather a large subject: obviously another factor comes in. In a very few cases the nervous condition is cured dramatically, in other cases the symptoms take months to disappear. The reason is slightly obscure.

Dr. MANSON-BAHR's comment suggests that he is observing possibly a sulphur effect due to the sulphur in the B_1 crystalline compound, as Dr. WRIGHT in West Africa has reported curative effects on similar conditions with the use of organic sulphur compounds. In the fulminating or pure cardiac case no mouth lesions are present.

Dr. A. P. Meiklejohn (Oxford): May I draw attention to the work of Drs. WEISS and WILKINS? They have lately described a syndrome resembling beriberi occurring in Boston, U.S.A., chiefly among alcoholics. Certain features of their work, which I have had the good fortune to see in recent months, is interesting in connection with Dr. HAWES's observation of the occurrence of low diastolic blood pressure in beriberi. They have observed high venous blood pressure associated with normal or rapid peripheral blood flow. This is a further indication that there may be a pronounced degree of peripheral vasodilatation in vitamin B_1 deficiency. One further point: I think that it should be remembered that the metabolism of the kidney has been shown to be disturbed in the vitamin B_1 deficient pigeon, and this may be a factor in cases where the blood pressure is elevated, and also in those cases which subsequently develop nephritis.

Dr. Platt: The question was raised about infantile beriberi. In our series of fulminating cases (PLATT and LU, 1936) was one of infantile beriberi. In this case most marked biochemical changes were noted. The statement was made in this paper that infantile beriberi was probably one of the purest forms of vitamin B_1 deficiency seen in human subjects.

Two other points I would like to comment on.

Firstly, with regard to the so-called atrophic form. I think there is good evidence for the belief that in the development of this condition there are two important factors. One is that the deficiency has persisted for a long time. The other is that there have not been present those intensifying factors which I pointed out were operative in the development of the acute symptoms.

Secondly, in connection with water retention, there is a point of some interest. With the disturbance of metabolism, there might well be changes in the water-binding powers of the cells resulting in an increase of intracellular fluid. The first appearance in the muscle tissue is observed as a hardening of

Professor Sir John Ledingham : Might I ask what is the immediate effect on the pneumogastric nerve ?

Dr. William Hughes : In infantile beriberi in my own experience it takes about 3 days before the child cries fairly well, that is, after 1,500 units in 3 days. Dr. HARIDAS,* of Singapore, has recently reported a number of cases and the dose of the vitamin he recommends is 500 to 2,000 units. The voice should return in 2 to 3 days and vigorous crying and voluntary movements in a week.

Professor Peters : There was one question about poisons which has not been answered. I think the questioner wanted to know whether there was any evidence that poisons blocked the action of vitamin B₁ in man. I do not know of any evidence of this. Of course, it was not possible for me to go into all the details of the oxidation system in my lecture but actually it has been shown in these cases that if iodo-acetic acid is introduced into the brain system *in vitro* an accumulation of pyruvic acid is found just as in vitamin B₁ deficient tissue in absence of vitamin. But actually if vitamin B₁ is added to that system in excess the pyruvic acid is not oxidised. Probably the enzyme system is composed of two parts. One is vitamin B₁, the other is a protein and the action of poisons is on the protein part.

Dr. H. M. Sinclair : I should like to ask Professor HAWES one question and Dr. MANSON-BAHR another. Has Professor HAWES any information about the neuritis of beriberi ? He dealt only with the acute cardiac condition ; is the neuritis also due to a deficiency of vitamin B₁ and does it respond to therapy ?

I am not at all clear about Dr. MANSON-BAHR's experiments. We have heard that vitamin B₁ greatly improves appetite. Could not the increased appetite of his cases of sprue treated with vitamin B₁ cause an alteration in their diet which would supply them with a factor which cures glossitis ?

Professor R. Brunel Hawes : There are one or two questions with regard to the effect on the kidneys. It is perfectly true that the incidence of many diseases varies in different races whose diet is different and the nephrotic syndrome appears to be more common in peoples whom we know to be short of B₁. But B₁ has not the slightest curative effect on this condition or on parenchymatous nephritis. In ordinary cases where the circulation is deranged, as it is in fulminating beriberi, you will find albumin and casts in the urine. Probably all the glands in the body, from the pituitary to the pancreas are deranged. In man there is no evidence that there is any effect on the actual brain itself. The death I do not think is a medullary death. When we were endeavouring to find out whether there was anything else required in the vitamin we used various other drugs. There was a theory that symptoms were

* HARIDAS, G. (1937). *J. Malayan Branch. Brit. med. Ass.*, 1, 26.

due to degeneration of the vagus, and we used large doses of acetylcholine. It has a very curious effect on the pigeon but none on the human cardiac beriberi. Adrenalin aggravates the symptoms of beriberi whilst the pituitary tends to diminish in size. B_1 does not deteriorate if kept in the dark: after many months in the tropics it shows no signs of loss of potency. The neuritic condition is rather a large subject: obviously another factor comes in. In a very few cases the nervous condition is cured dramatically, in other cases the symptoms take months to disappear. The reason is slightly obscure.

Dr. MANSON-BAHR's comment suggests that he is observing possibly a sulphur effect due to the sulphur in the B_1 crystalline compound, as Dr. WRIGHT in West Africa has reported curative effects on similar conditions with the use of organic sulphur compounds. In the fulminating or pure cardiac case no mouth lesions are present.

Dr. A. P. Meiklejohn (Oxford): May I draw attention to the work of Drs. WEISS and WILKINS? They have lately described a syndrome resembling beriberi occurring in Boston, U.S.A., chiefly among alcoholics. Certain features of their work, which I have had the good fortune to see in recent months, is interesting in connection with Dr. HAWES's observation of the occurrence of low diastolic blood pressure in beriberi. They have observed high venous blood pressure associated with normal or rapid peripheral blood flow. This is a further indication that there may be a pronounced degree of peripheral vasodilatation in vitamin B_1 deficiency. One further point: I think that it should be remembered that the metabolism of the kidney has been shown to be disturbed in the vitamin B_1 deficient pigeon, and this may be a factor in cases where the blood pressure is elevated, and also in those cases which subsequently develop nephritis.

Dr. Platt: The question was raised about infantile beriberi. In our series of fulminating cases (PLATT and LU, 1936) was one of infantile beriberi. In this case most marked biochemical changes were noted. The statement was made in this paper that infantile beriberi was probably one of the purest forms of vitamin B_1 deficiency seen in human subjects.

Two other points I would like to comment on.

Firstly, with regard to the so-called atrophic form. I think there is good evidence for the belief that in the development of this condition there are two important factors. One is that the deficiency has persisted for a long time. The other is that there have not been present those intensifying factors which I pointed out were operative in the development of the acute symptoms.

Secondly, in connection with water retention, there is a point of some interest. With the disturbance of metabolism, there might well be changes in the water-binding powers of the cells resulting in an increase of intracellular fluid. The first appearance in the muscle tissue is observed as a hardening of

Professor Sir John Ledingham : Might I ask what is the immediate effect on the pneumogastric nerve ?

Dr. William Hughes : In infantile beriberi in my own experience it takes about 3 days before the child cries fairly well, that is, after 1,500 units in 3 days. Dr. HARIDAS,* of Singapore, has recently reported a number of cases and the dose of the vitamin he recommends is 500 to 2,000 units. The voice should return in 2 to 3 days and vigorous crying and voluntary movements in a week.

Professor Peters : There was one question about poisons which has not been answered. I think the questioner wanted to know whether there was any evidence that poisons blocked the action of vitamin B₁ in man. I do not know of any evidence of this. Of course, it was not possible for me to go into all the details of the oxidation system in my lecture but actually it has been shown in these cases that if iodo-acetic acid is introduced into the brain system *in vitro* an accumulation of pyruvic acid is found just as in vitamin B₁ deficient tissue in absence of vitamin. But actually if vitamin B₁ is added to that system in excess the pyruvic acid is not oxidised. Probably the enzyme system is composed of two parts. One is vitamin B₁, the other is a protein and the action of poisons is on the protein part.

Dr. H. M. Sinclair : I should like to ask Professor HAWES one question and Dr. MANSON-BAHR another. Has Professor HAWES any information about the neuritis of beriberi ? He dealt only with the acute cardiac condition ; is the neuritis also due to a deficiency of vitamin B₁ and does it respond to therapy ?

I am not at all clear about Dr. MANSON-BAHR's experiments. We have heard that vitamin B₁ greatly improves appetite. Could not the increased appetite of his cases of sprue treated with vitamin B₁ cause an alteration in their diet which would supply them with a factor which cures glossitis ?

Professor R. Brunel Hawes : There are one or two questions with regard to the effect on the kidneys. It is perfectly true that the incidence of many diseases varies in different races whose diet is different and the nephrotic syndrome appears to be more common in peoples whom we know to be short of B₁. But B₁ has not the slightest curative effect on this condition or on parenchymatous nephritis. In ordinary cases where the circulation is deranged, as it is in fulminating beriberi, you will find albumin and casts in the urine. Probably all the glands in the body, from the pituitary to the pancreas are deranged. In man there is no evidence that there is any effect on the actual brain itself. The death I do not think is a medullary death. When we were endeavouring to find out whether there was anything else required in the vitamin we used various other drugs. There was a theory that symptoms were

* HARIDAS, G. (1937). *J. Malayan Bruch. Brit. med. Ass.*, 1, 26.

due to degeneration of the vagus, and we used large doses of acetylcholine. It has a very curious effect on the pigeon but none on the human cardiac beriberi. Adrenalin aggravates the symptoms of beriberi whilst the pituitary tends to diminish in size. B_1 does not deteriorate if kept in the dark: after many months in the tropics it shows no signs of loss of potency. The neuritic condition is rather a large subject: obviously another factor comes in. In a very few cases the nervous condition is cured dramatically, in other cases the symptoms take months to disappear. The reason is slightly obscure.

Dr. MANSON-BAHR's comment suggests that he is observing possibly a sulphur effect due to the sulphur in the B_1 crystalline compound, as Dr. WRIGHT in West Africa has reported curative effects on similar conditions with the use of organic sulphur compounds. In the fulminating or pure cardiac case no mouth lesions are present.

Dr. A. P. Meiklejohn (Oxford): May I draw attention to the work of Drs. WEISS and WILKINS? They have lately described a syndrome resembling beriberi occurring in Boston, U.S.A., chiefly among alcoholics. Certain features of their work, which I have had the good fortune to see in recent months, is interesting in connection with Dr. HAWES's observation of the occurrence of low diastolic blood pressure in beriberi. They have observed high venous blood pressure associated with normal or rapid peripheral blood flow. This is a further indication that there may be a pronounced degree of peripheral vasodilatation in vitamin B_1 deficiency. One further point: I think that it should be remembered that the metabolism of the kidney has been shown to be disturbed in the vitamin B_1 deficient pigeon, and this may be a factor in cases where the blood pressure is elevated, and also in those cases which subsequently develop nephritis.

Dr. Platt: The question was raised about infantile beriberi. In our series of fulminating cases (PLATT and LU, 1936) was one of infantile beriberi. In this case most marked biochemical changes were noted. The statement was made in this paper that infantile beriberi was probably one of the purest forms of vitamin B_1 deficiency seen in human subjects.

Two other points I would like to comment on.

Firstly, with regard to the so-called atrophic form. I think there is good evidence for the belief that in the development of this condition there are two important factors. One is that the deficiency has persisted for a long time. The other is that there have not been present those intensifying factors which I pointed out were operative in the development of the acute symptoms.

Secondly, in connection with water retention, there is a point of some interest. With the disturbance of metabolism, there might well be changes in the water-binding powers of the cells resulting in an increase of intracellular fluid. The first appearance in the muscle tissue is observed as a hardening of

the muscles not unlike that seen in pseudo-hypertrophic muscular dystrophy. WENCKEBACH has described how, when an incision is made over the calf muscles, the muscles obtrude themselves through the opening. There is, however, no evidence of oozing of fluid. On the other hand, in the grossly wet form of beriberi, when there is some degree of heart failure, if not also of kidney failure, there is no question that considerable amounts of fluid may be obtained by acupuncture.

Professor Hawes : With regard to beriberi in infants, we are finding it easier to prevent attacks by giving the injection to the mother, probably before childbirth or when feeding the baby. The mothers frequently have no signs of beriberi, yet the infant will develop an acute attack and die.

COMMUNICATIONS.

A STUDY OF THE REACTION RATE OF THE SERUM-FORMALIN REACTION IN *TRYPANOSOMA GAMBIENSE* SLEEPING SICKNESS.

BY

C. W. HOPE-GILL, B.M., B.Ch.,
Lately attached Tsetse Investigation, Nigeria.

During recent years attention has been turned to the reaction of GATÉ—better known as the serum-formalin reaction—as an aid in the diagnosis of human trypanosomiasis. Much work has already been done with this reaction in the diagnosis of kala-azar with encouraging results. Trypanosomiasis shares with kala-azar the distinction of producing an exceptional amount of globulin and euglobulin in the blood serum; and, as would therefore be expected, a marked and often rapid gel is formed on the addition of formalin to the sera of patients suffering from these diseases.

It has been shown by MORRISON (1924) and JOHNSON (1925) that from a qualitative point of view the test fails in the diagnosis of trypanosomiasis on account of other pathological conditions producing a positive reaction after a few hours. There is evidence that these globulins are also increased to some extent in other diseases and it therefore is not surprising that under these conditions a gel is also formed by this reaction. The reaction has accordingly—on this account—fallen into some discredit, but a careful study of the test reveals the fact that in trypanosomiasis the gel usually takes a much shorter time to form than in these other pathological conditions.

DYE (1926) working with the *Trypanosoma rhodesiense* type of the disease showed that some value lay in the test when regarded as a time reaction. LEDENTU and VAUCEL (1927), working with the *T. gambiense* type at the Pasteur Institute, Brazzaville, have more recently emphasized the value of the test when the reaction rate is taken into consideration. A series of tests was undertaken, with the reaction rate as the principal factor of importance. The observations, A—G, were performed on a total of 431 subjects. The majority of these were natives from Kano, Bauchi, and Plateau provinces, Nigeria, the remainder being out-patients of the Venereal Diseases Department of St. Thomas's Hospital, London. I was enabled to examine the latter through the courtesy of Dr. T. E. OSMOND, Pathologist to the Department.

the muscles not unlike that seen in pseudo-hypertrophic muscular dystrophy. WENCKEBACH has described how, when an incision is made over the calf muscles, the muscles obtrude themselves through the opening. There is, however, no evidence of oozing of fluid. On the other hand, in the grossly wet form of beriberi, when there is some degree of heart failure, if not also of kidney failure, there is no question that considerable amounts of fluid may be obtained by acupuncture.

Professor Hawes : With regard to beriberi in infants, we are finding it easier to prevent attacks by giving the injection to the mother, probably before childbirth or when feeding the baby. The mothers frequently have no signs of beriberi, yet the infant will develop an acute attack and die.

COMMUNICATIONS.

A STUDY OF THE REACTION RATE OF THE SERUM-FORMALIN REACTION IN *TRYPANOSOMA GAMBIENSE* SLEEPING SICKNESS.

BY

C. W. HOPE-GILL, B.M., B.CH.,
Lately attached Tsetse Investigation, Nigeria.

During recent years attention has been turned to the reaction of GATÉ—better known as the serum-formalin reaction—as an aid in the diagnosis of human trypanosomiasis. Much work has already been done with this reaction in the diagnosis of kala-azar with encouraging results. Trypanosomiasis shares with kala-azar the distinction of producing an exceptional amount of globulin and euglobulin in the blood serum; and, as would therefore be expected, a marked and often rapid gel is formed on the addition of formalin to the sera of patients suffering from these diseases.

It has been shown by MORRISON (1924) and JOHNSON (1925) that from a qualitative point of view the test fails in the diagnosis of trypanosomiasis on account of other pathological conditions producing a positive reaction after a few hours. There is evidence that these globulins are also increased to some extent in other diseases and it therefore is not surprising that under these conditions a gel is also formed by this reaction. The reaction has accordingly—on this account—fallen into some discredit, but a careful study of the test reveals the fact that in trypanosomiasis the gel usually takes a much shorter time to form than in these other pathological conditions.

DYE (1926) working with the *Trypanosoma rhodesiense* type of the disease showed that some value lay in the test when regarded as a time reaction. LEDENTU and VAUCEL (1927), working with the *T. gambiense* type at the Pasteur Institute, Brazzaville, have more recently emphasized the value of the test when the reaction rate is taken into consideration. A series of tests was undertaken, with the reaction rate as the principal factor of importance. The observations, A—G, were performed on a total of 431 subjects. The majority of these were natives from Kano, Bauchi, and Plateau provinces, Nigeria, the remainder being out-patients of the Venereal Diseases Department of St. Thomas's Hospital, London. I was enabled to examine the latter through the courtesy of Dr. T. E. OSMOND, Pathologist to the Department.

the muscles not unlike that seen in pseudo-hypertrophic muscular dystrophy. WENCKEBACH has described how, when an incision is made over the calf muscles, the muscles obtrude themselves through the opening. There is, however, no evidence of oozing of fluid. On the other hand, in the grossly wet form of beriberi, when there is some degree of heart failure, if not also of kidney failure, there is no question that considerable amounts of fluid may be obtained by acupuncture.

Professor Hawes : With regard to beriberi in infants, we are finding it easier to prevent attacks by giving the injection to the mother, probably before childbirth or when feeding the baby. The mothers frequently have no signs of beriberi, yet the infant will develop an acute attack and die.

DIAGRAM I.
TIMED RESULTS OF SERUM-FORMALIN REACTION ON

UNIFIED RESULTS OF SERUM-FORMALIN REACTION ON

SERIES 1.	SERIES 2.	SERIES 3
13 POSITIVE S S CASES	41 APPARENTLY HEALTHY	(T. GAMBIESE +)

[illegible][illegible]

A.—A SUGGESTED STANDARD TECHNIQUE FOR THE PERFORMANCE OF THE SERUM-FORMALIN REACTION.

Preliminary series of tests, not here recorded, were made in order to ascertain the optimum conditions for the reaction as applied to human trypanosomiasis. It was found that in 1 c.c. of serum 2 minims of commercial formalin gave a more rapid gel than the usual 1 minim, while the reaction was not accelerated by increasing the number of minims above 2.

The *technique* therefore was as follows: Into a small test tube, $\frac{1}{2}$ an inch in diameter (internal) by 2 inches in length, was pipetted 1 c.c. of serum or citrated plasma, to which was added 2 minims of 40 per cent. (commercial) formalin. The test tube was then thoroughly shaken on account of the formalin having a tendency to settle at the bottom of the tube, so resulting in a delayed gel. It was important that for these timed reactions there should be a definite and uniform end-point. This was determined by gently inverting the tube without shaking. Failure of the contents to run down the side of the tube was regarded as a positive result.

Uniformity in the diameter of the test tube is therefore essential.

B.—ESTIMATION OF THE VALUE OF THE SERUM-FORMALIN REACTION IN THE DIAGNOSIS OF HUMAN TRYPANOSOMIASIS.

For this purpose tests were performed on the following groups: *Series 1*—Positive sleeping sickness cases (*T. gambiense* demonstrated); *Series 2*—Apparently healthy natives in fly-free country; *Series 3*—Out-patients other than detected cases of trypanosomiasis.

Series 1.—Positive Sleeping Sickness Cases.

This series shows the results of timed formol-gel reactions on 115 cases of sleeping sickness. These are termed positive sleeping sickness cases as *T. gambiense* had been found in the gland juice. They had all attended voluntarily at bush clinics, and were therefore well-established cases of the disease, early cases being very seldom seen.

Diagram 1, Series 1, shows that a positive gel was given within 5 minutes by 40 per cent.; 10 minutes by 59 per cent.; 15 minutes by 72 per cent.; 30 minutes by 82 per cent.; and 60 minutes by 93 per cent. of positive sleeping sickness cases, while 7 per cent. failed to gel within 60 minutes.

Series 2.—Apparently Healthy Natives.

Human trypanosomiasis is so ubiquitous in Kano, Bauchi, and Plateau provinces that it was not easy to obtain a series guaranteed free from latent or active sleeping sickness. These conditions were fulfilled by the village of Richa, on the high ground of the plateau and at some distance from fly country. The pagan population were local in their habits, and examination showed them to be free from trypanosomiasis.

DIAGRAM I.
TIMED RESULTS OF SERUM-FORMALIN REACTION ON

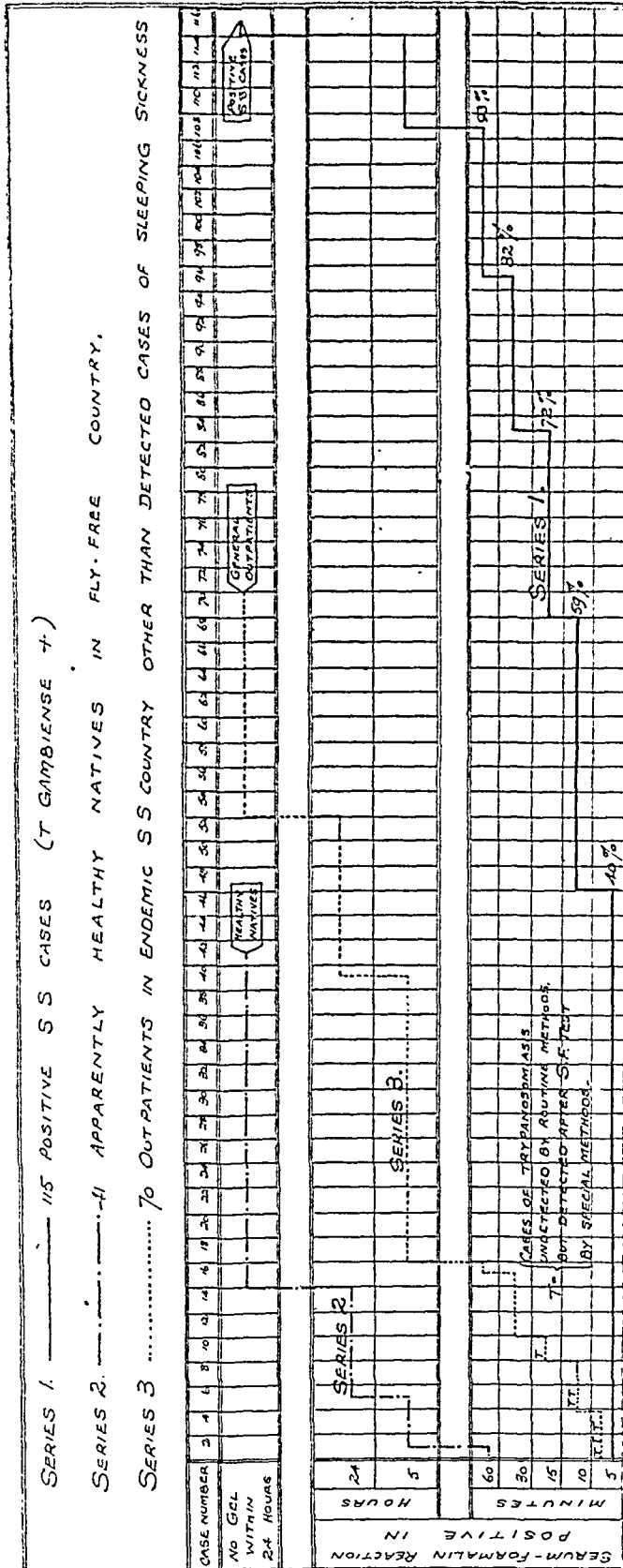


Diagram 1, Series 2, shows that out of forty-one people drawn from the general population of Richa one gave a positive gel within 60 minutes. Nearly 98 per cent. therefore failed to give a positive reaction within 60 minutes.

Series 3.—Out-Patients other than Detected Cases of Trypanosomiasis.

Cases in this series were tested and examined at Gadau, N'igeria, headquarters of the Tsetse Investigation. The patients at Gadau clinic were drawn from the surrounding country where sleeping sickness is endemic. Diagram 1, Series 3, shows that out of a total of seventy out-patients other than cases of detected trypanosomiasis, 16 gave a positive gel within varying periods up to 60 minutes. The latter were not suspected of trypanosomiasis before the serum-formalin reaction was performed. Of the sixteen cases that were positive within 60 minutes one case of leprosy went away before further investigation could be made. The remaining fifteen cases were examined further in order to discover whether any were suffering from undetected trypanosomiasis, as follows:—

1. *Case 10.*—Male aged 40. Seven years' history of debility, serum-formalin test positive in 15 minutes. No glands palpable. Blood, negative. Cerebrospinal fluid: 147 white cells per cmm.: Pandy's phenol globulin and acetic-anhydride tests positive. Kahn test negative. *Diagnosis: Trypanosomiasis.*

2. *Case 18.*—Male aged 35. Four years' history swollen abdomen (ascites). S.F. test positive in 30 minutes. No glands palpable. Blood and C.S.F. examination negative. 10 c.c. blood inoculated into peritoneal cavity of monkey (*Macacus rhesus*): monkey's blood examined for 6 weeks with negative result.

3. *Case 19.*—Female aged 40. Three years' history swollen abdomen (ascites). S.F. test positive in 30 minutes. Examination and monkey inoculation as in Case 18 negative. Test for adhesion phenomenon negative.

4. *Case 22.*—Male aged 35. Six years' history of debility. S.F. test positive in 30 minutes. Kahn test negative. Examination and monkey inoculation as in Case 18 negative. Test for adhesion phenomenon negative.

5. *Case 40.*—Male aged 30. Leg ulcer of 3 weeks' duration. S.F. test positive in 5 minutes. Kahn test positive. Examination of C.S.F.: white cell count of 16 per cmm.: Pandy's and acetic-anhydride tests for globulin positive. Was later proved to have been a recently discharged sleeping sickness case. *Diagnosis: Trypanosomiasis.*

6. *Case 49.*—Male aged 40. Treated for secondary syphilis. S.F. test positive in 5 minutes. Kahn test positive. *T. gambiense* was afterwards found in gland juice and blood. C.S.F. examination: white cell count 15 per cmm.: tests for increased globulin positive. *Diagnosis: Trypanosomiasis.*

7. *Case 55.*—Male aged 37. Two months' history of debility. S.F. test positive in 10 minutes. Examination of glands, blood, and C.S.F. negative. Test for adhesion phenomenon positive. *Diagnosis: Trypanosomiasis.*

8. *Case 57.*—Male aged 35. Bright's disease with much free fluid. S.F. test positive in 5 minutes. Examination of blood and C.S.F. negative. Glands not palpable. Test for adhesion phenomenon negative.

9. *Case 66.*—Male aged 35. Three years' history of debility. S.F. test positive in 20 minutes. Kahn test positive. Adhesion phenomenon test negative.

10. *Case 65.*—Male aged 27. Secondary syphilis. S.F. test positive in 30 minutes. Kahn test positive. Test for adhesion phenomenon negative.

11. *Case 73.*—Male aged 31. Three years' history of gonorrhoea. S.F. test positive in 20 minutes. Kahn test negative. Test for adhesion phenomenon negative.

12. *Case 85.*—Male aged 25. One year's history of pain and swelling of right hip joint. S.F. test positive in 60 minutes. Kahn test negative. Test for adhesion phenomenon negative.

13. *Case 88.*—Male aged 31. Amoebic dysentery. S.F. test positive in 10 minutes. Kahn test negative. Test for adhesion phenomenon negative.

14. *Case 107.*—Male aged 30. Seven years' debility. S.F. test positive in 5 minutes. Kahn test negative. Examination of C.S.F.: white cell count 228 per cmm.: globulin tests positive. *Diagnosis: Trypanosomiasis.*

15. *Case 125.*—Male aged 40. Five years' history of debility. S.F. test positive in 10 minutes. C.S.F.: *T. gambiense* positive: white cell count 148 per cmm.: globulin positive. *Diagnosis: Trypanosomiasis.*

Six cases, Cases 10, 40, 49, 55, 107 and 125, are thus classed as undetected cases of trypanosomiasis. The remaining nine are taken to be free from the disease on the findings of the adhesion phenomenon and inoculation of blood into monkeys. Nine out of the series of sixty-nine are therefore classified as false positives (13 per cent.). It should be stated that no provocative doses of tryparsamide were administered before the test for the adhesion phenomenon. With regard to these results with the adhesion phenomenon DUKE and WALLACE (1930) reached the conclusion that a single, or even a number of, negative observations do not exclude trypanosomiasis: a positive reaction on the other hand indicates recent or actual infection with a trypanosome of the same group. I am indebted to Dr. H. M. O. LESTER for performing these tests for the adhesion phenomenon.

The following data are now available:—

(1) 93 per cent. of proved cases of human trypanosomiasis have given a positive serum-formalin reaction within 60 minutes.

(2) Less than 1 per cent. of proved cases of trypanosomiasis have failed to give a positive reaction within 24 hours.

(3) Nearly 98 per cent. of apparently healthy natives free from trypanosomiasis have failed to give a positive reaction within 60 minutes.

(4) 13 per cent. of patients suffering from pathological conditions other than trypanosomiasis have given a positive reaction within 60 minutes.

C.—THE INFLUENCE, IF ANY, OF CERTAIN THERAPEUTIC DRUGS ON THE SERUM-FORMALIN REACTION WHEN ADDED TO THE SERUM *in vitro*.

The drugs tested were Bayer 205, tryparsamide, and neosalvarsan. Normal saline was used as a control.

Series 4.—Positive Sleeping Sickness Cases.

The serum was obtained from 24 previously untreated positive sleeping sickness cases. Five test tubes were necessary for each serum tested. Into each test tube was pipetted 1 c.c. of the serum to be tested. Into each of four test tubes respectively was dropped 2 minims of freshly prepared 10 per cent. Bayer 205, 10 per cent. tryparsamide, 10 per cent. neosalvarsan, and normal saline. The fifth test tube contained 1 c.c. of serum only. After shaking, to

each of the five test tubes was added 2 minims of 40 per cent. formalin as in the normal performance of the test. The resulting reactions were timed and are recorded in Diagram II, Series 4.

The results with Bayer 205 are comparable with those obtained by DYE (1926), the reaction being considerably delayed in each case. With tryparsamide the reaction was delayed slightly more than was the case with the normal saline control. The results with neosalvarsan differed very slightly from those with normal saline, and are not recorded.

It is shown, therefore, that Bayer 205 *in vitro* exercises a considerable retarding effect upon the reaction. It remains to discover whether this retarding action is exercised when other pathological sera are used, or whether the action is selective for the serum of human trypanosomiasis. The retarding action of tryparsamide is too slight to be of possible value, while that of neosalvarsan is negligible.

D.—THE INFLUENCE OF PREVIOUS TREATMENT WITH TRYPARSAMIDE UPON THE REACTION WHEN USING SERUM ALONE, AND WHEN THE ABOVE DRUGS ARE ADDED *in vitro*.

Series 5.—Previously Treated Positive Sleeping Sickness Cases.

These had undergone an insufficient course of treatment with tryparsamide about 5 months previously, and had relapsed. Diagram II, Series 5, shows that the reaction rate under these circumstances is definitely retarded. The action *in vitro* of Bayer 205 and tryparsamide was also tested as in Series 4, and shows a similar retarding effect in relation to the results obtained when using serum alone.

Accordingly, in performing the serum-formalin reaction on cases of trypanosomiasis the question of previous treatment with tryparsamide should be considered. In cases which have undergone previous treatment, the possible retarding effect of this should be borne in mind.

E.—THE VALUE OF THE TEST AS AN INDICATION OF THE PROGRESS OF A CASE OF TRYPANOSOMIASIS UNDER TREATMENT.

Series 6.—Positive Sleeping Sickness Cases.

Each case of this series was under daily observation, and the clinical progress was carefully noted and recorded. The serum-formalin test was performed before treatment, and again at the end of a course of tryparsamide based on a dosage of 20 grammes per adult. Referring to Diagram II, Series 6, the continuous line indicates the timed results of the test before treatment, and the dotted line the results after treatment. In the majority of cases the effect of treatment was to delay the reaction, but results were variable, and often did not coincide with the records of clinical progress.

It is concluded that the test affords no reliable indication of the progress of a case of trypanosomiasis under treatment.

F.—A COMPARISON OF THE USE OF SERUM AND CITRATED PLASMA RESPECTIVELY
IN THE PERFORMANCE OF THE TEST.

Series 7.—Positive Sleeping Sickness Cases.

Diagram III, Series 7, shows the timed results of the serum-formalin reaction when serum was used.

Series 8.—Positive Sleeping Sickness Cases.

Diagram III, Series 8, shows the results similarly timed when citrated plasma was used.

Similar results are obtained in each series so that serum and citrated plasma are equally suitable for the performance of the test.

G.—ESTIMATION OF THE INFLUENCE OF SYPHILIS UPON THE SERUM-
FORMALIN REACTION.

Series 9.—European Syphilitics.

These were out-patients of both sexes from the Venereal Diseases Department of St. Thomas's Hospital. In each case the Wassermann reaction was positive. All stages of syphilis are included as shown in the table below. Thirty-four of these had had no previous anti-syphilitic treatment, while the remainder were in various stages of treatment. In every case the serum showed no gel within a period of 24 hours.

TABLE.

Serum-Formalin Reaction on Sera of European Syphilitics.
Wassermann Reaction Positive.

Stage of Disease.	Under Treatment.	Previously Untreated.
Primary	3	11
Secondary	6	14
Tertiary	24	4
Latent	13	3
Congenital	4	2
Tabes dorsalis	6	0
Totals	56	34
Total number tested	90	
Results of test	No gel within 24 hours in every case.	

Series 10.—Hausa Syphilitics.

These were Hausas of both sexes. In every case the Kahn test was strongly positive. No previous treatment had been given. In performing the Kahn test two tubes were used instead of three, the strongest serum-suspension mixture being eliminated. The results of the timed serum-formalin reactions in Series 9 and 10 are demonstrated in Diagram III.

It is evident, therefore, that in performing the serum-formalin test for the diagnosis of trypanosomiasis the influence of syphilis as a disturbing factor is negligible.

CONCLUSIONS AND COMMENTS.

1. The serum-formalin reaction, when positive within 60 minutes under the conditions described, is strong evidence in favour of the presence of trypanosomiasis; when negative within this time limit it is strong evidence against the presence of this disease; and when negative after 24 hours is practically diagnostic of the absence of the disease.

2. A serum-formalin reaction positive for trypanosomiasis is, therefore, one which within an hour gives a positive gel according to the technique described in this paper. This would apply to a country such as tropical Africa where *T. gambiense* sleeping sickness but not kala-azar, which also gives a positive reaction, is endemic.

3. The presence of Bayer 205 in the serum *in vitro* considerably retards the end-point of the reaction.

4. A retarding effect is also caused by previous treatment with tryparsamide.

5. The serum-formalin reaction gives no reliable information as to the progress of a case of human trypanosomiasis under treatment.

6. The reaction takes place equally well whether serum or citrated plasma is employed.

7. Interference by the presence of syphilis is negligible.

8. These tests were carried out on the sera of patients who presented themselves voluntarily for treatment in a strongly endemic area, and the majority were therefore comparatively advanced cases of trypanosomiasis. It remains to be shown what results would be obtained in cases diagnosed in the course of a mass examination where many cases complain of no symptoms and are often only mildly affected by the disease.

REFERENCES.

- DUKE, H. LYNTHURST & WALLACE, J. M. (1930). "Red cell adhesion" in trypanosomiasis of man and animals. *Parasitology*, 22, 414-456.
- DYE, W. H. (1926). The serum-formalin reaction in *T. rhodesiense* infection. *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 20, 74-92.
- JOHNSON, W. B. (1925). The serum-formalin reaction upon sera of natives of Nigeria. *Ibid.*, 19, 328-329.
- LEDENTU, G., & VAUCEL, M. (1927). Comparative value of formol-gel and auto-agglutination of red cells in diagnosis of trypanosomiasis. *Bull. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 20, 737-741.
- MORRISON, H. (1924). The serum-formalin reaction in human trypanosomiasis. *R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 18, 214-216.

SERUM-Format	POST TIME	MINUTES	4	8	12	16	20	24	28	32	36	40	44	48	52	56	60	64	68	72	76	80	84	88	92	96	100	104	108	112	116	120	124	128	132	136	140	144	148	152	156	160	164	168	172	176	180	184	188	192	196	200	204	208	212	216	220	224	228	232	236	240	244	248	252	256	260	264	268	272	276	280	284	288	292	296	300	304	308	312	316	320	324	328	332	336	340	344	348	352	356	360	364	368	372	376	380	384	388	392	396	400	404	408	412	416	420	424	428	432	436	440	444	448	452	456	460	464	468	472	476	480	484	488	492	496	500	504	508	512	516	520	524	528	532	536	540	544	548	552	556	560	564	568	572	576	580	584	588	592	596	600	604	608	612	616	620	624	628	632	636	640	644	648	652	656	660	664	668	672	676	680	684	688	692	696	700	704	708	712	716	720	724	728	732	736	740	744	748	752	756	760	764	768	772	776	780	784	788	792	796	800	804	808	812	816	820	824	828	832	836	840	844	848	852	856	860	864	868	872	876	880	884	888	892	896	900	904	908	912	916	920	924	928	932	936	940	944	948	952	956	960	964	968	972	976	980	984	988	992	996	1000	1004	1008	1012	1016	1020	1024	1028	1032	1036	1040	1044	1048	1052	1056	1060	1064	1068	1072	1076	1080	1084	1088	1092	1096	1100	1104	1108	1112	1116	1120	1124	1128	1132	1136	1140	1144	1148	1152	1156	1160	1164	1168	1172	1176	1180	1184	1188	1192	1196	1200	1204	1208	1212	1216	1220	1224	1228	1232	1236	1240	1244	1248	1252	1256	1260	1264	1268	1272	1276	1280	1284	1288	1292	1296	1300	1304	1308	1312	1316	1320	1324	1328	1332	1336	1340	1344	1348	1352	1356	1360	1364	1368	1372	1376	1380	1384	1388	1392	1396	1400	1404	1408	1412	1416	1420	1424	1428	1432	1436	1440	1444	1448	1452	1456	1460	1464	1468	1472	1476	1480	1484	1488	1492	1496	1500	1504	1508	1512	1516	1520	1524	1528	1532	1536	1540	1544	1548	1552	1556	1560	1564	1568	1572	1576	1580	1584	1588	1592	1596	1600	1604	1608	1612	1616	1620	1624	1628	1632	1636	1640	1644	1648	1652	1656	1660	1664	1668	1672	1676	1680	1684	1688	1692	1696	1700	1704	1708	1712	1716	1720	1724	1728	1732	1736	1740	1744	1748	1752	1756	1760	1764	1768	1772	1776	1780	1784	1788	1792	1796	1800	1804	1808	1812	1816	1820	1824	1828	1832	1836	1840	1844	1848	1852	1856	1860	1864	1868	1872	1876	1880	1884	1888	1892	1896	1900	1904	1908	1912	1916	1920	1924	1928	1932	1936	1940	1944	1948	1952	1956	1960	1964	1968	1972	1976	1980	1984	1988	1992	1996	2000	2004	2008	2012	2016	2020	2024	2028	2032	2036	2040	2044	2048	2052	2056	2060	2064	2068	2072	2076	2080	2084	2088	2092	2096	2100	2104	2108	2112	2116	2120	2124	2128	2132	2136	2140	2144	2148	2152	2156	2160	2164	2168	2172	2176	2180	2184	2188	2192	2196	2200	2204	2208	2212	2216	2220	2224	2228	2232	2236	2240	2244	2248	2252	2256	2260	2264	2268	2272	2276	2280	2284	2288	2292	2296	2300	2304	2308	2312	2316	2320	2324	2328	2332	2336	2340	2344	2348	2352	2356	2360	2364	2368	2372	2376	2380	2384	2388	2392	2396	2400	2404	2408	2412	2416	2420	2424	2428	2432	2436	2440	2444	2448	2452	2456	2460	2464	2468	2472	2476	2480	2484	2488	2492	2496	2500	2504	2508	2512	2516	2520	2524	2528	2532	2536	2540	2544	2548	2552	2556	2560	2564	2568	2572	2576	2580	2584	2588	2592	2596	2600	2604	2608	2612	2616	2620	2624	2628	2632	2636	2640	2644	2648	2652	2656	2660	2664	2668	2672	2676	2680	2684	2688	2692	2696	2700	2704	2708	2712	2716	2720	2724	2728	2732	2736	2740	2744	2748	2752	2756	2760	2764	2768	2772	2776	2780	2784	2788	2792	2796	2800	2804	2808	2812	2816	2820	2824	2828	2832	2836	2840	2844	2848	2852	2856	2860	2864	2868	2872	2876	2880	2884	2888	2892	2896	2900	2904	2908	2912	2916	2920	2924	2928	2932	2936	2940	2944	2948	2952	2956	2960	2964	2968	2972	2976	2980	2984	2988	2992	2996	3000	3004	3008	3012	3016	3020	3024	3028	3032	3036	3040	3044	3048	3052	3056	3060	3064	3068	3072	3076	3080	3084	3088	3092	3096	3100	3104	3108	3112	3116	3120	3124	3128	3132	3136	3140	3144	3148	3152	3156	3160	3164	3168	3172	3176	3180	3184	3188	3192	3196	3200	3204	3208	3212	3216	3220	3224	3228	3232	3236	3240	3244	3248	3252	3256	3260	3264	3268	3272	3276	3280	3284	3288	3292	3296	3300	3304	3308	3312	3316	3320	3324	3328	3332	3336	3340	3344	3348	3352	3356	3360	3364	3368	3372	3376	3380	3384	3388	3392	3396	3400	3404	3408	3412	3416	3420	3424	3428	3432	3436	3440	3444	3448	3452	3456	3460	3464	3468	3472	3476	3480	3484	3488	3492	3496	3500	3504	3508	3512	3516	3520	3524	3528	3532	3536	3540	3544	3548	3552	3556	3560	3564	3568	3572	3576	3580	3584	3588	3592	3596	3600	3604	3608	3612	3616	3620	3624	3628	3632	3636	3640	3644	3648	3652	3656	3660	3664	3668	3672	3676	3680	3684	3688	3692	3696	3700	3704	3708	3712	3716	3720	3724	3728	3732	3736	3740	3744	3748	3752	3756	3760	3764	3768	3772	3776	3780	3784	3788	3792	3796	3800	3804	3808	3812	3816	3820	3824	3828	3832	3836	3840	3844	3848	3852	3856	3860	3864	3868	3872	3876	3880	3884	3888	3892	3896	3900	3904	3908	3912	3916	3920	3924	3928	3932	3936	3940	3944	3948	3952	3956	3960	3964	3968	3972	3976	3980	3984	3988	3992	3996	4000	4004	4008	4012	4016	4020	4024	4028	4032	4036	4040	4044	4048	4052	4056	4060	4064	4068	4072	4076	4080	4084	4088	4092	4096	4100	4104	4108	4112	4116	4120	4124	4128	4132	4136	4140	4144	4148	4152	4156	4160	4164	4168	4172	4176	4180	4184	4188	4192	4196	4200	4204	4208	4212	4216	4220	4224	4228	4232	4236	4240	4244	4248	4252	4256	4260	4264	4268	4272	4276	4280	4284	4288	4292	4296	4300	4304	4308	4312	4316	4320	4324	4328	4332	4336	4340	4344	4348	4352	4356	4360	4364	4368	4372	4376	4380	4384	4388	4392	4396	4400	4404	4408	4412	4416	4420	4424	4428	4432	4436	4440	4444	4448	4452	4456	4460	4464	4468	4472	4476	4480	4484	4488	4492	4496	4500	4504	4508	4512	4516	4520	4524	4528	4532	4536	4540	4544	4548	4552	4556	4560	4564	4568	4572	4576	4580	4584	4588	4592	4596	4600	4604	4608	4612	4616	4620	4624	4628	4632	4636	4640	4644	4648	4652	4656	4660	4664	4668	4672	4676	4680	4684	4688	4692	4696	4700	4704	4708	4712	4716	4720	4724	4728	4732	4736	4740	4744	4748	4752	4756	4760	4764	4768	4772	4776	4780	4784	4788	4792	4796	4800	4804	4808	4812	4816	4820	4824	4828	4832	4836	4840	4844	4848	4852	4856	4860	4864	4868	4872	4876	4880	4884	4888	4892	4896	4900	4904	4908	4912	4916	4920	4924	4928	4932	4936	4940	4944	4948	4952	4956	4960	4964	4968	4972	4976	4980	4984	4988	4992	4996	5000	5004	5008	5012	5016	5020	5024	5028	5032	5036	5040	5044	5048	5052	5056	5060	5064	5068	5072	5076	5080	5084	5088	5092	5096	5100	5104	5108	5112	5116	5120	5124	5128	5132	5136	5140	5144	5148	5152	5156	5160	5164	5168	5172	5176	5180	5184	5188	5192	5196	5200	5204	5208	5212	5216	5220	5224	5228	5232	5236	5240	5244	5248	5252	5256	5260	5264	5268	5272	5276	5280	5284	5288	5292	5296	5300	5304	5308	5312	5316	5320	5324	5328	5332	5336	5340	5344	5348	5352	5356	5360	5364	5368	5372	5376	5380	5384	5388	5392	5396	5400	5404	5408	5412	5416	5420	5424	5428	5432	5436	5440	5444	5448	5452	5456	5460	5464	5468	5472	5476	5480	5484	5488	5492	5496	5500	5504	5508	5512	5516	5520	5524	5528	5532	5536	5540	5544	5548	5552	5556	5560	5564	5568	5572	5576	5580	5584	5588	5592	5596	5600	5604	5608	5612	561
--------------	-----------	---------	---	---	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	-----

MORPHOLOGICAL AND TAXONOMIC STUDIES ON MAMMALIAN TRYPANOSOMES.

IV. BIOMETRICAL STUDY OF THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN *Trypanosoma uniforme* AND *T. vivax*.

BY

C. A. HOARE, D.Sc.,

AND

J. C. BROOM, M.D.

From the Wellcome Bureau of Scientific Research, London.

CONTENTS.

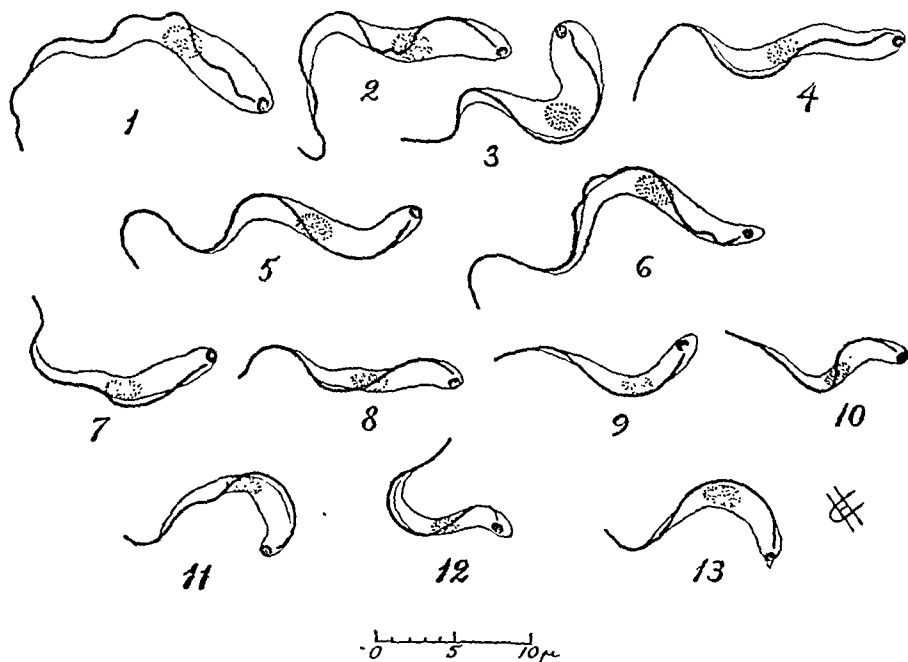
	PAGE		PAGE
I. INTRODUCTION ...	517	VI. GENERAL DISCUSSION ...	527
II. RECORDS OF <i>T. uniforme</i> ...	519	1. Statistics ...	527
III. MATERIAL AND METHODS ...	522	2. Systematics ...	531
IV. MEASUREMENTS OF <i>T. vivax</i> ...	524	VII. SUMMARY ...	533
V. MEASUREMENTS OF <i>T. uniforme</i> ...	526	REFERENCES ...	533

I.—INTRODUCTION.

Amongst the pathogenic mammalian trypanosomes the *vivax* group is more clearly defined than the other groups, in which there occurs a certain degree of morphological overlapping. Thus, the trypanosomes of the monomorphic *evansi* group are similar to the "long" forms of the polymorphic *brucei* group which can be differentiated from the former by the presence of the "short stumpy" forms. However, old laboratory strains of the polymorphic trypanosomes—in which the "short" forms have disappeared—become morphologically very similar to, if not indistinguishable from, trypano-

somes of the *evansi* group. As regards the *congolense* group, the short forms of *Trypanosoma congolense* are not unlike the "stumpy" trypanosomes in the *brucei* group, while some forms of *T. simiae* resemble the "intermediate" forms in the last named group.

The *vivax* group is represented by monomorphic trypanosomes with a peculiar combination of characters not found in the groups mentioned above. The body is somewhat club-shaped, being typically swollen and rounded at the posterior end and tapering towards the anterior (flagellar) end. The undulating membrane is usually very feebly developed (except in *T. caprae*, as described by BRUCE *et al.*: *v. infra*) and there is a distinct free flagellum. The kinetoplast* is typically terminal (Text-Fig. A, 1, 3, 5, 7, 10, 11), but



TEXT-FIG. A: 1 to 6—*T. vivax* (1, 2—caprine strain, Nigeria; 3, 4—bovine, Uganda; 5, 6—bovine, Mauritius). 7 to 13—*T. uniforme* (7, 8, 9—bovine strain, Belgian Congo; 10, 11—situtunga, Uganda; 12, 13—bovine, Uganda). (All figures were drawn with the aid of a camera lucida at $\times 2,000$.)

may be subterminal, in which case it is usually also marginal or lateral (Text-Fig. A, 2, 8, 9, 12). The most remarkable feature of the kinetoplast is its size, which is considerably greater than that of the kinetoplast in any of the groups referred to above (*evansi*, *congolense*, *brucei*). In this respect it is comparable to the dimensions of this structure in members of the *lewisi* group.

* We have used the term "kinetoplast" in its original sense (cf. ALEXEIEFF: *C.R. Soc. Biol.* 80, 1917, 512), to denote the kinetonucleus alone (without the blepharoplast).

Though the large size of the kinetoplast in the *vivax* group is well known, its diagnostic value does not seem to have been sufficiently appreciated.

The biological properties of all the members of the *vivax* group are similar: they are infective to various wild and domestic ungulates, but not to laboratory rodents (except the rabbit, which is to some extent susceptible to *T. vivax*), and they are transmitted by tsetse-flies in which their development takes place in the proboscis exclusively.

Of the three species comprising the *vivax* group (*T. vivax*, *T. caprae*, *T. uniforme*) *T. vivax* is the best known and is commonly encountered in different parts of tropical Africa, as well as in Mauritius and possibly in South America (*T. viennei*). Very little is known about *T. caprae*, which has so far been recorded only from the former German East Africa and from Nyasaland, and which—as far as we are aware—has not been reported again since 1914. This trypanosome has the same length and general appearance as *T. vivax*. It should be noted, however, that there is a discrepancy between the description of *T. caprae* as given by KLEINE (1910) and KLEINE and TAUTE (1911), on the one hand, and that by BRUCE and his collaborators (1913) on the other hand. In the account and figures of the German authors the trypanosome is indistinguishable from *T. vivax*, and—like *T. bovis* (= *T. vivax*) recorded in the same publications—it evidently owes its name merely to the host in which it was found. However, the trypanosome described by the British authors differs both from *T. vivax* and from KLEINE's *T. caprae* in the possession of a well-developed undulating membrane and in the heavier (broader) build of its body.

It would thus appear that KLEINE's trypanosome is identical with *T. vivax*, the name *T. caprae* Kleine, 1910, being actually a synonym of *T. vivax* and no more available under the Rules of Zoological Nomenclature. In that case, a new name should be given to the trypanosome described by BRUCE *et al.* under the name "*T. caprae*." It is curious that these facts which are immediately apparent on comparison of the original figures illustrating *T. vivax* and *T. caprae* (*sensu* KLEINE and BRUCE respectively) have escaped the attention of all previous authors. The problem of *T. caprae* can, however, only be settled by re-examination of the trypanosomes in question, and need not concern us any further in this paper.

The remaining species of this group, *T. uniforme*, with which we are mainly concerned in this work, will be dealt with in greater detail in the next section.

II.—RECORDS OF *T. uniforme*.

T. uniforme was first described and named by BRUCE *et al.* (1911) who discovered it in several bovines in Uganda. *T. uniforme* was subsequently recorded from antelopes (bushbuck, situtunga, waterbuck) and buffalo in Uganda (FRASER and DUKE, 1912a, 1912b* ; DUKE, 1912, 1913a, 1913b, 1916).

*According to a personal communication received from Dr. H. L. DUKE, he and FRASER recognized the trypanosome studied by them as a new species independently of BRUCE and his co-workers, and later identified it with the newly-created *T. uniforme*.

This trypanosome was also reported from bovines in Zululand (CURSON, 1928) and in the Belgian Congo (SCHWETZ and STORCK, 1930; SCHWETZ, 1931). In Uganda *T. uniforme* was again recovered from situtunga by one of us (HOARE, 1932*) and from bovines by Dr. G. N. HALL.† Finally there is some evidence of the occurrence of *T. uniforme* in the domestic pig (a mixed infection with *T. simiae*: cf. HORNBY, 1923; HOARE, 1936b).

The naturally infected hosts recorded up to the present and the geographical distribution of *T. uniforme*, checked from the original sources, are summarized in the following list.

NATURAL HOSTS AND DISTRIBUTION OF *T. uniforme*.

(1) *Bos taurus* (Domestic cattle): Uganda (BRUCE *et al.*, 1911); Uganda, Buvuma Island (HALL, 1927: unpublished); Zululand (CURSON, 1928); Belgian Congo, Province Orientale (SCHWETZ and STORCK, 1930: SCHWETZ, 1931).

(2) *Syncerus caffer* (Buffalo): Uganda, near Lakes Edward and George (DUKE, 1913b).

(3) *Tragelaphus scriptus* (Bushbuck): Uganda, northern shore of Victoria Nyanza (FRASER and DUKE, 1912a, 1912b); Uganda, Kibanga (DUKE, 1912); Uganda, Masindi (DUKE, 1916).

(4) *Tragelaphus* (= *Limnotragus*) *spekei*‡ (Situtunga): Uganda, northern shore of Victoria Nyanza (FRASER and DUKE, 1912a, 1912b); Uganda, Kibanga and Damba Island (DUKE, 1912); Uganda, Mpumu (DUKE, 1913a); Uganda, vicinity of Entebbe (HOARE, 1932*).

(5) *Cobus ellipsiprymnus* (Waterbuck): Uganda, near Lakes Edward and George (DUKE, 1913a).

(6) ? *Sus scrofa* (Domestic pig): Tanganyika (HORNBY, 1923; cf. HOARE, 1936b).

The records of *T. uniforme* are thus seen to be relatively scanty and its distribution restricted, for, with the exception of the isolated findings in Zululand and Tanganyika, it has hitherto been found only within a limited area extending from the northern shores and islands of Victoria Nyanza into western Uganda and, over the border, into eastern Belgian Congo.

The apparent rareness of this trypanosome, on the one hand, and its similarity to *T. vivax*, on the other, have led to some scepticism regarding the independent status of *T. uniforme*. This attitude found expression at two conferences on trypanosomiasis recently held in Entebbe, Uganda.

*In the "List of Blood Parasites Collected in Uganda" (HOARE, 1932: p. 222) *T. uniforme* was inadvertently attributed to the bushbuck (*loc. cit.*, No. 31), though this parasite was actually found in the situtunga; whereas *T. ingens*—ascribed to the last-named antelope (*loc. cit.*, No. 27)—was found in the bushbuck.

†A collection of blood-films taken from bovines on Buvuma Island; Victoria Nyanza, was kindly given to one of us (C.A.H.) by Dr. G. N. HALL. The films from two of the bovines represented pure infections of *T. uniforme*, while others were infected with *T. congolense*, *T. vivax* and *T. brucei*. However, the occurrence of *T. uniforme* was not recorded in HALL's report of trypanosomiasis on Buvuma Island [Report of Veterinary Pathologist: In *Ann. Rept. Vet. Dept., Uganda, for 1927* (publ. 1928), Appendix I, p. 22].

‡Like the bushbuck, the situtunga was formerly included in the genus *Tragelaphus*, from which it was subsequently removed to the genus *Limnotragus*. However, in view of the successful hybridization between these two antelopes (cf. H. L. DUKE, 1934, *Uganda J.*, 2, 159) it would appear that they should both be retained in the same genus, *Tragelaphus*.

The position of *T. uniforme* was first discussed at the "Conference on Tsetse and Trypanosomiasis (animal and human) Research" in 1933 (publ. 1934: p. 17), at which METTAM stated that he "had made certain experiments with this trypanosome which had convinced him that it was identical with *T. vivax*," while DUKE "considered that the question had not yet been settled because he was firmly convinced that certain characteristics associated with *T. uniforme* definitely marked it off from *T. vivax*." The Conference agreed to include in the programme of research "the further investigation of the identity of *T. uniforme*," a decision which met with the approval of the "East Africa Sub-Committee of the Tsetse Fly Committee" appointed by the Colonial Office (See Report, 1935: p. 46).

The question of *T. uniforme* was again raised at the "Conference on the Co-ordination of Tsetse and Trypanosomiasis (animal and human) Research in East Africa" in 1936. HORNBY (*loc. cit.*, p. 27) proposed that "those who favour the retention of this name [*T. uniforme*] as valid should at least furnish stained specimens which can be critically compared with similar specimens of *T. vivax*," adding: "It is significant that, in spite of increased work on trypanosomiasis throughout Africa, not a single article dealing with *T. uniforme* appears to have been published in recent years." METTAM (*loc. cit.*, p. 18) reiterated his opinion that *T. uniforme* was probably a synonym of *T. vivax*, and the Conference again agreed that this question stands in need of reinvestigation.

Unfortunately, METTAM provided no evidence in support of his contention, either in the reports of the Conferences or in any other publication. As regards HORNBY's second remark, it is obvious that he had overlooked the recent observations on *T. uniforme* in the Belgian Congo (SCHWETZ and STORCK, 1930; SCHWETZ, 1931) and the record from Zululand (CURSON, 1928). It is true, however, that this species had not been reported between 1916 and 1928.

It is our firm belief that the sporadic nature of the records of *T. uniforme* is due not so much to its rareness or to its focal distribution, as to failure on the part of observers to recognize and differentiate this species. As soon as its presence was established in Uganda it was found to be the most common trypanosome on the northern shore and islands of Lake Victoria (DUKE, 1912, 1913a). Its continued presence there in 1927 and 1928 was confirmed by the findings mentioned above (HALL, HOARE: cf. p. 520). According to SCHWETZ (1931) this species ranks second in importance as a parasite of cattle in the Stanleyville district of the Belgian Congo.*

Moreover, both in Uganda and in the Congo *T. uniforme* was found to be co-existent with *T. vivax*, the two species occurring not only in the same localities, but in mixed infections of the same host. In the case of such double infections it is evident that the differentiation of the two trypanosomes presents no difficulty.

While some observers (HORNBY, METTAM) appear to doubt the very existence of *T. uniforme* as a distinct parasite, others—though recognizing its peculiarities—are doubtful about its specific independence. Thus, according

*Dr. C. M. WENYON informs us that Dr. SCHWETZ submitted to him over a period of a year or more films showing a trypanosome which Dr. WENYON identified, on account of its dimensions, as *T. uniforme*. The repeated occurrence of this trypanosome in the films was so unexpected that Dr. WENYON began to doubt his diagnosis of *T. uniforme* and to wonder if he was not actually dealing with *T. vivax*. Finally, however, Dr. SCHWETZ sent a film containing a distinctly larger trypanosome which was undoubtedly *T. vivax*: an occurrence which served to confirm Dr. WENYON's earlier identification of *T. uniforme* (cf. also SCHWETZ and STORCK, 1930, p. 639).

This trypanosome was also reported from bovines in Zululand (CURSON, 1928) and in the Belgian Congo (SCHWETZ and STORCK, 1930; SCHWETZ, 1931). In Uganda *T. uniforme* was again recovered from situtunga by one of us (HOARE, 1932*) and from bovines by Dr. G. N. HALL.† Finally there is some evidence of the occurrence of *T. uniforme* in the domestic pig (a mixed infection with *T. simiae*: cf. HORNBY, 1923; HOARE, 1936b).

The naturally infected hosts recorded up to the present and the geographical distribution of *T. uniforme*, checked from the original sources, are summarized in the following list.

NATURAL HOSTS AND DISTRIBUTION OF *T. uniforme*.

(1) *Bos taurus* (Domestic cattle): Uganda (BRUCE *et al.*, 1911); Uganda, Buvuma Island (HALL, 1927: unpublished); Zululand (CURSON, 1928); Belgian Congo, Province Orientale (SCHWETZ and STORCK, 1930; SCHWETZ, 1931).

(2) *Syncerus caffer* (Buffalo): Uganda, near Lakes Edward and George (DUKE, 1913b).

(3) *Tragelaphus scriptus* (Bushbuck): Uganda, northern shore of Victoria Nyanza (FRASER and DUKE, 1912a, 1912b); Uganda, Kibanga (DUKE, 1912); Uganda, Masindi (DUKE, 1916).

(4) *Tragelaphus* (= *Limnotragus*) *spekei*‡ (Situtunga): Uganda, northern shore of Victoria Nyanza (FRASER and DUKE, 1912a, 1912b); Uganda, Kibanga and Damba Island (DUKE, 1912); Uganda, Mpumu (DUKE, 1913a); Uganda, vicinity of Entebbe (HOARE, 1932*).

(5) *Cobus ellipsiprymnus* (Waterbuck): Uganda, near Lakes Edward and George (DUKE, 1913a).

(6) ? *Sus scrofa* (Domestic pig): Tanganyika (HORNBY, 1923; cf. HOARE, 1936b).

The records of *T. uniforme* are thus seen to be relatively scanty and its distribution restricted, for, with the exception of the isolated findings in Zululand and Tanganyika, it has hitherto been found only within a limited area extending from the northern shores and islands of Victoria Nyanza into western Uganda and, over the border, into eastern Belgian Congo.

The apparent rareness of this trypanosome, on the one hand, and its similarity to *T. vivax*, on the other, have led to some scepticism regarding the independent status of *T. uniforme*. This attitude found expression at two conferences on trypanosomiasis recently held in Entebbe, Uganda.

*In the "List of Blood Parasites Collected in Uganda" (HOARE, 1932: p. 222) *T. uniforme* was inadvertently attributed to the bushbuck (*loc. cit.*, No. 31), though this parasite was actually found in the situtunga; whereas *T. ingens*—ascribed to the last-named antelope (*loc. cit.*, No. 27)—was found in the bushbuck.

†A collection of blood-films taken from bovines on Buvuma Island, Victoria Nyanza, was kindly given to one of us (C.A.H.) by Dr. G. N. HALL. The films from two of the bovines represented pure infections of *T. uniforme*, while others were infected with *T. congolense*, *T. vivax* and *T. brucei*. However, the occurrence of *T. uniforme* was not recorded in HALL's report of trypanosomiasis on Buvuma Island [Report of Veterinary Pathologist: In *Ann. Rept. Vet. Dept., Uganda, for 1927* (publ. 1928), Appendix I, p. 22].

‡Like the bushbuck, the situtunga was formerly included in the genus *Tragelaphus*, from which it was subsequently removed to the genus *Limnotragus*. However, in view of the successful hybridization between these two antelopes (cf. H. L. DUKE, 1934, *Uganda J.*, 2, 159) it would appear that they should both be retained in the same genus, *Tragelaphus*.

The position of *T. uniforme* was first discussed at the "Conference on Tsetse and Trypanosomiasis (animal and human) Research" in 1933 (publ. 1934: p. 17), at which METTAM stated that he "had made certain experiments with this trypanosome which had convinced him that it was identical with *T. vivax*," while DUNE "considered that the question had not yet been settled because he was firmly convinced that certain characteristics associated with *T. uniforme* definitely marked it off from *T. vivax*." The Conference agreed to include in the programme of research "the further investigation of the identity of *T. uniforme*," a decision which met with the approval of the "East Africa Sub-Committee of the Tsetse Fly Committee" appointed by the Colonial Office (See Report, 1935: p. 46).

The question of *T. uniforme* was again raised at the "Conference on the Co-ordination of Tsetse and Trypanosomiasis (animal and human) Research in East Africa" in 1936. HORNBY (*loc. cit.*, p. 27) proposed that "those who favour the retention of this name [*T. uniforme*] as valid should at least furnish stained specimens which can be critically compared with similar specimens of *T. vivax*," adding: "It is significant that, in spite of increased work on trypanosomiasis throughout Africa, not a single article dealing with *T. uniforme* appears to have been published in recent years." METTAM (*loc. cit.*, p. 15) reiterated his opinion that *T. uniforme* was probably a synonym of *T. vivax*, and the Conference again agreed that this question stands in need of reinvestigation.

Unfortunately, METTAM provided no evidence in support of his contention, either in the reports of the Conferences or in any other publication. As regards HORNBY's second remark, it is obvious that he had overlooked the recent observations on *T. uniforme* in the Belgian Congo (SCHWETZ and STORCK, 1930; SCHWETZ, 1931) and the record from Zululand (CURSON, 1928). It is true, however, that this species had not been reported between 1916 and 1928.

It is our firm belief that the sporadic nature of the records of *T. uniforme* is due not so much to its rareness or to its focal distribution, as to failure on the part of observers to recognize and differentiate this species. As soon as its presence was established in Uganda it was found to be the most common trypanosome on the northern shore and islands of Lake Victoria (DUNE, 1912, 1913a). Its continued presence there in 1927 and 1928 was confirmed by the findings mentioned above (HALL, HOARE: cf. p. 520). According to SCHWETZ (1931) this species ranks second in importance as a parasite of cattle in the Stanleyville district of the Belgian Congo.*

Moreover, both in Uganda and in the Congo *T. uniforme* was found to be co-existent with *T. vivax*, the two species occurring not only in the same localities, but in mixed infections of the same host. In the case of such double infections it is evident that the differentiation of the two trypanosomes presents no difficulty.

While some observers (HORNBY, METTAM) appear to doubt the very existence of *T. uniforme* as a distinct parasite, others—though recognizing its peculiarities—are doubtful about its specific independence. Thus, according

*Dr. C. M. WENYON informs us that Dr. SCHWETZ submitted to him over a period of a year or more films showing a trypanosome which Dr. WENYON identified, on account of its dimensions, as *T. uniforme*. The repeated occurrence of this trypanosome in the films was so unexpected that Dr. WENYON began to doubt his diagnosis of *T. uniforme* and to wonder if he was not actually dealing with *T. vivax*. Finally, however, Dr. SCHWETZ sent a film containing a distinctly larger trypanosome which was undoubtedly *T. vivax*: an occurrence which served to confirm Dr. WENYON's earlier identification of *T. uniforme* (cf. also SCHWETZ and STORCK, 1930, p. 639).

This trypanosome was also reported from bovines in Zululand (CURSON, 1928) and in the Belgian Congo (SCHWETZ and STORCK, 1930; SCHWETZ, 1931). In Uganda *T. uniforme* was again recovered from situtunga by one of us (HOARE, 1932*) and from bovines by Dr. G. N. HALL.† Finally there is some evidence of the occurrence of *T. uniforme* in the domestic pig (a mixed infection with *T. simiae*: cf. HORNBY, 1923; HOARE, 1936b).

The naturally infected hosts recorded up to the present and the geographical distribution of *T. uniforme*, checked from the original sources, are summarized in the following list.

NATURAL HOSTS AND DISTRIBUTION OF *T. uniforme*.

(1) *Bos taurus* (Domestic cattle): Uganda (BRUCE *et al.*, 1911); Uganda, Buvuma Island (HALL, 1927: unpublished); Zululand (CURSON, 1928); Belgian Congo, Province Orientale (SCHWETZ and STORCK, 1930; SCHWETZ, 1931).

(2) *Syncerus caffer* (Buffalo): Uganda, near Lakes Edward and George (DUKE, 1913b).

(3) *Tragelaphus scriptus* (Bushbuck): Uganda, northern shore of Victoria Nyanza (FRASER and DUKE, 1912a, 1912b); Uganda, Kibanga (DUKE, 1912); Uganda, Masindi (DUKE, 1916).

(4) *Tragelaphus* (= *Limnotragus*) *spekei*‡ (Situtunga): Uganda, northern shore of Victoria Nyanza (FRASER and DUKE, 1912a, 1912b); Uganda, Kibanga and Damba Island (DUKE, 1912); Uganda, Mpumu (DUKE, 1913a); Uganda, vicinity of Entebbe (HOARE, 1932*).

(5) *Cobus ellipsiprymnus* (Waterbuck): Uganda, near Lakes Edward and George (DUKE, 1913a).

(6) ? *Sus scrofa* (Domestic pig): Tanganyika (HORNBY, 1923; cf. HOARE, 1936b).

The records of *T. uniforme* are thus seen to be relatively scanty and its distribution restricted, for, with the exception of the isolated findings in Zululand and Tanganyika, it has hitherto been found only within a limited area extending from the northern shores and islands of Victoria Nyanza into western Uganda and, over the border, into eastern Belgian Congo.

The apparent rareness of this trypanosome, on the one hand, and its similarity to *T. vivax*, on the other, have led to some scepticism regarding the independent status of *T. uniforme*. This attitude found expression at two conferences on trypanosomiasis recently held in Entebbe, Uganda.

*In the "List of Blood Parasites Collected in Uganda" (HOARE, 1932: p. 222) *T. uniforme* was inadvertently attributed to the bushbuck (*loc. cit.*, No. 31), though this parasite was actually found in the situtunga; whereas *T. ingens*—ascribed to the last-named antelope (*loc. cit.*, No. 27)—was found in the bushbuck.

†A collection of blood-films taken from bovines on Buvuma Island; Victoria Nyanza, was kindly given to one of us (C.A.H.) by Dr. G. N. HALL. The films from two of the bovines represented pure infections of *T. uniforme*, while others were infected with *T. congolense*, *T. vivax* and *T. brucei*. However, the occurrence of *T. uniforme* was not recorded in HALL's report of trypanosomiasis on Buvuma Island [Report of Veterinary Pathologist: In *Ann. Rept. Vet. Dept., Uganda, for 1927* (publ. 1928), Appendix I, p. 22].

‡Like the bushbuck, the situtunga was formerly included in the genus *Tragelaphus*, from which it was subsequently removed to the genus *Limnotragus*. However, in view of the successful hybridization between these two antelopes (cf. H. L. DUKE, 1934, *Uganda J.*, 2, 159) it would appear that they should both be retained in the same genus, *Tragelaphus*.

2. *Trypanosoma uniforme*.

- Strain H : Situtunga, from Uganda (*ppt.* C. A. HOARE, 1928).
Strain I : Bovine, from Buvuma Island, Uganda (*ppt.* Dr. G. N. HALL, 1927).
Strain J : Bovine, from Buvuma Island, Uganda (*ppt.* Dr. G. N. HALL, 1927).
Strain K : Bovine (No. 87), from Belgian Congo (*ppt.* Dr. J. SCHWETZ, 1928).
Strain L : Bovine (No. 18), from Belgian Congo (*ppt.* Dr. J. SCHWETZ, 1928).

Since the only appreciable difference between *T. vivax* and *T. uniforme* is the length of their body, this was the only character taken into consideration in comparing the two species. In each of twelve strains the length of 100 non-dividing individuals was measured*, taking the trypanosomes in the order in which they appeared in view. The measurement of each was made by drawing (with the aid of a camera lucida at $\times 2,500$) a line running through the middle of the body of the trypanosome, from the posterior end to the tip of the flagellum, and measuring this line with a divider set at $1/20$ inch ($= \text{ca. } 0.5\mu \times 2,500\dagger$).

One hundred measurements were originally made on a few strains as a preliminary, but, as will be shown later, it proved possible to differentiate most of the strains with these figures, so that larger numbers were considered unnecessary.

To compare the strains and species with each other the Arithmetic Mean or Average (M) of each series of measurements, and the Standard Errors of the Differences between the means (σ_D) were calculated. The latter characteristics are obtained as follows: From the Variance (V) of each series, which is the mean of the squares of the deviations of the values from the arithmetic mean, the Variance of the Mean (V_M) is obtained by dividing the variance (V) by the number of observations in the series. The variances of the two means to be compared are added together and the square root of their sum is the Standard Error of the Difference between the means, i.e., $\sigma_D = \sqrt{V_{M_1} + V_{M_2}}$. The standard errors of the differences are, of course, calculated separately for each pair of means.

When the difference between two means exceeds three times the standard error the means are considered to differ significantly and the two series of measurements cannot have been drawn from the same original "population." Or, in other words, as regards the present case, that there is a real difference between the two strains. The results obtained by applying the test are described later.

*In the case of the Tanganyika strains of *T. vivax* (M and N), the preparations of which were received when this paper was ready for the press, only ten individuals of each have been measured, according to the method described on p. 531.

†Actually $1/20$ inch $= 0.49125\mu \times 2,500$.

to LAVERAN and MESNIL (1912: p. 552): "Le *Tr. uniforme* est très voisin du *Tr. Cazalboui* [= *T. vivax*]; peut-être les deux trypanosomes appartiennent-ils à la même espèce"; WENYON (1926: p. 565) says: "It is open to question whether they [*T. vivax*, *T. caprae* and *T. uniforme*] represent distinct species or should be regarded as merely varieties or races of *T. vivax*"; SCHWETZ (1931) characterizes *T. uniforme* as "un petit *T. vivax*," and raises the same question: "S'agit-il de deux espèces différents ou *T. vivax* et *T. uniforme* ne sont-ils que deux variétés de la même espèce . . . ?"

From the foregoing account it is seen that the systematic position of *T. uniforme* is still a subject of controversy and stands in need of further investigation on a larger scale and by more exact methods than has hitherto been attempted. In the past the systematics of trypanosomes has suffered both from the separation and from the union of species on inadequate grounds (examples of the former case are provided by the *brucei* and *evansi* groups, and of the latter by the *congolense* group). The same fate threatens the members of the *vivax* group, unless their position can be defined one way or another, according to the recognized principles of taxonomy.

Having secured a representative collection of blood-films of both *T. uniforme* and *T. vivax* we have undertaken a comparative morphological study of these two trypanosomes by statistical methods, in the hope of elucidating their true relationship.

III.—MATERIAL AND METHODS.

The material at our disposal consisted of blood-films (stained by one of the Romanowsky methods) taken at various periods, in different localities, from diverse natural hosts (except in the case of Strain G: *v. infra*), and representing altogether fourteen strains, as shown below.*

1. *Trypanosoma vivax*.

- Strain A: Bovine (Ox E), from Mauritius (*praeeparavit* Dr. A. R. D. ADAMS, 1935).
- Strain B: Bovine (Ox A), from Mauritius (*ppt.* Dr. A. R. D. ADAMS, 1934).
- Strain C: Bovine, from Uganda (*ppt.* Dr. J. CARMICHAEL, 1934).
- Strain D: Bovine (No. 9415), from Northern Nigeria (*ppt.* Dr. G. N. HALL, 1936).
- Strain E: Bovine (No. 9352), from N. Nigeria (*ppt.* Dr. G. N. HALL, 1936).
- Strain F: Caprine, from N. Nigeria (*ppt.* Dr. G. N. HALL, date ?).
- Strain G: Rabbit (1st passage from bovine), from N. Nigeria (*ppt.* Dr. G. N. HALL, 1936).
- Strain M: Bovine (No. 4730), from Tanganyika (*ppt.* Mr. H. E. HORNBY, 1937).
- Strain N: Bovine (No. 3626), from Tanganyika (*ppt.* Mr. H. E. HORNBY, 1937).

*We take this opportunity to acknowledge our indebtedness to Dr. A. R. D. ADAMS, Dr. J. CARMICHAEL, Dr. G. N. HALL, Mr. H. E. HORNBY and Dr. J. SCHWETZ, who kindly provided the blood-films.

2. *Trypanosoma uniforme*.

- Strain H : Situtunga, from Uganda (*ppt.* C. A. HOARE, 1928).
Strain I : Bovine, from Buvuma Island, Uganda (*ppt.* Dr. G. N. HALL, 1927).
Strain J : Bovine, from Buvuma Island, Uganda (*ppt.* Dr. G. N. HALL, 1927).
Strain K : Bovine (No. 87), from Belgian Congo (*ppt.* Dr. J. SCHWETZ, 1928).
Strain L : Bovine (No. 18), from Belgian Congo (*ppt.* Dr. J. SCHWETZ, 1928).

Since the only appreciable difference between *T. vivax* and *T. uniforme* is the length of their body, this was the only character taken into consideration in comparing the two species. In each of twelve strains the length of 100 non-dividing individuals was measured*, taking the trypanosomes in the order in which they appeared in view. The measurement of each was made by drawing (with the aid of a camera lucida at $\times 2,500$) a line running through the middle of the body of the trypanosome, from the posterior end to the tip of the flagellum, and measuring this line with a divider set at $1/20$ inch ($= \text{ca. } 0.5\mu \times 2,500\dagger$).

One hundred measurements were originally made on a few strains as a preliminary, but, as will be shown later, it proved possible to differentiate most of the strains with these figures, so that larger numbers were considered unnecessary.

To compare the strains and species with each other the Arithmetic Mean or Average (M) of each series of measurements, and the Standard Errors of the Differences between the means (σ_D) were calculated. The latter characteristics are obtained as follows: From the Variance (V) of each series, which is the mean of the squares of the deviations of the values from the arithmetic mean, the Variance of the Mean (V_M) is obtained by dividing the variance (V) by the number of observations in the series. The variances of the two means to be compared are added together and the square root of their sum is the Standard Error of the Difference between the means, i.e., $\sigma_D = \sqrt{V_{M_1} + V_{M_2}}$. The standard errors of the differences are, of course, calculated separately for each pair of means.

When the difference between two means exceeds three times the standard error the means are considered to differ significantly and the two series of measurements cannot have been drawn from the same original "population." Or, in other words, as regards the present case, that there is a real difference between the two strains. The results obtained by applying the test are described later.

*In the case of the Tanganyika strains of *T. vivax* (M and N), the preparations of which were received when this paper was ready for the press, only ten individuals of each have been measured, according to the method described on p. 531.

†Actually $1/20$ inch $= 0.49125\mu \times 2,500$.

KARL PEARSON (1914), who made an extensive analysis of BRUCE's measurements of the *brucei* group of trypanosomes, concluded that a more adequate criterion of identity of strains is furnished by the χ^2 test which compares the distribution of the individuals throughout the whole range of measurements. This method of comparison was therefore used also.

When comparing two strains by this test the measurements are first grouped into classes. The classes chosen depend on the number in the series and the range of the measurements, but in the present instance intervals of 1μ were adopted. Thus, for example, all lengths between 15μ and 16μ were grouped together in one class, and so on. Each class is then treated separately. The difference between the numbers of the two strains in the class is squared and then divided by the total number in the class. These quotients are added to give χ^2 . The probability that such a value of χ^2 could arise by chance between two samples drawn from the same population is obtained from appropriate tables. If the probability is less than 0.01, a real difference is assumed to exist between the two strains. The results of this test also are referred to below.

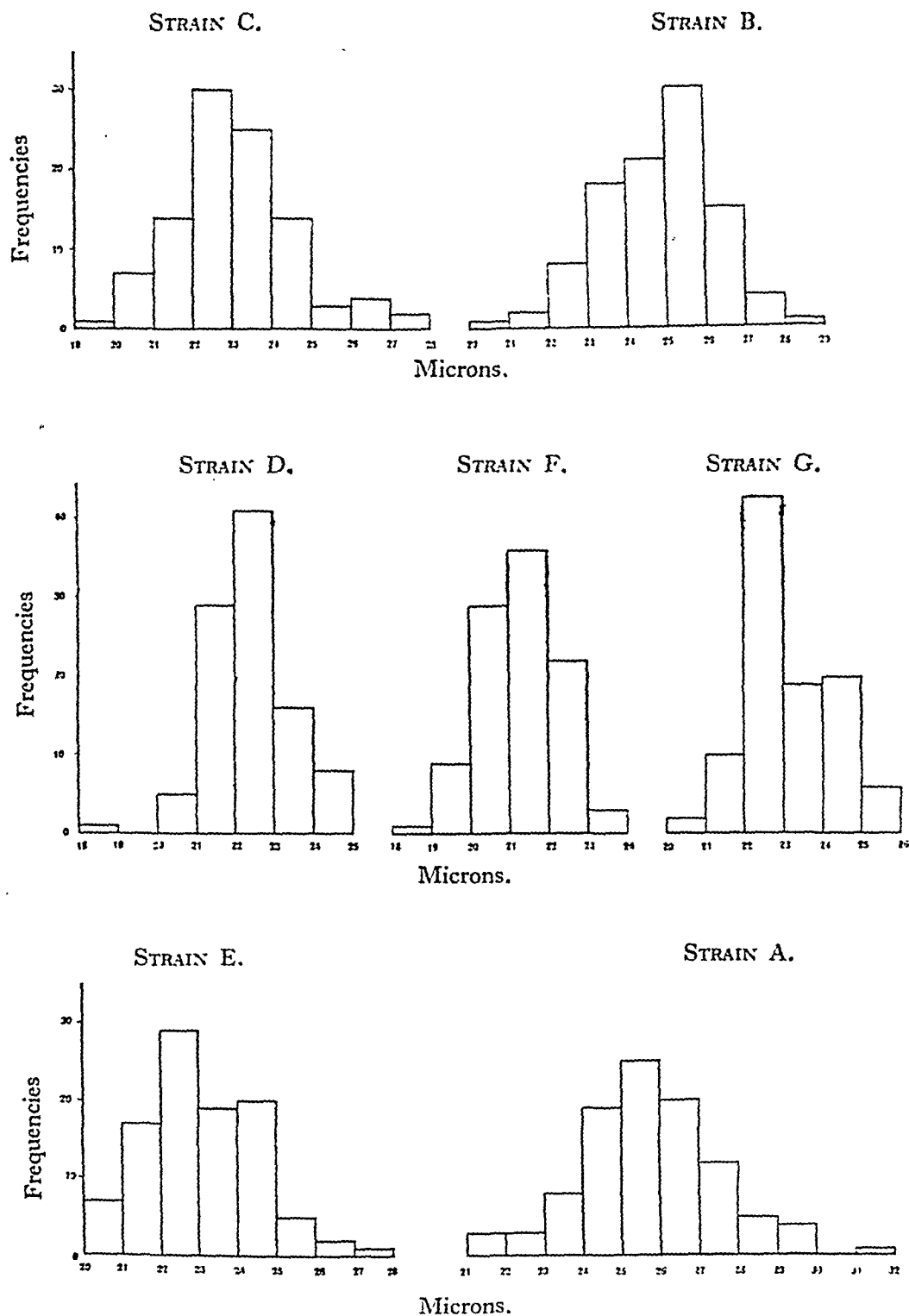
IV.—MEASUREMENTS OF *T. vivax*.

The distribution in respect of length of 100 individuals of each strain of *T. vivax* (except M and N), grouped in classes of 1μ , is given in Table I and illustrated in Text-Fig. B.

TABLE I.

T. vivax: FREQUENCY DISTRIBUTION OF 7 STRAINS IN RESPECT TO LENGTH.

Strains.	Length in Microns.														Total No. Measured.	Mean Length.
	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31		
A	—	—	—	3	3	8	19	25	20	12	5	4	0	1	100	25.4
B	—	—	1	2	8	18	21	30	15	4	1	—	—	—	100	24.5
C	—	1	7	14	30	25	14	3	4	2	—	—	—	—	100	22.7
D	1	0	5	29	41	16	8	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	100	22.1
E	—	—	7	17	29	19	20	5	2	1	—	—	—	—	100	22.7
F	1	9	29	36	22	3	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	100	21.0
G	—	—	2	10	43	19	20	6	—	—	—	—	—	—	100	22.8
Total	2	10	51	111	176	108	69	41	19	6	4	0	1		700	



TEXT-FIG. B: Histograms illustrating the frequency distribution of seven strains of *T. vivax* in respect of length.

In the histograms the area of each rectangle is, of course, proportional to the number of measurements in the corresponding class. From the table it is seen that the mean lengths of the strains vary from 21.0μ to 25.4μ and the complete range of length is from 18μ to 31μ , though over 90 per cent. of the measurements lie within the limits 20μ to 26μ .

The blood-films of the Tanganyika strains of *T. vivax* (M and N) were received too late for inclusion in the tables and text-figures. The lengths of ten individuals of each strain ranged from 25.5μ to 28.0μ in M, and from 21.5μ to 30.0μ in N, the means of these measurements being 26.7μ and 26.0μ respectively, which is in agreement with the corresponding figures for the other strains of *T. vivax* examined by us (see p. 531).

It is of interest to compare the present findings with those of previous observers. BRUCE *et al.* (1910) examined nine strains of *T. vivax* derived from natural infections in cattle. The mean length of twenty individuals varied between 21.4μ and 26.5μ , which is in accord with our means of ten measurements which range from 20.5μ to 27.3μ (see p. 531). BLACKLOCK (1912) inoculated a single strain into a number of goats and measured 1,000 trypanosomes in groups of twenty taken from different animals at various stages of the disease. The means of the groups are not all given, but he states that "in each set dealt with . . . the largest number of trypanosomes constantly lies between 20μ and 23μ ."

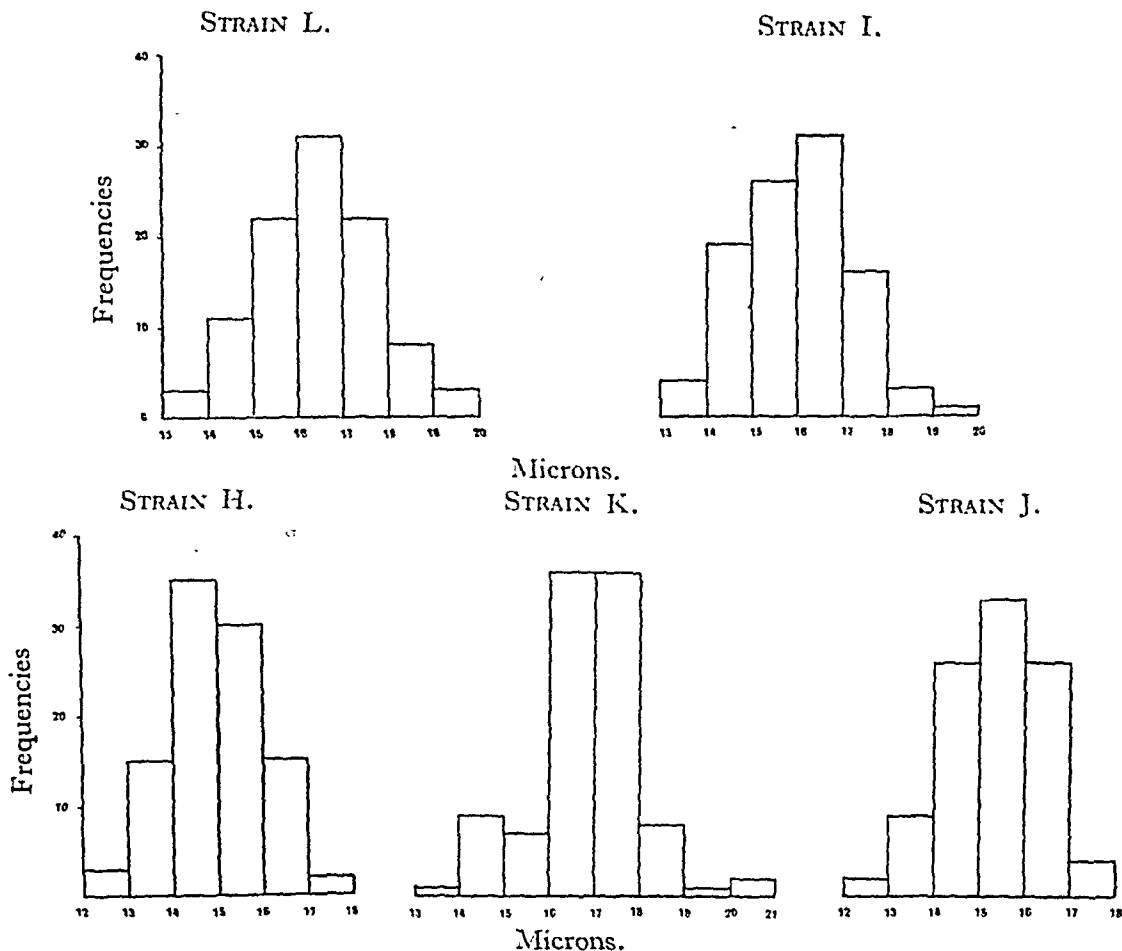
V.—MEASUREMENTS OF *T. uniforme*.

The frequency distributions of the lengths of the strains of *T. uniforme* are shown in Table II and in Text-Fig. C in the same way as in the case of *T. vivax*. Here the means vary from 14.6μ to 16.5μ and the range is 12μ to 20μ , with over 90 per cent. between 13μ and 17μ .

TABLE II.

T. uniforme: FREQUENCY DISTRIBUTION OF 5 STRAINS IN RESPECT TO LENGTH.

Strains.	Length in Microns.									Total No. Measured.	Mean Length.
	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20		
H	3	15	35	30	15	2	—	—	—	100	14.6
I	—	4	19	26	31	16	3	1	—	100	15.7
J	2	9	26	33	26	4	—	—	—	100	15.0
K	—	1	9	7	36	36	8	1	2	100	16.5
L	—	3	11	22	31	22	8	3	—	100	16.1
Total	5	32	100	118	139	80	19	5	2	500	



TEXT-FIG. C : Histograms illustrating the frequency distribution of five strains of *T. uniforme* in respect of length.

As regards earlier observations, BRUCE *et al.* (1911) measured groups of twenty trypanosomes drawn from different animals and representing four original strains. The mean lengths varied between 14.7μ and 17.8μ . FRASER and DUKE (1912b) studied one strain which they inoculated into oxen and goats. Their means of twenty measurements ranged from 14.1μ to 17.2μ . These observations also correspond to our means of ten measurements (see p. 531), which lie between 14.1μ and 17.3μ .

VI.—GENERAL DISCUSSION.

1. STATISTICS.

Before comparing the two species, *T. vivax* and *T. uniforme*, with each other one must determine to what extent the strains of each species differ among themselves. Ideally it would be found that each species could be considered as one population and the strains as samples drawn from it, unaffected by host or previous history and differing from each other only by the errors introduced by random sampling. To decide whether this is a valid assumption

each strain was compared with every other of the same species, using the two tests outlined above.

The probabilities that the differences observed in the means and distributions are due to chance are shown in Tables III to VI.* In Tables III and V the distributions are compared by the χ^2 test. In 14 of the 21 comparisons of *T. vivax* strains and in 4 of the 10 of *T. uniforme* the probability is less than 10^{-6} , i.e., the odds are more than a million to one against such differences being the result of chance. In the other cases the probability is greater, in fact, the difference between strains C and E is so small that in 8 out of 10 samples drawn from the same population similar divergencies would be expected. The results of the tests by comparing the means are shown in Tables IV and VI. The probabilities that the strains are identical are very similar to those obtained by the χ^2 test.

TABLE III.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	
A		.005	$<10^{-6}$	$<10^{-6}$	$<10^{-6}$	$<10^{-6}$	$<10^{-6}$	A
B	10^{-4}		$<10^{-6}$	$<10^{-6}$	$<10^{-6}$	$<10^{-6}$	$<10^{-6}$	B
C	$<10^{-6}$	$<10^{-6}$		10^{-4}	.80	$<10^{-6}$	.11	C
D	$<10^{-6}$	$<10^{-6}$	10^{-6}		.004	$<10^{-6}$	10^{-3}	D
E	$<10^{-6}$	$<10^{-6}$	.86	$<10^{-4}$		$<10^{-6}$	.18	E
F	$<10^{-6}$	$<10^{-6}$	$<10^{-6}$	$<10^{-6}$	$<10^{-6}$		$<10^{-6}$	F
G	$<10^{-6}$	$<10^{-6}$	.83	$<10^{-5}$	.67	$<10^{-6}$		G
	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	

TABLE IV.

TABLES III and IV.—The probability that the observed differences in the frequency distributions in respect of length (Table III) and the differences of the mean lengths (Table IV) of the strains of *T. vivax* could be the result of chance.

*The tables referring to the differences of the means and the differences in the distributions respectively for each species, though independent, are coupled together to economize space.

It is thus seen that the majority of strains of each species must be considered to differ significantly, in a statistical sense, as regards both the mean length and also the distribution of individuals throughout the range of measurements. However, from the systematic point of view, the strains of each species must be classed together in one group because there is no real break in the variation of length of the individuals between one strain and another (cf. Tables I and II).

TABLE V.

	H	I	J	K	L	
H		$<10^{-6}$	.32	$<10^{-6}$	$<10^{-6}$	H
I	$<10^{-6}$		.002	10^{-4}	.38	I
J	10^{-3}	10^{-4}		$<10^{-6}$	$<10^{-5}$	J
K	$<10^{-6}$	$<10^{-6}$	$<10^{-6}$		.08	K
L	$<10^{-6}$	.002	$<10^{-6}$	.004		L
	H	I	J	K	L	

TABLE VI.

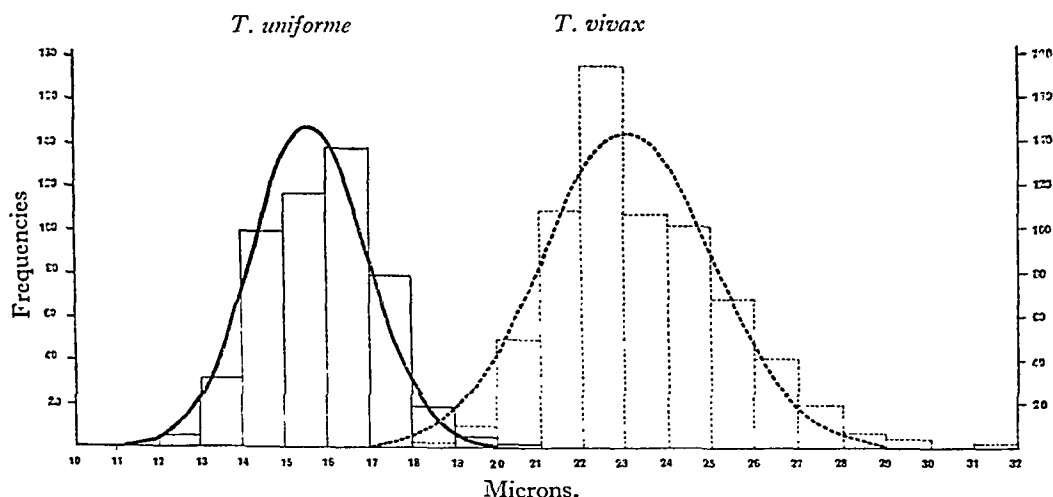
TABLES V and VI.—The probability that the observed differences in the frequency distributions in respect of length (Table V) and the differences of the mean lengths (Table VI) of the strains of *T. uniforme* could be the result of chance.

Since the different strains of each species cannot be looked upon as samples of a single population it is impossible to combine all the series of measurements and treat them together statistically, when comparing the two species. One cannot, therefore, base a method of differentiation on the normal curves fitted to all the measurements. For purely diagrammatic purposes, however, these curves are shown in Fig. D, superimposed on the histograms of the total distributions, because they give an illustration of the independence of the two species and also indicate the area within which they overlap. The common range extends from 18μ to 21μ , but, as is shown in Table VII, from 90 to 100 per cent. of the measurements of the various strains of both species lie outside these limits, except in the case of *T. vivax* Strain F. Even in that special instance, where 39 per cent. of the measurements are within the zone of overlap, it is to be

noted that twenty-nine of these are 20μ , whereas only two individuals of the total 500 *T. uniforme* reach that length (cf. Table II).

TABLE VII.

<i>T. vivax</i> .		<i>T. uniforme</i> .	
Percentage of individuals more than 21μ long.		Percentage of individuals less than 18μ long.	
Strain A :	100	Strain H :	100
" B :	99	" I :	99
" C :	92	" J :	100
" D :	94	" K :	97
" E :	93	" L :	97
" F :	61		
" G :	98		

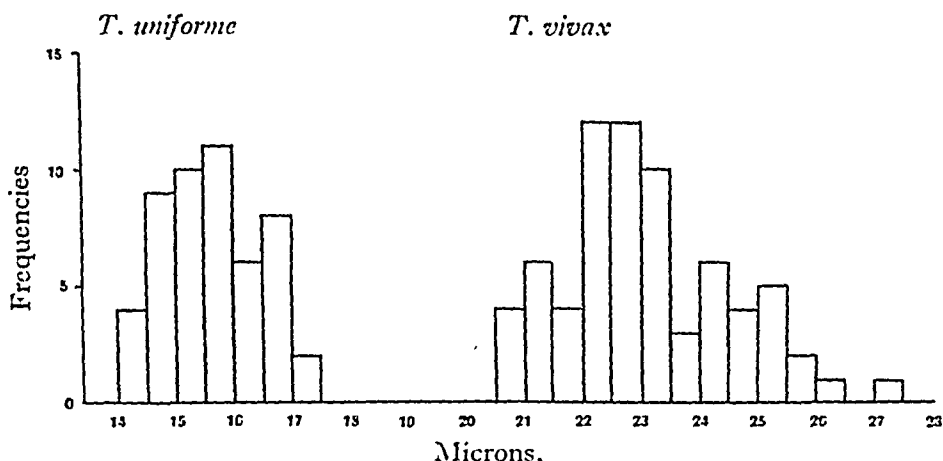


TEXT-FIG. D : Histograms illustrating the frequency distribution in respect of length, of 500 specimens of *T. uniforme* and 700 *T. vivax*, with normal curves fitted to the data superimposed. (Continuous line—*T. uniforme* ; broken line—*T. vivax*.)

The overlapping of measurements among the different strains of each species was used as an argument for grouping them together. The question arises, therefore, whether one is justified in differentiating the two species on the criterion of length alone, considering that individuals of both species may fall within the range 18μ to 21μ , and that there is no other significant morphological difference between them. In our opinion this can legitimately be done because of the infrequency of these overlapping measurements. Their relative unimportance was demonstrated in the following manner: In the original series of measurements the trypanosomes were drawn as they appeared in the

film and therefore they constituted true random samples. Each series was divided up into groups of ten in the order in which they had been measured. The mean of each group was calculated, giving ten means for each strain, and a total of seventy means of ten measurements for the strains of *T. vivax* and fifty means for the *T. uniforme* strains.

The means of these small groups varied, of course, more than the means of 100, the ranges being from 14.07μ to 17.28μ for *T. uniforme* and from 20.75μ to 27.30μ for *T. vivax*. The frequency distribution of these means, grouped into classes of 0.5μ , is shown in Fig. E. It is seen that the means of each



TEXT-FIG. E: Histograms illustrating the frequency distribution of 50 means of *T. uniforme* and of 70 means of *T. vivax*, each mean obtained from a group of 10 measurements.

species form a continuous group, but that there is a considerable gap between the two. In no case was the mean of ten measurements of *T. uniforme* more than 17.5μ or the mean of ten *T. vivax* less than 20.5μ .*

Judging by these results it should, therefore, be possible in practically all cases to differentiate these two species by measuring the lengths of only ten trypanosomes. If the mean length is less than 18μ the infection is *T. uniforme*; if greater than 20μ it is *T. vivax*. In the unlikely event of the mean lying within these limits a larger series of measurements must be made to determine whether one is dealing with a sample of unusually long *T. uniforme* or unusually short *T. vivax*. In the former case, additional measurements should reduce the mean, and in the latter should increase it.

2. SYSTEMATICS.

In the foregoing statistical analysis it has been established that the two sets of strains referred to *T. vivax* and *T. uniforme* respectively actually fall into two distinct groups, which correspond to these species and are characterized

*As was shown on p. 526, similar results were obtained with the Tanganyika strains of *T. vivax* (M and N) measured by this method.

by differences in the mean lengths and in the range of lengths of the trypanosomes. Though these measurements overlap, the degree to which they do so is negligible, since from 90 to 100 per cent. of the measurements in both species lie outside the zone of overlap. The diversity of the two groups is further demonstrated by the fact that the measurement of ten randomly selected representatives of each is sufficient to differentiate them.

We now turn to the bearing of these data upon the systematic position of the two groups of trypanosomes under consideration. In the present investigation the difference in length, which originally served as the criterion for the recognition of *T. uniforme* as a species independent of the allied *T. vivax*, has been fully confirmed, extended, and established as a constant character. There can, therefore, remain no doubt that these two forms represent independent and easily distinguishable systematic units.

As was shown in Section II (p. 521 *et seq.*) the controversy regarding the relationship between *T. vivax* and *T. uniforme* was concerned, on the one hand, with the very existence of *T. uniforme* as a distinct parasite, which was challenged; and, on the other hand, with the precise systematic position of this trypanosome. The first part of the problem has now been solved, and the position of *T. uniforme*, as a parasite distinct from *T. vivax*, firmly established. As regards the exact systematic status of *T. uniforme*, the choice lies between retaining it as an independent species or assigning it to *T. vivax* with a subordinate rank.

It is usual to separate allied groups of animals as *species*, when the structural characters distinguishing them do not intergrade, i.e., when there is a morphological gap between the groups and intermediate or transitional forms are absent. If one group intergrades with another group, from which it differs in certain constant morphological features, i.e., when the two are connected by transitional forms, they are regarded as *subspecies* (or races) of the same *species*. Systematic units of lower grades, being distinguishable by inconstant characters, need not be considered here.

Since the measurements of length, which distinguish *T. uniforme* from *T. vivax*, slightly overlap (cf. Fig. D), i.e., the two are connected by transitional forms, it would seem that *T. uniforme* may be regarded as a subspecies of *T. vivax*, in which case they should be designated as *T. vivax uniforme* and *T. vivax vivax* respectively. However justifiable this course may be on formal grounds it is undesirable for several reasons. One of these is that, although the systematic units within the various subdivisions of the animal kingdom are not equivalent, they should at least have the same value within the limits of a given group, such as genus. In other words, the degree of distinction between the species of the same genus should be of the same order (cf. HOARE, 1936a). Within the genus *Trypanosoma* specific rank has in many cases been given to forms morphologically indistinguishable (e.g., in the *brucei* and *evansi* groups) or intergrading (e.g., in the *congolense* group). These and other similar forms

stand in need of revision and readjustment, but until this is done it would be inconsistent to unite *T. uniforme* with *T. vivax* as subspecies, while leaving other, more glaring, cases unchanged. Moreover, too much importance cannot be attached to the slight degree of intergradation of the lengths of these two trypanosomes, the insignificance of which was brought out in the preceding section (cf. also Table VII and Fig. E).

The most important result of the present investigation was the demonstration that *T. uniforme* and *T. vivax* are readily distinguishable by a constant character, viz., difference in length. For the sake of uniformity in the classification of trypanosomes and for other reasons given above, we propose to treat this difference as a specific character and to regard *T. uniforme* and *T. vivax* as separate species, thus retaining their original status.

VII.—SUMMARY.

The object of this study was to define the relationship between *Trypanosoma uniforme* and *T. vivax*, and to provide exact methods for their differentiation.

The investigation was carried out by statistical methods and was based on several strains of each species from different localities. It was established that the strains corresponding to the two species fall into two distinct groups which are characterized constantly by differences in the mean lengths and in the range of lengths of the trypanosomes. It was also demonstrated that the measurement of ten individuals selected at random from any strain provides a satisfactory method for the identification of the species to which the trypanosomes belong.

The systematic position of the two groups of trypanosomes is discussed, and it is concluded that their original status as separate species, *T. uniforme* and *T. vivax*, should be retained.

A review is given of the previous records of *T. uniforme*, together with a list of hosts and the geographical distribution of this trypanosome.

REFERENCES.

- BLACKLOCK, B. (1912). The measurements of a thousand examples of *Trypanosoma vivax*. *Ann. trop. Med. Parasit.*, 5, 521.
- BRUCE, D., HAMERTON, A. E., BATEMAN, H. R., MACKIE, F. P. & BRUCE [M.]. (1910). Trypanosome diseases of domestic animals in Uganda. *Trypanosoma vivax* (Ziemann). *Proc. roy. Soc. (B)*, 83, 15; and *Rep. Sleep. Sickness Comm. roy. Soc.*, 11, 1911, 150.
- _____, _____, _____ & _____. (1911). Trypanosome diseases of domestic animals in Uganda. *Trypanosoma uniforme* sp. nov. *Ibid.*, 83, 176; *Ibid.*, 11, 160.
- BRUCE, D., HARVEY, D., HAMERTON, A. E., DAVEY, J. B. & BRUCE [M.]. (1913). Trypanosome diseases of domestic animals in Nyasaland. II. *Trypanosoma caprae* (Kleine). *Ibid.*, 86, 278; *Ibid.*, 15, 1914, 25.
- Conference on Tsetse and Trypanosomiasis (Animal and Human) Research, held at Entebbe, 22-25 Nov., 1933. (1934.) (Nairobi.)
- Conference on Co-ordination of Tsetse and Trypanosomiasis (Animal and Human) Research in East Africa, held at Entebbe, 29-31 Jan., 1936. (1936.) (Nairobi.)

- CURSON, H. H. (1928). Nagana in Zululand. 13th and 14th Repts. Dir. Vet. Educ. & Res., Dep. Agric., S. Africa. Pt. I. [p. 309.]
- DUKE, H. L. (1912). Antelope and their relation to trypanosomiasis. *Proc. roy. Soc. (B)*, 85, 156.
- . (1913a). Some observations on *Trypanosoma pecorum* (Bruce) and *T. uniforme* (Bruce). *Ibid.*, 554; and *Rep. Sleep. Sickn. Comm. roy. Soc.*, 13, 30.
- . (1913b). Some trypanosomes recovered from wild game in Western Uganda. *Rep. Sleep. Sickn. Comm. roy. Soc.*, 14, 37.
- . (1916). Trypanosomiasis in Northern Uganda. *J. Hyg.*, 15, 372.
- FRASER, A. D. & DUKE, H. L. (1912a). The relation of wild animals to trypanosomiasis. *Rep. Sleep. Sickn. Comm. roy. Soc.*, 12, 26.
- & ———. (1912b). An antelope trypanosome. *Ibid.*, 56.
- HOARE, C. A. (1932). On protozoal blood parasites collected in Uganda. *Parasitology*, 24, 210.
- . (1936a). Morphological and taxonomic studies on mammalian trypanosomes. I. The method of reproduction in its bearing upon classification, with special reference to the *lewisi* group. *Ibid.*, 28, 98.
- . (1936b). Morphological and taxonomic studies on mammalian trypanosomes. II. *Trypanosoma simiae* and acute porcine trypanosomiasis in tropical Africa. *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 29, 619.
- HORNBY, H. E. (1923). Trypanosomiasis of the pig: a correction. *Vet. Rec. (N.S.)*, 3, 531.
- KLEINE, F. K. (1910). Trypanosomenbefunde am Tanganjika und andere Beobachtungen. *Dtsch. med. Wschr.*, 36, 1400.
- KLEINE, F. K. & TAUTE, M. (1911). Trypanosomenstudien (Sonderabdruck d. Abhandl. : Ergänzungen zu unseren Trypanosomenstudien). *Arch. Gesund. Amte. Berl.*, 31, 2.
- LAVERAN, A. & MESNIL, F. (1912). *Trypanosomes et Trypanosomiasis*. 2nd ed. Paris : Masson & Cie.
- PEARSON, K. (1914). On the probability that two independent distributions of frequency are really samples of the same population, with special reference to recent work on the identity of trypanosome strains. *Biometrika*, 10, 85.
- REPORT. (1935). *East Africa Sub-Committee of the Tsetse Fly Committee*. Economic Advisory Council. London : H.M. Stationery Office.
- SCHWETZ, J. (1931). Notes morphologiques sur les trypanosomiasis animales de Stanleyville et du Congo Oriental. *Ann. Parasit. hum. comp.*, 9, 392.
- SCHWETZ, J. & STORCK, N. (1930). On a case of triple infection in a cow—*Piroplasma bigeminum*, *Gonderia mutans* and *Trypanosoma uniforme*. *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 23, 637.
- WENYON, C. M. (1926). *Protozoology*. 1. London : Baillière, Tindall & Cox.

A NOTE ON THE TYPES OF PNEUMOCOCCI PREVALENT IN LAGOS.

BY

W. C. DAVIDSON, M.D., D.T.M. & H.,
Nigeria.

During the period extending from the end of August, 1936, until June, 1937, an investigation of the types of pneumococci prevalent in Lagos was commenced. Lobar pneumonia became mildly epidemic in Lagos at the end of 1936 and in the beginning of 1937.

METHODS OF INVESTIGATION.

A clinical examination was made, whenever possible, in every case of suspected pneumonia, and details of the duration of the illness, age, sex, etc., were obtained. A blood culture was made, and a specimen of sputum was collected at the same time. If, on bacteriological examination, the sputum showed Gram-positive diplococci suggestive of pneumococci, the material was emulsified and inoculated intraperitoneally into white mice. On the death of these animals, some 12 hours later, cultures were made on blood or chocolate agar from the peritoneal exudate and from the heart blood.

When the cultural appearances and the morphology of the organism were typical, the bile solubility test and the fermentation of inulin were proved in each case.

An agglutinating serum was prepared against the first strain of pneumococcus isolated (Table I), by the method described by COLE and MOORE*. According

* COLE, RUFUS, & MOORE, H. F. (1917). *J. exp. Med.*, 26, 537.

TABLE I.

Strain.	Name.	Sex.	Age.	Day of Illness.	Blood Culture.	Sputum.	Type.	Remarks.
1	J.D.	M.	58	10th	Negative	Positive	Group IV	Agglutinating serum prepared.
2	A.O.	M.	20	7th	"	"	"	
3	O.D.	M.	35	3rd	"	"	"	
4	P.M.	M.	45	6th	Positive	"	"	
5	D.A.	M.	17	5th	Negative	"	"	
6	D.L.	M.	28	4th	"	"	"	
-	G.L.	M.	36	?	"	"	"	Avirulent for mice.
-	M.O.	M.	40	9th	"	"	—	" "
-	A.L.	M.	20	4th	"	"	—	" "
-	V.	M.	40	4th	"	"	—	Virulent for mice. Patient died of acute appendicitis—no pneumonia.

to this method, doses of 0.5 c.cm. of an emulsion obtained by re-suspending the centrifuged deposit from a measured volume of a 24-hour growth of the organism in half the amount of normal saline, after the organisms had been killed by heat, were inoculated intravenously into a rabbit. The inoculations were given every day for 6 days, followed by 1 week of rest, over a period of 6 weeks. Although this was rather a troublesome and lengthy method, a good agglutinating serum with a titre of 1 in 80 was obtained. (The agglutination of the rabbit's serum to the homologous organism before the inoculations were commenced was 1 in $2\frac{1}{2}$, doubtful.)

The first six strains of pneumococci obtained were tested against this serum; the results were inconclusive—complete agglutination did not take place in any tube, and partial agglutination was noted in the low dilutions only. Suspensions of these strains were preserved, and were tested later against standard Type Sera I, II and III. It was found that all six strains failed to agglutinate with any of these. Unfortunately it was not possible to submit them to further typing. The first six strains isolated (Table I) were therefore considered to be Group IV pneumococci; it is to be noted that only one of these was obtained by blood culture. In three other cases examined at this time, the sputum showed diplococci suggestive of pneumococci, but emulsions of the sputum proved avirulent for mice. One case with virulent pneumococci in the sputum died of appendicitis and not pneumonia.

In order to be certain that the pneumococci investigated were actually pathogenic, it was decided in December, 1936, to work only with strains obtained by blood culture. Doubt as to the pathogenicity of strains obtained from sputa

was confirmed by the isolation of a virulent pneumococcus from the sputum of a patient who later, as ascertained at postmortem examination, died from acute appendicitis, without any gross lung lesion.

In establishing the identity of pneumococci isolated in this way, the same criteria as before were required, *viz*: typical morphology and cultural appearances, with positive bile solubility test and the ability to ferment inulin, with the production of acid.

The viability of the strains was maintained by frequent subculture, and nine strains were identified (Table II). Two strains isolated at this time (Strains 9 and 10, Table II) did not survive.

Agglutinating sera were prepared for two strains selected at random (Strains 8 and 13, Table II), using the same method as was adopted for Strain 1, during

TABLE II.

Strain.	Name.	Sex.	Age.	Day of Illness.	Blood Culture.	Type.	Remarks.
7	J.O.	M.	29	4th	Positive	2	Strain died before final typing possible Strain died before final typing possible
8	G.M.	M.	32	1st	"	5	
9	J.S.	M.	36	9th	"	Group IV	
10	N.T.I.J.	M.	20	3rd	"	"	
11	A.A.	M.	25	5th	"	5	Subculture failed.
12	T.I.	M.	24	5th	"	12	
13	M.J.	M.	35	7th	"	5	
14	G.A.	M.	26	2nd	"	12	
15	J.R.	M.	26	15th(?)	"	?	
16	M.	M.	33	5th	"	12	
17	J.J.	M.	36	6th	"	11	
18	G.N.	M.	?	?	"	12	
19	A.A.	M.	26	5th	"	?	

the period which elapsed before the final typing was possible. It was unfortunate that both these strains were later found to belong to the same type (Type V pneumococcus).

In this second series of investigations, twenty-nine blood cultures in all were made, and of these thirteen were positive, with the findings indicated in Table II. During the investigation, an attempt was made to preserve the viability of pneumococci by drying portions of mouse heart in cases where the animals had died of the infection, but it was found that the pneumococci did not survive for any lengthy period. Drying *in vacuo* might have been more efficacious.

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS.

In the first series of cases, six virulent strains of pneumococci were isolated (one by blood culture). All these were found to belong to Group IV. Three cases in which diplococci morphologically suggestive of pneumococci occurred in the sputum were found to be avirulent for mice. One case with virulent pneumococci in the sputum died of acute appendicitis with no gross lung lesion.

In the second series, twenty-nine blood cultures were made, of which thirteen were positive for pneumococci and were identified as shown in Table II. Two strains died before final typing could be carried out, but these were not Type I, II or III. Two strains failed to grow on subculture from the original blood cultures. Sixteen blood cultures were negative.

This short and admittedly incomplete investigation unfortunately had to be discontinued for lack of time. The findings would seem to show that the pneumococci prevalent in Lagos during the period under consideration were mainly types included under "Group IV pneumococcus." Only one Type II pneumococcus was isolated during the investigation, and it would be interesting to know if such a finding is representative: no conclusion can of course be drawn without knowing the findings in a larger number of cases. If the results were confirmed, the question of the use of Type I or Type II therapeutic serum would not arise.

I am indebted to Dr. R. BRIERCLIFFE, Director of Medical Services, Nigeria, for permission to publish, and to Dr. J. A. YOUNG for his assistance and guidance in this work, and for his kindness in arranging that Strains 8, 11, 12, 13, 14, 16, 17 and 18 were sent to Dr. F. GRIFFITH, Ministry of Health Laboratories, London, who was good enough to undertake the final typing.

TRANSACTIONS OF THE ROYAL SOCIETY OF
TROPICAL MEDICINE AND HYGIENE.
Vol. XXXI. No. 5. March, 1938.

HAEMOGLOBINAEMIA IN MALARIA.

BY

E. M. VOIGT, M.B., B.Ch., B.A.O.

AND

C. VOIGT, M.D., Ch.B., D.T.M.

From the Northern Rhodesian Clinical Laboratory, Broken Hill, Northern Rhodesia.

Before the work of BARRATT and YORKE in 1909, it was apparently assumed that malaria must be associated with haemoglobinaemia. Those observers attempted quantitative estimation of plasma haemoglobin upon finger blood from fourteen cases of malaria, seventeen cases of blackwater fever, and some controls, without finding significant increase in malaria.

YORKE, MURGATROYD and OWEN (1930), and FAIRLEY and BROMFIELD (1933) improved the technique for quantitative estimation.

FAIRLEY and BROMFIELD (1933), in their conclusions, stated that malaria is unaccompanied by haemoglobinaemia, but foresaw, in their comment upon the results obtained in their study, that it might be found in cases of "primary hyper-infection producing severe anaemia and intense jaundice, such as one occasionally encounters in the tropics." Dr. FAIRLEY also expressed himself to

us as believing that this is a subject well worthy of investigation under tropical conditions.

In the course of work upon the aetiology of blackwater fever we have examined, with controls, a number of cases of malignant tertian malaria with respect to the haemoglobin content of the "true" plasma.

TECHNIQUE.

The technique employed has been, essentially, that of FAIRLEY and BROMFIELD (1933). Particularly in hot weather we have regarded it as important, in the collection of blood under sterile liquid paraffin, to avoid strong suction with the syringe, or great pressure in introducing the blood below the paraffin in the centrifuge tube; and, when the sample is in the tube, only gentle inversion, with rapid rotation, is permissible for mixing with the neutral oxalate.

The spectroscopic method for quantitative estimation of blood pigments is practically that of BLOEM (1933)—long used in general chemical procedure—but a standard glass cell having optically parallel sides and giving a thickness of column viewed of 13 mm. is used. We arranged a wood block to hold the spectroscope and glass cell in front of the microscope lamp.

To determine the sensitivity of the apparatus for oxyhaemoglobin and methaemoglobin, the oxygen capacities of eight samples of oxalated blood were determined by treatment of the fully aerated blood in the Van Slyke volumetric gas apparatus, and thence the haemoglobin content calculated, as grammes per 100 c.c., by multiplying by 0.746.

(a) *Oxyhaemoglobin.*

Of each of the bloods an accurately measured quantity (0.2 c.c.) was diluted with distilled water until the α band of the spectrum just disappeared, and so the dilution to which any one volume of that blood could be so diluted, was arrived at. (Averages of at least two trial dilutions were taken in each case, and then the average taken for the eight blood samples.) Division of the haemoglobin content by the dilution factor gives the lowest concentration of oxyhaemoglobin detectable with the particular apparatus.

We have adhered to expression of concentrations in mg. per 100 c.c. rather than in percentages of any standard because the majority of biochemical estimations are commonly so recorded and because the standard of Haldane (oxygen capacity 18.5 vols. per cent., Hb., 13.8 grammes per 100 c.c.) hardly represents the average for any large number of healthy adults at high altitude in the tropics (altitude here is 3,800 feet above sea level).

(b) *Methaemoglobin.*

A further sample of each of the oxalated bloods was used for production of methaemoglobin by the method of McELLROY (1920), and after standing for 5 minutes, was diluted and observed as for oxyhaemoglobin..

We concluded that our apparatus is sensitive to amounts of oxyhaemoglobin at least as small as 5 mg. per 100 c.c. of solution, and to amounts of methaemoglobin at least as small as 100 mg. per 100 c.c. of solution.

RESULTS.

Apart from cases of blackwater fever, we have, so far, examined in this way "true" plasma from seventeen cases of malignant tertian malaria, and from twenty-five cases other than malarial.

Control Cases.

Each was checked, apart from symptoms, by absence of parasites in the blood. None had methaemoglobinaemia, and only in nine was oxyhaemoglobinaemia detected. The concentration figures were between 5 and 15 mg. per 100 c.c. of plasma.

Malarial Cases.

All showed *Plasmodium falciparum* in thick or thin blood films—infections of varying intensity. Some were relapse cases, but certainly the majority were re-infections: a few were primary infections. Nine showed no haemoglobin in the plasma, four showed traces (5 to 15 mg. per 100 c.c.), and the remaining four showed, as highest figures, 60, 42.5, 35 and 22.5 mg. per 100 c.c. respectively. In no case was methaemoglobinaemia observed.

Two of the last group of cases mentioned had normal or subnormal temperature when the oxyhaemoglobinaemia was detected.

We are not aware that concentrations such as those in these last cases have been recorded in malaria (FAIRLEY and BROMFIELD noted 16.1 mg.) and accordingly present some further particulars of our cases.

CASE I.

V. de W., a young man of 22 who came for advice, being apprehensive about blackwater fever and having an uncomfortable sensation for some days about his heart. He had had two recrudescences of old "fever" in the preceding 5 or 6 weeks, and he felt ill again now (as he appeared to be). In the same state for the last 5 days, he had been using small irregular doses of quinine.

His temperature was subnormal, pulse very slow, blood pressure low.

His liver and spleen were slightly enlarged and tender, his conjunctivae "putty coloured."

The urine was very acid, and contained diacetic acid, urobilin and excess of protein. It was scanty in amount (690 c.c. in first 24 hours).

A few tube casts were found in the deposit—culture of one specimen showed it to be sterile.

The blood films showed a moderate infection with *P. falciparum*, and active phagocytosis of erythrocytes.

As to the slow pulse, we were not able, on the second day of attendance, when the rate was 56 per minute, to demonstrate with the polygraph any A.V. block. On the 3rd day the pulse rate was normal and blood pressure 132/62. Capillary pulsation was then visible in the nail beds.

Biochemical and other particulars are set out in Table I (page 542).

TABLE I.

Case I. V. de W.	Day of Illness.	
	7th (approximately).	8th.
<i>Blood</i>		
Haemoglobin per cent. of 15.6 grammes per 100 c.c.	86	80
Erythrocytes—millions per c.mm.	4.68	6.3
Leucocytes per c.mm.	15,687	14,375
Film examination	Fairly numerous M.T. parasites. Phagocytosis of R.B.C.'s noted	
<i>True Plasma</i>		
Pigments—		
Methaemoglobin	Nil	Nil
Oxyhaemoglobin—mg. per 100 c.c.	60	30
Bilirubin. Van den Bergh Reaction		
Direct	Negative	Negative
Indirect	2 units	0.5 unit
CO ₂ combining power. Vols. per cent.	57.7	60
Inorganic phosphates : mg. per 100 c.c.	4.7	2.6
Phosphatase : Jenner and Kay units	36	33.6
<i>Serum</i>		
Calcium : mg. per 100 c.c.	13	10.8
Lipase: 0.5 c.c. liberates fatty acids equivalent to N/10 NaOH	0.21 c.c.	0.1 c.c.
Free haemolysin	Nil	Nil
<i>Whole Blood.</i> Group O		
Uric acid : mg. per 100 c.c.	4.54	3.3
Urea : mg. per 100 c.c.	60	38
Amino-acid N. : mg. per 100 c.c.	5	4
Cholesterol	220	226
" erythrocytes "	247	271
Lecithin	545	557
" in erythrocytes "	646	
Lipin P.	21.7	22.7
" in erythrocytes "	27.7	
<i>Blood Pressure.</i> mm. Hg.		
Systolic	104	110
Diastolic	70	60
<i>Pulse Rate,</i> per minute	50	56
<i>Urine</i>		
pH	Less than 3.5	
Ketones	Diacetic acid present	
Reducing substances	Nil	
Albumin	Distinct trace	
Pigments—		
Met- and Oxy-haemoglobin	Nil	
Urobilin	Present	
Quantity	Small	
Collected and measured from noon on 8th day onwards		P.M., 12.15, 130 c.c.; 3, 240 c.c.; 8, 100 c.c. A.M., 6, 220 c.c.; 9, 500 c.c.; 11, 400 c.c. i.e., 690 c.c. in 21 hours, but 900 c.c. in next 3 hours, so total 1,590 c.c. in 24 hours
Deposit—only occasional tube casts seen. No pus, R.B.C.'s or other abnormality.		
Culture—on one occasion—sterile		

CASE II.—E.P., a man of 40, who had no major attack of malaria for 9 years. Blood films showed a very heavy M.T. infection—many erythrocytes containing two “ring” forms, and numerous extracellular parasites were seen. There was some hyperpyrexia, and the temperature was above 102° F. during the greater part of 3 days. Great restlessness, severe headache and loin pains were features of the attack. The considerable blood destruction (*vide* Table II) did not produce much jaundice. The pulse was slow (54 to 56 per minute) on the 2nd and 3rd days—before any jaundice showed—and normal on the 4th day. Praecordial distress was marked just before the heart rate became reduced.

TABLE II.

Case II. E.P.	Day of Illness.			
	1st.	2nd.	3rd.	4th.
<i>Blood</i>				
Haemoglobin per cent. of 15.6 grammes per 100 c.c.	100	110		86
Erythrocytes : millions per c.mm.	6.2		4.8	4.31
Leucocytes per c.mm.	4,000	5,937		
Film examination	Very heavy M.T.infection. Many cells, two rings in a cell, and extra cellular parasites seen			Parasites present
<i>True Plasma</i>				
Pigments—				
Methaemoglobin		Nil		
Oxyhaemoglobin : mg. per 100 c.c.		22.5		
Bilirubin : Van den Bergh Reaction				
Direct		Negative		
Indirect		2 units		
Inorganic phosphate : mg. per 100 c.c.		2.9		
CO ₂ combining power. Vols. per cent.		70		
Phosphatase : Jenner and Kay units		4.54		
<i>Whole Blood</i>				
Uric acid : mg. per 100 c.c.		2.38		
Urea : mg. per 100 c.c.		61.5		53.3
Amino-acid N : mg. per 100 c.c.		6.3		
<i>Blood Pressure</i> : mm. Hg.				
Systolic	124	130		126
Diastolic	80	86		90
<i>Pulse Rate</i> per minute	110	54	56	74
<i>Urine</i>				
pH		About 3		
Ketones		Nil		
Reducing substances		Nil		
Protein : per cent.		0.03	0.028	
Pigments : Met- and oxyhaemoglobin		Nil		
Urobilin		Present		
Quantity : 24 hours			580 c.c.	1,300 c.c.
Deposit		Numerous epithelial and granular tube casts		Casts scanty

TABLE I.

Case I. V. de W.	Day of Illness.	
	7th (approximately).	8th.
<i>Blood</i>		
Haemoglobin per cent. of 15.6 grammes per 100 c.c.	86	80
Erythrocytes—millions per c.mm.	4.68	6.3
Leucocytes per c.mm.	15,687	14,375
Film examination	Fairly numerous M.T. parasites. Phagocytosis of R.B.C.'s noted	
<i>True Plasma</i>		
Pigments—		
Methaemoglobin	Nil	Nil
Oxyhaemoglobin—mg. per 100 c.c.	60	30
Bilirubin. Van den Bergh Reaction		
Direct	Negative	Negative
Indirect	2 units	0.5 unit
CO ₂ combining power. Vols. per cent.	57.7	60
Inorganic phosphates : mg. per 100 c.c.	4.7	2.6
Phosphatase : Jenner and Kay units	36	33.6
<i>Serum</i>		
Calcium : mg. per 100 c.c.	13	10.8
Lipase : 0.5 c.c. liberates fatty acids equivalent to N/10 NaOH	0.21 c.c.	0.1 c.c.
Free haemolysin	Nil	Nil
<i>Whole Blood. Group O</i>		
Uric acid : mg. per 100 c.c.	4.54	3.3
Urea : mg. per 100 c.c.	60	38
Amino-acid N. : mg. per 100 c.c.	5	4
Cholesterol	220	226
" erythrocytes "	247	271
Lecithin	545	557
" in erythrocytes "	646	
Lipin P.	21.7	22.7
" in erythrocytes "	27.7	
<i>Blood Pressure. mm. Hg.</i>		
Systolic	104	110
Diastolic	70	60
<i>Pulse Rate, per minute</i>	50	56
<i>Urine</i>		
pH	Less than 3.5	
Ketones	Diacetic acid present	
Reducing substances	Nil	
Albumin	Distinct trace	
Pigments—		
Met- and Oxy-haemoglobin	Nil	
Urobilin	Present	
Quantity	Small	
Collected and measured from noon on 8th day onwards		P.M., 12.15, 130 c.c. ; 3, 240 c.c. ; 8, 100 c.c. A.M., 6, 220 c.c. ; 9, 500 c.c. ; 11, 400 c.c. i.e., 690 c.c. in 21 hours, but 900 c.c. in next 3 hours, so total 1,590 c.c. in 24 hours
Deposit—only occasional tube casts seen.		
No pus, R.B.C.'s or other abnormality.		
Culture—on one occasion—sterile		

CASE II.—E.P., a man of 40, who had no major attack of malaria for 9 years. Blood films showed a very heavy M.T. infection—many erythrocytes containing two “ring” forms, and numerous extracellular parasites were seen. There was some hyperpyrexia, and the temperature was above 102° F. during the greater part of 3 days. Great restlessness, severe headache and loin pains were features of the attack. The considerable blood destruction (*vide* Table II) did not produce much jaundice. The pulse was slow (54 to 56 per minute) on the 2nd and 3rd days—before any jaundice showed—and normal on the 4th day. Praecordial distress was marked just before the heart rate became reduced.

TABLE II.

Case II. E.P.	Day of Illness.			
	1st.	2nd.	3rd.	4th.
<i>Blood</i>				
Haemoglobin per cent. of 15.6				
grammes per 100 c.c.	100	110		86
Erythrocytes : millions per c.mm.	6.2		4.8	4.31
Leucocytes per c.mm.	4,000	5,937		
Film examination	Very heavy M.T.infection. Many cells, two rings in a cell, and extracellu- lar parasites seen			Parasites present
<i>True Plasma</i>				
Pigments—				
Methaemoglobin		Nil		
Oxyhaemoglobin : mg. per 100 c.c.		22.5		
Bilirubin : Van den Bergh Reaction				
Direct		Negative		
Indirect		2 units		
Inorganic phosphate : mg. per 100 c.c.		2.9		
CO ₂ combining power. Vols. per cent.		70		
Phosphatase : Jenner and Kay units		4.54		
<i>Whole Blood</i>				
Uric acid : mg. per 100 c.c.		2.38		
Urea : mg. per 100 c.c.		61.5		53.3
Amino-acid N : mg. per 100 c.c.		6.3		
<i>Blood Pressure</i> : mm. Hg.				
Systolic	124	130		126
Diastolic	80	86		90
Pulse Rate per minute	110	54	56	74
<i>Urine</i>				
pH		About 3		
Ketones		Nil		
Reducing substances		Nil		
Protein : per cent.		0.03	0.028	
Pigments : Met- and oxyhaemoglobin		Nil		
Urobilin		Present		
Quantity : 24 hours			580 c.c.	1,300 c.c.
Deposit		Numerous epithelial and granular tube casts		Casts scanty

CASE III.

Mrs. W. E., aged 58, a woman said to be experiencing a primary attack of malaria. she was new to the tropics and very frightened and nervous.

The blood showed a heavy M.T. infection, which responded promptly to specific treatment without development of anaemia or icterus.

TABLE III.

Case III. Mrs. W. E.	Day of Illness.		
	2nd.	3rd.	4th.
<i>Blood</i>			
Haemoglobin per cent. of 15.6 grammes per 100 c.c.	92		110
Erythrocytes : millions per c.mm.	5.8		
Reticulocytes, per cent.	1		
Leucocytes, per c.mm.	7,024		
Film examination	Heavy M. T. infection		
<i>True Plasma</i>			
Pigments—			
Methaemoglobin	Nil		
Oxyhaemoglobin : mg. per 100 c.c.	35		
Bilirubin : Van den Bergh Reaction			
Direct	Negative		
Indirect	2.2 units		
Inorganic phosphate : mg. per 100 c.c.	3.4		
CO ₂ combining power. Vols. per cent.	64.3		
Phosphatase : Jenner and Kay			
<i>Whole Blood</i>			
Uric acid : mg. per 100 c.c.	3		
Urea : mg. per 100 c.c.	42	44.4	36
<i>Urine</i>			
pH	About 5	6.5	7
Ketones	Nil	Nil	Nil
Reducing substances	"	"	"
Protein : per cent.	0.03	0.036	0.028
Pigments : Met- and oxyhaemoglobin	Nil	Nil	
Urobilin	1 c.c. diluted to 2.5 shows spectrum	1 c.c. may be diluted to 4.55 c.c.	
Deposit		Numerous hyaline and granular casts, no pus or R.B.C.'s	Fewer casts

CASE IV.—McL., a man of 35, who had not thought that he might be suffering from any sort of malaria, but who had a pain in his left side and had, for many weeks, felt so ill and weak that he was beginning to despair about being able to continue at his work—in a store. He appeared pale, and the whites of his eyes were not clear, but the blood showed no anaemia. The heart sounds were normal—blood pressures low. There were a few carious teeth, injected fauces, a few crepitations near the angle of the left scapula (a history of old pneumonia on the opposite side) and a normal blood sedimentation rate. To our surprise, *P. falciparum* and pigmented mononuclears were discovered in the blood, and oxyhaemoglobin in the "true" plasma. His temperature was then normal—it had been, and afterwards was, occasionally sub-normal—but was never recorded as raised. His urine was essentially normal. Given specific treatment he soon lost his pain, and then the weakness, and his whole general condition improved dramatically. Other details are given in Table IV.

TABLE IV.

Case IV. McL.	Day of Examination.	
	1st.	17th.
<i>Blood</i>		
Haemoglobin per cent. of 15.6 grammes per 100 c.c.	90	94
Erythrocytes : millions per c.mm.	6.85	6.89
Leucocytes : per c.mm.	7,500	6,875
Film examination	Scanty M.T. parasites, curious marbling of R.B.C.'s, occasional pigmented mononuclears	
<i>True Plasma</i>		
Pigments—		
Methaemoglobin	Nil	Nil
Oxyhaemoglobin : mg. per 100 c.c.	42.5	20
Bilirubin : Van den Bergh Reaction		
Direct	Negative	
Indirect	0.5 units	Less than 0.5 units
CO ₂ combining power. Vols. per cent.	78	75.8
Inorganic phosphate : mg. per 100 c.c.	5	2.58
Phosphatase : Jenner and Kay units	7	3
<i>Whole Blood</i>		
Urea : mg. per 100 c.c.	34	38.1
Cholesterol : mg. per 100 c.c.	214.8	220.5
" (cells) " "	197.3	168.1
Lecithin : mg. per 100 c.c.		
" (cells) " "	835.6	
Cell sedimentation rate (Zeckwer and Goodell-modif.) at 1 hour cells at	9.2 line	
<i>Urine</i>		
pH	About 6.5	
Ketones	Nil	
Reducing substances	"	Nil abnormal
Protein	No increase	
Pigments : Met- and oxyhaemoglobin	Nil	
Urobilin	"	
Deposit	Nil abnormal	

Two of the oxalated blood samples examined in connection with Cases I-IV. showing oxyhaemoglobinaemia were transported by road before being studied in the laboratory.

These were the second sample taken in Case I (V. de W.) and the one from Case II (E.P.). The first of these was carried $2\frac{1}{2}$ miles over a fair road; and will be seen to show less oxyhaemoglobin in the plasma than the first sample taken in the case which was examined at once without being transported at all; the second was carried just over 1 mile along an excellent road.

Air temperature was not high on either of these occasions.

TABLE V.

Case V. H.M.P.	Day of Illness.	
	2nd.	4th.
<i>Blood</i>		
Haemoglobin per cent. of 15.6 grammes per 100 c.c.	80	80
Erythrocytes : millions per c.mm.	4.15	4
Leucocytes : per c.mm.	5,312	7,500
Film examination	Heavy M.T. infection gametocytes numerous	
<i>True Plasma</i>		
Pigments—		
Methaemoglobin	Nil	Nil
Oxyhaemoglobin : mg. per 100 c.c.	7.5	"
Bilirubin : Van den Bergh Reaction		
Direct	Much delayed	Negative
Indirect	2.7 units	1.75 units
CO ₂ combining power. Vols. per cent.	72	
Inorganic phosphate : mg. per 100 c.c.	5	3.2
Phosphatase : Jenner and Kay units	4.68	11.58
<i>Whole Blood</i>		
Uric acid : mg. per 100 c.c.	4.1	3.1
Urea : mg per 100 c.c.	38	26
Amino-acid N. : mg. per 100 c.c.	5.6	4.8
Cholesterol : mg. per 100 c.c.	241.9	
" of erythrocytes : mg. per 100 c.c.	210.6	
Lecithin : mg. per 100 c.c.	385.6	
" of erythrocytes : mg. per 100 c.c.	455.8	
<i>Urine</i>		
pH	About 6	
Protein	Distinct trace	
Ketones	Nil	
Reducing substances	"	
Bile pigments	Traces	
" acids	Nil	
Urobilin	1 c.c. can be diluted to 16 c.c. before spect- rum vanishes	

COMMENT.

In malignant tertian malaria not so much evidence is available as to appearances of parasitized erythrocytes just prior to their rupture in schizogony as in the other species, and possibly intra-corpuseular conversion of haemoglobin into pigment is not so completely brought about by *P. falciparum* as by the other plasmodia. This suggests itself as a possible partial explanation of haemoglobinaemia in some cases of M.T. malaria, but what other factors might reasonably be regarded as in any way contributory?

Such haemoglobin as may escape in relatively unaltered condition from the disrupted cells will constitute a circulating "foreign" protein of very complex formula. (Its molecular weight is in the neighbourhood of 70,000, and it is not yet established that polymers of Hb.—perfectly discrete molecules, containing more or less iron—cannot occur in the human body.)

Probably at least four reasonably distinct functions of the liver, with complementary activity of cells of the reticulo-endothelial system, and possibly of certain renal cells, are involved in the katabolism of plasma haemoglobin; and whatever the efficiency in a given case of the other liver functions, the "pigmentary" function may well be heavily burdened even quite early in a malarial infection.

If any of these processes be sufficiently embarrassed it is to be expected that haemoglobinaemia may result.

The case (H.M.P.) described in Table V is a typical example from the group of malarial cases which show high plasma bilirubin but no plasma haemoglobin, and we have the impression that the two substances tend to occur in inverse concentration.

Each of our few cases showing haemoglobinaemia had low blood pressures. Two of them had bradycardia—one after about 30 hours of high fever—while the other had, so far as we were able to discover, no raised temperature at all for many days before being seen, and certainly not afterwards. The third case of haemoglobinaemia also ran an apyrexial course.

Phagocytosis of parasitized erythrocytes was certainly going on actively in Case I (V. de W.), and yet unchanged haemoglobin escaped into the plasma.

No cause was discovered to explain the leucocytosis in the same case—we felt that it probably represented another aspect of the same process. UCHIDA (1921), in a detailed study of blood changes in paroxysmal haemoglobinuria, recorded leucocytosis as a constant finding within 2 hours of chilling, and attributed it to destruction of erythrocytes. He described "auto-haemotropin" in the blood of such cases as a substance promoting phagocytosis of the patient's own erythrocytes by his leucocytes.

Three of our malarial cases with haemoglobinaemia showed, at any rate temporarily, numerous tubular casts in the urine.

In two of these, Cases II and III (E.P. and W.E.), it was felt that the highest figures for urea in the blood (61.5 and 44.4 mg. per 100 c.c.) could be attributed

to increased katabolism associated with the fever, but the same could hardly hold in Cases I and IV (V. de W. and McL.).

In the first of these, although the ketosis was probably due to vomiting, there was increase of plasma inorganic phosphate as well as of nitrogenous constituents in the whole blood; and in the second the blood urea remained for more than 10 days towards the upper limit of normality and the plasma inorganic phosphate was raised at the first examination.

It would appear, from studies of blackwater fever, that the human renal threshold for haemoglobin is approached by a plasma concentration in the neighbourhood of 250 mg. per 100 c.c., but it is possible that the cells of healthy secreting tubules may eliminate small undetectable traces of the pigment and may themselves be injured in the process.

SUMMARY.

In a small series of malignant tertian infections four cases of significant oxyhaemoglobinaemia are recorded.

REFERENCES.

- BARRATT, J. O. W. & YORKE, W. (1909). *Ann. trop. Med. Parasit.*, 3, 1.
BLOEM, T. F. (1933). *Biochem. J.*, 27, 121.
FAIRLEY, N. H. & BROMFIELD, R. J. (1933). *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 27, 289.
McELLROY, W. S. (1920). *J. biol. Chem.*, 42, 297.
UCHIDA, H. (1921). *Mitt. med. Fak, Tokio*, 26, 503.
YORKE, W., MURGATROYD, F., & OWEN, D. U. (1930). *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 23, 335.

INVESTIGATION ON THE PURIFICATION OF WATER WITH RESPECT TO SCHISTOSOME CERCARIAE.

BY

G. WITENBERG, M.D.,

Dept. of Parasitology, Hebrew University, Jerusalem,

AND

J. YOFE, M.D.,

Laboratory for Testing Materials, Tel-Aviv.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
1. INTRODUCTION	550
2. PRESENT STATE OF THE PURIFICATION OF WATER WITH RESPECT TO SCHISTOSOME CERCARIAE	550
(a) Gaseous chlorine	551
(b) Calcium hypochlorite	551
(c) Chloramine	551
(d) Lime water	552
(e) Aluminium sulphate	552
(f) Filtration	552
(g) Experience of Egypt	552
3. EXPERIMENTS OF THE PRESENT AUTHORS	553
(a) Test materials used for experiments	553
(b) Experiments with aluminium sulphate	554
(c) Experiments with lime water and alkaline buffer solution	554
(d) Experiments with lime water and aluminium sulphate	555
(e) Experiments with chlorine	556
(f) Irreversibility of the effect of chlorination	566
(g) Experiments with filtration	567
(h) Experiments with high pressure	568
4. CONCLUSIONS	568

1.—INTRODUCTION.

The existing water supply of Tel-Aviv is provided by a number of wells bored within the area of the town. As these wells will be inadequate in the near future to meet the requirements of the growing population, and also because the water itself is hard and tends to become salty, the erection of a large water-supply and water-purification plant on the river Yarkon is contemplated.

The water in the River Yarkon is adequate and from a chemical standpoint is of a much better quality than the well water, and if purified by appropriate means, could well serve the needs of the growing town of Tel-Aviv. It is reputed, however, to be contaminated with schistosome cercariae and therefore the question has arisen whether the usual methods of water purification will be adequate to remove the danger of schistosomiasis.

Since no definite conclusions could be drawn from the existing literature, it was found necessary to carry out the experiments described below.* The conclusion that we have reached is that it is possible to exterminate the schistosome cercariae by the usual methods of water purification.

2.—PRESENT STATE OF WATER PURIFICATION IN RESPECT TO SCHISTOSOME CERCARIAE.

Three main processes are generally used for the purification and sterilization of drinking water :—

(1) Clarification through precipitation by means of aluminium sulphate ($\text{Al}_2(\text{SO}_4)_3$) diluted in the raw water up to 100/1,000,000 ; (2) Filtration through a filtering layer, such as sand, this being mostly used in connection with the former process ; (3) Sterilization by means of gaseous chlorine or by chlorine compounds which contain active chlorine. Generally solutions up to 1/1,000,000 active chlorine are used, if stronger solutions are applied the surplus is eliminated after the treatment by the so-called " dechlorination process." Besides chlorination, sterilization by means of ozone, ultra-violet rays, etc., is also used.

There exists a rather extensive literature on the sterilization value of all these processes as far as bacteria are concerned. However, few data are published regarding the effectiveness of these processes on the cercariae of *Schistosoma*. These data are often contradictory and therefore they do not give a clear ideas as

* This investigation was carried out thanks to a grant offered by the Municipality of Tel-Aviv.

Thanks are due to Dr. ABDEL AZIM and his staff of the Endemic Diseases Hospital, Cairo, as well as to Dr. RAMESES GIRGES, Tanta, for their kind and suggestive help in obtaining infected snails. We wish to thank Mr. MORRIS, of the Cairo Water Co., and to Mr. WALTON, of the Alexandria Water Co., for their readiness to supply us with the necessary information concerning the purification of water in Egypt.

to the reliability of the usual sterilization methods for the destruction of these cercariae.

The following is a discussion of the more important data :—

(a) *Gaseous Chlorine.*

THRESH *et al.* (1933, p. 568) write that the cercariae are not destroyed by chlorine in concentrations usually employed in the waterworks (up to two parts per million).

RAMESES GIRGES (1934, p. 519) writes : " It was shown that chlorine in a concentration of 1/1,000,000, usually employed in hot climates to sterilize water, has no effect on living cercariae. . . . "

(b) *Calcium Hypochlorite (bleaching powder solution).*

According to LEIPER (1916, p. 179) a freshly prepared solution of bleaching powder destroys the cercariae immediately in concentration of 1/30,000 (= 33 per million) ; after 3 minutes in concentration of 1/50,000 (= 20 per million), and does not kill them at all, even after expiration of 1½ hours, in a concentration of 1/300,000 (= 3·3/1,000,000) of available chlorine.

MANSON-BAHR and FAIRLEY (1920, p. 67) state : " The commonest bactericide utilized in the Army is the bleaching powder, one part of available chlorine per 1,000,000 parts of water being considered efficient. In the small book published by the War Office (*Memo-randum on Some Medical Diseases in the Mediterranean War Area*) is stated that one part per million of available chlorine is efficient in killing cercariae. In numerous experiments we have proved the fallaciousness of this statement. Thus, after 2½ hours' immersion in water containing four parts per 1,000,000 available chlorine, we have found cercariae alive and very motile. The cercariae were obtained from *Planorbis boissyi* and the bleaching powder used contained 28 per cent. available chlorine. "

BLACKMORE (1928) made experiments with *S. mansoni* cercariae in tap water, unclarified Nile water and aquarium water. On p. 363 he states : " In all three types of water on addition of bleach to give the amount of chlorine necessary for destruction of pathogenic bacteria, the cercariae become motionless in from 5 to 15 minutes. . . . "

According to the experiments of GRIFFITH-JONES and his collaborators (1930) bleaching powder solution containing five per million available chlorine kills both species of cercariae within 10 to 15 minutes, while a solution of one per million is not certain in killing them within 2½ hours.

(c) *Chloramine.*

BLACKMORE (1928, p. 262) observed that in chloramine solution " prepared according to the instructions of the monochloramine method " and containing one per million available chlorine the cercariae were killed in about 5 minutes.

According to GRIFFITH-JONES *et al.* (1930) : " Chloramine, when prepared in the apparatus supplied by Messrs. United Water Softeners Ltd., and in accordance with the printed instructions which they supply, is less effective than chlorine in killing the cercariae. Chloramine, when prepared according to the ' water cart method ' is more effective in killing the cercariae than bleaching powder. " According to the experiments of these authors the solution of chloramine prepared by the former method and containing six per million available chlorine kills the cercariae of *S. mansoni* within 20 minutes, two per million within 2½ hours, and one per million does not kill all the cercariae even within 3½ hours. A solution of chloramine prepared according to the " water cart method " and containing two per million available chlorine kills both species of cercariae within 15 minutes, containing one per million chlorine—within 30 to 60 minutes and in concentration of 0·8 per million it kills only a proportion of the cercariae after 3½ hours.

According to KHALIL (1934) chloramine produced by mixing a patented compound " Chlorosene T " with ammonium chloride killed the schistosome cercariae in purified

water within 30 minutes in a solution containing one per million of available chlorine and within 1 hour when ordinary Nile water was used.

In the *Army Manual of Hygiene and Sanitation* (1934) the following statement is made on p. 184 :

"Ordinary chlorination of drinking water cannot be relied on and at least twice the normal amount of water sterilising powder must be used. After preliminary clarification cercariae can be killed and water rendered safe for drinking in 1 hour by treatment with a standard dosage of chloramine. The standard dose for 100 gallons of water, for use 1 hour after treatment, is two tablets of ammonium chloride followed by two scoopfuls of chlorosene. By doubling the standard dosage cercariae in clarified water are killed in half an hour."

(d) Lime-Water.

RUGE *et al.* (1925, p. 346) write "the addition of quick-lime into infected water protects the experimental animals against infection." THRESH *et al.* (1935, p. 568) state : "There is evidence that they (the cercariae) are killed by excess-lime treatment of water." According to RAMESES GIRGES (1934, p. 519) "Lime solution in a proportion of 1 : 1,000 kills cercariae in 30 minutes."

According to KAN (1934), lime-water 1 in 2,000 instantaneously kills the free swimming cercariae of *S. japonicum*.

(e) Aluminium Sulphate (Alum).

RAMESES GIRGES (1934, p. 520, citing from LEIPER) writes that "Alum, in the dilution used for precipitation of canal water has no effect on the cercariae. The flocculent precipitate of alum does not hold the cercariae which are seen actively swimming in the solution 12 hours after the addition of the alum."

THRESH and others (1933) state that the cercariae cannot be completely removed by coagulants.

(f) Filtration.

According to RAMESES GIRGES, p. 520 (citing from LEIPER) : "The vital layer does not arrest the cercariae, as they were found to pass through a layer formed by the passage for half an hour of aluminated water. The same result followed in another test made by passing newly forming alum precipitate on a small area of sand for an hour thus producing an abnormally thick layer. This, too, offered no obstacle to the leechlike progression of cercariae, as they were found swimming in the filtrate 24 hours later. The layer of sand presents no insuperable barrier, for very active cercariae were found in the filtrate within 1 hour after addition to the inflow of aluminated water, a depth of 75 cm. of sand having been traversed in the interval. Sand of the finest grain used in filtration proved inefficient."

(g) Experience of Egypt.

The above cited particulars are the most important in the literature. However, it was supposed that the managers of water-purification works in Egypt, where schistosomiasis is widespread, accumulated experience which remains unpublished. In order to acquire these data, one of us (G.W.) went to Egypt where some interesting information could be gathered in Alexandria, Cairo and Tanta. The most important impression was that almost all managers of water-purification works, sanitary officers and laboratory workers proved satisfied that the standard methods of purification of water in use in Egypt are sufficient to remove the danger of infection with schistosomiasis. This opinion was reached through the experience of many years which shows that people who live in towns and avoid drinking unpurified water or bathing in natural basins do not get

infected with schistosomiasis in spite of frequent bathing in tap water (cold showers) and of drinking much unboiled tap-water.

It may be emphasized that the three mentioned towns are applying the same usual processes, i.e. (1) precipitation by aluminium sulphate at the rate of 80/1,000,000; (2) filtration for which a standardized quartz sand is used, and (3) chlorination either by a solution of chlorine 0.85/1,000,000 or by chloramine containing 0.4/1,000,000 of available chlorine. The water is supplied to the consumer on an average about 6 hours after it has left the water works.

3.—EXPERIMENTS OF THE PRESENT AUTHORS.

In view of the conflicting references and owing to the absence of sufficient scientific proof as to which of the processes used in the purification of water in Egypt is responsible for the disappearance of the cercariae, laboratory experiments were undertaken with the object of finding a good and practical method of eliminating the schistosome cercariae.

(a) *Test Materials used for Experiments.*

The necessary material, i.e., the infected snails shedding out cercariae, were brought from Egypt. They were kept in glass jars in soft tap water in which were placed branches of *Potamogeton lucens* (for food and for aeration) and sometimes pieces of lettuce leaves for food. In the winter time the jars were aerated during the night by an electrical aerator and during the day they were placed on the window in direct sunlight. In the summer direct sunlight was avoided because excessive warming proved fatal to the snails.

Fresh cercariae were used for each experiment. For this purpose single snails were put in test tubes of 9 cm. height and $1\frac{1}{2}$ cm. wide, three-quarters filled with water and placed in the light at 9 or 10 o'clock in the morning. The cercariae began to appear in the water at once; in the summer time, the maximum output of the cercariae was between 10 a.m. and 1 p.m., in the winter time it was between noon and 2 p.m. Thus the numbers of the cercariae necessary for experiments were usually sufficient at about 2 p.m.

If not disturbed the cercariae sank slowly to the lower layers of the water, but at the slightest agitation of the test tube they quickly rose to the surface to form a dense layer. This layer was taken out by a pipette and served as test material; 0.5 c.c. of this material contained twenty to fifty cercariae.

The *Bulinus* snails (infected with the cercariae of *S. haematobium*) were very difficult to keep in the laboratory and during the summer months died quickly. However, they were maintained for some 2 months during the winter (ca 15° C.) when the experiments could be completed. The *Planorbis* snails (infected with the cercariae of *S. mansoni*) lived well even in summer. In order to make the comparison reliable, only those experiments are quoted in this paper which were made with both species under identical conditions during December-January at an average temperature of 15° C.

The water used for the experiments was taken from the river Yarkon at the point called "Ten Mills" which was found suitable for the intended water-purification plant. The water, either plain or purified, was kept in bottles, sometimes for several days before the experiments. The purification was performed by laboratory methods: fresh river water was clarified by calcium hydroxide and aluminium sulphate and filtered through filter paper.

The snails were collected in localities in Egypt (El-Marg, Maady) reputed for high infection rate with schistosome parasites in both man and snails. We performed the following experiments with *Planorbis* snails in order to ascertain that the cercariae which constituted our test material were really *Schistosoma*. Water containing cercariae was applied to the bare skin on the back of white mice for a period of half an hour. A month later some of the mice proved negative, some had young schistosomes in the liver, while some had developed couples of adult schistosomes in the liver and in the mesenteric veins. (Similar experiments with the *Bulinus* snails were not performed.)

In all the experiments the ingredients were mixed in test tubes of about 10 c.c. volume and immediately poured out into a flat glass dish 3 cm. in diameter in which the liquid remained up to the end of observation. The effect was observed through a binocular microscope. In all the experiments control tubes were set up.

(b) Experiments with Aluminium Sulphate ($Al_2(SO_4)_3$).

A solution of aluminium sulphate was added separately to the cercariae of both species, suspended in plain Yarkon water, in such a proportion that solutions of 20/1,000,000, 50/1,000,000 and 100/1,000,000 $Al_2(SO_4)_3$ were formed. In the latter two solutions the cercariae were entangled in the flocs formed, and sank with them to the bottom. However, in the course of $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 hour, they freed themselves and swam above the sediment as vigorously as in the control tubes. In the tubes with the solution of 20/1,000,000 the cercariae of both species swam normally all the time in spite of the flocs. In all the tubes fully active cercariae were found after 24 hours, i.e., as in the control tube.

Conclusion: Aluminium sulphate in the strongest concentration as employed for purification of water does not affect the cercariae.

(c) Experiments with Lime Water and with Alkaline Buffer Solutions.

Lime, $Ca(OH)_2$, is often used in the course of the purification of water in order to soften it or to accelerate the coagulation of aluminium sulphate. It was, therefore, important to ascertain whether it affects the cercariae.

Two test tubes containing *S. haematobium* cercariae in raw water were filled up to 5 c.c. with a solution of calcium hydroxide calculated so as to neutralize the carbonate hardness in one of the tubes and to make an excess of calcium hydroxide corresponding to 1° of hardness in the other. The pH was 11.1 in the first tube and a little higher in the second. A third tube was filled up with plain water (without calcium hydroxide) as a control. Immediately after the addition of the lime a precipitate was produced and most of the cercariae were entangled in it and sank with it to the bottom. However, after 30 minutes a proportion of them freed themselves and were swimming normally in the

supernatant fluid. This was also the case 1 hour after the beginning of the experiment. Next morning, i.e. ca. 20 hours later, there were a few cercariae still swimming in the first tube, all were dead in the second one, while in the control tube the cercariae were normally active.

0.5 c.c. of a suspension of cercariae of *S. mansoni* was put into each of four tubes and to three of them was added, up to the 5.0 c.c. mark, raw water and lime water in such a proportion as to make the excess of calcium hydroxide correspond to 1, 2 and 3 degrees of hardness respectively. To the fourth tube 4.5 c.c. of plain water was added to serve as control. In order to observe the pH an indicator (*Cresol-red* for pH up to 8.8 and *Alizarine-gg* for higher pH) which has been found to be harmless to the cercariae, was added to all the tubes.

After 4 hours all the cercariae remained as active as before, while the pH in the test tubes containing lime water decreased from 11 to 9.8 (the pH in the control tube remained unchanged 8.5). Next morning, i.e. 20 hours after the start of the experiment, all the cercariae in all the test tubes were equally active.

In order to ascertain whether the high pH formed by calcium hydroxide affects the cercariae a similar experiment was made in the following way: Two equal rows of five test tubes each were arranged, each tube containing 0.5 c.c. of *S. mansoni* cercariae suspension and 4.5 c.c. of lime solution in Yarkon water of various strengths. One row was provided with indicator while the other row remained without indicator. At the start, the respective pH were: 11.1, 11.2, 11.3, 11.5, 11.6. In the test tubes with pH 11.6 all the cercariae were dead after 12 minutes (the pH then became reduced to 11.5). In other test tubes and in the control tube the cercariae were unchanged after 2 hours, during which interval the pH in the test tubes became 11.1, 11.2, 11.2, 11.2 and 11.2 respectively.

In order to ascertain whether the lethal effect observed in the latter experiment was caused by the calcium hydroxide itself, or by the high concentration of OH-ions, experiments with buffer solutions were made. In a sodium borate buffer solution (according to SÖRENSEN) containing 1.0 to 1.6 per cent. of total salts, all cercariae were destroyed at pH 11.3 during 70 minutes; at pH 11.7—in 7 minutes—and at pH 12.1 and above immediately. Similar solutions were then prepared in such a manner that the total salt content was half that of the previous solution. The cercariae were dead after a little longer period, namely at pH 11.4 after 90 minutes, at pH 11.5 in 60 minutes, at pH 11.7 after 35 minutes and at pH 12.0 after 5 minutes.

In order to exclude the possible specific sterilizing effect of boric salts, similar experiments were carried out with phosphate buffer solution, containing about 0.5 per cent. total salts. At pH 11.2 some cercariae were still alive after a period of 2½ hours, at pH 11.4 all were dead after 30 minutes, and at pH 11.9 after 5 minutes. Thus the result proved to be similar to those carried out with the borate buffer.

It may be concluded from these experiments that in the mentioned buffer solutions the high pH was mainly responsible for the death of the cercariae, while the salts themselves exert a comparatively slight effect on the cercariae.

A pH of 11.6 is however never reached when water is treated with Ca(OH)_2 in water plants. Thus it is to be expected that Ca(OH)_2 treatment as employed in the purification plants will not be effective against schistosome cercariae.

(d) Experiments with Lime Water and Aluminium Sulphate.

Aluminium sulphate is usually added to the treated water immediately after the addition of the lime. In order to observe the combined effect of these substances on the cercariae the following experiments were performed:—

To three test tubes each containing 1 c.c. of a suspension of cercariae of *S. mansoni* were added respectively 3.50, 3.75 and 3.90 c.c. of a solution of calcium hydroxide in Yarkon river water having 1° of hardness in excess over the neutralization value, and then filled up to 5 c.c. with a solution of aluminium sulphate (1/1,000). Thus, the proportion of aluminium sulphate in the test tubes was respectively 100, 50 and 20 per million. In

addition to this, a control tube in which the solution of aluminium sulphate and another one in which the solution of calcium hydroxide was replaced by plain water, were added to the series. The pH in the first three tubes was respectively 6.5, 8.5 and 9.0, while in the control tube without lime it was 7.0 and in the other one which was without aluminium sulphate it was 9.5. After 3½ hours the cercariae showed normal vitality, and after 20 hours most of them were still normal.

Four pairs of test tubes were set up as follows: 1 c.c. of the suspension of *S. mansoni* cercariae was placed in each tube; into the first pair a solution of calcium hydroxide calculated to neutralize the carbonate hardness was added; into the second pair also calcium hydroxide was added but calculated to form an excess of lime corresponding to 1° of hardness; both these tubes were filled up to 5 c.c. with a solution of aluminium sulphate calculated to form a concentration of 50/1,000,000. The third and fourth pairs served as controls; the former contained aquarium water instead of calcium hydroxide while the latter contained water instead of both calcium hydroxide and aluminium sulphate solutions. To one tube of each of the four pairs an indicator was added for the estimation of pH. At the beginning the pH was respectively 9.1, 9.4, 8.0 and 9.2.

After 10 minutes all the cercariae in the first two pairs of tubes were entangled in the sunken flocs but still showed very active movements as if attempting to free themselves. After 25 minutes some of the cercariae freed themselves from the sediment and swam about in the supernatant water. The same was observed 1 hour later (when the pH was respectively 8.9, 9.0, 7.9 and 8.5). After 19 hours almost all cercariae in the two first tubes were dead while in the control tubes they were normally active.

A similar experiment was performed with three tubes, with the difference that calcium hydroxide was calculated to make an excess corresponding to 1°, 2° and 3° of hardness. After the addition of aluminium sulphate, the flocs obscured the view and started to sink slowly. The pH was then 11.1, 11.1 and <11.1 respectively. 15 minutes later when the flocs sedimented no cercariae were seen in the supernatant water. 20 minutes from the beginning of the experiment the sediment was examined and it was found that all the cercariae were dead, some of them not being attached to the flocs. In both control tubes the cercariae were normally active. The death of the cercariae in the experimental tubes is to be ascribed to the high pH, but it is, however, to be remarked that the presence of flocs which drive the cercariae to the bottom seems to accelerate the lethal action of the alkali. Practically, however, water treated by both chemicals never attains a pH over 9.

From a practical point of view the treatment with lime and aluminium sulphate will not be effective against cercariae.

(e) Experiments with Chlorine.

The action of the following three forms of chlorine on the cercariae of both species of *Schistosoma* was tested: (a) solution of gaseous chlorine in water, (b) solution of sodium hypochlorite prepared from eau de Javel, (c) solution of chloramine prepared as follows:—

“Chlorine water” containing about 2 grammes of chlorine per litre was prepared by introducing gaseous chlorine into the water. Two grammes of ammonium chloride (NH_4Cl) were dissolved in 100 c.c. of this chlorine water and this solution was left to stand for about 2 hours at room temperature; 2½ c.c. of this solution dissolved in one litre of water formed the stock chloramine solution used in our experiments and it contained from one to two per million of active chlorine. There always was a difference between the amount of chlorine

actually found by analysis in the stock solution and the amount calculated from the chlorine content of the chlorine water. Only the result of the analysis was taken into account in our experiments. The stock solution contained about 15 mg. NH_3 per litre and the ratio of the available chlorine to NH_3 was about 1 : 7.

All the solutions were made with the river water clarified by calcium hydroxide and aluminium sulphate and filtered through filter paper. The reaction of the water was tested at the beginning of the experiment, and pH varied from 7.5 to 8.9. All experiments were made with 0.5 c.c. of the suspension of cercariae to which firstly water and then the stock solution of either form of chlorine was added. In each experiment a control tube was set up which contained 0.5 c.c. of the suspension of cercariae and 4.5 c.c. of water. In all experiments a parallel row of tubes was set up in which the indicator, O-Tolidin was added to estimate the amount of available chlorine at any moment. The estimation of the amount of chlorine was made colorimetrically by comparison with standard coloured sealed tubes, three times during each experiment: at first the amount of chlorine in the stock solution was determined and the concentration of chlorine at the beginning in the experimental tubes was calculated accordingly; the next test was made 10 minutes and the third one 35 minutes after the addition of the stock solution to the tubes containing cercariae.

The active chlorine was disappearing with varying rapidity not only in different experiments but also in different tubes of the same experiment. It was found that when the stock solution of chlorine was added to plain water with or without cercariae, the amount of available chlorine fell down rapidly in most cases, probably being absorbed by the organic matter dissolved in the water, or by the suspended living organisms. This absorption proceeded at a high rate usually during the first 10 minutes and afterwards the remaining chlorine diminished very slowly.

Concentrations of chlorine, 1/1,000,000, kill the cercariae at once, irrespective of the form of chlorine. Low concentrations act slowly and the cercariae pass through several stages of progressive loss of activity up to the absolute and irretrievable loss of motion and transparency which is a sign of death. In order to determine the degree of the effect of chlorine on the cercariae the following seven phases were differentiated:—

0—Normal movements.

1—Irregular and weak movements; the beginning of sinking.

2—The cercariae are creeping at the bottom or they partly swim above the bottom.

3—All cercariae lie at the bottom and their tails show convulsive lateral motion.

4—The cercariae lie at the bottom, their bodies and tails moving slowly.

5—Some of the cercariae are already dead.

6—All the cercariae are dead.

The results of the experiments are shown on Tables I to VI. The analysis

TABLE I.

EXPERIMENTS ON THE EFFECT OF GASEOUS CHLORINE ON THE CERCARIAE OF
Schistosoma haematobium.*

No.	pH.	Amount of available chlorine estimated at			Time at which various phases of the effect began.					Duration of the observation.
		0	10'	35'	2	3	4	5	6	
1	7.5	0.10	0	0	—	1.20	—	—	—	2.00
2	7.8	0.10	T	0	24	34	2.00	—	—	2.00
3	8.8	0.10	T	0	24	—	—	—	—	2.00
4	7.5	0.20	0.10	0	12	28	—	—	—	2.00
5	8.8	0.20	0.10	0.10	—	21	—	—	—	2.00
6	7.8	0.20	0.12	0.10	15	28	1.04	—	—	2.00
7	7.8	0.20	0.15	0	—	15	—	—	—	1.20
8	7.5	0.30	0.15	0.10	10	17	48	1.10	—	2.00
9	7.8	0.30	0.15	0.15	—	8	45	1.35	—	2.00
10	8.8	0.30	0.20	0.17	12	19	55	—	—	2.00
11	7.8	0.40	0.20	0.20	8	10	31	48	1.12	
12	7.5	0.40	0.25	0.20	5	14	24	43	53	
13	7.5	0.50	0.28	0.25	3	12	29	35	40	
14	7.8	0.50	0.30	0.20	—	7	17	40	58	
15	7.8	0.60	0.30	0.30	—	—	6	28	55	
16	7.5	0.60	0.35	0.30	—	9	—	21	30	
17	7.8	0.80	0.40	0.40	—	7	—	10	24	
18	7.8	0.60	0.40	0.28	5	—	15	35	55	
19	8.8	0.60	0.40	0.40	—	6	21	40	48	
20	7.5	0.80	0.45	0.40	—	—	7	—	27	
21	7.8	1.00	0.60	0.45	—	5	—	10	20	
22	7.8	1.20	0.60	0.50	—	4	—	8	18	
23	8.8	1.00	0.70	0.70	8	—	—	20	30	

TABLE II.

EXPERIMENTS ON THE EFFECT OF GASEOUS CHLORINE ON THE CERCARIAE OF
Schistosoma mansoni.*

No.	pH.	Amount of available chlorine estimated at			Time at which various phases of the effect began.					Duration of the observation.
		0	10'	35'	2	3	4	5	6	
1	8.0	0.18	0.10	0.10	23	31	—	—	—	1.20
2	8.8	0.18	0.13	0.13	—	19	1.35	—	—	1.35
3	8.0	0.27	0.17	0.17	—	18	56	1.15	—	1.17
4	8.8	0.27	0.25	0.23	9	18	45	1.05	1.32	
5	8.0	0.36	0.25	0.25	—	10	18	52	1.15	
6	8.8	0.36	0.30	0.30	—	—	12	36	47	
7	8.0	0.45	0.30	0.30	—	8	18	23	<u>55</u>	
8	8.8	0.45	0.35	0.33	5	8	12	20	<u>32</u>	
9	8.0	0.54	0.40	0.35	—	5	—	22	24	
10	8.8	0.54	0.42	0.40	2	4	10	15	24	
11	8.0	0.70			—	3	—	10	18	
12	8.8	1.72	0.60	0.60	—	—	7	10	11	
13	8.8	1.08	0.70	0.70	—	5	—	4	5	
14	8.0	1.10	0.85	0.75	—	—	—	—	5	

* Remarks : The experiments are arranged according to the amount of available chlorine as estimated 10 minutes after the addition of the stock solution.

Time is shown in minutes.

" T " means traces of chlorine.

Amount of chlorine is given per million.

pH relates to the water used for the experiment.

The meaning of the grades of the effect is given on page 557.

The underlined figures denote the cases of discrepancies in correlation between the amount of available chlorine employed and the results of the experiment.

TABLE III.

EXPERIMENTS ON THE EFFECT OF CHLORAMINE ON THE CERCARIAE OF
Schistosoma haematobium.*

No.	pH.	Amount of available chlorine estimated at			Time at which various phases of the effect began.					Duration $\frac{1}{2}$ of the $\frac{1}{2}$ observation.
		0	10'	35'	2	3	4	5	6	
1	8.2	0.045	T	0	18	—	—	—	—	2.00
2	8.1	0.075	0.05	T	6	18	—	—	—	1.15
3	8.2	0.07	T	0	—	15	—	—	—	2.00
4	8.2	0.09	0.05	0.05	12	18	—	—	—	2.00
5	8.2	0.10	0.05	0.05	—	9	1.27	—	—	2.00
6	8.2	0.12	0.10	0.01	—	7	13	42	—	2.00
7	8.1	0.12	0.10	0.10	5	8	19	1.09	—	1.15
8	8.2	0.14	0.12	0	—	11	—	—	—	1.00
9	8.2	0.13	0.13	0.10	—	7	—	1.32	—	2.00
10	8.1	0.12	0.12	0.10	3	30	—	—	—	1.15
11	8.2	0.15	0.13	0.13	—	5	14	47	—	2.00
12	8.1	0.20	0.18	0.15	—	3	5	21	58	1.00
13	8.2	0.20	0.16	0.13	—	—	6	15	30	
14	8.1	0.20	0.20	0.18	3	5	11	20	41	
15	8.2	0.27	0.20	0.20	4	10	15	35	—	
16	8.1	0.30	0.27	0.22	—	—	4	7	10	
17	8.1	0.30	0.28	0.28	—	—	3	10	18	
18	8.2	0.36	0.30	0.28	—	—	3	8	10	
19	8.2	0.42	0.30	0.25	—	4	7	13	18	
20	8.2	0.45	0.25	0.28	—	—	—	—	5	
21	8.2	0.54	0.40	0.35	—	—	5	7	11	
22	8.2	0.70	0.50	0.47	—	—	3	—	8	1.00
23	8.2	0.55	0.80	0.55	—	—	—	—	6	
24	8.2	1.10	0.75	0.60	—	—	—	—	3	
25	8.2	1.30	0.90	0.70	—	—	—	—	1	

TABLE IV.

EXPERIMENTS ON THE EFFECT OF CHLORAMINE ON THE CERCARIAE OF *Schistosoma mansoni*.*

No.	pH.	Amount of available chlorine estimated at			Time at which various phases of the effect began.					Duration of the observation.
		0	10'	35'	2	3	4	5	6	
1	8.1	0.06	T	T	2.00	—	—	—	—	2.00
2	8.2	0.25	0.10	0.10	10	—	24	—	—	1.30
3		0.12	0.12	0.10	—	5	19	1.00	—	1.30
4	8.1	0.17	0.12	0.10	—	21	19	2.00	—	2.00
5	8.2	0.27	0.13	0.12	5	7	29	—	—	1.30
6	8.1	0.20	0.15	0.13	—	13	26	1.00	2.00	—
7	8.2	0.32	0.15	0.15	—	5	18	—	—	1.30
8	8.2	0.36	0.18	0.17	—	3	11	32	1.10	
9	8.1	0.26	0.20	0.15	8	—	15	18	43	
10	8.2	0.45	0.20	0.18	—	2	7	18	30	
11		0.20	0.20	0.20	—	3	8	25	<u>34</u>	
12	8.1	0.31	0.20	0.20	3	4	11	14	<u>45</u>	
13	8.2	0.49	0.22	0.20	—	2	6	10	25	
14	8.2	0.54	0.24	0.22	—	2	—	9	20	
15	8.1	0.39	0.28	0.23	—	2	7	10	12	
16		0.30	0.30	0.25	—	—	—	6	10	
17	8.1	0.52	0.32	0.25	—	3	4	—	7	
18	8.1	0.78	0.50	0.38	—	—	—	—	4	

* Remarks : The experiments are arranged according to the amount of available chlorine as estimated 10 minutes after the addition of the stock solution.

Time is shown in minutes.

"T" means traces of chlorine.

Amount of chlorine is given per million.

pH relates to the water used for the experiment.

The meaning of the grades of the effect is given on page 557.

The underlined figures denote the cases of discrepancies in correlation between the amount of available chlorine employed and the results of the experiment.

TABLE III.

EXPERIMENTS ON THE EFFECT OF CHLORAMINE ON THE CERCARIAE OF
Schistosoma haematobium.*

No.	pH.	Amount of available chlorine estimated at			Time at which various phases of the effect began.					Duration of the observation.
		0	10'	35'	2	3	4	5	6	
1	8.2	0.045	T	0	18	—	—	—	—	2.00
2	8.1	0.075	0.05	T	6	18	—	—	—	1.15
3	8.2	0.07	T	0	—	15	—	—	—	2.00
4	8.2	0.09	0.05	0.05	12	18	—	—	—	2.00
5	8.2	0.10	0.05	0.05	—	9	1.27	—	—	2.00
6	8.2	0.12	0.10	0.01	—	7	13	42	—	2.00
7	8.1	0.12	0.10	0.10	5	8	19	1.09	—	1.15
8	8.2	0.14	0.12	0	—	11	—	—	—	1.00
9	8.2	0.13	0.13	0.10	—	7	—	1.32	—	2.00
10	8.1	0.12	0.12	0.10	3	30	—	—	—	1.15
11	8.2	0.15	0.13	0.13	—	5	14	47	—	2.00
12	8.1	0.20	0.18	0.15	—	3	5	21	58	1.00
13	8.2	0.20	0.16	0.13	—	—	6	15	30	
14	8.1	0.20	0.20	0.18	3	5	11	20	41	
15	8.2	0.27	0.20	0.20	4	10	15	35	—	
16	8.1	0.30	0.27	0.22	—	—	4	7	10	
17	8.1	0.30	0.28	0.28	—	—	3	10	18	
18	8.2	0.36	0.30	0.28	—	—	3	8	10	
19	8.2	0.42	0.30	0.25	—	4	7	13	18	
20	8.2	0.45	0.25	0.28	—	—	—	—	5	
21	8.2	0.54	0.40	0.35	—	—	5	7	11	
22	8.2	0.70	0.50	0.47	—	—	3	—	8	1.00
23	8.2	0.55	0.80	0.55	—	—	—	—	6	
24	8.2	1.10	0.75	0.60	—	—	—	—	3	
25	8.2	1.30	0.90	0.70	—	—	—	—	1	

TABLE IV.

EXPERIMENTS ON THE EFFECT OF CHLORAMINE ON THE CERCARIAE OF *Schistosoma mansoni*.*

No.	pH.	Amount of available chlorine estimated at			Time at which various phases of the effect began.					Duration of the observation.
		0	10'	35'	2	3	4	5	6	
1	8.1	0.06	T	T	2.00	—	—	—	—	2.00
2	8.2	0.25	0.10	0.10	10	—	24	—	—	1.30
3		0.12	0.12	0.10	—	5	19	1.00	—	1.30
4	8.1	0.17	0.12	0.10	—	21	19	2.00	—	2.00
5	8.2	0.27	0.13	0.12	5	7	29	—	—	1.30
6	8.1	0.20	0.15	0.13	—	13	26	1.00	2.00	—
7	8.2	0.32	0.15	0.15	—	5	18	—	—	1.30
8	8.2	0.36	0.18	0.17	—	3	11	32	1.10	
9	8.1	0.26	0.20	0.15	8	—	15	18	43	
10	8.2	0.45	0.20	0.18	—	2	7	18	30	
11		0.20	0.20	0.20	—	3	8	25	<u>34</u>	
12	8.1	0.31	0.20	0.20	3	4	11	14	<u>45</u>	
13	8.2	0.49	0.22	0.20	—	2	6	10	25	
14	8.2	0.54	0.24	0.22	—	2	—	9	20	
15	8.1	0.39	0.28	0.23	—	2	7	10	12	
16		0.30	0.30	0.25	—	—	—	6	10	
17	8.1	0.52	0.32	0.25	—	3	4	—	7	
18	8.1	0.78	0.50	0.38	—	—	—	—	4	

* Remarks : The experiments are arranged according to the amount of available chlorine as estimated 10 minutes after the addition of the stock solution.

Time is shown in minutes.

"T" means traces of chlorine.

Amount of chlorine is given per million.

pH relates to the water used for the experiment.

The meaning of the grades of the effect is given on page 557.

The underlined figures denote the cases of discrepancies in correlation between the amount of available chlorine employed and the results of the experiment.

TABLE V.

EXPERIMENTS ON THE EFFECT OF SODIUM HYPOCHLORITE ON THE CERCARIAE OF
Schistosoma haematobium.*

No.	pH.	Amount of available chlorine estimated at			Time at which various phases of the effect began.					Duration of the observation.
		0	10'	35'	2	3	4	5	6	
1	8.9	0.20	0.10	0.10	—	20	50	—	—	2.00
2		0.40	0.17	0.13	12	20	30	1.12	—	2.00
3		0.20	0.17	0.17	12	20	30	40	—	1.30
4		0.60	0.23	0.18	—	18	32	60	1.12	
5		1.00	—	0.18	—	15	25	32	1.20	
6		0.40	0.27	0.23	10	—	16	25	1.40	
7		0.80	0.28	0.20	—	—	15	28	42	
8		0.90	0.29	0.20	—	—	15	27	45	
9		0.60	0.30	0.25	—	—	10	12	34	
10		0.80	0.33	0.25	—	—	10	17	27	
11	8.9	0.40	0.35	0.35	—	14	—	18	40	
12		1.00	0.42	0.25	—	—	12	18	28	
13		1.20	0.48	0.25	—	—	—	14	26	
14	8.9	0.60	0.50	0.45	—	—	—	10	18	
15		1.40	0.55	0.27	—	—	15	20	25	
16	8.9	0.80	0.80	0.40	—	—	—	—	10	
17	8.9	1.00	0.60	0.40	—	—	—	—	10	
18	8.9	1.20	1.00	0.60	—	—	—	8	18	

TABLE VI.

EXPERIMENTS ON THE EFFECT OF SODIUM HYPOCHLORITE ON THE CERCARIAE OF
Schistosoma mansoni.*

No.	pH.	Amount of available chlorine estimated after			Time at which various phases of the effect began					Duration of the observation.
		0	10'	35'	2	3	4	5	6	
1	8.8	0.10	0.05	T	—	—	—	—	—	1.45
2	8.4	0.18	0.10	0.08	29	33	1.37	—	—	1.37
3	8.6	0.20	0.20	—	—	40	1.18	—	—	1.30
4	8.4	0.27	0.20	0.15	7	25	1.20	—	—	1.33
5	8.4	0.36	0.24	0.22	8	21	26	38	1.04	1.45
6	8.6	0.30	0.25	—	—	21	26	34	1.09	
7	8.8	0.30	0.25	0.18	15	27	1.24	—	—	
8	8.6	0.40	0.28	—	—	9	17	23	29	
9	8.8	0.40	0.30	0.28	4	15	45	50	1.05	
10	8.4	0.45	0.30	0.30	—	8	15	29	35	1.45
11	8.4	0.54	0.35	0.35	4	6	—	11	24	
12	8.8	0.50	0.38	0.38	2	3	12	29	36	
13	8.6	0.50	0.40	—	—	6	—	13	25	
14	8.8	0.60	0.42	0.40	2	8	13	18	21	
15	8.4	0.72	0.45	0.45	—	4	7	10	16	1.45
16	8.6	0.60	0.50	—	—	4	9	13	19	
17	8.4	1.08	0.60	0.58	—	—	4	7	15	
18	8.8	0.80	0.63	0.63	2	5	9	14	19	
19	8.6	0.80	0.70	—	—	3	5	—	12	
20	8.6	1.00	0.80	—	—	1	3	7	12	1.45
21	8.8	1.00	0.80	0.73	—	—	6	10	13	

* Remarks: The experiments are arranged according to the amount of available chlorine as estimated 10 minutes after the addition of the stock solution.

Time is shown in minutes.

"T" means traces of chlorine.

Amount of chlorine is given per million.

pH relates to the water used for the experiment.

The meaning of the grades of the effect is given on page 557.

The underlined figures denote the cases of discrepancies in correlation between the amount of available chlorine employed and the results of the experiment.

of these tables shows that there is no absolute correlation between the amount of chlorine and the lethal effect. If we arrange the experiments according to the initial amount of chlorine, calculated from the stock solution, the corresponding row of figures marking the death time will show a gradual fall, but with a number of discrepancies (see Table VIII, left row, and also Tables I to VI, the rows of grade 6 of the effect). It will appear that in some experiments a smaller initial amount of chlorine kills the cercariae quicker than a larger amount in one of the next experiments. However, if the experiments are arranged according to the amount of chlorine determined 10 minutes after the addition of the stock solution of chlorine, the number of discrepancies will be smaller (see Table VIII, right row).

It is hence concluded that the amount of chlorine which remains 10 minutes after the addition of the stock solution is a better criterion for forecasting the effect than the calculated initial amount. Therefore, in Tables I to VI the experiments are arranged according to the results of the estimation of the chlorine after 10 minutes.

It is difficult to explain the discrepancies in the gradual rise of the lethal effect of chlorine. They may possibly be due to different content of organic substances, such as the excreta of the snails or of the cercariae, in various samples of cercariae material. These substances certainly absorb a part of the available chlorine and their amount could not be estimated. We were not able to avoid them for we did not know how to separate the cercariae from the water into which they were discharged by the snail, without injuring them.

In any case, it is evident from Tables I to VI that the amount of chlorine, and particularly that amount which remains after 10 minutes contact with the water containing cercariae, is responsible for the rapidity of the lethal effect. On the other hand, each of the three forms of chlorine used exerts different action on each species of the parasite. Thus, six figures may be established which denote the minimum initial concentration of available chlorine which is certainly lethal for the cercariae after a more or less prolonged period (see Table VII, first row). However, in practice it is desirable to have the lethal effect assured within a limited time, say 30 minutes necessary for the water to pass from the purification plant to the consumer. In this case another six figures should be chosen (see Table VII, second row). Other figures (see Table VII, third and fourth rows) are to be taken in cases when the amount of available chlorine after 10 minutes is taken as the criterion.

It is evident from Table VII that chloramine is at least twice as powerful as both gaseous chlorine or sodium hypochlorite. The minimum initial concentration which has lethal effect in respect to both species of schistosome cercariae is 0.45 per million as compared with 0.8 and 1.0 per million for gaseous chlorine and sodium hypochlorite respectively. If the after-10-minutes estimation of available chlorine has to be taken as a criterion, 0.22 per million has to be compared with 0.6 and 0.42 respectively.

TABLE VII.

MINIMUM CONCENTRATIONS OF ACTIVE CHLORINE (PER MILLION) SHOWING LETHAL EFFECT ON SCHISTOSOME CERCARIAE.

Form of chlorine.	Species of <i>Schistosoma</i> cercariae.	According to preliminary estimation of Cl.		According to the estimation after 10 min.	
		m.l.c.	m.p.c.	m.l.c.	m.p.c.
Gaseous chlorine	<i>haematobium</i>	<u>0.40</u>	<u>0.80</u>	<u>0.25</u>	0.60
	<i>mansoni</i>	0.27	0.54	0.25	0.40
Chloramine	<i>haematobium</i>	0.30	0.30	<u>0.22</u>	0.22
	<i>mansoni</i>	<u>0.36</u>	<u>0.45</u>	0.18	<u>0.22</u>
Natr. hyperchlorid	<i>haematobium</i>	<u>0.40</u>	<u>1.00</u>	0.23	<u>0.42</u>
	<i>mansoni</i>	0.36	0.50	<u>0.28</u>	0.40

m.l.c. = minimum lethal concentration.

m.p.c. = minimum practical concentration (lethal within the limits of 30 minutes).

TABLE VIII.

NUMBER OF DISCREPANCIES IN CORRELATION BETWEEN THE AMOUNT OF AVAILABLE CHLORINE EMPLOYED AND THE RESULTS OBTAINED.

Form of chlorine.	Species of <i>Schistosoma</i> cercariae.	If ordered according to the preliminary estimation of Cl.	If ordered according to the estimation after 10 minutes.
Gaseous chlorine	<i>haematobium</i>	6	5
	<i>mansoni</i>	1	1
Chloramine	<i>haematobium</i>	5	6
	<i>mansoni</i>	9	2
Natr. hyperchlorid	<i>haematobium</i>	9	7
	<i>mansoni</i>	7	5
Total		37	26

It can also be seen from Table VII that cercariae of *S. haematobium* are more sensitive towards chloramine and more resistant towards gaseous chlorine and sodium hypochlorite, while it is the reverse with the cercariae of *S. mansoni*. The obvious conclusions may be drawn that when the action of the chlorine is required against both species of *Schistosoma*, concentrations of the chlorine should be applied which are lethal for the more resistant one. These concentrations are underlined in Table VII.

It has to be emphasized that the environmental conditions in our experiments were more advantageous for the cercariae than they are in the purification plant. As already mentioned above, the water containing cercariae, as used in the experiments, was inevitably polluted by organic substances excreted by the snail or by the cercariae themselves and therefore the absorption of available chlorine proceeded undoubtedly more rapidly than it might do in a plant, where water clarified by aluminium sulphate and filtered is subjected to chlorination. Further, the experiments took place in small open glass dishes with comparatively large surface and hence the aeration of the water was better than it is in big tanks in a plant. Thus, it may be supposed that in the plant practice the minimum concentrations of available chlorine which are necessary to kill the cercariae are smaller than those indicated on Table VIII.

(f) Irreversibility of the Effect of Chlorination.

In order to determine whether the effect of the chlorination upon the cercariae may be stopped or reversed by the elimination of chlorine the following experiments were performed.

Cercariae of *S. mansoni* were subjected to the action of sodium hypochlorite with the initial amount of available chlorine of 0.6 per million. After 25 minutes, when the cercariae were lying on the bottom of the test tube in the 2nd phase, the supernatant water was poured out and replaced by plain water. No recovery of the cercariae could be noticed and they began to die after 1 hour 20 minutes. To test tubes arranged in pairs and containing *S. mansoni* cercariae sodium hypochlorite was added to make the concentration of available chlorine respectively 0.60, 0.66, 0.80 and 0.88 per million. In one test tube out of every pair the experiment proceeded normally to the end. In the second one the solution was decanted after 10 minutes, when the cercariae started to sink, and was replaced by plain water. On comparing the effect in both rows only insignificant difference or no difference at all could be noticed. For instance, the effect in the decanted test tubes containing 0.66 per million available chlorine was somewhat weaker than in the non-decanted one, though the injurious action of chlorine continued after the decantation. In the decanted test tube containing 0.88 per million chlorine all the cercariae were destroyed during the same period of time while in the non-decanted test tube only a part of the cercariae died.

Similar experiments were carried out with chloramine—0.66 and 0.88 available chlorine per million—and with gaseous chlorine—0.22 and 0.35 per million. The decantation of the solution of chloramine after 5 and 7 minutes exposure respectively did not change the results, in both pairs of tubes the cercariae being dead after 10 and 17 minutes respectively. In the experiments with the gaseous chlorine *most* of the cercariae were killed in the decanted tubes after 2 hours while in the non-decanted control *all* cercariae were dead within that period.

It may be concluded from the above experiments that the contact with the chlorine (irrespective of the three forms used) during a certain period exerts on the cercariae (*S. mansoni*) an adverse effect which cannot be stopped in its further development or be reversed by the removal of the cercariae from the injurious solution. Consequently it may be supposed that in order to destroy the cercariae it is sufficient to expose them to the effect of a solution of chlorine for a certain minimum period (depending on the concentration of available chlorine) which does not necessarily make the effect demonstrable. In other words, the minimum lethal concentrations given on Table VII may prove excessive in plant practice.

(g) *Experiments with Filtration.*

In order to study the possibility of retaining the cercariae by filtration, an experimental filter was constructed. It consisted of three iron pipes 10, 15 and 50 cm. long respectively and 6 cm. in diameter. Various combinations of these pipes made a filter of varying height, from 10 to 75 cm., which was filled up with sand of specified size, generally used for the filtration of water. The filter was closed below by a copper net to keep the sand in position and by a collecting funnel. To the upper end of the filter a double-walled funnel was adjusted, its outer wall being higher than the inner one. The water entered the filter through a pipe between these walls and overflowed the inner wall without disturbing the surface of the sand. The inflow was regulated by a cock and during the filtration the surface of the water was constantly kept 2 to 3 cm. above the sand.

Several experiments were made with the cercariae of both *S. mansoni* and *S. haematobium*. Plain water containing them was filtered through a freshly set up, clean filter filled up with water. When the height of the sand was 10 cm. the cercariae appeared in the first amount of filtrate though only part of them passed eventually. When 50 and 75 cm. height was used, they appeared after some delay and in still smaller proportion.

In order to test the so-called "biological layer" which is formed on the surface of the sand filter in the course of filtration and which is essential for the filtration of bacteria the following method was used: A layer was formed on the surface of a 10 cm. high sand column by passing through it 8 litres of water immediately after treating it with calcium hydroxide (calculated to neutralize 90 per cent. of the carbonate hardness) and with aluminium sulphate (100/1,000,000). It took almost half an hour for all this water to pass and the flocs formed on the sand a layer of such a density that the water passed in drops. Thereafter fresh cercariae of *S. haematobium* were put in the filtering water and a few of them could be recovered in the first 100 c.c. of the filtrate. This experiment cannot be regarded as conclusive for the retaining power of the "biological layer" may differ from

the aluminium hydroxide layer. Nevertheless it shows the behaviour of the cercariae in the filter and suggests that the actual "biological layer" may also be successfully passed by the cercariae.

Conclusion : A 75 cm. high layer of specified sand or a layer of aluminium hydroxide flocs cannot retain all the schistosome cercariae.

(h) *Experiments with High Pressure.*

There exists a patent for sterilization of various materials by high pressure. In order to study the suitability of this method for destruction of the schistosome cercariae the following experiments were carried out.

Small test tubes filled with water containing the cercariae were covered by a layer of neutral paraffin oil and a thin rubber membrane to permit the transmission of the pressure to the interior of the tubes. The tubes were then put into water in a special apparatus developing high pressure. Four experiments made with various pressures gave negative results. In one of the experiments the cercariae remained for 6 hours under a pressure of 200 atmospheres and yet the vitality of the cercariae remained equal to that of the cercariae in the control tube which was similarly closed but remained under normal pressure.

4.—CONCLUSIONS.

The existing data on the destruction of the cercariae of *Schistosoma* during the purification of water, as quoted in the literature, are insufficient and contradictory.

The long empirical experience of the Egyptian water purification plants suggests that the standard methods used for the purification of water rids it of cercariae.

The usual clarification of water by means of aluminium sulphate alone or with the preliminary treatment with lime, even when these substances are employed in maximum quantities generally in use, does not affect the cercariae of *Schistosoma*.

High pressure, up to 200 atmospheres during 6 hours does not injure them.

The standard filtration of water through sand is ineffective.

High alkaline reaction of pH 11.5 to 11.6 kills the cercariae. The presence of $\text{Al}(\text{OH})_3$ flocs which drive the cercariae to the bottom seems to increase the effect of the alkali, i.e., a lethal effect is already produced at pH 11.1. However, such a high alkalinity cannot be attained in the water treatment plant, and therefore this interesting fact has no practical value.

The cercariae of *Schistosoma* are killed by chlorine. The time necessary for a sure action of this factor depends on the quantity of active chlorine in the

treated water and on the form in which it is used, *vis.* (a) gaseous chlorine, (b) sodium hypochlorite and (c) chloramine.

(1) *Gaseous chlorine* dissolved in the water, kills the cercariae with certainty in $1\frac{1}{4}$ hours when the *initial* concentration of available chlorine is 0.40 or more per million. Smaller amounts do not give a sure action even during a much prolonged period. In cases when the contact between the chlorine and the cercariae is to be limited to half an hour, a lethal effect can be produced by an initial concentration of not less than 0.8 parts of chlorine per million.

(2) *Sodium hypochlorite* gives a sure effect in an *initial* concentration of 0.4 per million of available chlorine after at most 1 hour 40 minutes, weaker concentrations being uncertain even after longer periods. If the action is to be limited to 30 minutes an initial concentration of 1.0 per million is necessary.

(3) *Chloramine*, as prepared according to the formula described above, kills the cercariae with certainty in 1 hour 10 minutes when the *initial* concentration of available chlorine is 0.36 per million. If the 30 minutes limit is required 0.45 per million of available chlorine should be applied.

Thus, chloramine is the most effective form of chlorine tested.

The absorption of available chlorine by the treated water is an important factor for the calculation of the solutions. If the initial amount of the available chlorine was not large enough, the remaining quantity proves, after the initial absorption, insufficient to exert the necessary action. In cases when the treated water contains comparatively little dissolved (or suspended) material, the absorption of the chlorine is slight, in which case a comparatively small initial amount of available chlorine suffices to kill all the cercariae. The amount of the available chlorine *which remains in the water 10 minutes after the addition of the stock solution* indicates the value of the concentration more exactly than the initial estimation. Therefore, in order to use the chlorine economically it is useful to calculate the solutions on the basis of the amount of available chlorine which remains after 10 minutes contact with the treated water.

If *gaseous chlorine* is used, a sure lethal effect will be obtained if the amount of the available chlorine after 10 minutes will be 0.25 per million, though the action may be concluded after $1\frac{1}{2}$ hours. For a period of exposure limited to 30 minutes, 0.6 per million of available chlorine should be present in the water after 10 minutes.

If *sodium hypochlorite* is used, a sure effect is to be expected during 1 hour 5 minutes if there remains 0.28 per million of available chlorine, and at most during 30 minutes if 0.42 per million or more of available chlorine remains after 10 minutes.

If *chloramine* is used, a lethal effect is certain in less than 30 minutes if 0.22 per million of available chlorine remains after 10 minutes. Lower concentrations are not certain even if longer periods are allowed.

REFERENCES.

- Army Manual of Hygiene and Sanitation, 1934.* (1935). London: H.M. Stationery Office.
- BEARD, P. J. & KENDALL, N. J. (1928). Sterilizing velocity of chlorine and chloramine under varying conditions of organic load and pH. *J. Amer. Wat. Wks. Ass.*, 27, 876.
- BLACKMORE, H. S. (1928). Preliminary note on the sterilization of bilharzia infected water. *J. R. Army med. Cps.*, 51, 262.
- EDITORIAL NOTE. (1926). Sterilization of water by chloramines. *Ibid.*, 46, 130.
- GRIFFITH-JONES, E., ATKINSON, A. & HASSAN-ALI. (1930). A comparison of the relative killing power of chlorine and chloramine on schistosome cercariae. *Ann. trop. Med. Parasit.*, 24, 503.
- HAROLD, C. H. (1925/6). Further investigation into the sterilization of water by chlorine and some of its compounds. *J. R. Army med. Cps.*, 45, 361.
- KAN, H. C. & YAO, Y. T. (1934). Some notes on the anti-schistosomiasis japonica campaign in Chih-Huai-Pan, Kaihua, Chekiang. *Chin. med. J.*, 48, 323.
- KHALIL BEY, M. (1934). *Rep. Res. Inst. and Endemic Diseases Hospital.* Cairo, 1933, p. 108.
- LEIPER, R. T. (1915-1918). Report on the result of the bilharzia mission in Egypt. *J. R. Army med. Cps.*, 25, 1-55, 147-192, 253-267; 27, 171-190; 30, 235-260.
- MANSON-BAHR, P. & FAIRLEY, N. H. (1920). Observations on bilharziasis among the Egyptian Expeditionary Force. *Parasitology*, 12, 33.
- RAMESES, GIRGES. (1934). *Schistosomiasis.* London: John Bale, Sons & Danielsson, Ltd.
- RUGE, R., MÜHLENS, P. & ZUR-WERTH, M. (1925). *Krankheiten und Hygiene der warmen Länder.* 2nd Ed. Leipzig: Georg Thieme.
- THRESH, J. C., BEALE, J. F. & SUCKLING, V. C. (1933). *The Examination of Waters and Water Supplies.* 4th Ed. London: J. & A. Churchill.

CORRIGENDUM.

Vol. XXXI, No. 4. January, 1938, p. 471.

Col. CLAYTON LANE: Correspondence on Bancroftian filariasis and the reticulo-endothelial system. 3rd paragraph, line 5, for "What is not known" read "What is now known."

CORRESPONDENCE.

“SELLAR FEVER.”

To the Editor, TRANSACTIONS of the Royal Society of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene.

SIR,

May I first be permitted to congratulate Colonel JACK* on a very painstaking and accurate description of a short fever that occurs in the Delhi-Meerut area. I have watched the fever he describes, in Delhi and Meerut from December, 1936, to December, 1937. It had previously appeared in this area in the 1932-33 period and has been absent from the area, in its full clinical form, in the interval. Unlike Colonel JACK, I observed the disease mainly in European soldiers. I have, however, seen the same illness amongst my Indian servants and in a consultant capacity in patients in Indian military hospitals in this area. Needless to say the observation of the rash is handicapped in dark-skinned patients, especially in the very numerous ambulant cases.

In the cause of accuracy and to avoid endless duplication of diagnoses may it be represented that “sella” is saddle and that “saddle back fever” is another name for dengue. The illness seen at Meerut, which varies in no particular from Colonel JACK’s description of the illness in these TRANSACTIONS, runs the same clinical course as dengue observed in Cairo in the pandemic, 1927-28. My observations on dengue in Calcutta during 1933-34 resulted in my publishing a short article on “Dengue Temperature Charts,” which appeared in the *Journal of the Royal Army Medical Corps*, February, 1936. Only six charts are shown each representing the most typical case observed in the sub-group showing that form of febrile response.

It is not my custom to cite text-books as consolidated descriptions of a disease ill suit the disease as observed under particular circumstances. But *Tropical Medicine* (ROGERS and MEGAW, 2nd Edition, 1935, page 165) gives a map of the distribution of dengue in India. The Sialkot area is marked as a place where dengue occurs. *The Principles and Practice of Medicine* (OSLER and McCRAE, 11th Edition, 1930, page 354) describes the mouth symptoms, congestion of the pharynx and enlargement of the lymph-glands of the neck. OSLER follows the original description of the disease by Dr. BENJAMIN RUSH in the epidemic in Philadelphia in 1780.

It is my opinion, without proof other than that the maximum incidence of culicine mosquitoes and the maximum incidence of the fever occur at the same

* JACK, W. A. M. (1937). Sellar fever. *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 31 (3), 281.

time, that *Culex fatigans* is the vector of the illness in the Delhi-Meerut area. Those who follow the Drum travel many miles, and a journey of a thousand miles in 2 days is common in India. The arrival of persons from a distance during the incubation period will explain the occurrence of the illness at Razmak if the culicine mosquito is not to be found there. Hibernating mosquitoes may wake up to feed in a warm closed up hut, even in winter with snow on the ground outside.

I am, etc.,

British Military Hospital,
Meerut, U.P., India.
12th January, 1938.

F. J. O'MEARA.
Major R.A.M.C.

ONYALAI.

To the Editor, *TRANSACTIONS of the Royal Society of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene.*

DEAR SIR,

With reference to the communication "Onyalai: a Review," by W. K. BLACKIE*, may I contribute a few very belated remarks.

My practice for the last 14 years has been confined almost entirely to natives of the Nyamwezi tribe, with an average of about four thousand new out-patients per year, and about three hundred in-patients. During my residence here, I have made a study of their language, and can claim at least a good working knowledge of Kinyamwezi. Unyamwezi is the name applied to an area of about 60,000 square miles, situated in the Western Province of Tanganyika Territory, with Tabora as its centre.

Dr. BLACKIE is right in advising care and discretion in the interpretation of the natives' names of obscure diseases. The word *kafindo* is the diminutive of *lufindo* which means anus. The duplicated form *kafindofindo* is the name applied to any acute inflammatory condition of the tonsillar or pharyngeal regions, and so covers such different conditions as peritonsillar abscess, ulcerative tonsillitis or severe pharyngitis.

My experience of a condition resembling onyalai is confined to two cases. The first was a girl of about 10 years of age, seen in April, 1936. The parents gave a history of illness of 2 or 3 days only. She was admitted, moribund, with blood oozing from the mouth and nose; there were haemorrhagic bullae inside the cheeks and under the mucous membrane of the hard and soft palate.

*BLACKIE, W. K. (1937), *Trans. R. Soc. trop. & Hyg.* 31 (2), 207.

Apart from the haemorrhage, the most striking feature was an intense jaundice. She died a few hours after admission.

The second, and probably more typical case was seen in October, 1937, a few days before I read Dr. BLACKIE's review. She was a woman of about 40, and attended as an out-patient complaining of a bloody diarrhoea of 1 day's duration. It so happened that at that time we were experiencing a small epidemic of what was probably bacillary dysentery, and she was treated in the routine way with TOMB's essential oil mixture, a treatment which clears up in a few hours the majority of these cases of bloody diarrhoea. The next morning she came with her husband, who stated that the diarrhoea had stopped, but that she was too weak to go home; and she was, therefore, admitted. Further examination revealed that she was extraordinarily dull and listless and that the whole of the mucous membrane of the hard and soft palate was studded with haemorrhagic bullae varying from 5 to 10 millimetres in diameter. Shortly after admission she complained of haemorrhage per vaginam; examination showed dark and offensive blood steadily oozing from the vagina. She was not pregnant but she was emphatic that the flow was not menstrual. It is regrettable that no visual examination was made of the vagina and cervix to ascertain exactly the source of the haemorrhage. Bleeding then started from the mouth and nose, and the patient's condition became desperate. Calcium lactate had no effect, and for lack of any other line of treatment I injected into the buttock 10 c.c. of whole blood taken from her husband and injected immediately. I was interested to find, a few days later, when reading Dr. BLACKIE's review, that I had stumbled on the most effective treatment for the condition. Unfortunately the patient's relatives carried her off in the night, and she was not seen again; but it was reported that she died at her village the following day. From the day of her admission until she died the flow per vaginam was continuous, but there was no return of the bloody diarrhoea, and no haematuria. The course of the disease was 5 days, and during the 3 days she was in hospital, the temperature was subnormal.

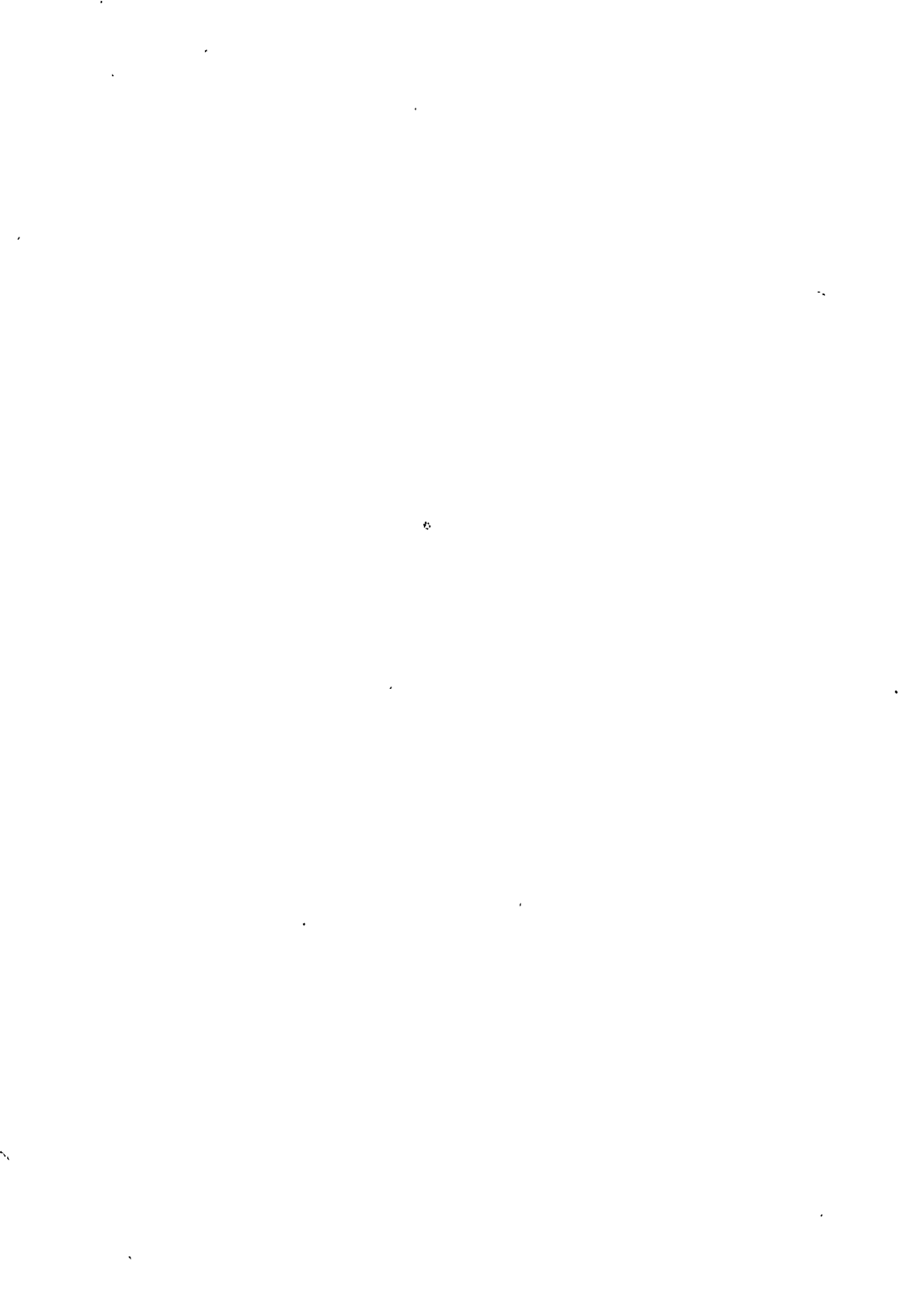
After reading Dr. BLACKIE's review I made enquiries among the people, and found that this disease was not entirely unknown to some of them, and was dreaded as fatal; but it was so rare that they had no name for it in Kinyamwezi. So striking a condition could hardly have been missed very often during 14 years' native practice.

The two points I would emphasize are (1) that the term *kafindofindo* in Kinyamwezi is not applied to onyalai; and (2) that onyalai must be very rare in Unyamwezi.

I am, etc.,

A. J. KEEVILL.

Moravian Mission Hospital,
Sikonge, Tabora,
Tanganyika Territory.
10th February, 1938.



THE LATE SIR THOMAS STANTON.

We regret to announce that Sir THOMAS STANTON, Chief Medical Adviser to the Secretary of State for the Colonies, a member of the Council, a former Vice-President and a Trustee of the Society, died in London on 25th January last, after a short illness, at the age of 62. The Council, at their meeting on 17th February, 1938, decided to record their appreciation of the services rendered to tropical medicine by Sir THOMAS STANTON, and their sense of loss at his death, in the following resolution :—

“ The President and Council take this opportunity of expressing their profound regret at the death of their esteemed colleague, Sir THOMAS STANTON, one of the founders of the Society and one of its most active supporters.

Sir THOMAS STANTON, by his scientific researches in tropical diseases, rendered eminent service in the advancement of public health in the Tropics, and by his personality endeared himself to all who came in contact with him.”

AMBROSE THOMAS STANTON was born in Canada on 14th November, 1875, and was educated at Trinity College, Toronto, where he qualified M.D. in 1899. He spent several years in hospital work before coming to England to take the Conjoint qualification in 1905, and subsequently proceeded to the School of Tropical Medicine at the Royal Albert Dock, where he first met Sir PATRICK MANSON. STANTON's admiration of MANSON was such that he decided to follow in the footsteps of the master and devote his life to the study of tropical medicine. He was selected to be a Demonstrator at the School, which post he occupied for 2 years, and in 1907, his Chief recommended him to the Colonial Office for appointment as an Assistant in the Institute of Medical Research, Kuala Lumpur.

Here STANTON worked with the late H. FRASER, the Director of the Institute; together they carried out their remarkable studies on the etiology of beri-beri, and proved the disease to be due to a deficiency in diet—one of the early definite proofs that dietetic deficiency is a cause of disease. STANTON was also a keen entomologist, and his work on mosquitoes is considered by some to be as valuable as his work on beri-beri. His name is also associated with a fatal disease which appeared in 1917 among the labourers on rubber estates, and in conjunction with WILLIAM FLETCHER, STANTON showed that the disease, which they subsequently named melioidosis, was due to a glanders-like organism.

In 1920, he succeeded FRASER as Director of the Institute of Medical Research, Kuala Lumpur.

In 1926, STANTON was selected by the Secretary of State for the Colonies to be the first holder of the newly-created post of Chief Medical Adviser in the Colonial Office, and he continued to hold this post up till the last. His outstanding services in this capacity were recognised by his being made a *C.M.G* in 1929, and promoted to a *K.C.M.G.* in 1934. Mr. ORMSBY GORE had already at the end of last summer invited him to continue to hold his appointment in the Colonial Office for a further period of 3 years from April 1st, 1938, and this invitation had been accepted. After returning to London, he continued to take a great interest in the welfare of the Society, of which he had been Local Secretary while in Malaya, and was instrumental in obtaining large contributions towards the Manson House Fund.

It is not too much to say that STANTON was beloved by everyone with whom he came into contact. No one who met him could fail to be impressed by the combination which he presented of great professional eminence, an equitable character, keen sense of humour and warm kindliness. He never thought evil of anyone, and yet was a good judge of the character of others. In discharging his official and other duties, he was the most conscientious of men, and it may be said that the responsibility of his position caused him far greater anxieties than any but his most intimate associates realised.

The members of the Society have lost a great friend, whom it will be hard to replace.

TRANSACTIONS
OF THE
ROYAL SOCIETY OF TROPICAL MEDICINE
AND HYGIENE.

VOL. XXXI. No. 6. APRIL, 1938.

Proceedings of an Ordinary Meeting of the Society, held at
Manson House, 26, Portland Place, London, W.1, at 8.15 p.m.,
on Thursday, 17th February, 1938.

Lt.-Col. S. P. JAMES, *C.M.G.*, M.D., F.R.S., I.M.S. (ret.), *President*,
in the Chair.

PAPERS.

- (1) CLIMATIC BUBO OR LYMPHOGRANULOMA INGUINALE
By H. M. HANSHELL
- (2) CLIMATIC BUBO OR LYMPHOGRANULOMA INGUINALE
IN AFRICAN NATIVES - - - By C. C. CHESTERMAN
- (3) CLIMATIC BUBO OR LYMPHOGRANULOMA INGUINALE—
EXPERIMENTAL INVESTIGATION - - By G. M. FINDLAY

CLIMATIC BUBO OR LYMPHOGRANULOMA INGUINALE.

BY

H. M. HANSCHALL, D.S.C., M.R.C.S., D.T.M. & H..

*Hon. Medical Superintendent, Royal Albert Dock Hospital ;
Hon. Associated Physician, Hospital for Tropical Diseases, Gordon Street,
(Seamen's Hospital Society, London).*

Mr. President, Ladies and Gentlemen, I must first express to you my lively sense of the honour done me by inviting me this evening to open a discussion on climatic bubo. I shall try to confine myself to those lesions which I have dealt with. They are inguinal lesions, and the less serious and the less than half the disease, which when afflicting the woman's vagina and vulva, and the rectum in either sex, is indeed a serious one.

Since 1919, at the Seamen's Hospital, Royal Albert Dock, I have diagnosed 130 cases of climatic bubo in the male, among them representatives of every colour and almost every race. These 130 cases have been studied against controls of 17,900 male cases of lesions of the genital-inguinale area (including gonorrhoea), all also under my care at the same hospital, and among them also representatives of almost all races. Among these 17,900 cases have been many of chancroid, chancre, balanitis, venereal warts, herpes preputialis, penile and scrotal scabies, pediculosis, accompanied by an inguinal adenitis ranging in degree from bubo and abscess to mere enlarged, tender glands—whose infections were acquired in England and for the most part in the dockland areas ; yet among these so far no case of climatic bubo has been discovered.

Every case I have seen has been in the male, and with infection acquired in the tropics or sub-tropics. The disease is therefore for me strictly a venereal disease of the tropics. With the clinical experience thus outlined, I may assert that indigenous infection here, must be very rare ; for in an area constantly exposed to its importation, no case has come to light in 19 years of watching for it.

The disease now excites among us a widespread interest—because Dr. G. MARSHALL FINDLAY in one of his brilliant researches, conveyed the infection, with production of inguinal bubo, to the guineapig, and showed that the causative

agent was a filter-passer virus, and because of Dr. STANNUS's scholarly researches, which have served so well not clinical alone but psychological medicine too ; for I suspect that after he had exposed it, urbi et orbi, in his famous monograph, now a classic, to be no less than "A Sixth Venereal Disease," then not a few respectable physicians, formerly coldly inattentive, could find in an active interest in its lesions a laudable outlet for all sorts of repressions.

Climatic bubo, Sir, is unique in being a respectable venereal disease. Select nursing homes take it in with murmurs of sympathy, and to the almost sanctuary wards of eminent physicians it is welcomed gladly. Unlike its vulgar congeners, the clap and the pox, the vernacular has no name for it, and so anyone may talk about it and anyone may have it. Nevertheless, it is still a disease of minor importance to the public health in this country.

I trust, Sir, I may be allowed to be a little reminiscent. My interest in lesions of the groin was formed before ever I began as medical student. In *Tristram Shandy* I had followed eagerly that affair between Captain Tobias Shandy—"My Uncle Toby"—and the enchanting Widow Wadman. Uncle Toby, you will remember, Sir, had served with gallantry abroad and there acquired a wound in the groin—and he was extremely bashful about it, and the widow, unknown to him, had thoughts of marrying him, and was extremely inquisitive about it. In those pages I learned what later experience confirmed, that the idea of a lesion in the groin may carry an emotional content worthy even the notice of literature.

My good fortune in my teachers held on. Early in 1910, Dr. CARMICHAEL Low demonstrated to me in the Albert Dock Hospital a climatic bubo, with no penile lesion, from the China coast in a white ship's stoker. Dr. Low suggested then that a chronic case ending in fibrosis of all the femoral and pubo-inguinal glands would cause elephantiasis of the leg, and perhaps this might account for some cases of tropical elephantiasis where no filariasis could be postulated.

Dr. Low said it was acquired in copula. His theory-shattering regard for facts and his diamond common-sense would not permit the history of recent coitus to rank as cogent evidence—"No, no," he said, "they all do it." But he had made a complete clinical examination of a patient in the tropics, detected the papulo-herpetiform primary lesion on under surface of prepuce, noted its rapid disappearance and watched the rise of the inguinal adenitis. It was a venereal disease of the tropics conveniently cloaked as climatic bubo.

Now, Sir, from the simple stoker to the proud pro-consul. Such an one was also a patient in the Albert Dock Hospital in 1910. He accounted for the old scars in his groin by stating that when a young man he had served on the Frontier in India and there acquired climatic bubo. His present condition required that surgeons consult over him. One of them, Mr. President, was a distinguished member of your distinguished Service. After leaving the bedside the surgeons talked, as surgeons do. I kept respectfully in the background, but naturally within earshot. One surgeon was puzzled about this climatic bubo,

and the surgeon from India told him it was a common affection of the European in India, so much so, he said, that a lady out there had asked him how it was that so many officers had been wounded in the groin.

In my 130 cases, the primary lesion was present in only four. It appears 3 to 5 days after coitus and is painless. It is a woeful fact that events beneath a prepuce may go for long, or for ever, unnoticed—but when patients have noticed it they described the primary lesion as a pimple or a sore-blister. It usually disappears in at most 8 days—so I judge from histories. The four I have seen were exceptional in that they were still present 14 to 21 days after first appearance. The swelling in the groin is noticed by the patient 7 to 21 days after the infecting coitus. As in chancroid, so in climatic bubo, the male must be an inefficient transmitter of the infection. In climatic bubo there is rapid healing of the primary lesion, and with increasing painful inguinal adenitis increasing disinclination for sexual intercourse. And probably no transmission of virus in the seminal fluid. If all this be true then we have an explanation of the escape of the London dockland areas from infection; but it carries the corollary that the primary lesion in the woman's vagina must persist for very much longer than it does on the man's penis. For the disease to take root in this country we must import infected women, or more of them.

Of my 130 cases only two have been in circumcised men. A significant experience against the background of the many circumcised men attending my V.D. Clinic at the same hospital. In the prepuce-bearing man the surface of glans and under-surface of prepuce is delicate, softened by the moisture constantly present, and easily penetrated. The preputial sac is a warm, moist, chamber holding up the epithelial debris we call smegma—a good pabulum, in an ideal incubator, for the cultivation of streptococcus, as can easily be shown—and, I am sure, for the virus of climatic bubo too.

The circumcised have many advantages, among them a lessened liability to climatic bubo, and no drawbacks. As to acquired immunity—I have not yet seen a case with the infection acquired for the second time.

The virus of climatic bubo has been reported as infecting a finger—with consequent adenitis of epitrochlear and axillary glands—as infecting tongue and lip with submental adenitis. That this should occur is to be expected.

Lacking animal inoculation tests—then the diagnosis of climatic bubo rests on clinical grounds.

There might be some difficulty in differentiation between an early syphilitic chancre and the papulo-herpetiform lesion of climatic bubo, but the microscope will reveal spirochaetes in the chancre—or watching the case will settle the diagnosis. The chancroid ulcer is characteristic. When we come to the buboes—there are difficulties in individual cases. Comparison of numbers of chancroid buboes and climatic buboes shows that in climatic bubo, peri-adenitis is a more marked feature, there is less pain, fever more common, less suppuration, which tends to be at several points and is not frank and in one area as in chancroid, the

buboes usually far more chronic, they do not so often break down with fistula formation as in chancroid buboes. A healed primary lesion of climatic bubo leaves no trace. A healed syphilitic chancre little if any trace. A healed chancroid ulcer, a sharp precipitous edge scar. In syphilis the adenitis is small in size and there is no peri-adenitis—except in the rare case where the primary chancre is also septic. Even if the climatic bubo case give positive Wassermann and Kahn blood tests—anti-syphilis treatment has no effect on the bubo.

Lastly, there is the intradermal test introduced by FREI. I am here very much indebted to Dr. MARSHALL FINDLAY for his carrying out of animal inoculations for me, and to Mr. A. H. WALTERS who, at the Albert Dock Hospital, has prepared the antigens and has kept a daily, often hourly, critical watch and record of their effect when injected intradermally. It is, in fact, due to his initiative and persuasion that we started observations on the Frei skin test. A true positive, we claim, should produce besides the marked erythema a nodule in the skin—FISCHER's "Knotchen"—which should persist for at least 2 days.

Three batches of antigen were made according to the methods described by FREI and HOFFMANN, and, following them, used by HELLERSTRÖM. Each batch was prepared from material obtained from a separate patient with a climatic bubo: but no animal control inoculation for presence of active virus. Two of these batches failed consistently. One batch gave fairly good results for about 6 months and then failed consistently. These three batches were tried against another, a pooled antigen. I excised affected inguinal glands from selected cases. The excised gland was bisected at once: one half was preserved by Mr. WALTERS, the other half submitted to Dr. FINDLAY for animal inoculation. By his finding active virus, we were able to select three batches of half-glands from three separate cases as known to be infected with the virus—and from these three batches Mr. WALTERS prepared a pooled antigen. We have found that such a pooled antigen gives true positives 3 years after preparation—and that such a pooled antigen will give positive Frei tests in 95 per cent. of cases of climatic bubo. Here again a positive in our reckoning means besides a well-marked erythema persistence of the nodules.

The control intradermal test has been carried out always with Dmelco's chancroid vaccine. This pooled antigen has been tested for control—on thirty-one cases of sero-positive syphilis with palpable, and in some of them visible, inguinal adenitis: twenty-eight gave completely negative results, three gave rather well-marked erythema but no nodules. As against this, six cases diagnosed as climatic bubo with persistent Wassermann and Kahn reactions all gave positive results. Then five cases of microscopically demonstrated gonococcal urethritis accompanying climatic bubo all gave a positive result. In a series of forty gonorrhoea cases in the male none gave a nodule: only three gave a more or less well-marked erythema alone. Twelve consecutive cases of chancroid cum bubo gave negative results. None gave even marked erythema. Of four

cases of venereal warts, unaccompanied by gonorrhoea, two gave erythema, rather well marked, and no nodules.

My material has not allowed of observation as to how early after infection a positive skin test may be obtained—it may be got, however, 21 days after exposure to infection, and may persist for months. In one of my cases we found it still present 12 months after discharge from hospital—that is, 16 months after exposure to infection. In three of my cases of climatic bubo, using the pooled antigen, a negative result, that is an erythema only, was obtained 21 to 30 days after exposure to infection—but later, 42 to 51 days after infection, the same antigen on these same cases gave a positive result, that is erythema and nodules. In some cases of climatic bubo the pooled antigen has given repeatedly negative results. With this experience I must submit that no verdict should be given on result of the skin test alone, and the test should be repeated. Obviously antigens from different hands and different patients must vary widely as to potency and as to persistence of potency, and there is no agreement yet as to what constitutes a true positive, a negative, and a doubtful result. Standardisation is needed, and probably this can be attempted only by work in the laboratory and by animal inoculation. I submit it may be urgent—for a spate of cases, in perhaps great clinical variety, “proved” by “positive” skin tests may soon descend on us. And, what is the greater pity, though the lesser irk, true cases may be rejected on account of “negatives” from faulty antigens.

TREATMENT OF CLIMATIC BUBO.

In many cases there is rapid subsidence of the buboes after a few days' rest in bed with no other treatment. If there be fluctuation pus should be aspirated and puncture sealed, with all aseptic care. The bubo should not be incised. Intravenous injections of T.A.B. vaccine hasten resolution of the adenitis. In some 85 per cent. of cases no other treatment has been given, and after 4 to 6 weeks the patients have been discharged. But there remain the 15 per cent. in whom operation is advisable. It is true that in time, in all but a very few, complete recovery will take place—but this may mean many months. So that as a working rule, if after a fortnight there is no sign of quick, progressive, recovery—excision of the affected glands should be considered.

Operation often discloses that apparently but slightly enlarged glands contain many very small foci of pus—that the glands may have a small central core of lymphoid tissue, sometimes showing points of pus, surrounded by a dense fibrous wall. These glands could never recover. The operation is not one for the rash or the fumbling. The glands are adherent often to the spermatic cord, the femoral vein, the external iliac vein.

There is no satisfactory evidence that any drug has any effect on the disease—though to-day if one should find or suspect an added infection of streptococcus the indication for sulphanilamide or sulphonamide compound would be obvious.



FIG. 1.—Papulo-herpetiform primary lesion appeared 5 days after infecting coitus in South America ; still present on 26th day but had disappeared by 30th day without any treatment. No *Spirochaeta pallida* detected.



FIG. 2.—Twenty-six days after infecting coitus in South America. Frei test positive. Wassermann and Kahn tests negative.

CASE 120.—CLIMATIC BUBO.

Sulphanilamide (Bayer-Prontosil), in my hands, has so far always procured rapid healing of chancroid ulcers and buboes, quite apart from added streptococcus infection. These compounds are bound to be tried on climatic bubo.

I now report briefly a case recently occurring in my private practice. An Englishman, married, 38 years old, consulted me for a supposed syphilitic rash on the body, and a discharge from the rectum accompanied by burning and itching. The rash was pityriasis rosea. No lesions on penis or genital area and no adenitis. Blood Wassermann and Kahn tests, repeated once, negative. The anal margins were moist with a thin, sticky, faintly yellowish discharge. Proctoscopy revealed just above the line of the anal papillae a number of pearly-looking bodies, like sago grains on a red base, situated on the lowest centimetre of the columns of Morgagni. They reminded me of the sago body urethritis sometimes disclosed by urethroscopy of the male urethra. The patient gave a very strongly positive Frei test with the pooled antigen already described. The test was repeated after 3 weeks and was again positive.

I was now able to pursue tactfully but persistently further enquiries. I elicited that he had, about 6 weeks before seeing me, engaged in sodomy with a young European in Egypt. My patient had been both active and passive agent. A few days later he had gone to see the younger partner again, and found that he had been put to bed in a clinic, for, it was stated by the servant, a swelling in the groin, the result of a strain from riding a new pony. About a fortnight later still my patient resumed marital intercourse per vaginam et per rectum.

I was able to take samples of blood and also to carry out the Frei test with the same antigen on his wife, but did not ask for a physical examination. Her Wassermann and Kahn tests were negative, the Frei test was also negative, and she denied noticing anything wrong with vagina or rectum. Digital examination per rectum of the husband did not reveal any thickening of the rectal wall, nor could any peri-rectal tumour be felt. No gonococci, no spirochaetes, no ova, protozoa or dysentery bacilli detected on examination of the rectal discharge.

After 5 weeks' use of rectal suppositories containing a bismuth paste nearly all lesions had disappeared. I have not seen him again. Probably this is an early case of direct infection of the rectal mucosa with the virus of climatic bubo.

I must register my agreement with Dr. STANNUS in objecting to the nomenclature. Climatic bubo is far too narrow and carries with it a false implication: for the bubo is but the less serious part of the disease, which is not climatic but world-wide. And lympho-granuloma inguinale is confusing—with other different and distinct lesions. I support him in his advocacy of the term—Poradenitis.

In conclusion, I must express my deep indebtedness and my gratitude to Dr. G. MARSHALL FINDLAY for his direct and valuable help, and for his researches into the aetiology of this infection—and in equal degree to Dr. STANNUS, who opened for me a clearer and wider window on this disease. Dr. STANNUS in person has indeed shown us that unrelenting research in the library by one long

trained in clinical medicine, whose distinction in that field is unquestionable, may render to Medicine services no less signal than those given by research at the bedside, by necropsy, or at the laboratory bench. Lastly, I record my thanks to Mr. A. H. WALTERS for his assistance with my cases. His skill in making the antigens, his accuracy in watching and recording, and his demonstrating of the skin reactions to me—for long very sceptical—have convinced me of their value.

CLIMATIC BUBO OR LYMPHOGRANULOMA INGUINALE IN AFRICAN NATIVES.

BY
CLEMENT C. CHESTERMAN, O.B.E., M.D., M.R.C.P. D.T.M. & H.
London ; (formerly of the Belgian Congo).

All I can hope to add to this discussion is some information as to the incidence and symptomatology of this condition in the Belgian Congo, where in most urban centres and in some rural areas foci of the disease exist.

My interest in the syndrome was first aroused by listening to the paper read by Dr. H. S. STANNUS (1932)* to the Royal Society of Medicine, in which he stated his conviction that cases would be found if looked for among native women in Central Africa.

I realise that it is a very dangerous thing to look for anything because one is sure to find it, but a subsequent search by myself and my colleague, Dr. R. E. HOLMES, at the hospital of the Baptist Missionary Society, Yakusu, near Stanleyville, revealed a widespread incidence among women patients of the prostitute class.

After one of the first cases of rectal stricture had benefited by dilatation, a considerable number presented themselves. The extremely unpleasant symptoms resulting from the chronic progressive ulceration and fibrosis, drive sufferers to avail themselves of any prospect of relief, which, unfortunately however, they generally fail to obtain.

Cases of climatic bubo, in white and black males, had frequently been recognised at the hospital where soft sore, syphilis, septic and filarial inguinal adenitis are commonly seen.

Frei's skin test has proved itself as reliable as it is useful.

In the absence of facilities for Wassermann or Kahn tests for syphilis, strong confirmatory evidence of that disease was afforded by a negative Dmelcos and Frei test in any case of bubo with a history of genital sore. Two cases in males illustrate the commonly observed aetiology and symptomatology among blacks. It should be noted that practically all males are circumcized in this area.

CASES IN NATIVE MALES.

Case 1.—*Sailor, aged 40.* Eight days after coitus with a prostitute, noticed a pimple on coronal sulcus, 15 days later left inguinal bubo burst. He was seen 8 weeks after infection with a fistula in left groin and a softened bubo in right groin. He was also suffering from trypanosomiasis but after sterilising treatment with Bayer 205 and tryparsamide the pus from the right bubo was aspirated and used for the making of Frei's antigen. The aspirated bubo healed but the other remained fistulous.

* STANNUS, H. S. (1932). *Proc. R. Soc. Med.*, 26, 7-16.

Case 2.—Male, aged 25 (see Plate). Seen 1 year after attack of inguinal adenitis. Had not noticed primary sore. Typical puckered scar in groin with three fistulous openings. Fibrosis and deformity at root of scrotum with three fistulae. Treatment ineffective.

THE SYNDROME IN NATIVE WOMEN.

I have notes of the ten cases diagnosed in 1933. The following is a résumé of the salient features.

(1) *Rarity of inguinal adenopathy*: one case in ten where the primary sore was on the fourchette. Healing occurred without fistulation.

Another case with the primary lesion observed anteriorly escaped without the slightest inguinal adenitis, although her husband (Case 1 above), by whom she had been infected, had typical climatic bubo.

(2) Frequency of association of rectal stricture with vulval lesions, i.e., in five cases out of the six in this series whose infection had lasted more than 2 years. The stricture is formed between 4 and 7 cm. from the anus, and was generally accompanied by ulceration and a purulent discharge with ribbon-shaped faeces. Multiple fistulae often develop in the perinaeum and buttocks.

(3) Three showed ano-vaginal fistulae, of $\frac{1}{2}$ to $1\frac{1}{2}$ cm. diameter. An attempt made to close one of these surgically proved unsuccessful, the sutures breaking down a week later.

(4) The primary lesion is generally an ulcer on the labia or vestibule. The subsequent evolution of the local lesion lends itself by its variety to flights of descriptive eloquence and symbolic imagery. The essential factor is chronic ulceration with little epithelialization, together with surrounding induration. Thus *mucous surfaces* come to resemble turgid cockscombs with serrated edges, perforations or adhesive bands. I have seen the latter at the urethral orifice causing stricture.

Skin covered parts become elephantoid with verrucose and fissured surfaces resembling relief maps.

Reports from other Mission hospitals in the Congo confirm our experience of the frequent occurrence of this disease. In some it appears to be as frequent as gonorrhoea.

Clinicians called upon to deal with such cases would welcome:—

(1) A reliable supply of Frei's antigen which could be kept in stock. Suitable cases of climatic bubo are rare, and do not as a rule furnish sufficient antigen for more than a few tests.

(2) A specific remedy for this virus disease.

Amputation of elephantoid excrescences or dilatation of rectal stricture is the utmost one can do to relieve, and recurrences frequently follow.

The syndrome causes a great deal of misery and disability in native women, but represents only a part of the major problem of venereal disease among primitive negro races.



FIG. 1.—CLIMATIC BUBO. One year after infection

- Note*—(1) Depigmented spot on coronary sulcus, probable site of primary lesion.
 (2) Typical puckered scar in groin with three fistulae.
 (3) Distortion and induration of scrotum with three fistulous openings at root.

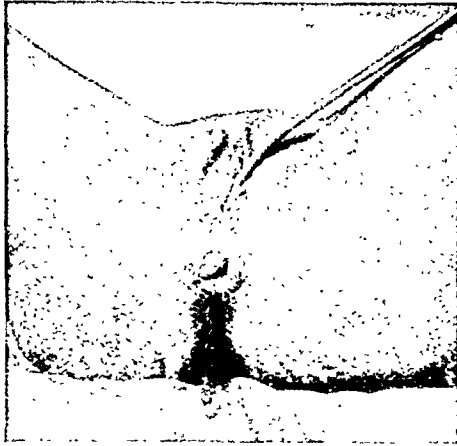


FIG. 2.—ANO-GENITO-RECTAL SYNDROME.

- Note*—(1) Catheter traversing ano-vaginal fistula.
 (2) Indurated peri-anal mucosa (not haemorrhoids).
 Rectal stricture was present.



FIG. 3.—ESTHIOMENE WITH ELEPHANTIASIS VULVAE.

- Note*—(1) Verrucose surface of elephantoid tissue. Swab passed through perforation in left *labium minus*.
 (2) Elephantiasis of clitoris.
 (3) Partial atresia of vaginal orifice.

TRANSACTIONS OF THE ROYAL SOCIETY OF
TROPICAL MEDICINE AND HYGIENE.
Vol. XXXI. No. 6. April, 1938.

CLIMATIC BUBO OR LYMPHOGRANULOMA INGUINALE— EXPERIMENTAL INVESTIGATION.

BY

G. M. FINDLAY, *C.B.E.*, M.D., D.Sc.
Wellcome Bureau of Scientific Research, London.

The disease, varyingly referred to as climatic bubo, lymphogranuloma inguinale, lymphogranuloma venereum, lymphopathia venereum or poradenitis has in the past few years received very intensive study. As a result, it is now realized that in man lymphogranuloma inguinale, to use the name most generally employed, is not restricted merely to a primary lesion in the genital region and a suppurating bubo involving the inguinal lymph nodes, nor even to such changes as stricture of the rectum, stricture of the vagina and elephantiasis of the vulva, penis and scrotum. Lymphogranuloma inguinale, in fact, is now recognized to be a generalized disease with such protean symptoms that in its early stages it may even suggest typhoid fever. Arthritis and skin rashes are not uncommon, while conjunctivitis and meningitis may occur. In addition characteristic biochemical changes have been recorded in the blood, such as a decrease in the lipin content, an increase in the percentage of free cholesterol (ROSEN, ROSENFELD and KRASNOW, 1937) and a hyperproteinaemia with increase in the globulin and decrease in the albumin content of the serum (WILLIAMS and GUTMAN, 1936).

Since this somewhat changed conception of the nature of lymphogranuloma inguinale has occurred as a result of the successful transmission of the disease to laboratory animals and the demonstration that the causal agent is a filterable virus, it may not be without interest to review very briefly what is now known of the experimental disease in animals and of the nature of the virus.

THE TRANSMISSION OF THE DISEASE TO ANIMALS.

Although from time to time claims had been made that lymphogranuloma inguinale could be transmitted to guineapigs by injection into the groin of pus from human inguinal buboes (*cf.* GAMNA, 1923) the first definite evidence that the aetiological agent is a filterable virus was obtained by HELLERSTRÖM and WASSÉN (1930) who showed that the intracerebral injection of certain species of monkey with material obtained from human lymph nodes infected with lymphogranuloma inguinale gives rise to a meningo-encephalitis which can be transmitted in series, after filtration through Berkefeld V or Chamberland L₃ candles. Although the rhesus monkey, *Macaca mulatta* is relatively insusceptible, the infection is readily transmissible to *M. inuus*, *M. cynomologus*, *Cercopithecus æthiops*, *Cercocebus fuliginosus*, *Cynocephalus babuin*, *Cebus fatuellus*, *Callithrix jacchus* and *C. penicillata*. In addition to intracerebral inoculation, monkeys can also be infected by injection into the prepuce, when the inguinal lymph nodes become enlarged, into the peritoneal cavity, perirectal tissues (*cf.* FINDLAY, 1936), and by placing infected material on the scarified skin. Inoculation of infected material on to the scarified cornea does not set up a keratitis but injected into the anterior chamber of the eye there occurs partial corneal opacity and iridocyclitis followed by atrophy of the eyeball.

After intracerebral injection in monkeys the virus may find its way into the blood stream and reach the liver, kidney, spleen and inguinal lymph nodes. There is no evidence that the infection travels either centrifugally or centripetally by nerves.

The discovery by LEVADITI and his collaborators (1932), confirmed by FINDLAY (1932), that the virus of lymphogranuloma inguinale can be transmitted to mice by intracerebral inoculation has been followed by an intensive study of the distribution of the virus of lymphogranuloma inguinale in various human lesions. In this country twenty-six strains of the virus have been successfully transmitted to mice by intracerebral injection, the amount injected being 0.03 c.c. of a 20 per cent. suspension of material. The pathogenicity of different strains, as previously pointed out (FINDLAY, 1933), shows considerable variation. Two of the above twenty-six strains have proved highly virulent since they give rise to cerebral symptoms in mice 2 to 4 days after injection and show no tendency to decrease in virulence. Other strains, after a variable number of intracerebral passages, have lost their pathogenicity for no apparent

reason. It is sometimes possible to enhance the virulence of a strain by using for inoculation suspensions relatively rich in elementary bodies, such suspensions being prepared by differential centrifugation, as has been done in the case of vaccinia elementary bodies.

The symptoms seen in mice consist of roughening of the coat, hunching of the back and, in some animals, a purulent conjunctivitis, followed in a few days by death.

After intraperitoneal inoculation, associated with injection of starch into the brain, the mice may die with meningitic symptoms (FINDLAY, 1933; WASSÉN, 1935): if the brain is not traumatized cerebral localization does not occur.

Apart from monkeys and mice, meningitis has been produced in the cat (LEVADITI, *et al.*, 1932), the dog (FINDLAY, 1933) and in rodents such as the field vole *Microtus agrestis*, the spermophile *Citillus citillus* and the striped ground squirrel *Eutamias orientalis*. Intracerebral inoculation of guineapigs results in meningitic lesions in only a small percentage of animals, while intracerebral injection of rabbits and rats is even less successful. Claims to have produced meningo-encephalitis in rabbits have largely failed to take into account the frequency of spontaneous rabbit encephalitis. The virus can, however, survive for 10 or more days in the brains of rabbits but there is no evidence that the virus increases during this period.

The production of buboes in the groins of guineapigs by subcutaneous injection of lymphogranuloma inguinale material has already been mentioned. Although such buboes can be produced with many strains of the virus it is not easy to transmit the disease in guineapigs' groins for more than a few passages and in any case the buboes involving the lymph nodes, which appear about 2 days after inoculation, only remain palpable for from 10 to 14 days after injection. The disease thus tends to be a self-limiting infection. Occasionally, however, there may be enlargement of the lymph nodes in the pelvis and mesentery. NICOLAU (1932) has found that buboes may also be caused in dogs by injection of infected material into the groin. VON HAAM and HARTWELL (1937) have given rise to a virus pneumonia in monkeys and mice by intranasal instillation of infected tissues.

In addition to transmission of the infection by means of pus or excised tissues from the inguinal lymph nodes, RAVAUT, LEVADITI, LAMBLING and CACHERA (1932) and LAEDERICH, LEVADITI, MAMOU and BEAUCHESNE (1932), by employing an ingenious technique, isolated from inflamed rectal tissue a virus which agreed in every way with the virus isolated from inguinal buboes. The method employed by these observers consisted in implanting a portion of inflamed rectal tissue into the groin of a guineapig and then after a few days removing the corresponding inguinal lymph nodes which, though bacteriologically sterile, contained the virus. The strain of virus isolated by MOCQUOT, LEVADITI and REINIÉ (1935) from an inflammatory condition of the colon is of interest, as with it LEVADITI, MOLLARET and REINIÉ (1935), produced the histological changes

characteristic of lymphogranuloma inguinale in the rectum of chimpanzees by direct inoculation into the mucosa, while in human volunteers they reproduced the typical primary penile sore followed by involvement of the inguinal lymph nodes. The virus has also been transmitted to animals by material from a case of conjunctivitis (LEVADITI, BOLLACK, BASCH and DESVIGNES, 1936), while VON HAAM and D'AUNOY (1935) have obtained it in two cases from the cerebrospinal fluid.

PATHOLOGICAL CHANGES.

The primary skin lesion shows an infiltration with mononuclear leucocytes, plasma cells, plasmacytoid cells and a few polymorphonuclear leucocytes. The infiltration is most marked in the dermis and seems to begin in the perivascular lymph spaces. The endothelial cells of the blood vessels swell up and eventually the lumen of the vessels becomes obstructed, leading to a local necrosis of the epidermis.

The histological changes in the infected lymph nodes have been frequently described. In the earliest stage there is congestion of the vessels and accumulations of lymphocytes and mononuclear cells, derived from the germinal follicles which are in a state of active mitosis and from the reticulo-endothelial cells of the node, together with occasional giant cells and polymorphonuclear leucocytes. At the same time the fibrous stroma begins to proliferate. In a very short time the smaller trabeculae break down and small so-called stellate abscesses are dotted through the gland substance. If the nodes are near the surface the whole mass may then break down but if, as WALTERS (1935) points out, the nodes are situated deeply the proliferated connective tissue may be sufficiently developed to enclose the necrotic area which is eventually replaced by fibrous tissue. In monkeys and guineapigs the earlier stages of bubo formation are well seen with the formation of stellate abscesses, but actual breaking down of the gland substance does not occur. In monkeys, giant cells are not found although in guineapigs, cells containing three or four nuclei are occasionally present among the inflammatory cells.

In the brains of animals injected intracerebrally with material containing the virus of lymphogranuloma inguinale the lesions are largely confined to the meninges, more especially the pia mater and subarachnoid spaces. The virus of lymphogranuloma inguinale does not in fact produce a true encephalitis since neither the nerve cells themselves nor the neuroglia show any direct reaction. The most characteristic reaction in the central nervous system is the presence of masses of cells in the Virchow-Robin space round the blood vessels and in the meninges; these cells are collected into definite nodules, closely resembling the areas found in lymph nodes. In the adrenals of monkeys, collections of lymphocytes, plasmacytoid cells and occasionally polymorphonuclear leucocytes may be seen. These observations are of interest in view of the claims that have

been made that in man lymphogranuloma inguinale may on occasions involve the adrenals and kidneys (*cf.* REICHLÉ and CONNOR, 1935, and DORÉ, BREUIL and LAFFERRE, 1936).

In connection with the experimental production of a fatal meningitis in animals it may be of interest to record the fact that a number of human cases have been reported with symptoms of meningitic involvement. CHEVALIER and BARNARD (1932), for instance, described chronic meningismus in a woman with lymphogranuloma inguinale: the cerebrospinal fluid, which showed the presence of an excessive number of cells and albumin, gave a positive Frei reaction when injected intradermally. MIDANA and VERCELLINO (1934) reported two similar cases. DAVID and LORING (1935) described epileptiform convulsions in a patient in whom the ano-rectal lesions had extended to the colon, while RAJAM (1936) recorded a fatal case of meningitis in a patient with lymphogranuloma inguinale. Here again the cerebrospinal fluid gave a positive Frei test on intradermal injection. There is thus little doubt that as is the case in experimental animals lymphogranuloma inguinale may involve the human central nervous system. Similar nodules to those found in the central nervous system are also produced in the chorio-allantoic membrane of the developing chick embryo. Fuller accounts of the pathological changes produced experimentally by lymphogranuloma inguinale are given by FINDLAY (1933), WASSÉN (1935) and LEVADITI (1936).

It will thus be seen that the essential lesion produced by the virus of lymphogranuloma inguinale is an involvement of lymph spaces and lymph channels. The particular lymph nodes and lymph channels involved depend on the site of inoculation and, since the virus is transmitted almost entirely by the lymphatics, on the distribution of the lymphatics leading from the site of inoculation. The extensive reaction associated with blocking of the lymphatics probably causes a secondary reaction from lymph stasis and at the same time explains how it is that infected tissues may become shut off from the immune bodies present in the blood serum. Virus may thus remain active for long periods, despite the presence of virucidal immune bodies in the serum. CAMINO-PETROS (1935), for instance, has found virus present in the vagina at least 18 months after infection.

THE VIRUS.

Bodies which, it was suggested, might be of aetiological significance were first described by GAMNA (1923) and FAVRE (1924) in the cytoplasm of certain of the cells from inguinale buboes. These bodies are from 1 to 4μ in size and in many cases stain positively by the Feulgen technique. FINDLAY (1933) pointed out their non-specific character since similar bodies were described by FLEMMING (1885) in cells from normal lymph nodes.

The credit for first describing what is almost certainly the causative agent goes to GAY-PRIETO (1927), who mentioned the presence of small cytoplasmic granules in the cells from inguinal buboes 1μ or less in diameter and often occurring in small clumps. These granules were also described and figured by FINDLAY (1933, Plate IV, Figs. 7 and 8), who suggested the possibility that they represented the virus. This possibility has now been amplified, more especially by the work of MIYAGAWA and his colleagues (1935 and 1936). The granules in stained preparations appear either singly, in pairs or in short chains, sometimes arranged to form a circle. Certain of the diplococcal forms suggest division. Less commonly the granules appear as dense clumps, comprising some hundreds of minute bodies. Studies are now in progress in collaboration with my colleagues, Dr. R. D. MACKENZIE and Dr. F. O. MACCALLUM, to determine whether these particles pass through a cycle in any way comparable to that of the psittacosis virus.

The evidence that these granules actually represent the causal agent of lymphogranuloma inguinale may be summarized as follows:—

(1) The presence of the granules in the lesions of lymphogranuloma inguinale in man, in the brains of infected mice and monkeys and in experimental buboes in guineapigs.

(2) The presence of similar granules in the chorio-allantoic membrane of the developing chick embryo infected with lymphogranuloma inguinale and in the cells of the rabbit's cornea grown in tissue culture (NAUCK, 1937).

(3) The presence of granules in Tyrode-tissue cultures of the virus of lymphogranuloma inguinale (*cf.* TAMURA, 1934 and 1937).

(4) The dimensions of the virus as shown by filtration through graded collodion membranes are similar to those of vaccinia virus, namely 0.125μ to 0.175μ (MIYAGAWA, *et al.*, 1935²; and BROOM and FINDLAY, 1936).

(5) An anti-serum prepared in rabbits from which the elementary corpuscles have been removed by differential centrifugation contains no virucidal immune bodies: on the other hand an anti-serum prepared by the infection of relatively concentrated suspensions of elementary bodies, relatively free from tissue elements, contains virucidal immune bodies. It thus appears that the presence of elementary bodies is essential for the production of virucidal immune bodies.

Experiments are at present in progress to determine the relationship between the elementary bodies and the production of agglutinins and complement fixing immune bodies.

DIAGNOSIS.

Various methods have been devised for the diagnosis of infections due to the virus of lymphogranuloma inguinale. The most important is of course the isolation of the virus by intracerebral injection either of monkeys or mice.

In addition, however, a number of diagnostic tests have been based on the immunological changes characteristic of the disease.

(1) *The allergic test*, originally described by FREI (1925) is now well known. The antigen may be prepared either from the pus or the nodes of an inguinal adenitis or from the brains of infected animals (monkeys or mice). The chorio-allantoic membrane of the developing chick embryo may also be employed and has the advantage of eliminating extraneous viruses which may be contained in mouse or monkey brains. PAULSON (1937 and 1938) has recently obtained positive Frei tests with material obtained by aspiration from the inflamed mucosa in cases of ulcerative colitis of undetermined aetiology, the material before heating being diluted 1 in 10 with azochloramide, thus confirming and extending the observation of NICOLAS, FAVRE, LEBEUF and CHARPY (1932), who obtained positive skin tests with an antigen prepared from pus removed from a fistula associated with rectal stricture. The test is now generally regarded as highly specific though it has been suggested that the brains of apparently normal mice may produce a false positive when injected intradermally. The number of persons who are sensitive to mouse brain proteins is, however, exceedingly small. Among 2,000 persons injected for other purposes with mouse brain tissues only two showed any reaction at the site of inoculation. The chief difficulty in regard to the use of the Frei antigen lies in the fact that the activity of the extract cannot be easily standardized and that the activity decreases with keeping even in the ice chest. Some samples, however, show little decrease in activity even after 18 months, while other antigens become inactive after only 2 or 3 months. Therefore, unless the material to be injected can be regularly tested on the skin of a person known to react positively, a negative reaction may be due not to absence of infection in the individual but to failure of antigenic potency in the material injected.

Occasionally when the intradermal injection of 0.1 c.c. of the antigen is negative the injection of 0.3 c.c. may produce a positive result.

Very little work has been carried out on the factors underlying the Frei test. If the antigen is filtered through a Berkefeld V filter the filtrate is still capable of producing a positive reaction but passage through a Seitz K filter which removes the greater number of elementary bodies also greatly reduces, or more commonly inhibits, the antigenic capacity of the filtrate.

A similar association between the presence of elementary bodies and activity in the Frei antigen is shown by the following centrifugation experiment. Active Frei antigen was centrifuged at 15,000 r.p.m. for 1 hour; by this means all elementary bodies are thrown down and if the extract had not already been heated infectivity would have been removed from the supernatant. The supernatant fluid was pipetted off, the sediment washed in saline, recentrifuged at 15,000 r.p.m. for 1 hour, and the sediment resuspended in saline and centrifuged for 15 minutes at 3,000 r.p.m. This second supernatant was then pipetted off and the sediment discarded. The first or original supernatant fluid

which failed to show the presence of elementary bodies failed also to give a positive intradermal test. The second supernatant showed the presence of uniform granules corresponding in size to those of the elementary bodies and in addition gave a positive Frei test.

It is thus possible to obtain a positive Frei test with a killed suspension of washed lymphogranuloma inguinale elementary bodies just as in the case of vaccinia, as shown by CRAIGIE and WISHART (1933), an intradermal allergic test can be obtained with killed suspensions of vaccinia elementary bodies. It, therefore, appears that the Frei test is an allergic reaction due to the presence of lymphogranuloma inguinale elementary bodies in the material injected. It is of interest to note that occasionally repeated intradermal injections of Frei antigen may give rise to a hyperallergic condition as in the case of a patient described by NICOLAU (1937) where reddish brown papules appeared on both arms 2 days after the injection of antigen into one arm. According to SAENZ (1935) exposure to X-rays may also increase the allergic response in the skin. The exact length of time during which the Frei test remains positive in patients who have recovered from lymphogranuloma inguinale infections has not been accurately determined. In human cases experimentally infected with lymphogranuloma inguinale, WASSÉN (1935) found that the Frei test becomes positive in from 6 to 13 days after infection and in three persons it was still positive 398, 309 and 280 days later; in two others, however, the test, though positive 41 days after infection, was negative 109 and 116 after infection. In cases of involvement of the rectum the Frei test apparently remains positive for some years, a finding which may possibly be correlated with the continued presence of the virus in the granulomatous lesions.

Experiments to determine how far a positive test depends on the continued presence of virus in the tissues in man would be of considerable interest.

Histologically the reaction produced in an infected person by the Frei test reproduces exactly the appearance found in the primary lesion.

In addition to the Frei reaction a number of other tests have been devised for the diagnosis of lymphogranuloma inguinale. REIS (1934) believed that when the Frei antigen was injected mixed with an equal quantity of the patient's own serum the reaction was intensified, while the intradermal inoculation of the patient's serum not infrequently gave rise to an allergic reaction similar to that induced by the Frei antigen. Attempts to confirm these observations have failed.

(2) *The guineapig intradermal test.* This was described by WASSÉN (1934 and 1935) and consists in the intradermal injection into the guineapig of a mixture of virus-containing material, such as infected mouse brain and the patient's serum; as controls, virus and normal serum and virus and a known immune serum are similarly injected intradermally. At the end of 48 hours the point of injection of virus and normal serum is marked by a small red indurated area, the centre of which breaks down to form a tiny ulcer, closely resembling, both macro-

scopically, and microscopically, the primary sore of lymphogranuloma inguinale. The point of inoculation of virus and immune serum shows no reaction. Although this test has the disadvantage that it necessitates the maintenance of a strain of the lymphogranuloma inguinale either in mice or monkeys, its accuracy is probably greater than that of the Frei reaction.

(3) *The intravenous injection of Frei antigen.* This was found by HELLERSTRÖM (1932) to give rise to a febrile reaction in persons suffering from lymphogranuloma inguinale. RAVAUT and his colleagues (1932) have used this reaction in the diagnosis of the disease. Apart from the fact that the absolute specificity of the test is not yet established, the intravenous injection of antigen would seem not to be without possible dangers.

(4) *The intracerebral test in mice.* In this test a mixture of one part of a 10 per cent. suspension of infected mouse brain and two parts of the serum to be tested is inoculated intracerebrally into mice in doses of 0.03 c.c. A control batch of mice is similarly inoculated with a mixture of normal serum and infected mouse brain. With an active virus the mice injected with virus and normal serum should develop symptoms in from 5 to 10 days.

(5) *Complement fixation.* Efforts have been made by a number of observers to obtain complement fixation using a variety of antigens such as infected human inguinal lymph nodes, infected mouse and monkey tissues. In certain known cases of lymphogranuloma inguinale good complement fixation has been obtained but in others the results have been negative. Owing to these irregularities complex fixation is not a reliable test though it is possible that the infected chorio-allantoic membrane of the developing chick embryo may provide an antigen capable of yielding more consistent results.

(6) *Agglutination.* As the virus particles of lymphogranuloma inguinale are approximately the same size as those of the virus of vaccinia, efforts are now being made to develop a flocculation test on the lines of that used in the diagnosis of variola.

By means of the above tests, as well as by isolation of the virus in experimental animals, it has been possible to demonstrate that in addition to cases imported from abroad autochthonous infections with the virus of lymphogranuloma inguinale undoubtedly occur in this country both in the form of poradenitis (STANNUS and FINDLAY, 1933 and ANWYL-DAVIES, KING and FINDLAY, 1933), or of rectal stricture (FINDLAY, 1936; MANSON-BAHR, 1936; and WHITTAKER, 1937).

REFERENCES.

- ANWYL-DAVIES, T., KING, J. & FINDLAY, G. M. (1933). Lymphogranuloma inguinale (poradenitis nostras). *Lancet*, 2, 289.
BROOM, J. C. & FINDLAY, G. M. (1936). Experiments on the filtration of climatic bubo (lymphogranuloma inguinale) virus through "gradocol" membranes. *Brit. J. exp. Path.*, 17, 135.

- CAMINOPETROS, J. (1936). Recherches épidémiologiques et expérimentales sur la maladie de Nicolas et Favre. Longue persistance du virus de cette maladie dans l'organisme humain. *Bull. Soc. Path. exot.*, 28, 408.
- CHEVALLIER, P. & BERNARD, J. (1932). La méningite chronique atténuée de la poradénite inguinale humaine. *Sang*, 6, 572.
- CRAIGIE, W. & WISHART, F. O. (1933). Skin sensitivity to elementary bodies of vaccinia. *Canad. publ. Hlth. J.*, 24, 72.
- DAVID, V. C. & LORING, M. (1935). Extragenital lesions of lymphogranuloma inguinale. *J. Amer. med. Ass.*, 106, 1875.
- DORÉ, G. R., BREUIL & LAFFERRE. (1936). Complexe néphrose-néphrite ayant évolué sans rémission en trente mois chez un poradénitique. *Bull. Soc. méd. Hôp. Paris*, 52, 1248.
- FAVRE, M. (1924). Sur l'étiologie de la lymphogranulomatose subaiguë à propos de la communication de M. Carlo Gamna. *Pr. méd.*, 32, 1299.
- FINDLAY, G. M. (1932). Relationship of climatic bubo and lymphogranuloma inguinale. *Lancet* 2, 11.
- . (1933). Experiments on the transmission of the virus of climatic bubo to animals. *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 27, 35.
- . (1936). Discussion on the aetiology and treatment of fibrous stricture of the rectum (including lymphogranuloma inguinale). *Proc. roy. Soc.*, 29, 1449.
- FLEMMING, W. (1885). Schlussbemerkungen über die Zellvermehrung in den lymphoiden Drüsen. *Arch. mikr. Anat.*, 24, 337.
- FREI, W. (1925). Eine neue Haut reaktion bei lymphogranuloma inguinale. *Klin. Wschr.*, 4, 2148.
- GAMNA, C. (1923). Sulla linfogranulomatosi inguinale. Ricerche cliniche ed etiologiche. *Arch. Sci. med.*, 46, 31.
- GAY-PIRETO, J. A. (1927). Contribución al estudio de la linfogranulomatosis inguinalis subaguda: ulcera venérea adénogena de Nicolás y Favre. *Act. dermo-sifilogr.*, 20, 122.
- HAAM, E. VON & D'AUNOY, R. (1935). Infectivity of the spinal fluid in lymphogranuloma inguinale. *J. Amer. med. Ass.*, 106, 1642.
- HAAM, E. VON & HARTWELL, R. (1937). Pulmonary lesions in animals produced by the virus of lymphogranuloma inguinale. *J. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 40, 214.
- HELLERSTRÖM, S. (1932). Neure, wichtiger Ergebnisse auf dem Gebiete der Lymphogranuloma inguinale-Forschung., *Zbl. Haut-u. GeschlKr.*, 40, 705.
- HELLERSTRÖM, S. & WASSÉN, E. (1930). Meningo-enzephalitische Veränderungen bei Affen nach intracerebraler Impfung mit Lymphogranuloma inguinale. VIIIe Congrès international de Dermatologie et de Syphiligraphie. København, Aug., 1930.
- LAEDERICH, L. L., LEVADITI, C., MAMOU, H. & BEAUCHESNE, H. (1932). Rétrécissement inflammatoire du rectum, forme aberrante de la maladie de Nicolas Favre. Inoculation au singe positive. *Bull. Soc. méd. Hôp. Paris*, 48, 1072.
- LEVADITI, J. C. (1936). *La Maladie de Nicolas-Favre expérimentale*. Paris : Libraire Maloine.
- LEVADITI, C., BOLLACK, J., BASCH, G. & DESVIGNES. (1936). Conjonctivite avec adéno-pathie due au virus de la maladie de Nicolas-Favre (lymphogranulomatose à localisation oculaire). *Bull. Soc. franc. Derm. Syph.*, 43, 1238.
- LEVADITI, C., MOLLARET, P. & REINIE, L. (1935). Identité étiologique entre la maladie de Nicolas et Favre et certaines anorectites ou recto-côlites végétantes. Etude expérimentale. *Bull. Acad. Méd. Paris*, 113, 439.

- LEVADITI, C., RAVAUT, P., SCHOEN, R. (1932). Réceptivité de la souris à l'égard du virus de la maladie de Nicolas et Favre. *C. R. Soc. Biol., Paris*, 109, 285.
- LEVADITI, C., RAVAUT, P., SCHOEN, R. & VAISMAN, A. (1932). Réceptivité du chat à l'égard du virus lymphogranulomateux de la maladie de Nicolas et Favre. *Ibid.*, 110, 1218.
- MANSON-BAHR, P. H. (1936). Discussion on the aetiology and treatment of fibrous stricture of the rectum (including lymphogranuloma inguinale). *Proc. roy. Soc.*, 29, 1452.
- MIDANA, A. & VERCELLINO, L. (1934). Les altérations du système nerveux central de l'homme dans la poradénite inguinale. *Bull. Soc. franc. Derm. Syph.*, 41, 161, 165.
- MIYAGAWA, Y., MITAMURA, T., YAOI, H., ISHII, N., NAKAJIMA, H., OKANISHI, J., WATANABE, S. & SATO, K. (1935). Studies on the virus of lymphogranuloma inguinale Nicolas, Favre and Durand. (First Report.) *Jap. J. exp. Med.*, 13, 1.
- MIYAGAWA, Y., MITAMURA, T., YAOI, H., ISHII, N. & OKANISHI, J. (1935¹). Studies on the virus of lymphogranuloma inguinale Nicolas, Favre and Durand. (Second Report): Experimental findings in mouse infection. *Ibid.*, 13, 331.
- . (1935²). Studies on the virus of lymphogranuloma inguinale Nicolas, Favre and Durand. (Third Report): Studies on filtration especially ultrafiltration of the virus. *Ibid.*, 13, 723.
- . (1935³). Studies on the virus of lymphogranuloma inguinale Nicolas, Favre and Durand. (Fourth Report): Cultivation of the virus on the chorio-allantoic membrane of the chicken embryo. *Ibid.*, 13, 733.
- . (1935⁴). Studies on the virus of lymphogranuloma inguinale Nicolas, Favre and Durand. (Fifth Report): Resistance of the virus to heat, cold and desiccation, virus dilution experiment, virulicidin and allergene neutralisation. *Ibid.*, 13, 739.
- . (1936⁵). Studies on the virus of lymphogranuloma inguinale, Nicolas, Favre and Durand. (Sixth Report): Inoculation experiment of the virus in small laboratory animals besides monkeys and mice. *Ibid.*, 14, 197.
- MIYAGAWA, Y., MITAMURA, T., YAOI, H., ISHII, N., OKANISHI, J., GOTO, T. & SHIMIZU, S. (1936). Studies on the virus of lymphogranuloma inguinale. Nicolas, Favre and Durand. (Seventh Report): Cultivation of the virus by tissue culture method. *Ibid.*, 14, 207.
- MIYAGAWA, Y., MITAMURA, T., YAOI, H., ISHII, N., OKANISHI, J., KANAZAWA, K. & YAMADA, H. (1936). Studies on the virus of lymphogranuloma inguinale, Favre and Durand. (Eighth Report): Studies on the cultivation of the virus after Tamura, Meyer and Ander's Reports. *Ibid.*, 14, 221.
- MOCQUOT, P., LEVADITI, C. & REINIÉ, L. (1935). Recto-côlite primitive due au virus de la maladie de Nicolas-Favre (virus lymphogranulomateux). *Bull. Acad. Méd. Paris*, 63, 320.
- NAUCK, E. G. (1937). Über Untersuchungen an Virus-infizierten Gewebekulturen und die Verwendung der Giemsa-Färbung für die Virus-Forschung. *Arch. Schiffs- u. Tropenhyg.*
- NICOLAS, J., FAVRE, M., LEBEUF, F. & CHARPY, J. (1932). Intradermoréactions positives dans la maladie de Nicolas-Favre (trois cas) avec un antigène tiré d'une forme anorectale éléphantiasique de la maladie. *Bull. Soc. franc. Derm. Syph.* (Réunion dermat.), 39, 24.
- NICOLAU, C. T. (1932). Recherches expérimentales sur la transmission du lymphogranuloma inguinal bénin chez les animaux. *Bull. Soc. méd. Hôp. Bucarest*, 14, 51.
- NICOLAU, S. (1937). Etat hyperallergique avec éruptions complexes créée par l'intradermo-réaction de Frei chez une lymphogranulomateuse. *Ann. Derm. Syph., Paris*, 8, 433.
- PAULSON, M. (1937). A new diagnostic intradermal reaction with bowel antigen indicating the presence of the virus of venereal lymphogranuloma in the intestine, and differentiating colitis associated with that virus. *J. Amer. med. Ass.*, 109, 1880.
- . (1938). The indication of lymphogranuloma venereum virus in the human intestine by the use of bowel antigen. *J. Bact.*, 35, 45.
- RAJAM, R. V. (1936). Report of a fatal case of lymphogranuloma inguinale from meningo-encephalitis. *Brit. J. vener. Dis.*, 12, 237.

- RAVAUT, P., LEVADITI, C., LAMBLING, A. & CACHERA, R. (1932). La présence du virus de la maladie de Nicolas-Favre dans les lésions d'un malade atteint d'ano-rectile ulcéro-vegetante. *Bull. Acad. Méd. Paris*, 107, 110.
- RAVAUT, P., LEVADITI, C. & MAISLER. (1932). La valeur diagnostique et thérapeutique des injections intraveineuses du virus de la maladie de Nicolas-Favre d'origine simienne. *Bull. Soc. franc. Derm. Syph.*, 39, 1262.
- REICHLE, H. S. & CONNOR, W. H. (1935). Lymphogranuloma inguinale: report of a case with involvement of retroperitoneal lymph nodes and probable involvement of the hip joint, adrenals and kidneys with autopsy. *Arch. Derm. Syph.* 32, 196.
- REISS, F. (1934). Ueber eine neue immunobiologische Reaktion zur Diagnose der Lymphogranulomatosis inguinalis. *Derm. Wschr.*, 99, 1203.
- ROSEN, I., ROSENFELD, H. & KRASNOW, F. (1937). Lymphogranuloma venereum: prolonged derangement of the serum lipids and proteins: preliminary report. *Arch. Derm. Syph.*, N.Y., 36, 318.
- SAENZ, B. (1935). Unusual form of allergic cutaneous reaction in lymphogranulomatosis inguinalis. *Ibid.*, 31, 348.
- STANNUS, H. S. & FINDLAY, G. M. (1933). Lymphogranuloma (poradenitis) inguinale. *Lancet* 1, 358.
- TAMURA, J. T. (1934). Cultivation of the virus of lymphogranuloma inguinale and its use in therapeutic inoculation. *J. Amer. med. Ass.*, 103, 408.
- . (1937). Virus of lymphogranuloma inguinale: its cultivation, immunologic and clinical studies. *Northw. Med., Seattle*, 36, 39.
- WALTERS, A. H. (1935). A technical investigation into the histology, bacteriology and cuti-reaction of poradenitis inguinale (lymphogranuloma). *Lab. J.*, 7, 357.
- WASSÉN, E. (1934). Transmission de la lymphogranulomatose inguinale (maladie de Nicolas et Favre) au cobaye. *C. R. Soc. Biol., Paris*, 116, 121.
- . (1935). Studies of lymphogranuloma inguinale from etiological and immunological points of view. *Acta path. microbiol. scand.*, Supplement 23.
- WHITTAKER, N. (1937). Lymphogranuloma inguinale in the female. *Lancet* 2, 1133.
- WILLIAMS, R. D. & GUTMAN, A. B. (1936). Hyperproteinemia with reversal of the albumin: globulin ration in lymphogranuloma inguinale. *Proc. Soc. exp. Biol., N.Y.*, 34, 91.

DISCUSSION.

Dr. H. S. Stannus: The three papers to which we have listened this evening have been particularly interesting as the authors have treated the subject from three different points of view. Dr. HANSCHALL has given us his personal store of experience from which one might be inclined to believe that this virus infection produced a disease of trivial and benign character. Speaking rather as the biographer of the subject than as one with much experience of the disease, I think it is perhaps as well to lay emphasis upon the fact that this is not always the case. It seems possible as you have heard from Dr. MARSHALL FINDLAY, that the virus may attack many parts of the body including the meninges, while the general symptomatology may be very varied. It is an infection worth carrying in one's mind when presented with some odd and unusual condition.

With regard to the stricture of the rectum usually described as "inflammatory stricture of the rectum," I feel convinced that all cases are due to this infection. I have been unable to satisfy myself that any single case advanced in the literature as due to syphilis or gonorrhoea was in fact due to either of those diseases. In the female, the infection passes from a primary lesion commonly on the posterior wall of the vagina or fourchette to the pararectal tissues; in the male, the condition is generally associated with a lesion in the anal region due to the practice of sodomy. Apparently rare in this country it is not uncommon on the Continent and in the East.

The swollen perianal tags, which may appear, have before now been mistaken for piles. They are exactly comparable to a similar condition of the vulva, more particularly of the nymphae and are best described as having a cock's comb-like appearance as mentioned by Dr. CHESTERMAN. Genito ano-rectal disease is common among native races and Dr. CHESTERMAN's experience has been that of many others working among indigenous races. Dr. HANSCHALL's observations upon the rectal case recently under his care are most instructive. The sago-grain condition of the mucous membrane suggests that described by NAUMAN (1931) about the vulva of a Haitian prostitute. The necessity of a reliable antigen for performing Frei's test must have been realised by many during the last few years, and it is hoped one will be put on the market soon.

The question of treatment still remains a matter of some difficulty; the simple case responds quickly to simple means, but the difficult case may defy all methods. I should be interested to learn whether anyone present has had any experience with sodium salicyate in 6-8 gramme doses per diem by mouth (strict milk diet) combined with anthiomaline (antimonio-thiomalate of lithium) intravenously.

The distribution of the malady is a little difficult to explain. It seems probable that the disease spreads from single foci sometimes as appeared to be the case in Roumania among medical students. I have seen three patients whom I suspect all gained their infection from a woman who parades the Charing Cross Road, in London.

Dr. Manson-Bahr: The speakers have referred to the widespread nature of lymphogranuloma inguinale infections which has become quite an important subject in consulting practice. I have actually seen it, in the form of an acute bubo, being mistaken for plague in England and, of course, when met with for the first time its alarming appearance makes such a mistake possible. There is some reason, too, for believing that in former days in Hongkong lymphogranuloma inguinale was popularly regarded as a mild form of plague and was generally known as *pestis minor*. Of course, this had its social advantages for the sufferer from *pestis minor* was apt to be regarded as a national hero rather than a social pariah.

I have seen cases of lymphogranuloma inguinale with high remittent temperatures which have persisted for several weeks and which have been regarded as typhoid before the buboes in the groin became apparent.

I have also seen cervical adenitis on more than one occasion which has been due to the lymphogranuloma virus and which has given a positive Frei test. There have been two instances of this infection which have come into the Hospital for Tropical Diseases and which had been acquired in this country. There was one typical bubo (the only one I have seen in a woman) in an Irish married woman from Soho and a similar bubo was present in her husband ; both gave a positive intradermal test.

Regarding rectal stricture, I am perfectly certain that in the majority of cases it is due to this virus. As a matter of fact, it is very rare in Europeans from the tropics, for out of a series of 3,600 sigmoidoscopic examinations at the Hospital for Tropical Diseases during 16 years I have only got records of two fibrous strictures which gave a positive Frei skin test. I remember the terrible strictures I saw when a student at the London Hospital and how dissatisfied we were at that time with the effect of antisyphilitic treatment upon them.

Dr. Findlay (in reply) : Dr. HANSCHALL has suggested that possibly the Frei test is a group reaction. As far as the evidence available goes it appears to be a true allergic reaction comparable to that which is obtained when vaccinia elementary bodies, either dead or alive, are injected into a person immune to vaccinia and present only when immunity has been acquired to the specific virus. My own Frei positive reaction developed some months after I had begun to work with the virus of lymphogranuloma. The development of immunity to virus diseases apart from accidental infection, is now well known in the case of a number of other virus infections such as poliomyelitis and Rift Valley fever. The time after infection at which the Frei test becomes positive is at present unknown nor is it certain whether it is dependent on the continued presence of living virus in the tissues. This question can only be determined by someone who has an opportunity of keeping a patient under observation for a prolonged period.

COMMUNICATIONS.

ANTIMONY RESISTANCE IN ULCERATIVE GRANULOMA.

BY

K. VIGORS EARLE, M.D. (LONDON), B.CH. (CANTAB.),*
Late Senior Resident Surgeon, General Hospital, Barbados, British West Indies.

It is generally conceded (MANSON-BAHR, 1935, and RAJAM, 1937) that although antimony, especially the trivalent form, cures ulcerative granuloma in the vast majority of cases, yet there remains a small residue of cases which either relapse after several courses of antimony therapy, or become worse during its administration. Such types of resistance, occurring during the administration of tartar emetic, have been described by LOW and NEWHAM (1917); and by GIGLIOLI (1928), but the last-named observer points out that resistance to tartar emetic does not necessarily imply antimony resistance, as many of his cases, previously resistant to tartar emetic, later reacted favourably to stibenyl. RAJAM (1934) describes three cases which were resistant to urea stibamine, but responded to foudadin, and HANSHELL (1929) instances a case which, resistant to antimony-potassium tartrate, cleared up when protein shock was combined with that drug.

MAYER and DA ROCHA LIMA (1927) suggest that antimony resistance may be due to mixed infections, which include syphilis, other spirochaetal infection, diphtheria and the Plant-Vincent organism.

In a small series of "antimony resistant" cases observed in Barbados, I was struck by the fact that in each case the Frei test was positive and three of these cases showed such signs of the ravages of lymphogranuloma inguinale as chronic lymphatic enlargement, scars of old inguinal sinuses or oedema of the external genitalia.

It would appear that the resistance of these cases to antimony therapy was due, at any rate in part, to the fact that the granuloma was implanted upon oedematous tissue, a fact that has also been noted by BAYLEY (1937). Moreover, the disease spread with increased rapidity in two cases where oedema was increased by circumcision, and in one case where a lymphogranulomatous oedema of the vulva was further increased by pressure oedema due to pregnancy.

GIGLIOLI (1928) observes that healthy tissue is only with difficulty attacked by the disease: it probably takes advantage of the *locus minoris resistentiae*

*I have to thank Dr. H. H. BAYLEY, of Barbados, for the kind use of his private laboratory for the pathological investigations.

caused by ulcerative or traumatic lesions of the genitals and groins, a theory which is supported by the observations of NAIR and PANDALAI (1934), who have observed the development of the disease in circumcision scars and those following operation on buboes, piles and anal fissures. He mentions two cases and quotes a third by ITURBE of ulcerative granuloma developing in circumcision scars, but unfortunately does not state whether these were associated with genital oedema, showed any marked antimony resistance or had a positive Frei reaction. A case, associated with an elephantoid condition of the vulva, responding to foudadin treatment is described by WILLIAMSON (1933) and co-workers, but the Frei test was not performed. The cases described by RAJAM (1934), which reacted favourably to foudadin, all had negative Frei reactions and included one case of elephantiasis of the labium.

CASE HISTORIES.

The extreme prevalence of venereal disease in Barbados is reflected in this series of cases, which contains no "pure" form of ulcerative granuloma; indeed, one patient had had gonorrhoea, syphilis, *ulcus molle* and lymphogranuloma inguinale in addition to ulcerative granuloma! In every case lymphogranuloma inguinale either co-existed or had been acquired previously.

The cases were, with the exception of Case 2, of the *ulcus molle* type described by RAJAM (1937). Case 2 was of the nodular dry type, the lesion being situated on a non-oedematous area, and responding to tartar emetic therapy. Case 3 was a mixed case, the lesion of the *ulcus molle* type, situated on an oedematous penis, being resistant to tartar emetic; while the dry nodular lesion, situated on the non-oedematous groin, responded completely to tartar emetic.

Case 1.

C. B., a male negro labourer, aged 36, was admitted to hospital on 25th January, 1937. He has a vague recollection of having had a bubo in the right groin many years previously, followed by a slight permanent elephantoid condition of the penis. Five years previously he had had a sore on the prepuce, extending to the glans penis. He was circumcized, the penis became very oedematous, and the sore on the glans continued to increase in size and to erode the penis. The progress of erosion was slow but relentless—the patient attended various out-patient venereal diseases clinics and appears to have had courses of salvarsan and antimony compounds. The first record I could examine showed that on 11.2.36 a course of stibenyl had been given, but no improvement had resulted. Then followed the discovery that his Kahn reaction was weakly positive and he received a course of sulpharsenobenzol; this did not affect the penile lesion.

On admission.—A powerfully built man. Apart from the genital condition, no other lesions could be found. Genital examination showed an almost complete destruction of the penis, only 1.5 cm. remaining. Micturition was free, and there was no dribbling afterwards. Around the penile stump was an almost circular depressed area of pale moist granulatous tissue, involving the skin of the scrotum. Beyond this, the scrotal skin was undermined by sinuses. The granulatous area gave a watery purulent discharge having an offensive odour. The scrotum was elephantoid, the testes were normal in size and their sensation was unimpaired. The epididymes were normal. There was a hard, painless enlargement of two of the supero-internal inguinal lymphatic glands of the right side. The prostate and seminal vesicles were normal.

Laboratory Findings.—Wassermann and Kahn reactions negative; Ito-Reenstierna reaction negative; Frei reaction positive. No microfilariæ in blood. Scrapings from the lesion showed intracellular capsulated Donovan bodies located inside the large mononuclear and epithelial cells.

Treatment and Prognosis.—As antimony tartrate ointment (1 per cent.) was badly tolerated by the patient—it gave considerable pain—cod liver oil (two parts) and vaseline (one part) was applied to the lesion throughout treatment. From 11.2.37 to 13.3.37 the patient was given a course of tartar emetic injections (6½ grains). Every injection was badly tolerated—the patient always had nausea, often followed by vomiting. He also complained at times of severe pain in the shoulders, pectoral muscles and forearms. The gastric disturbances often lasted several days; this interfered with the regularity of the treatment and accounts for the small total dosage of antimony. During this period (26.2.37) the granulomata were curetted and treated with the electric cautery. The lesion, however, continued to increase in area. From 19.3.37 to 11.4.37 (inclusive) a course of foudadin (35 c.cm.) was given, but this had no effect on the steady increase in size of the lesion. Moreover, a certain degree of joint pain and gastric disturbance followed the administration of foudadin. On 28.4.37, the supply of foudadin being exhausted, a further course of antimony tartrate was commenced, the doses being 2 grains. The lesion continued to spread, and advanced over the os pubis.

Observations.—Severe pain following application of antimony tartrate ointment has been described by NAIR and PANDALAI (1934). It is possible that good results might have followed the use of the steam cautery described by SOUTTAR (1926). Joint pain, headache, nausea and vomiting, following injections of foudadin, have been described by WILLIAMSON (1933), and SÉZARY and BOLGERT (1935) describe similar manifestations of *rheumatisme stibié* with anthiomaline, another trivalent antimony compound.

Case 2.

W. F., a male negro labourer, aged 41, was admitted to hospital on 22nd March, 1937. Several years previously had had gonorrhoea, with peri-urethral abscess, leading to fistula formation, but this had slowly healed up. Five years previously he had a sore on the penis, accompanied by bilateral bubo formation with a fistula on the left side. Salvarsan and bismuth injections were given, the penile lesion healed, the fistula gradually dried up, but the penis and scrotum gradually became elephantoid. Four years ago, whilst working in the Demerara goldfields, a lesion appeared in the angle between the scrotum and right thigh: this gradually increased in size, extending almost to the right anterior superior iliac spine in front, and to the tip of the coccyx behind. Part of the posterior aspect of the scrotum was also involved. The condition was diagnosed as ulcerating granuloma and the patient received injections of tartar emetic, but never had a regular course owing to his work. Remissions occurred, even with partial courses of antimony.

On admission.—A well built man. No lesions found in cardio-vascular, pulmonary, alimentary or central nervous systems. Pityriasis versicolor over chest. Large raised dry nodular ulcerating granuloma in right groin and natal cleft. This gave a thin purulent discharge having an offensive odour. The prepuce was thickened, scarred and non-retractile. The left groin had the scar of a healed sinus. A scar of a healed urethral fistula was seen posterior to the scrotum. Prostate and seminal vesicles normal to palpation.

Laboratory Findings.—Wassermann and Kahn reactions strongly positive; Ito-Reenstierna test positive; Frei test positive. Blood contained no microfilariæ. Stools contained no ova. Scrapings from granulomatous tissues showed Donovan bodies.

Treatment and Progress.—From 23.3.37 to 26.4.37 patient received a course of tartar emetic (totalling 23½ grains). Rapid healing took place, the new epithelium being in parts white, in parts pigmented. After 3 weeks interval another course was given to prevent relapse, and the patient was ordered to attend monthly for inspection.

Observations.—Here, in non-oedematous tissue, rapid healing took place. The scars were in part pigmented, a fact noted also by GIGLIOLI (1928), although WILLIAMSON (1933) states that the scars always remain de-pigmented.

Case 3.

H. B., a male negro carpenter, aged 21, was admitted to hospital on 25th March, 1937. Three months previously lesions had appeared simultaneously on the prepuce and right groin; these had progressed in size, the penile lesion became painful and the prepuce could not be retracted.

On admission.—A well built subject. No lesions found in cardio-vascular, pulmonary and central nervous systems. Linear granuloma of right groin exuding evil-smelling watery fluid. Penis oedematous. Prepuce non-retractile: pus issued from under it. Scrotum and contents normal. Slight tenderness and enlargement of prostate.

Laboratory Findings.—Wassermann and Kahn reactions negative; Ito-Reenstierna test negative; Frei test positive. Scrapings from both granulomatous areas showed Donovan bodies.

Treatment and Progress.—On 29.3.37 a dorsal slit was performed revealing a granuloma which had considerably eroded the glans penis. A urethritis was present, the pus from which contained gonococci. The rest of the prepuce was removed. From 3.4.37 to 23.4.37 the patient received a course of tartar emetic (15½ grains). On 5.4.37 a bilateral epididymitis developed. At the end of the course of tartar emetic complete healing of the lesion in the groin had occurred, but the erosion of the glans penis had progressed considerably.

Observations.—An example of the disease, in association with a positive Frei reaction and oedema, together with a circumcision wound, progressing during the administration of antimony. Also, in the same subject, ulcerative granuloma, located on a non-oedematous area, which responded to antimony therapy.

Case 4.

J. S., a negress, aged 21, was admitted to hospital on 4th April, 1937. Three years previously had a bubo in each groin: these had later burst, the resulting sinuses slowly healing. Following this the vulva began to swell. Six months previously a sore appeared in the perinaeum and gradually spread to the buttocks, anus and into the vagina. She became pregnant five months ago, and the labia majora, already enlarged, swelled further and gave rise to considerable itching. Coincidentally, the granuloma increased rapidly in extent; became very painful so that coitus had to be abandoned; defaecation also produced great pain.

On admission.—A well-developed girl. No lesions found in cardio-vascular, pulmonary or central nervous systems. Abdominal examination showed a gravid uterus containing a living foetus: the pregnancy was 5 months advanced. Clitoris and labia majora (especially the left) enlarged and elephantoid. In each groin were scars of old fistulae. In the perinaeum was an ulcerating granuloma extending into the anus behind and to the posterior wall of the vagina in front. From it exuded a watery fluid having a foul odour. There was no rectal stricture.

Laboratory Findings.—Wassermann and Kahn reactions negative. Ito-Reenstierna test negative. Frei test positive. No microfilariae in blood-film. Scrapings from granuloma showed typical Donovan organisms.

Progress and Treatment.—From 3.5.37 to 21.5.37 a course of tartar emetic (16 grains) was given. The granuloma continued to spread, and spread throughout a second course of tartar emetic.

Observations.—This is ulcerative granuloma of the *ulcus molle* type, superimposed upon oedematous tissue produced by a previous lymphogranuloma

inguinale, and further aggravated by pregnancy. Unfortunately, the subsequent history of this case could not be followed up.

Case 5.

Cl. B., a negro porter, aged 26, was admitted to hospital on 18th March, 1937. Two years previously he had had what appeared to be a chancre on the foreskin; his Kahn reaction at this time was strongly positive. He received out-patient treatment (salvarsan), but the penis, which was very oedematous, was gradually destroyed.

On admission.—A well-developed man, healthy except for the genital lesions. The penis was completely absent. Urination was free with some dribbling after the act. At the base of the penis was a granulomatous area (2 inches in diameter) extending over the anterior surface of the scrotum. The scrotum was elephantoid. Small hard lymphatic glands were present in each groin.

Laboratory Findings.—Wassermann and Kahn reactions strongly positive. Frei test positive. No microfilariæ in blood-film. Scraping from the granuloma showed intra- and extra-cellular capsulated bodies.

Progress and Treatment.—From 24.3.36 to 21.4.36 a course of neostibosan injections (3 grammes) was given. The granuloma continued to spread. Then followed a course of tartar emetic injections (30 grains), again with no effect on the advance of the lesion.

Observation.—This, again, is a resistant *ulcus molle* type of lesion, superimposed upon tissue already damaged by lymphogranuloma inguinale.

POSSIBLE CAUSES OF ANTIMONY RESISTANCE.

It is, perhaps, interesting to speculate upon the possible cause of antimony resistance in ulcerative granuloma. It may be due to an antimony resistant strain or to a resistance acquired by exposure to sub-lethal doses of antimony in a manner analogous to that produced in trypanosomes with tryparsamide by YORKE, MURGATROYD and HAWKING (1931). The work of KLEIN (1931) and ALDERSBERG and PERUTZ (1932) has shown that the absorption by artificially produced oedematous tissues of such dyes as congo-red, injected into the blood-stream, is dependent on the chemical constitution of the oedema fluid. Where the oedema fluid is rich in albumin (*i.e.* in wheals produced by injections of histamine or aolan), large amounts of dye are absorbed from the blood-stream. The chemical nature of the oedema fluid produced in the elephantoid conditions following lymphogranuloma inguinale infection may be such as to hinder the absorption of certain of the antimony compounds, so that the causative organisms of ulcerative granuloma are either not reached at all, or in such sub-lethal doses as to produce acquired resistance to antimony. Protein shock therapy, in conjunction with antimony treatment, may lead to a histamine or lymphagogue action in the oedematous area, with increased albumin-content of the fluid and, in consequence, absorption of lethal doses of the antimony compound.

SUMMARY.

1. Five cases of ulcerative granuloma, of which four were resistant to antimony therapy, are described.

2. The association of these resistant cases with previous lymphogranuloma inguinale infection and oedema of the infected area is pointed out.

3. A tentative explanation of the production of antimony resistance in oedematous tissues is submitted.

REFERENCES.

- ALDERSBERG, D. & PERUTZ, A. (1932). Untersuchungen über die Anreicherung von im Blutkreisenden Farbstoffen in Hautquaddeln. Ein Beitrag zur Frage der ikterischen Hautschrift. *Klin. Wschr.*, 11, 942.
- BAYLEY, H. H. (1937). *Personal communication*.
- GIGLIOLI, G. (1928). Granuloma venereum: its diagnosis and treatment; notes on 15 cases treated with "stibenyl" Heyden in British Guiana. *J. trop. Med. (Hyg.)*, 31, 245.
- HANSCHALL, H. M. (1929). Treatment of granuloma pudendi by antimony potassium tartrate in glucose solution and by protein shock. *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 22, 391.
- ITURBE. Quoted by GIGLIOLI in above paper.
- KLEIN, O. (1931). Über die Anreicherung von Bilirubin und intravenös injizierter Farbstoffe im Bereiche der durch intradermale Histamininjektion erzeugten Hautquaddeln. *Med. Klinik.*, 27, 625.
- LOW, G. C. & NEWHAM, H. B. (1917). A case of ulcerating granuloma refractory to intravenous injections of antimony, X-rays and other forms of treatment. *Trans. [R.] Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 10, 109.
- MANSON-BAHR, P. H. (1935). *Manson's Tropical Diseases*. 10th Ed. pp. 618-623. London: Cassell & Co., Ltd.
- MAYER, M. & DA ROCHA LIMA, H. (1927). *Jadassohn's Handbuch der Haut und Geschlechtskrankheiten*, 21, pp. 443-462. Berlin: Julius Springer.
- NAIR, V. G. & PANDALAI, N. G. (1934). Granuloma genito-inguinale. *Indian med. Gaz.*, 69, 361.
- RAJAM, R. V. (1934). Note on treatment of infective granuloma with "fouadin." *Ibid.*, 69, 372.
- . (1937). *The British Encyclopaedia of Medical Practice*, 6, 54-59. London: Butterworth & Co. Ltd.
- SÉZARY, A. & BOLGERT, M. (1935). La posologie de l'anthiomaline. *Bull. Soc. méd. Hôp. Paris*, 51, 555.
- SOUTTAR, H. S. (1926). The steam cautery. *Lancet*, 1, 805.
- WILLIAMSON, T. V., ANDERSON, J. W., KIMBROUGH, R. & DODSON, A. I. (1933). Specific effect of "fouadin" (fuadin) on granuloma inguinale; preliminary report. *J. Amer. med. Ass.*, 100, 1671.
- YORKE, W., MURGATROYD, F., & HAWKING, F. (1931). Studies in chemotherapy. VI.—The production of resistant strains by exposure of trypanosomes to reduced trypanasamide *in vitro*. *Ann. trop. Med. Parasit.*, 25, 521.

SOME NOTES ON SCORPION POISONING IN TRINIDAD.

BY

JAMES A. WATERMAN, M.D., D.T.M. & H.,*
Colonial Hospital, Port of Spain, Trinidad.

INTRODUCTION.

The scorpions belong to the Phylum Arthropoda; Class: Arachnida, Order: Scorpionidea, and are grouped into seven families:—

- | | | | |
|---------------|------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. Buthidae. | 2. Scorpionidae. | 3. Ischnuridae. | 4. Chaerilidae. |
| 5. Chactidae. | 6. Vejovidae. | 7. Bothriuridae. | |

They are found in all warm parts of the world, and are nocturnal and very rapacious, feeding on spiders and insects. Human beings are only stung accidentally.

When the scorpion is interfered with it brings into action its defensive and offensive apparatus. The sting is situated in the last segment or "telson" which is globular in shape and ends in a long curved spine, near the apex of which the ducts of the poison glands open. The pair of poison glands are situated in the globular part and are separated by a muscular septum, the contraction of which forces out the poison. The scorpion never stings backwards but always in front of itself; it consists of a broader front portion—the cephalo thorax and abdomen, and a narrower one, the tail.

"The venom," according to JACKSON (1910) and KUBOTA (1903), "is a transparent liquid; when agitated it produces a froth; it is acid in reaction; when evaporated, it leaves scaly flakes of dark yellow colour, which are soluble in water, normal saline, glycerine, and dilute alcohol. Pure alcohol, iodine, ether, ammonia and tannin precipitate the poison. Heating to 100° C. for 30 minutes destroys the poison. The toxic principle is in the nature of a toxalbumin, a neurotoxin, which resembles cobra venom and acts on the medulla and motor and plates causing death by paralysis of the respiratory system."

* I have to thank the Director of Medical Services, Trinidad, for permission to publish these notes, also Drs. PAWAN and GOSDEN for Laboratory investigations and Drs. ROSTANT, BOUCAUD and TOI A SUE for informing me of some of their cases.

It also has a lecithide which haemolyses nucleated as well as non-nucleated blood corpuscles, as do the lecithides of cobra venom. (KYES, 1903). Although the sting of a scorpion is very painful the poison as a rule does not produce general symptoms in adults, but in children under 5 years of age the sting frequently causes death.

According to STITT (1923) the mortality among young children stung by *Buthus quinquestriatus* is 50 per cent.

BYAM and ARCHIBALD (1923) quote Dr. MOHAMMED SHAHEEN who states that the mortality under 5 years of age is 60 per cent. In Trinidad the case mortality rate under 5 years is 25 per cent.

The toxicity of scorpion venom varies in different countries and even in different sections of the same country. WILSON in 1904 recorded many deaths in the Sudan.

The Durango scorpion of Mexico—*Centruroides suffusus*—was responsible for 1,608 deaths between 1890-1926 in the city of Durango with a population of 40,000 (BAERG, 1929).

In Southern Europe and North Africa the black scorpion, *Euscorpis italicus*, causes many fatalities. The high death rate led TODD (1909), of Cairo, to prepare an antivenine which is given in doses of 10 c.c. for adults, and 5 c.c. for children. It is prepared by immunizing horses against scorpion venom and using the serum. In Manchuria, *Buthus martensi* is the most venomous. In Trinidad the black scorpion is the most venomous and produces in addition to the nervous and haemolytic symptoms usually described, hyperglycaemia, glycosuria, pancreatitis, pancreatic cysts and cardiac irregularities.

The virulence of the venom varies with the seasons—during the hot and breeding season it is more toxic.

The etiology of acute pancreatitis will have to be revised in view of its occurrence following scorpion sting, as it is reasonable to assume that other toxins can affect the pancreas. The prevalence of diabetes mellitus may be due to toxins of acute infectious diseases partially damaging the pancreas, which has to carry on its work under great strain and sooner or later breaks down, thus producing diabetes.

SCORPION POISONING IN TRINIDAD.

1.—Incidence.

It is very difficult to gauge accurately the incidence of poisoning by scorpion stings, as only the more severe cases consult a doctor or gravitate to a hospital. In certain districts of the Colony scorpions are more numerous, and perhaps more venomous. The cane fields of southern Trinidad from Couva to Siparia and the cocoa plantations of the north-eastern part account for the majority of the fatalities. In the coconut plantations the scorpion is not so numerous or its sting is apparently less dangerous. It is commonly found among the clothing and in shoes. Its presence in the home is not an index of uncleanness.

Fowls, by eating the young scorpions, may be considered their natural enemies.

2.—Age and Sex.

Sex has some influence in the incidence of scorpion stings for we have more males working in the plantations and so exposed to the dangers of stings. The number of cases increases *pari passu* as the age for the same reason.

Fewest cases occur in infancy and childhood and the majority from 13 years of age upwards.

3.—MORTALITY RATE AND INCIDENCE.

The mortality rate for the whole Colony is unobtainable, but the following figures have been derived from the records from 1929-1933 of one of the hospitals situated in the neighbourhood of a cane-growing district.

Year.	Number of Cases.	Number of Deaths.	Case Mortality per cent.
1929	136	7	5.14
1930	135	6	4.4
1931	126	4	3.17
1932	112	3	2.67
1933	189	13	6.87
Totals	Cases : 698	Deaths : 33	Average mortality : 4.7 per cent.

Mortality according to Age and Age Groups.

Age.	Cases.	Deaths.	Case Mortality per cent.
Up to 1 year	16	6	37.5
Over 1-2 years	15	3	20.0
" 2-3 "	20	9	45.0
" 3-4 "	18	2	11.0
" 4-5 "	19	2	10.5
Age Group.			
1-5 years	88	22	25.0
6-10 "	96	5	5.2
11-20 "	190	5	2.6
Over 21 years	324	1	0.25

Seasonal Distribution of Cases and Mortality.

Month.	1929.	1930.	1931.	1932.	1933.	Total.	No. of Deaths.
January	13	5	4	10	18	50	—
February	8	4	7	9	6	34	—
March	6	3	7	5	11	32	2
April	3	9	8	12	12	44	1
May	6	12	8	19	10	55	1
June	30	21	12	10	25	98	9
July	20	18	21	9	24	92	5
August	16	15	18	13	15	77	4
September	9	17	21	9	22	78	4
October	5	14	13	7	21	60	2
November	12	11	6	3	14	46	2
December	8	6	1	6	11	32	3

Age of patients who died.

One each at 5 months, 8 months, 1 year and 3 months, and $2\frac{1}{2}$ years.

Two at 2 years, four at 1 year, eight at 3 years, two at 4 years, two at 5 years, two at 6 years, two at 7 years, two at 15 years, and one each at 9, 12, 14, 18, and 45 years.

The high death rate among children under 5 years of age is to be expected for the infant receives the same amount of poison as an adult, and as the volume of blood is much less the concentration of the poison will be much greater. Secondly, an infant has not the same resistance as the adult to disease, and thirdly, its nervous system is not yet fully matured as is frequently demonstrated by the development of convulsions in numerous conditions: teething, worms, etc.

Morbid Anatomy.

All the organs, especially the stomach, brain, kidneys, liver and heart, show congestion, certain organs show in addition other lesions as if they had borne the brunt of the infection, *viz.*: lungs in 25 per cent of the cases show gross oedema, probably due to heart failure; small haemorrhages under the visceral pleura were sometimes seen, and also submucous haemorrhages in the stomach and subcapsular haemorrhages in the kidneys. The brain meninges were generally congested, with haemorrhages occasionally. The heart showed an increase in pericardial fluid and occasionally subendothelial haemorrhages. The pancreas showed the following appearance in ten cases in which it was examined: a normal appearance in four, congested and enlarged in two, congested with haemorrhages in two, and acute haemorrhagic pancreatitis in two. The blood on one occasion appeared rose red.

The virulence of the toxin can be gauged by the celerity with which it kills its victims. In twenty cases the intervals between the sting and death

were as follows (in hours): $1\frac{1}{2}$; 2; $4\frac{1}{2}$; 5; 6; 7; $7\frac{1}{4}$; two at $7\frac{1}{2}$; 12; two at $12\frac{1}{2}$; 15; $15\frac{1}{4}$; $15\frac{1}{2}$; $16\frac{1}{2}$; two at 19; $21\frac{1}{2}$, and 42 hours.

Symptomatology.

Soon after the patient has been stung he experiences a very sharp burning pain at the site of the puncture, this pain generally passes off within 15 minutes but occasionally it persists for hours and local treatment has to be applied. Sometimes the area around the site becomes slightly swollen and the site of the puncture can be made out. After a variable interval of $\frac{1}{4}$ hour to 2 hours the patient begins to feel sick and if at work is unable to continue. Salivation followed by nausea and vomiting which may be very persistent then occur. The pulse is generally slow and the temperature subnormal, the respirations are fast. The urine usually contains sugar and at times albumin. The vomiting may continue accompanied by profuse perspiration, and the patient may die of heart or respiratory failure.

The patient may have an anxious facies or appear excited or very frightened: when one considers that death may occur $1\frac{1}{2}$ hours after being stung—a fact known to many—it is no wonder that the feeling of impending dissolution should show itself in fear.

The effect of the poison on the different systems will now be dealt with in greater detail, after which some typical cases will be described.

Alimentary System.

This system seems to be the one attacked very early and often severely. Salivation is always present in varying degree, accompanied with nausea: it may be the only symptom. Vomiting is practically always present and may commence $\frac{1}{4}$ hour after the patient has been stung. At first, the stomach contents are ejected then bilious fluid in seemingly endless quantities is brought up, finally the vomiting ceases and the patient gradually recovers, but in some cases the vomiting persists and the vomitus appears as "coffee grounds" or pure blood. This in itself does not connote a bad prognosis. In only one case has diarrhoea accompanied the vomiting. A frequent and early symptom is tenderness and actual pain in the epigastric and umbilical regions; at times the abdomen is distended and rigid with generalized pain and tenderness suggesting an acute abdomen. Although the persistent vomiting and retching, which continues for some time after the actual vomiting ceases, may to some extent account for the epigastric pain and tenderness, yet it seems likely, in view of the lesions frequently found in the pancreas, that the symptoms may be due in part to inflammation and congestion of that organ.

Circulatory System.

In the adult, the heart beat is generally slow but forcible. Extra systoles are comparatively frequent and occasionally the pulse is irregular in force and

rhythm : often the pulse rate is 48 per minute. Frequently the respirations approximate the pulse, e.g., in one case temperature was 97° F. ; pulse 48 ; respirations 48. In children the tendency is for the pulse to be fast or normal, especially in severe cases with cold sweats and collapse, but even here the heart may be slow as the following taken from notes of three cases : T. 97°, P. 72, R. 30 ; T. 97°, P. 68, R. 56 ; T. 97°, P. 72, R. 36.

Blood Pressure.—The systolic pressure is generally above and the diastolic below normal. Frequently the pulse pressure is equal to and at times greater than the diastolic pressure. The pulse reminds one of Corrigan's pulse.

The following blood pressures taken from different patients may be given as illustrations :—

	<i>Blood Pressure.</i>		<i>Blood Pressure.</i>
S., age 12 years.	116/55 (2.10.34).	R., age 14 years.	150/80.
	115/60 (3.10.34).	S., „ 20 „	115/65.
	105/60 (4.10.34).	B., „ 21 „	170/80.

The Respiratory System.

The respirations are always increased. The normal pulse respiration ratio of 4 : 1 becomes 3 : 1 or 2 : 1 and at times 1 : 1. Frequently the breathing is laboured and there is obvious dyspnoea but there is never cyanosis. The alae nasi are actively moving as though the patient cannot obtain sufficient air. A tentative explanation will be put forward during the discussion on the pathology.

The temperature in the adult may be subnormal at first, but soon becomes normal and remains so. Occasionally there may be a rise to 99° or 100°. In the case of infants and children although they may be admitted in a collapsed condition the temperature soon rises to 101° but, in spite of the apparent reaction from the stage of shock, sudden deaths in this stage are not uncommon. During convulsions the temperature may rise to 105° or 107° F. and yet the patient may recover.

The Nervous System.

There seems to be at times a general irritability or hyper-excitability of the nervous system. The abdominal reflex may be very active, the knee jerks exaggerated. Knee and ankle clonus often obtained but not well sustained. Babinski is positive only on the side of the sting. Hiccough was noted in a few cases. Headache is a frequent symptom and sometimes persists for a day or two after the patient is apparently well. Epigastric and umbilical pain and tenderness have been mentioned already. Tremors are occasionally noted. Convulsions are common in infants and children and when they occur the prognosis becomes much worse but not hopeless. In adults convulsions have not the same serious significance but occasionally an adult succumbs. The convulsions may resemble those of eclampsia with a short tonic stage and a longer clonic stage.

Frequently after a severe case of the gastric type or following convulsions the patient becomes drowsy and this lethargic state may last for days. Coma is a frequent sequel especially if convulsions have been present. At times the patient becomes delirious. Temporary hemiplegia or monoplegia may occur. Sometimes the patient may complain of darkness of vision and a case where a patient became absolutely blind for a short time has been described by INNISS (1927). Incoordination of upper and lower extremities is met with. The following symptoms, "the tongue is sluggish, so that communication is often by signs. The muscles of the lower jaw are contracted so that it is difficult or impossible to give medicine through the mouth," described by SANTA MARIA, (1893) by JACKSON (1910) and others as being typical of the Durango scorpion, are not met with in Trinidad; on the contrary, the patients cry out with thirst and hunger and consume large quantities of fluid.

Urine.

Urine is generally transparent, acid in reaction, no sediment, specific gravity 1015-1035. Sugar in large amounts is present in 50 per cent. of cases. In one case 3.6 per cent. $3\frac{1}{2}$ hours after the sting. Diacetic acid and acetone are present occasionally, a trace of albumin is generally present with large amounts occasionally. Bile is absent.

Blood.

Blood sugar examinations reveal a hyperglycaemia which readily disappears without insulin.

Complications and Sequelae.

1. Pancreatic cysts have been found in twelve cases at varying intervals following scorpion stings.
2. Persistent mental deterioration in one patient has been recorded.
3. Persistent cardiac irregularities, *e.g.*, extra systoles.

Diagnosis.

The diagnosis is generally easy if a history of the sting is obtained, a slow full pulse easily compressible, with rapid respirations, a pulse respiration ratio of 3 : 1, 2 : 1, or 1 : 1; salivation, vomiting, glycosuria and epigastric pain and tenderness is a characteristic picture of scorpion sting.

In infancy and childhood the diagnosis is more difficult because often no history of scorpion sting is obtained, simply that the child is suffering from convulsions. In these cases MATTHEW DUNCAN'S trite saying is of importance, namely, "if we do not know a condition we will never suspect it and if we never suspect it we will never find it." Even in these cases salivation,

vomiting, sugar in the urine and perhaps the pulse respiration ratio will be sufficient to diagnose the case. If the child is collapsed and not vomiting but rather drowsy, then inquire whether the child vomited or salivated much at home. Another important question to ask is whether the child gave a sudden cry sometime before becoming ill. If still in doubt then malignant malaria must be excluded, also acute infectious diseases, etc.

The differential diagnosis in a case of a pregnant woman stung by a scorpion and developing convulsions from one suffering from eclampsia is very difficult unless much care is given to the case. The raised blood pressure, the epigastric tenderness, headache, dimness of vision and convulsions are common to each. The pulse respiration ratio and the presence of glucose in the urine should be a sufficient guide to a correct diagnosis.

The effect of Scorpion Poisoning on Pregnancy.

Four cases, 6, 6, 7 and 8 months pregnant respectively, were treated for scorpion sting without any effect on their pregnancies, but one case, 8 months pregnant, developed convulsions and was delivered 2 days afterwards of a healthy infant.

The Excretion of Scorpion Venom through the Mammary Gland.

One of my confrères narrated the following interesting case: the mother was stung by a scorpion with little effect shortly before nursing her child, which then showed symptoms of scorpion poisoning and died.

FRANCIS and FAYRER (1868) have recorded a case in which snake venom passed through the mammary gland. "A poor Mussulman woman died at Madras from the bite of a cobra, she was nursing her child at the time and the latter succumbed in its turn a few hours later with all the symptoms of poisoning, although it had not itself been bitten and had been suckled by its mother only once since the bite."

Prognosis.

Prognosis varies with the age of the patient, it is very bad in children under 3 years of age and improves with increase in age. The virulence of the different types of scorpion is being worked out at present. Convulsions and unconsciousness are of evil omen especially in children. Severe shock with profuse cold sweats, fast thready pulse, subnormal temperature, is bad. The prognosis should always be guarded in children, for too often cases recover from the initial severe shock and appear much improved, and then suddenly die of heart failure. As the prognosis primarily depends on the amount of toxin injected into its victim by the scorpion, it necessarily follows that the size of the scorpion, the contents of its sac at the time of stinging, and whether the puncture was

made directly through the skin or whether through clothing, must be taken into consideration.

The time of the year seems to have some effect on the death rate. During the months June to September there were 345 cases with a case mortality of 6.4 per cent. and for the other 8 months 353 cases with a case mortality of 3.1 per cent.

The site of the sting appears to have no influence on the prognosis. The time that elapses after being stung and the onset of the symptoms would seem to have no prognostic importance. The sooner treatment is started after the sting the better the prognosis.

PATHOLOGY.

It is very intriguing to consider that this symptom complex—consisting of (1) The slowing of the heart, (2) Rapid respirations, (3) The hyperglycaemia and glycosuria, (4) The salivation and vomiting, (5) The vasomotor disturbance—is due to the action of the venom on the fourth ventricle, where the different centres are situated.

The morbid anatomy and clinical findings will not permit of such an easy explanation. The hyperglycaemia may be due to stimulation of the sympathetics which acting on the liver converts glycogen into glucose as occurs in Claud Bernard fourth ventricle puncture experiment. In as much as the pancreas is found sometimes to be in a state of haemorrhagic degeneration, we are forced to conclude—until further investigation is carried out—that the supply of insulin may be temporarily interfered with and therefore the glucose in the blood cannot be metabolised. No doubt the conversion of liver glycogen into glucose plays an important part in the production of the hyperglycaemia and glycosuria, for the following reasons :—

1. The sudden onset of severe glycosuria.
2. The equally sudden disappearance of sugar from the urine at times.
3. The appearance and disappearance of the hyperglycaemia is nearly as sudden.

The irregular actions of the heart such as extra systoles, partial heart block, appears to be more likely due to the action of the toxin on the conducting fibres in the heart wall, than to the toxin acting centrally on the vagus.

The salivation and vomiting are no doubt due in part at any rate to the excretion of the toxin by the salivary glands and mucous membrane of the stomach. The submucous haemorrhages and the vomiting of “coffee grounds” material and often pure blood reveal the haemolytic nature of the toxin.

The albuminuria is the result of the toxin on the kidney parenchyma.

The increased respiratory rate was one of the most fascinating features in some of these cases and could not fail to attract the attention of the clinician.

In the absence of a complete biochemical examination of the blood it is difficult to be dogmatic as to etiology but the following observations and deductions are stated for what they are worth.

In some cases acetone and diacetic acid were found in the urine. One cannot help coming to the conclusion that an acidosis develops as in diabetes mellitus.

The explanation given in text-books is, that because some of the "alkaline bases" have to be diverted in order to keep pH concentration of the blood fairly constant, the remainder of these bases in order to remove the CO_2 in the tissues and bring O_2 to them, must make more trips to the lungs, which work at an increased rate to meet the demand.

No doubt the slow pulse rate intensifies and accelerates the action of the lungs and may be physiological. Many of the signs and symptoms occurring in these cases remind one of the condition of acute hypoglycaemia which sometimes occurs after a large injection of insulin. It is true that there is a large amount of sugar suddenly discharged into the blood stream, producing a hyperglycaemia, but, this sugar may be considered to be "raw" and not the same as the "refined" sugar which is normally and slowly manufactured from glycogen. Or to put it more scientifically, the molecular constitution of the glucose which we may call B glucose circulating in the blood and produced rapidly by the action of the scorpion toxin, is quite different from the molecular constitution of the glucose normally produced by the body and which we call A glucose.

Now B glucose cannot be metabolized by the tissues and therefore is excreted in the urine. The tissues of the body are thereby deprived of their sugar supply with the result that symptoms of acute hypoglycaemia follow: namely, signs of shock, pains in the epigastrium, rapid respirations, convulsions, coma and death.

The production of shock varies in time of onset and severity: we may explain the onset of shock as due partly to the relative hypoglycaemia and partly to the action of the toxin on the nervous system, especially the vasomotor system. In adults, suffering from scorpion poisoning, we find that the pulse is slow, the cardiac impulses strong, the diastolic pressure which depends on the integrity of the vasomotor system is very low, with the result that the pulse pressure is high, at times even greater than the diastolic pressure. It seems as though the slowing of the heart is Nature's method of conserving her supply of glucose available to the heart and of keeping the circulation going in spite of the dilatation of the veins and capillaries. It is only when this fails as it frequently does in children, no doubt because their heart muscle cannot accommodate itself or stand the necessary strain, that we get signs of severe shock.

The signs and symptoms of acute abdomen met with in some cases are no doubt due to acute pancreatitis, the result of the toxin acting on the pancreas. The diastatic index of the urine may be 167 as stated in one case.

TREATMENT.

Prophylactic.

It would appear from the fact that many persons pass through several attacks of acute scorpion poisoning that no immunity can be acquired. The following histories illustrate the point :—

1. Stung three times before but never vomited as much as on this occasion.
2. Stung 4 years ago and had to be treated in hospital and again this year and had to be brought to the hospital for treatment.
3. Stung ten times before, was in hospital a year ago and had to be brought again this year.
4. Stung several times before and suffered no ill effects, but on this occasion $\frac{1}{2}$ hour after being stung felt nauseated and soon afterwards began to vomit.
5. Stung by a scorpion and had to be treated at hospital, was stung again 2 days afterwards and had to be re-admitted.

Nevertheless, the inhabitants have great faith in their methods of producing immunity :—(a) Fry a few scorpions and eat them. (b) Smoke the scorpion in a pipe. (c) Place some scorpions in rum for a week or two and then drink the contents.

A method practised in British Guiana is worthy of note as it is a form of vaccination, the " telson " of the scorpion is used as a needle to scarify a small area of the skin and then a small amount of the poison is rubbed on the raw surface.

Serological.

An antiserum has been prepared in some countries but its action is specific to the particular scorpion. CALMETTE'S (1908) announcement that the toxic principles of all different origins including snakes and scorpions are the same, suggested the use of his anticobra serum as a remedy for scorpion poisoning, but this proved a failure.

Local.

(a) Apply a tourniquet immediately over a single bone some distance above the site of the sting, then make an incision at the site and apply potassium permanganate to the wound or apply the cautery.

(b) Another line of treatment is to place a tourniquet just above the site of the puncture and every $\frac{1}{2}$ hour apply another tourniquet higher up the limb and remove the lower one. This method aims at : (1) allowing only a small amount of toxin to enter the circulation at any one time ; (2) keeping the

toxin in contact with the tissue fluids which may "fix" the toxin or render it innocuous. The difficulty with these methods is that by the time the patient reaches the doctor the toxin is already in the general circulation.

If the pain at the site of the sting is severe an injection of novocaine relieves it quickly.

Medical.

Many drugs have been used. One drug, potassium permanganate, was used extensively intravenously in scorpion sting cases, but it has been discontinued. It is used locally for its oxidizing power as in snake bite. It was recommended by Professor DE LACERDA (1881).

More recently 2 c.c. colloidal manganese 0.25 per cent. have been injected intramuscularly and may be repeated in an hour's time if necessary. INNISS (1927), who has much faith in this drug, believes that the drug acts through its manganese content.

Now that the pathology is understood a little better a new line of treatment is being adopted. Glucose 10 per cent. in saline is given rectally, or a 3 per cent. may be given subcutaneously, followed by an injection of insulin which may be repeated if necessary. Blood sugar estimations are carried out whenever possible. Shock is treated in the usual way by warmth, pituitrin, and saline administration. Adrenalin is supposed to check vomiting. When convulsions occur morphia should be injected in large doses even in children. Chloroform is the remedy *par excellence* according to H. V. JACKSON (1910). A few inhalations would render the patient quiet and usually put him to sleep.

Sedatives recommended are ammonium bromide, chloral hydrate and hyocine.

SUMMARY.

Figures showing the incidence of scorpion poisoning and case mortality are presented.

The appearance of glycosuria, hyperglycaemia, acute pancreatitis, pancreatic cysts, and cardiac irregularities are described and typical cases given.

The diagnosis of acute pancreatitis is often missed, because, in the first place it is not easy to diagnose, secondly the acute abdominal pain may be attributed to the vomiting and retching.

Pancreatic cysts appear with dramatic suddenness on some occasions.

It is hoped this paper will stimulate other workers on scorpion sting to look out for the features mentioned above, as they are not found in the literature I have been able to obtain.

CASES.

Case 1.—S. M., age 50.

Brought to my office on 21.1.25 with a history of having been stung by a scorpion on the previous day, and of having convulsions. The heart beat was fast and irregular in force and rhythm. The lungs showed signs of chronic bronchitis; 1/100 grain digitalin was injected and soon afterwards he had a convulsion in my surgery. He was sent to hospital, where convulsions continued at intervals until 23.1.25 when he died.

From this incident I regarded scorpion poisoning as a serious condition and, no doubt, it caused me to take an interest in the subject.

Case 2.—Boy aged 6 years. Convulsive type causing mental deterioration.

In 1928 was seen at 11 p.m. with the history of having been stung by a scorpion at 5 p.m. that afternoon. He had vomited several times at home and then started to get convulsions. He had several typical eclamptic convulsions. After several injections of morphia and not before 2 a.m. was I able to retire to bed with an easy conscience but a heavy heart. The next day he was very drowsy and dull, this I attributed to the injections of morphia, but days passed and his mental dullness persisted. Three months afterwards the father reported to me that his boy previously bright was now dull and stupid.

Case 3.—J. F., age 8 years, schoolgirl. Transient hemiplegia following convulsions due to scorpion sting.

Admitted to hospital 8.30 p.m. on 26.8.34 with the following history of having been stung on her left shoulder at 7.30 p.m. by a scorpion, and had vomited several times.

On admission T. 98.4°, P. 76, R. 28, she was conscious and was still vomiting bilious fluid.

Heart and lungs: nil abnormal. Spleen and liver: not enlarged. Urine: sugar ++, albumin nil.

27.8.34. 2 a.m., T. 101°, P. 100, R. 36, and at 2 a.m. she started to have convulsions, they were generalized and too numerous to count. At 6 a.m.: T. 101.4°, P. 96, R. 38. 10 a.m., T. 102.6°, P. 104, R. 32. She was now in a semi-comatose condition with conjugate deviation of her eyes to the right. 2 p.m., T. 99.4°, P. 96, R. 28. 6 p.m., T. 99°, P. 100, R. 28.

28.8.34. 2 a.m., T. 98.4°, P. 88, R. 20. At 6.30 a.m., flaccid paralysis of the right arm and right leg was noticed. Urine: sugar and albumin, nil.

29.8.34. 8 a.m., some power returning to the paralyzed limbs and the leg was recovering much faster than the arm. It was noticed that the right plantar reflex was extensor.

30.8.34. She was able to walk about, but right upper limb showed marked incoordination: the patient was discharged well 3.9.34.

The routine treatment as stated in the body of this paper was adopted.

Case 4.—H. H., male, aged 40. Convulsions and blindness the result of a scorpion sting. (This case was reported by INNISS, 1927).

The man was stung on the right leg at 11 a.m., while at work in the field, by a scorpion, which he saw and killed. Seen at 2 p.m., vomiting, restless, and feeling very ill. The pulse was 114, respiration 70, deep and full. Urine: sugar + and albumin ++. Colloidal manganese 2 c.c. was injected and his pulse, in 15 minutes, was 100 and respirations 54. 2.35 p.m., patient complained of blindness, $\frac{1}{4}$ grain morphia hydrochloride was injected. 2.40 p.m., patient had a typical eclamptic convulsion lasting 2 minutes. He recovered consciousness, and $\frac{1}{4}$ grain morphia and 2 c.c. colloidal manganese were injected. 3 p.m., had another very violent convulsion, remained deeply unconscious for 20 minutes. After

the fit the pulse became small and rapid and the respirations nearly stopped. 7 mns. adrenalin chloride 1-1,000 and $1\frac{1}{2}$ c.c. manganese were injected. The prognosis appeared very gloomy. 3.30 p.m., consciousness increasing, injected $\frac{1}{4}$ grain morphia. 4.20 p.m., fully conscious and intelligent. Pulse regular and strong. He slept that night. Next morning pulse 76, respirations 21.

For several days he suffered from headache and insomnia, but eventually recovered.

CASES DEVELOPING PANCREATIC CYSTS OR PSEUDO-PANCREATIC CYSTS FOLLOWING SCORPION STINGS.

Case 5.—R. B., age 13, schoolgirl. Developed a pancreatic cyst after being stung by a scorpion.

Admitted 6.6.34 with a history of having been stung by a scorpion on the right big toe at 2 p.m. on 5.6.34. The scorpion was killed by her mother and was carrying young ones on its back. Three-quarters of an hour after being stung she began to vomit and had pain in her epigastrium.

On admission T. 98°, P. 68, R. 20. Vomiting in ward and complaining of epigastric pain. Urine : sugar ++, albumin nil.

7.6.34. 2 p.m., T. 100.4°, P. 104, R. 28. No vomiting but pain still in epigastrium. Urine : sugar and albumin nil. 6 p.m., T. 101°, P. 120, R. 28.

8.6.34. Fairly comfortable. 6 a.m., T. 99.8°, P. 100, R. 28. 6 p.m., T. 99.6°, P. 96, R. 32.

9.6.34. 6 a.m., T. 98°, P. 76, R. 20. Discharged.

Re-admitted on 24.6.34 with a history that on 16.6.34 she began to suffer from pains in the epigastrium and back opposite stomach, and 4 days afterwards she noticed a swelling in her epigastrium. Urine : sugar and albumin nil.

On admission, 24.6.34, T. 98.4°, P. 100, R. 20. A tense smooth tender swelling in epigastrium and extending from umbilicus to the xiphisternum.

27.6.34. Tumour smaller and pain less.

2.7.34. Tumour practically disappeared. Discharged.

Re-admitted on 13.8.34 with a history that the swelling returned a week ago. On admission, urine : sugar and albumin nil. Cystic tumour in epigastrium.

15.8.34. Urine albumin nil.

11.9.34. Operation. Left paramedian incision. Pancreatic cyst revealed. Cyst incised and tube inserted. Small area of omentum showed signs of gelatinous degeneration.

12.9.34. Fluid from cyst was dark brown in colour and contained large quantities of albumin, no sugar, diastase present.

27.9.34. Tube removed.

1.10.34. Discharged.

Case 5 (a).—V. P., age 7, schoolgirl. Developed a pancreatic cyst a few weeks after being stung by a scorpion.

Admitted 6.5.33 with a history of having been stung by a scorpion about 3 weeks ago, and 2 days ago her father noticed a swelling in her abdomen. She suffers from intermittent pains in her abdomen and her mouth fills with saliva frequently.

On admission, T. 98°, P. 126. Heart and lungs : normal. Abdomen : tense rounded smooth fluctuating swelling in epigastric region, extending from umbilicus to xiphisternum. Patient was very anaemic. Urine : nil abnormal.

8.5.33. Tumour appeared larger. Peristalsis waves could be seen passing from left to right. Complained of intermittent pains.

Blood examination : Hb. = 67 per cent ; Lymphocytes = 14 per cent. ; Eosinophil = 10 per cent. ; Large mononuclears = 9 per cent. Stools examined : no ova were found.

23.5.33. Operation. Left paramedian incision above umbilicus. Large cyst presented itself as though springing from the pancreas. The peritoneum was shut off, an incision made in the cyst wall and large tube inserted. Abdomen closed.

24.5.33. T. 97°, P. 102. No vomiting, complaining of abdominal pain. Examination of cyst fluid : albumin + + +, sugar +, cholesterin, red and white cells.

16.7.33. Discharged well.

Case 5 (b).—H. L., age 20.

History : Stung by a scorpion in June, 1936.

On admission there was a large cystic swelling in the epigastric area.

6.10.36. Operation revealed a large unilocular smooth walled cyst. Marsupialization performed.

Examination of fluid : (1) Reaction alkaline ; (2) protein present ; (3) chlorides present ; (4) a trace of urea ; (5) diastase present ; (6) no trypsin ferment.

Case 5 (c).—R.

Stung by a scorpion in January, 1936.

4.4.36. Operated on for a cyst in the epigastric region.

Examination of fluid : (1) Reaction neutral ; (2) large quantities of proteins ; (3) diastase present ; (4) no sugar ; (5) no organisms on smear or culture.

Case 5 (d).—S., age 15 years, male.

Admitted 10.25 a.m., 23.10.37. History : Stung by a black scorpion on 23.9.37 ; about a week afterwards a swelling appeared in his abdomen. This swelling has been increasing in size and causing much pain.

On admission there was a large cystic swelling occupying the epigastric region, size 5½ in. × 7½ in.

26.10.37. Ether and oxygen. Marsupialization of pancreatic cyst performed.

Cyst Fluid.

Quantity : 2 pints.

Colour : brown.

Reaction : alkaline.

Proteins : +.

Chlorides : +.

Trypsin present.

Tryptic activity — 1.

Diastase present.

Microscopic Examination.

Epithelial cells. Red cells. Fibrin threads.

Blood.

Red cells : 4,500,000.

White cells : 8,918.

Hb. : 75.9 per cent.

Neutrophils : 80 per cent.

Eosinophils : 4 "

Small lymphocytes : 8 per cent.

Large " 4 "

Mast cells : 1 per cent.

Large hyaline : 3 per cent.

Sugar Tolerance.

Specimen : Blood : 0.070 per cent. ; Urine : no sugar.

50 grammes glucose given by mouth :

½ hour after : 0.154 per cent. ; no sugar.

2 hours after : 0.076 per cent. ; a trace of sugar.

Diastatic index : 167 units.

CASES WITH NOTES ON THE EXAMINATION OF BLOOD AND URINE.

Case 6.—P. F., age 21.

Admitted 14.9.34 at 11.10 a.m. with a history of having been stung by a scorpion on her left shoulder at 8 a.m. Vomited several times greenish fluid at home. Had been stung three times previously but never suffered as much as on this occasion.

On admission, T. 98°, P. 60, R. 48. Heart and lungs : nil. Urine : sugar + + +, albumin nil. Salivating and vomiting in ward. 6 p.m., T. 98°, P. 72, R. 32.

Laboratory report :—Blood : 12.30 p.m., sugar 0.26 per cent.

 " 12.55 p.m., " 0.24 "

 " 1.50 p.m., " 0.19 "

Urine : 11.45 a.m., " 2.0 "

 " 12.30 p.m., " 1.7 "

15.9.34. T. 98°, P. 72, R. 32. Urine : no sugar or albumin present. Discharged.

Case 6 (a).—L., age 15, male.

Admitted 1.55 p.m., 18.9.34. History : stung while working on a cane field at 11 a.m. on the fourth toe of left foot, and began to vomit at noon. Was stung 2 months previously but only suffered from salivation.

On admission : T. 98°, P. 68, R. 24. Pulse full and regular. Heart : forcible beats. Lungs : nil abnormal. Alae nasi moving rapidly. Complaining of pains in epigastrium. Salivating profusely.

Urine examination :—2.30 p.m., sugar 3.6 per cent., no diacetic acid, no acetone.

 7.0 p.m., " 3.6 " " "

 9.0 p.m., " 1.6 " " "

 12 midn't, " nil, doubtful " "

19.9.34. 6.0 a.m., " nil, diacetic acid present, trace of acetone.

Case 6 (b).—E. P., age 9, schoolgirl.

Admitted 6.30 a.m., 24.2.37. History : Stung by a scorpion on her left arm and shoulder and right thumb at 4.50 a.m., 24.2.37. She vomited twice on her way to hospital, complained of pains in epigastrium. On admission : T. 97.2°, P. 92, R. 72. Heart : very irregular, dropped beats and extra systoles. Lungs : nil. Breathing very fast. Alimentary system : salivating, epigastrium very tender, also liver which was slightly enlarged. Spleen : enlarged. Central nervous system : nil abnormal to note. Headache very troublesome. Blood pressure : 140/75. Vomited several times.

Between 12.30 p.m. and 4.25 p.m. she had seventeen convulsions. Nature of convulsions :—

1. She regained consciousness soon after fit was over.
2. They were generalized, starting frequently in the left upper limb.
3. Duration varied from $\frac{1}{2}$ minute to 4 minutes.
4. She did not bite her tongue or foam at the mouth.

Treatment.—Four injections of morphia $\frac{1}{8}$ grain each ; potassium bromide and chloral ; glucose rectally and per mouth.

25.2.37. She complained of headache and hunger. Blood pressure 95/70. Heart : regular.

1.3.37. Discharged well.

Blood and Urine Examinations :—

Blood	11.15 a.m.,	sugar	0.230	per cent.	
"	11.45 a.m.,	"	0.208	"	
"	12.15 p.m.,	"	0.158	"	Urea, 0.027 per cent.
"	1.20 p.m.,	"	0.130	"	
"	2.30 p.m.,	"	0.98	"	
"	3.30 p.m.,	"	0.84	"	Chloride, 0.496 per cent. as NaCl.
Urine,	10.30 a.m.,	"	2.0	"	
"	11.45 a.m.,	"	1.2	"	Albumin + + +.
"	12.15 p.m.,	"	trace.	"	+ +.
"	1.40 p.m.,	"	"	"	+
"	2.30 p.m.,	"	nil	"	trace.

Case 7.—R., female, age 11 years. A case of "dystonia musculorum deformans" or torsion spasm precipitated by scorpion sting.

Admitted 4.10.33 with the following history : that she was quite well until 4.9.33. She was stung by a scorpion that day, after which she vomited and at 10 p.m. began to get convulsions but did not lose consciousness. She was taken to a district hospital the same evening and remained there 19 days, then removed from hospital as her condition did not improve, and while at home her body became twisted. She was then brought to the hospital at Port of Spain. Notes at the hospital were as follows :—

Admitted 4.10.33. Temperature 105° F., and having convulsions. An injection of quinine was given and the temperature dropped. There was paralysis of the left side of the body. On admission on 4.10.33 examination revealed : heart and lungs : nil ; liver and spleen : not enlarged, somewhat anaemic. She was quite intelligent and bright mentally. There was extreme retraction of the head and hyperextension of the spine, especially in the lumbar region. Opisthotonus and pleurosthotonus of the right side of the body. The right lower limb was extended and kept rigid. The left lower limb was flexed at the knee with foot dorsi flexed. Waist acutely flexed. Right upper limb adducted flexed at elbow and wrist. Every few seconds there were spasmodic contractions of the whole body. The muscles were never completely relaxed and readily contracted on the slightest stimulation. Babinski was positive.

Blood Examination : Polymorphs 54 per cent. ; Large mononuclears 4.2 per cent. ; eosin 20 per cent. ; Large lymphocytes 2.3 per cent. ; Small lymphocytes 19.2 per cent.

Urine : no casts, no blood, pus cells and Gram negative bacilli.

Wasserman : positive + +.

Blood calcium : 6.10.33, 10.7 mg. per 100 c.c. ; 9.10.33, 9.8 mg. per 100 c.c.

Stools : contained ova of *Ankylostoma*, *Trichocephalus dispar* and *Ascaris*. The patient was treated for the worms with chenopodium.

One of the characteristics of the condition was that she would cry out loudly, especially at nights. She was quite conscious of making the noise but was unable to control herself. This necessitated a hypnotic to procure for her and the other patients some sleep. She had to be fed on liquids and very slowly for swallowing was difficult. Her sphincters and sensation were normal. Fright or excitement aggravated and intensified the muscular contractions.

Case 8.—J. J., age 8 years showing signs and symptoms of acute pancreatitis.

History : Stung on the left thumb 2.10.37.

On admission to hospital at 9 a.m. she was sweating profusely and vomiting frequently. She complained of much abdominal pain. T. 98°, P. 100, R. 34.

On examination : Heart and lungs : nil abnormal to note. Abdomen : very tender.

3.10.37. Abdomen distended, tympanitic and very tender especially in epigastric region. 2 p.m., T. 100.4°, P. 120, R. 30.

4.10.37. 6 a.m., T. 100.6°, P. 148, R. 36. Diastatic index urine = 67 ; Blood: R.B.C. = 4,370,000; W.B.C. = 14,027; Hb. = 78.6 per cent.; Differential : neutrophils 80 per cent., small lymphocytes 8 per cent., large lymphocytes 9 per cent., large hyaline 3 per cent. 10 p.m., T. 100.6°, P. 140, R. 32.

5.10.37. 6 a.m., T. 98°, P. 120, R. 32. Abdomen less distended. Patient states that the abdomen is less painful. 2 p.m., T. 100.2°, P. 136, R. 36.

6.10.37. 6 a.m., T. 97.4°, P. 108, R. 24. Patient made an uninterrupted recovery.

REFERENCES.

- BAERG, W. I. (1929). *Trans. 4th Int. Congr. Ent.*, Ithaca, N.Y., 2, 418.
 BOURNE, A. G. (1887). *Proc. roy. Soc.*, 42, 17.
 BYAM, W. & ARCHIBALD, R. G. (1923). *The Practice of Medicine in the Tropics*, Vol. 3, p. 2533. London : Henry Frowde and Hodder & Stoughton.
 CALMETTE, A. (1908). *Venoms, Venomous Animals and Anti-venomous Serum-therapeutics*. London : John Bale, Sons and Danielsson, Ltd.
 DE LACERDA. (1881, a). *C. R. Acad. Sci. Paris*, 92, 468.
 ———. (1881b). *Ibid.*, 93, 466.
 FRANCIS & FAYRER. (1868). *Indian Annals of Medical Science*.
 INNISS, K. U. A. (1927). *J. Port-of-Spain med. Soc.*, p. 176.
 JACKSON, H. V. (1910). *Interst. med. J.*, 17, 485.
 KUBOTA, SEIKO. (1918). *J. Pharmacol.*, 11, 379, 447.
 KYES, P. (1903). *Berl. klin. Wschr.*, 40, 21, 57, 82.
 SANTA MARIA, CARLOS. (1893). *El Primer Congreso Medico Mexicano*, pp. 1-12.
 STITT, A. B. (1923). *Practical Bacteriology, Blood Work and Animal Parasitology*, 7th Ed., p. 536. London : H. K. Lewis & Co., Ltd.
 TODD, C. (1909). *J. Hyg. Camb.*, 9, 69.

THE CEREBROSPINAL FLUID OF PATIENTS SUFFERING FROM THE CHINESE STRAIN OF RELAPSING FEVER.

BY

HUEI-LAN CHUNG, M.D.,

From the Department of Medicine, Peiping Union Medical College, Peiping, China.

There are a few reports concerning observations on the cerebrospinal fluid of patients suffering from either the European or the African variety of relapsing fever. The present communication deals with the cerebrospinal fluid findings of the victims of that disease in China, besides recording an unusual phenomenon, namely, the exceptionally high incidence of transient but clear-cut positive Wassermann reaction of the cerebrospinal fluid of Chinese relapsing fever patients.

MATERIAL.

Altogether the cerebrospinal fluids of 35 patients with relapsing fever were studied. Of the 35 patients, 9 had a positive blood Wassermann reaction and one of the 9 also had a positive cerebrospinal fluid Wassermann reaction. As these 9 patients were considered to have syphilis, they are not included for analysis here (except one whose cerebrospinal fluid had been inoculated into a squirrel). Hence the present report deals only with the findings of 26 patients. Of these 26 patients, 9 had 1, 10 had 2, 6 had 3, and 1 had 4 examinations of the cerebrospinal fluid, the first specimen of which was obtained when the blood contained numerous spirochaetes, except in 5 cases in which lumbar puncture was done during crisis or remission.

METHOD.

The technique of lumbar puncture is so well known that it requires no description here. The pressure of the cerebrospinal fluid was noted, and care was taken to ascertain whether or not there was any obstruction to the flow of the fluid. The fluid was collected aseptically in a sterile test tube for study. The colour and transparency of the fluid were noted and the cellular elements were counted. To determine whether or not there was any increase in the proteins, the fluid was subjected to Pandy and Nonne tests. In a few instances, the total proteins in the fluid were determined quantitatively, but the results

TABLE I.
THE CEREBROSPINAL FLUID IN TWENTY-SIX PATIENTS WITH RELAPSING FEVER.

Case No.	Age : Sex.	Date of Lumbar Puncture.	Lumbar puncture in Relation to Treatment.	Duration of Illness in Days.	Patient's Rectal Temp.	S. recurrentis in Patient's Blood.	Cerebrospinal Fluid.							Colloidal Gold Curve.†
							Pressure in mm. H ₂ O.	Appearance.	R.B.C. per c.mm.	W.B.C. per c.mm.	Pandy.	Nonne.	Kolmer's Wassermann.	
1	22 M.	May 16	Before N.A.B.	4	39.2	+	70	Normal	0	4	0	0	444--	Normal
		" 18	After N.A.B.		37.2	0	150	"	0	2	0	0	144--	"
		" 25			37.6	0		Slightly hazy	740 (Trauma)	2	0	0	-----	"
		" 29			37.7	0	125	Normal	6	0	0	0	-----	"
2	14 M.	" 12	Before N.A.B.	14	40.6	+	110	"	0	4	0	0	-21--	"
		" 18	After N.A.B.		37.3	0	160	"	0	12	0	0	-----	"
		" 30			37.4	0	190	"	0	8	0	0	-----	"
3	16 M.	" 25	Before N.A.B.	4	39.8	+	170	"	0	0	0	0	445--	"
		" 29	After N.A.B.		37.0	0		Slightly pinkish	6,400 (Trauma)	18	T	T	-----	"
		June 4			37.6	0	150	Xanthochromic	48	12	T	T	-----	"
4*	15 M.	Apr. 22	Not treatment	15			130	Normal	0	4	0	0	-----	"
		May 29	"		37.2	0	140	"	0	4	0	0	-----	"
		June 3	"		37.7	0	190	"	0	0	0	0	-----	"
5	17 M.	May 19	Before N.A.B.	3	40.1	+	70	"	0	6	0	0	-44--	"
		" 26	After N.A.B.		37.4	0	150	"	5	0	0	0	-----	"
		" 29			37.4	0	70	"	160	10	0	0	-----	"

6	33 M.	"	12	16 days after N.A.B.	22	38.4	0	116	Normal	32	72 Lym.	+	+	-----	Normal
		"	25 June 1			38.4 38.0	0 0	150	" "	2 0	5 0	T 0	T 0	----- -----	" "
7*	25 M.	Apr. 10	Before N.A.B.	4		40.6	+	100	"	0	2	0	0	-44±	"
		April 24	Before			37.4	0	120	Slightly pinkish	1,350 (Trauma)	12	T	0	-----	"
		May 25	After N.A.B.			37.2	0	120	Normal	0	0	0	0	-----	"
8	19 M.	"	Before N.A.B.	12		39.8	+	120	"	320	32	T	0	244±	"
		"	After N.A.B.			37.4	0	190	"	5	0	0	0	-----	"
9	33 M.	Apr. 14	Before N.A.B.	8		40.0	+	130	"	0	4	T	0	-32--	"
		"	After N.A.B.			37.4	0		"	12	82	0	0	-----	"
10	46 M.	May 26		5 days before relaps- ing fever	2	37.0 41.0	0 +	160 30	" "	20 0	0 12	0 0	0 0	----- -----	Normal
11	30 M.	Apr. 30	Before N.A.B.	8		38.0	+		Icteric	0	4	0	0	-44±	"
		May 18	After N.A.B.			37.2	0	170	Normal	0	35	T	0	-----	"
12	34 M.	"	Before N.A.B.	5		40.3	+	150	"	6	2	0	0	-31±	"
		"	After N.A.B.			37.2	0	190	"	25	2	0	0	-----	"

TABLE I—(continued).

Case No.	Age: Sex.	Date of Lumbar Puncture.	Lumbar puncture in Relation to Treatment.	Duration of Illness in Days.	Patient's Rectal Temp. C.	S. recurrentis in Patient's Blood.	Cerebrospinal Fluid.							
							Pressure in mm. H ₂ O.	Appearance.	R.B.C. per c.mm.	W.B.C. per c.mm.	Fandy.	Nonne.	Kolmer's Wassermann.	Colloidal Gold Curve.†
13	14 M.	July 22	Before N.A.B.	4	39.8	+	150	Normal	13	32	0	0	-----	Normal
		" 26	After N.A.B.		37.4	0	122	"	0	4	0	0	-----	"
14	16 M.	" 1	Before N.A.B.	24	40.6	+	140	"	0	6	0	0	-----	"
		" 3	After N.A.B.		36.4	0	114	"	12	2	0	0	-----	"
15	14 M.	" 8	Before N.A.B.	3	39.4	+	150	"	0	5	0	0	-----	"
		" 15	After N.A.B.		37.2	0	125	"	0	20	0	0	-----	"
16	15 M.	May 26	Before N.A.B.	4	39.0	+	110	"	0	5	0	0	-----	"
		" 30	After N.A.B.		37.4	0	130	"	0	8	0	0	-----	"
17	15 M.	" 21	Before N.A.B.	24	40.2	+	105	"	0	2	0	0	±3----	"
		" 26	5 days after N.A.B.		36.8	0								

18	34 M.	Mar. 3	4 days after N.A.B.	30 ±	37.2	0	120	Normal	0	2	+	0	000122100
19	38 M.	"	11	11	37.2	0	?	"	0	11	0	0	Normal
20*	30 M.	Apr. 13	Before N.A.B.	11	40.3	+	90						
21	19 M.	May 29	Before N.A.B.	5	39.6	+	211		0	0	0	0	
22	13 M.	" 28	Before N.A.B.	49	39.3	+	142	"	0	2	0	0	"
23	20 M.	Apr. 28	Before N.A.B.	2	39.0	+	212	"	0	4	0	0	"
24*	29 M.	May 8	Before N.A.B.	8	38.2	+	160	"	196	4	0	0	"
25*	28 M.	Apr. 6	Before N.A.B.	20	38.8	+	60	"	0	4	0	0	"
26	47 M.	June 6	5 days after N.A.B.	13	37.2	0	60	"	36	20	0	0	"
								"	0	6	0	0	"
													"

Note.—Blood Wassermann and Kline tests were negative in all cases.
 * Cerebrospinal fluid was examined under dark-field microscope and also inoculated into squirrels. See Table II.
 † The writer is indebted to the Department of Bacteriology and Immunology for the results of the Wassermann and colloidal gold tests included in this table.

are not included here as they were within normal limits. Without exception specimens of the fluid were subjected to Wassermann and colloidal gold tests to determine their significance in relapsing fever. In order to determine the infectivity of the fluid, 7 specimens from 6 patients (Table II) were injected into splenectomized normal squirrels. Six of these 7 specimens were also centrifuged and their sediments were examined under the dark-field microscope for spirochaetes. When a lumbar puncture was done, a specimen of blood from the patient was obtained for Wassermann and Kline tests.

RESULTS.

I.—PHYSICAL PROPERTIES OF CEREBROSPINAL FLUID.

(a) *The pressure of the cerebrospinal fluid* was determined 44 times in 26 patients. It varied from 150-190 mm. of water in 16 instances and exceeded 210 mm. in two instances. In the remaining 26 instances it fluctuated between 30 and 140 mm.

(b) *The appearance of the cerebrospinal fluid* was always transparent, clear and colourless except in three instances in which it was hazy or pinkish due to haemorrhage from trauma during the puncture, in one instance in which it was icteric because the patient had jaundice, and in another instance in which it was xanthochromic because of haemorrhage from a previous puncture.

(c) *The leucocytes* in the cerebrospinal fluid were counted in 50 specimens from 26 patients. Their number varied from 8 to 20 per c.mm. in 16 specimens, from 32 to 82 in 4 specimens, and from zero to 6 in the remaining 34 specimens. The predominating white cell in all instances in which a differential count was done was the lymphocyte.

(d) *The erythrocytes* in the cerebrospinal fluid were counted in 50 specimens. The count, which was zero in 31 specimens, varied from 2 to 25 per c.mm. in 10, from 30 to 50 in 3, from 100 to 400 in 3, and from 600 to 7,000 in 3 specimens. In the instances in which the cerebrospinal fluid contained considerable numbers of erythrocytes trauma was found to be the cause.

II.—CHEMICAL TESTS.

(a) *Pandy's and Nonne's tests* were performed on 50 specimens from 26 patients. Pandy's test was faintly positive in 8 specimens of which 4 showed increased R.B.C. due to trauma from puncture. Nonne's test was positive in 4 specimens, of which 2 showed increased R.B.C. due to trauma from puncture.

III.—SEROLOGICAL REACTIONS.

(a) *The Wassermann test* was done on 50 specimens from 26 patients. Of 16 patients whose cerebrospinal fluid was subjected to the Wassermann test from 2 to 4 times, 9 showed a transient but clear-cut positive reaction which

THE INFECTIVITY OF THE CEREBROSPINAL FLUID OF PATIENTS SUFFERING FROM THE CHINESE STRAIN OF RELAPSING FEVER.

TABLE II.

Case No.	Date of Examination.	Duration of Patient's Illness.	Patient's Temperature in ° C.	<i>S. recurrentis</i> in Blood (Dark-field).	<i>S. recurrentis</i> in C.S.F. (Dark-field).	Dose and Route.	Squirrel No.	<i>S. recurrentis</i> in Blood.
25*	April 6	21 days; 2nd day of 2nd attack	38.8	+	0	2 c.c. I.P. 1 c.c. I.V.	171	
7*	" 10	21 days; 2nd day of 2nd attack	40.6	+	Not examined	Ditto	177	+- (10th day)
20	" 13	11 days; 1st attack	38.5	+	0	Ditto	171	+- (10th day)
27**	" 14	5 days; 1st attack	39.8	+	0	Ditto	181	+
24*	May 8	8 days; 1st attack	38.1	+	0	Ditto	183	+
4*	Apr. 22	23 days	38.2	0	0	Ditto	188	+
	June 3	Recovered		0	0	Ditto	214	0

* See Table I for details.

** This patient had a positive blood Wassermann reaction (due to syphilis or relapsing fever?). Hence his spinal fluid findings were not included in Table I.

I.P. = Intraperitoneal.

I.V. = Intravenous.

C.S.F. = Cerebrospinal fluid.

suddenly became completely negative 4 to 18 days subsequently. Of the 10 patients whose cerebrospinal fluid was subjected to the test only once, 2 gave a positive reaction.

With every Wassermann test of the cerebrospinal fluid, Wassermann and Kline tests were done on the blood from the patient at the same time. The reactions of the blood were always negative. In several instances a Kahn test of the blood was also performed which showed a transient positive reaction in one case (Case 17).

(b) *The colloidal gold curve test* was performed on 50 specimens from 26 patients. In every instance the test was uniformly negative, except in Case 19 in which the test might be considered to have given a slightly abnormal curve; see Table I.

IV.—SPIROCHAETES IN AND INFECTIVITY OF CEREBROSPINAL FLUID.

Altogether 7 specimens from 6 patients were studied. Six of these which were examined under the dark field microscope showed no spirochaetes. When inoculated into normal but splenectomized squirrels 5 of the 7 specimens caused relapsing fever (see Table II). One of the 2 specimens which failed to produce infection in a squirrel was obtained when the patient had no fever (spontaneous recovery).

DISCUSSION.

As seen in Table I, in many instances the leucocytes in the cerebrospinal fluid were increased and occasionally the pressure of the fluid was augmented. These changes, although not very marked, seem to indicate that in relapsing fever the central nervous system is more or less affected, at least in some cases. PETZETAKIS (1916) and CAWADIAS (1921) observed increased cerebrospinal fluid pressure in cases of relapsing fever showing a syndrome not unlike that of meningo-encephalitis, but the leucocytes in the cerebrospinal fluid in their series were not increased. BABES (1916) reported haemorrhagic meningitis in relapsing fever. The fact that the spinal fluid is infectious, as shown by squirrel inoculation in our series (see Table II), means that *Spirochaeta recurrentis* actually invades the central nervous system. Indeed, as early as 1907, SOULIE reported the presence of numerous spirochaetes (species not determined; *S. duttoni* or *S. obermeieri*?) in the cerebrospinal fluid of a patient showing meningeal symptoms during relapsing fever. The cells in the fluid were chiefly lymphocytes but occasionally polynuclear leucocytes. In 1914, BRAULT and MONTPELLIER recovered *S. duttoni* from 2 of the 20 specimens of the cerebrospinal fluid from 20 patients subjected to a lumbar puncture. Similar observations were made by WIENER (1917) on cases of relapsing fever in Albany, by LEBOEUF and GAMBIER (1918) on cases of relapsing fever in the Congo, and by NITZESCU (1921) on patients suffering from *S. obermeieri*. In 1919 PLAUT and STEINER

found that the cerebrospinal fluid of 5 of 10 patients suffering from general paralysis of the insane, under treatment with the African variety of relapsing fever (*S. duttoni*), was capable of producing infection (relapsing fever) in susceptible animals and remained infectious, in one instance as long as 69 days after the therapeutic infection, when the patient's blood was already non-infective. Upon careful examination of one human brain by JAHNEL (1926) and another by JAHNEL and LUCKSCH (1927), *S. duttoni* and *S. obermeieri* respectively were found in the parenchyma of the two brains examined. Besides clinical observations, many observers including BUSCHKE and KROÓ (1923), TOMIOKA (1924), JOHANNESSEN (1926), KRITSCHESKI (1927), PRIGGE and ROTHERMUNDT (1928), and SEYFARTH, SARAFOFF and KUSSITASSEFF (1925) brought forth experimental evidence to show the involvement of, and the persistence of infection in, the brains of infected susceptible animals like rats and mice, and concluded that the organisms were by no means exclusively blood parasites. Obviously *S. duttoni* is more neurotropic than *S. obermeieri*.

The most striking finding in our series, however, is the unusually high incidence of transient but definitely positive Wassermann reactions as shown in Table I. This has never been observed before. Without further investigation we hesitate to offer any explanation at present, although it appears certain that it is related to the relapsing fever infection, particularly in view of the fact that the blood of patients with Chinese relapsing fever not rarely gave a false positive Wassermann, Kahn, or Kline reaction as shown by T'UNG and CHUNG (1937). None of the 26 patients in the present series had any history or physical evidence of syphilis. The Wassermann and Kline reactions of their blood were uniformly negative.

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS.

1. The cerebrospinal fluids of 26 patients with relapsing fever have been studied.
2. The physical properties of these fluids were normal in most instances. In some instances there was a definite increase in the leucocyte counts, chiefly in lymphocytes, and in a few instances the pressure of the fluid was somewhat augmented.
3. Pandy's and Nonne's tests were weakly positive in several instances, but the colloidal gold test was negative, except in one instance in which it was slightly abnormal.
4. Of 16 patients whose cerebrospinal fluid was subjected to the Wassermann test from 2 to 4 times, 9 showed a transient but clear-cut positive reaction which suddenly became completely negative 1 to 3 weeks later. Of the 10 patients whose cerebrospinal fluid was tested only once, 2 gave a positive Wassermann reaction.

5. The transient positive Wassermann reactions of the cerebrospinal fluid are thought to be related to the relapsing fever, from which the patients were suffering.

6. Seven specimens of cerebrospinal fluid from 6 relapsing fever patients were inoculated into 7 squirrels, of which 5 developed relapsing fever.

REFERENCES.

- BABES, V. (1916). Hémorragies méningées et autres manifestations hémorragiques dans la fièvre récurrente. *C. R. Soc. Biol. Paris*, 79, 855-857.
- BRAULT, J. & MONTPELLIER, J. (1914). Note sur la présence du spirille de la fièvre récurrente Nord-Africaine, dans quelques liquides et excréta de l'économie. *Bull. Soc. Path. exot.*, 7, 472-473.
- BUSCHKE, A. & KROB, H. (1923). Spinale Strangdegeneration nach experimenteller Rekurrens. *Dtsch. med. Wschr.*, 49, 1435-1436.
- CAWADIAS, L. (1921). Le syndrome méningo-encéphalique au cours de la fièvre récurrente. *Bull. Soc. méd. Hôp. Paris*, 45, 1107-1110.
- JAHNEL, F. (1926). Ueber das Vorkommen der *Spirochaeta duttoni* im Hirngewebe des Menschen (Paralytiker) während der Rekurrensinfektion. *Münch. med. Wschr.*, 73, No. 48, 2015-2016.
- JAHNEL, F. & LUCKSCH, F. (1927). Ueber das Vorkommen der *Spirochaeta obermeieri* in der Hirnsubstanz des Menschen. *Med. Klinik.*, 23, 2003-2004.
- JOHANNESSEN, F. (1926). Rekurrensspirochäten und Salvarsan. *Ibid.*, 22, 1614.
- KRITSCHESKI, J. L. (1927). Die experimentellen Grundlagen der Lehre von den neurotropen und somatropen Rassen der Spirochäten. *Klin. Wschr.*, 6, 1370-1374.
- LEBOEUF, A. & GAMBIER, A. (1918). Sur deux cas de spirochétose humaine à Brazzaville (Moyen Congo). *Bull. Soc. Path. exot.*, 11, 359-364.
- NITZESCU, J. J. (1921). Le liquide céphalorachidien dans la fièvre récurrente. *C. R. Soc. Biol. Paris*, 84, 1037-1038.
- PETZETAKIS. (1916). Le syndrome méningé au cours de la fièvre récurrente, ses rapports avec l'augmentation de la pression du liquide céphalorachidien. Reaction méningée puriforme aseptique. *Bull. Acad. Méd. Paris*, 76, 253-255.
- PLAUT, F. & STEINER, G. (1920). Über das Auftreten von Spirosomen und entzündlichen Veränderungen im Liquor bei Rekurrenskranken. *Arch. Schiffs- u. Tropenhyg.*, 24, 33-48.
- PRIGGE, R. & ROTHERMUNDT, M. (1928). Experimentelle Untersuchungen über die Persistenz der Rekurrensspirochäten im Gehirn der Mäuse. *Z. Hyg. InfektKr.*, 108, 398-410.
- SEYFARTH, C., SARAFOFF, D. & KUSSITASSEFF, K. (1925). Experimentelle Untersuchungen über die Züchtung der Rückfallfieberspirochäten und über deren Verhalten im Gewebe. *Beih. Arch. Schiffs- u. Tropenhyg.*, 29, 344-358.
- SOUlié, H. (1907). Bactériologie et cytologie du liquide céphalorachidien de deux cas de fièvre récurrente. *C. R. Soc. Biol. Paris*, 63, 249-250.
- TOMIOKA, Y. (1924). Experimenteller Beitrag zur Frage der Immunität bei Recurrens und ihrer Beeinflussung durch die Salvarsantherapie. *Zbl. Bakt. Abt. I. Orig.*, 92, 41-61.
- T'UNG, T. & CHUNG, H. L. The Kolmer's Wassermann, Kahn and Kline tests in relapsing fever. *Chin. med. J.*, December, 1937. Supplement 2. *In press.*
- WIENER, E. (1917). Atypische Rekurrensfälle, *Arch. Schiffs- u. Tropenhyg.*, 21, 237-266.

THE DEATH RATE AND EPIDEMIOLOGY OF SMALLPOX IN HONGKONG.

BY

K. H. UTTLEY, M.A., M.D. (CAMB.), D.T.M. & H.,
Medical Officer, Hongkong.

INTRODUCTION.

This paper will be concerned with smallpox as it occurred in Hongkong, from 1897 to 1936 inclusive, among the resident urban Chinese of the Colony. The data have been collected by a personal inspection of all death registrations occurring during the period in question among the city dwellers of Victoria and Kowloon. For information about the structure of the urban Chinese population of the Colony reference must be made to my previous papers, UTTLEY (1938*a* and 1938*b*) dealing with death rates from tuberculosis, and from all causes, where the material will be found for comparing Hongkong statistics with those from other places. It is not necessary to repeat it here.

My data will be considered under the following headings :—

- (a) Standardized and crude death rates for Hongkong.
- (b) Age incidence of deaths.
- (c) Seasonal mortality.
- (d) Vaccination and its effect on the age incidence of deaths.
- (e) Coefficients of correlation between certain climatic factors and the monthly mortality.
- (f) A comparison of (e) with what has been found to apply to India.
- (g) Conclusions and summary.

(a) STANDARDIZED AND CRUDE DEATH RATES FOR HONGKONG.

Smallpox has been present in Hongkong during the British occupation for as long as there are records. Early records are, however, incomplete and I propose to commence with the year 1897, because it was not until that year

that a census was taken which was sufficiently accurate to enable the epidemiologist to calculate standardized death rates. I have calculated the standardized death rate for each census year of the period under discussion, basing my calculations on the standard British population of 1901, using the direct method. For intercensal years I have given the crude rate only, because the population of the urban areas of the Colony is too shifting in its nature to permit of a standardized rate being calculated for intercensal years. Hitherto no attempt to calculate the mortality of the disease has been made other than to state the crude rate for the Colony as a whole, and this includes Europeans, Eurasians, many thousands of inhabitants of junks and sampans and country folk, besides the urban Chinese discussed in this paper.*

Table I shows the death rates from smallpox. It will be seen that in the census years, where standardized rates can be calculated, four out of the six years show a female rate exceeding the male rate in the proportion of three females to two males, and that in the other two years, the male rate has exceeded the female one by three to two. The table also shows that a year with a high mortality is usually succeeded by several years with much lower rates. Smallpox is a compulsorily notifiable disease, but notification is largely ignored. In an average year, such as for instance 1933, 69·3 per cent. of all smallpox cases were notified by the medical officers in charge of the public mortuaries, *i.e.* after death had occurred, and the Director of Medical Services has calculated that over 67 per cent. of all cases of smallpox avoid the notice of the Sanitary Authority and are never notified (WELLINGTON, 1933). A major reason for this is that Chinese do not consider smallpox to be a serious disease, and are allowed to treat the condition by native herbalist methods. The degree of success of these methods is shown by the comparative statistics of a hospital run on native lines, where in 21 years 1,249 cases were treated for smallpox with a mortality of 46·8 per cent., whereas the Government Infectious Fevers Hospital during the same years dealt with 288 cases with a mortality of 14·2 per cent. (WELLINGTON, 1932).†

(b) AGE INCIDENCE OF DEATHS.

Table II shows the deaths at ages per 1,000 living at ages; British figures for 1901 have been added for comparison. For the first five census years the mortality fell upon the younger age groups much more heavily than it did in England and Wales, owing to the relatively large numbers of vaccinated children in the latter country.

* The disease as met with in Hongkong has always been of the variola major form. It is true that chickenpox is sometimes mistaken for smallpox, but the mortality from the former is negligible, and any error so introduced, may for the purpose of this paper be overlooked.

† N.B.—The standard error of the difference between these two percentages is 2·495.

TABLE 1.

SMALLPOX IN HONGKONG, 1897 TO 1936. STANDARDIZED AND CRUDE DEATH RATES.

Standardized death rates.				Crude death rates.	Urban population.
Year.	Males.	Females.	Persons.	Persons.	
1897	1.42	2.33	1.82	1.05	163,075
1898				0.44	
1899				0.09	
1900				0.08	
1901	0.37	0.51	0.44	0.23	220,319
1902				0.16	
1903				0.11	
1904				0.12	
1905				0.06	
1906	0.79	0.54	0.66	0.37	239,852
1907				0.79	
1908				1.13	
1909				0.05	
1910				0.04	
1911	1.06	1.55	1.31	0.66	286,118
1912				1.05	
1913				0.23	
1914				0.26	
1915				0.06	
1916				1.42	
1917				1.34	
1918				0.05	
1919				0.03	
1920				0.04	
1921	0.39	0.51	0.45	0.34	434,724
1922				0.36	
1923				2.27	
1924				1.51	
1925				0.08	
1926				0.05	
1927				0.20	
1928				0.51	
1929				1.58	
1930				0.37	
1931	0.021	0.014	0.018	0.01	640,746
1932				0.25	
1933				0.68	
1934				0.16	
1935				0.06	
1936				0.01	

Mean crude death rate ... 0.46

Except in 1931, when the figures were too small for accurate comparison, at ages 0 to 4 years, the female rate is always higher than the male one, as in Britain in 1901. At 5 to 9 years of age, the male and female mortality figures, though they vary a good deal from one census year to the next, bear a closer relationship to each other than do the British ones for 1901. In the group aged 15 to 19 years the

TABLE II.

DEATHS FROM SMALLPOX AT AGES PER 1,000 LIVING AT SUCCESSIVE CENSUS YEARS.

(Figures for England and Wales for 1901 given for comparison.)

Age in years.	1897.		1901.		1906.		1911.		1921.		1931.		England and Wales, 1901.	
	M.	F.	M.	F.	M.	F.	M.	F.	M.	F.	M.	F.	M.	F.
0-	6.25	13.50	2.05	3.47	5.70	5.72	7.37	11.39	2.52	3.47	0.15	0.04	0.025	0.034
5-	3.13	3.25	0.40	0.53	0.95	0.72	0.96	1.29	0.52	0.60	—	—	0.017	0.009
10-	1.51	1.62	0.27	0.16	0.13	0.61	0.51	0.41	0.10	0.11	—	0.04	0.008	0.014
15-	0.51	0.52	0.19	—	0.05	0.52	0.09	0.55	0.08	0.19	—	—	0.012	0.008
20-	0.62	0.47	0.11	0.16	0.35	0.26	0.10	0.64	0.16	0.18	0.02	—	0.015	0.013
25-	0.53	—	0.09	0.16	0.06	—	0.11	0.05	0.11	0.03	0.01	0.02	0.035	0.030
35-	0.29	0.29	0.11	—	0.10	0.10	0.14	0.14	0.04	0.04	—	—	0.045	0.029
45-	0.08	0.61	—	—	—	0.17	0.11	0.13	0.04	—	—	—	0.029	0.011
55+	—	—	—	—	—	—	0.11	0.16	—	—	—	—	0.009	0.006
(65+)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0.006	0.001

male rate has been usually much less than the female one, this being the reverse of the British figures for 1901. In each successive male age group from 15 to 34 there is a moderately constant death rate in any one census year (though varying considerably from one census year to the next, depending on the severity of smallpox), which is in marked contrast with the tripling of the rate in England and Wales for the same age groups in 1901. The Hongkong female rate, on the other hand, usually fell steadily from 15 to 34 years of age, again in contrast to the $3\frac{1}{2}$ times increase in the corresponding British rate for 1901. Figures for 35 years of age and over are too small for any deduction to be made from them, though it is of interest to note that except for one year the male rate at ages 35 to 44 has always been the same as the female one.

In considering the age incidence of deaths it is necessary to bear in mind the different composition of the population in Hongkong from that of England and Wales. Details of this are given in my paper, UTTLEY (1938b) on death rates in Hongkong, but briefly it may be said that there was a smaller proportion

of children in the Hongkong population than in the British one until 1921. From then onwards the Hongkong percentage was a fraction higher than the British one. In the working years of life, from 15 to 44 years of age, the percentage has always been much higher in Hongkong than in Britain. This is partly owing to the immigration of able-bodied adults seeking work, partly to the very much shorter expectation of life among Chinese, and partly to the fact that when the Chinese have earned a little money, a certain unknown proportion return to their up-country villages to settle down.

Table III shows the percentage of all deaths from smallpox occurring in each age group for the different intercensal periods, and for the total period 1897 to 1936.

TABLE III.

PERCENTAGE OF ALL DEATHS FROM SMALLPOX OCCURRING IN EACH AGE GROUP, 1897-1936.

Age in years.	1897-1900.			1901-1910.			1911-1920.			1921-1930.			1931-1936.			1897-1936.
	M.	F.	P.	M.	F.	P.	M.	F.	P.	M.	F.	P.	M.	F.	P.	Persons.
0-	5.3	9.8	7.8	5.1	6.7	5.9	10.2	12.0	11.2	13.8	14.9	14.4	15.1	19.5	17.4	12.82
1-	8.3	12.9	10.8	11.7	16.2	13.9	15.7	21.0	18.6	18.7	21.4	20.0	13.5	20.5	17.1	18.41
2-	6.8	17.8	12.9	16.6	24.4	20.5	23.1	25.4	24.4	24.0	23.2	23.6	17.4	13.7	15.5	22.18
3-	5.3	12.3	9.2	11.7	12.6	12.1	11.9	10.2	11.0	12.5	16.5	14.5	10.9	12.2	11.6	12.91
4-	4.5	5.5	5.1	7.8	7.7	7.7	5.3	6.1	5.7	5.8	5.1	5.5	4.6	6.3	5.5	5.76
0-4	30.3	58.3	45.8	53.0	67.4	60.3	66.2	74.8	70.9	74.8	81.2	78.0	61.7	72.2	67.1	72.09
5-	4.5	4.9	4.7	4.7	3.8	4.3	1.9	3.1	2.6	2.8	2.5	2.7	3.4	2.7	3.0	2.92
6-	4.5	5.5	5.1	4.4	4.1	4.3	2.1	1.4	1.7	1.7	1.1	1.4	1.8	2.2	2.0	1.99
7-	5.3	3.7	4.4	0.8	1.8	1.3	1.1	1.1	1.1	0.8	1.7	1.2	0.5	1.7	1.1	1.31
8-	0.8	3.1	2.0	2.9	2.3	2.6	0.3	1.0	0.6	1.3	1.0	1.2	0.8	0.2	0.5	1.16
9-	0.8	1.2	1.0	0.5	—	0.3	0.3	0.8	0.5	0.4	0.3	0.3	—	0.7	0.4	0.40
5-9	15.9	18.4	17.3	13.2	12.1	12.6	5.7	7.3	6.6	6.9	6.6	6.8	6.5	7.6	7.0	7.77
10-	6.8	7.4	7.1	4.2	5.4	4.8	3.4	5.0	4.3	1.9	2.8	2.3	1.6	2.5	2.0	3.20
15-	7.6	8.6	8.1	5.1	4.1	4.6	4.3	2.6	3.4	3.6	1.7	2.6	6.8	2.7	4.6	3.44
20-	12.9	2.4	7.1	5.9	4.1	5.0	5.6	3.8	4.6	4.0	2.5	3.3	9.1	4.9	6.9	4.30
25-	19.7	1.8	9.9	11.1	4.9	8.0	9.0	4.6	6.8	5.8	3.5	4.6	8.6	6.1	7.3	5.97
35-	5.3	1.2	3.1	6.5	1.6	4.0	3.7	1.6	2.6	1.9	1.4	1.7	3.6	3.2	3.4	2.35
45-	1.6	1.8	1.6	0.8	0.3	0.5	1.7	0.2	0.9	0.8	0.3	0.6	1.8	0.7	1.3	0.71
55-	—	—	—	—	—	—	0.2	0.1	0.2	0.1	0.2	0.1	0.3	0.2	0.3	0.13
65-	—	—	—	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.1	—	0.1	—	—	—	—	—	—	0.04
75+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Total	132	163	295	385	390	775	791	932	1,723	1,976	1,924	3,900	384	410	794	7,487

Males.—At ages 0 to 4 there was a steady rise from 1897 to 1930 in the percentage of those dying in this age group, the figure having more than doubled in that time. In the last 6 years however, the figures dropped from 74·8 per cent. to 61·7 per cent. As will be seen later, this fall is due to the intense vaccination campaigns instituted since 1929. In the age group 5 to 9 years, the initial percentage of 15·9 fell to 5·7 in 1911 to 1920, to rise a little since. In the next group there has been a continuous fall. In the groups aged 20 to 34 years, there was a fall until 1930, and then a rise. From 35 to 54 years of age there were irregular fluctuations in the percentage, while at ages above this, there were too few deaths to be able to infer any changes.

Females.—At 0 to 4 years of age the changes were similar to those occurring among males of the same age, but the percentage was consistently higher than in the corresponding male group. At 5 to 19 years, there was a steady fall until 1921-1930, after which there was a rise. In the next age group there was an irregular fluctuation in the figures. At 25 to 44 there was on the whole an irregular rise throughout the period. At 45 to 54 years, the initial figure of 1·8 per cent. fell to a steady low figure of about 0·2 per cent. until the last 6 years, when it rose to 0·7 per cent. There were very few deaths at ages of 55 years and over.

Comparison of male with female mortality.—Until 14 years of age the female rate is higher than the male rate except at 5 to 9 years of age in 1901-1910 and 1911-1920. At higher ages, *i.e.*, during the working years, the male rate almost always exceeds that of females.

This table emphasizes the fact of the heavy mortality from smallpox in the first 5 years of life, amounting to over three-quarters of all smallpox deaths in the 10-year period 1921-1930. In this respect the mortality resembles that which occurred in England in the eighteenth century, before the introduction of vaccination, when the death rate under 5 years was 80 per cent. of all smallpox deaths (McVAIL, 1923).

(c) SEASONAL MORTALITY.

Table IV shows the seasonal mortality from smallpox. As elsewhere in the world, it is essentially a winter and spring disease, but there are sporadic cases throughout the year. Deaths usually begin to be reported in numbers in November, but epidemics are not expected until January, after which they last until the end of April.

It is worth while to point out in this connection a custom of the Chinese of South China, which undoubtedly has an influence on the spread of the disease, and it is that as soon as winter is over, a large proportion of the population take all their winter clothes to the pawnbroker for safe keeping until the beginning of the cold weather. As these clothes are not disinfected, aired or in any way treated for any fomites, but are packed away on shelves, close to others, smallpox infection is probably still present in the garments when they are taken

out of pawn, thus tending to spread the disease when they are worn again. Winter clothes are not changed very often, and as members of the family huddle together at night for warmth, the spread of the disease is further facilitated.

TABLE IV.

AVERAGE MONTHLY AND QUARTERLY MORTALITY FROM SMALLPOX, HONGKONG; 1897-1936.

Month.	Percentage of all smallpox deaths.	Month.	Percentage of all smallpox deaths.
January	17.3	April	14.2
February	17.0	May	7.7
March	15.7	June	4.1
First quarter	... .. 50.0	Second quarter	... .. 26.0
July	1.7	October	2.3
August	1.1	November	5.9
September	0.9	December	12.1
Third quarter	... .. 3.7	Fourth quarter	... .. 20.3

Total smallpox deaths 7,487

(d) VACCINATION AND ITS EFFECT ON THE AGE INCIDENCE OF DEATHS.

Until 1928 there was very little vaccination carried out in the Colony. During the years 1910-1920 there was an average of 15,000 every year. From then until the end of 1927 the average rose somewhat irregularly and slowly. In 1928 the matter was taken up with certain first aid societies and other bodies in order to have annual campaigns to interest the population in the question, with the result that a steady average of well over 300,000 have been vaccinated annually since, equal to $2\frac{1}{2}$ times the population of the Colony. It must be remembered, however, that a large minority of the urban population is constantly travelling to and from Hongkong and China, so that there is always a reservoir of unvaccinated people in the Colony. Chinese do not object to vaccination, on the contrary, they welcome it when they see its advantages, but they object to infants being vaccinated until they have passed their second Chinese New Year. "A child born just after the Chinese New Year is thus 2 years of age before it is vaccinated. In spite of the law requiring children to be vaccinated within 6 weeks of birth, many remain undone until the so-called propitious period, and thus there is always in the Colony sufficient suitable soil for the growth and development of the smallpox virus" WELLINGTON (1933). As soon as the Chinese New Year is over the dispensaries and hospitals of the city are crowded with mothers bringing their infants to be vaccinated. I consider that this local prejudice is the reason for the small fall in the mortality below

2 years of age seen in Table III. The extensive vaccination campaigns of the last few years have altered the mortality at ages in an interesting way. If reference is made again to Table III, it will be seen that in the years after 1930 a fall of 11 per cent. has occurred in the "persons" group aged 0 to 4 years, that there is little change at ages 5 to 14, and that above 14 the percentage has risen. This rise is largely a relative one, because it is children who have been vaccinated in proportionately larger numbers than adults, thus leaving a relatively larger proportion of adults to be attacked by the disease.

If the deaths occurring in each intercensal period are investigated, and the percentage at ages 0 to 4 examined, it will be seen that the steady increase from 1897 to 1930 became arrested, and fell during 1931-1936. The differences between the figures of one intercensal period and the next are all statistically significant, and I consider that it is right to infer that the decrease after 1931 must be due to vaccination, because I have been unable to discover any other factor or group of factors that might have caused this change.

It is as yet unwise, however, to draw any conclusion as to whether the low crude death rates met with since 1930 are due to the intense vaccination campaigns or not (though they probably are due to them), because population estimates, and therefore crude death rates calculated from them, may be somewhat inaccurate owing to such economic factors as the recent slump affecting the numbers of certain elements of the population to a greater or less extent than has been allowed for.

Fatality rates among the vaccinated and unvaccinated.—Unfortunately the returns are not sufficiently complete to allow of a determination of the different fatalities among the vaccinated and unvaccinated.

(e) COEFFICIENTS OF CORRELATION BETWEEN CERTAIN CLIMATIC FACTORS AND THE MONTHLY MORTALITY.

I have calculated the coefficients of correlation between the four main climatic factors, namely rainfall, temperature, relative humidity and pressure, and smallpox mortality for the 40 years under discussion. The total frequency for each factor being 480, the standard error in each case is 0.04569, assuming

S.E. is $\frac{1}{\sqrt{n-1}}$ These values are shown in Table V.

In the first column of figures, the climatic factor is correlated with the smallpox mortality for the same month. In order to test whether the maximum mortality from smallpox coincided with the peaks of the various climatic factors or whether there was a lag of 1 month or more between the two, I have used RUSSELL and SUNDARARAJAN's (1929) method of calculating these delays for the disease in India. The second column of figures shows the mathematical values for a delay of 1 month between the climatic factor and smallpox deaths, *i.e.*, January pressure figures are correlated with February mortality, February

TABLE V.
COEFFICIENTS OF CORRELATION BETWEEN CERTAIN CLIMATIC FACTORS AND SMALLPOX,
HONGKONG, 1897-1936.

Climatic factor.	Lag ₀	Lag ₁	Lag ₂	Lag ₃
Atmospheric pressure	0.19986	0.21894	0.18815	0.09518
Relative humidity	-0.05280	-0.14319	-0.18288	-0.18729
Rainfall	-0.15142	-0.16026	-0.12151	
Monthly mean temperature	-0.23637	-0.22892	-0.15335	

pressure figures with the March mortality from smallpox, and so on. The third set of figures shows the values for a delay of 2 months, and the last for one of 3 months.

Pressure.—This is the only climatic factor with a positive value, and the table shows that smallpox prevails when atmospheric pressure is highest. There is no significant difference in the figures for the first three lags.

Relative humidity.—The coefficients for all four lags are negative; that for lag₀ is not significant, and that for lag₃ being the highest, one can infer that a 3 months' lag occurs. The figures indicate that smallpox is not likely to assume an increased virulence when the relative humidity is high, such as is the case in the summer months.

Rainfall.—Here all values are significant and negative, with a lag of 1 month, showing that rainfall has a maximum inhibitory effect on smallpox after a delay of 1 month.

Mean Monthly Temperature.—Here again all values are negative and statistically significant, the maximum value being lag₀.

It can be argued that these figures tell one nothing more than what is known to anyone who has watched smallpox in the Far East, but the coefficients of correlation supply an exact value for Hongkong climatic values which enables the epidemiologist to compare them statistically with similar data in other countries.

(f) A COMPARISON OF THE COEFFICIENTS OF CORRELATION WITH WHAT
HAS BEEN FOUND TO APPLY TO INDIA.

RUSSELL and SUNDARARAJAN (1929) gave separate figures for each of the thirteen divisions into which they divided India, so I cannot conveniently reproduce them, but it is easy to summarize briefly their results and compare them with mine.

Pressure.—These authors found that in India the coefficients were of much the same magnitude as for temperature, but of opposite sign. The same applies

to Hongkong. They found however that in India there is a 2 months' lag, whereas in Hongkong there is no lag.

Relative humidity.—Indian values were negative except in parts of Madras, and in most cases there was a lag of one month, all being statistically significant. In Hongkong, though all are negative, lag₀ is not significant, and there is a lag of 3 months.

Rainfall.—RUSSELL and SUNDARARAJAN found a negative association everywhere, with a lag of 2 months in most cases. In Hongkong there is a lag of 1 month, and it is also a negative association.

Temperature.—In India it was found that there was a 2 months' lag, the coefficients being negative and significant. In Hongkong also the values are negative and significant, but there is no lag.

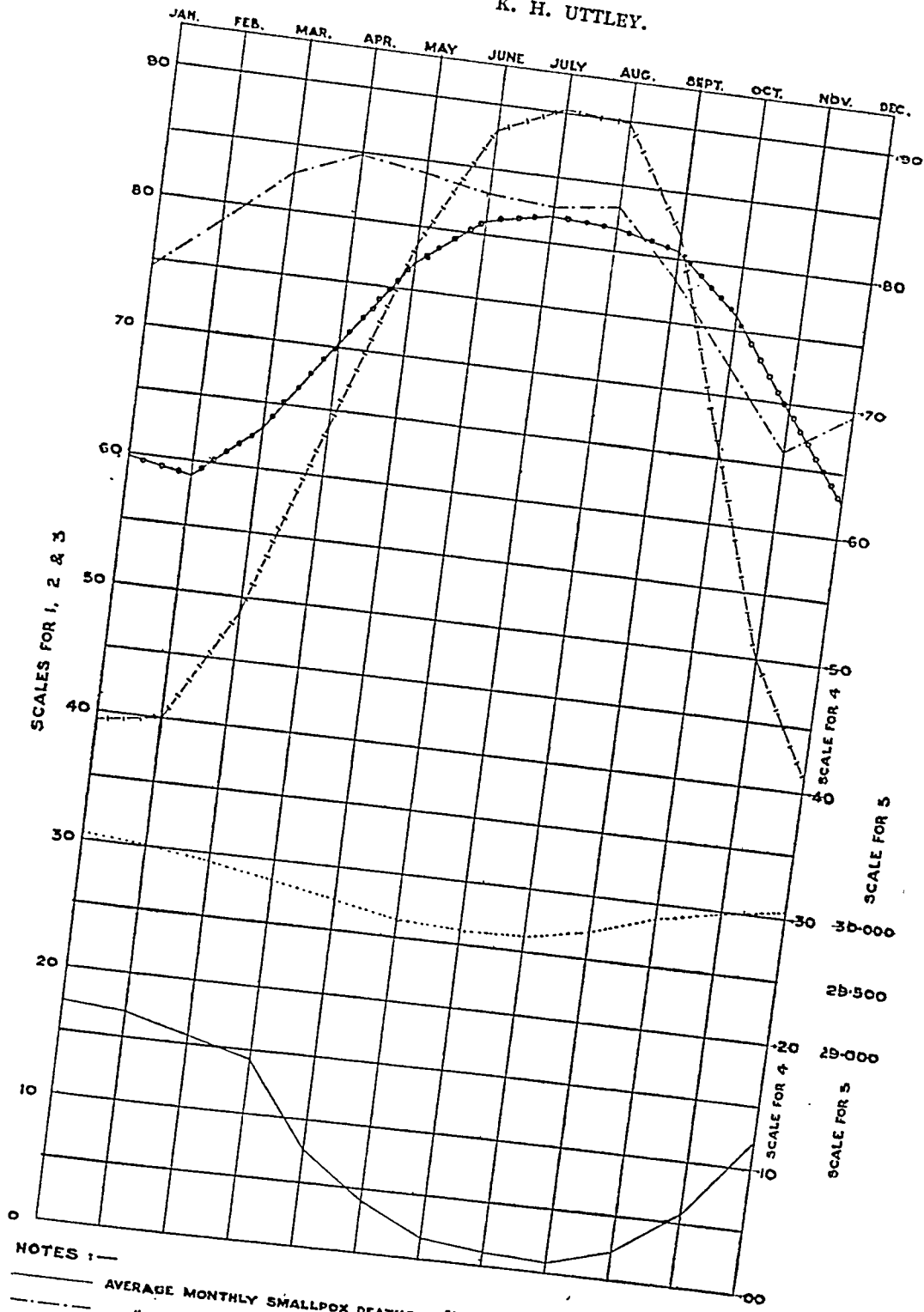
Climatic conditions in different parts of India vary considerably, but the comparisons I have made above are of interest when it is remembered that Hongkong is in the same latitude as Calcutta, and is subject to a wet monsoon in the summer and a cool dry season in the winter, as are many parts of India.

Table VI and the graph show the relationships between these climatic factors and smallpox mortality in another form. They emphasize what has already been said, namely that smallpox deaths occur mainly when pressure is high, and when all the other factors have low values.

TABLE VI.

RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN CERTAIN CLIMATIC FACTORS AND SMALLPOX MORTALITY.

Month.	Average monthly per cent. smallpox deaths.	Average monthly relative humidity.	Average monthly mean temperature.	Average monthly tension aqueous vapour.	Average monthly barometric pressure in inches.	Average monthly rainfall in inches.
Jan.	17.3	74.6	59.8	0.393	30.052	1.27
Feb.	17.0	78.6	58.9	0.400	30.013	1.75
Mar.	15.7	82.9	63.1	0.488	29.945	2.93
April	14.2	84.9	70.3	0.638	29.843	5.44
May	7.7	84.1	77.1	0.786	29.743	11.50
June	4.1	83.1	81.0	0.880	29.646	15.52
July	1.7	82.8	82.0	0.903	29.613	15.01
Aug.	1.1	83.4	81.7	0.899	29.616	14.22
Sep.	0.9	78.5	80.6	0.818	29.721	10.11
Oct.	2.3	72.2	76.2	0.657	29.879	4.55
Nov.	5.9	68.2	69.4	0.500	29.988	1.70
Dec.	12.1	69.5	62.9	0.410	30.047	1.15



NOTES:—

- ① ——— AVERAGE MONTHLY SMALLPOX DEATHS AS%
- ② - - - - - " " " "
- ③ —○—○— " " " "
- ④ - · - · - · " " " "
- ⑤ ······ " " " "

SCALES FOR 1, 2 & 3 EACH SQUARE = 5 UNITS
 SCALE FOR 4 " " = 2.05 UNIT
 SCALE FOR 5 " " = .5 UNIT

CONCLUSIONS AND SUMMARY.

In this paper I have made a survey of smallpox mortality among the urban Chinese of Hongkong during the last 40 years. Its crude death rate is very irregular, but over the whole period the mean is 0.46 per 1,000 living, the maximum rate being 2.27 in 1923, and the minimum 0.01 in 1931 and 1926. The standardized death rate, calculated for census years against the British population of 1901 shows that for most years the female mortality has exceeded that of males by three to two.

By calculating deaths at ages per 1,000 living, it is seen that infantile mortality is disproportionately higher than that obtaining in Britain, at any rate so far as the British figures for 1901 are concerned.

72 per cent. of all smallpox deaths have occurred in the first 5 years of life, and 53 per cent. have occurred in the first 3 years.

Until puberty there is a higher mortality among females, but thereafter males predominate.

The disease is a winter and spring disease, but sporadic cases occur at other times.

Vaccination, which had been employed on a very small scale previous to 1928, was in that year most intensively used, and has been so ever since, with the result that it has altered the percentage of total deaths from the disease occurring at different ages, mainly because small children form the majority of those vaccinated. The percentage of the total of smallpox deaths occurring under 5 years of age was 78 per cent. in the decade ending 1930, resembling the state of affairs in England in the eighteenth century, before the advent of vaccination. In the 6 years since 1930, when vaccination has been intensively practised in Hongkong, the percentage has fallen to 67.1.

It is likely, though not yet certain, that the low crude death rates met with since 1930 are in part due to vaccination.

I have attempted to carry out an investigation in Hongkong similar to that of RUSSELL and SUNDARARAJAN in India on the role of the climatic factors of rainfall, relative humidity, temperature and pressure on the mortality from smallpox; and by calculating the coefficients of correlation for these factors and smallpox mortality, and comparing them with what they have found in India, I have shown that there is no very great difference in the results obtained in the two places.

REFERENCES.

- McVAIL, J. C. Quoted by NEWSHOLME, A. (1923). *The Elements of Vital Statistics*. p. 400. London: Allen & Unwin, Ltd.
- RUSSELL, A. J. H. & SUNDARARAJAN, E. R. (1929). The epidemiology of smallpox. *Indian J. med. Res.*, 16, 572-3.
- UTTLEY, K. H. (1938a). The Chinese urban death rate in Hongkong. *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 31, 457.
- . (1938b). Studies in tuberculosis in Hongkong. *J. Hyg. Camb.*, 38, 150.
- WELLINGTON, A. R. (1933). *Medical and Sanitary Report for Hongkong for the year 1932*. p. 38.
- . (1934). *Ibid. for the year 1933*. p. 40.

TROPICAL PHAGAEDENIC ULCER IN THE PACIFIC.

BY

CLIFFORD S. JAMES, M.B., CH.B. (N.Z.), D.T.M. & H. (LOND.), F.R.C.S.E.,
Medical Officer, Melanesian Mission, Fauabu, British Solomon Islands.

The observations here recorded are based on 892 cases of ulcer admitted to hospital during 8½ years' work in three parts of the Southern Pacific. The cases were distributed as follows: Choiseul, Western Solomons, 110 cases;

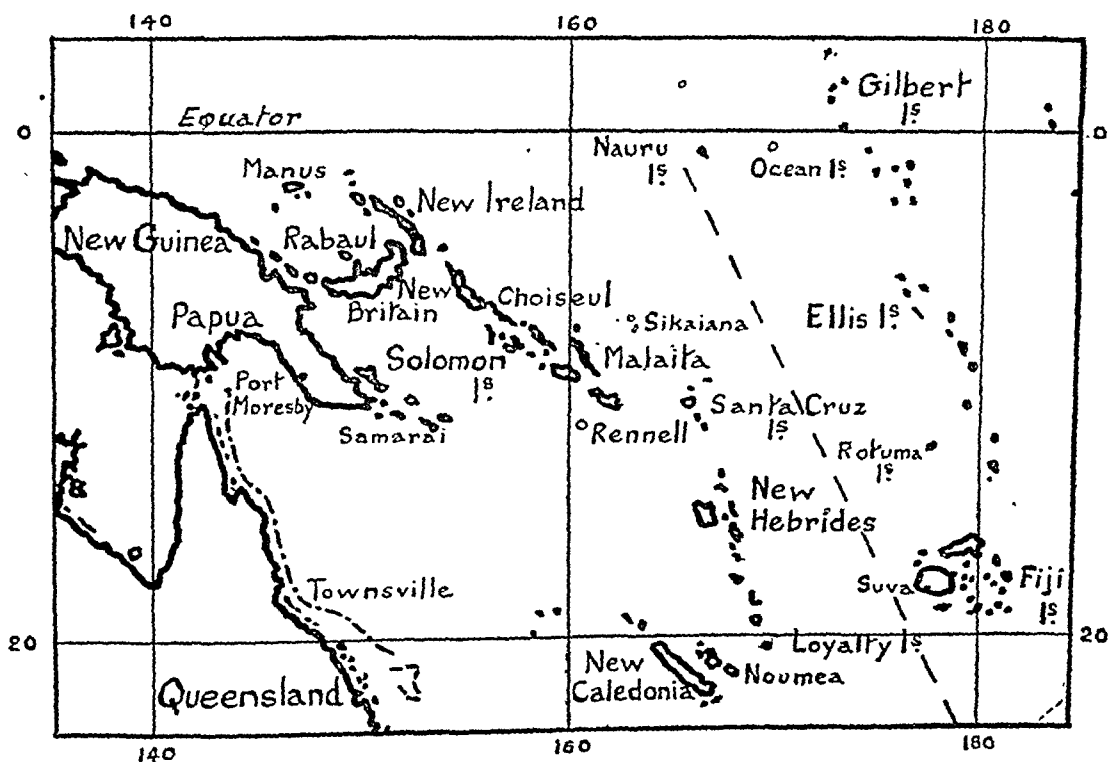


FIG. 1.—SOUTH-WESTERN PACIFIC.
Showing islands dealt with in this paper.

New Britain, Mandated Territory of New Guinea, 608 cases; Malaita, Central Solomons, 174 cases.

In addition to these there has been a much larger number of less serious cases treated as out-patients under my close supervision.

TROPICAL PHAGAEDENIC ULCER IS DUE TO AN INFECTION.

(a) The whole aspect of an ulcer is that of an infection, especially in the more serious cases. High temperatures are common, e.g., 103° to 104° F. in children. A recurrence of the infection in an ulcer under treatment is first shown on the temperature chart. The pain will keep a child whimpering throughout the night. There is tenderness and swelling. Adenitis of the regional glands is not uncommon. The more acute the ulcer, the more marked are these signs.

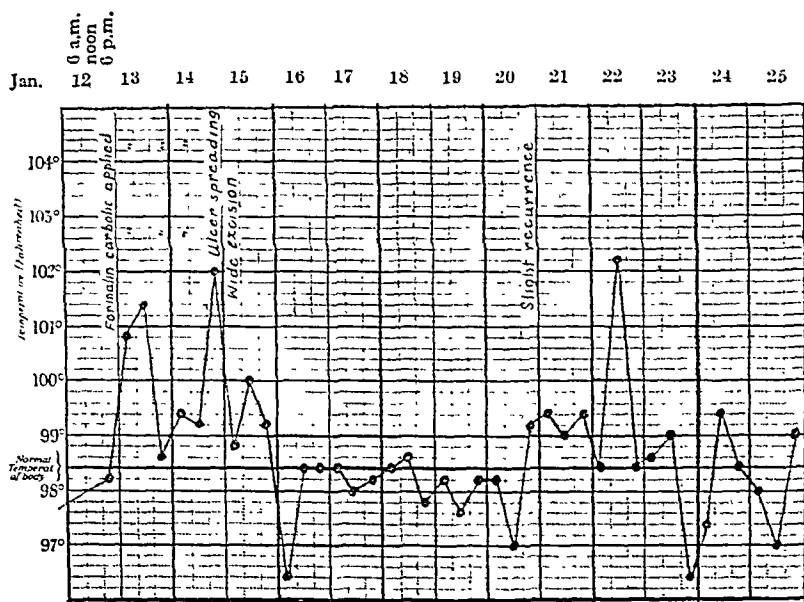


FIG. 2.—Chart showing relation of temperature to progress of ulcer.

Ia Mila, F., 4 months old, New Britain. Acute ulcer of whole of ball of foot. Pain, swelling, fever and toxæmia were marked. Caustics insufficient. Wide removal done (excision) and temperature dropped. On 20th, a slight recurrence of the infection (phagaedenic) with a rise in temperature. Caustics were applied, and ulcer became clean again. Skin grafts were applied, and patient discharged 12 days later.

(b) Complete surgical removal of an ulcer relieves these infective signs much as in a carbuncle. Similarly, in lesser cases, caustics applied to the ulcer will do the same.

Were the process, say, a tissue necrosis only such treatment would make things worse, not better.

(c) The discharges from a phagaedenic ulcer are actually infective.

Case: Madeline, 5 years, New Britain. Acute ulcer of the buttock (a serious ulcer in children). I excised it and was to skin-graft it later. It was dressed

with acriflavine and remained a clean slowly granulating area. Another ulcer developed on the mons veneris following her scratching herself. One morning I found that some discharge from the new ulcer had trickled down and had infected a triangular-shaped area of the clean granulations which now was an acute ulcer.

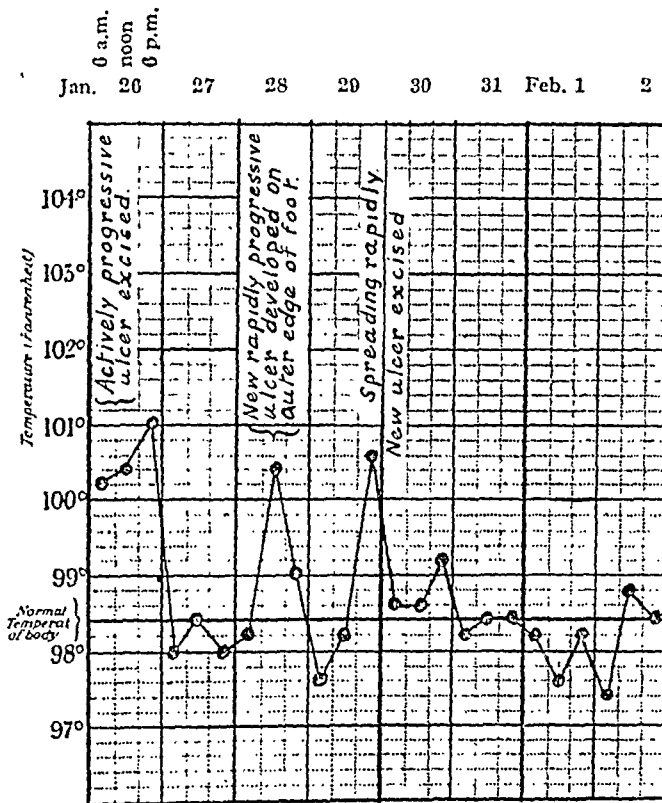


FIG. 3.—Relation of temperature to development and excision of ulcer.

Ia Pidikia, F., 29 years, New Britain. Acute ulcer, 5 days' duration, on inner part of sole of foot, 4 inches by 3 inches. Fetid, covered with a moist slough; and pain, swelling and toxæmia were marked. Wide excision followed by drop in temperature. On 2nd day, a new rapidly acute ulcer developed on outer side of foot. Temperature rose, and dropped again after surgical excision. After 13 days, grafts applied, and patient discharged 17 days later.

(d) The Cult of the "Immediate Iodine and Adhesive" will prevent any break in the skin from becoming an ulcer. I have never seen an ulcer develop where shoes and stockings have been worn and where any abrasion received a dab of iodine and was covered with a patch of adhesive plaster.

BACTERIOLOGY OF ULCERS AS SEEN IN SMEARS.

Clinically the ulcers which are met with may be classified as follows :—

Phagaedenic Ulcers.

Active progressive ulcers.

Subacute ulcers—where the progress has ceased.

Clean, chronic or healing ulcers.

Non-phagaedenic Ulcers.

Septic ulcers, etc.

There is a striking correlation between the bacteriological findings of the smear, and the clinical state of the ulcer. Whenever an ulcer had a definitely phagaedenic character fusiform bacilli were present.

Acute ulcers. All showed fusiform bacilli, while 75 per cent. showed spirochaetes and 65 per cent. showed filamentous forms.

Clean, chronic, and septic ulcers. These never show fusiform bacilli, spirochaetes or filamentous forms.

Sub-acute ulcers. These, as would be expected, occupy a midway position between the other two; 82 per cent. showed fusiform bacilli, 50 per cent. showed spirochaetes, 31 per cent. showed filamentous forms.

Other bacteria seen in the smears were cocci and diphtheroids.

THE BACTERIOLOGICAL FINDINGS IN SMEARS OF ULCERS IN THE VARIOUS STAGES FROM THE "IDIOPATHIC" ULCER TO THE HEALING ULCER.

Stage 1.—*The "idiopathic" ulcer.*

I had six natives who came for treatment for a condition, usually a vesicle, which they definitely considered would become a bad ulcer if untreated. The lesions were all unbroken, were painful, and there was no obvious cause for their appearance. The contents were a dirty greyish fluid, and the floor was moist and greyish. Smears showed Gram-positive cocci in diplococcal form. Some time previously I had inoculated similar material into broth, and typical staphylococci grew from it, but in smears from lesions, typical "bunch of grapes" formation is rarely seen. The ordinary boil shows only cocci in diplococcal form (STITT, 1927).

All the above were treated, mostly by a dab of caustic (carbolic) and all healed without any phagaedenic infection occurring.

Stage 2.—*Lesions of the above type just after the vesicle had broken.*

Jope, M., 20 years, New Britain. Acute ulcer on one leg. Later a vesicle developed elsewhere on the same leg. It had broken some little time before I saw it. The discharge contained a few fusiform bacilli as well as cocci. This was evidently a secondary infection just starting.

Malachi, M., 22 years, Solomons, also had a vesicle which had burst and the surface was only partly covered with the epithelium. A smear similarly showed cocci and some very fine fusiform bacilli.

Stage 3.—*The fully developed phagaedenic ulcer.*

Ilias, M., 20 years, New Britain. A blister similar to the above had broken 24 hours before. The surface was darker, obviously phagaedenic, painful and a little swollen. A smear showed fusiform bacilli, spirochaetes, and filamentous forms.

Stage 4.—*Cessation of the phagaedenic process.*

The spirochaetes and filamentous forms disappear first, the fusiform bacilli become shorter, and then disappear.

Stage 5.—*A possible recurrence in a clean ulcer.*

This happening is not uncommon, the smear then showing a re-appearance of the phagaedenic germs. *Damiri* showed first fusiform bacilli and filamentous forms. After the recurrence, there were fusiform bacilli and spirochaetes.

The Smear of Certain Types of Ulcer is fairly Constant.

(a) A messy, fetid, relatively superficial ulcer usually shows both fusiform bacilli and spirochaetes.

(b) The particularly chronic ulcer of the toe-nail area shows a similar picture.

(c) An ulcer with dark red granulation tissue from which can be expressed a thin pale pus shows usually fusiform bacilli only.

(d) Ulcers with more or less deep subcutaneous extensions show fusiform bacilli, but no spirochaetes. Such ulcers are :—

1. A deep ulcer with raised edge from which pus can be expressed.

2. A progressive ulcer with long finger-like extensions, the extremities of which break down and form new ulcers. These join with and enlarge the parent ulcer. Healing is by scar tissue in the centre, spread being centrifugal.

3. More serious types with extensive spread along fascial planes, and subsequent huge sloughs, the skin being intact until the last.

The microscopic picture of types 2 and 3 often resembles that of SMITH's experimental ulcer in the hedgehog (SMITH, 1936, Fig. 3).

The fusiform bacillus ulcer is a less rapid one, the spirochaetes seeming to add more virulence to the process, especially superficially.

The filamentous forms may be long and rather thick and may be seen dividing to form fusiform bacilli, or they may be finer and show every gradation between a long straight form and a definite spirochaete. Some filamentous forms are exceedingly fine. Some smears seem to show every step between the common fusiform bacillus and the spirochaete via the filamentous forms, as though they were all actually one organism.

THE SEQUENCE OF EVENTS IN THE PATHOLOGY OF AN ULCER.

An untreated
abrasion, insect bite, or other
break in the skin.

Immediate infection with
phagaedenic organisms,
and development of a
phagaedenic ulcer.

" Idiopathic "
vesicle.

Infection with septic
organisms, and development
of a septic ulcer.

Phagaedenic infection
and development
of a phagaedenic ulcer.

Remains septic.

Infection dies out
and ulcer becomes
clean.

Re-infection with
phagaedenic organisms
and recurrence of
phagaedenic ulceration.

Again becomes clean.

Healing commences,
which may be rapid, or may take years depend-
ing on the pathological conditions produced by
the ulcer process—mostly concerned with the
blood supply.

Death from toxæmia,
septic exhaustion, or
haemorrhage.

Malignancy.

An area is left
which, because of poor blood supply, or
because of organisms lying dormant in the scar
tissue, becomes a focus of lowered resistance.
A new ulcer is easily provoked by a slight
injury.

CLINICAL NOTES.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

Ulcers are too common to need much description. In serious cases, they may increase in diameter one finger's breadth in a night. Toxaemia seems to prevent a marked local inflammatory reaction. A vicious circle may be established, the toxaemia enabling the ulcer to increase in size and so to increase the toxaemia.

Where the ulcers are of the bad type, as for instance, in New Britain, the average age of the patient is less than in other places (12 years as compared with 23 years in the Solomons). In New Britain, one-third of the cases were in children under 8 years of age, and 2 per cent. occurred in infants under 1 year.

In the last-named place, ulcers and their complications (toxaemia, deep sepsis, exhaustion) were the chief cause of death in the hospital. To save life, urgent amputations and blood transfusions were often necessary, though amputation may be risky because of extensive subcutaneous extensions of the phagaedenic process.

A healed ulcer is certainly better than an open one, but nevertheless it remains a liability to its owner. Scar tissue is formed in varying amounts in healing. It is most abundant in slow healing, and its disadvantages are :—

(a) It diminishes the blood supply to the new skin.

(b) It contains, in its interstices, dormant organisms. SMITH (1936) confirms this in finding numerous organisms in the base of an almost healed ulcer (experimental) in the hedgehog.

(c) The blood vessels in the ulcer area suffer with an obliterative endarteritis (SMITH, 1932) which narrows the lumen and cuts down the blood supply.

The result of this is that the scar tissue is liable to break down with the formation of a new ulcer, destroying the work of weeks of dressing. If surgical interference is necessary to bring about healing, as much as possible of the scar tissue should be removed. It is often amazing the amount that has to be cut away before normal tissue is reached.

Malignancy has occurred once only in my experience, the case being an ulcer of the shin of a lifetime's duration in a man of 40 years of age. The malignant growth was from the bone in the base of the ulcer. VINT (1935) in Kenya has noted malignant changes in 2 per cent. of a routine unselected series of ulcers excised for treatment. Whatever may be the actual frequency of this condition, its occurrence points to excision as the best treatment for these ulcers.

The ordinary common septic ulcer in the tropics, without any phagaedenic infection, is surprisingly slow to heal. The humidity and the increased sweating make the skin sodden, so that a good medium for the profuse bacterial life of the tropics is provided. This militates against quick healing while incidentally dressings are difficult to keep on.

THE PART PLAYED BY DEFECTIVE NUTRITION IN THE CAUSATION OF ULCERS.

The influence of diet on the progress of the ulcer has been impressed upon me by such events as the following :—

(A) A continued activity or recurrence of the phagaedenic process in certain cases for no obvious reason mystified me until I enquired about the diet. This was found to be inadequate, and correction of the deficiency changed the aspect of the ulcer.

Case 1.—*Komai, M.*, 22 years, New Britain. A nicely healing ulcer suddenly became phagaedenic, and subsequently a clean excision and skin-graft did the same. It was later found that he was living on two cooked green bananas per day. Increase in diet (rice) caused healing.

Case 2.—*Takana, F.*, 14 years, Malaita. A clean excision and skin graft suddenly became phagaedenic. It was found that she did not like the rice and biscuits of the hospital diet. Native food was secured and the ulcer healed.

Case 3.—*Tapliu, F.*, 13 years, Malaita. Developed an acute ulcer while in hospital on routine quinine, iron and cod liver oil, but, as in the above case, she would not eat the hospital diet. On a change of diet, the ulcers healed.

Case 4.—*Madeline, F.*, 5 years, New Britain. Continued to develop new ulcers while in hospital. Her food was found to be quite insufficient. She ate (rice) ravenously and her ulcers healed.

These four cases had all lost weight as a result of their deficient diet which was at fault as regards quantity rather than quality.

(B) The occurrence, for no obvious reason, of one serious ulcer in a village of healthy people.

Case 1.—*Dina, F.*, 3 years, New Britain. An ulcer developed upon the site of an old healed burn following the patient's scratching it. After only 6 days, it measured $3 \times 4\frac{1}{2}$ inches. Toxaemia was marked and with it were a high temperature and a poor pulse. Deep extensions along tendons and between muscles demanded amputation and two blood transfusions to save her life. It was discovered later that the family were in difficulties with their garden, and were often hungry. Both the mother and child were under-nourished. A poor appetite from the toxaemia cut down still further the child's food intake, and thus a vicious circle was established.

(C) Epidemics localized to a single community while surrounding villages were not affected.

1.—From the 7th March to the 3rd April, the village of Vunavulila, New Britain, supplied me with a group of 12 ulcers. Of any such groups of ulcers, which I have met, this was far and away the worst. All were acutely phagaedenic, and needed wide excisions, and in two cases, amputation.

In February this village, with a population of about 120, had held the great feast of its lifetime. Long self-denial and economy in food provided the pigs and food which were distributed amongst the guests, and demonstrated the affluence of the community. For 2 or 3 days the people enjoyed themselves to the full. Then came a time of empty gardens and little to eat. Six weeks later, 12 of the villagers were in hospital with serious ulcers and others had less serious ones.

It is difficult not to blame the sudden lack of food as being a predisposing cause of the ulcers.

2.—In New Britain, the hospital was situated on a station consisting of a girls' school and a boys' school. In September the headmistress of the former left and was relieved by one who did not understand the gardens nor the feeding of a large number. The gardens

were emptied and no new ones were planted. From Christmas until the return of the original mistress in April, the girls were hungry.

The graph below shows the admission rate to hospital for ulcers.

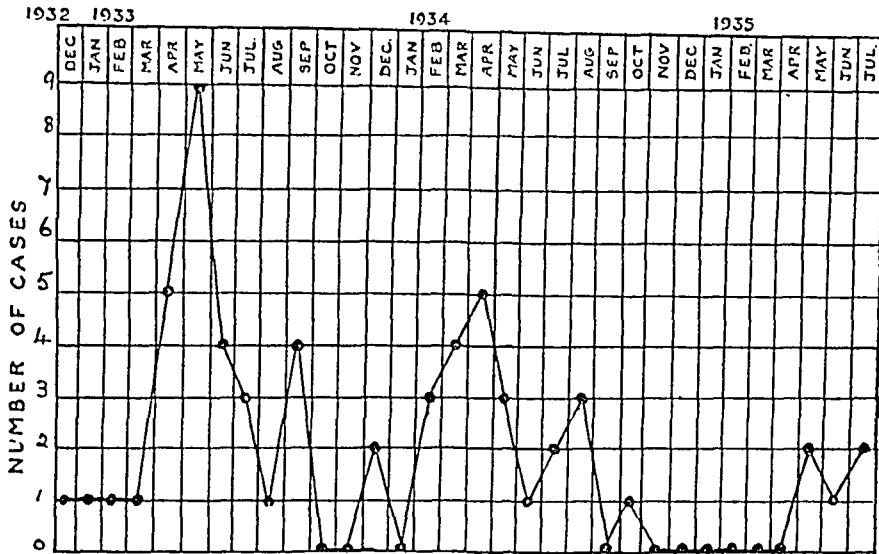


FIG. 4.—Girls' school—admission rate for ulcers.

3.—Similarly the boys' school suffered a change of headmasters in December. The reserve food in the bush gardens had been stolen, and during the development of new gardens there was a lean and hungry time for the boys. Rice had to be bought to increase the food supply.

The graph shows the admission rate of the boys to hospital with phagaedenic ulcers.

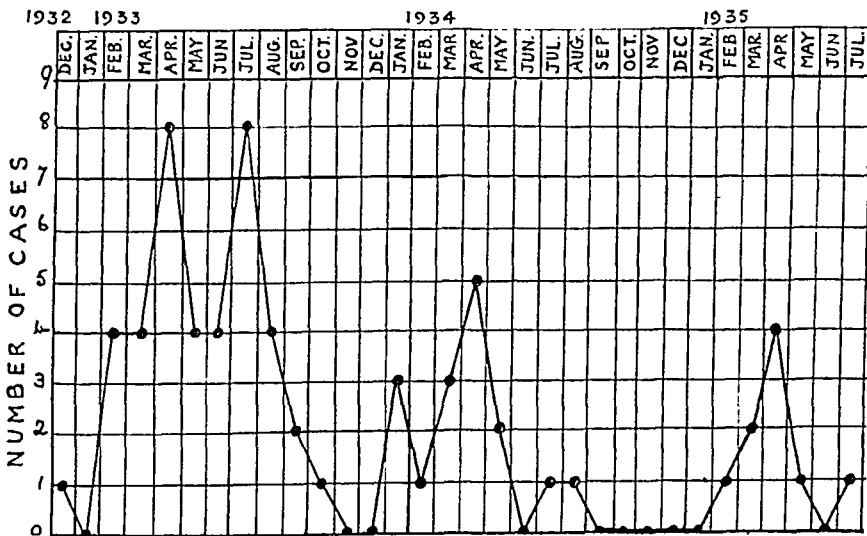


FIG. 5.—Boys' school—admission rate for ulcers.

The above students were under my care for 3 years. They were isolated, and their living conditions were more or less constant till the shortage of food described above occurred. That it should occur in the two schools and be

of the same type and that it should be associated in both schools with a rise in ulcer rate is very suggestive of a relation between the food and the ulcers.

(D) The variation in the type and incidence of ulcer in New Britain, Western Solomons and the Central Solomons.

In certain characteristics these three places resemble one another. Thus :—

1. All possess hot moist tropical climates and range in latitude from 4° to 8° south. They are mountainous and bush-clad.

2. The natives are all pure Melanesians and the variety of their food is more or less the same.

3. Malaria and phagaedenic ulcers are universal throughout.

The differences from the point of view of this paper are to be found in the amount and quality of food eaten, and in the incidence and severity of the phagaedenic ulcers.

Choiseul and Malaita (British Solomons) are both islands over 100 miles long. They are more mountainous than New Britain, and with their numerous rivers there are swamps which breed mosquitoes in abundance.

The *Gazelle Peninsula* is the north end of New Britain. It is hilly and thickly populated and contains Rabaul, the capital of the Territory. Not all the land is good garden land, and much of it will not grow taro, the staple food. Where natives elsewhere will eat taro, many in these parts eat poor quality potatoes (native) which will grow on poorer soil. As well as supplying their own wants, the population caters for Rabaul's wants, which are extensive. Rabaul's white population is 500 and its "Chinatown" has 100 merchants : with these there is the large population of native labourers, and the natives employed by the Government. Many ships call and are supplied from the natives' produce. The big native market collects food from far out in the bush and includes all the area under consideration. Natives grow their own foods for this market, and also such things as tomatoes, cabbages, beans, etc., for sale to white people. The natives will sell anything ! If they catch a fish, they hold it up for sale at the roadside. They rear fowls for sale, and they sell their cocoanuts which on other islands are used as a reserve food. A large part of the population has no access to the beach for fishing purposes. The result is, in my opinion, that the people are underfed, and poor food and not much of it is the rule.

The picture presented by the Solomons is very different. Here there is comparatively good food and plenty of it. Similarly ulcers were the chief cause of mortality in New Britain while in the Solomons there has been only one death in 4½ years. The seriousness of the disease in New Britain is due, I believe, to the poor state of nutrition of its inhabitants.

(E) The definite correlation between the frequency of phagaedenic ulcers and the season of the year.

Generally speaking, February to July are the "ulcer months," with a peak in April. Ulcers are uncommon in the latter part of the year and during the month of January.

The north-west season (monsoon) starts sometime between the end of November and the end of December, and continues until April. It is a season of irregular weather, hot dry spells alternating with periods of drenching rain and gales. The heat and dryness kill the gardens, and in the wet the vegetables rot in the ground. The gales blow down the trees (banana, etc.). Where the gardens are at a distance the people cannot visit them. Fishing is impossible.

The height of the "ulcer period" corresponds to the time when the people will be feeling the effects of the previous months of precarious food supply, the gardens will be at their poorest, and the bodily reserves will have been used up. In 1937, the north-west season was delayed, the first storm occurring in the middle of January. There was a corresponding delay in the "ulcer period."

THE ORDINARY FOOD HABITS OF THE NATIVES MUST TEND TO MALNUTRITION.

(a) The natives are, of necessity, vegetarians. Fish is an "extra," except for those living on the beach.

(b) They bolt great mouthfuls of insufficiently chewed food. The appearance of the contents of the bedpans is similar to that of their plates before the meal.

(c) On long tramps they do not take food with them: they chew betel-nuts which assuage hunger but have no food value.

(d) They have one proper meal per day—in the evening. If there is any left over, it is eaten for breakfast, if not, there is no meal in the morning. They may chew a piece of cocoanut.

(e) In the nutting season, they live in the bush on nuts—a tough, indigestible native almond—which are quite insufficiently chewed. Their stomachs are full, but actually they are starving.

(f) They care little about the future. They eat while there is plenty and will eat too much, and waste food, but they do not put any away for the morrow. A little counter-attraction, and they will forget all about their gardens which rapidly deteriorate.

(g) Gardening methods are very crude, no manuring is done, and wild pigs raid the gardens unless they are fenced. Bad weather, sickness, when no work can be done, and feasts, when the gardens are depleted, all take their toll from the native's menu.

WHAT IS THE VITAL ELEMENT IN THE FOOD WHICH IS LACKING?

In hospital, the routine medicinal treatment for all ulcers has been quinine, iron in fairly big doses, cod liver oil, marmite as a morning drink when fresh vegetables are insufficient or in doses of 12 grammes per day for experimental purposes.

Vitamins are supplied in titbits of greens and fruits.

Calcium is supplied in abundance in the betel-nut chewed.

Food arrangements: Choiseul—plenty of native food. New Britain—native food (not plenty) supplemented with rice. Malaita—rice and biscuits and native food when possible.

Progress of seven illustrative cases on above regime :—

- 1.—Ulcer progressed. Amputation became necessary.
- 2.—A recurrence of phagaedenic infection after 3 weeks.
- 3.—A new ulcer developed after 4 weeks.
- 4.—Ulcers continued to develop after some weeks.
- 5.—New ulcer developed after 17 days.
- 6.—New ulcer developed after 20 days.
- 7.—A new phagaedenic infection developed after 20 days.

Other similar cases also suggest that ulcers will develop while a sufficiency of the diet described above is being taken.

One is driven to the conclusion that there must be an insufficiency of suitable protein. On the other hand, it is questionable whether it is possible to point to any one item as being the only deficient factor. If it is protein which is chiefly lacking there may be also a shortage of other substances which prevents the body from making good the deficiency in protein. This would happen when there is a general all-round insufficient intake, and would explain all the foregoing problems (*A to E* pp. 654 and 656). In village life a good supply of native food will supply the protein, or a lesser supply of food containing a better protein, e.g., fish. In the following two places much fish is eaten, and though the total food is not great, ulcers are rare.

1. *Sikaiana* is an atoll, 10 miles long. The amount of land suitable for gardens is small, but the lack of vegetables is made up by a splendid fishing reef and lagoon. The natives delight in fish. The population is increasing in spite of a good deal of malaria. The diet is coconuts, taro, yams, a few fruits and fish.

2. *The Artificial Islands* of the north-west lagoon of this island (*Sikaiana*) are most interesting. Throughout the area of the lagoon (30 miles long, and 1 to 2 miles in width), there are scattered thirty islands built up from the surface of the reef, at enormous labour by lumps of coral carried from elsewhere on the reef. Lying just above highwater mark, the islands have big populations. On one, 300 people live on an area less than an acre. There are crowds of children who are clean, non-malarious, but rather thin. The inhabitants say they do not have ulcers, but after visiting a number of them, I found one small phagaedenic ulcer on an islander, and two other ulcers with a yaws basis. This was in the "ulcer season."

The food was mainly fish from the reef, but some vegetables are secured by barter from the mainland. The infrequency of ulcers is remarkable.

In both places, fish in the diet evidently not only makes up for the lack of plenty of food generally, but supplies good protein as well.

RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN MALARIA AND PHAGAEDENIC ULCER.

That such a relationship exists is suggested by the following :—

(a) White people suffer with phagaedenic ulcers in Melanesia, but it is my experience that such ulcers do not occur in non-malarious white persons. The cases seen by me either took no quinine or took it so irregularly that they suffered attacks of malaria. It may be noted here that all who have given prophylactic quinine a thorough trial know that it is possible to go for years without suffering a malarial attack, and, if the quinine is taken properly, it will not produce any of the adverse symptoms which are recorded in the literature.

I can recall nine patients who consulted me for phagaedenic ulcers, and they all had malarial attacks with varying frequency.

(b) I have been consulted by eight white people who were non-malarious, took their quinine regularly, and had ulcers, but all were simple, septic non-phagaedenic ulcers.

Two cases have impressed me :—

1.—“ M ” did not know the efficacy of quinine in malarial prevention. She had malaria frequently and developed two serious phagaedenic ulcers which needed one month in bed and another month sitting about the house before they were healed. During her next term of service, she took quinine most regularly, and though she continued to go into the gardens without stockings, and though she had less fresh meat and butter than before, she was entirely free from ulcers for at least 3 years.

2.—The case of a medical colleague who did not believe in quinine at first, and had frequent malaria. He developed a phagaedenic ulcer which troubled him considerably.

I myself, am a strong advocate of quinine, am non-malarious, and have never had an ulcer of any sort during 8½ years in the tropics.

(c) On the map p. 647 at the commencement of this paper, I have drawn an interrupted line. To the east of this line, there are no phagaedenic ulcers, but to the west, they are common. I was in Fiji recently, and Dr. CLUNIE of the War Memorial Hospital very kindly showed me two cases of tropical ulcer as it occurs in Fiji. Both were on the foot, about $1\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{3}{4}$ inches in size, were not very deep, but were moist and a thin, pale discharge came from them. The base was of pink granulations, and the parts were a little congested. A smear showed no phagaedenic organisms, merely cocci and diphtheroids being present. There was no offensive odour. CLUNIE and EVA (1934) state that these ulcers occur in epidemics in schools, in road and other labour gangs. They suggest a dietetic cause, white bread and tapioca being largely the diet. The blood calcium was normal. The ulcer commences at the site of an abrasion. Strapping was the best treatment.

Accustomed to phagaedenic ulcers, I realized that these were tropical ulcers without the phagaedenic infection. The ulcers of my experience were definitely the dietetic ulcers of Fiji, with a superimposed phagaedenic infection which did the damage. My “ idiopathic ” ulcers were miniature Fijian ulcers, the cause probably dietetic, and the cocci the same.

The freedom of Polynesia from phagaedenic ulcers is not a natural or racial immunity. Fijians are a mixture of Melanesian and Polynesian strains. Polynesians in Melanesia are not immune to ulcers, while Melanesians from the Solomon Islands do not have ulcers when they go to live in Fiji.

What is more surprising still is that the above-mentioned line on the map not only separates the "phagaedenic west" from the "non-phagaedenic east," but also separates the malarial west from the malarial east. Other diseases are the same on both sides of the line. (The Indian immigrants to Fiji have added some diseases in recent years, but these do not alter the general statement).

It appears, therefore, that when a native to the west has a dietetic deficiency, because of his inevitable malaria, he suffers from phagaedenic ulcer. On the other hand, to the east, a native with a similar deficiency, is liable to non-phagaedenic ulcers.

(d) The spleen of the average ulcer patient is larger than that of the average general population, by an amount equal to one-third of the distance between costal margin and umbilicus.

(e) *Rennell* is an atoll which has been thrust up 300 to 400 feet from the sea. It is 50 miles long, and lies 90 miles from the nearest big island. Inland there is a lake and elsewhere the land is fertile in spots. The interest of *Rennell* is that it is peopled by Polynesians (amongst Melanesians on all the other islands). The food is yams, taro and pandanus fruit; spinach, coconuts, pawpaws, fish and shell fish, are eaten at times. Unlike Melanesians, they have no meat hunger, and will not exert themselves to catch the birds on the lake. Their canoes are too frail to go out to sea. LAMBERT says, "They live near the vitamin and food life-line."

Though *Rennell* is in the malarial belt, there is no record of any malaria in the past. LAMBERT visited the island in 1930 and 1933 (LAMBERT, 1932 and 1934) and found *no malaria*, *no anopheles mosquitoes*, and *no phagaedenic ulcers*. It was probably populated from a non-malarious people at the start, and its isolation has protected it since. He reports the general health as being excellent.

With LAMBERT's account may be compared the report of Dr. CRITCHLOW, of the Government Medical Service (Dr. H. B. HETHERINGTON, S.M.O., kindly allows me to quote the figures). He visited the island in August, 1936. In two districts with a population of 126, he examined sixty-eight natives, and found twenty-five phagaedenic ulcers, five cases of malarial fever, and seventeen enlarged spleens (malarial).

He did not examine all the people so that it seems safe to conclude that there were most probably other cases of enlarged spleen, and possibly ulcers.

The natives told Dr. CRITCHLOW that three *Rennell* islanders, after returning from other islands, developed phagaedenic ulcers, and that the disease spread and caused many deaths. In some cases the spleen was a hand's breadth below the costal margin. *Anopheles* also had been introduced. It thus appears that in 1930 and 1933, there were no ulcers, no malaria, and no *anopheles* on *Rennell*,

and that between 1933 and 1936, all three were introduced so that in 1936, there was at least an incidence of 20 per cent. ulcers and, say, 20 per cent. malaria.

Because of the serious state of things, the island has been proclaimed a "closed" territory and a medical worker put there.

The fact that both malaria and ulcers have gained a hold is significant, because the natives say that, in 1911, there was an epidemic of ulcers in the island but that it died out. No malaria or anopheles were introduced. Now ulcers are well established, because, in my opinion, malaria favours their development.

(f) Malaria causes destruction of the blood. The average haemoglobin values of ulcer patients were as follows: active progressive ulcers, 66 per cent.; sub-acute, non-active ulcers, 70 per cent.; clean ulcers, 76 per cent.

The haemoglobin value of the general population was 75 to 85 per cent.

If the haemoglobin value is taken as a rough gauge of the activity and seriousness of the malaria (clinical hookworm is a rare condition here) the above figures would suggest that the more active the malaria the more liable the patient would be to develop an ulcer. Anaemia alone, however, is not the essential factor for cases of anaemia much below the above level may not have ulcers. It is the more chronic cases which have ulcers. (It has already been pointed out that the spleen rate is increased in ulcer cases.)

In malaria, there is a definite toxic factor, hence it is the chronic malarial native, saturated with toxins produced in his big spleen, who develops ulcers. This specific poisoning may lay the body open to the phagaedenic infection, a supposition which would explain the absence of ulcers in Fiji, because it can hardly be imagined that the phagaedenic bacteria have never reached this island.

A further point is that malaria with its fever means a constant wastage of valuable food materials from the body, the destruction of protein being very great (PEMBREY, 1933). Thus the good effects of a balanced diet are largely lost quite apart from the loss of appetite which cuts down the intake of food.

PREVENTION AND TREATMENT OF PHAGAEDENIC ULCERS.

Prophylaxis consists in the prevention of infection by wearing shoes and stockings, and applying iodine (immediately) and adhesive to any break in the skin. To these must be added a properly balanced diet and the avoidance of malaria—if contracted the malaria must be treated.

Curative measures involve the eradication of the infection, the encouragement of epithelialization, the prevention of recurrence and the treatment of malaria and dietary deficiency.

The first procedure is to apply to the ulcer a caustic such as a modification of that recommended by McGUIRE (1934). Grind up as much copper sulphate in glycerine as it will absorb, and to the resulting solution, add to each ounce 1 dram pure carbolic acid as an anaesthetic.

This solution is applied daily to bad ulcers until the surface feels hard and granular. If there is pain or swelling, apply a small dressing of acriflavine (1/1,000) and cover it with a hot fomentation and protective (baked banana leaf is good), twice daily. Continue until the ulcer is clean. The above solution cannot be too thoroughly applied.*

When the ulcer is clean, if it is small, apply scarlet red ointment and adhesive plaster or elastoplast. (This fits any part of the body, but is not impervious, and infection can penetrate it.) Leave on for a week or more. Catastrophes will occur if adhesive is applied to ulcers which are still active. Absence of phagaedenic bacteria is a good test for loss of activity.

For larger ulcers, I am convinced of the value of excision and immediate skin-graft. This is usually easy because there is swelling which elevates the ulcer above skin level. It is removed in one slice, and seed grafts are put on at once to the raw area. Even with chronic ulcers, a little care will remove the ulcer in one piece. If too widespread for complete removal in one piece, the area must be considered infected and should be painted over lightly with pure carbolic (i.e., after removal of all the infected tissue). It is then clean. After 3 or 4 days, if still clean, it can be grafted.

Dressings on clean areas or grafts need not be changed for a week or 10 days unless the odour or temperature chart suggests infection. The experienced nose soon distinguishes between harmless decomposing blood and true phagaedenic infection.

In an earlier paper (JAMES, 1932) I have described the procedure in which over a number of cases, healing averaged 13 days. Since then, I have continued the method, with a few modifications, and the total figures are :—

	Number of Cases
Excision of ulcer with immediate skin graft	176
Excision of ulcer with delayed graft (serious cases with doubt as to complete eradication of infection).. .. .	117
Excision followed by suture	20
Grafts applied to granulation surface without previous excision ..	19
Curettage of granulations followed by graft	8
Total	340

For success in these operations, I would stress the following :—

1. In long-standing ulcers, after removing the ulcer, the scar-tissue should be whittled away until as nearly as possible normal tissue is reached. The

* In preparing fresh solutions, care must be taken to wash out all crystals from the bottle to prevent the crystallizing-out of the copper sulphate.

fibrous tissue extends to amazing depths, and the less of this tissue there is, the less chance there is of recurrence, the more knocks the new skin will stand, the healthier the skin and the better the blood supply.

2. Granulation tissue forms fibrous tissue wherever it may be. This contracts and cuts down the blood supply, and a successful graft may later become wrinkled and less resistant. Grafts applied to such granulating surfaces should be put on when there is the thinnest possible layer of granulations, i.e., at the earliest possible moment, otherwise the granulations should be excised and the grafts applied to a bed of normal tissue.

3. In bad ulcers, the removal must be wide, knowing that any diseased tissue remaining will surely slough. A follow-up of my big excisions shows surprisingly good results. After removal of the tendo Achilles in one case, the man could, some months later, stand on the toes of that foot with the other raised from the ground. The posterior tibials and peronei had taken over the work. If tendons remain covered by their sheaths, they will probably survive, but if bared, they either slough or are involved in granulation tissue.

4. In fleshy parts such as the buttock, a "V" shaped incision allows the sides to be sutured together like a wound.

5. For the obstinate ulcers of the toe-nail area, the bone is often involved. By splitting the toe down so that the ulcer and bone are in one-half, and the pulp in the other, a cross-cut can be made just proximal to the nail-bed. This will cut skin and bone and will meet the "splitting" incision. Sutures are put in as for an amputation. There is surprisingly little shortening, no loss of function, and I believe the toe lengthens a little afterwards.

6. In the slowly healing ulcers of the sole, excision and grafting are good and healing rapid.

7. Grafts applied over a hard, bony surface often do quite well, if there is no sepsis. The skin, however, will never stand rough treatment, and a bandage should be worn permanently.

8. In very chronic ulcers, over a bony surface, with the bone usually enlarged, the blood supply is never sufficient for a graft to do well. The frequent protuberance of bone is not due to thickening of the cortex of the bone. I have had good results in ulcers of a lifetime's duration by first excising the ulcer, then chipping away the bone carefully, and in several places over the area, making an opening into the medulla about the size of the end of a pencil. The blood supply of the medulla is good, and granulations grow out from these holes over the bare bone, and in a few days there is a surface of good granulations on which to put the grafts.

In grafting, I use "seed-grafts" obtained by lifting up a tent of skin with a needle and cutting this tent off just below the needle with a safety razor blade. As long as there is a bluish tinge in the little hole left, it is of right depth. These

seeds will adhere to an oozing surface—in fact, they help to stop any ooze—and also they will stand a certain amount of sepsis without dying. Their “survival rate” is high. If oozing does persist, put the dressing on firmly and, in bed, raise the leg to a right angle: the ooze invariably stops. A tourniquet is a help during the larger excisions.

Pre-operative preparation need not be done until the patient is under the anaesthetic. Soap well, shave, soap again, rub over with a methylated spirit swab and then with sterile water. Grafts are taken from the thigh on the handiest side.

Ordinary boiled mosquito netting, or better “parawax,” is placed over the grafts, and a lotion of equal parts glycerin and red lotion is used on the wool. After a week or 10 days in order to remove the dressing, remove as much of the wool as possible, apply a thick pad of wool soaked in eusol and cover with some protective. The dressings will come off easily in a few hours. Scarlet red and adhesive or eusol or zinc ointment may then be put on until all is healed over.

Plaster of Paris is often of great help, especially if the lesion is over a joint or muscle. It also keeps the patient in bed.

As regards anaesthesia—I have been using the spinal form for over 8 years and am a firm advocate of it. With practice, it is easy, reliable and non-dangerous. No anaesthetist is needed. If there should be a drop in blood pressure—most rarely—shown by sighing respiration or restlessness, simply lowering the patient's head is all that is necessary. There have been no mishaps of any moment in over 500 “single-handed” spinal anaesthetics. I use percaïne (Ciba) 1/200 solution with 6 per cent. glucose added to make it a heavy solution. By arching the patient's back with a pillow under the buttocks, and two under the shoulders and head, the solution can be localized. The average adult dose is 1.6 to 1.8 c.c. injected between the 3rd and 4th lumbar spines. A child of 10 years would take about 1 c.c. Younger children need a “whiff” of chloroform to keep them quiet during the injection, otherwise their crying sends the anaesthetic out through the puncture hole by the increase in pressure in the spinal fluid. I have used the method in a child of 1 year quite successfully.

For applying seeds to the granulation-surface of a clean ulcer, an infiltration of novocaine under the skin of the thigh suffices.

For finger and toe operations, an infiltration around the base is all that is needed.

Non-specific protein therapy with omnadin (Bayer) or edwenil, is of great assistance where the patient's vitality is doubtful. It certainly helps the grafts to “take.”

In one difficult case of 20 years duration, arterial sympathectomy was attempted by injecting a little carbolic into the coats of the femoral artery.

Sepsis occurred, however, in the grafted area and evidently the increased blood flow swept emboli to the lung, the patient dying of pyaemic abscesses.

The results of calcium chloride intravenously have been disappointing. Where there are subcutaneous extensions, it forms abscesses; it causes a sloughing of the skin in toxæmic patients if a drop leaks out from the vein; veins thrombose; and children—who need such a thing most—cannot have it. I have had three cases develop new ulcers while actually under treatment with it, nor can these people lack calcium when they swallow so much lime with their betel-nut. CLUNIE in Fiji found no diminution of blood-calcium in his cases.

DISCUSSION.

Let us consider the tropical ulcer which starts *de novo*, as showing all the stages (see p. 652), and as occurring both to the east and to the west of the south Pacific.

The first sign of this ulcer both in Fiji and in Melanesia is an inflammatory vesicle, the ordinary skin cocci being found in the contents. From the evidence given above it appears that in Fiji these skin organisms in patients predisposed to ulceration by a dietetic deficiency, are able to produce a lesion, which if untreated increases in size while remaining a simple ulcer. In Melanesia (west) on the other hand, it becomes infected with phagaedenic organisms, which convert the simple ulcer into the terrible phagaedenic ulcers we see here. The more predisposed the patient is, e.g., in New Britain, by poor nutrition, the more active will be the process and the more damage done. When a whole community is thus predisposed, we find an epidemic occurring. This epidemic is assisted by an increased virulence of the organisms by passage through very susceptible people.

Treatment consists of (1) cut short the primary infection by a dab of iodine, or later carbolic or blue-stone; (2) relieve the predisposition by ample food, and (3) treat any malaria, because of the startling correlation between the distribution of ulcers and this infection.

The dietetic deficiency is usually an insufficient intake, these people being vegetarians with a precarious food supply. On the other hand, a good diet may be neutralized by the malarial destructive processes.

The evidence produced suggests the essential lack to be protein.

From a public health point of view, the people should be taught the necessity of ample food, and of the value of meat and fish. Training in better methods of catching fish and encouragement in rearing fowls, pigs and cattle for food purposes (and not for sale!) would do more good than merely the diminishing of the ulcer rate.

SUMMARY.

1. The paper discusses 892 cases of ulcer admitted to three hospitals in three parts of the south-western Pacific (Melanesia).

2. Phagaedenic ulcer is due to an infection with fusiform bacilli, spirochaetes and filamentous organisms.

3. There is a striking correlation between the clinical state of the ulcers and the organisms found in smears. All ulcers in the phagaedenic state showed fusiform bacilli.

4. Fusiform bacilli are the first of the phagaedenic organisms to appear. Smears show a gradation from a typical spirochaete through various filamentous forms to a typical fusiform bacillus. The possibility that they represent one organism cannot be dismissed.

5. The finding that clean or septic ulcers do not show phagaedenic organisms is opposed to the statement that all ulcers in the tropics contain spirochaetes.

6. The sequence of events between a break in the skin or the "idiopathic" ulcer through the fully developed phagaedenic ulcer to the healed ulcer is shown.

7. A dietetic deficiency is an important predisposing cause.

8. In New Britain, ulcers and their complications were the chief cause of mortality in hospital. One death only occurred in the Solomons.

9. A relationship between phagaedenic ulcers and malaria is suggested.

10. The virulence of the organisms may be increased by transmission amongst susceptible people.

11. As a prophylactic measure, the application of iodine and adhesive to small abrasions, etc., has been successful.

12. Treatment is carried out by destroying the infection in small ulcers by means of caustics, and by excision in the case of large ulcers followed by skin grafting. Any concomitant malaria or dietary deficiency must be dealt with.

REFERENCES.

- CLUNIE, T. & EVA, A. (1934). *Tropical Ulcer in Fiji*. Suva, Fiji: Government Printer.
- JAMES, C. (1932). Tropical ulcers: Treatment by excision and skin graft. *Lancet*, 2, 1095.
- LAMBERT, S. M. (1932). *Health Survey of Rennell and Bellona Islands*. Suva, Fiji: Government Printer.
- . (1934). *Health Survey of British Solomon Islands Protectorate*. Suva, Fiji: Government Printer.
- MCGUIRE, C. (1934). *Ulcers in the Tea Gardens*. Calcutta: Indian Tea Association.
- PEMBREY, M. S. (1933). *Price's Textbook of the Practice of Medicine*. 4th Ed., p. 8. Oxford Medical Publications. Humphrey Milford, Oxford University Press.
- SMITH, E. C. (1932). *Atlas of Skin Diseases of the Tropics*. Fig. 177. London: John Bale, Sons, and Danielsson.
- . (1936). Tropical ulcer; Results of experimental inoculation in hedgehogs. *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, 30, 259.
- STITT, E. R. (1927). *Practical Bacteriology, Blood Work and Animal Parasitology*. p. 95. Philadelphia: Blakiston's Son and Co., Inc.
- VINT, F. W. (1935). Malignant disease in the natives of Kenya. *Lancet*, 2, 628.

ATTEMPTS TO DEMONSTRATE LEPTOSPIROSIS IN THE NORTHERN SUDAN.

BY

R. KIRK, M.B., CH.B., B.Sc., F.R.F.P.S.*

From the Stack Medical Research Laboratories, Khartoum, Anglo-Egyptian Sudan.

Jaundice is a very frequent clinical condition in the Sudan. Most of the common pathological causes which give rise to jaundice elsewhere are regularly encountered. A notable exception is cholecystitis, which is an extreme rarity in the Sudanese according to both clinical and postmortem records. Leptospirosis is apparently another. Considerable attention has been given by various workers to the possibility of leptospiral infection in some of the more obscure types of jaundice, but the spirochaete of Weil's disease has never been found.

ATTEMPTS TO IDENTIFY LEPTOSPIRA IN CASES OF EPIDEMIC AND SPORADIC JAUNDICE.

WHITEHEAD (1922) investigated an epidemic of jaundice in Port Sudan in 1922. Coarse spirochaetes were found in the urine in two cases but they were avirulent on inoculation into guineapigs, and all the other findings were against a diagnosis of Weil's disease. During 1924 and 1925, epidemics in Kassala

*The writer would acknowledge his indebtedness to Dr. E. D. PRIDIE, Director, Sudan Medical Service, for permission to publish this work, to Dr. A. E. LORENZEN, Dr. W. F. TOWNSEND COLES, and other members of the Sudan Medical Service, for help in obtaining rats, and especially to Major H. C. BROWN, for carrying out the serological tests, and for his kind advice and criticism on all points.

and Malakal were studied by WHITEHEAD and CROUCH (1926). A further epidemic was investigated by DAVIS (1931), but no evidence of leptospiral infection was discovered, either bacteriologically or serologically.

In 1929, cases of sporadic jaundice in the Northern Sudan were studied with the definite object of revealing Weil's disease if it existed. But in no case was it possible to find leptospira. Cultures of the organisms were procured from England, and the adhesion test, which had previously been shown by BROWN and DAVIS (1927) to be specific in leptospirosis was carried out with the sera of jaundiced patients. The results were uniformly negative.

During 1934-1935, a further series of 130 cases of sporadic jaundice was investigated in Omdurman but no evidence of Weil's disease could be obtained either bacteriologically or serologically.

Every year comparable numbers of jaundiced patients are observed in all the other hospitals throughout the Sudan, but Weil's disease has not been reported.

JAUNDICE OF OBSCURE ORIGIN.

The exclusion of leptospirosis does not mean unfortunately that the etiology of the jaundice is clear in all cases. Particularly in the course of the yellow fever survey which has been carried out in the Sudan during the last 4 years, attention has been drawn to numbers of cases of a clinical syndrome of unknown origin. The symptoms are usually moderate fever, deep jaundice, slight albuminuria, and in some cases, vomiting. In some of the fatal cases a high polymorphonuclear leucocytosis has been noted. The disease has been observed to occur in small outbreaks, and a considerable number of the afflicted have died. Clinically the syndrome is liable to confusion with yellow fever, but mouse protection tests have always given negative results. In no case has leptospira been demonstrated, while agglutination tests carried out by Major H. C. BROWN, of the Wellcome Bureau of Scientific Research, London, have always been negative. On several occasions it has been possible to investigate small outbreaks more fully. All examinations of blood, faeces and urine have been negative, and the nature of the condition is at present quite obscure. Resemblances have been noted, especially in the histology of the liver lesions, between these cases and cases of an obscure infective disease associated with jaundice, described by BEEUWKES, WALCOTT, KUMM, and HUDSON (1931) in Nigeria.

ABSENCE OF LEPTOSPIRAL INFECTION IN RATS.

The spread of Weil's disease is almost entirely due to the fact that rats (and other small rodents) harbour the organism, and excrete it in the urine. Surveys have revealed the presence of virulent leptospira in rats in almost all parts of the world. Even in India, where the evidence of human leptospirosis is so

scanty, TAYLOR (1937) found leptospira in 33 out of 100 *Rattus norvegicus* in Bombay. I have been unable to find any records from Arabia or Persia, but in Egypt SANDIFORD (1937) examined a series of twenty-three rats and failed to find any evidence of leptospiral infection.

A survey of the rats of the Northern Sudan has given similar negative results. A total of 259 rats have been examined by the following methods.

- (1) Dark ground illumination of the kidney tissue (90 rats).
- (2) Inoculation into guineapigs of saline emulsions of kidney tissue (105 rats).
- (3) Agglutination tests, carried out by Major H. C. BROWN, against the London human strain of *L. icterohaemorrhagiae* which is serologically identical with the London rat strain of this organism (164 rats).

All those examinations have consistently failed to show any evidence of leptospiral infection. The rats were obtained from Khartoum, Khartoum North, Omdurman, Wad Medani and Port Sudan at various times of the year and the species distribution is as follows:—

Rattus rattus, 55 per cent., *R. norvegicus*, 42 per cent., *Arvicanthus testicularis*, 3 per cent.

DISCUSSION.

It is evident that these observations indicate the entire absence or extreme rarity of Weil's disease in the Northern Sudan, but whether some of the obscure cases of jaundice noted represent leptospirosis in a hitherto unrecognized and aberrant form cannot be stated definitely. MANSON-BAHR (1935) states that leptospirosis as it occurs in the tropics is said to be more virulent than it is in Europe, but that this point requires further investigation as also does its distribution in hot countries. The case described by DAS GUPTA and CHOPRA (1937) suggests that in the tropics there may be extreme difficulty in finding the organism. The negative agglutination tests in the Sudan cases indicate at least that if the jaundice had an undiscovered leptospiral etiology the organisms concerned must be serologically different from the classical strains.

The absence of rodent infections, too, is noteworthy. Rats are common in most of the towns of the Northern Sudan, but the arid desert environment is not a congenial one for an extra-corporeal survival of the leptospira.

ALSTON and BROWN (1937) point out that although leptospirosis is practically world-wide in its distribution, there is an apparent absence of the condition in Egypt, Arabia and Persia, as knowledge exists at present. These authors remark that the strong sunlight in these lands may be an important factor, for it is well known that bright light has a highly lethal action on leptospira.

It is possible that in the Northern Sudan, where climatic conditions are comparable to those of Egypt, Arabia and Persia, the position with regard to leptospirosis may be similar.

SUMMARY.

(1) The prevalence of jaundice in the Sudan is commented upon, and the occurrence of an apparently infective type of jaundice of unknown etiology is noted.

(2) Various observers have consistently failed in attempts to identify Weil's disease.

(3) Rats from the Northern Sudan have been examined for evidence of leptospiral infection, with negative result.

(4) Certain climatic features of the Northern Sudan, unfavourable to the spread of Weil's disease, are noted.

REFERENCES.

- ALSTON, J. M. & BROWN, H. C. (1937). *Proc. R. Soc. Med.* **30**, 714.
 BEEUWKES, W. E., WALCOTT, A. M., KUMM, H. W. & HUDSON, N. P. (1931). *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, **24**, 429.
 BROWN, H. C. & DAVIS, L. J. (1927). *Brit. J. exp. Path.*, **8**, 397.
 DAVIS, L. J. Personal communication, quoted by FINDLAY, G. M., DUNLOP, L. S. & BROWN, H. C. (1931). *Trans. R. Soc. trop. Med. Hyg.*, **25**, 7.
 DAS GUPTA, B. M., & CHOPRA, R. N. (1937). *Indian med. Gaz.*, **72**, 610.
 MANSON-BAHR, P. (1935). *Manson's Tropical Diseases*. 10th Ed., p. 197. London: Cassell & Co.
 SANDIFORD, B. R. (1936). *J. Egypt. med. Ass.*, **19** (11), 687.
 TAYLOR, J. (1937). Quoted by ALSTON & BROWN, *loc. cit.*
 WHITEHEAD, W. T. (1922). *J. R. Army Med. Cps.*, **39**, 294.
 WHITEHEAD, W. S. & CROUCH, H. A. (1926). *J. trop. Med. (Hyg.)*, **29**, 359.

TRANSACTIONS OF THE ROYAL SOCIETY OF
TROPICAL MEDICINE AND HYGIENE.
Vol. XXXI. No. 6. April, 1938.

A NOTE ON SOME CASES OF DISSEMINATED SCLEROSIS.

BY

N. A. DYCE SHARP, M.R.C.P.,
Cape Coast, Gold Coast.

During the past year a number of cases were seen which correspond in all essential signs and symptoms with disseminated sclerosis. That this disease occurs in the Gold Coast has long been known but it is doubtful if, hitherto, its frequency of occurrence has been marked as in recent years. It seems to correspond in that respect with the greater frequency of the disease in England where to-day it is far more common than the parasymphilitic neuropathic conditions which 20 years ago held the field.

A group of cases, eleven in number—on which this note is based—has been studied from certain angles and the signs and symptoms in each case have been classified in the accompanying table.

In the three last cases, which in point of time were studied first, certain signs were omitted from the notes and a dot, therefore, indicates "no observation."

It will be noted that fever was a fairly constant symptom but not necessarily of bad prognosis. In one case, the temperature rose to 105° F. day after day, yet the patient made a complete recovery.

Symptom.	Name and age.	E. E. P., 28.	C. A., 19.	A. A., 30.	A. P., 15.	N., 24.	A., 28.	K. M., 25.	A., 18.	S., 30.	K. Y., 30.	A. A., 25.
Weakness or <i>paresis</i> of lower limbs		+	+	+	+	⊕	+	+	+	⊕	⊕	⊕
Altered <i>speech</i> —slow or monotonous		⊕	+	+	⊕	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
Knee jerks absent or exaggerated		abs.	abs.	abs.					abs.			
		+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
Delusions		—	⊕	—	—	+	—	—	+	—	—	+
Fever. 100° F. or more		—	+	+	—	—	+	+	+	+	+	+
Defective vision, pale temporal half		+	+	+	+	+	⊕	⊕	+	+	.	+
Retention with overflow		+	—	⊕	—	—	—	—	+	.	.	+
Nystagmus		—	—	—	—	+	+	—	+	.	.	.
Epileptiform attacks		—	—	—	—	+	—	—	+	.	.	.
Intention tremor		+	+	+	—	+	—	+
Result—Death, Recovery		D.	R.	D.	R.	D.	R.	R.	D.	R.	R.	D.

N.B.—A circle indicates the symptom for which the patient or his friends sought treatment.

A dot indicates that no note was made of the sign or symptom.

Nystagmus was only observed in three cases. In only one case was it marked.

In every case in which an examination was made the temporal half of the optic disc was found to be markedly pale and this condition cleared up as the disease passed off.

It will be observed that the ages varied between 15 and 30 years.

In this series there were five deaths. One from epileptiform convulsions which persisted till coma set in. One from an ascending paralysis starting with the bladder. One from mental aberration and two from general weakness with heart failure and signs of mental disturbance.

SCHISTOSOMIASIS IN THE KAVIRONDO DISTRICT OF KENYA COLONY.*

BY

R. M. DOWDESWELL, M.D.,
Medical Research Laboratory, Nairobi, Kenya.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
I. VECTORS OF <i>Schistosoma haematobium</i>	673
II. BILHARZIA IN KENYA	676
III. URINARY SCHISTOSOMIASIS IN CENTRAL KAVIRONDO	676
IV. <i>Schistosoma bovis</i>	682
V. DISCUSSION	684
VI. SUMMARY	686

I.—VECTORS OF *Schistosoma haematobium*.

Various methods have been used for deciding which species of snail is actually responsible for the development of the cercarial stage. Consequently in giving

*This paper is published by permission of the Hon. the Director of Medical Services, Kenya. The work was embodied in a thesis for the M.D. degree.

The writer's thanks are due to Major CONOLLY and Professor LEIPER for the identification of snails and schistosomes; to Mr. LEWIS of the Medical Department, Mr. HAMMOND and Mr. JOLLEY of the Veterinary Department, for their help and information; Mr. BENSTEAD for the timely supply of experimental rabbits and to Dr. VINT for sections of the bladder polyp; and his opinion on them.

a list of molluscs reported as intermediate hosts the method used will be indicated by the appropriate letter : (a), (b), (c), (d), (e), (f), after the author's name.

(a) Presence of a particular species of snail in water believed to be a source of infection or in waters situated in a district with a heavy human infection.

(b) Presence of cercariae resembling those of *S. haematobium* in "wild" snails.

(c) Attraction by a species of snail for miracidia.

(d) Recovery of adult schistosomes from the veins of an animal exposed to the cercariae obtained from naturally infected snails.

(e) Infection of "wild" snails with miracidia and the recovery of the adult worm from an animal exposed to the cercariae obtained from these snails.

(f) Infection of laboratory-bred snails with miracidia, the development of cercariae and the subsequent recovery of the adult schistosome from animals.

The conditions of (a) are fulfilled in (b), (c), (d), (e) and (f), and of (b) in (d) and (e).

Now the methods (a) and (c) are clearly not conclusive proof that the snail in question acts in that locality as the intermediate host. The experiment (b) is sound only if the cercariae can be identified with certainty: experiment (d) however is conclusive provided that all chance of cercariae being carried over in the original water is eliminated and that there is no possible doubt as to the identity of the adult schistosomes. Method (c) is an improvement on (d), while (f) when carefully carried out is the ideal final experiment.

A possible error may be present even when methods (e) and (f) are used, that is, that under experimental conditions infection by miracidia may be induced in a snail species which under natural conditions may not be the main carrier of infection.

The unsoundness of method (b) which has been pointed out by BLACKLOCK and THOMPSON (1924a), LANE (1936), and others is clearly shown by the disagreement of authors as to the true morphology of the cercaria and the similarity between those of *S. mansoni* and *S. haematobium*, which has been demonstrated by GORDON, DAVEY and PEASTON (1934) who "failed to reveal any points of difference" and between these and that of *S. bovis* pointed out by BRUMPT (1930), who says "Les cercaires de *S. bovis* ressemblent beaucoup à celles de *S. haematobium* et *S. mansoni*," and does not produce any unmistakable distinctions. A further illustration of the difficulties of method (b) shows some irony, for FAUST (1919) quoting CORT (1919), says with good reason of CAWSTON that "his descriptions and figures of this and other forked-tailed cercariae which he has described are so entirely inadequate that it seems to me that his entire work needs verification by more competent observers." At the same time FAUST identified both *S. mansoni* and *S. haematobium* cercariae from a single snail supplied by CAWSTON, who expressed some doubt as to the correctness of this last observation. In 1926 FAUST (1926) had to admit that he had been mistaken in the number of cephalic glands in the cercaria of *S. haematobium*.

Even the adult *Schistosoma bovis* can be confused with *S. haematobium* unless a careful examination is made, as reference to the table on page 683 will show: for apart perhaps from the extent of the vitelline glands, the shape of the ova is the only very distinctive difference. Therefore even the recovery of a few male or immature adults may be inadequate for differentiation. VAN DEN BERGHE (1936) has commented on this difficulty in a paper discussing pleomorphism in *S. haematobium* ova.

Molluscan Host.	Reported by	Method	Locality.
<i>Bulinus contortus</i> (Michaud)	LEIPER (1915-1918)	(c) (d)	Egypt
	CAROSSE (1930)	(b)	Southern Morocco
	ANDERSON (1922, 1923)	(a)	Tunis
" <i>dybowskii</i> (Fischer)	LEIPER (1915-1918)	(c) (d)	Egypt
	ANDERSON (1922, 1923)	(a)	Tunis
" <i>innesi</i> (Pallary)*	LEIPER (1915-1918)	(c) (d)	Egypt
" <i>truncatus</i> (Audouin)	MILLS, MACHATTIE & CHADWICK (1936)	(d) (e)	Iraq
" <i>brocchii</i> (Ehrenberg)	ANDERSON, (1922, 1923)	(a)	Tunis
" <i>forskalii</i> (Ehrenberg)	CAWSTON (1923)	(b)	Natal
" " "	ADAMS (1934, 1935)	(c) (d) (e)	Mauritius
<i>Physopsis africana</i> Krauss	CAWSTON (1922)	(b)	Lourenço
" " "	PORTER (1920)	(d)	South Africa
" " "	BECKER (1916, 1917)	(b) (d)	Transvaal
" <i>globosa</i> (Morelet)	BLACKIE (1932)	Male adults only (d)	Southern Rhodesia
		No description of adults	
" " "	BLACKLOCK & THOMPSON (1924)	(d) (e)	Sierra Leone
" " "	GORDON, DAVEY & PEASTON (1934)	Male adults only	
" <i>nasuta</i> von Martens	CORSON (1925)	(d) (f)	"
" <i>ovoidea</i> Bourguignat	CAWSTON (1927)	(b)	Tanganyika
<i>Limnaea natalensis</i> Krauss	PORTER (1920)	(a)	Zanzibar
<i>Planorbis metidgensis</i> Forbes (or <i>P. dufourii</i> Graells)	BETTENCOURT & BORGES (1922)	(d)	South Africa
<i>Melania (Melanoides) nodicincta</i> Dohrn	DYE (1924)	(d)	Portugal
		(a) (c)	Nyasaland
		And recovery of furcocercariae from artificially-infected wild <i>Melania</i>	
<i>Melania (Melanoides) tuberculata</i> (Müller)	GOPSILL (1930)	(b)	Nyasaland

*PALLARY himself states BOURGUIGNAT to be the author, but incorrectly.

II.—BILHARZIA IN KENYA.

In this colony both the urinary and intestinal forms are widespread, but, as elsewhere, they occur in certain limited areas. Few references to the presence of the urinary form of schistosomiasis are available, except in routine reports, though its presence in Central Kavirondo was mentioned by Ross (1929) and in Nyanza Province by MILTON (1922). This form is found in Nairobi, Mombasa, Malindi, Kilifi, Digo, Teita (Mwatati area according to Dr. P. C. C. GARNHAM), Machakos, Kitui, Kisumu, Kisii and Kakamega. It would appear that the most important areas are the coastal belt and round the shores of Lake Victoria; in other places the sources of infection are comparatively small localized districts.

The toxins produced by *S. haematobium* appear to be far milder than those of *S. mansoni*, and do not give rise to severe involvement of the liver and spleen (GIRGES, 1934), while attendance at hospital for complications in the urinary system has not been reported.

As far as the writer is aware there has been no investigation in this colony as to the intermediate host of *S. haematobium*, although a fruitless search was once made at Mombasa (CAWSTON, 1928).

III.—URINARY SCHISTOSOMIASIS IN CENTRAL KAVIRONDO.

(1) TOPOGRAPHY OF DISTRICT.

Central Kavirondo is a district lying to the north of the Kavirondo Gulf of Lake Victoria and urinary schistosomiasis is strikingly confined to a clearly limited and small strip of country roughly 20 miles long by 4 miles deep lying along the northern shore of the gulf. This area, rising gradually from the water level of 3,700 feet by a few hundred feet, is mostly open country, agricultural and pastoral, with some small rocky hills. There are several streams running from the higher ground towards the lake, but these are mostly a sequence of pools either grassy or rocky with sometimes a stream running between them, according to the rainfall. Most of these pools are used for watering cattle, bathing and as a supply for all domestic purposes by the natives.

This distribution of the disease refers only to the district of Central Kavirondo and it probably exists in areas along the neighbourhood of the lake shore right round to the east and south.

The rainfall is probably very similar to that of Maseno situated about 10 miles from the eastern end of this strip. At Maseno the annual rainfall averages 54 inches, with shade temperatures ranging from a maximum of about 90° F. to a minimum at night of 55° F. The relative humidity at Kisumu on the lake shore ranges from 50 to 75 per cent. There is not a very marked seasonal variation in temperature. The area with schistosomiasis, however, is several

hundred feet lower in altitude than Maseno, and would appear to be warmer with probably a humidity much the same as at Kisumu.

(2) INCIDENCE OF INFECTION.

As records of schistosomiasis at hospitals and dispensaries are of little value for the estimation of the incidence of this disease, except as an indication of its presence or absence, all the children from 3 to 12 years of age, from one "mlango" or group of villages under one headman were collected and their urines examined for ova. The following results were obtained :—

	Number Examined.	Number with Ova in Urine.	Number with Urine with Red Blood Corpuscles but no Ova.	Number with a history of Infection but Urine Clear.	No history of Infection and Urine Clear.
Male	97	74	11	1	11
Female	26	14	6	—	6
Total	123	88	17	1	17

As histories are unreliable, the one case with a positive history but clear urine will be considered as a negative ; while experience indicated that in all cases showing red blood corpuscles in the urine but no ova, further examination would reveal ova. If these cases are counted as positive, it appears that 85 per cent. of the children are infected. There is also some indication that the rate for girls is not so high as that for boys ; this might be expected, as only the boys herd cattle and are more constantly exposed to infection by standing and wading in pools, when the cattle are taken to water.

(3) MEASUREMENTS OF OVA.

The ova in the urine were typical of *S. haematobium*, healthy specimens measuring from 114μ to 164μ in length, and from 53μ to 68μ in breadth, with an average size of 139μ by 59μ . A small number of ova obtained from youths aged about 19, declaring themselves to be free from infection, gave average measurements of 107μ by 49μ ; not a sufficient number, however, were examined to put forward a suggestion that the immunity developed by this age could be

influential in the production of small-sized eggs. All ova were measured immediately after being passed, lying in the urine without a coverslip.

Average measurements given by BRUMPT (1927), GIRGES (1934), ARCHIBALD and MARSHALL (1932) and GORDON, DAVEY and PEASTON (1934) are 150μ by 60μ , 146μ by 56.1μ , 140μ by 60μ , and 143μ by 60μ respectively.

No ova resembling those of *S. bovis* (MACHATTIE, MILLS and CHADWICK, 1933) or *S. matthei* (BLACKIE, 1932) were seen.

(4) THE FRESHWATER MOLLUSCS.

A search of the pools and streams produced four different types of snails (see Plate) :—

- (i) *Limnaea [natalensis* Krauss ?].
- (ii) *Planorbis stanleyi* Smith.
- (iii) *Bulinus (Pyrgophysa) forskalii* (Ehrenberg).
- (iv) *Physopsis nasuta* von Martens.

Major M. CONOLLY, of the British Museum very kindly identified these snails.

Both *Limnaea* and *Planorbis* were scanty, although the former was present in considerable numbers a few miles away where schistosomiasis did not appear to be present.

The last named species (iv), however, included what appear to be two varieties (see Plate), but as Major CONOLLY points out there may be considerable variation in any species.

Oecology.—The pools in which *P. nasuta* were found form a series connected by streams after heavy rain, but more often separated by damp ground only. Infected snails were recovered chiefly from those pools lying in a gully and shaded in the early morning and evening. The temperature of the water was taken a few inches below the surface and in the shade; the following readings were recorded: Maximum, 28.6°C .; Minimum, 17.2°C .

Physopsis as well as *Planorbis* were generally found to be on the grass overhanging the edge of the pools, just below the surface of the water, and also among the dead leaves lying on the muddy bottom just below water level. All the species of snails do not seem to be present together in the same pool: *Planorbis* was found associated with *B. forskalii* in one place and with the shorter spired variety of *P. nasuta* in another.

B. forskalii was much more scarce than the other species, was associated with clearer and less stagnant water than the others, usually in slowly flowing water, and appeared both to get easily swept away by a rapid flow, and on the other hand to die off when a pool became stagnant.

It was also noticed that although *P. nasuta* could be kept easily under laboratory conditions by the daily addition of a little fresh rain water, *B. forskalii* could never be induced to survive for more than 8 days, and the latter when

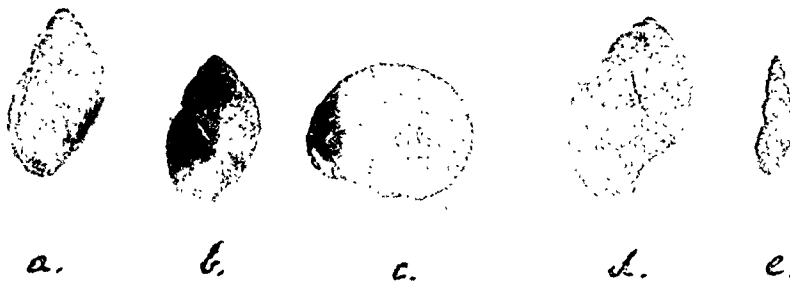


FIG. I

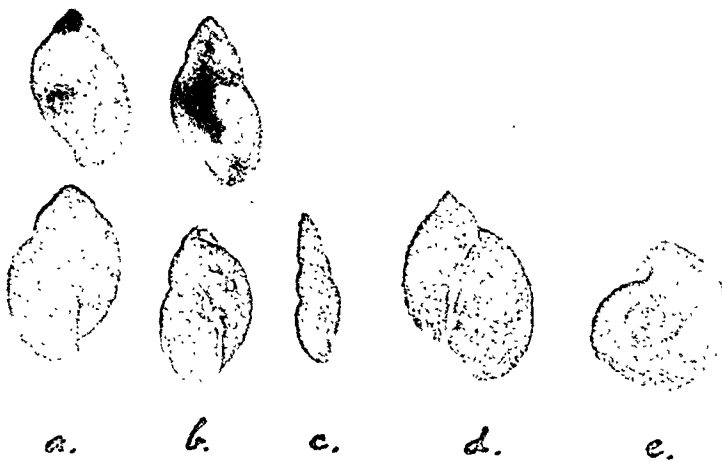


FIG. II

- FIG. I.—(a) *Physopsis nasuta* von Martens, variety 2.
 (b) *Physopsis nasuta* von Martens, variety 2.
 (c) *Planorbis stanleyi* Smith.
 (d) *Physopsis nasuta* von Martens, variety 1.
 (e) *Bulinus* (*Pyrgophysa*) *forskalii* (Ehrenberg).

- FIG. II.—(a) *Physopsis nasuta* von Martens, variety 1.
 (b) *Physopsis nasuta* von Martens, variety 2.
 (c) *Bulinus* (*Pyrgophysa*) *forskalii* (Ehrenberg).
 (d) *Limnaea* [*natalensis* Krauss ?]
 (e) *Planorbis stanleyi* Smith.

kept for transport in moist sand or grass showed a much greater mortality than the former.

At Maseno, which is several hundred feet higher in altitude, there is no schistosomiasis, which indicates that the conditions are either unsuitable for the development of the intermediate host, the liberation and survival of miracidia (BOUET and ROUBAUD, 1912) or the development of the asexual cycle within the snail, as infected natives are undoubtedly present. The temperatures of pools at Maseno taken under similar conditions to the above gave a variation of from 20° C. to 23·9° C., which does not suggest that the temperature is a decisive factor.

According to GORDON, DAVEY and PEASTON (1934), the optimum temperature for the development of cercariae in *P. globosa* was 27° C. to 33° C., though this species could tolerate higher temperatures than *P. pfeifferi*, while the temperature in pools harbouring *P. globosa* varied between 20° C. and 30° C. They conclude that "it is highly unlikely that in Sierra Leone, water temperature plays any important part in limiting the distribution of this species." The influence of temperature on the development of the parasite in the snail has been suggested by BETTENCOURT and BORGES (1922) in Tavira, Portugal, where a pond transmitting infection had a temperature of 25·4° C. ISOBE showed in 1933 the influence of temperature on the escape of cercariae from the snail; while CONOR (1910) observed that bilharziasis was acquired in springs with a temperature of 28° C. but not in those at 50° C.

It appears that the factors controlling the successful evolution of the schistosome cycle in the snail in nature are not sufficiently understood, whether the flora, the food supply of the host, the soil or the chemical or physical conditions of the water have an important bearing on the problem.

A careful study of the oecology of the molluscan host would help to elucidate these factors.

(5) SNAIL DISSECTION.

Specimens of the above snails were collected and dissected with the following results :—

	Number Dissected.	Number with Furco-cercariae.	Number with Single-tailed Cercariae.	Number with Sporocysts only.	Number with no Sporocysts or Cercariae.
<i>B. forskalii</i>	140	0	6	7	127
<i>L. natalensis</i>	49	0	4	10	35
<i>P. stanleyi</i>	75	0	22	9	44
<i>P. nasuta</i>	40	17	3	0	20
(type 1)					
<i>P. nasuta</i>	54	11	0	1	42
(type 2)					

DIAGRAM II.

RESULTS OF EXAMINATION FOR EXO-ERYTHROCYTIC SCHIZOGONY IN FORTY-SIX FOWLS WHICH DIED FROM INFECTION WITH *MESERIO BURNI* OR BY THE INOCULATION OF SPOOROZOITES FROM A SYRINGE.

THE NUMBERS ARE THE IDENTIFICATION NUMBERS OF THE FOWLS USED.

Day of the Malarial Attack on which the Bird Died :

[illegible]

Next a word must be said about the positive findings in the cases included in the last column of Diagrams I and II (1 to 8 months). In these five cases of which two were blood infections and three were sporozoite infections, the illness began as a definite relapse evidenced by the reappearance of pigment parasites in red corpuscles at the following intervals respectively after apparent recovery: 30 days; 36 days; 2 months; 6 months; 8 months. The number of parasites found in the peripheral blood on the day before death did not in any case exceed two or three per field of the microscope and death in all cases was evidently due to the abundance of exo-erythrocytic parasites which were found in the brain, the liver, the spleen and other internal organs.

From these results it will be seen that in *P. gallinaceum* exo-erythrocytic schizogony occurs commonly at a late stage of the disease contracted by the inoculation of either infective blood or sporozoites. Indeed, in cases which were fatal at this late period it was found invariably in both types of infection. In blood infections when it occurs during the 3rd week of the disease—as it so often does—it may almost entirely take the place of the ordinary type of schizogony in erythrocytes and by reason of its abundance and widespread distribution may bring about a fatal issue irrespective of the degree to which red cells are parasitized. In some other cases (as in relapses following splenectomy) schizogony in endothelial cells and in red blood corpuscles may proceed concurrently.

What has been said so far seems to lead to the conclusion that in *P. gallinaceum* exo-erythrocytic schizogony occurring at a late stage of the malarial infection may be regarded as an alternative method of parasitic multiplication which comes into operation pre-eminently towards the end of the process of repeated schizogony in red blood corpuscles. Why and how it arises at this stage is not known.

Lastly the occurrence of exo-erythrocytic schizogony during the early acute stage of the malarial attack must be considered. One important observation about it is that it can be found during this stage almost invariably in sporozoite infections but only rarely in blood infections. If results obtained in birds which were killed for examination on different days are added to the results given in the diagrams for birds that died naturally from the infection, the comparative figures for positive findings before the 10th day work out to 97 per cent. for sporozoite infections and 27 per cent. for blood infections. It may be added that in a group of nineteen sporozoite-infected birds of which four were killed for examination on the 1st day of the attack, eight on the 2nd day and seven on the 3rd, the percentage of positive findings was 100, while in a group of fourteen blood-infected birds of which three were killed on the 1st day, five on the 2nd and six on the 3rd, the percentage of positive findings was 0. This striking difference occurring at a time when in the first group sporozoites, and in the second intracorpuseular schizonts, were introduced into precisely the same environment, seems to indicate that exo-erythrocytic schizogony is the normal type of early development of the parasite from the sporozoite stage but happens only by chance when infective blood is the material inoculated. There is

reason to believe that in some instances the chance factor is whether or not the drop or two of blood used for the inoculation contains one or more exo-erythrocytic parasites in leucocytes or other circulating white cells. Such forms are present quite frequently in the peripheral blood and particularly in the heart blood of fowls suffering from a severe malarial attack due to *P. gallinaceum* and experience has shown that one cannot guarantee that blood used for routine passage of a strain is free from them. Their absence cannot be ensured by centrifuging the blood repeatedly. It is obvious, of course, that, if by chance they are present in the blood injected, the inoculation becomes tantamount to an inoculation with sporozoites and that in due course one will find exo-erythrocytic schizogony and schizogony in red blood corpuscles proceeding concurrently whatever may be the stage of the disease in which the bird dies.

In some other instances, particularly during the later days of the acute primary stage (7th to 10th or 11th days) it happens that the condition of the blood resembles closely the condition during the 3rd week when, as has been shown, the risk of prolific development and multiplication of the parasites by exo-erythrocytic schizogony is very great. In such instances, the reason for a positive finding of these forms during the acute stage may be the same as it is for their being found at a later stage.

If we take the view that the chance factor mentioned (namely that exo-erythrocytic parasites may be present in the blood used for inoculation) is sufficient to account for *all* positive findings of this type of schizogony at any stage of blood-infected cases we have to admit that in 70 per cent. of cases these forms fail to continue to develop in the inoculated bird until after it has recovered from the acute primary attack and has relapsed in the 3rd week or later. As it is certainly the case that exo-erythrocytic parasites inoculated into a non-immune bird invariably continue their development in it without delay, the view must be regarded as untenable.

This being so, I think we must come finally to the conclusion that exo-erythrocytic schizogonic forms can arise from parasites which have developed in red blood corpuscles as well as from sporozoites. It cannot be doubted that in sporozoite infections they arise in the first place from those organisms during the earliest days of the infection, but the evidence presented in this note seems to make it probable that at later stages in both sporozoite and blood infections they can arise from parasites of red cells.

CHALMERS MEDAL.

1939 AWARD.

The nominations received were considered by the Council of the Society of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene on 16th March and the Gold Medal was awarded to Dr. MAX THEILER of the Yellow Fever Laboratory, Rockefeller Institute, New York.

The Medal will be presented by the new PRESIDENT at the Annual General Meeting of the Society to be held at Manson House on Thursday, 15th next.

CORRIGENDA.

Vol. 32, No. 3, November, 1938.

FRED L. SOPER: "Yellow fever: the present situation (October, with special reference to South America.)"

Page 322, line 31 (under REFERENCES):

for: SOPER, F. L. (1938). Vaccination with Virus 17D, etc.

read: SOPER, F. L. and SMITH, H. H. (1938). Vaccination with Virus 17D,

Vol. 32, No. 5, February, 1939.

L. ANIGSTEIN and W. LAWKOWICZ, "Researches on strains of *Rickettsia* and *Proteus* etc."

Page 608, line 2 from bottom of page:

for: of sixteen rats inoculated in the brain with

read: of sixteen rats inoculated with brain passages of

